The Indo-European Languages

Second Edition

Edited by Mate Kapović

Routledge Language Family Series
The Indo-European Languages presents a comprehensive survey of the individual languages and language subgroups within this language family.

With over four hundred languages and dialects and almost three billion native speakers, the Indo-European language family is the largest of the recognized language groups and includes most of the major current languages of Europe, the Iranian plateau and the Indian subcontinent.

Written by an international team of experts, this comprehensive, single-volume tome presents in-depth discussions of the historical development and specialized linguistic features of the Indo-European languages.

This unique resource remains the ideal reference for advanced undergraduate and postgraduate students of Indo-European linguistics and languages, but also for more experienced researchers looking for an up-to-date survey of separate Indo-European branches. It will be of interest to researchers and anyone with an interest in historical linguistics, linguistic anthropology and language development.

Mate Kapović is Associate Professor in the Department of Linguistics at the University of Zagreb, Croatia. He currently teaches courses on Indo-European phonology, Indo-European and Balto-Slavic accentuation, Indo-European morphology, and general phonology.
Each volume in this series contains an in-depth account of the members of some of the world’s most important language families. Written by experts in each language, these accessible accounts provide detailed linguistic analysis and description. The contents are carefully structured to cover the natural system of classification: phonology, morphology, syntax, lexis, semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

Every volume contains extensive bibliographies for each language, a detailed index and tables, and maps and examples from the languages to demonstrate the linguistic features being described. The consistent format allows comparative study, not only between the languages in each volume, but also across all the volumes in the series.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language Family</th>
<th>Editor(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Austronesian Languages of Asia and Madagascar</td>
<td>Nikolaus Himmelmann &amp; Sander Adelaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Bantu Languages</td>
<td>Derek Nurse &amp; Gérard Philippson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Celtic Languages 2nd Edition</td>
<td>Martin J. Ball &amp; Nicole Müller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dravidian Languages</td>
<td>Sanford B. Steever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Germanic Languages</td>
<td>Ekkehard König &amp; Johan van der Auwera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Indo-Aryan Languages</td>
<td>George Cardona &amp; Dhanesh K. Jain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Indo-European Languages 2nd Edition</td>
<td>Mate Kapović</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Iranian Languages</td>
<td>Gernot Windfuhr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Languages of Japan and Korea</td>
<td>Nicolas Tranter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Khoesan Languages</td>
<td>Rainer Vossen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mongolic Languages</td>
<td>Juha Janhunen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Munda Languages</td>
<td>Gregory D.S. Anderson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Oceanic Languages</td>
<td>John Lynch, Malcolm Ross &amp; Terry Crowley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Romance Languages</td>
<td>Martin Harris &amp; Nigel Vincent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Semitic Languages</td>
<td>Robert Hetzron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sino-Tibetan Languages 2nd Edition (forthcoming)</td>
<td>Graham Thurgood &amp; Randy J. Lapolla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Slavonic Languages</td>
<td>Bernard Comrie &amp; Greville G. Corbett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Tai-Kadai Languages</td>
<td>Anthony Diller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Turkic Languages</td>
<td>Éva Csató &amp; Lars Johanson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Uralic Languages</td>
<td>Daniel Abondolo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS

List of illustrations vii
Preface xiii
Abbreviations xv

Indo-European languages – introduction Mate Kapović 1

1 Proto-Indo-European
   1 Proto-Indo-European phonology Mate Kapović 13
   2 Proto-Indo-European morphology Mate Kapović 61
   3 Proto-Indo-European syntax Thomas Krisch 111

2 Proto-Indo-European and language typology Ranko Matasović 153

3 Anatolian H. Craig Melchert 171

4 Indo-Iranian
   1 Indo-Iranian Leonid Kulikov 205
   2 Indo-Aryan Leonid Kulikov 214
   3 Iranian Nicholas Sims-Williams 263

5 Greek Rupert Thompson 287

6 Italic Rex Wallace 317

7 Celtic Patrick Sims-Williams 352

8 Germanic Joshua Bousquete and Joseph Salmons 387

9 Armenian Birgit Anette Olsen 421

10 Tocharian Douglas Q. Adams 452
11 Balto-Slavic
   1 Balto-Slavic  Steven Young  479
   2 Baltic  Steven Young  486
   3 Slavic  Marc L. Greenberg  519

12 Albanian  Alexander Rusakov  552

Language Index  609
Subject-Author Index  617
ILLUSTRATIONS

MAPS
1.1  IE languages today  
1.2  IE languages in the 1st millennium BCE  
1.1  The *centum-satem* branches of IE  
3.1  Anatolia in the Late Bronze Age  
3.2  Anatolia in the Iron Age  
5.1  The Greek dialects  
6.1  The regions of ancient Italy  
6.2  The languages of pre-Roman Italy  
7.1  Latin provincial lapidary inscriptions bearing Celtic personal names  
7.2  Density of Celtic-looking ancient place-names  
9.1  Armenian in ancient and medieval times  
10.1  Kucha (= Kuci) and its dependencies in Han times  
11.1  Baltic tribes at the beginning of the second millennium ad  
11.2  Map of Slavic languages  
12.1  The Albanian dialects

FIGURES
1.2  Sentence scheme 1  
1.3  Sentence scheme 2  
1.4  Structure of Homer Iliad 1,8  
1.5  Structure of Homer Odyssey 4,353  
1.6  Structure of Homer, Odyssey 20, 48  
1.7  Structure of Rigveda 1,32,2  
1.8  Structure of Homer, Iliad 18,468 / 1  
1.9  Structure of Homer, Iliad 18,468 / 2  
1.10  Structure of Homer, Iliad 5,97  
1.11  Structure of Homer, Iliad 5,99  
1.12  Structure of Homer Iliad 5,100  
1.13  Structure of Homer, Iliad 5,101  
1.14  Hettrich 2002: 47 The spectrum of meaning of the Rgvedic instrumental  
4.1  Chronology of Indo-Aryan languages and texts  
4.2  Polyglossia in ancient India  
4.3  Simple vowels  
4.4  The first and second series of palatals in Iranian
TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PIE stops</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflection of PIE palatovelars in <em>satem</em> languages</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Basic reflexes of PIE stops</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE asyllabic resonants</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE syllabic resonants</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE *CRHC</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE *CRHV</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE vowels</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The reflexes of PIE diphthongs</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE o-stems (singular)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE o-stems (plural)</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE o-stems (neuter)</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE o-stems (dual)</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE eh₂-stems (singular)</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE eh₂-stems (plural)</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE eh₂-stems (dual)</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE root nouns (singular)</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE root nouns (plural)</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE i-stems (singular)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE i-stems (plural)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE u-stems (singular)</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE u-stems (plural)</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE r-stems (singular)</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE r-stems (plural)</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE n-stems (singular)</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE n-stems (plural)</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE s-stems (singular)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE s-stems (plural)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE demonstrative pronoun *so – *seh₂ – *tod (singular)</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE demonstrative pronoun *so – *seh₂ – *tod (plural)</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE demonstrative pronoun *so – *seh₂ – *tod (dual)</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE demonstrative pronoun *ey (*is) – *ih₂ – *id (singular)</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE demonstrative pronoun *ey (*is) – *ih₂ – *id (plural)</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE athematic present</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE thematic present</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE present dual endings</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE root-aorist</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE sigmatic aorist</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IE thematic aorist</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>IE perfect</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>IE middle present</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>IE middle aorist</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>IE athematic subjunctive</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.44</td>
<td>IE thematic subjunctive</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>IE athematic optative</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.46</td>
<td>IE thematic optative</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>IE athematic imperative</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.48</td>
<td>IE thematic imperative</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>IE future imperative</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Anatolian nominal endings</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Anatolian personal pronouns</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Anatolian anaphoric pronouns</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Anatolian interrogative-relative pronoun</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Hittite verbal inflection</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Encoding transitivity oppositions: diachronic typological features of some language families</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Vedic texts and schools</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Abbreviations of texts (text sigla)</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Old Indo-Aryan consonantianm</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Assimilation in consonant clusters before dental stops</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>The main alternation grades</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>Old Indo-Aryan case endings</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Consonant declension</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>(A)nt-declension</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10</td>
<td>a-declension (type devā-)</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11</td>
<td>i-declension (types devī- and vykī-)</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12</td>
<td>PIE sources of case endings</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13</td>
<td>Vedic verbal personal endings</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.14</td>
<td>Series of the PIE verbal endings</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15</td>
<td>PIE sources of Vedic personal endings</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.16</td>
<td>The Vedic verbal system: examples</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.17</td>
<td>The Vedic verbal system: examples</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.18</td>
<td>The Vedic system of present stem types</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.19</td>
<td>The inventory of the present passive forms attested in the RV and AV</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>Passive paradigm in early Vedic</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.21</td>
<td>Declension of masculine a-stems (PIE stems in *o)</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.22</td>
<td>Declension of Av. xratu-</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.23</td>
<td>Secondary endings in Avestan</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.24</td>
<td>Primary endings in Avestan</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.25</td>
<td>Conjugation of the thematic present indicative active</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.26</td>
<td>Conjugation of the thematic present indicative middle</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>The Greek (Ionic) alphabet</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Treatment of labiovelars in Attic-Ionic and West Greek</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Forms of the first declension (a-stems) in classical Attic</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Forms of the second declension (o-stems) in classical Attic</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Underlying endings of third declension, and consonant stem forms in classical Attic</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>Forms of the third-declension s-stems, i-stems and u-stems in classical Attic</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>Underlying forms of the -ēu stems, and the resulting forms in classical Attic</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>Forms of the personal pronouns</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>Thematic and athematic primary and secondary endings of the active voice</td>
<td>306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.10</td>
<td>Endings of the strong and weak aorist</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.11</td>
<td>Endings of the middle voice</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>Forms of the perfect and pluperfect in classical Attic</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>The phonemes of Classical Latin</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Classical Latin consonant-stem endings</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Classical Latin o-stem endings</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Classical Latin noun paradigms, masculine and feminine genders</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Classical Latin noun paradigms, neuter</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Classical Latin ‘mixed’ declension</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Classical Latin ē-stems</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>Latin personal pronouns</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>Classical Latin relative pronoun</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.10</td>
<td>Organization of verb system</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.11</td>
<td>Latin conjugation classes</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.12</td>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.13</td>
<td>Personal endings</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.14</td>
<td>Perfect passives</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Comparison of the ordinal numerals</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>The Common Celtic vowel system</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Pre-Celtic stops</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Common Celtic stops</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Brythonic consonantal developments</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>Gaelic consonantal developments</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Nominal stems in -o-</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>Nominal stems in -ā-</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>Nominal stem in -n-</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.10</td>
<td>A possible origin of Old Irish conjunct endings</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.11</td>
<td>A possible origin of Old Irish absolute endings</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.12</td>
<td>Old Irish passive forms (present tense)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.13</td>
<td>Old Irish deponent forms (present tense)</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Pre-Germanic consonants</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>IE and Germanic stops</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Old High German weak verbs</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Germanic strong verbs, classes I–V</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>a-stem masculine nouns</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>Examples of other noun classes</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>The Armenian alphabet</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>The development of PIE vowels in Tocharian</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>Tocharian consonants</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.3 Tocharian vowels
10.4 An example of Tocharian nominal declension
10.5 Some examples of Tocharian adjectival declension
10.6 Deictic pronouns in Tocharian
10.7 First and second person pronouns in Tocharian
10.8 Tocharian numbers from ‘one’ to ‘ten’
10.9 The declension of ‘one’ in the Tocharian languages
10.10 Conspectus of the Tocharian verb
11.1 The vowel system of common Baltic
11.2 The vowel system of East Baltic
11.3 The vowel system of Lithuanian
11.4 The vowel system of Latvian
11.5 Lithuanian accent paradigms for a-stem nouns
11.6 The Proto-Baltic consonant system
11.7 Declension of a-stem nouns
11.8 Declension of a/ā-stem and u/i-stem simple adjectives in Lithuanian
11.9 Declension of a/ā-stem and u/i-stem definite adjectives in Lithuanian
11.10 Declension of the Lithuanian third-person personal pronoun jis, ji
11.11 Proto-Indo-European to late common Slavic vowels
11.12 Late common Slavic vowels
11.13 PIE, Baltic, and Slavic accent paradigm correspondences
11.14 Accentual paradigms
11.15 Proto-Indo-European to late common Slavic consonants
11.16 Cluster simplification
11.17 First velar palatalization
11.18 Second and third velar palatalizations
11.19 ‘Deiotation’ reflexes
11.20 Common Slavic consonant system
11.21 Vocalic stems
11.22 Consonantal stems
11.23 Vocalic stem endings
11.24 Consonantal stem endings
11.25 OCS 3 pers. pronoun
11.26 Interrogative pronouns
11.27 OCS adverbs of place, time, manner, direction
11.28 Inflection of non-past finite verb forms
11.29 Verb classes, following Leskien
11.30 Slavic verb form classes
11.31 Deverbatives from CSL. *věděti ‘to know’, derivatives of CSL. *ryba ‘fish’
12.1 Albanian alphabet
12.2 PIE short vowels (in stressed position)
12.3 PIE long vowels (in stressed position)
12.4 PIE diphthongs (in stressed position)
12.5 PIE sonorants
12.6 PIE obstruents
12.7 PIE *s, *y, *w
12.8 Noun declension in singular
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>Noun declension in plural</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.10</td>
<td>Articulated adjectives (unmarked order)</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.11</td>
<td>Articulated adjectives (inverted order)</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.12</td>
<td>Declension of the personal and demonstrative pronouns</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.13</td>
<td>Declension of the possessive pronouns</td>
<td>583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.14</td>
<td>Cardinal numerals</td>
<td>584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.15</td>
<td>Verb conjugation (the major conjugational classes)</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.16</td>
<td>Conjugation of the verbs <em>jam</em> ‘to be’ and <em>kam</em> ‘to have’</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This volume is formally the 2nd edition of Ramat and Ramat 1998, itself an English translation of Ramat and Ramat 1993. Although the idea and the scope of the volume have remained much the same, the volume itself has changed a lot (the new editor included), and not only due to the necessary updates, inescapable after almost a quarter of a century has passed since the first edition.

The chapter “Proto-Indo-European: Comparison and Reconstruction” (1st ed.) is now replaced by three completely new chapters ("Proto-Indo-European Phonology," “Proto-Indo-European Morphology," and “Proto-Indo-European Syntax”). Instead of the chapter “Sanskrit” (1st ed.), there is a new chapter “Indo-Aryan.” Also, a separate short prechapter “Indo-Iranian” has been added. Instead of the chapters “Latin” and “The Italic Languages” (1st ed.), there is only the new chapter “Italic” now. A new prechapter “Balto-Slavic” has been added to precede “Baltic” and “Slavic.” A new chapter “Fragmentarily Attested Indo-European Languages” was planned, but the text has unfortunately not been finished on time. The chapter “The Indo-Europeans: Origins and Culture” (1st ed.) is completely out. The order of the chapters is new. The only authors remaining from the 1st edition are Nicholas Sims-Williams (“Iranian”) and Patrick Sims-Williams (“Celtic”). Their chapters are updated versions of their chapters in the 1st edition; all the other chapters (written by different authors) are completely new. Some of the authors from the 1st edition have, unfortunately, passed away in the meantime, like the great Calvert Watkins (1933–2013) and Werner Winter (1923–2010). New maps and illustrations were also added.

The idea of the volume is to provide a compact but informative introduction to and overview of Indo-European languages, with the stress on Proto-Indo-European, the oldest well attested IE languages, and the largest IE branches. The aim of the volume is to provide an introduction to beginners or non-Indo-Europeanists, but also to be used as a reference book for scholars already doing research in IE linguistics. However, this is not an introduction to historical linguistics, phonology, morphology, or syntax in general. It is assumed that the potential readers will already be familiar with basic linguistics, although the aim was to make the volume as reader-friendly as possible. The approach in the volume is mostly historical, as traditional in IE linguistics, and the volume is linguistics only – i.e., there are no chapters on IE culture, archeology, mythology, poetics, etc.

In the last twenty years, a lot of historical-comparative grammars of IE in English have appeared (cf. the literature in the first three chapters), but usually by one author surveying all the languages – here, specialists in the field deal with one IE branch (or topic) only from a wider IE perspective. The chapters of the volume are meant to be complementary, but each chapter is supposed to be able to stand for itself (obviously, there is some repetition of certain facts).

The editor has tried to make this volume more uniform (e.g., the same PIE “orthography” is used throughout the book) and internally coherent than the first one, but it was impossible to “tame” completely so many authors, each with their own writing style and
varying interests. Obviously, each chapter has the author’s personal touch (which is not bad – otherwise, all the introductions to IE linguistics would be the same). Naturally, not all literature and different views that would deserve it could be included in this volume. Also, the reader will sometimes note the conflicting views in the volume – not only was this impossible to avoid, but there was no reason to avoid it. This is something that the reader has to take into account when he or she encounters differing PIE reconstructions or interpretations of certain processes or phenomena. Rather than being a hindrance, this can allow a beginner to understand that historical linguistics is not a dogma, and that by applying its methods we can sometimes get differing results. It is exactly after the competition of different ideas that communis opinio is refined. In the end, the editor is glad to note that, although the basic idea of the volume is to provide an introduction and overview of IE linguistics and in spite of the fact that people have been doing IE historical linguistics for quite some time now, the volume does indeed contain quite a few new insights and interpretations, which will make it an interesting read not only for beginners and non-experts but also for professional IE linguists.

Finally, I would like to thank the publisher (especially the editor Samantha Vale Noya) for the opportunity to do this (though I have often, in times of despair, regretted the fact that I accepted the very difficult and often tedious editorial work), and all the authors who have worked hard in order for us to be able to produce such a wonderful volume.

REFERENCES

Ramat, Anna Giacalone & Ramat, Paolo (eds.) 1993 [1997], Le lingue indoeuropee, Il Mulino, Bologna
ABBREVIATIONS

LANGUAGE/DIALECT ABBREVIATIONS

AC  Arcado-Cypriot
Aeol.  Aeolic
AI  Attic-Ionic
Alb.  Albanian
 Anat.  Anatolian
 Arc.  Arcadian
 Arm.  Armenian
 Att.  Attic
 Av.  Avestan
 AV  Atharva-Veda
 Balt.  Baltic
 BCMS  Bosnian/Croatian/Montenegrin/Serbian (= Serbo-Croatian)
 Boe.  Boeotian
 Bret.  Breton
 BRuss.  Belorussian/Belarusian
 BSl.  Balto-Slavic
 Bulg.  Bulgarian
 Čak.  Čakavian
 CBalt.  Common Baltic
 Celt.  Celtic
 Clb.  Celtiberian
 Class. Lat.  Classical Latin
 CLuw.  Cuneiform Luwian
 Corn.  Cornish
 Cret.  Cretan
 Croat.  Croatian
 CS  Church Slavic
 CSL.  Common Slavic
 Cypr.  Cypriot
 Cz.  Czech
 Dac.  Dacian
 Dan.  Danish
 Dor.  Doric
 E  East . .
 EBalt.  East Baltic
 EGr.  East Greek
 ELith.  East Lithuanian
 Eng.  English
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Est.</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fal.</td>
<td>Faliscan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finn.</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr.</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaul.</td>
<td>Gaulish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAv.</td>
<td>Gatha-Avestan (= Old Avestan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germ.</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gl.</td>
<td>Glossing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gmc</td>
<td>Germanic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goth.</td>
<td>Gothic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hitt.</td>
<td>Hittite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLuw.</td>
<td>Hieroglyphic Luwian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hom.</td>
<td>Homeric (Homer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Indo-European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIr.</td>
<td>Indo-Iranian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illyr.</td>
<td>Illyrian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ion.</td>
<td>Ionic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iran.</td>
<td>Iranian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It.</td>
<td>Italic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ital.</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khot.</td>
<td>Khotanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat.</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latv.</td>
<td>Latvian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAv.</td>
<td>Later Avestan (= Young Avestan)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCSl.</td>
<td>Late Church Slavic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lep.</td>
<td>Lepontic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesb.</td>
<td>Lesbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lith.</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSorb.</td>
<td>Lower Sorbian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luw.</td>
<td>Luwian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyc.</td>
<td>Lycian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyd.</td>
<td>Lydian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Middle . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mac.</td>
<td>Macedonian (Slavic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ManMPers</td>
<td>Manichean Middle Persian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBret.</td>
<td>Middle Breton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDutch</td>
<td>Middle Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messap.</td>
<td>Messapian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHG</td>
<td>Middle High German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIran.</td>
<td>Middle Iranian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr.</td>
<td>Middle Irish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MParth</td>
<td>Middle Parthian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPers.</td>
<td>Middle Persian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MW</td>
<td>Middle Welsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myc.</td>
<td>Mycenaean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>North . . .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>North-East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norw.</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NPhryg. New Phrygian
NW North-West
NWGr. North-West Greek
O Old...
OAv. Old Avestan (= Gatha-Avestan)
OBret. Old Breton
OCS Old Church Slavic
OCz. Old Czech
OEng. Old English
OHG Old High German
OHitt. Old Hittite
OIA Old Indo-Aryan/Indic/Indian
Olc. Old Icelandic
OInd. Old Indic/Indo-Aryan/Indian (Vedic & Sanskrit)
OIr. Old Irish
OLat. Old Latin
OLatv. Old Latvian
OLith. Old Lithuanian
ONor. Old Norse
OPers. Old Persian
OPhryg. Old Phrygian
OPruss. Old Prussian
ORuss. Old Russian
OS Old Saxon
Osc. Oscan
OW Old Welsh
OWCB Old Welsh, Old Cornish and Old Breton
P Proto...
Pal. Palaic
Pamph. Pamphylian
PAnat. Proto-Anatolian
PBalt. Proto-Baltic
PBSl. Proto-Balto-Slavic
PCelt. Proto-Celtic
Pers. Persian
PGmc Proto-Germanic
Phryg. Phrygian
PIE Proto-Indo-European
PIIr. Proto-Indo-Iranian
Plb. Polabian
Pol. Polish
Pr. Primitive
PSl. Proto-Slavic
PToch. Proto-Tocharian
Rom. Romance
Russ. Russian
RussCS Russian Church Slavic
RV R̥g-Veda
S South...
ABBREVIATIONS

SCr. Serbo-Croatian (= Bosnian/Croatian/Montenegrin/Serbian)
SE South-East
Skr. Sanskrit
Slav. Slavic
Slk. Slovak
Sln. Slovene
Sogd. Sogdian
Sp. Spanish
Srb. Serbian
Sw. Swedish
Štok. Štokavian
Thess. Thessalian
Toch. Tocharian (A & B)
Ukr. Ukrainian
ULSorb. Upper/Lower Sorbian
Umbr. Umbrian
USorb. Upper Sorbian
Ved. Vedic
Ven. Venetic
W Welsh
W West . . .
WGr. West Greek
WSlav. Western Slavic
YAv. Young Avestan (= Late Avestan)

OTHER ABBREVIATIONS

1 sg./pl. first person singular/plural
2 sg./pl. second person singular/plural
3 sg./pl. third person singular/plural
abl. ablative
acc. accusative
act. active
adj. adjective
adm. admirable
adv. adverb
all. allative
aor. aorist
a.p. accentual paradigm
arch. archaic
caus. causative
coll. collective
comm. common (gender)
comp. comparative
cond. conditional
dat. dative
def. definite
det. determinate
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dial.</td>
<td>dialect(al)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim.</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encl.</td>
<td>enclitic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imp.</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperf.</td>
<td>imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impf.</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indet.</td>
<td>indeterminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inj.</td>
<td>injunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr.</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPA</td>
<td>International Phonetic Alphabet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>med.</td>
<td>medial (= middle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>med.-pass.</td>
<td>medio-passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mid.</td>
<td>middle (= medial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opt.</td>
<td>optative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect.</td>
<td>perfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>person(al)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperf.</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pret.</td>
<td>preterite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prv.</td>
<td>preverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptcl.</td>
<td>particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptcp.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigm.</td>
<td>sigmatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st.</td>
<td>stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suff.</td>
<td>suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>supine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them.</td>
<td>thematic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indo-European languages were originally, a couple of millennia ago, spoken from Europe to India. Now, in postcolonial times, they are spoken all over the world. English is thus, besides being a global *lingua franca*, spoken in North America, Australia, parts of Africa, and elsewhere; Spanish in Central and South America (Portuguese in Brazil); French in parts of Africa, etc. According to *Ethnologue*, $437$ IE languages (the number is in reality approximate) are spoken by almost $3$ billion people in the world. With regard to the number of speakers, this makes the IE language family the biggest in the world. Concerning the number of individual languages, IE is not the largest language family – for instance, the African Niger-Congo family with more than $1500$ languages is much larger. In the world, there are around $7000$ languages (this is not an exact number, since it is extremely difficult to define linguistically what a language actually is), so in this sense IE languages are less important, although IE is still one of the biggest language families. Historical reasons – primarily the concentration of economic power in Europe and later in North America, together with the culture, science, etc., that goes with it – make IE the best-known language family in the world.

In the territories from Europe to India, where IE languages were spoken already a few thousand years ago, not all languages are IE. Most of the languages spoken in Europe today are IE, the exceptions (disregarding Balkan Turkish, the languages of the Caucasus, and recent migrant languages) being Basque, Maltese (an offspring of Arabic), and the Uralic languages (Hungarian, Estonian, Finnish, and a few smaller ones). Basque is the only remnant of pre-IE European languages. Other such cases (like Etruscan) have long disappeared. In the Middle East, we find both IE (like Persian/Farsi, Pashto, Kurdish, and Tajik) and non-IE languages (like Turkish, Azeri, Arabic, etc.). In the Indian subcontinent, many languages are IE (like Hindi/Urdu, Bengali, Punjabi, and Nepali), while many belong to the non-IE Dravidian family (like Tamil and Malayalam) and other non-IE language families (like smaller languages from the Tibeto-Burman and Austro-asiatic families).

What is a language family? What does it mean when we say that English and Albanian belong to the IE language family? To put it succinctly, a language family consists of all the languages that have evolved from a single original proto-language. It is thus a group of genetically related languages (up to a certain point – it just may well be that all human languages are related, though this cannot be proven). In the IE case, it means that we can prove that all the IE languages that we know have evolved through many stages from a single parent language that we today call Proto-Indo-European. This proto-language was
spoken some 6000 years ago and, like most proto-languages, is unattested (which means that we have no written records of PIE). This is not always the case; for instance, Latin (as the proto-language of all Romance languages) and Old Chinese (as the proto-language of all modern Chinese “dialects”/languages) are attested.

How can one language split into more than 400 languages? The answer is simple – through language change. All languages change all the time (even today with all our schools, means of communication, and mass media). Linguistic changes that occur during the life of an individual speaker are usually slow and gradual (although still perceivable, whether they have to do with changes in pronunciation, grammatical forms, or vocabulary), but in time languages change enough to become mutually incomprehensible and sometimes very different. This is made easy by migration – when two social groups separate, it is easy to imagine that a previously uniform language can evolve in different directions (cf. the differences between British, American, and Australian English, although they are still in contact, mutually comprehensible, and thus considered one language).

That languages like English, Czech, and Welsh have all developed from a single proto-language was not always apparent. Already in ancient times, people noticed that there are many similar words in, for instance, Latin and Greek – cf. e.g. Lat. māter ‘mother’, pater ‘father’ and Gr. μήτηρ /mētēr/, πατήρ /patēr/ (or, for that matter, English mother and father). However, they did not know how to properly explain such similarities. Thus, there have been many unscientific hypotheses, such as that all languages are derived from Hebrew (considered a holy language) and so on. In the 15th and 16th centuries, there were a number of scholars, like Rodolphus Agricola/Roelof Huismans (1443/4–1485), Sigismund Gelenius/Zikmund Hrubý z Jelení (1497–1554), and Johann Elichmann (1601/2–1639), who noted correspondences between various IE languages. However, it is Marcus van Boxhorn (1612–1653), a professor at Leiden University, who
can be regarded as the first historical linguist and the father of IE linguistics. In 1647 he advanced a theory that Greek, Latin, Persian, Old Saxon, Dutch, German, Gothic, Russian, Danish, Swedish, Lithuanian, Czech, Croatian, and Welsh (but not Hebrew) originally stemmed from “Scythian” (= PIE). His friend Claudio Salmassius/Claude de Saumaise (1588–1653) added Sanskrit to the list. Amazingly, van Boxhorn also noted the importance of recognizing false cognates, loanwords, systematic correspondences, plausible semantic agreement, morphological comparison, and synchronically irregular forms (all basic elements of historical linguistics now called the “comparative method”).

The European discovery of Sanskrit played an important role in the beginnings of IE historical and comparative linguistics. Already in 1585, Filippo Sassetti (1540–1588), a merchant and scholar, noted in a private letter the similarity of some words in Sanskrit and Italian (e.g., Skr. nava and Ital. nove ‘nine’), and in the 18th century a couple of scholars wrote on the obvious similarity of Sanskrit to European languages. One of them was William Jones (1746–1794), who in a lecture in 1786 compared Sanskrit to Greek, Latin, Gothic, Celtic, and Old Persian, claiming that they “have sprung from some common source.” Jones is usually wrongly considered the founding father of IE historical linguistics, although he was neither the first to make such a hypothesis nor the one with the clearest presentation of the problem. Shortly after, the first modern IE historical linguists – Jacob Grimm (1785–1863; famed as one of the Grimm brothers), Rasmus Rask (1787–1832), and Franz Bopp (1791–1867) – started doing serious historical linguistics, and others followed. The very term Indo-European was coined in 1813 by Thomas Young (1773–1829). The discovery of Anatolian and Tocharian texts in the beginning of the 20th century gave new impetus for IE linguistics.

The IE language family comprises ten principal branches (those being the ones sufficiently attested in ancient times and/or today) and a number of fragmentarily attested separate languages spoken in ancient times (like Lusitanian or Phrygian) that have since disappeared. Three main branches (Anatolian, Indo-Iranian, and Greek) are attested already in the second millennium BCE, two in the first millennium BCE (Italic, Celtic), and the other five branches later. Three of the principal branches consist of one language only (Greek, Armenian, and Albanian), although those comprise different dialects as well. Two major branches (Anatolian and Tocharian) are now extinct, and the same goes for all fragmentarily attested languages and certain languages from other primary branches (like Gaulish). The ten principal IE branches are as follows.

1. **Anatolian** – attested from the 19th/16th to the 1st century BCE
   Spoken, until its disappearance, in Asia Minor. Old Anatolian languages (spoken in the 2nd millennium BCE) are Hittite (the best attested, written in Akkadian cuneiform, the language of the great Hittite Empire), Cuneiform Luwian (Luwian), Hieroglyphic Luwian, and Palaic. Hittite is attested from around the 16th century, but a few names and loanwords are found already in the 19th century BCE in Old Assyrian texts. New Anatolian languages (spoken in the 1st millennium BCE) are Lydian, Lycian (Lycian A), Milyan (Lycian B), Carian, Sidetic, and Pisidian.

2. **Indo-Iranian** – attested from the 15th–14th century BCE
   Spoken mostly in the northern part of the Indian subcontinent and the Middle East (Eastern Turkey, Caucasus, Iran, Afghanistan). As a result of old migrations, the Romani language dialects are spoken by the Roma people in Europe. Indo-Iranian consists of two great groups – Indo-Aryan (Indic) and Iranian. The third, smaller group is Nuristani (on the border between Afghanistan and Pakistan), and the fourth, disputably, is Dardic (traditionally considered part of Indo-Aryan). The two major
groups are attested from ancient times and represented by many languages, while the two small groups are attested only from modern times and consist of a few small languages spoken in remote parts of northern India, Afghanistan, and Pakistan. Indo-Aryan languages are chronologically divided into Old Indic/Indo-Aryan (Vedic – the language of the Vedas; Sanskrit – the classical language of India), Middle Indic/Prakrits (Pali, Shauraseni, Maharashtri, Magadhi, etc.), and New Indic (many languages – Hindi/Urdu, Bengali, Punjabi, Marathi, etc.). Certain words and names of Indo-Aryan origin were attested in the 15th–14th century BCE in Hurrian texts. The Rigveda (the oldest part of the Vedas) is usually dated to the second half of the 2nd millennium BCE but was transmitted orally for a long time. Iranian languages are chronologically divided into Old Iranian (Avestan – the language of Zarathustra, from the first half of the 1st millennium BCE, or perhaps even earlier but at first transmitted orally; Old Persian – the language of the Achaemenid Empire), Middle Iranian (Pahlavi – the language of the Sassanid Empire; Sogdian; etc.), and New Iranian (New Persian/Farsi – the official language of Iran; the Kurdish languages; Pashto – the official language of Afghanistan; etc.).

3. **Greek** – attested from the 15th–14th century BCE
   Spoken from ancient times until the present in mainland Greece and neighboring islands. The first attestations were written in the Linear B script in Mycenaean Greek, the earliest recorded Greek dialect. From the 8th century, Greek has been written in the Greek alphabet. In the classical period (around the 5th century BCE), the following Greek dialects existed – North-West dialects, Doric, Aeolic (controversial), Arcado-Cypriot, and Ionic-Attic (the details of the subgrouping are disputed). Later stages of Greek are Hellenistic/Koiné, Byzantine/Medieval, and Modern Greek.

4. **Italic** – attested from the 7th century BCE
   Spoken in ancient Italy. Italic consists of two groups – Latino-Faliscan and Sabellian (Osco-Umbrian). The Latino-Faliscan group consists of Latin (very well attested) and Faliscan. The Sabellian group consists of Oscan, Umbrian, and a number of smaller and poorly attested Italic languages. All Italic languages except Latin disappeared already in Roman times owing to the expansion of Latin as the language of the Roman state. Latin later developed into numerous modern Romance languages (Portuguese, Spanish, Catalan, French, Italian, Romanian, etc.).

5. **Celtic** – attested from the 6th century BCE
   Now spoken in peripheral areas of the British Isles (Ireland, Wales, Scotland) and France (Brittany), previously spoken in wide areas of Europe (from the Iberian Peninsula and France all the way to Asia Minor). The Celtic branch can be divided (though controversially) into three groups: Celtiberian, Continental Celtic, and Insular Celtic. Celtiberian is a one-language group, attested in the 2nd to 1st century BCE in present-day Spain. Continental Celtic languages – Gaulish (in France) and Lepontic (in northern Italy) – are now extinct. Insular Celtic consists of Brythonic (Welsh, Breton, and extinct Cornish) and Goidelic (Irish/Gaelic, Scottish Gaelic, and extinct Manx). Of all currently existing Celtic languages, only Welsh has a more or less secure future.

6. **Germanic** – attested from the 3rd (?) century BCE
   Nowadays spoken in North-West Europe. The first Germanic words are attested perhaps already in the 3rd (?) century BCE on the so-called Negau helmet (found in
Ženjak in present-day Slovenia). The earliest runic inscriptions date from the first centuries CE, and the Gothic translation of the Bible from the 4th century. Germanic languages comprise three groups: East, North, and West. The extinct East Germanic group consists of Gothic, Vandal, and Burgund. The Northern languages are Old Norse and, in modern times, the Scandinavian languages. The Western languages are Old High German, Old Saxonian, Old Low Franconian (Old Dutch), Old Frisian, and Old English (in modern times, respectively, German, Low German, Dutch, Frisian, and English).

7. **Armenian** – attested from the 5th century CE
   Spoken in present-day Armenia and elsewhere in the Caucasus and Middle East as a minority language, previously also in wide areas of present-day eastern Turkey. Modern Armenian consist of two dialects, Eastern and Western, both standardized.

8. **Tocharian** – attested from the 4th–5th to the 8th–10th century CE
   Spoken in merchant cities on the ancient Silk Road, in the present-day Xinjiang province of western China (now inhabited by Turkic Uyghurs). There were two closely related Tocharian languages – Tocharian A and Tocharian B.

9. **Balto-Slavic** – attested from the 9th (Slavic) and 16th (Baltic) century CE
   Spoken in the Baltic, the Balkans, and Central and Eastern Europe. The Balto-Slavic branch consists of West Baltic, East Baltic, and Slavic. The extinct Old Prussian is West Baltic, and Lithuanian and Latvian are East Baltic (there are a few other poorly attested and extinct Baltic languages). Slavic consists of East (Russian, Belorussian, Ukrainian), West (Polish, Czech, Slovak, etc.), and South Slavic (Slovene; Bosnian/Croatian/Montenegrin/Serbian – traditionally known as Serbo-Croatian; Macedonian; Bulgarian). The first attested Slavic language, Old Church Slavic, was based on the Thessaloniki Old Macedonian dialect.

10. **Albanian** – attested from the 15th century CE
    Spoken in present-day Albania, Kosovo, West Macedonia, South Montenegro, North-West Greece, and South Italy. There are two dialects – Gheg in the north and Tosk in the south, the latter being the basis of Standard Albanian.

Fragmentarily attested IE languages can be divided into two basic groups: those that have at least one attested text/inscription and those that are attested only through onomastics or individual words in texts written in other languages. In the first group, there are Lusitanian (Portugal), Venetic (North-East Italy), Messapic (the “heel” of Italy), Thracian (Bulgaria), and Phrygian (Minor Asia). In the second group, we find languages like Ligurian (North-West Italy), the Illyrian languages (North-West Balkans), Dacian (Romania), and Macedonian (no relation to present-day Slavic Macedonian). Apart from fragmentarily attested IE languages, there are also possible non-attested IE languages, whose traces can perhaps be seen in loanwords in other languages (like the supposed North-West Block language in Benelux), but these are rather speculative.

Many elements can be reconstructed for the last stage of PIE. However, what we obtain through reconstruction will never be a full picture of the language, since elements (sounds, grammatical endings, words, meanings, etc.) can disappear with no trace or leave so few traces that it is not possible to reconstruct them plausibly. Thus, the around 1500 PIE lexical items that have been reconstructed are certainly just a small part of the actual PIE vocabulary, which must have had something like 30,000–50,000 words, just
as much as any language today. Likewise, we can, for instance, reconstruct the ending variants *-mes, *-mos, *-mesi, *-men, etc. in the PIE 1st person plural present indicative (p. 93), but it is impossible to know how to interpret them exactly. Were these just random variants (not likely), were they sociolinguistic variables, did their use depend on dialect, gender, social status, etc.? Sometimes it is also very difficult to separate different layers—should an element be reconstructed for PIE in general, dialectal PIE, post-Anatolian PIE (i.e., PIE after the early split of Anatolian), early PIE (i.e., PIE including Anatolian), post-PIE time, etc.?

Like most languages that cover any substantial ground, PIE probably also had dialects. The dialectal picture of PIE is not completely clear because it is sometimes difficult to distinguish PIE dialectal features from post-PIE shared innovations and accidental independent innovations. It is now widely accepted that Anatolian was the first branch to separate from the rest of PIE (and that Tocharian was the next). However, which Anatolian characteristics (like the lack of feminine gender) are archaisms, and which are innovations, is still a matter of dispute (p. 62, 66, 159, 178). Dialects can share one trait with one dialect, and another with another dialect. For instance, Greek, Indo-Iranian, and Armenian all have the augment *h₁e- in past tense verbal forms, which is not present in other IE languages. At the same time, Armenian and Indo-Iranian are satem languages, while Greek is a centum language (p. 27). In Greek, Armenian, and Phrygian, initial pre-consonantal laryngeals (*H-) yield vowels (p. 48), while this is not the case in Indo-Iranian. Indo-Iranian, on the other hand, shares the so-called RUKI rule (p. 206) with Balto-Slavic (p. 29, 495, 526–527), a satem branch, while Balto-Slavic shares the ending *-mos in the dative plural with Germanic (as opposed to *-bʰos in Italic, p. 63), a centum branch, etc.

The question of the PIE homeland (the “original” territory where speakers of PIE lived) is still a subject of debate. The most commonly accepted hypothesis in the last few decades has been the “Kurgan hypothesis” (Kurgans being a type of burial mound), which
puts Proto-Indo-Europeans in the steppes of present-day Ukraine and South Russia, north of the Black Sea. The position of the PIE homeland is often deduced from certain linguistic indications, and by trying to connect linguistic evidence with archeology, paleobotany, and other disciplines. The way linguistic evidence is used in trying to deduce the place of the PIE homeland follows a certain logic. For instance, since one can reconstruct a PIE word for ‘snow’ (*snoy*ghs), we can suppose that PIE was spoken in a place where there was snow (which by itself does not amount to much). Evidence has to be carefully evaluated – for instance, Lat. *mare*, OCS *morje*, and Olr. *muir* ‘sea’ would all point to PIE *mori* ‘sea’ (and thus to a PIE homeland by the sea). However, Goth. *marei* (cf. Eng. *mere*, *marsh*) means both ‘sea’ and ‘lake’, which brings the PIE meaning ‘sea’ in doubt (it is not unimaginable that the original meaning was ‘lake, standing water’ and that the meaning ‘sea’ is secondary, though there can be no certainty in any of the possibilities).

Comparative linguistics has proven beyond reasonable doubt that all IE languages stem from the same proto-language. However, the question of a deeper genetic relationship of IE with other language families is still a matter of heated debate (though most IE-ists, curiously, ignore the problem, choosing not to go outside of inner-IE problems). The most likely IE relative is Uralic. There are some striking cognate-looking examples, cf. e.g. Proto-Uralic *weti* ‘water’ and PIE *wodr̥* (this is not a word easily loaned), or Proto-Uralic verbal endings 1 sg. *-mi, 1 pl. *-me, 2 pl. *-te, which are practically identical to PIE *-m(i), *-me, *-te (p. 93). Although the Indo-Uralic hypothesis is still not strictly proven, grammatical correspondences like these make this proposition quite probable. On a wider scale, IE often connected with “Nostratic” languages, which include IE, Uralic, Kartvelian (like Georgian), Altaic (a suspicious family by itself, consisting of Turkic, Mongolic, Tungusic, and possibly other languages), Dravidian, Afro-Asiatic (consisting of Semitic, Egyptian, etc.), and possibly other families/languages (the “cast” is not always the same). There is a lot of work left to be done in long range comparison, but it is not at all certain that we will ever get satisfactory answers to these problems. Many linguists are, with good reason, highly skeptical concerning the very methodological basis of such reconstruction, and simply do not believe that there is enough linguistic material preserved (since sounds, forms and words not only change but can also disappear leaving no trace) to let us plausibly reconstruct proto-languages so distantly in the past.

Up till now, we have seen examples of cognate words and reconstructed PIE forms (marked with an asterisk to indicate them not being attested). But how do linguists actually know what words/forms to compare, and how do they get the idea that two or more languages are genetically related in the first place? Looking for similar words with similar meanings is obviously not enough, since similar words with similar meanings in two languages can easily be the result of linguistic borrowing. Compare Modern English and French pairs like *city/cité*, *people/peuple*, or *part/part*. These are all French loanwords in English, which can be proven by historical data (French loanwords were brought to England by French-speaking Normans after their 1066 conquest). When looking for genetically related languages, it is safer to look for similarities in grammar (morphology, i.e., nominal or verbal endings, etc.), since morphological elements are borrowed much less frequently than vocabulary. Looking for morphological similarities may be a problem in languages which are not rich with morphology (like Chinese or even English), but not in older IE languages, which have quite complex morphology. Some of the similarities, clearly seen in ancient IE languages, are visible even today. For instance, compare the plural ending *-i* in Italian *lupi* ‘wolves’ and Russian *вóлки* /vólki/. However, one does need to reconstruct vocabulary as well. When looking for old words inherited directly from PIE, one has to find words that are likely to have been in a language already a
couple of millennia ago (thus, not words like computer or tennis) and words that are not so likely to be borrowed. Although in principle any word can be borrowed (and all kinds of examples from all around the world can be found), in some types of vocabulary one often finds old inherited words, for instance, in words for family relations (cf. Eng. father, mother, brother and related Ital. padre, madre, fratello), numbers (cf. Eng. two, three, seven and related Ital. due, tre, sette), body parts (Eng. nose, beard, ear and Ital. naso, barba, orecchio), etc. Genetically related words are sometimes obviously similar (Eng. mother ~ Ital. madre), sometimes less obviously so (Eng. wolf ~ Ital. lupo – the l is the same, and the sounds f and p are phonetically close), and sometimes almost completely different (Eng. hornet ~ Ital. calabrone). Of course, similarity of form and meaning may be completely accidental, cf. e.g. non-related pairs such as Eng. much and Span. mucho, Eng. iron and Span. hierro, Eng. day and Span. día, etc. (this is more apparent when one considers phonologically more archaic Germanic cognates such as Scots mickle, German Eisen, or Swedish dag respectively, or the Latin forms multum, ferrum, diēs that yield the cited Spanish forms).

But similarity alone is not enough. Not only does it not guarantee that two words are related, it is also not scientific. What historical linguists look for are not necessarily similar sounds, words, or forms, but systematic sound correspondences. This means that certain phonemes (or clusters of them) in purportedly genetically related languages have to systematically correspond to each other, whether they are phonetically close or not. For instance, in initial position we find in English and Italian the correspondences n- ~ n- (no/no, night/notte, nine/nove), h- ~ c- (hornet/calabrone, hound/cane, heart/cuore), t- ~ d- (two/due, ten/dieci, tooth/dente), etc. Careful examination and analysis of such correspondences is one of the primary tasks of historical linguistics and a prerequisite for proving a genetic relationship between two or more languages. Describing such correspondences will be an important part of the next chapter.

Note: I would like to thank David Mandić and Petra Šoštarić for reading the first draft of the chapter. Of course, all the mistakes are just mine.

FURTHER READING

Lehmann 1967 provides a rich selection of translated primary texts (with commentary) from the beginnings and early IE historical linguistics. Pedersen 1959 is also still very useful. For the problems of the IE homeland, culture, and archeology from a mainstream IE-ist perspective see, for instance, Mallory 1989 and Mallory & Adams 1997. A lot of information on IE culture can be found in the famous but controversial and idiosyncratic Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1995. For more on the “Kurgan hypothesis” from the pen of its originator see Gimbutas 1997. Salmons & Joseph 1998 is an informative look at Nostratic from different perspectives. There are a number of good handbooks and introductions to historical linguistics, many of them using a lot of IE material. Trask 2007 may be a good place to start, as well as Campbell 2004. Joseph & Janda 2003 and Ringe & Eska 2013 are a bit more demanding. Labov’s trilogy on the principles of linguistic change (1994, 2001, 2010), written mostly (but not exclusively) from the perspective of quantitative sociolinguistics, is invaluable and inspiring, though perhaps not a usual IE-ist read. For a list of recent introductions to IE, see the “Further reading” sections in the chapters on PIE phonology and PIE morphology in this volume.
NOTES

2 For van Boxhorn and other early scholars cf. Van Driem 2001: 1039–1051.

REFERENCES

Pedersen, Holger 1959, The Discovery of Language: Linguistic Science in the 19th Century, Indiana University Press, Bloomington
Trask, Robert L. 2007², Trask’s Historical Linguistics, revised by Robert McColl Millar, Hodder Arnold, London
CHAPTER 1

PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN PHONOLOGY

Mate Kapović

INTRODUCTION

Proto-Indo-European phonology is reconstructed on the basis of its reflexes in Indo-European languages – mostly older ones, generally preserving more archaic features, i.e., closer to PIE. The principal languages referenced in this chapter for the reconstruction of PIE are Old Indic/Indo-Aryan (Vedic and Sanskrit), Avestan (Old/Gatha- and Young/Late Avestan), (Ancient) Greek, Latin, Old Church Slavic, Lithuanian (Old and Modern), Gothic, Hittite, Old Irish, Tocharian (A and B), (Classical) Armenian, and Albanian. Of course, other languages (Sabellic, Latvian, Old Prussian, Old High German, Old English, Luwian, Gaulish, Old Persian, etc.) are also used when necessary or when they have a form or feature not present in a language from the first group. Ideally, PIE reconstruction should take into account all the relevant information present in any IE language/dialect. This overview tries to present the reconstructed PIE phonological system and its main reflexes in major ancient IE languages. A more detailed overview of reflexes for specific languages/branches can be found in separate chapters in this volume.

The following phonological system can be reconstructed for the last phase of PIE:

STOPs

*p *t *k *k' *kw [voiceless]
(*b) *d *g *g' *gw [voiced]
*bh *dh *gh *gh' *ghw [aspirated]

FRICATIVES

*s *h₁ *h₂ *h₃

RESONANTS and GLIDES

*m/ṃ *n/ṇ *l/ḷ *r/ṛ *w/u *y/i

VOWELS

(*a) *e *o

(including

*ē *

*DIPHTHONGS*

(*ay) *ey *oy (*aw) *ew *ow

*ēy *ōy *ēw *ōw

The phonemes *b and *a (together with *ay and *aw) can be considered marginal, or at least infrequent, phonemes (p. 18, 42), *a also being an allophone of *e when in contact with *h₂ (p. 43). Reconstruction of *ā not stemming from original *eḥ₂ is very questionable (p. 42). Short *i and *u most likely had long allophones in monosyllabic forms (p. 55).
PIE stops were voiceless, voiced, or (voiced) aspirated. The velar stops were unmarked (*k, *g, *gʰ), palatalized (*kʼ, *ǵ, *ǵʰ) (IPA [kʼ, ǵʼ, ǵʰ]), or labialized (*kʷ, *gʷ, *gʷʰ). Besides *s, the “laryngeals” *h₁ and *h₂ (marked numerically) were almost certainly fricatives as well (some kind of h-type sounds). The *h₁, “laryngeal” (provisionally labeled a fricative in the above scheme) might also have been a fricative, but this is less certain (p. 30). The sign *H is used for all three laryngeals when it is not known which one is to be reconstructed or when we need a mark for all three laryngeals. Resonants and semivowels were either asyllabic (*m, *n, *l, *r, *w, *y (IPA [j])) or syllabic (*m̥, *n̥, *l̥, *r̥, *u, *i) (IPA [m̩, n̩, l̩, r̩]). The vowels *i and *u act phonologically in the same way as syllabic resonants – the relation of *i/u to *y/w is the same as that of *m/n/l/r to *m̥/n̥/l̥/r. Some reconstructable segments appeared only as allophones – cf. the non-phonemic fricatives *z (p. 29), *b (IPA [b]), and *ð (and *ðʰ) (p. 53) and the vowel *ǝ (p. 46–47, 52).

What is immediately typologically noticeable in the PIE phonological system, among other things, is the paucity of “real” vowels (if one does not take into account syllabic glides, long vowels, and diphthongs), the very unusual marginality (or even complete lack of) the vowel a, and the complete lack of affricates (no phonemic *c [ʦ], *č [ʧ], *ǯ [ʤ], etc.). On the other hand, the stop system was rather rich (with 15 of them). In later IE languages, phonological systems usually developed in the following direction: the vowel system became typologically more common, with a becoming more frequent (additionally, i and u lost their phonological relation to j and w/v, while diphthongs often became monophthongs); syllabic resonants (*m̥, *n̥, *l̥, *r̥) disappeared everywhere (later they appeared again in some languages); a lot of languages developed new affricates; the “laryngeals” (*h₁, *h₂, *h₃) disappeared in most languages in most positions, but new fricatives appeared; the stop system simplified everywhere; and languages preserved only one additional distinctive feature – aspiration or labialization. Velar palatalization as such was nowhere preserved – it either completely disappeared or was the origin for new affricates and fricatives.

Note on the PIE “orthography”: various authors/schools write reconstructed PIE phonemes differently. Palatalized velars can also be written as *kʼ, *k̂, *k̈, *k̂, etc.; *kʰ can be written instead of *kʰ; aspirated stops can be written as *bh, *dh, *gh; laryngeals can be written as *H₁, *H₂, *H₃, or *ǝ₁, *ǝ₂, *ǝ₃ (the latter usually for “syllabic” laryngeals), and an unknown laryngeal as *hᵽ (instead of *H); the glides *y, *w can be written as *ĵ/j, *u̯; *eu/eu̯ instead of *ew, etc.

**TABLE 1.1 PIE STOPS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>voiceless</th>
<th>voiced</th>
<th>aspirated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labials</td>
<td>*p</td>
<td>*b</td>
<td>*bʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentals</td>
<td>*t</td>
<td>*d</td>
<td>*dʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velars</td>
<td>*k</td>
<td>*g</td>
<td>*gʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palatalized velars</td>
<td>*kʼ</td>
<td>*ǵ</td>
<td>*ǵʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labialized velars</td>
<td>*kʰ</td>
<td>*gʰ</td>
<td>*gʰ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

No modern IE language has preserved PIE palatalized velars as such. On the other hand, labiovelars are preserved even in some modern IE languages – cf. the phonetics of English *queen [kʰiːn] (p. 25). PIE aspirated stops are traditionally reconstructed as...
voiced because of their reflexes, which are mostly voiced (p. 28). However, voiced aspirated stops are typologically less common than voiceless aspirated stops – cf. the initial allophonic aspirated [pʰ], [tʰ], [kʰ] in English pin, tin, kin. In PIE, velars could be both palatalized and aspirated (*gʰ) and labialized and aspirated (*gʷʰ) at the same time.

PIE voiceless stops do not change in most of the languages (p, t, k), the main exceptions being Germanic (where they change to voiceless fricatives f, p, x) and Armenian (where they change to voiceless aspirates *pʰ, *tʰ, *kʰ). The phoneme *p weakens and disappears in Celtic. In most languages, PIE voiceless stops remain unchanged (b, d, g). However, in Germanic and Armenian (perhaps also in Anatolian) they become voiceless p, t, k (in Tocharian all stops merge into p, t, s, k). The phonemes traditionally reconstructed as voiced aspirated stops change in most IE languages. They are preserved only in Indo-Aryan (bh, dh, gh); in Greek they remain aspirated but become voiceless (p [pʰ], 9/θ [tʰ], ɣ [kʰ]); in Italic they change to fricatives (voiceless initially: *f-, *p-, *x-; voiced medially: *β-, *ð-, *γ-), and in other branches they change to plain voiced stops (b, d, g). PIE palatalovels change to plain velars in some languages (k, g) and to affricates (c[tʃ]/c[ʣ] in Old Irish). In Hittite the reflex is /t/. The phonemes traditionally reconstructed as voiced aspirated stops change in most IE languages. They are preserved only in Indo-Aryan (bh, dh, gh); in Greek they remain aspirated but become voiceless (p [pʰ], 9/θ [tʰ], ɣ [kʰ]); in Italic they change to fricatives (voiceless initially: *f-, *p-, *x-; voiced medially: *β-, *ð-, *γ-), and in other branches they change to plain voiced stops (b, d, g). PIE palatalovels change to plain velars in some languages (k, g) and to affricates (c[tʃ]/c[ʣ]) and, further on, to fricatives (/s/ʃ) in others. PIE labiovelars remain labialized velars in some languages (kʷ, xʷ, gʷ), or change further to full labials (p, b/w), while in others (mostly those where PIE palatalovels yield affricates/fricatives) they become plain velars (k, g).

**Voiceless stops**

*P*

PIE *pōds* ‘foot’ > Ved. pā́t (YAv. pad-), Gr. ποός (cf. via Lat. Eng. podium), Lat. pēs (⇒ Eng. pedal), OCS пěшь ‘on foot’, Lith. pėšias ‘pedestrian’, Goth. footus (Eng. foot), OIr. is ‘below, under’ < *pěšdu, Hitt. pōds, OPruss. pā́̂sčias, Arm. pēša ‘foot(print)’, Goth. pā́́ts ‘foot’

PIE *pekti* ‘fire’ (p. 78) > Gr. πῦρ, Umbr. pir, Cz. (arch.) пýр ‘ash, fire’, OPruss. panno, Goth. fon (Eng. fire), Hitt. pahhur, Arm. hur, Toch. B pūwar

PIE *pēkw-/*kw- ‘fire’ (YAv. pačata ‘it is cooked’), Gr. πέσσω, Lat. coquō < *kʰekʷ- (assimilation), OCS pešti, Lith. kępti < *pekti (metathesis), MW pobi < *kʷokʷ- (assimilation), Arm. hac ‘bread’, Alb. pjek, Toch. AB pā́k-

PIE *pēkʷ/n- ‘fire’ (p. 78) > Gr. πῦρ, Umbr. pir, Cz. (arch.) пýр ‘ash, fire’, OPruss. panno, Goth. fon (Eng. fire), Hitt. pahhur, Arm. hur, Toch. B pūwar

PIE *p* is reconstructed because it reflects as *p* in most languages. In Germanic, where all stops change their articulation, we find /f/ medially only following the stressed syllable. In Armenian the reflex is originally aspirated *pʰ-*, which yields either h- or nothing word-initially (*h- of any origin is unstable in Armenian) and w word-internally (p. 426–427). In Celtic PIE *p* disappears through a *p* > *f* > *h* type process (p. 363). In Italian and Celtic (before the *p* > *h* change in Celtic), *p*–k* (a *p* and a *k* in the same word) assimilate regularly to *kʷ–kʰ*, cf. PIE *penkʷe ‘five’ > Lat. quīnque, OIr. cóict (*kʷ > c in Old Irish). In Hittite the reflex is p- initially and a geminate spelling -pp- internally (p. 177).

*F*

PIE *tōd* ‘that’ > Ved. tát (GAv. ta-), Gr. τό, OCS to, Lith. tás, Goth. pata (Eng. that, Germ. das), OIr. tó ‘yes’, Alb. kë-ta, Arm. da
PIE *tuh₂us ‘thin’ > Ved. tanús, Gr. τανός, Lat. temuíus, OCS тънъчaje ‘thinner’, Lith. těvas, Ofr. thun (Eng. thin, Germ. dünn), Ofr. tanae

PIE *pet- ‘fly’ > Ved. pátati ‘flies’ (YAv. patoñi ‘they fly’), Gr. πέτωμαι ‘I fly’, Lat. petō ‘I go after’, OEng. feder < Gmc *feþrō (Eng. feather), OIr. én ‘bird’ < *pet-no- (Gaul. Etnusus (name of a deity)), Hitt. pattar-

PIE *t is reconstructed because it reflects as t in most languages. In Germanic it changes to ð (Eng. <th>, Gmc *þ > d) initially and medially following the stressed syllable (p. 20). In Armenian the reflex is an aspirated t (cf. Arm. ɾaršamim ‘I wither’, Lat. torreō ‘I dry’, Eng. thirst < PIE *ters-), but the evidence is scarce, with d- appearing in unaccented words (cf. Arm. du ‘thou’, Lat. tū < PIE *tū, p. 438). In Hittite we find initial t- and medial -tt-.

*ŋ

PIE *lewk- ‘light’ > Ved. rókás (GAv. raocah- with palatalization), Gr. λευκός ‘light, white’ (⇒ Eng. leukocyte), Lat. lūx, Russ. CSl. луčь (with palatalization), Lith. laũkas ‘pale’, Goth. liuhaþ (Eng. light), Mlr. luach ‘glowing white’ (Gaul. Leucus (pers. name)), Hitt. liukk- ‘to light up’, Toch. AB luk-


PIE *k is reconstructed because it reflects as k in most languages (cf. PIE *kěs- > Alb. kohë ‘time’, OCS časъ ‘time, moment’). Parallel to *p and *t, *k yields *x in Germanic (medially only following the stressed syllable) and aspirated k’ in Armenian. In Hittite we find initial k- and medial -kk- (written also as <gg>).

Voiced stops

*b

PIE *h₂ebōl ‘apple’ > OCS ablъko, Lith. arch./dial. óbuolas, OEng. æppel (Eng. apple), Ofr. ābûll, (?) Lat. (from Osc.) Abella (name of a town)


PIE *dʰewb- ‘deep’ > Gr. βυϑός ‘depth’ (< *ϑυβός, metathesis), OCS ḏbrъ ‘valley, ravine’ < *ďbrъ, Lith. dubis, Goth. diups (Eng. deep), Toch. B tapre ‘high’

PIE *b is reconstructed because it reflects as b in most languages. However, in Germanic, Armenian, Tocharian, and Anatolian, the reflex is p. In Germanic and Armenian this change is just a part of a larger chain shift (see below), while in Tocharian all stops merge into voiceless ones. The exact phonetics of Hitt. p-, -p- < PIE *b (as opposed to p-, -pp- < PIE *-p-) is not clear (p. 177).

There are not a lot of words containing PIE *b. It seems to have been a marginal phoneme in PIE (it might have been completely absent in pre-PIE). The roots containing
PIE *b are often attested in only a few languages, and sometimes this *b seems to be of secondary origin. Clear cases of secondary *b are found in forms where it originates from the *ph₁ cluster – cf. the PIE root *peh₁- ‘drink’ (Ved. apāti ‘he drank’, Lat. pōtus ‘drunk’), where after reduplication one gets *pi-ph₁- > *pib- ‘drink’ (Ved. pībatī ‘drinks’, Lat. bibō ‘I drink’ < *pibō, OIr. ibid ‘drinks’). In some cases, it seems likely that a PIE *b originates in older *m. Thus, the root *h₂em₁- ‘apple’ can be related to another PIE word for ‘apple’ – *meh₂lom (Lat. mālum, Gr. μῆλον, Alb. mollë; (?) Hitt. māḥlas ‘branch of a grapevine’). Here, one can assume a metathesis *meh₂l- > *h₂eml- and then the change *-ml- > *-bl- in northern IE dialects, where the word is attested. This kind of change can probably be seen in PIE *bel- ‘strong, better’ (see above) as well – cf. Lat. melior ‘better’ < PIE *mel-. A secondary *b (presumably from older *p) can perhaps be seen in PIE *bol- (Lat. blatea ‘swamp’, OCS blato ‘mud’, Lith. bā́lą́ ‘mud’, OEng. pōl > Eng. pool, Alb. baltë ‘mud’), compared to PIE *pol- (Skr. palvalám ‘pool, pond’, Lat. palus ‘swamp’, Lith. pãlios ‘mud’). In some cases, there is even a variation of *p/b/bh, cf. PIE *de⁹kᵲ́s- ‘right (side)’ > Ved. dákšinas (YAv. daśina-), Gr. δεξιός, Lat. dexter (Eng. dexterity), OCS desnъ, Lith. arch. dẽšinas, Goth. taíhswa, OIr. dess (Gaul. Dēx(s)iua (name of a deity)), Alb. djathtë.

PIE *d

PIE *h₁don(ts) ‘tooth’ (< ‘eating’) > Ved. dā́n (Av. daṇtan-), Gr. δόδους, Lat. dēns (⇒ Eng. dentist), PSl. *děšni ‘gums’ (BCMS dēsni), Lith. dántis, Goth. tunþus (Eng. tooth), OIr. dē, Hitt. adant- ‘eating, eaten’, Arm. atamm

PIE *deks- ‘right (side)’ > Ved. dákšinas (YAv. daśina-), Gr. δεξιός, Lat. dexter (⇒ Eng. dexterity), OCS desnъ, Lith. arch. děšinas, Goth. taíhswa, OIr. dess (Gaul. Dēx(s)iua (name of a deity)), Alb. djathtë


PIE *d is reconstructed because it reflects as d in most languages. The exceptions are again Germanic, Armenian, and Anatolian, with t, and Tocharian, with ts (cf. Toch. tsâm- ‘grow’, Gr. δέμω ‘I build’ < PIE *demh₂-, p. 454).

PIE *g

PIE *gerh₂ní/w- ‘crane’ > Gr. γέρανος, Lat. grās, PSl. *žeravь (OCz. žeráv) (with palatalization), Lith. gérvé, OEng. cran (Eng. crane), MW/MBret. garan (Gaul. tri-garanos ‘with three cranes’), Arm. krunk

PIE *gem- ‘squeeze, (com)press’ > Gr. γέμω ‘I am full/laden’, Lat. gemō ‘I groan’ (< *‘groan under pressure/a load’), CS gosth₂ ‘dense’, Lith. gāmālas ‘lump’, (?) OIr. kum(h)la ‘to bruise, wound’, Mfr. gemel ‘shackle’, Toch. AB kāmā-

PIE *gel/-gl-ut- ‘swallow; throat’ > Skr. galas ‘throat, neck’, Lat. gluttō ‘glutton’ (⇒ Eng. gluttony), ORuss. глътати ‘to swallow’, OEng. ceole ‘throat’, (?) OIr. geilid ‘grazes, eats’, Arm. klanem ‘I swallow’

The phoneme *g was, strangely, rather rare in PIE. It reflects as g in most languages (see p. 28 for palatalizations). The exceptions, with the voiceless reflex k, are, as usual, Germanic, Armenian, Anatolian, and Tocharian.
PIE *b and glottalic theory

The fact that (early) PIE seems not to have had a phoneme *b is typologically unusual, since this kind of gap (a language with p but no b) seems to be practically unattested elsewhere (languages having a b and no p, like Arabic, do exist – Proto-Celtic was such a language as well). Together with the curious constraint in PIE that a root could not have two voiced stops (p. 54), this has led some researchers (Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1995 being the most famous) to believe that PIE voiced stops (**b, *d, *g) should be phonetically reinterpreted as glottalized (ejective) stops (**p, **t, **k) (while the traditional *p, *t, *k and *b, *d, *g would be reinterpreted as *p(h), *t(h), *k(h) and *b(h), *d(h), *g(h) – cf. p. 20–21). Since some languages with ejectives (like Navajo) are missing the bilabial stop p (though this is not the case in the majority of such languages – Quechua and Georgian have it, for instance), and sometimes have a constraint on having two ejectives in one word (though there are plenty of languages that do not), this could explain why (early) PIE had no *b and no **deg-type roots. The problem with this theory is that the reflexes of traditionally reconstructed PIE *b, *d, *g are indeed voiced stops in the majority of IE languages/dialects. In cases where this is not true, the voiceless reflexes are hardly relevant – Germanic and Armenian have gone through complete consonantal shifts, and in Tocharian all stops became voiceless. Assuming an independent nontrivial change of glottalized voiceless to voiced stops in almost all IE branches is highly implausible, while the empirical evidence in favor of reconstructing PIE glottalized stops (cf. Kortlandt 1985) is interesting but hardly compelling. Thus, it seems best to stick with the traditional reconstruction of voiced (**b, *d, *g for the last phase of PIE, though it is possible that pre-PIE indeed had glottalized *t, *k. Cf. also p. 154.

Voiced aspirated stops

The opposition of voiced and voiced aspirated stops is preserved in Indo-Aryan, in Italic (through fricativization of aspirates – p. 326–327), and, via complete consonant shifts, in Germanic and Armenian (p. 392–393, 426). Elsewhere (Anatolian, Celtic, Balto-Slavic, Albanian, Iranian), the aspiration is lost and the two series merge (traces of the old distinction are seen indirectly through Winter’s Law in Balto-Slavic – p. 481).

*bʰ

PIE *bʰreḥ,tēr ‘brother’ > Ved. bhrātā (Av. brātar-), Gr. φρῄτηρ ‘member of a brotherhood’, Lat. frāter (⇒ Eng. fraternity), OCS bratrъ, Lith. broterėlis ‘little brother’, Goth. broþar (Eng. brother), Ofr. brāthir (Gaul. Bratronos (pers. name)), Arm. elbayr, Toch. B procer

PIE *bʰewH- ‘be, become, grow’ > Ved. bhāvati ‘is, becomes’ (GAv. bavaj), Gr. φύονται ‘they grow’, Lat. fūī ‘I were’, OCS byti ‘to be’, Lith. būti ‘to be’, Goth. bauan ‘to dwell, inhabit’ (Eng. be), Ofr. biid ‘is wont to be’, Arm. busanim ‘I grow’

PIE *gompʰos ‘tooth’ > Ved. jāmbhas, Gr. γόμφος, OCS zǫbъ, Lith. žam̃bas ‘corner, edge’, ONor. kambr ‘comb’ (Eng. comb), Alb. dhëmb

In most branches (Germanic, Armenian, Iranian, Celtic, Balto-Slavic, Albanian), the reflex is a plain voiced b (with a merger with the reflex of PIE *b, except in Germanic and Armenian, where PIE *b > p). Anatolian *p-, *p- has the same reflex as PIE *b (cf. PIE *p- > -pp-). Indic has voice together with aspiration (bh), while the reflex in Greek is a
voiceless aspirate φ [pʰ]. The aspiration is indirectly seen in Italic, where the reflexes are fricative, cf. Latin initial voiceless f- and medial voiced -b- (Proto-Italic fricative *-β-, p. 326–327). In Tocharian PIE *p, *b, and *bʰ merge into p. All this points to a PIE voiced aspirate (or breathy-voiced; p. 20–21) *bʰ, with most languages preserving voice and some aspiration.

*dʰ

PIE *h₁widʰew- ‘widow’ (perhaps originally: ‘unmarried’) > Ved. vidhávā (YAv. vidāvā), Gr. ἤδεος ‘bachelor’, Lat. uidua, OCS vědova, OPruss. widewu, Goth. widuwo (Eng. widow), OIr. fedb, Hitt. w(i)dati-

PIE *h₁rudʰros/h₁rowdʰos ‘red’ > Ved. rudhirās, Gr. ἐρυθρός (⇒ Eng. erythrocyte), Lat. ruber, OCS růdhr-, Lith. raudas ‘reddish’, OEng. rēad (Eng. red), OIr. ruad (Gaul. Roudius (pers. name)), Toch. B ratre

PIE *dʰuh₂mos ‘smoke’ > Ved. dhūmás, Gr. θυμός ‘soul, spirit’, Lat. fūmus (⇒ Eng. fume), OCS dymъ, Lith. dū́mas, OHG dōm, Mfr. domača ‘fog’, Hitt. tūḥwi-, Toch. B twēye ‘dust, ashes’

Again, Indic has a voiced aspirated dh and Greek a voiceless aspirated θ (written also 0) [tʰ]. In Balto-Slavic, Celtic, and Albanian, PIE *dʰ > d, which merges with PIE *d. The merger is also seen in Hittite initial t- and medial (non-geminate) -t- (written also as <d>). Germanic and Armenian (cf. p. 427) have voiced d with a consonantal shift, and in Tocharian PIE *dʰ and *t merge into t. Proto-Italic has initial *þ- and medial *-ð-, reflected in Latin as f- and -d- (in most conditions) or -b- (before/after r, after u, and before l).

*gʰ


PIE *h₁meygʰ-,*h₁migʰleh, ‘fog, cloud’ > Ved. meghās ‘cloud, rain’ (YAv. maēγa-), Gr. ώμεγη ‘mist, fog’, OCS mīglā ‘fog’, Lith. miglā ‘fog’, Dutch miggelen ‘to drizzle’, Arm. mēg ‘fog’, Alb. mjegull ‘fog, mist’

PIE *gʰleh₂dʰ- ‘smooth’ > Lat. glaber, OCS glads-kʰ, Lith. glodieis, OHG glat ‘clear’ (Eng. glad)

PIE *gʰ yields gh in Indic and χ [kʰ] in Greek. In Iranian, Balto-Slavic, Celtic, and Albanian PIE *gʰ (together with PIE *g) yields g, the same as in Germanic and Armenian but in the latter two as a part of a general sound shift. In Hittite one finds k-, -k- (written also as <g>), and in Tocharian all velars merge into k. In Latin we find h in most cases (the exceptions being gr-/gl-, fu-, and -ng-).

Grassmann’s Law

In Indo-Aryan and Greek, there is an independent dissimilation rule that causes the deaspiration of the first aspirate in a word: Cʰ–Cʰ > C–Cʰ. Cf. PIE *bʰewdʰ- > Ved. bódhati ‘is aware’ (not **bhódhati), Gr. πεύϑομαι ‘I give notice’ (not **φεύϑομαι). The fact that Greek exhibits voiceless deaspirated stops proves that the deaspiration occurred after the
Greek devoicing of PIE aspirated stops (which have a voiced reflex in Indic). This means that the deaspiration in Greek is younger and independent of Indic.

Consonantal shifts in Germanic and Armenian

In Germanic and Armenian, all stops experience a very similar chain shift, in which all PIE stops weaken. Voiced aspirates lose aspiration, voiced stops lose voicedness, and voiceless stops change to fricatives (in Germanic) or to voiceless aspirates (in Armenian):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Germanic</th>
<th>Armenian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*bʰ, *dʰ, *gʰ</td>
<td>b, d, g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*b, *d, *g</td>
<td>p, t, k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*p, *t, *k</td>
<td>f, ř, h</td>
<td>*p̄, t̄̆, k̄̆</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Palatovelars and labiovelars change as well (see below). This seems to be an independent change in these two branches. In Germanic it is traditionally called Grimm’s Law (p. 392–393, cf. p. 426 for Armenian). In Germanic PIE voiceless stops have a voiceless reflex if preceded by a fricative (s, f, h, ř), cf. PIE *nokʷts ‘night’ (Lat. nox) > Goth. nahts (not **nahþs) or PIE *pisk- (Lat. piscis) > OEng. fisc (Eng. fish).

In Germanic, Grimm’s Law operates always in initial position. However, in the middle of the word it does so only if the syllable preceding PIE *p/t/k was stressed in pre-Proto-Germanic (pre-PGmc had a free stress, like Vedic or Greek, which it subsequently lost – p. 396). If not (i.e., if the stress was on the syllable following *p/t/k or elsewhere), Verner’s Law (p. 393) operated, by which PGmc *f, *h, *x changed to voiced fricatives *β, *ð, *ɣ (similar to Spanish <b, d, g> in most positions). In Gothic these yield b, d, g.

PGmc *bʰrōþēr ‘brother’ (Ved. bhrā́tā, Gr. φρᾱ́τηρ) > Goth. broþar
PGmc *fāþēr ‘father’ (Ved. pitā́, Gr. πατήρ) > Goth. fadar

Grimm’s and Verner’s Laws operate on PIE palato- and labiovelars as well (p. 21–25). In Old High German (and Modern Standard German), there is another chain shift, called the OHG sound shift, where Germanic stops and fricatives change once again (p. 393–394).

The problem of the PIE voiced aspirates

PIE voiced aspirates are reconstructed as such because this is what the reflexes point to – to aspiration or traces of it in some languages, and to voicedness in most of them. Indic is thought of as the most archaic since it preserves both voice and aspiration, though what are usually called “voiced aspirates” seem actually to be murmured/breathy-voiced stops (acoustically similar to aspirates) in many modern Indo-Aryan languages. Greek also has aspirates (though voiceless), and fricative reflexes in Italic (p. 326–327) point to original aspirates as well. In other branches, aspiration is lost, but the reflexes are always voiced (except in Tocharian, which is irrelevant). In Anatolian, where the exact pronunciation of stops is not clear (p. 177), one can still see that the reflexes of voiced and voiced aspirate stops are the same (non-geminate), while different from voiceless stops (geminate medially). Even in Germanic and Armenian, with a complete chain shift of stops, the internal logic of the shift (with each series “weakening” by one step – losing aspiration, voicedness, and plosiveness respectively) points to voiced aspirates. The typological parallel for
the development of PIE voiced aspirates can be found in Indo-Aryan, where Old Indic voiced aspirates yield voiced aspirates (breathy-voiced), voiceless aspirates, or voiced stops in various modern Indo-Aryan languages.

Thus, the reconstruction of PIE *bʰ, *dʰ, *gʰ based on its reflexes is quite solid. However, the problem is again of typological nature – the PIE system of *T, *D, *Dʰ, i.e., the system with voiceless, voiced, and voiced aspirated stops (and no voiceless aspirates), is very unusual. It is a near universal in world languages that a language has to have voiceless aspirates if it has voiced aspirates (like in Indo-Aryan languages), or that, if it has just one set of aspirates, those are voiceless (like in Ancient Greek) – there is no reason for the double markedness of voiced aspirates (voice and aspiration) if voiceless aspirates are lacking in a language. However, as we have seen, the reflexes in IE languages do indeed point to voiced aspirates. Though the problem can hardly be considered solved, it may just be that PIE, with its *T/D/Dʰ system, was an (unstable) typological exception. And it is not the only one: there is at least one similar system in the world (with voiced aspirates but no voiceless aspirates) – in a dialect of the Austronesian Kelabit language. Cf. also p. 18 and p. 153–154.

There is no real compelling evidence for the reconstruction of PIE voiceless aspirated stops, although they used to be reconstructed and sometimes still are by certain authors/schools. Indic voiceless aspirates originated in the combination of PIE *p/t/k and laryngeals (but not *ph – p. 17), cf. PIE gen. sg. *pṇHos ‘path’ > Ved. gen. sg. pathās, Gr. πάτος (p. 77), *h₁esth₁ (p. 30), etc. For the laryngeal-aspiration of voiced plosives in Indo-Aryan cf. p. 30.

Palatalized velars

Concerning the reflexes of PIE *k, *g, *gʰ, which were palatalized velars (IPA [kj], [gj], [gjʰ]) rather than palatal stops (IPA [c], [ɟ], [ɟʰ]), the IE languages can be divided into two groups – centum languages (after Lat. centum ‘hundred’ < PIE *(d)kʰtom) and satem languages (after Av. satom ‘hundred’). In the centum group, PIE palatalized velars depalatalize, i.e., reflect in the same way as the original PIE *k, *g, *gʰ. Most of the centum languages/branches are positioned to the west – Greek, Italic, Celtic, Germanic, and some fragmentarily attested languages (like Lusitanian and Venetic). The only exception is Tocharian, positioned to the east. In the satem group, PIE palatovelars usually reflect as either affricates (like tʃ, tʃʰ, dʒ, dʒʰ . . .) or fricatives (like s, ʃ, z, ʒ, ʃ, ʒ, . . .), the fricatives usually being the further reflexes of older affricates (through processes like tʃ > ʃ, dʒ > ʒ, etc.). Meanwhile, Balto-Slavic and Indo-Iranian (and fragmentarily attested Thracian, for instance) as satem languages are positioned more to the east. This is also true of Albanian, Armenian, and a part of Anatolian (Luwian and Lycian), which can be considered satem because of their reflexes of palatalized velars (but see p. 176). Considering that we find velars as reflexes in one group of languages and mostly affricates/fricatives (not depending on specific vowels, etc.) in other languages, the reconstruction of palatalized velars for the proto-language seems to be the most reasonable solution. For more on centum/satem, cf. p. 27–28.

*K

PIE *kēr(d), *krd- ‘heart’ > Ved. śrød-dhā ‘faith’, Gr. κῆρ, καρδία/κραδία (⇒ Eng. cardiology), Lat. cor (⇒ Eng. cordial), OCS сръдьце, Lith. širdis (Latv. sirds, OPruсс. seyr), Goth. haitro (Eng. heart), OIr. cride, Hitt. ker, kard(i)- (Pal. kārt-, CLuw. zärt-, HLuw. zart(i)-), Arm. sirt, Toch. B kāryān ‘hearts’
PIE *h₁ekwos ‘horse’ > Ved. áśvas (YAv. aspa-), Gr. ἵππος (⇒ Eng. hippo-drome, hippo(-potamus), Myc. i-go), Lat. equus (⇒ Eng. equestrian), OLith. ešva ‘mare’, Goth. aíhwa-tundi- ‘thornbush, bramble’ (lit. ‘horse-tooth’, OEng. eoh ‘war-horse’), OIr. eóch (< Ogham Irish EQO-DDI, Clb. Ekua-laku (pers. name), Gaul. Equos ‘the ninth month’, Epos (pers. name)), HLuw. azu-(Lyc. esb-) (cf. OIr. ech (< Ogham Irish EQO-DDI, C1b. Ekua-laku (pers. name)), Arm. ēš ‘donkey’, Toch. B enk- ‘take, grip’

In centum languages, the reflexes are the same as for PIE *k (p. 16). In satem languages, we find affricates and fricatives – OInd. ś, Av. s, OPers. θ (cf. OPers. viθ- ‘house(hold)’ to Ved. viš- ‘settlement’, Lat. uicans ‘village’ < PIE *wik- (p. 206), Slav./Latv./OPruss. s, Lith. š (< PBSl. *ś), Alb. dh (cf. Alb. them ‘I say’, Ved. śaṃsati ‘praises’), Lat. cēnseō ‘I suggest, propose’ < PIE *ken/ms-), and Arm. c [ts] (with regular devoicing as with non-palatalized stops, p. 426).

*ǵ

PIE *ǵe/onu ‘knee’ (p. 74) > Ved. jānu (YAv. zānu-), Gr. γόνον, Lat. genû, Goth. kniú (Eng. knee), Hitt. gēnu, Arm. cınır, Toch. A kanwem ‘knees’ (du.)

PIE *ǵeuros ‘field’ > Ved. ájras, Gr. ἀγρός (⇒ Eng. agro-nomy), Lat. ager (⇒ Eng. agri-culture), Goth. aks (Eng. acre)

PIE *ǵerh₃-, -ripen, mature, old’, *ǵhr_nom ‘grain, corn’ > Ved. járati ‘grows old’, jīrṇas ‘old’ (YAv. zar’ta- ‘decrepit’), Gr. ἄρων ‘old man’ (⇒ Eng. ger-iatrics), Lat. grānum ‘grain’ (⇒ Eng. grain), OCS zьrělъ ‘ripe’, z̆rьno ‘grain’, Litsh. žirnis ‘grain’ (Latv. zir̆nis, OPruss. syrne), Goth. kaûrn (Eng. corn), OIr. grán ‘grain’, Arm. cer ‘old’

In centum languages, the reflexes are the same as for PIE *g (p. 17). In satem languages, we find mostly affricates and fricatives – OInd. j [dz], Av. z, OPers. d with depalatalization (cf. OPers. dauštar- ‘friend’, YAv. zaoša- ‘pleasure’, Ved. jóṣ- ‘like’, Lat. gustō ‘I taste’ < PIE *ǵews- ‘taste, like, choose’) – p. 206, Slav./Latv./OPruss. z (written as <s> in OPruss.), Lith. ž (cf. Alb. dhēm ‘tooth’ < PIE *gomb’os, 567), Arm. c [ts] (with regular devoicing as with non-palatalized stops, p. 426).

*ǵʰ

PIE *ǵeym- ‘winter’ > Ved. héman ‘in winter’ (cf. himás ‘cold, snow’ > Himā-laya; Av. zim-, Pers. dāt), Gr. χειμών, Lat. hiems, OCS zima, Lith. žiemà (Latv. ziema, OPruss. semo), ONor. gól ‘month from the middle of February to the middle of March’, OIr. gám (Gaul. Giamos (pers. name)), Hitt. gimm(ant)-, Alb. dh (cf. Alb. dhēm ‘tooth’ < PIE *gomb’os, 567), Arm. jīvn ‘snow’, Toch. A šärme

PIE *ǵew- ‘call’ > Ved. hávate ‘invokes’ (YAv. zavatī ‘calls’), Gr. καῦχαμαι ‘I speak loudly, boast’, OCS zvāvati, Lith. zavēti ‘charm, fascinate’, (?) Goth. gup ‘god’ (lit. *‘the one who is called’, Eng. god), OIr. guth ‘voice’ (Gaul. gutu-ater ‘a
kind of druid’ < *‘father of invocations’), Arm. jaunem ‘I devote’, Toch. B kwā- ‘call out to, invite’


In centum languages, the reflexes are the same as for PIE *gʰ (p. 19). In satem languages, we find mostly affricates and fricatives – OInd. h (from older *jh), Av. z, OPers. d, Slav./Latv. z (OPruss. <s>), Lith. ž, Alb. initially d- (cf. Alb. dorê, Gr. ἃγχω, Arm. jērn < PIE *gʰesr- ‘hand’) or dh-, medially mostly -dh- (p. 567–568). In Armenian we find j [ʣ], a voiced pair of c < PIE *gʰ in languages where the reflex of PIE *g is the same as the reflex of *gʰ, PIE *gʰ has the same reflex as *g, the only exception being Albanian.

TABLE 1.2 THE REFLECTION OF PIE PALATOVELARS IN SATEM LANGUAGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*kʰ</td>
<td>z [ʦ]/k</td>
<td>s/k</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>θ</td>
<td>ź</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>th [θ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʰ</td>
<td>k/j/ọ</td>
<td>j [ʣ]</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ž</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>[θ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʰw</td>
<td>k/j/ọ</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ž</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>[ʣ]</td>
<td>d/dh-, -dh-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Labiovelars

The centum/satem distinction is relevant concerning the PIE labialized velars (*kʷ, *gʷ, *gʰw) as well. In the centum group (where *Ḵ = *K), they usually yield different reflexes than the regular velars (*k, *g, *gʰ). The labiovelars either are preserved (as kʷ, gʷ, xʷ, etc.) or are (subsequently) changed to full labials (p, b, w) or plain velars (k, g). Tocharian seems to be the only centum language that shows no distinction between old plain and labialized velars (p. 454). In the satem group (where *Ḵ ≠ *K), the labiovelars usually reflect as plain velars (*K = *Kʷ) – this is the case in Balto-Slavic and Indo-Iranian (although there are perhaps some indirect traces of labiovelars in Indo-Iranian). But in Albanian (p. 567) the reflexes of plain and labialized velars are distinct before front vowels (*K ≠ *Kʷ), and the same is true for *k ≠ *kʷ before front vowels in Armenian (p. 427). In Luwo-Lycian, which preserves a special reflex of *k in certain conditions (p. 176), the PIE labiovelars have separate reflexes as usual in Anatolian. Traditionally, the centum group is represented by the formula *k = *kʷ ≠ *kʰ and the satem group by *k = *kʷ ≠ *kʰ, but Armenian, Albanian, and Luwo-Lycian (and Tocharian with k from all PIE velars) cannot be neatly subsumed into these formulas (see p. 27).

*kw

PIE *kwʷetwores ‘four’ > Ved. catvāras (YAv. čalbhārō) (with palatalization), Gr. τέτταρες, Lat. quattuor, OCS četryre (with palatalization), Lith. keturi, Goth. fidwor (Eng. four), OIr. ceth(a)ir (Gaul. petuar-, OW petguar), (?) Alb. katër (if not from Lat.), Arm. čorkʰ (with palatalization), Toch. B ēnte (with palatalization)
**PIE *penk*e** ‘five’ > Ved. púñca (YAv. púñca) (with palatalization), Gr. πέντε (⇒ Eng. penta-gram), Lat. quíngue, OCS пěть < *penktis, Lith. penki, Goth. fimf (Eng. five), OIr. cóic (Gaul. pempe-, OW pimpl), Alb. pesë (with palatalization)

**PIE *k*el- ‘turn’, *(k)ek*los ‘wheel’ (with root reduplication) > Ved. cakrá- ‘wheel’ (⇒ Eng. chakra, YAv. āxra- ‘wheel’) (with palatalization), Gr. κύκλος ‘ring, circle’ (⇒ Eng. cycle), πόλος (< *kwehlos) ‘end, outcome’ (⇒ Eng. teleology), Lat. colus ‘distaff’, OCS kolo ‘wheel, circle’, Lith. kąklas ‘neck’, OEng. hwēol (with Grimm’s Law, PGmc *x*em*l-*l-, cf. Eng. wheel), hweoğul (with Verner’s Law), MIr. cul ‘chariot’, Toch. B kokele ‘cart, wagon’, Alb. sjell ‘bring’ (with palatalization)

In *centum* languages, PIE *k* remains unchanged in part of Italic (Lat. <qu) but Sabel- lion p), Anatolian (Hitt./Luw. <ku>), Mycenaean Greek (<q>), and some Celtic languages (Ogham Irish <Q>, Clb. <ku>). Proto-Greek *k* changes to π, τ, or κ in Attic, depending on what comes next (πα, πο, πC, τι, τε, κυ − p. 292). In Q-Celtic languages, Proto-Celtic *k* remains unchanged or loses the labialization later (OIr. c), while in P-Celtic it changes to p (p. 357–358, 363). In Germanic the reflex is *x* (Goth. <h), OEng. <hw>, Eng. <wh> − still pronounced [h] in some dialects) by Grimm’s, or *y* by Verner’s Law (p. 20, 392). In certain cases, one finds *f* instead of *x* in Germanic (like in ‘four’ and ‘five’ above, or ‘wolf’ − p. 35), which can be explained in different ways. Tocharian has k for all velars. In *satem* languages, PIE *k* seems to have been distinct from PIE *kw (*k + *w, likewise *g(w)* ≠ *g(h)w), though the latter was rare. In Greek, PIE *kw/kw > κκ (though this is disputed), cf. Gr. λάκκος ‘pond’, OCS lóky ‘puddle’, Lat. lacus ‘lake’ < PIE *lakwU- (or *lok-)/k-). The reflex of PIE *kw in Latin is not clear (perhaps it is c in initial position before a), cf. Lat. equus (p. 22) and queror ‘I lament’ (Ved. śvásiti ‘blows’ < PIE *kwesimal-), but cásaus ‘cheese’ (OCS kvasb, ‘leaven’ < PIE *kweh3/6(0)s-) and canis ‘dog’ (OInd. śvā < PIE *kwon-). PIE *kw/kw yields P Celtic *k* (cf. P Celtic. *ek*os ‘horse’), but not in Germanic and Tocharian (cf. Goth. aiwha-, Toch. B yakwe, p. 22).

The reflex of PIE *kw/kw in *centum* languages

PIE *k* seems to have been distinct from PIE *kw (*k + *w, likewise *g(w)* ≠ *g(h)w), though the latter was rare. In Greek, PIE *kw/kw > κκ (though this is disputed), cf. Gr. λάκκος ‘pond’, OCS lóky ‘puddle’, Lat. lacus ‘lake’ < PIE *lakwU- (or *lok-)/k-). The reflex of PIE *kw in Latin is not clear (perhaps it is c in initial position before a), cf. Lat. equus (p. 22) and queror ‘I lament’ (Ved. śvásiti ‘blows’ < PIE *kwesimal-), but cásaus ‘cheese’ (OCS kvasb, ‘leaven’ < PIE *kweh3/6(0)s-) and canis ‘dog’ (OInd. śvā < PIE *kwon-). PIE *kw/kw yields P Celtic *k* (cf. P Celtic. *ek*os ‘horse’), but not in Germanic and Tocharian (cf. Goth. aiwha-, Toch. B yakwe, p. 22).

**g**

**PIE *g*ōws ‘cow’ > Ved. gáus (Av. gáuṣ), Gr. βόος, Lat. bōs (a Sabellian loanword, should be **uōs in Lat.), OCS govežd̂ ’bovine’, Latv. gūvus, OEng. cū (Eng. cow), OIr. bó (Gaul. Bo-marus (pers. name)), HLuw. wawa/- (Lyc. wawa-), Arm. kov, Toch. B ke

**PIE *g*en(e)h2 ‘woman’ > Ved. jání (with palatalization), gnās ‘divine woman’ (GAv. jānī-, gnān-), Gr. γυνή (⇒ Eng. gyne-cology, dial. Boeotian βανᾱ, OCS žena, OPRuss. genno, Goth. gino (cf. Eng. queen with semantic change), OIr. bében (Gaul. gen. pl. bnanom), CLuw. wānā-, Arm. kin, Toch. B šana (with palatalization), Messapic benna
PIE *gʷe/orH-/*gʷrH- ‘mountain’ > Ved. girīs (YAv. ga’rī-), Gr. δεράς ‘ridge of a chain of hills’, βορές ‘north wind’, OCS gora (Slav. also ‘forest’), Lith. girià ‘forest’, Alb. gur ‘stone’

In centum languages, PIE *gʷ as such is not preserved anywhere (except partially in Latin after -n-). In Latin the usual reflex is u [w] (the exceptions being gr-/gl- and -ngu-, while in Sabellian one finds b – p. 327). Hittite has <ku>, and Luwian has w. Proto-Greek *gʷ changes to β, δ, γ in Attic (βα, βο, βÇ, βυ, δε, γυ – p. 292), but not in complete parallelism to voiceless counterparts (thus βτ < *gʷi, but τι < *kʷi). PIE *gʷ yields PÇelt. *b (while PIE *kʷ is preserved and PIE *gʷ > PÇelt. *gʷ, p. 363), and, according to Grimm’s Law, PGmc *kʷ (Goth. <q>, OEng. <cw>/Eng. <qu>, OHG <qu>, ONor. <kv>). In satem languages (including Armenian but not Albanian before front vowels), PIE *gʷ is reflected the same as PIE *g.

*gʷh

PIE *sneygʷh- ‘snow’ > Ved. snih- ‘wet(ness)’ (‘snow’ in Prakrits, YAv. snaēza- ‘snow’, with palatalization), Gr. acc. sg. νίφα, Lat. nix (< *nig-s), gen. sg. niuis, ninguit ‘it snows’ (with -n- infix, p. 95), OCS sněgъ, Lith. sniẽgas, Goth. snaiws (Eng. snow), OIr. snig


In centum languages, the labialization of PIE *gʷh is usually not preserved (except in Latin and Gothic after -n-). In Proto-Italic one expects *hʷ-, *-γʷ-. In Latin this yields initial f- and medial -u- (but -ngu- and -br-). Proto-Greek *kʷh (with Greek devoicing of aspirates) changes to φ, Ɣ, χ in Attic (φα, φο, φÇ, φι, ϑε, χυ – p. 292), in parallelism to voiced counterparts. PIE *gʷh yields PÇelt. *gʷ (> OIr. g, p. 363). In Germanic, PIE *gʷh yields w or g (before u, o, and consonants), although not everything is clear. After n, the expected *gʷ is seen (cf. Goth. saggws [sangw’s] ‘song’, Gr. ϑερμός ‘hot’, Lat. febris ‘fever’ (⇒ Eng. fever), foueō ‘I (keep) warm’, OCS žegg ‘I burn’ (< *geg- < *deg- with assimilation), Lith. dęgti ‘to burn’, Goth. dags (Eng. day), OIr. daig ‘flame’, Alb. djeg, Toch. AB tsâk- ‘burn up’

Loss of labiality

In some centum languages that preserve PIE labiovelars in one way or another, there is a tendency toward loss of labiality in some positions – i.e., in front of rounded vowels (u
and sometimes o – a case of phonetic dissimilation). This explains Gr. κυ, γυ, χυ (with plain velars before *u) and examples like Lat. *cultūra ‘cultivation’, *incola ‘inhabitant’, but *inquilīnus ‘tenant’. In Latin the labiality is lost before consonants as well, cf. Lat. *reliquiae ‘remains’ but relictus ‘left behind’.

The problem of three velar series in PIE

According to the most usual and traditional reconstruction, dating from the 19th century and Karl Brugmann, PIE had three velar series (regular, palatalized, and labialized):

\[ *k, *g, *g^h \]
\[ *k^w, *g^w, *g^{wh} \]

This kind of system is complex and not typologically too frequent, but it is nonetheless attested – e.g., in the modern Iranian language Yazgulyam' (where it is an innovation of no historical relation to the PIE three series). There is a long tradition of denying the existence (or originality) of the three velar series in PIE, starting with Antoine Meillet and, surprisingly, still alive today. In this approach, the palatovelars are usually considered somehow secondary.

The main argument against the PIE distinction of \( *K : *Ḱ : *K^w \) is that the majority of the languages distinguish only the reflexes \( *K \) or \( *Ḱ \) or \( *K^w \). However, as already said, the traditional formulas (\( *K = *Ḱ \neq *K^w \) for centum and \( *K = *K^w \neq *Ḱ \) for satem languages) are not valid for all languages. Albanian (p. 567) and Armenian (p. 426–427) distinguish all three series before front vowels (Armenian only in voiceless stops), while Luwian and Lycian distinguish the reflexes of PIE \( *k : *k^w \) (in voiceless stops) in certain conditions (p. 176), cf. CLuw. kiš- ‘to comb’ < PIE *kes- (p. 16), CLuw. zārt- ‘heart’ < PIE *k̪r̥d- (p. 21), CLuw. kui- ‘who, what’ < PIE *k̪i- (Lat. quis, p. 88).4 The adversaries of the PIE three series usually offer no plausible alternate solutions for these, but simply hold, if only implicitly, that Anatolian evidence is scarce and inconclusive, or that Armenian and Albanian are too innovative and attested too late to be convincing.

A convincing argument for the three original series is found in the fact that PIE \( *K : *Ḱ : *K^w \) cannot be predicted from phonemes in their surroundings (though some tendencies do exist). Thus, we find palatovelars in contact with front vowels (direct or indirect, before or after them): *k̪erd- (p. 21), *g̪'eym- (p. 22), *h₁ekwos (p. 22), *g̪neh₁- ‘know’ (Ved. jānā́ti ‘knows’, OCS znati ‘to know’, Goth. kann ‘to get to know’, etc.), etc. However, we also find palatovelars when not in contact with front vowels: *kwō(n) (p. 41), *klōwnis (p. 51), *kolh₂m-/k̪l̥h₂m- ‘straw’ (Gr. κάλαμος ‘reed, stalk’, Lat. culmus, PSI. *solma > BCMS slȁma, OEng. healm > Eng. haulm), etc. In cases like *g̪omb̪os (p. 18), one could argue the connection with the verbal stem *g̪emb̪-, etc. Likewise, regular velars are found even when front vowels follow – *kes- (p. 16), *kelh₁- ‘rise’ (Lat. ex-cellō ‘I rise’, Lith. kélti ‘to lift, raise’, etc.), *gerh₂n/w- (p. 17), etc., though, of course, one can always assume analogies in some cases (to variants *kos-, *kolh₁-). There are also pairs like *leyg̪h̪- (p. 32), *steyg̪h̪- (p. 19), *sneyg̪wh- ‘to snow’ (p. 25), and even “minimal pairs” like *b̪ergh̪- ‘take care of’ (OCS ne-brēg̪o ‘I neglect’, Goth. bairgan ‘to preserve, keep’) and *b̪ergh̪- ‘tall, high’ (Ved. br̪hānt-, OHG berg ‘hill’, Arm. barjr ‘high’).5 All this proves that palatovelars were phonemic in the last phase of PIE, and that they did
not depend synchronically on the supposed phonetic environment prone to palatalization. Certain possible PIE variants like *lew-k-/lew-k- ‘shine’ (cf. Ved. rokás ‘light’ but riśant- ‘shining’) are probably just remnants of some pre-PIE leveling, perhaps similar to PIE variants with *p/b/bʰ (p. 17).

One usual argument against three series of velars in PIE is the unexpected frequency of these three series. One would expect that the unmarked plain velars would be the most frequent, while in reality they are the least frequent. However, this in no way proves that palatovelars are “secondary” or something of the sort. It just means that the system was unstable, which is clear from the fact that it was not preserved in any of the IE languages. The low frequency of plain velars is surely to be accounted for by certain conditions in the PIE prehistory. A frequent proposition is that PIE plain velars historically derive from uvular velars (thus pre-PIE *q > PIE *k, while, for instance, pre-PIE *k > PIE *kʰ). Another possible hypothesis is that the PIE velar system is to be derived from an older system with plain velars only and a number of vowels, similar to Proto-Uralic, which is often mentioned as the most likely relative of IE (p. 7). It is imaginable that a system like that, after a massive merger of vowels (p. 42–43), would result in what we have in PIE. If, let us suppose, PIE *kʷ(e) is to be derived from pre-PIE *ku, *kō, PIE *k(e) from pre-PIE *ki, *kē (and possibly from *kū and *kā as well), and PIE *k(e) from pre-PIE *ka only, it is logical to expect that PIE *k would be the least frequent.

As for the so-called centum reflexes in satem languages, which are sometimes adduced as proof of the secondary/loose nature of the three series, these seem to be mostly of secondary, post-PIE nature – due either to later depalatalizations in certain satem languages (like the regular depalatalization before *m/l/r and back vowel in Balto-Slavic, cf. Lith. akmuō (p. 41) but dāšmenys ‘edge, blade’), or loanwords from centum languages (like OCS brěgъ ‘bank, shore’, Slav. also ‘hill’ < PSl. *bergъ probably from Germanic – see above for PIE *bʰerǵʰ-). Some of the centum reflexes may also be explained by rare PIE palatalized/non-palatalized variants like *lew-k/-lew-k (see above).

**Centum and satem languages**

As already mentioned (p. 21, 23), the centum/satem distinction in IE is based on different treatment of PIE *Ḱ and *Kʷ in IE branches/languages. This used to be considered a major dialectal isogloss in PIE that divided PIE into western (centum) and eastern (satem) dialects. However, this view is nowadays untenable. The west/east divide was broken already by Tocharian (which is the easternmost IE language), but more important is the fact that the traditional formulas (*K = *Ḱ ≠ *Kʷ for centum and *K = *Kʷ ≠ *Ḱ for satem languages) do not work for Armenian, Albanian, and Anatolian. Although other interpretations are possible (since this is essentially a question of terminology, not essence), the centum/satem distinction could be explained as follows – in satem languages, PIE *Ḱ yields affricates/fricatives, while the labiality of PIE *Kʷ is usually (though not always and everywhere) lost. The centum group would then consist of those languages where PIE *K > K (while *Kʷ is usually, though not always and forever, preserved). Thus, Albanian, Armenian, and Luwian would be satem and Tocharian would be centum. The fact that in Anatolian one finds both satem (Luwian, Lycian) and centum languages (Hittite, Palaic), and the fact that often very close PIE dialects (like Indo-Iranian and Greek) are divided by this isogloss would point to the conclusion that this is not a crucial dividing point in PIE, as was once thought, but is a rather trivial phonetic innovation/variable.
Later palatalizations

In many IE branches, sub-branches, and languages, later palatalizations of the PIE velars (and, less often, other phonemes like dentals) occur before front vowels – e.g., in Indo-Iranian (p. 226, 270), Slavic (p. 528–529), Latvian (p. 496), Germanic, Anatolian (e.g., Hitt. *ti > zi, *di > ši), Armenian (p. 427), Albanian (p. 569), Tocharian (p. 459–460), and most Romance languages (but not in Classical Latin). The change of *Cj > C’, which can also be interpreted as a kind of palatalization, can also be seen in, e.g., Lithuanian (p. 496), Slavic (p. 529–530), and Greek (p. 293).

TABLE 1.3 BASIC REFLEXES OF PIE STOPS (palatalizations and other special changes, like Verner’s Law, are not included)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>β</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ð</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>γ</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bh</td>
<td>bh</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>-w</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dh</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>f*</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gh</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>χ</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>κ</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>š</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*g</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>γ</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gh</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>χ</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>ź</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>d/dh</td>
<td>-dh-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>k</em></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>π, τ, κ</td>
<td>qu</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>ku,-kku-ku,-kku-</td>
<td>k*</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>g</em></td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>β, δ, γ</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>ku,-ku,-ku,-ku,</td>
<td><em>g</em></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>g</em>*</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>φ, δ, χ, f, -u-</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>ku,-ku,-ku,-ku,</td>
<td><em>g</em>*</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*MAP 1.1 THE CENTUM-SATEM BRANCHES OF IE*
PIE FRICTIONES

PIE fricatives were *s and the so-called laryngeals (*h₁, *h₂, *h₃), or at least *h₂ and *h₃, which were almost certainly some kind of h-sounds. In PIE, *z was a voiced allophone of *s, like in *nisdos [nizdos] ‘nest’ (OCS gnězdo, OEng. nest). For PIE allophones *p, *δ, *δ̣ see p. 53.

In IE languages, PIE *s either remains unchanged or changes (in various conditions) to š, h (glottal fricative), x (velar fricative), z, or (z > ź > r). The change to h, typologically common (cf. many varieties of modern Spanish or many Polynesian languages), occurs independently in Iranian, Greek (initially and originally intervocally), and Armenian (similar to Greek), and in some sandhi-conditions in Old Indic and Insular Celtic (cf. also Slavic, where PIE *s > *š > *x in certain conditions – p. 526–527). The change to r (rhotacism), also typologically common (cf. the sporadic intervocalic ź > r in Western South Slavic, e.g., Sln. mōre ‘can’ to OCS možets), occurs independently in Latin, North-West Germanic, Eretrian Ionic Greek dialect, and in certain sandhi-positions in Old Indic.

*s

PIE *septm ‘seven’ > Ved. saptā (YAv. hapta), Gr. ἑπτά, Lat. septem (⇒ Eng. September), OCS sedmu, Lith. septyni, Goth. sibun (Eng. seven), OIr. sehtr (Gaul. sextan-), Hitt. šipta-miya- ‘seven-drink’, Arm. ewfrn, Alb. shtatë, Toch. A spăt


PIE *muHs ‘mouse’ > Ved. mās-, Gr. μῦς – gen. sg. μῦός, Lat. mūs – gen. sg. mūris, OCS mūš, OEng. mūs (Eng. mouse)

Except in special cases, PIE *s does not change in Anatolian (written as <š> in Hittite), Continental Celtic (but cf. 365–366), and Tocharian. In Balto-Slavic and Indo-Iranian, the so-called RUKI rule (p. 206, 495, 526–527) operates, according to which PIE *s after *r, *u, *k, *i (and *r̥, *w, *k̥w, *y – in Hr. after *k as well) turns to *š, which then yields OInd. s (written also as <š>), Av. š (p. 269), Lith. š, Latv./OPruss. s, Slav. x (cf. also PIE *rs > rš in Arm. – p. 428). In Slavic, x (cf. CS juxa, Ved. yūs–, Lat. iūs – all ‘broth’, p. 33) can later be again palatalized to š (or s) (p. 528–529), while Lithuanian shows many exceptions from the law (p. 495). In Iranian, *s generally changes to h (except in *S) – p. 264. In Greek (p. 293), *SC and final *s# are preserved. Elsewhere, *s yields h, written as <h> initially and preserved intervocally in Mycenaean, but disappearing in Classical Greek (gen. sg. Gr. νῦξος ‘cloud’, OCS nebesė ‘heaven’ < PIE *nephes/os). Intervocalic *s changes to r in Latin in historical times (p. 327); otherwise, it is unchanged. In Germanic, *s becomes voiced word-finally (later again devoiced in Gothic) and medially in the case of Verner’s Law (p. 393). This *z is preserved in East Germanic, but changes to r in North-West Germanic (cf. Goth. batiza to Eng. better). In Armenian (p. 427–428), PIE *s is preserved in certain clusters (Arm. mis, OCS mešo < PIE *mēms- ‘meat’) but, as in Greek, yields h- (or drops) initially (cf. Arm. al ‘salt’ ~ Lat. sāl but hin ‘old’ ~ Lat. senex) and disappears intervocally. In Albanian, initially we get gi- (cf. Alb. gjumë, OCS gùn, Gr. γυναὶ < PIE *supnos ‘sleep’) or sh-, and medially perhaps -sh- or -h- (cf. p. 568).
Some PIE roots appear both with initial *s- and without it. This facultative *s- is called *s-mobile (mobile s). An example is PIE *(s)poHimn- 'foam' > Ved. phéna-, OCS pěny (nom. pl.), OEng. fám (Eng. foam) but Lat. spūma, Lith. spáinė. *S-mobile is usually explained through some kind of pre-PIE sandhi reanalysis (e.g., *wl̥kwos pekyeti) ‘wolf sees’ > *wl̥k̦os (s)pekti (ti) – cf. Lat. speciō ‘I see’ but Ved. pāsyati ‘sees’).

Consonantal reflexes of PIE laryngeals

The exact phonetics of PIE “laryngeals” (*h₁, *h₂, *h₃) are controversial. The name “laryngeals” is usually taken to be a traditional misnomer, though it is not impossible that *h₁ was, for instance, indeed a laryngeal/glottal [h]. One possibility is that they were velar *x, *x, *x (parallel to stops), which would agree with their vowel-coloring characteristics (*h₂e > *h₂a and *h₃e > h₃o, p. 43); the other that *h₁ was glottal/laryngeal *h or palatal *ç; that *h₂ was a velar *x (uvular *χ or pharyngeal *ħ) (cf. the change *ph₃ > *b (p. 17) that would point to a voiced *h₃), etc. Other phonetic interpretations are also possible. The *h₂ was the most frequent. The laryngeals disappear in most languages and positions, leaving only indirect traces (cf. p. 481, 523 for BS1.), which is the reason they will be dealt with together with vowels (p. 43). Here, we shall only take a look at their consonantal reflexes (as h or aspiration).

In Anatolian, *h₂ (and probably initial *h₂-) reflects as ḥ in many positions. In Hittite, initial *h₂- yields ḥ- (Hitt. ḣartaggaš, Gr. ῥάκτος < PIE *h₂rk̦os ‘bear’). Medially, -ḥ- is preserved in many names (Hitt. paḥḫur, Gr. πῦρ < PIE *peh₂wr̥ ‘fire’), but not all (p. 177). Many suppose that initial *h₂- also yields ḥ- in Anatolian (Hitt. ḥāštāi, CLuw. ḥās-, Ved. āṣṭhī, Lat. os < PIE *h₂esth₁ ‘bone’), at least sometimes, though some contest that (and reconstruct PIE *h₂osth₁ and the like instead). Medial *-h₂- generally disappears in Anatolian (but cf. p. 177).

In Indo-Iranian, laryngeals (mostly *h₂) aspirate preceding stops, both voiceless (p. 21) and voiced. Cf. PIE *d̥ugh₂tēr ‘daughter’ > Ved. duhitā́ (with *-gh₂- > *-gh- > -h-), Gr. ὑγάτηρ (p. 47), *megēḥ > Ved. māhi (p. 53, 80), or *h₂egHom > ahám (p. 82) (with *gH > *ĝ > h). Initial *h₂r₃ seems to yield h- in some cases in Armenian, though the exact conditions are unclear and not all scholars accept this (p. 430), and less convincingly in Albanian. Cf. Arm. haw, Lat. auis < PIE *h₂ew- ‘bird’ and Alb. herdhe ‘testicles’, Gr. ὄρχις ‘testicle’ < PIE *h₂erĝh-.

The laryngeals apparently disappeared already in PIE medially before *y (Pinault’s Law), cf. PIE *krewh₂s (with -i- in Ved. kravīs- and -ɑ- in Gr. κρέας) (p. 16) but adjective *krewh₂yos > *krewyos (Ved. kravvyaś ‘bloody’, cf. also the accent in Lith. krau̯jąas, which points to no laryngeal). For initial *Hy- cf. p. 34. There were perhaps some other possible very specific PIE synchronic rules for laryngeal deletion – e.g., in *VHTRV position (cf. PIE *h₂weh₁- > Ved. vā́ti ‘blows’ but PGmc *wegran ‘weather’, OCS vedro ‘nice weather’).

PIE RESONANTS AND GLIDES

PIE segments were syllabic (vowels), asyllabic (stops, fricatives), or syllabic/asyllabic (resonants + glides). PIE asyllabic resonants were *m, *n, *l, *r and glides *y, *w. When in syllabic position, they are written as *m̥, *n̥, *l̥, *r̥ and *i, *u (the last two were
functionally obviously vowels). Syllabic variants appear mostly in predictable positions:

- CR-C (gen. sg. *krde/os ‘heart’), #RC- (gen. sg. *udne/os ‘water’), and -CR# (*yēkʷr ‘liver’). In other positions, asyllabic variants appear: -VRC- (*kërdr ‘heart’), -CRV- (*gʷweh₂r ‘beast’), #RV- (*wodr), -VR# (*ph₄tēr ‘father’). However, the occurrence of an a-syllabic variant was not always completely predictable – cf. the initial resonant clusters like *wr- (not *ur-) or *ml- (not **m̥ l-) (p. 52). The general rule in case of two potential syllabic resonants in a coda (-CRRC- or -CRR#) was that the second one became syllabic (“the *RR principle”), cf. instr. pl. *kwbrh₂is ‘with dogs’ (Ved. svabhīs, not **kunb₂is) (p. 41). The exceptions here were cases with the present infix *-n- (p. 95), which was always asyllabic (cf. *yung- > Lat. iungō ‘I yoke’, *linkʷ- > Lat. lingquō ‘I leave’ and not **iwn̥ g-, **l̥ y̥ n̥ kw-); accusatives *-im/-um (not **-ym̥ /-wm̥ , p. 72–73) and pl. *-ins/-üns/-tns (not **-yn̥ s/-wn̥ s/-trns, p. 72, 74–75); and cases with Stang’s Law like the acc. sg. *dyewm (not **dyewm̥ ) > *dyēm (p. 72). All this means that syllabic resonants were really separate phonemes in the last phase of PIE and not just allophones of their asyllabic variants (although still regularly alternating with them in many cases). In any case, the reflexes of syllabic and asyllabic resonants are completely divergent and have to be analyzed separately.

Asyllabic resonants

Asyllabic resonants were mostly stable in IE languages. They remained unchanged in new languages and positions.

*m


PIE *medh₂u ‘mead’ > Ved. mādhu (YAv. maδu- ‘berry wine’), Gr. μέθυ ‘wine’, OCS medъ ‘honey’, Lith. medis ‘honey’, OEng. me(o)du (Eng. mead), OIr. mid (Gaul. Medu-genos, Clb. Mezu-kenos (pers. names)), Toch. B mī̀ ‘honey’

PIE *medh₂y- ‘middle’ > Ved. mādhyas (GAv. maδy-a-, Gr. μέσ(σ)ος (⇒ Eng. Mesozoic), Lat. medius (⇒ Eng. medium), OCS loc. pl. meḏdax’y ‘alleys’ (PSI. *medja ‘boundary’), Lith. mēdė ‘forest’ (< *forest as a border’), Goth. midjis (Eng. mid(dle)), OIr. mide, Arm. mēf, Alb. midis ‘in the middle of’

Generally speaking, PIE *m does not change in any of the languages. The typologically frequent (cf. Arabic, Finnish) change of final -m# > -n# occurs in many languages, e.g., in Greek, Hittite, Germanic, Armenian, Old Prussian, Phrygian, and many Celtic languages (cf. PIE neuter nom. sg. *-om > OInd. -am, Lat. -um but Gr. -ov, Hitt. -an, PGmc *-an, OPruss. -an, p. 65).

*n

PIE *nebʰos ‘cloud, cloudy sky, mist’ > Ved. nābhas ‘cloud, mist’ (GAv. nabah- ‘cloud’), Gr. νέφος ‘cloud’, Lat. nebula ‘mist, fog’ (⇒ Eng. nebula), OCS nebo ‘heaven’ (Slav. also ‘sky’), Lith. debesi ‘cloud’ < *nebesi, OHG neb ul ‘fog, mist’, Hitt. nēpĭš ‘sky, heaven’, OIr. nem ‘heaven, sky’
**PIE *new(y)os** ‘new’ > Ved. náv(y)as (YAv. nauwa-), Gr. νέος (⇒ Eng. neo-), Lat. nous, OCS novь, Lith. nėjaš, Goth. niujis (Eng. new), Hitt. nēw-, OIr. niuæ (Gaul. Nouto-dunum (toponym)), Arm. nor, Toch. B ńwęwe

**PIE *togh*nts** ‘night’ (p. 54) > Ved. nákt- (YAv. upa-naxtar- ‘almost night’), Gr. νύξ, Lat. nox (⇒ Eng. nocturnal), OCS noštь, Lith. naktìs, Goth. nahts (Eng. night), Hitt. nekuz mēhur ‘at night’, OIr. innocht ‘tonight’ (Gaul. tri-nox(tion) ‘three nights’), Alb. natë, Toch. A nokte ‘at night’

Generally speaking, PIE *n does not change in any of the languages, but cf. late *Vnv > r in Tosk Albanian (p. 564–565) and Slavic nasal vowels (p. 521). In cases like *peŋk=e (p. 24), PIE probably had an allophone *[ŋ]* before velars like most languages.

**r**

**PIE *swesōr** ‘sister’ > Ved. svāsar- (YAv. x'ən̥har-), Gr. ἕορ ‘daughter, first cousin’, Lat. soror (⇒ Eng. sorority), OCS sestra, Lith. sesuò – gen. sg. sesešs, Goth. svistarr (Eng. sister), OIr. siur (Gaul. instr. pl. suiorebe), Arm. k’oyr, Toch. B serde

**PIE *treyes** ‘three’ > Ved. trāyas (YAv. ṭrāyō), Gr. τρεῖς (⇒ Eng. tri-logy), Lat. trēs, OCS trije, Lith. trēs, Goth. þreis (Eng. three), Hitt. terrî, OIr. tri (Gaul. tri-), Arm. erek’c, Alb. tre, Toch. B traṣ

**PIE *mer-* ‘disappear > die’ > Ved. maranti ‘they die’ (YAv. fra-miryete ‘dies’), Gr. μορτός ‘mortal’, Lat. morior ‘I die’ (⇒ Eng. mortal), OCS mrěti ‘to die’, Lith. mūtė ‘to die’, Goth. maürfr (Eng. murder), Hitt. merzi ‘disappears’, Arm. meṇhīmit ‘I die’

Since it had a syllabic variant (*r̥ – p. 35), PIE *r was originally phonetically probably a trill (as it still is, e.g., in Slavic). Generally speaking, PIE *r does not change in any of the languages – except phonetically to a different type of rhotics (rarely, one finds an l as a reflex in some Indo-Iranian languages, p. 206, 271). It is possible that there was no initial *#r- in PIE (as in Proto-Uralic, most non-IE Caucasian languages, Korean, etc.), which would be preserved as a phonotactic constraint in Old Anatolian languages, Armenian, Phrygian, and Greek (for Gr. ἄρ ρ[hr] < *wr-, *sr-, cf. p. 290). If so, an initial laryngeal would have to be reconstructed even when there is no direct attestation of it, e.g., PIE *HrotHos ‘wheel’ (Ved. ráthas ‘chariot’, Lat. rota, Lith. rūtas).

**l**

**PIE *leyg̣h* ‘lick’ > Ved. rēdhī (younger), ledhī ‘licks’ (YAv. riz-, Modern Pers. lištan ‘to lick’), Gr. λεῖγω ‘I lick up’, Lat. lingō ‘I lick’, OCS lizaaše ‘licked’, Lith. liėžti ‘to lick’, OEng. lician ‘to lick’ (Eng. lick), OIr. ligd ‘licks’, Arm. lizem ‘I lick’

**PIE *seh,wl* ‘sun’ (cf. p. 78) > Ved. sūryas (GAv. huuarḥ), Gr. ἥλιος (⇒ Eng. helium), Lat. sōl (⇒ Eng. solar), OCS słońce, Lith. sūlė, Goth. saul, MW haul

**PIE *h2,el(n)* ‘elbow’ > Ved. aratnīs (YAv. frārāϑni-drāǰah- ‘elbow (length)’), Gr. ὀξὺνή, Lat. ulna, OCS lakъ, Lith. alkūnė, Goth. aleina ‘cubit’ (Eng. ell, el-bow), OIr. uilen ‘elbow, angle’ (Gaul. Olna (river name)), Arm. olok’ ‘shin’, Alb. (Gheg) llânë ‘fore-arm’, Toch. B aliye ‘palm of the hand’
Generally speaking, PIE *l is preserved in most languages. The only exception is Indo-Iranian, where it yields r in most languages (and in most words), but not always (p. 206, 271).

*w


PIE *wert- ‘turn, spin’ > Ved. vártae ‘turns’ (YAv. voṛta- ‘turn’), (?) Gr. (Dor., Hesychius) παχάνων τόρπον ‘stirrer, ladle’, Lat. uertō ‘I turn’ (Eng. con-vert), OCS vratiti ՚ę ‘to return, turn’, Lith. vežti ‘to turn over’, Goth. wairhan ‘to become’, OIr. frith- ‘against’ (cf. Lat. uersus ‘against, towards’ ⇒ Eng. ad-verse), Toch. A wärť ‘throw’

PIE *welh₁- ‘want’ > Ved. várat ‘wants, chooses’ (GAv. vərəntē ‘chooses’), Gr. λῶ ‘I want/wish’, Lat. uolō ‘I wish/want’ (⇒ Eng. volunteer), OCS velěti ‘to want’, OLith. vėlti ‘to let, allow’, Goth. wiljan ‘to want’ (Eng. will), Gaul. uelor ‘I wish’ (MW gwell ‘better’)

Generally speaking, PIE *w is preserved in many languages in most positions. However, the original PIE bilabial semivowel pronunciation (like Eng. w) is preserved only in some languages (Classical Latin but not Romance, some Ancient Greek dialects, English but not most Germanic languages, etc.), while elsewhere it usually changes to a fricative v (Lithuanian, most Slavic languages, Albanian, most Germanic and Romance languages, etc.). A labiodental approximant [ʋ] as a reflex is less common (as in some Dutch and South Slavic Štokavian dialects, Slovene, as one of the realizations in Hindi, etc.).

Mycenaean still has a w, and so do some Greek dialects (written as ϝ); this ϝ disappears early in Attic-Ionic (p. 289, 292). PCelt. *w is preserved in Gaulish and Celtiberian (later changed in Insular Celtic, p. 362, 365–366). In Armenian, -w is preserved word-finally (cf. Arm. naw ‘ship’, Lat. nāuis < PIE *neḥ₂w-), while initially it changes to g (via *gw, similar to Welsh), cf. Arm. egiw ‘found’, Ved. āvidat ‘found’ < PIE *widet (p. 429). In Albanian, PIE *w is preserved initially, and otherwise it disappears (p. 568).

*y

PIE *yuh₃s- ‘soup, broth’ > Ved. yūṣ, Gr. ζύμη ‘leaven’, ζομός ‘soup’, Lat. iūs ‘broth, sauce’, CSL. juxa, Lith. arch. jūše ‘fish soup’

PIE *h₂yowHn- ‘young’ > Ved. yūvan- (YAv. yauua ‘youth’), Lat. iuvenis ‘young man’ (⇒ Eng. juvenile, junior), OCS juṃığı, Lith. jūnas, Goth. jugs (Eng. young), OIr. ՚oac (MW iuanc), Gaul. louninc-illus (pers. name)

PIE *yēkr- ‘liver’ (p. 78) > Ved. yākṛt (YAv. yākaro), Gr. ἤπαρ (⇒ Eng. hepatitis), Lat. iecur, CS ikra ‘roe’ (< PSl. *jьkra), OLith. jēknos

Generally speaking, PIE *y is often preserved but not universally. In Greek and Latin, intervocalic *y disappears (PIE *treyes ‘three’ > Gr. τρεῖς [três], Lat. trēs), *-Cy- has
various outcomes (p. 293), and in initial position one finds either Gr. ’- /h-/ or ζ-, which
is an old and disputed problem – some claim that one is the outcome of *y- and the other of *Hy-
(since there are no “prothetic vowels” – p. 48 – before *y), but which reflex is
derived from which source is also disputed. PCelt. *y disappears completely in Old Irish
(p. 362, 365–366). In Armenian, intervocalic *y disappears (PIE *treyes > Arm. erek’),
*-Ry- yields Rǰ (cf. Arm. olj, OIr. uile < PIE *h3elyos ‘whole’), and the reflex of initial
*y- is not completely clear (p. 429). In Albanian, medial *y is lost (PIE *treyes > Alb.
tre), while initial *y- yields gr-, cf. Alb. giesh ‘gird’, Gr. ζωστήρ ‘a warrior’s belt’, Lith.
jūosta ‘waist-band, belt’ < PIE *yeh3s- (p. 568).

TABLE 1.4 THE REFLEXES OF PIE ASYLLABIC RESONANTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>μ, -ν#</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>-n#</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ν</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*l</td>
<td>r/l</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>λ</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>ρ</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>(r)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*w</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>ι &gt; Ο-/ζ-, VOV</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>#f-, VOV, Cb</td>
<td>g, -w#</td>
<td>#v-, Ω</td>
<td>w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*y</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>#~/ζ-, VOV</td>
<td>i, VOV</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>-Rf-, VOV</td>
<td>#gi-, -Ω-</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Syllabic resonants

Syllabic resonants *m, *η, *l, *r are completely unstable diachronically in IE and change
everywhere (the sole exception being PIE *r > OInd. r). Their reflexes are of the following
types:

a) the reflex is a syllabic resonant (*R > R) – only in PIE *r, *l > OInd. l
b) the resonant obtains a preceding vowel (*R > VR) – e.g., PIE *R > Gmc *uR
c) the resonant obtains a following vowel (*R > RV) – e.g., PIE *r > Gr. ρα (also αρ)
d) the resonant becomes a vowel (*R > V) – e.g., PIE *m, *η > OInd./Alb. a, Gr. α

The type b) is the most frequent by far. In some languages/groups, all resonants have the
same type of development (cf. Gmc *um/un/ul/ur). In others, the type of development of
*m/η differs from that of *l/r (cf. Lat. em/en but ol/or). Reflexes in -CRHV- (before a
disappearing laryngeal) are often different than in -*CRC(V)- (p. 39). As already said, *i
and *u phonologically acted just like syllabic resonants.

*m

PIE *dekm ‘ten’ > Ved. dāśa (YAv. dasa), Gr. δέκα (⇒ Eng. decade), Lat. decem (⇒
Eng. December), OCS desètbs, Lith. děšimt, Goth. taihun (Eng. ten), OIr. deichǝ
(Gaul. decan-), Arm. tasn < *tasan
PIE *(d)kmont ‘hundred’ > Ved. šatám (YAv. satɔm), Gr. ἐκατόν, Lat. centum (⇒
Eng. cent), OCS ssto, Lith. šimṭas, Goth. hunda (Eng. hundred), OW cant (CIB.
kantmont, OIr. cēt), Toch. A kánt
PIE *g%m̥tis ‘walk’ > Ved. gātis (YAv. aβi-gāṭi- ‘entrance’), Gr. βάσις ‘step’ (⇒ Eng.
basis), Lat. uentīo ‘coming’ (⇒ Eng. con-vention), Goth. ga-qums ‘gathering’
**ŋ**


The reflexes of *m̥* and *n̥* are always parallel. Final -m changes to -n in some languages as usual (p. 31), and assimilatory m > n before dentals is also common in some languages. In Indo-Iranian, Albanian, and Greek, the reflex is a/α (cf. Alb. *shta-të* ‘seven’ < *s(ep)ta-* < PIE *s̥ptm̥*). Latin has em/en (initially ma-, na-); Germanic *um/un; Armenian, Hittite, and Celtic *am/an* (with further development in separate Celtic languages – p. 358–359); and Tocharian *äm/än*. In Balto-Slavic, the reflexes are *im/in (less frequently and in unclear conditions *um/un)*. Lithuanian preserves *im/in, in/un*, and in Slavic *im/in < *een* < *im/in, in/un*, etc.

**l̥**


PIE *ml̥dus* ‘soft’ > Ved. *md̥ús*, Gr. βλαδείς ‘powerless’, Lat. *mollis* < *moldwis*, MW *blydd*< PCelt. *mlidos*


**r̥**


PIE *kʰrmis* ‘worm’ > Ved. *k̥m̥is*, OCS *čr̥m̥* < *čryvę*< *črtvę, Lith. *kirmis*, OIr. *cruim*< PCelt. *kʰrmis*, Alb. *krim*b (cf. PIE *wrmis* > Goth. *warım* ‘snake’ (Eng. *worm*)

The reflexes of *l̥* and *r̥* are always parallel. In Old Indic we find *r̥* in Avestan mostly *xor* (p. 267). In Greek (Attic), we find *ω/ʎa* and *αp/ʝa* in unclear conditions (cf. PIE *krd*- , p. 21); in Latin *or/ol* (initially *ra-, la-*). Balto-Slavic has *ir/il (less frequently
*ur/ul) – unchanged in Lithuanian; Slavic reflexes are *ъr/ur and *ъl/ul (p. 480), preserved in Old Russian but written as <ръ/ър> and <лъ/ъл> indiscriminately in OCS. Germanic has *ul/ur (> ul/aur in Gothic, p. 391). In Celtic we find *ri/li before stops and *r, and *ar/al otherwise (p. 362). Armenian and Hittite have ar, al, Albanian usually ri and li, and Tocharian âl, âr.

*i*

PIE *misdh*- ‘reward, pay’ > Ved. mīḍhám < *mizdhám ‘spoils, gain’ (MPers. mizd), Gr. μιζός ‘hire, pay, reward’, OCS mьzда ‘pay’, Goth. mizdo

PIE *hēsmi* ‘am’ > Ved. āsmi (YAv. ahmī), Gr. εἰμί, OCS jesmī, Hitt. ēšmi

PIE *-is* (nom. sg., -i-stems, p. 72) > Ved. -is, Gr. -tς, Lat. -is, OCS -b, Lith. -iš, Hitt. -iš

*u*

PIE *yugom* ‘yoke’ > Ved. yugām (GAv. yagogat ‘harnesses’), Gr. ὕγον, Lat. iugum (⇒ Eng. conjugation), OCS igo < *jъgo, Lith. įngas, Goth. juk (Eng. yoke), Mr. cuing < *kom-yungi- (Gaul. Ver-iugus (pers. name)), Hitt. iukan, Arm. luc

PIE *snusos* ‘daughter-in-law’ > Ved. snuṣā, Gr. (Hom.) νυός, Lat. nurus, CS snъxa, OHG snura, Arm. nu

PIE *supnos* ‘sleep’ > Pali supina- ‘dream’, Gr. ὑπός, Lat. hūnis, OCS sъnъ, Alb. gjumē

In most languages/families, PIE *i* and *u* are preserved (at least in the oldest stages). Greek υ originally had the value [u] but changed to [ü] later in Attic (p. 295). In Slavic, *u > ū* and *i > ź* (originally probably back and front very short, centralized/schwa-like vowels respectively). In Gothic, *u* changes to au [ą] (written originally just as <au>, the same as the diphthong [aw]) before h, hr, r. In Tocharian, both *i* (also *e*) and *u* yield â, but â from *i/e causes palatalization (p. 455, 459).

---

**TABLE 1.5 THE REFLEXES OF PIE SYLLABIC RESONANTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>m</em></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>em, #ma-</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>i/ū/um</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>*am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>*ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>n</em></td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>en, #na-</td>
<td>q, b</td>
<td>i/ū/um</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>*an</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>*ān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>l</em></td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>ol, #la-</td>
<td>h/lb</td>
<td>ǐ/ul</td>
<td>ul</td>
<td>al</td>
<td>*al, *l-/C sınp/ m</td>
<td>al</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>*āl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>r</em></td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>or, #ra-</td>
<td>r/lb</td>
<td>ǐ/ur</td>
<td>aūr</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>*ar, *r-/C sınp/ m</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td>*ār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>i</em></td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>*i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ʰi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>u</em></td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Syllabic resonants and laryngeals**

In traditional IE linguistics, PIE reconstruction included long syllabic resonants *ṁ, ṇ, ŋ, ĭ, ĭ, and ĭ (in *CRČ position). After the discovery of laryngeals, it turned out that these were in fact *ṁH, *ṇH, *ňH, *įH, *įH, and *uH. One has to distinguish two basic positions of *R̥H – one is the pre-consonantal (*CR̥HC) and the other is the pre-vocalic
(*CRHV). In *CRHC, what one gets in IE languages (if the reflexes are not the same as those of the regular syllabic resonants) are sequences like RV̅, VR̅ or, less frequently, VR̅̅. In *CRHV, the reflexes are everywhere of the VR type. We deal first with the *CRHC type.

*CRHC (pre-consonantal position)

*nH

PIE *dmh₂tos ‘tamed’ > Ved. dāntās (with analogical -n-), Gr. ἀδόμα(σ)τος ‘unconquered’, ἀδημήτος ‘unbroken’

*ŋH

PIE *gnh₂tos ‘born’ > Ved. jātās (YAv. zāta-), Gr. κασί-γνητος ‘brother’, Lat. (g) nātus, Goth. airfa-kunds ‘born of the earth’, Gaul. Cintu-gnātus (‘first-born’ (pers. name))

PIE *gnh₁tos ‘known’ > Gr. γνώτος, Lat. gnārus ‘knowing’ (< *gnh₂ros), Lith. pažintas, Goth. -kunþs, OIr. gnáth

There are few words with *nH/mH (mostly *-tos participles of verbs of *CVRH-type), especially with *mH. In Vedic, ā is the reflex (though this is not completely certain for *mH). In Greek, the reflexes depend on the laryngeal and possibly (though disputably) on stress position. In unaccented position, *m̥h₁ > μη, *m̥h₂ > μᾱ (> Att. μη, p. 295), *m̥h₃ > μω and *n̥h₁ > νη, *n̥h₂ > νά (> Att. νη), *n̥h₃ > νο. When stressed, the reflexes seem to be ēμɛ/άμα/όμο and ένɛ/άνα/όνο. Cf. pairs like πολύκμητος ‘wrought with much toil’ – κάματος ‘toil’ (*k ˊm̥h₂tos) or κασί-γνητος and γένɛσις ‘origin’ (*gn̥h₁tis). But forms like γνήσιoς ‘belonging to the race’ would then have to be secondary. In Germanic, the reflexes are identical to those of *ŋ/ŋ, and the same goes for Balto-Slavic (disregarding the prosodical differences, see below). Latin has mà, nà, and so does Celtic (OIr. mà, nà; cf. here also Toch. <mā>, <nā>), while in Armenian we find ama, ana (somewhat similar to Greek).

*lH

PIE *plh₁nos ‘full’ > Ved. pūrṇās (GAv. pərəna-), OCS plъnъ (BCMS pūn), Lith. pilnas, Goth. fulls (Eng. full), OIr. lán

PIE *(h₂)wlh₁neh₂ ‘wool’ > Ved. ārṇā (YAv. varnā-), Gr. λῆνος, Lat. lāna, OCS vlъna (BCMS vȕna), Lith. vilna, Goth. wulla (Eng. wool), MW gwlan

PIE *dlh₂g₁os ‘long’ > Ved. dīrḡhās (GAv. dar′ga-), OCS dъgъ (BCMS dūg), Lith. ilgas (< *dilgas), Goth. tulgus ‘firm’, Alb. gjatë (< *glagV-t-)

*rH

PIE *grh₁no- ‘old, ripe; grain’ (cf. *gerh₂-, p. 22) > Ved. jīrṇās ‘old’ (YAv. zar’ta- ‘decrepit’), Lat. grānum ‘grain’ (⇒ Eng. grain), OCS zrьno ‘grain’ (BCMS zrно), Lith. žirnis ‘grain’, Goth. kaúrn ‘grain’ (Eng. corn), OIr. grán ‘grain’
PIE *kr̥h₄srō(n) ‘hornet’ > Lat. crābrō, CS sr̥śenb, Lith. širšė, OEng. hynnetu (Eng. hornet) < PGmc *kurzn-

PIE *str̥h₁tnos ‘laid down’ > Ved. stūrṇās, Gr. στρωτός, Lat. strātus (⇒ Eng. street)

PIE *ṛH/H merge and yield īr/ār in Vedic (ār usually after labials – p, ph, bh, m, v) and ar* in Avestan. In Greek once again we find λη/ρη, λā (> Att. λη)/ρā, λο/oρo and ἑλ/ἐρη, ἀλ/αρo, ἀλ/αρo. In Germanic *f/ = *ṛH/H; the same is true for Balto-Slavic except on prosodic level – cf. BCMS pūn, Lith. piln̥s for PIE *ph₁nos (p. 37), but BCMS vūk, Lith. vilk̥as, Latv. vilks for PIE *w̥k̥-os (p. 35). Latin and Celtic have lā, rā (written as là, rá in OIr. – p. 362 – cf. also Toch. <lā>, <rā>), while in Armenian we find aļa, ara. In Albanian we find possible al, ar reflexes (cf. Alb. parë ‘first’ < PIE *ph₂₂wo-) but also la, ra (cf. gjatē above).

*iH

PIE *wih₁ρos ‘man’ > Ved. vīrās (Av. vīra-), Lat. uir (with shortening, cf. p. 357), Lith. výras, Goth. wair (with shortening, cf. Eng. were-wolf), OIr. fer (with shortening), Toch. A wir ‘young’

PIE *gʷih₁wos ‘alive’ > Ved. jīvās, Gr. βίος ‘life’ (with pre-vocalic shortening, ⇒ Eng. bio-logy, etc.), Lat. uīuus (⇒ Eng. vivi-section), OCS živъ ‘alive’ (with shortening, Eng. quick), OIr. béo (Ogham BIVI-TI, with shortening)

PIE *gʷriHweh₂ ‘neck’ > Ved. grīvā́ (YAv. grīva), OCS griv̥na ‘necklace’ (BCMS grīva ‘mane’), Latv. grĩva ‘(river) mouth’

*uH

PIE *suHnus ‘son’ > Ved. sūnūs (GAv. hunu- ‘offspring’), Gr. ὑιύς (< *suHyus), OCS synъ, Lith. sūnus (acc. sg. sūnų), Goth. sunus (with shortening, Eng. son)

PIE *mũHs ‘mouse’ > Ved. mū́ ṣ-, Gr. μῦς, Lat. mūs, OCS myšь (BCMS měš), OEng. mūs (Eng. mouse), Arm. mukn, Alb. mi

PIE *suHs ‘sow, swine’ > Ved. sūkarās ‘wild boar’ (YAv. hū- ‘swine’), Gr. ὄς, Lat. sūs ‘pig, sow’, OEng. sū ‘sow’, Alb. thi ‘pig’ (with secondary th-), Toch. B suwo ‘pig, hog’

Traditionally reconstructed *ī and *ū can be reinterpreted as *iH and *uH in almost all cases, while the only real instances of long *ī and *ū appear in cases of monosyllabic lengthening (p. 54–55). Generally speaking, long *ī and *ū remain unchanged in IE languages. Long ī is written as <y> in Lithuanian, as <ei> in Gothic, and as <i> in Old Irish. Old *ū changes to y in OCS (most likely a ui-type diphthong originally – thus written as a combination of n and i in Glagolitic/Cyrillic script), and to i in Albanian in final/only syllable (probably y otherwise). In Germanic, Italic, and Celtic, *ī and *ū shorten in pretonic position in many cases (Dybo’s Law). Distinctive length is lost in Armenian, Albanian, and Tocharian. According to some linguists (cf. p. 431), in some cases in Greek (and Tocharian and Armenian) there is a so-called laryngeal breaking of *i/uh₂, where it is not *i/u that is syllabic but the laryngeals (*y/wh₂-) – cf. Gr. ζω(ϝ)ός ‘alive’ (⇒ Eng. zoo-logy) from *gʷyeḥ₃wos (if not from *gʷyeḥ₂-?). The reflexes in Greek are thus *y (palatalization)/f + ā > η or ω (also Toch. yā, wā).
TABLE 1.6 THE REFLEXES OF PIE *CR̥HC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*mH</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>μή/μά &gt; μή/μος, ἐμή/ἐμ/όμο</td>
<td>mā</td>
<td>č, ɸ</td>
<td>im/ium</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>má</td>
<td>ama</td>
<td>mā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nH</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>νή/νά &gt; νή/νο, ἐνέ/νο/ό</td>
<td>nā</td>
<td>č, ɸ</td>
<td>in/ium</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>ná</td>
<td>ana</td>
<td>nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*H</td>
<td>ĵr, ĵr</td>
<td>ĵr</td>
<td>κή/κά &gt; κή/κο, κέ/κά/ό</td>
<td>lā</td>
<td>hō/hō</td>
<td>il/āl</td>
<td>ul</td>
<td>lá</td>
<td>ala</td>
<td>al, la</td>
<td>lā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*H</td>
<td>ĵr, ĵr</td>
<td>ĵr</td>
<td>πή/πά/ό</td>
<td>rā</td>
<td>rb/rb</td>
<td>ir/ur</td>
<td>aūr</td>
<td>rā</td>
<td>ara</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>rā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*iH</td>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>y̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
<td>i̯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*uH</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*CR̥HV (pre-vocalic position)

In this position, syllabic resonants are not in the same syllable with laryngeals, so this is not really the case of “long syllabic resonants”, and reflexes in most languages are distinct from both *CR̥HC and *CR̥C types:

TABLE 1.7 THE REFLEXES OF PIE *CR̥HV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*mH</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>aμ</td>
<td>em</td>
<td>m̥m/m̥m</td>
<td>im/ium</td>
<td>um</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>ām/am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nH</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>aν</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>m̥n/m̥n</td>
<td>in/ium</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>ān/an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*H</td>
<td>ir/ur</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>aλ</td>
<td>al</td>
<td>ḅ/ḅl</td>
<td>il/ul</td>
<td>ul</td>
<td>al</td>
<td>al</td>
<td>āl/āl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*H</td>
<td>ir/ur</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>aθ</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>ḅ/ḅr</td>
<td>ir/ur</td>
<td>aūr</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>ar</td>
<td>ār/ār</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cf. PIE *ṭh₂us (p. 16), *g̣r̥H- (p. 25) or PIE *g̣r̥H₂us ‘heavy’ > Ved. gurūs, Gr. βαρύς, Goth. kaúrus. The -ur- in Ved. gurūs (cf. also ār after labials – p. 38) is often taken as a trace of the old labiovelar in Ilr., though there are counterexamples (cf. girīs – p. 25).

PIE VOWELS

PIE had the following vowels (not counting the diphthongs): *e, *ē, *o, *ō, *a. The phonemes *i and *u were also vowels but phonologically speaking, at least originally, syllabic glides (p. 30–31) (phonetically speaking, ʃ/i and w/u are generally the same except for the difference in tongue hight/syllabicity). Vowel *a was a marginal phoneme in PIE (p. 42), with a position somewhat similar to that of *b (p. 16–17). Some IE-ists even believe that there is no need to reconstruct a PIE *a. What seems to point to long *ā is actually always *eh₂ (p. 45). PIE long *ē and *ō were rather rare, limited to certain morphological (p. 61–62) and derivational forms and contractions (p. 65). The reflexes adduced below are sometimes relevant only for non-final and/or accented syllables (e.g., in Latin).

*e


PIE *e remains unchanged in Greek, Latin (in the formerly stressed first syllable, where there is no vowel reduction – p. 328), Balto-Slavic, Celtic, Armenian, and Anatolian (cf. Hitt. nēpiš with lengthening under accent – p. 31), except in specific conditions. In Indo-Iranian, PIE *e causes palatalization (p. 206) and then merges with *o and *i into IIr. a. In Germanic, PIE *e yields *e or *i (p. 395) – in Gothic it is always i (cf. Goth. itan ‘to eat’ but ONor. eta ‘to eat’, Lat. edō ‘I eat’ < PIE *h₁ed-) merging with PIE *i (the new i changes to ai [ɛ] before h, hr, r). In Albanian the reflexes (e, ja, ie, je, i) depend on the phonetic surroundings but are not completely clear (p. 561). PIE *e merges with *i into ‘ä in Tocharian (p. 455).

*o


PIE *domh₂os ‘house, home’ > Ved. dámas ‘house’, Gr. δόμος ‘house’, Lat. domus, OCS domъ, Lith. nãmas ‘house’ < *damas (assimilation)

PIE *gostis ‘stranger, guest’ > Lat. hostis ‘stranger, enemy’ (⇒ Eng. hostile), OCS dat. pl. gostemъ ‘to guests’, Goth. gasts ‘stranger, guest’ (Eng. guest ⇐ ONor. gestr), (?) Lep. Uvamo-kozis (‘having the highest guests’ (pers. name)), (?) Luw. kaši- ‘visit’

IE languages can be divided into two groups when it comes to the reflex of PIE *o. In one group, PIE *o generally remains o – Greek, Latin in the first syllable – p. 328, Celtic, Armenian (in most cases, p. 424), Lusitanian, etc. In the other languages, PIE *o yields a (and thus merges with the reflex of PIE *a/h,e) – in Indo-Iranian (*e/o > a), Balto-Slavic (in Slavic, BSl. *a shifts back to o), Germanic, most of Anatolian (including Hittite, but not in Proto-Anatolian and all Anatolian languages – p. 176), Albanian (cf. natë, p. 32), Messapian, etc. In Indo-Iranian, PIE *o > ā in open syllables (Brugmann’s Law), cf. Ved. dāru (p. 17). In Tocharian, PIE *o yields e (Toch. B), a (Toch. A), and sometimes ā (p. 455).

*ē

PIE *meh₂ër ‘mother’ > Ved. mātā́ (GAv. paṭa < *ph₂ër, p. 46), Gr. μητήρ, Lat. māter < *mātēr (⇒ Eng. maternal), Lith. arch. móțė, OIr. máthir (< PCelt. *māthr), Toch. B mācer


PIE *dyēm ‘day sky’ (acc., cf. p. 56, 70, 72) > Ved. dyām, Gr. Zήν ‘Zeus’, Lat. diem ‘day’ (with shortening)
In general, PIE *ē reflects just like PIE *eh₁ (p. 45). PIE *ē is preserved in Greek (<η>), Latin (shortened outside of the first syllable), Hittite (shortened when not accented), and Germanic. In Lithuanian (closed ė, p. 488) and Slavic (*ē, p. 522), it yields a type of long ė. In Indo-Iranian, PIE *ē (like *ō and *ā) yields ā. PIE *ē changes into *ī in Celtic and i in Armenian. In Albanian the reflex is o (p. 561), and in Tocharian PIE *ē merges with *o into e (Toch. B)/a (Toch. A), but only old *ē causes palatalization (p. 455).

**ō**

PIE *kwō(n) ‘dog’ > Ved. śvā (YAv. spā), Gr. κύων, Lith. šuō, OIr. cú, Arm. šun
PIE *h₂ekmō(n) ‘stone’ > Ved. āśmā, Gr. ἄχμων ‘anvil, meteoric stone’, Lith. akmuō
PIE *h₂ówyom ‘egg’ > Pers. xāya, Gr. φῶ, Lat. ēnum (⇒ Eng. ovulation), PSI. *aje (> BCMS jāje), Arm. ju (with an unexpected j-), OW ui (< PCelt. *āwyo-), Alb. ve

In general, PIE *ō reflects just like PIE *eh₂ or *oH (p. 46). PIE *ō is preserved in Greek (<ω>, Latin, and Germanic (cf. Goth. fotus, p. 15). Proto-Balto-Slavic *ō yields uo in Lithuanian/Latvian and a in Slavic. In Indo-Iranian, PIE *ō (like *ē and *ā) yields ā. In Celtic, PIE *ō gives ā in non-final (OIr. <ā>) and ā in final/only syllables. Proto-Anatolian *ō yields Hitt. ā (accented) or a (unaccented), cf. Hitt. pl. widār ‘water’ < *wedōr (p. 179). In Armenian the reflex of PIE *ō is u, and in Albanian it is e (p. 561). In Tocharian PIE *ō merges with *ā and *Ḫ into ā (p. 455).

**a**

PIE *kapros ‘he-goat, boar’ > Ved. káprθ ‘penis’, Gr. κάπρος ‘(wild) boar’, Lat. caper ‘he-goat, buck’, ONor. hafr ‘he-goat’, W caer-iwrch ‘roebuck’
PIE *bak- ‘staff, stick’ > Gr. βάκτρον (⇒ Eng. bacterium), Lat. baculum, (?) Lith. baksnóti ‘to poke’, OIr. bacc ‘billhook, angle, bend’

A separate reflex of PIE *a (preserved almost everywhere as a) can be seen only in IE languages where there is no *o > a change, i.e., no merger of PIE *a and *o. Languages/branches without merger are Greek, Italic, Celtic, Armenian, Tocharian, and originally Anatolian (though merger occurs later in some languages). In Tocharian, PIE *a merges with PIE *ō and *Ḫ into Toch. ā. In Indo-Iranian, Balto-Slavic, Germanic, Albanian, and some Anatolian languages (like Hittite), PIE *a and *o merge into a.

**TABLE 1.8 THE REFLEXES OF PIE VOWELS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*e</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>el/e/e/i</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*o</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>Aa, B e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ē</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>A 'a, B 'e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ō</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>Aa, B o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The problem of PIE *a (and *ay, *aw)

In some cases where the classical IE linguistics reconstructed PIE *a, one now reconstructs *h₂e (p. 44), e.g., 1 sg. perf. *-h₂e (p. 98) (cf. also the voc. sg. *-eh₂, p. 66–67). The sequence *h₂e-is now almost always reconstructed when it comes to initial *a-, cf. *h₂ekmō(n) (p. 41), even if the laryngeal is not strictly provable – many believe that PIE roots, or at least nouns and verbs, always had consonantal onset, and thus a laryngeal is reconstructed on structural grounds. In the laryngealist reconstruction of PIE, *a is often reduced to a rather infrequent and slightly suspicious peripheral vowel. Some IE-ists even deny its existence (except as an allophone and perhaps in some loanwords) in PIE in general (cf. Lubotsky 1989), though this appears to be too extreme. The position of PIE *a (and the diphthongs *ay and *aw, p. 50–51) is somewhat similar to PIE *b (which is typologically strange in both cases) – it is a marginal phoneme (though this depends on how one goes on to reconstruct a number of specific roots), appearing often in loanwords and in dialectal words (attested only in a couple of branches), and often in specific phonological contexts (e.g., near velars, cf. *kap- ‘take’ > Lat. capiō ‘I take’, Goth. haban ‘to have’ or *kan- ‘sing’ > Lat. canō ‘I sing’, OIr. canaid ‘sings’). PIE *a, *ay, and *aw never appear in grammatical morphemes/affixes and are not a part of the usual PIE ablaut system (p. 61). However, there are a couple of forms where an *a/ā quantitative alternation is traditionally reconstructed: cf. PIE *nas- ‘nose’ (Ved. gen. du. nasōs, CS nosъ, OEng. nasu) and *nās- (Ved. nom. du. nāsā, Lat. nāsus, Lith. nūsis), and PIE *sal- ‘salt’ (Ved. salīlām ‘sea’, Gr. ὁᾶς, Lat. gen. sg. salīs, OCS solь) and *sāl- (Latv. sā̀l). Some would now prefer to reconstruct a *neh₂s-/*nh₂s- (though one could expect **nh₂es- here) and *sēh₂l-/*sh₂l- type alternation here (*nh₂s- and *sh₂l- do not work for Old Indic, which would yield **nis-/**sil-, p. 47) or the like (OInd. nas- could also be explained as secondary). Possible instances of *e/a/ā are few, cf. *h₂wes- (Hitt. ḫušzi ‘lives’, Ved. vāṣati ‘dwell’, Goth. wisan ‘to be’), which can hardly be unrelated to *h₂wastu- (Gr. ἄστυ ‘town’) and (?) *h₂wāstu- (Ved. vā́stu ‘residence, house’) – a reconstruction *h₂weh₂stu-/h₂wh₂stu- would be difficult to relate to verbal *h₂wes- (though *e/a/ā “ablaut” is, of course, also problematic). Theoretically, when the word is not attested in Old Indic (where syllabic *H ̥ y yields i), instead of *a one could reconstruct *dh₂p-, *bh₂k-, *kh₂p-, etc., but this is hardly convincing in all cases – why would it always be *h₂ (needed to account for Greek a, p. 47) and why would there be no ablaut in these words? In spite of differing opinions, one can conclude that *a (and perhaps *ā) did exist as an infrequent phoneme in the final phase of PIE. However, it is also quite possible that pre-PIE had no phoneme *a (nor *ay, *aw).

The problem of the PIE vowel system

Traditionally, the PIE vocalic system was reconstructed as having the usual *ā, *ē, *ī, *ō, *ū (plus diphthongs). In any case, at least phonetically speaking, the vowel system of PIE in its last phase was not problematic. However, taking laryngeals into account and disregarding marginal phonemes (*a), syllabic glides (*i, *u), diphthongs, and length leaves us with *e and *o as the only phonological vowels. This kind of analysis would be typologically problematic, since rare two-vowel languages (like Abkhaz) always have /a/ and /a/ as phonemes, and three-vowel ones have /al, /u/, and /u/ (like Classical Arabic), though they always have more allophones. To further complicate matters, the role of *e and *o in PIE is also suspicious, since *e is much more frequent and they are part of the same ablaut pattern (p. 61); i.e., they are mostly dependent on morphological and derivational
conditions and are rarely, if ever, used to differentiate separate noun/verb roots. Though there are roots occurring with *o only (like *potis or *gʰostis – p. 40), *e is usually thought to be the “basic” vowel in a root (especially verbal ones), which means that all (or almost all) forms that occur with *o also have an *a-variant of the morpheme. Although long-range comparison is highly controversial, it is curious that PIE vowels rarely seem to have any kind of role in it (the supposed correspondences are usually found among consonants only). These and similar facts lead some to speculative claims that pre-PIE perhaps had only one phonological vowel (or even none – cf. Lehmann 1993: 138), which is again typologically and theoretically highly problematic.11

Laryngeals and vocalism

We have already seen the consonantal reflexes of PIE laryngeals (p. 30). In most cases, though, laryngeals left traces in vocalism by changing neighboring vowels qualitatively or quantitatively. In some positions in certain languages, laryngeals themselves changed to vowels. Thus, we analyze them in the context of vocalism.

The influence of laryngeals on neighboring vowels

Laryngeals influence neighboring vowels in two ways:

a) *h₁ and *h₂ change the color of the preceding/following *e
b) disappearance of laryngeals in closed syllables lengthens all preceding syllabic segments

The first change is already present in PIE (where the change is still just allophonic), while the second one is a post-PIE process that nonetheless occurs everywhere except for some cases in Anatolian (p. 177). For PIE *e, the following formulas generally stand:

\[
\begin{align*}
*h₁e & > (*h₁e >) *e & *eh₁C/# > *ē \\
*h₂e & > *h₂a > *a & *eh₂C/# > *ā \\
*h₃e & > *h₃o > *o & *eh₃C/# > *ō
\end{align*}
\]

Thus, *h₂ changes the preceding/following *e to *a, and *h₃ changes it to *o, while *h₁ does not influence vowel color. Only *e (and *ey/ew) are influenced by *h₁ and *h₂, while other vowels (*o, *ē, *ō + *i, *u, and other diphthongs) are not (possible original *aH/Ha cannot be distinguished from *eh₁h₂e). Laryngeals that disappear in closed syllables – word-internally (*-VHC-) and word-finally (*-VH#, originally perhaps only before a pause or in cases when the following word began with a non-syllabic segment) – lengthen compensatorily all preceding syllabic segments (except already long *ē, *ō): *e, *o (p. 45–46), *i, *u (p. 38), *m̥, *n̥, *l̥, *r̥ (p. 37–38). Laryngeals in intervocalic position (*VHV) color the surrounding vowels but after that drop without compensatory lengthening (cf. gen. sg. *-eh₂es > *-ah₂as > *-aas > *-ās, p. 66).

*HV (laryngeal + vowel)

In certain cases, an initial laryngeal (*#HV-) can be directly reconstructed (e.g., if it yields #h- in Anatolian, p. 177). In others, one can infer it indirectly (see below). Yet in
some cases, an initial laryngeal is reconstructed because of theoretical/structural reasons only – e.g., in words like *h₁e_kwos (p. 22). Here, one could as easily reconstruct *e_kwos (because *e- and *h₁e- would reflect the same), but nowadays *h₁e_kwos is often reconstructed because it is believed that most PIE words began with a consonant (p. 42, 52). The combination *HV can occur word-internally (*-C/VHV-) as well.

*h₁e

PIE *h₁esti ‘is’ > Ved. āsti (Av. asti), Gr. ἐστι, Lat. est, OCS jestь, OLith. ėsti, Goth. ists (Eng. is), Hitt. ėšzi, OIr. is, Arm. ē
PIE *h₁edmi ‘I eat’ > Ved. ādmi, Gr. ἔδω, Lat. edō (⇒ Eng. edible), OCS jams (< *đmb, with Winter’s Law lengthening – p. 481), Lith. ėsti ‘to eat (for animals)’, Goth. ītan ‘to eat’ (OEng. etan > Eng. eat), Hitt. ēṭmi
PIE *h₁el(h₁)(n)- ‘deer’ > Gr. ἔκφως, OCS jelenь, Lith. ėlni(a)s, OIr. ēlīt ‘doe, hind’, Arm. ēln ‘deer-cow, hind’, Toch. A yāl ‘gazelle’

The development of *h₁e is basically the same as that of *e (p. 40). In many cases (like *h₁el(h₁)(n)-), the initial *h₁e- is reconstructed on structural grounds alone. However, this is not always the case: in *h₁es- and *h₁ed- the existence of initial *h₁- can be proven. It is proven by the initial a- of Hitt. 3 pl. pres. ašanzi < *h₁sonti (Ved. sánti, p. 47, 93), adanzi < *h₁donti, etc. The initial laryngeal is also indicated by the lengthened negative a- in Ved. ptcp. ā́-sat- ‘which is not’ < PIE *n̥-h₁sn̥t-.

*h₂e

PIE *h₂ek-s- ‘axle, axis’ > Ved. ākṣas (YAv. aša- ‘shoulder’), Gr. ἀξον, Lat. axis, OCS osь, Lith. ašis, OHG ahsa, MW echel (OIr. ais ‘back’)
PIE *h₂ek(r)- ‘sharp’ > Ved. āśris ‘sharp side, corner’, Gr. ἀκρος ‘topmost, outermost’, Lat. acūtus (⇒ Eng. acute), OCS ostrь, Lith. aštrús, OEng. awel (Eng. awl), Gaul. Axro-talus (‘with high forehead’ (pers. name)), Arm. ašel ‘needle’, Toch. B akwate

Although *h₂e is usually written for (mor)phonological reasons, this was most likely phonetically *h₂a already in the last phase of PIE. PIE *h₂e reflects just like PIE *a (p. 41), except for Anat. ḫa- ( seriousness) and perhaps Arm. ha- (p. 430). Initial *a- is often reconstructed as original *h₂e- (p. 42), even if there are no concrete traces of a laryngeal (as in *h₂eks- or *h₂ek(r)-).

*h₃e

PIE *h₃ek”- ‘eye’ > Ved. ākṣi- (Av. aś-), Gr. ὀσε ‘two eyes’, Lat. oculus, OCS oko, Lith. akis, Arm. akn, Toch. B ēk
PIE *h₃ewis ‘sheep’ > Ved. āvis, Gr. (Hom.) ὀἰς, Lat. ovis, OCS ovьca, Lith. avis, Goth. awistr ‘sheepfold’ (Eng. ewe), Mlr. ź, Hitt./CLuw. īwī-, Arm. ēwiv ‘shepherd’, Toch. B awi ‘ewes’
PIE *h₃ektō(w) ‘eight’ > Ved. aṣṭāu (YAv. aṣṭa), Gr. ὀκτώ (⇒ Eng. octo-pus), Lat. octō (⇒ Eng. October), OCS osmь, Lith. aštuonì, Goth. ahtau (Eng. eight), OIr. ocht¯ (Gaul. oxtumetos ‘eight’), Toch. B okt

PIE *h₃e reflects just like PIE *o (p. 40), except for Anat. initial ha- and Arm. ho-(p. 430). Alternatively, instead of *h₃e, it is possible to reconstruct *Ho (*h₂o- when we have Anat. ḥa-, p. 177). It is impossible to distinguish original *Ho from *h₃e.

*VH (vowel + laryngeal)

In most cases, the reflexes of *eh₁ and *eh₂ are identical to the reflexes of *ē and *ō (p. 40–41) respectively. Most instances of *ā seem to originate in *eh₂ (but cf. p. 42).

*eh₁

PIE *meh₁n(s)- ‘month; moon’ > Ved. mā́s (GAv. mā ‘moon’), Gr. μήν ‘month’, Lat. mēnis ‘month’, OCS měsęcь, Lith. mėnuo ‘month’, Goth. mena (Eng. moon), menops (Eng. month), OIr. mí ‘month’, Arm. amis ‘month’, Toch. B meňe


PIE *seh₁- ‘sow’ > Lat. sēmen ‘seed’ (⇒ Eng. semen), OCS sěti, Lith. sėti, Goth. mana-seþs ‘mankind’ (OEng. sǣd > Eng. seed), OIr. sil ‘seed’

Only Anatolian differentiates original *ē from *eh₁ (p. 176).

*eh₂

PIE *meh₂tēr ‘mother’ > Ved. mātā́ (Av. mātar-), Gr. (Dor.) μάτηρ [ā] (Myc. ma-te, Att. ματηρ), Lat. māter, OCS mati, Lith. arch. mátė (Latv. māte), OEng. mödor (Eng. mother), OIr. máthir (Gaul. dat. pl. matrebo), Alb. motër ‘sister’ (cf. also *bʰreḥ₂tēr, p. 18)

PIE *peh₂(s)- ‘guard, graze’ > Lat. pāscō ‘I feed, pasture’, OCS pasti ‘to pasture, herd, feed’, Goth. fodjan ‘to feed, nourish’ (Eng. food), Hitt. paḥš- ‘guard’, (?) OIr. ás ‘growth’, Toch. B pāsk- ‘guard’

PIE *kᵉh₂s- ‘cough’ > Ved. kās-, CS kašľjati ‘to cough’, Lith. kūsėti ‘to cough’, OEng. hwōsan ‘to wheeze’, Alb. kollë, Toch. B kosi

When comparative evidence points to *ā, a PIE *eh₂ (phonetically, and written as such in reconstructions by some – cf. e.g. the chapter on Armenian, *ah₂ already in PIE) is usually reconstructed now. Traditionally adduced examples for a non-laryngeal *ā (p. 42) are dubious (though not impossible). In some cases, the *h₂ in *eh₂ is substantiated by Anatolian (cf. *peh₂(s)-); in others (like *kᵉh₂s-) it cannot be strictly proven (BSl. intonations are not really conclusive in distinguishing long grade and *VH, as some think – p. 107), and in yet others *h₂ can be indirectly proven: *me-h₂tēr obviously has the same suffix as *p-h₂tēr (p. 46), *bʰre-h₂tēr (p. 18), *dʰug-h₂tēr (p. 47), etc., with the laryngeal being directly attested in Indic as the aspiration of the preceding consonant in the last word (p. 30).
The reconstructed PIE *eh₂ yields *ā in most languages (the exception being Hitt. -ah- in some positions). In Indo-Iranian this *ā merges with *ē/ō into ā. Latin and Celtic preserve ā, and Armenian has the reflex a. In Greek dialects, ā is also preserved, but it changes into η in Attic-Ionic (but not after ε, ι, ρ in Attic, p. 295). BSl. *ā is preserved in Slav./Latv. a but changes into o [ō] in Lithuanian. The reflex o is seen also in Albanian and Germanic (PGmc *ō > Goth. <o> [ō], OEng. <ō> [ō]). In Tocharian, PIE *ā yields o (Toch. B) and a (Toch. A).

*eh₃


PIE *ghen₃- ‘know’ > Ved. jānā- (GAev. -zān-), Lat. γνῶ ‘I get to know’, OCS znati ‘to know’, Lith. žinoti ‘to know’, Toch. A knān-


There is no difference between reflexes of *eh₃ (phonetically/allophonically *oh₃ already in PIE), *oH, and *ō (p. 41).

*CHC (interconsonantal laryngeal)

Laryngeals between consonants (*CHC), in postconsonantal position word-finally (*-CH#), and in word-initial pre-consonantal position (*HC-) are called “syllabic” and thus sometimes marked as *H (in *CRHC it is always the resonants that are syllabic except with the present tense nasal infix – p. 31, 39). However, it is quite possible that they were not really phonetically syllabic but rather pronounced with a prop-vowel *ə.

*Ch₁C


PIE *ghen₃tōr ‘begetter’ > Ved. jānītā ‘begetter, father’, Gr. γενέτωρ ‘begetter, ancestor’, Lat. genitor ‘begetter, parent, father’ (< *gēnotōr); cf. OCS żęt (BCMS žēt), Lith. žęnas ‘son-in-law’

PIE *wem₃h₁ ‘vomit’ > Ved. vam(i)-, Gr. ἐμέω ‘I vomit’, Lat. vomitus ‘vomiting’ (⇒ Eng. vomit), Lith. vėmti ‘to vomit’, Goth. ga-wamma ‘unclean, stained’ (< PGmc *wammaz < *wom₃h₁n-)

*Ch₂C

PIE *ph₂tēr ‘father’ > Ved. pītā (GAev. ptā, dat. sg. fadrōi, YAv. pita, OPers. pītā), Gr. πατέρ, Lat. pater, (?) CS strō ‘uncle’ (< *ptr-), Goth. fadar (Eng. father), OIr. ath(a)ir (Gaul. dat. pl. atrebo), Arm. hayr, Toch. B pācer
PIE *dugh₂tēr 'daughter' > Ved. duhitā, (GAv. dugēdar-), Gr. ἄγατηρ, Osc. futīr, OCS ḏśiți (< PSl. *dškīti), Lith. dūktē, Goth. daithār (Eng. daughter), Gaul. dux-tir (Clb. gen. sg. tuateros), Hitt. durttariyati/aš 'female functionary' (⇐ Luw.?, HLuw. tuwatrali-), Arm. dustr, Toch. B tkācer

PIE *senh₂r- 'seek to' accomplish, reach' > Ved. san(i)- 'win, reach, get', Hitt. šanḫzi 'seeks, looks for, attempts'

*Ch₁C

PIE *h₁erh₃trōm 'plough' (cf. *h₁erh₁-, p. 44) > Gr. ἀρότρον, Lat. arātrum (with analogical *ā after arāre 'to plough'), Cz. rádlo, Lith. ārklas 'wooden plough' (Latv. arķls), Ofr. arathar (< PCelt. *aratro-)

PIE *dh₂-tos 'given' (cf. *deh₂-, p. 46) > Ved. a-di-mahi 'we shared', Gr. δοτός, Lat. datus (⇒ Eng. date)

PIE *ph₂tos 'drunk' (participle, cf. *peh₂-, p. 46) > Gr. ποτός 'drinkable'

In certain languages and in some conditions laryngeals can drop entirely in this position – cf. the word ‘daughter’ with the vocalic outcome in Greek (as always there), Vedic, Tocharian, and likely Celtiberian, but with the zero-reflex in other languages. The only language that distinguishes *h₁, *h₂, and *h₃ in this position is Greek, where one gets e/o/o respectively. In Old Indic, the reflex is usually -i-, and in certain unclear conditions it is -i (cf. Ved. brāvīti ‘speaks’ < *mlewh₂-, and occasionally -O- (cf. Ved. dadhmās ‘we place’ < *pedh₁mes). In Iranian, the laryngeals are much less often vocalized to i (p. 267). It is not clear why Old Indic sometimes shows the aspiration of the preceding stop (duhitā ‘daughter’) and sometimes does not (pitā ‘father’) (p. 30). This is perhaps related to a different position of the prop-vowel: *dugh₂[ə]tēr (p. 47) but *p[ə]h₂tēr (p. 46). In Tocharian we find ā, and in other languages, including Armenian (p. 430), it is a (unless dropped altogether). In Balto-Slavic, *VRHC yields *VRC with the acute accent (PSL. *, BCMS’, Sln. ’/, Lith. ’, Latv. ‘/) from the laryngeal. In Anatolian, ḥ is preserved in some conditions.

*#HC- (initial pre-consonantal laryngeal)

*hh₁C-

PIE *h₁se/onti 'they are' > Ved. sānti (GAv. hōṇtī), Gr. (Myc.) e-e-si /ehens/, Lat. sunt, OCS sōtšt, Goth. sind, Hitt. aṣaṇzi, Arm. en

PIE *h₁lewdb- ‘grow (up); people; free’ > Ved. rōdhati ‘grows’ (GAv. raodōnti ‘they grow’), Gr. ἕλκεοθεορος ‘free’, Lat. liber ‘free’ (⇒ Eng. liberty), līberī ‘children’, OCS liudie ‘people’, Lith. liūdūdis ‘people, nation’, Goth. liudan ‘to grow’ (OHG liut ‘people’)

PIE *h₁su ‘good’ > Ved. sū- (Av. hū-), Gr. ἑό- (⇒ Eng. eu-thanasia), OCS sǫ- (in sǫ-drav̂ ‘healthy’, sǫ-mrьtь ‘death’), Ofr. su-

*hh₁C-

PIE *h₁stēr ‘star’ > Ved. instr. pl. stībhis (Av. star-), Gr. ἀστήρ (⇒ Eng. asteroid), Lat. stella (⇒ Eng. stellar), Goth. stairno (Eng. star), Ofr. ser, Hitt. ḫaṣṭerza /ḫšterz/, Arm. astl, Toch. B šcīr ye

**PIE **\( ^{h}_{1}nēr \) ‘man’ > Ved. náras ‘men’ (GAv. nā́), Gr. ἀνήρ (⇒ Eng. Andrew, android), Osc. niir, MW ner ‘chief, hero’, (?) Hitt. in-narawawar ‘strength’, Arm. ayr, Alb. njer(i) ‘human being’, NPhryg. αναρ

**h\(_{2}\)C-**

**PIE **\( ^{h}_{2}neh_{-}m \) ‘name’ > Ved. náma (YAv. nqma), Gr. ὄνομα (⇒ Eng. onomastics), Lat. nōmen (⇒ Eng. nominal), OCS ime (⇒ BSL. *innen- < *\( ^{h}_{2}\)n̥,men-), Goth. naman (Eng. name), Olr. ainim (⇒ PCelt. *anman < *\( ^{h}_{2}\)nh,men-), Hitt. lāman, Arm. anun, Toch. B ūn, NPhryg. ῦναμ

**PIE **\( ^{h}_{2}b^\prime ruHs \) ‘(eye)brow’ > Ved. bhrū́s (YAv. dat. pl. brvaθyqm), Gr. ὀφρύς, OCS instr. pl. bruṿmi, Lith. dial. bruṿis, OEng. brū (Eng. brow), Olr. for-brūṛ, Toch. B pārẉṇā ‘brows’, Ancient Macedonian (Hesychius) ἀβροῦτες

**PIE **\( ^{h}_{2}\)neyd- ‘revile’ > Ved. nindanti ‘they revile’ (YAv. nāismī ‘I revile’), Gr. ὄνειδος ‘reproach’, Lith. niedėti ‘to scorn, despise’, Goth. ga-naitjan ‘to revile’, Arm. anicanem ‘I curse’

Initial pre-consonantal laryngeals disappear in most languages. One exception is Anatolian, where \( ^{h}_{1}-/^{h}_{2}- \) > \( h- \) in some positions and \( ^{h}_{1} > a- \) (which is disputed) (p. 47). The other is the Greek-Macedonian-Phrygian-Armenian dialectal group, where \( ^{h}_{1}, \; ^{h}_{2}, \; h_{3} \) vocalize – the reflexes (traditionally called “prothetic vowels”) are \( ē-, \; ō-, \; ō̐- \) respectively in Greek (and Phrygian) and \( e-, \; i-, \; a- \) respectively in Armenian (p. 429–430).

**Diphthongs**

In PIE, all combinations of vowels and resonants (even *er, *om, etc.) are often regarded as diphthongs (like in modern Lithuanian). However, only the combinations of vowels and *y/w were diphthongs in a strict sense:

\[ *ē̆y \quad *ō̆ y \quad *ā y \]
\[ *ē̆w \quad *ō̆ w \quad *āw \]

Only these have special reflexes in IE languages – e.g., PIE *ey does not reflect as a mere sequence of *e and *y, while *er does (cf. *wert-, p. 33), so there is no need to treat the latter separately in comparative phonology. Long diphthongs (*ē̆y, *ō̆y, *ē̆w, *ō̆w) are rare, just like the long-grade *ē, *ō̐ (p. 40–41). The position of *āy and *āw is similar to that of *a (p. 42). Secondary *a- and *o-diphthongs can arise from laryngeal combinations (p. 43): \( h^{2}_{2}ey/\w > *a\w/ \) and \( *e\w/ \) and \( *h^{2}_{2}ey/\w > *o\w/ \), \( *e\w/ \) (or *\( H\)i/\w) > *o\w/. Cf. PIE *neh\(_{2}\)us ‘ship’ (Gr. ναewitness) with *eh\(_{2}\)u/ \( > a(h_{2})u > *aw/ \), but the clear presence of the laryngeal in the acc. sg. *neh\(_{2}\)m (Gr. ναewitness, Ved. nāvam, Lat. nāvem) with *eh\(_{2}\)w > *āw. Only tautosyllabic (pre-consonantal) \( V\w/c \) and (word-final) \( V\w/# \) sequences are diphthongs – heterosyllabic (pre-vocalic) \( V\w/V \) sequences are not. Cf. the special diphthongal reflex of *ey in PIE *weyd- ‘know’ (Ved. ved-/, p. 49) or i-stem voc. sg. *ey (Ved. -e, p. 72), but regular reflex of *e and *y in non-diphthongal PIE *treyes ‘three’ (Ved. trāyas).

There are four basic kinds of development of diphthongs in IE languages: (a) an unchanged diphthong (e.g., PIE *ew > Gr. έω), (b) a different diphthong (e.g., PIE *ow >
Gmc *aw), (c) a monophthong (e.g., PIE *ey > OCS i), and (d) subsequent monophthongizations and diphthongizations (e.g., PIE *ey > East Baltic *ę > Lith. ie). Both monophthongizations (of diphthongs) and diphthongizations (of long vowels) are typologically common. PIE diphthongs are best preserved in (the oldest stages of) Ancient Greek.

*ey

PIE *deywos ‘god’ > Ved. devás (GAv. daeuua- (pre-Zarathustra god), OPers. daiv- ‘godly’) (OLat. deiuos ‘god’; ⇒ Eng. divine), (?) OCS divъ ‘astonishment’, Lith. diẽvas ‘god’, deĩvė ‘goddess’ (Latv. diẽvs, OPruss. deiw(a)s), OEng. Tiw (name of a god, cf. Tues-day), OIr. dia (Gaul. Deuo-gnata ‘born of god’ (pers. name), Clb. Teiuo-reikis ‘god’s king’ (pers. name))

PIE *h₁ey- ‘go’ > Ved. éti ‘goes’ (YAv. a-ēti, OPers. aitiy), Gr. εἶμι ‘I go’, Lat. īs ‘you go’ (Paelignian pl. eite ‘go!’), OCS iti ‘to go’, Lith. eĩti ‘to go’ (Latv. iêt ‘to go’, OPruss. ėit ‘goes’)

PIE *weyd- ‘see; know’ > Ved. védas ‘knowledge, insight’, Gr. εἶδον ‘I saw’ (⇒ Eng. idol), Lat. uīsus ‘sight’, OCS viděti ‘to see’, Lith. dial. veizdėti ‘to look’, Goth. fair-weitjan ‘to observe’, OIr. fiadu ‘witness’

PIE *ey remains unchanged in early Greek, Old Latin, Old Prussian, and sometimes in Lithuanian. In Indo-Iranian, where *e/o/a > *a, *ey/oy/ay merge into *ay (cf. *ew/ow/aw > *aw), which is preserved in OPers. ai, yields Av. ā in open and ō in closed syllables (ē finally), and becomes e in Old Indic (always long and still considered a “diphthong” in Old Indic grammar tradition). Earliest Greek ei /ei̯ / monophthongized to a closed long /ē/ by the time of the Classical Greek in Athens in the 5th century BCE (and to /ī/ even later) – p. 296. Old Latin still had ei (up to Plautus and Terence), which later yielded i. BSl. *ey was preserved in Old Prussian and in certain conditions in Lithuanian, while in others *ey > *ē > ie (p. 488; traditionally, it is thought that *ey/oy/ay yield ie originally only in stressed syllables, which would later be obscured by analogies). In Slavic, *ey > i (originally always long). In Germanic, PIE *ey > *i (written in Gothic as <ei>). In Celtic, *ey > *ē (perhaps not in Celtiberian and Lepontic, p. 360, 362; OIr. é > iα). PIE *ey monophthongizes to PANat. *ē (Hitt. e, p. 176), to i in Tocharian and Albanian (p. 562), and to ē in Armenian (p. 425).

*oy (*h₁ey, *eh₁i)

PIE *loykʷ(m)- ‘remaining’ > Ved. rékuas ‘inherited property’ (GAv. raēnas- ‘inheritance’), Gr. λοιπός ‘remaining’, OCS oť-lekũ ‘remainder’, Lith. ėt-laikas ‘remainder’, OHG lehan (< PGmc *layaz- ‘loan’), Eng. loan

PIE *woyK- ‘settlement’ > Ved. vešás ‘inhabitant’ (YAv. váes̱a- ‘servant’), Gr. Ὠκος ‘house’ (⇒ Eng. eco-nomy, etc.), Lat. uicus ‘village’ (OLat. uicium), Lith. viëš-pats ‘lord’ (OPruss. acc. sg. wais-pattin ‘housewife’)

PIE *h₁oyn/k/wos ‘one’ (p. 89) > Ved. īkas (Av. a-ēuua-, OPers. aiva-), Gr. oioς ‘alone’, Lat. ūnus (OLat. acc. sg. oino), Lith. viēnas (Latv. viëns, OPruss. ains), Goth. ains (Eng. one), OIr. ōen

PIE *oy is preserved in Greek (oī), Old Latin, and Celtic (written as <oi>, <ōe>, etc. in Old Irish). See *ey for Indo-Iranian. OLat. oī remains a diphthong (written as <oe>) in
seven words after labials (cf. foedus ‘treaty’) and yields ā elsewhere in Classical Latin. (initial *woy- > uī-, however). In Balto-Slavic, *oy and *ay merge into *ay, preserved as ai in Old Prussian and yielding, as with *ey above, ai in some positions in Lithuanian and ie (via *ē) in others (p. 488). In Slavic, the reflex is é and sometimes -i finally. In Germanic, *oy and *ay also merge into *ay (Goth. ai). Hittite has ai for PIE *oy before coronal consonants, otherwise e (p. 176). In Armenian, PIE *ey and *oy yield ē (p. 425). In Albanian, PIE *oy (and *ay) yield e (p. 562). In Tocharian B, it is ei (> ai), and e in Tocharian A.

*ay (*h₂ey, *eh₂i)

PIE *kaykos ‘one-eyed, blind’ > Skr. kekaras ‘squinting’, Lat. caecus ‘blind’, Goth. haihs ‘one-eyed’, OIr. cáech ‘one-eyed’

PIE *laywos ‘left’ > Gr. λαῖός, Lat. laeuan, OCS лёва, (?) Toch. B laiwo ‘lassitude’

PIE *h₂eydh- ‘burn’ > Ved. ēdhas ‘firewood’ (YAv. aēsma-), Gr. αἴθω ‘I kindle’, Lat. aestus ‘heat’, Lith. iėsmė ‘firewood’, OEng. ād ‘funeral pile’ (< PGmc *ayðaz), OIr. áed ‘fire’, Alb. (h)ethe ‘fever’

For the problem of *a(y), cf. p. 42. Initial *ay- is usually interpreted as original *h₂ey-, while *ay is often assumed after velars (p. 42), though alternative reconstructions like *kh₂eykos and *keh₂ikos are not unimaginable. See *oy above for Indo-Iranian, Balto-Slavic, and Germanic. Old Latin still has ai, later spelled as <ae> (and pronounced as a diphthong by the upper classes). In Armenian (ay) and Celtic, the diphthong is preserved (Old Irish has a late merger with *oy, p. 366). In Hittite, ai is preserved before coronals; otherwise it is e (p. 176). Tocharian B preserves ai (cf. e in Tocharian A).

*ew

PIE *bʰewdh- ‘be awake/aware’ > Ved. bódhati ‘is aware, notices’ (Av. baoḍati), Gr. πεῦθομαι ‘I find out/inquire’, OCS bljusti ‘to watch/guard’, Goth. ana-biudan ‘to bid/command’

PIE *h₂lewdh- ‘free; man’ > Gr. ἐλεύθερος ‘free’, OCS ljudio ‘people’, Lith. liūdis ‘people, nation’, OEng. lēod ‘man’ (< PGmc *lewōzī)


PIE *ew remains unchanged in Greek (eu). In Indo-Iranian, *ew/ow/aw merge into *aw (cf. *ey/oy/ay), preserved in OPers. au, yielding Av. ao in open and āu in closed syllables (-(uu)ō finally), and o in Old Indic (always long and considered a “diphthong”). In Archaic Latin eu merges with ou < PIE *ow and later yields ū. BSI. *ew is perhaps preserved in OPruss. eu in some cases in Lithuanian it yields iau (p. 489, 498), and in Slavic (palatalizing) ’u. Gmc *ew yields Goth. īu (cf. p. 40). In Celtic, *ew tended to change to *ow (> OIr. mostly uā, p. 366). Monophthongization occurs in Anatolian (Hitt. u, p. 176), Albanian (e), and Tocharian (’u). In Armenian, *ew and *ow merge into oy.

*ow

PIE *bʰowdʰeye- ‘wake (somebody) up’ > Ved. bodháyatī ‘wakes up’ (YAv. baoḍaiie-iti ‘reveals’), OCS u-buditi ‘to wake up’, Lith. báudyti ‘to incite’

PIE *h₁rowdʰos ‘red’ > Ved. lōhās ‘reddish’, Lat. rūfus (a Sabellic loanword), Cz. rudý, Lith. raūdas ‘reddish’, Goth. raufis (Eng. red), OIr. rícad (Gaul. Roudius (pers. name))

For Indo-Iranian and Armenian see *ew. The earliest Greek still had a diphthong ou, which became a long closed /ō/ and later /ū/ in Attic (p. 296). OLat. ou became Classical Latin ū. In Balto-Slavic, *ow and *aw yielded *aw (preserved as Lith. au), which in turn gave Slav. u. Germanic also had merger of *ow and *aw (cf. Goth. au).

PIE *ow is preserved in Celtic (> OIr. ó > úa). Hittite has ū but au before coronals (p. 176) as reflexes for *ow and *aw, the Albanian reflex is a, while Tocharian B has eu (later au, cf. Toch. A u).

*aw (*h₂ew, *eh₂u)


PIE *h₂ews- ‘ear’ > Lat. auris, OCS uxo, Lith. ausis, Goth. auso (Eng. ear), OIr. auo (Gaul. Su-au sia (pers. name))

PIE *h₂ewg- ‘grow’ > Ved. ójas ‘strength’ (GAv. aogō), Gr. αὔξω ‘I grow’, Lat. augēō ‘I increase’, Lith. āugti ‘to grow’, Goth. aukandi ‘increasing’

Concerning the PIE status of *aw, cf. *a and *ay (p. 42). Initially, *h₂ew- is usually reconstructed, while *aw occurs, for instance, in some loanwords (cf. *tawros, p. 57). For Indo-Iranian see *ew; for Balto-Slavic, Germanic, and Hititite see *ow. Greek, Latin, and Celtic preserve the original αυ/au (OIr. óa/ó). PIE *aw is preserved in Armenian (aw) and Tocharian B (au, cf. Toch. A o). In Albanian, the reflex is a (p. 562).

Long diphthongs

Like *ę and *ő, long *ęy, *őy and *ęw, *őw (original and resulting from various contractions) were rather rare and later merged with short diphthongs in most languages. The special reflexes are clearest in Indo-Iranian, where they yield *ąy (OInd. ai, word-finally -ā; Av. āi) and *ąw (OInd. au; Av. āu) respectively. Cf. PIE *g*őws (p. 24, 71) and instr. pl. *-őys (p. 65, 266). Greek has special reflexes for *-ęy(-), *-őy(-) (p. 289–290, cf. dat. sg. *-őy, p. 65).

| TABLE 1.9 THE REFLEXES OF PIE DIPHTHONGS |
|-----------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *ey | e | ai | i | i | i | ei | e | è | i | i |
| *oy | e | ai | i | o | e/u | e | i | ai | o| (èe) | e | a | A | e | B | e> | a|
| *ay | e | ai | ai | a | e | e | i | ai | ai | a | (àe) | e | a | ay | e | A | e | B | a|
| *ew | o | aoi/u | e | u | u | iau | iu | iau/o | u | oy | e | u |
| *ow | o | aoi/u | o | u | u | au | au | iau/o | u | au | oy | a | A | o | B | eu | a> | au |
| *aw | o | aoi/u | o | au | u | au | au | iau/o | u | au | aw | a | A | o | B | au |
PHONOTACTICS

Syllable structure and consonant clusters

PIE had CVC, CV, and VC type syllables – with consonant clusters also, (CC)CVC(CC), etc. As usual, more types of clusters were permitted in medial (heterosyllabic) than in initial or final (homosyllabic) position – for instance, the cluster *mbh- was possible medially in *gombhos (p. 18), but not initially (where it would be **mbb-, p. 31) and finally (there was no final *-b, p. 53). As in living languages, it is sometimes difficult to ascertain the exact syllabification in medial positions – e.g., is it h₁ek-wos or h₁e-kwos (p. 22), ne-bhos or nebhos (p. 31), or both.

It seems that onsetless initial syllables (#VC-) were rare. It is common practice now to reconstruct initial laryngeals even when not strictly provable, though in some cases they can be proven (p. 44). Thus, the frequency of initial VC- depends on whether one prefers to reconstruct *ekwos or h₁ekwos (which in cases of h₁e-) also depends on one’s position on the status of PIE *a – p. 42). It is possible that #VC- was usual in pronouns, e.g., in forms like *ey ‘that’ (p. 87), though here one can also reconstruct h₁ey. In any case, onsetless initial syllables were possible with syllabic resonants, like *n- ‘non-’ or *udn- ‘water’ (in oblique cases of *wod). In cases with zero grade only, optional initial laryngeals are theoretically reconstructable, cf. *(H)ish₁/ıros (Ved. ısirás ‘strong, active’, Gr. ἱερός ‘holy; strong’).

As for single initial consonants, it seems that only *r- was not permitted (p. 32), so *Hr- may be reconstructed instead of *r- even when not strictly provable (e.g., in *(H) rotHos – p. 32). Initial *TR- (like *klewos ‘fame’ > Ved. śravas ‘renown’, Gr. κλέος) was not possible in case of homorganic stops + nasals (e.g., *pm-, *tn-, etc.), though this was normal in medial heterosyllabic position (e.g., *potnih₁ ‘mistress’ > Ved. pātim, Gr. πότνια). Initial *SC- was usual (cf. *steyg₁ (p. 19), *sneyg₁b- (p. 25)), and initial *ks- was also apparently possible (cf. *ks-, p. 16). Only some cases of (labial + dental/alveolar) *RR- (with asyllabic first resonant!) were permitted: *wr-, *wl-, *ml- (cf. *mlëwh₁ > GAv. mraomi ‘I say’), *mr- (cf. comp. *mrebg₁wyōs ‘shorter’ > Lat. breuis ‘short’), and *mn- (cf. *mnëh₁ ‘think’ (LIV)). Before other consonants, resonants were always syllabic: *RC- (p. 31). Initial *CHV- is suspicious, though some would reconstruct it in some cases of PIE *a (p. 42, 50). In cases like *ph₁tēr, laryngeals were “syllabic” (p. 46). In cases of expected *CHR-, a laryngeal metathesis occurs (*CHR- > *CRH-). Cf. *peh₁- ‘drink’ (Ved. aor. apāt ‘he drank’, Lat. pōtus ‘drunk’) but *ph₁i- (a zero grade of *peh₁y-) > *pih₁- (metathesis) > Ved. piūs ‘drunk’, OCS piti ‘to drink’. Initial *HC- (frequently with resonants, less with stops and *s) was permitted, as proven by “prothetic vowels” in some languages (p. 48), but was perhaps “syllabic” in those positions (p. 46–47).

Initial clusters of two stops were infrequent in PIE, but some cases seem to have existed (in spite of the tendency to eliminate such clusters). The initial cluster *pk₁- is apparently seen in Av. fšūmant- ‘wealthy; having cattle’ (cf. PIE *peḵu ‘cattle’ > Ved. pāśu, Goth. faḥu). In some cases, a non-phonemic “secondary schwa” appears to break a cluster (which yields a in Latin and most languages but apparently ı in Greek): cf. *kʷtwar-[kʷɔtwɔr₁]-¹² ‘four’ (in oblique cases) > Lat. quattuor, Gr. (Hom.) πιένς (the cluster is attested without a prop-vowel medially in YAv. ʔ-xtūrım ‘four times’ < *kʷtury-, and initially in Ved. turīya- ‘fourth’ with probably later cluster simplifications); *ptneh₁- [pateh₁] > Lat. pandō, Gr. πανήμι ‘I spread out’ (cf. also Hitt. taknās below). In other cases, original initial clusters had probably been simplified already in PIE, cf. *kmtom (p. 34) <
*dkɔmtɔm ‘hundred’, obviously derived from *dekm(t) ‘ten’ (p. 34, 90). Some all-stop initial clusters (like Gr. πτερόν ‘feather’ from PIE *pet- ‘fly’) are likely post-PIE, and others (like *pθe-hk- ‘to duck’ in LIV) are dubious. A number of original dental + velar clusters seem to have existed – e.g., *tkt- ‘hit, injure’, *dʰqʰuhH- ‘fish’, *dʰqʰ(e)m- ‘earth’, etc. These clusters were rarely preserved (cf. Toch. A tkam ‘earth’) – either the first stop drops (Lith. žūvis ‘fish’; OCS zemlja ‘earth’); a metathesis occurs (*tkt- > *ktn- [kʰ-] > Ved. kṣanôti ‘injures’, Gr. κτείνω ‘I kill’; *dʰqʰ-em- > *gʰd‘em- [gʰdʰ-] > Ved. kṣām-, Gr. γῆθων ‘earth’); an epenthetic vowel emerges (Hitt. gen. sg. taknās ‘earth’) or, rarely, a prothetic vowel appears (Gr. ἱγβάς ‘fish’). In both initial and medial dental + velar clusters, there is often a metathesis (as in *dʰqʰ(e)m- > *gʰd‘em(m)-) already in PIE (probably not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð in PIE (like *pteh and *THV- above), as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35). In these cases (the so-called *thorn-clusters), we are thus dealing not with all-stop clusters but with stop + fricative clusters (similar to *ks- or *THV- above) if the traditional reconstruction is correct.

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).

As for triconsonantal initial clusters, almost all of them had a fricative (*s/H) as the first or the second element. Those in *str- were the most usual (e.g., PIE *stṛy-, *str- > Lat. stringō ‘I strip off’, OCS strīgo ‘I cut’), the *CsC- ones were rare and likely onomatopoeic (cf. *pšter- > Gr. πτάρνυμαι ‘I sneeze’, Lat. sternuō ‘I sneeze’; *ksweybh- ‘swing’ (LIV); *ksnew- (p. 16)). Possible clusters with initial laryngeal (*h, *s/h) already in PIE (probable not in all conditions), and the dental stop (*t/d/dʰ) changes to an allomorphic *b/ð/ð, as traditionally reconstructed, with special flexes in some languages (OInd. ks, Lat. s but Gr. κτ/γϑ – cf. *h₂rkhpos, p. 35).
The following fricative-first clusters are attested: *-Hs (cf. *muHs – p. 38), *-Ht (cf. root aor. *deh₂t ‘gave’ – p. 96), and *-st (cf. inj. *h₁est ‘is’ – p. 93, 97). Clusters of *-Ts type were usual: *pōds (p. 15), *h₃rēgs ‘king’ (> Lat. rēx), *snøygʷs ‘snow’ (p. 25), etc. All-stop final clusters were exceptional, cf. *glagt [-kt] ‘milk’ (Gr. γάλα, also γλάγος, Lat. lac). As a parallel to *(s)TR- initial clusters, there were also some final triconsonantal clusters: *-CCs (*nogʷts > *nokʷts (p. 32) > Lat. nox, Goth. nahts; ptcpl. *-nts (p. 104)) and *-Cst (cf. sigm. aor. forms like *yēwgst ‘yoked’ – p. 96).

Not all combinations of stops were permitted (or usual) in PIE roots (in the onset and coda). There were two root constraints (or near-constraints since there are some counterexamples): (a) no aspirated and voiceless stops together (i.e., no roots like **pedʰ- or **gʰet-) and (b) no two voiced stops together (i.e., no roots like **ged-). Constraint (a) does not include *sT- initial roots like *steygʰ- (p. 19) and constraint (b) is sometimes interpreted glottally (p. 18).

**Phonological rules in PIE**

We have already mentioned Pinault’s Law (p. 30), laryngeal metathesis (p. 52), the post-velar allophonic *p/ð/ðʰ (p. 53), and here we shall briefly list some of the other phonological rules of PIE. Some rules will be discussed in chapter 2 “Proto-Indo-European Morphology” (p. 70) and for Bartholomae’s Law cf. p. 229.

**Dental clusters**

In PIE, when two dentals (*t/d/dʰ) occurred next to each other (on the morpheme border), an *-s- was automatically inserted between them: *wid-tos ‘seen/known’ (cf. *weyd-, p. 49) > *wid-s-tos [witstos], *h₁ed-te! ‘eat! (pl.)’ (cf. *h₁ed-, p. 44) > *h₁ed-s-te [h₁etste]. This *tst was preserved in Anatolian as <zt> (cf. OHitt. ēzten!) but changed in various ways in other languages: to -tt- in Indic (Ved. vittás ‘found’, attá!); to -st- in Iranian (GAv. vistō ‘found’), Greek (ἄ-ιστος ‘unseen’), and Balto-Slavic (OCS věstъ ‘known’); and to -ss- in Italic (Lat. uīsus ‘seen’), Celtic (OIr. ro-fess ‘is known’), and Germanic (Goth. un-wiss ‘uncertain’).

**Sievers’ Law and Lindeman’s Law**

Evidence in some IE languages (like Vedic and Gothic) points to a possible, but disputed, PIE rule (Sievers’ Law) that *-y- and *-w- changed to *-iy- and *-uw- after a “heavy” syllable (i.e., after *-VCC- and *-VC-), perhaps only in final position. Cf. Goth. asneis [-īs] ‘day-laborer’ < *asn(i)jaz but nīphjīs ‘relative’ < *nīphjaz. The effects of the law were later blurred by various analogical developments in separate languages. A variant of the same law occurred in monosyllabics (Lindeman’s Law), where the same distribution (*-y-/iy-, *-w-/uw-) would have originally depended on the ending of the preceding word, cf. *k(u)wō(n) (p. 41) or *d(u)woh₁ (p. 89). Again, later languages can generalize one or the other form – cf. both in Ved. ś(u)vā́ (only Vedic has clear traces of the law) but only *-uw- in Gr. κάον (though this later can also be by analogy to gen. sg. κοβός).

**Monosyllabic lengthening**

There was a tendency in PIE for monosyllabic forms to lengthen phonetically. Cf. *ne ‘no(t)’ (Ved. ná, Lat. ne-que ‘and not’, OCS ne, Lith. nė, Goth. ni) and *nē (Lat. nē, OCS ně-kako ‘somehow’, Lith. nė, Goth. ne, OIr. ní), *nů(n) ‘now’ (p. 81); pers. pronouns *tů
‘thou’, *mē̆ ‘me’, *nō̆s ‘us’, etc. (p. 82–84); *wis (or oblique *wis-) ‘poison’ (Ved. viśám) and *wīs (YĀv. viś, Lat. virus ⇒ Eng. virus), etc. This lengthening, exhibited in numerous monosyllabic forms attested in IE languages both with brevity and length, appears in a few nouns with *i/u (though in *wīs it may be from older *wis-s as well – p. 70, 79) and otherwise mostly in personal pronouns and particle-like words (particles, conjunctions, postpositions – cf. e.g., *prō̆ and *-wē̆ ‘or’, p. 105), apparently in both accented and unaccented (clitic) forms. Not all monosyllables exhibit both variants, cf. only short *h1eģ ‘I’ (p. 82), *so ‘this’ (p. 85), or *yo ‘which’ (p. 88), which is in some cases probably due to chance preservance of just one variant and in others probably to various morphological analogies. Monosyllabic lengthening is the only non-laryngeal source of long *ī and *ū (p. 38). It is not clear if it originally had anything to do with the stable (and morphono-
logical) length in nouns like *pōds (p. 15).

ACCENT

Some IE languages have a fixed accent place (like Latin – p. 328), while others have a free accent, i.e., an unpredictable accentual position. Since those that have a free accent (like Vedic and Greek) display certain correspondences, these free accent systems are taken to be inherited from PIE. The following branches/languages preserve (to different extents) the old PIE free accent or traces of it: Vedic (but not Classical Sanskrit – p. 222–223), Avestan (indirectly in marginal traces – p. 272–273), certain modern Iranian (Pashto, perhaps Yidgha) and Dardic languages (Shina, Dameli), Greek (p. 296–297), Balto-Slavic (Lithuanian, Latvian (p. 490–494); Proto-Slavic and certain Slavic languages – East Slavic, Slovene, Bosnian/Croatian/Montenegrin/Serbian, Bulgarian, etc. (p. 523–525)), Germanic (not directly but through Grimm’s and Verner’s Laws – p. 20, 393), and Anatolian (not directly but through vowel lengthening – p. 177).

Traditionally, the reconstruction of the PIE accent is very simple – one compares the accent position of Vedic and Greek, plus indirect information that can be gathered from Germanic consonantism. The data from Anatolian is sparse, and that from Balto-Slavic is rarely used because it is considered to be innovative. When the accent position in Vedic, Greek, and Germanic corresponds (which is often the case), the same stress position is reconstructed for PIE (marked with *):

Ved. bhrā́tā, Gr. φράτηρ, Goth. broþar < PIE *bhṛēh₂tēr ‘brother’ (p. 18)
Ved. nábhas, Gr. νέφος (cf. also Hitt. nēpiš with lengthening of the accented syllable and OLith. dēbesis) < PIE *nēbʰos ‘cloudy sky’ (p. 31)
Ved. pā́nca, Gr. πέντε < PIE *pēnkʰe ‘five’ (p. 24, 90)
Ved. pitaḥ, Gr. πατήρ, Goth. pēadar < PIE *ph₂tēr ‘father’ (p. 46)
Ved. dhūmās, Gr. ἄθρωμα ‘spirit’ < PIE *dʰuḥmóς ‘smoke’
Ved. yugā́m, Gr. ζυγόν < PIE *yugóm ‘yoke’ (p. 36)

However, there are also (often disregarded) disagreements between these languages:

Gr. πῆχυς ‘forearm’ but Ved. bāhús ‘arm’
Gr. πέλεκυς but Ved. paraśus ‘axe’
Gr. πότερος, Goth. hoapar (< PGmc *xwāþaraz) but Ved. katarás ‘which of two’
Gr. τέτταρες but Ved. catvāras, Goth. fidwor (< PGmc *fédwōrēz) ‘four’

Though PIE accent is usually thought to have been a “pitch-accent” (like in Vedic or Ancient Greek), it is also traditionally connected with ablaut (p. 61, 68), i.e., with the
(originally) accented full grade and unaccented zero grade. Cf. the traditionally reconstructed *dyéis 'day sky' (Ved. dyáus 'sky', Gr. Δεός) – gen. sg. *diwós (Ved. divás, Gr. Διός); *pónteHs 'path' (Ved. pánthás – gen. sg. *páthós (Ved. pathás); *ph₂tér (p. 46) – acc. sg. *ph₂tērm – dat. sg. *ph₂trey (p. 74–75); *h₁ésmi – *h₁smé (p. 93), etc. However, the question that is rarely asked is, which was first, accent or ablaut? In some cases, like *h₁smé (Ved. smás) or *ph₂trey (Ved. pitré), it is hardly possible for the accent to be on the zero grade *-sm- or *-tr-. Also, although the traditional ablaut/accent scheme works well for some forms, like the athematic present (p. 93) or perfect (p. 98), it is not present in thematic presents like *b₂réte (p. 93) or s-stems like *néb₂esos (p. 78–79). These are often explained away as secondary but without real proof. Likewise, it is rather strange that direct correspondences such as Ved. gen. sg. śúnas ‘dog’ and Hitt. gen. sg. kūnaš ‘hound-man’ (which would point to PIE gen. sg. *kūnos from *kwō(n) (p. 41)) are usually interpreted as somehow secondary to Gr. κυνός, although the Greek form is irrelevant since all Greek monosyllabic consonant stems have an automatic end-stress in the gen. sg. (unlike Vedic). The ablaut/accent scheme also has to turn to various kinds of analogies when it comes to “unexpected” stressed zero-grade forms like *wlkw₂os (p. 35), *h₂tkos (p. 35), *h₂wl₂h₁ne₂ (p. 37), *septm (p. 29, 90), loc. pl. *ph₂tṛsu (Ved. pitṛṣu, Gr. dat. pl. πατρασι – p. 75), etc. What is more, while *wlkw₂os is root-stressed, there are cases like *deywós (p. 49) with an unstressed full-grade root. To sum up, the case for the ablaut/accent scheme does not at all look as firm as it is usually portrayed.

As noted, the traditional IE accentology holds that it is Vedic, and to a lesser extent Greek and Germanic, that is most archaic and that the PIE accent place is to be reconstructed by simple comparison of their accent positions. However, there are different ideas about IE accent. The Moscow Accentological School (p. 524) holds that it is not Vedic and Greek but Balto-Slavic (with its much more complex accentual systems, especially in derivation, and with its full-scale accentual mobility in some word types, which cannot be derived from a rather trivial “Graeco-Aryan” PIE accentual model) that is most archaic, and that PIE, like Proto-Balto-Slavic, should be reconstructed as a tone language with every syllable/morpheme either low or high.¹⁵

Note: I would like to thank Mislav Benić, David Mandić, Mikhail Oslon, and Petra Šoštarić for reading and commenting on the first draft of the chapter, as well as Vytautas Rinkevičius for his help with the Baltic data. Of course, all the mistakes are just mine.

FURTHER READING

There are a number of recent general handbooks on IE linguistics, all of them containing a section on comparative phonology and differing slightly in their perspectives, though often rather short on concrete examples of sound correspondences. We shall list those in English here: Szemerényi 1996 (dated but still useful; has no laryngeals in reconstructions), Meier-Brügger 2003 (a comprehensive treatment of phonology with numerous in-text references, but the translation is at times unfortunate), Tichy 2006 (the approach of the “Erlangen School” of IE, written as a series of university lectures), Clackson 2007 (not a standard handbook but rather problem-based, discussing methodology and theoretical issues), Voyles & Barrack 2009 (an introduction focusing on the best-attested ancient IE languages), Fortson 2010² (perhaps the best English handbook and introduction, with separate chapters on all the major branches, including a discussion of historical phonology and more detail than in other general surveys), Beekes 2011² (the introduction to the “Leiden School” of IE, with glottalic theory and no PIE *a). Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1995,
with their glottalic theory, is comprehensive but “heterodox”. Works like Sihler 1995 or Ringe 2006, while obviously focusing on specific languages/branches, also offer information on (P)IE in general. The most comprehensive treatment of PIE segmental phonology (without accent) is still Mayrhofer’s in Cowgill & Mayrhofer 2012\(^2\). Concerning specific problems in (P)IE phonology, the number of publications (even just of more important works) is impossible to list, so we shall just mention some of the books. For laryngeal theory cf. Lindeman 1987 (though he is sometimes unorthodox) and Bammesberger 1988 (Winter 1965 is rather old but still a classic, and Voyles & Barrack 2015 is, curiously, an attempt at the refutation of the now completely established and accepted laryngeal theory), for glottalic theory Salmons 1993, and for discussion on both Vennemann 1989. Byrd’s (2015) recent book deals with the PIE syllabification but also with the PIE phonological processes and phonology in general. Collinge 1985 (with supplementary Collinge 1995 and 1999) provides an overview of sound laws and rules in PIE and IE languages, but is all too often chaotic and unclear.

**NOTES**

1. The Austronesian language Lifu, which has \( h \) only in loanwords (Lenormand 1952), is often adduced as a counterexample (but cf. Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1995: 10–11).
3. There, one finds the opposition of \( k : k' : k''' \) and \( g : g' : g''' \). Cf. Эдельман 1966: 15–18 and Эдельман 1973.
4. Cf. also Melchert 1987 and 2012 (though his claim that Anatolian is a centum branch does not seem warranted).
8. The fact that \( *h_1 \) (like \( *h_2 \)) causes aspiration in Old Indic (cf. Ved. \( \text{āsthi} \), Gr. \( \text{ōstētov} \) < PIE \( *\text{hēsth}_1 \) ‘bone’) would point to \( *h_1 \) having been an \( h \)-type sound as well (and not a glottal stop \( *? \) as some would have it).
10. There are also rare quasi-ablaut non-systematic controversial correspondences like Goth. \( \text{tibr} \) ‘sacrifice, offering’ < PIE \( *\text{depr}- \), compared with \( *\text{dapn-} \) above with \( *r/n \) heteroclisis (p. 77–78), which is possibly a loanword, cf. Proto-Semitic \( *\text{b-h} \) ‘sacrifice’; PIE \( \text{tawros} \) ‘bull’ (Gr. \( \tauαυρος \), Lith. \( \text{tauras} \) ‘aurochs’, OIr. \( \text{tarb} \), etc.; probably ultimately a loanword, cf. Proto-Semitic \( *\text{pawru(m)} \)) and \( *\text{tawros} \) (Goth. \( \text{stiu} \) ‘young steer’ (Eng. \( \text{steer} \), Av. \( \text{staora-} \) ‘big cattle’ – arguably unrelated to \( *\text{tawros} \)), etc.
11. Cf. a somewhat similar analysis for a phonologically “vowelless” Modern Chinese (Pulleyblank 1984), though this only seems to prove that basically anything is possible in a “deep” and very abstract phonological analysis.
12. Sometimes written as \( *k'' \), twr- in the literature.
14. Cf., e.g., Kloekhorst 2008: 506.
15. Cf., e.g., Dybo, Nikolayev & Starostin 1978, Николаев 1989, or Дыбо 2003. A completely different, but to a point complementary (when discussing evidence for PIE as a tone language), approach to PIE as a tone language is Lubotsky 1988.
REFERENCES


Bammeesberger, Alfred (ed.) 1988, Die Laryngaltheorie und die Rekonstruktion des indogermanischen Laut- und Formensystems, Winter, Heidelberg


Byrd, Andrew Miles 2015, The Indo-European Syllable, Brill, Leiden–Boston


Эдельман, Джой Иосифовна 1966, Язгулямский язык, Издательство “Наука,” Москва


Kapović, Mate 2006, Reconstruction of Personal Pronouns in Balto-Slavic with Emphasis on Accentuation, University of Zadar, Zadar [PhD dissertation]


Lindeman, Fredrik Otto 1987 [1997], Introduction to the Laryngeal Theory, Norwegian University Press, Oslo
LIV 2001?, Lexikon der Indogermanischen Verben, Helmut Rix (ed.), Dr. Ludwig Reicht Verlag, Wiesbaden
Tichy, Eva 2006, A Survey of Proto-Indo-European, Hempen Verlag, Bremen

**SYMBOLS USED IN THIS AND THE FOLLOWING CHAPTER**

- C – any consonant
- V – any vowel
- R – any resonant
- R̥ – any syllabic resonant
- K – any velar
- <> – orthographic writing
- // – phonological writing
- [] – phonetic writing
- # – beginning/end of a word
- * reconstructed
- † not directly attested (in a text, etc.) but inferred
- < (is) derived from
- > (has) become
- ⇐ (is) a loanword from; non-phonetic development
- ⇒ (is) a loanword into
- ~ connected with, related to
- lit. – literally
CHAPTER 2

PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN MORPHOLOGY

Mate Kapović

INTRODUCTION

Proto-Indo-European, as well as all early attested Indo-European languages, had a rich and complex synthetic morphology. This morphology was often simplified in later languages – e.g., no modern IE language has all the eight cases PIE had, and some have none. However, new morphological forms also appeared – e.g., most modern IE languages have a separate future tense (though not always synthetic), which did not exist in PIE. Forms and endings are usually easier to reconstruct than their functions and exact meaning. The focus of this short overview will be on the reconstruction of PIE forms and paradigms and not on the exact (and sometimes disputable) function and meaning of those forms. Obviously, not all reflexes and developments in all descendant languages can be dealt with here. As a rule, only the most archaic attested forms (even if rare) are adduced, with the point of reconstructing PIE forms and paradigms. The focus is more on PIE itself, rather than on the development and situation in separate IE branches (dealt with in separate chapters of this volume). Non-inflected parts of speech, though not strictly part of morphology, are also dealt with in the end, while word formation will be tackled only marginally throughout the chapter.

ABLAUT

Ablaut is a regular morphonological alternation of vowels in PIE morphemes. Depending on its form (either as part of a morphological paradigm or derivational process), a PIE root, suffix (rarely a prefix), or ending could have had different shapes. The following vowels were in alternations: the full grade (*e, *o), the lengthened or long grade (*ē, *ō), and the zero grade (*Ø). In the case of *eR in the full grade (*R being any resonant/glide), the zero grade was *R/Ř (i.e., *ey – *oy – *ēy – *ōy – *y/i; *em – *om – *ēm – *ōm – *m/m̥, etc.), depending on syllable structure (p. 31). Thus, we have PIE *h1es-ti ‘it is’ but *h1s-enti ‘they are’ (with *h₁es-/h₁s- alternation). The rules determining the appearance of a certain ablaut form were quite complex in PIE. Some ablaut alternations are seen even in modern IE languages (e.g., sing – sang – sung in English), but they are best preserved in early attested languages. Cf. all five grades in the suffix in these Greek forms:

πά-τερ! ‘father!’ (*e-grade) πα-τήρ ‘father’ (*ē-grade)
ἄ-πα-τoρ! ‘orphan (fatherless)!’ (*o-grade) ἀ-πά-τωρ ‘orphan’ (*ō-grade)
πα-τρ-ός ‘of the father’ (zero grade)
In certain roots, resonants can change their place – cf. *dyew-/deyw- in *dyēws (p. 40, 56) and *deywos (p. 49) – this is called Schwebeablaut ‘floating ablaut’ (cf. Anttila 1969). PIE verbal, nominal, and verbal/nominal roots had a CVC structure (with possible consonant clusters – p. 52–54), in most of which the ablaut scheme in the -V- part is attested.

**NOUNS**

Late (post-Anatolian) PIE nominals had three genders – masculine, feminine, and neuter – preserved in most early IE languages. The feminine gender is possibly a common PIE innovation (which is controversial) after the early split of the Anatolian branch, since Anatolian exhibits only a distinction of animate/common and inanimate/neuter nouns (p. 178). PIE had three numbers – singular, plural, and dual (the latter often considered a late addition to the PIE number system). Adjectives and pronouns agreed in number and gender with nouns, and verbs agreed with them in number (but cf. the curious case of the neuter nominative “plural” – p. 65, 166). Morphologically, adjectives behaved exactly like nouns as far as declension goes, and they can be treated together, while pronouns had some special case endings and traits. There were eight cases – nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, locative, instrumental, and ablative.

PIE nouns had the following formation: (prefix +) root (+ suffix) (+ suffix) + ending. A noun had to have a root and an ending (even if it was a zero morpheme). Prefixes (like *n̥- ‘non-‘), which were rare (p. 156–157), occurred in some prefix derivatives (p. 79–80) – these can be interpreted as the first part of a compound, in which case PIE would have had no prefixes. Words could have more than one suffix – cf. *pōd-s ‘foot’ (root + ending), *pot-i-s ‘lord’ (root + suffix + ending), and *suH-n-u-s ‘son’ (root + suffix + suffix + ending). There were also some nouns with reduplication, e.g., *k*e-k*l-o-s ‘wheel’.

Many nouns have special declension suffixes directly preceding the case endings. Thus, we speak of different nominal stems: o-stems (*h₁ekw-o-s ‘horse’); eh₂-stems (*h₂)wl₁n-eh₁-O ‘wool’); root nouns (*pōd-s, no suffix); i-stems (*h₂ew-i-s ‘sheep’); u-stems (*suHn-u-s); resonant stems – r-stems (*h₂t-ēr-O ‘father’), n-stems (*h₂ekm-ō(n)-Ø ‘stone’), m-stems (*dve̱g-ō(m)-Ø ‘earth’), and l-stems (*h₂eb-ōl-Ø ‘apple’); laryngeal stems (*pont-eH-s ‘path’); plosive stems (*h₂nep-ōt-s ‘nephew’); and s-stems (*neb₁os-Ø ‘cloudy sky’). These declension suffixes (*suHn-u-s) can be distinguished from the strictly derivational suffixes (*suH- in us, cf. the verbal root *suH- ‘give birth’ > Ved. sūte ‘gives birth’) that form the extended root. It goes without saying that sometimes it is impossible to ascertain the exact morphological/derivational shape of a word; e.g., is *pont-eH-s to be analyzed as *pon-teH-s or *pont-eH-s? The declension suffixes are not necessarily always the same, cf. the different ablaut shapes in suffixal *-ē(n), *-ō(n), *-n̥ in the n-stems (p. 77).

O- and eh₂-stems are called thematic stems (after the so-called thematic vowel *-e/o-), and the other stems athematic. All athematic stems can be called consonantal stems (since *i/u can be considered syllabic glides – p. 34). In thematic stems, there was no ablaut alternation in the root and endings – they had the same shape in all the cases (the only ablaut alternation in thematic stems was the very limited qualitative *-e/-o- alternation of the thematic vowel in o-stems, not unlike athematic s-stems). For instance, the root in *h₁ekwos was in the e-grade in all the cases (gen. sg. *h₁ekwosyo, dat. sg. *h₁ekwōy, etc.), and the root in *wl₁k-os ‘wolf’ was always in the zero grade (gen. sg. *wl₁k-osyo, dat. sg. *wl₁k-ōy, etc.). In athematic stems, all morphemes (root, suffix, ending) could potentially (according to their ablaut type) change their ablaut shape (i.e., they could have
one ablaut of the root in one case and another one in another case), though this did not occur in all forms and types (the s-stems were the most atypical). For instance, the gen. sg. of *pont-eH-s was *pn̥t-H-e/os with a different grade in both the root and (the presumed) suffix. The same opposition of thematic/athematic occurs in verbs as well (p. 93).

Case endings differed slightly depending on the type of declension and gender (o-stems differed the most from all other stems, and their specific endings are listed separately below):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Dual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*s (m./f.), *-Ø (n.)</td>
<td>*-es (m./f.), *-h₂ (n.), *-Ø (n.)</td>
<td>*-h₁(e) (m./f.), *-ih₁ (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-Ø</td>
<td>= nom.</td>
<td>= nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-m (m./f.), *-Ø (n.)</td>
<td>*-ns (m./f.), = nom. (n.)</td>
<td>(?) *-h₁s, (?) *-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-(e/o)s</td>
<td>*-om</td>
<td>= dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>= gen.</td>
<td>= dat.</td>
<td>= dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-ey</td>
<td><em>-bʰos/</em>-mos</td>
<td>(?) <em>-bʰ(y)oh₁/</em>-moh₁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-i, *-Ø</td>
<td>*-su</td>
<td>(?) *-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-(e)h₁</td>
<td>*-bʰi(s)</td>
<td>= dat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

O-stems differed in these endings: neuter nom./acc. sg. *-m; masculine gen. sg. *-syo; abl. sg. *-ot; masculine loc. pl. *-isu; masculine loc. pl. *-eys. For athematic endings cf. p. 69–70.

In neuter nouns, nom./acc./voc. were always the same in all numbers. In the dual, only nom./acc./voc. can be reconstructed with certainty. The ablative had a special ending only in the sg. of o-stems; elsewhere, it was identical to the gen. (sg.) or dat. (pl./du.). In some cases, it is possible to speculate on the origin of the endings. The dat. sg. *-ey and loc. sg. *-i look like ablaut variants (and perhaps were just that originally in pre-PIE) but are distinct and invariant in the last stage of PIE (ablaut variants are found only in athematic gen./instr. sg. – p. 68). Acc. pl. *-ns surely derives from agglutinative *-m-s (acc. sg. + nom. pl.), and some reconstruct *-ms as the ending,¹ while the endings of the dat./loc./instr. pl. and dat./abl./instr. du. are of clear postpositional origin. In Celtic, Italic, Indo-Iranian, and Greek one finds endings with *-b³ in the dat./instr. pl./du. (with different variant forms), while Balto-Slavic and Germanic have *-m- here (the exact relation of these is unclear).² The reconstruction here is rather provisional. Indo-Iranian points to the instr. pl. *-bʰi-s (parallel to the BSl. instr. pl. *-mi-H-s), while Greek (Mycenaean and Homeric) has the instr. pl. (used also in other functions in Greek) <-pi>/-φι without the plural *-s (p. 302) – cf. also the Arm. instr. sg. ending -v < *-b³ (p. 434–435) and OCS instr. sg. -mb < *-mi (with *-m-). This could be originally related to the Germanic preposition *bi (> Eng. by), originally a postposition (case endings often appear out of former postpositions). Indo-Iranian points to proto-variants *-bʰ-y-os for the dat./abl. pl. and *-bʰ-y-oh₁ for the dat./abl./instr. du., with *-bʰi- where other languages have *-b³- (or *-m-). Different accounts are possible here (e.g., an original dat. *-mos but instr. pl. *-bʰi-s, etc.) – provisionally, we reconstruct the dat. pl. as *-bʰ-os/-mos and the dat. du. as *-b³(y)oh₁/-moh₁. The nom. du. perhaps has its origin in the instr. sg. (Schmalstieg 1998), with anellipsis of the type *wl̥k⁴os wl̥k⁴oh₁ ‘wolf with a wolf’ > (*wl̥k³os) wl̥k⁴oh₁ ‘two wolves’ – cf. the Vedic type Mitrā́ (nom. du.) (.) Váruṇo (nom. sg.) ‘Mitra and Varuna’ and theellipsis in Ved. dāvā ‘heaven and earth’ (literary: ‘two heavens’) and the like cases in Greek and Slavic. The *-h₁ in the dual forms *-ih₁ and *-b³y/moh₁ is assumed by analogy to the nom. du. *-h₁. In the gen./loc. du. the *-o-w from o-stems seems to have spread to other stems (otherwise, *-u should be reconstructed as an o-stem variant, and
*-ow for other stems). In this chapter, we will not reconstruct all dual forms everywhere (especially when there are no reflexes of the original forms).

**Symbols** (used in tables and lists of forms)

- form or ending not related to the original PIE one or completely transformed
- form or ending reflecting the PIE one but with a different function or taken from another form in the paradigm
- an irregular phonological change, analogy, or a non-transparent addition in the form or ending
- a secondary addition to a form or ending

**Thematic stems**

**O-stems**

O-stems were mostly masculine (like *wjlkʷos) or neuter (like *yugom ‘yoke’). There were also some feminine o-stems like *snusos ‘daughter-in-law’ (p. 36). Masculine and neuter nouns had different endings only in the nom./voc. sg. and nom./acc./voc. pl./du. All cases had thematic *-o- except the voc. sg., which had *-e and a zero ending.

**TABLE 1.10 IE O-STEMS (SINGULAR)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OLat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-o-s</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td>*b</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-e</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-o-m</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-om</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>-q</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-o-syo</td>
<td>-asya</td>
<td>Hom. -oio</td>
<td>-osio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>*-ot</td>
<td>-ād</td>
<td>Dor. ὀπο</td>
<td>-ōd</td>
<td>gen. -a</td>
<td>gen. -o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-o-ey</td>
<td>-āy</td>
<td>-io</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-ui</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-o-y</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>oikō</td>
<td>domī</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>namīd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-o-h</td>
<td>RV -ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OHG</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*- The final -s in Old Indic (in this and other forms) is often written as -ḥ (a different sandhi-variant); b cf. GAv. -āi; c ‘whence’ (adv.); d ‘at home’ (adv.) (p. 302); e Class. Lat. ‘at home’ (synchronically gen.); f cf. adv. včer-a ‘yesterday’; g OPruss. -as (< *-os(y)o?).

The gen. sg. ending *-osyo (cf. also Lep. -oisō, Arm. -oy, HLuw. -as(s)i), different from the usual *-(e/o)s found in other declensions, is usually compared to the pronominal ending *-eso (p. 81), though the exact connection is not clear. The Latin and Old Indic abl. ending (also Clb. -ud) can be derived from both *-t and *-d (p. 53), but the possible connection to Hitt. abl. -az < *-ot-i, Toch. A -ṣ < *-ti (p. 462), and OCS preposition otb ‘of’ would point to the original PIE abl. *-ot (though *-od is often reconstructed for PIE).

**TABLE 1.11 IE O-STEMS (PLURAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OLat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-o-es</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>{ot}</td>
<td>{-o}</td>
<td>{-i}</td>
<td>{-aǐ}</td>
<td>-as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-o-ns</td>
<td>-ān</td>
<td>dial. -ovē</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-y/-q</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-ans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Two adjacent vowels contracted: dat. sg. (*-ōy < *-o-ey), abl. sg. (*-ōt < *-o-ot), nom. pl. (*-ōs < *-o-es), instr. pl. (*-ōys < *-o-eys), and gen. pl. (*-ōm < *-o-om). It is possible that these endings were still (at least as variants or dialectally) uncontracted in PIE, judging by occasional disyllabic scansion in Indo-Iranian, and perhaps by the development of Lith. gen. -o < *-ā (p. 41) < BSl. *-a-at < PIE abl. *-o-ot (with contraction after PIE, *o > BSl. *a?). In many languages/branches, the original ending *-ōs (cf. also Osc. nūvlan-ōs ‘inhabitants of Nola’) was replaced by the pronominal *-oy (*toy wlk*ōs ‘those wolves’ ⇒ *toy wlk*oy, p. 81). The *-b/-m- in the dat. (and elsewhere) is problematic (p. 63), but *-os is clear from BSl. *-mos (OCS -mъ, OLatv. -ms), Lat. -bus (in athematic stems), Celt. *-b’os (Clb. -bos), and Ven. -bos (louderobos ‘to the children’), supported by IIr. *-b’y-os. The loc. *-i-su probably has the additional *-i- from the singular (cf. the simple ending *-su in other declensions), and *-ey-s in the instr. pl. can tentatively be connected to the Slavic conjunction i ‘and’.

**TABLE 1.12 IE O-STEMS (NEUTER)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>neuter</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OLat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
<th>Hiit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc. sg.</td>
<td>*-o-m</td>
<td>-ām</td>
<td>-ōv</td>
<td>-om</td>
<td>-iators</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>-an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc. pl.</td>
<td>*-e-h₂</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-iators</td>
<td>-iators</td>
<td>-iators</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The nom./acc. forms are always the same in neuter nouns. In o-stems, the neuter nom./acc. sg. has the same form as the masculine acc. sg. (*-om). This, and the fact that nom./acc. are always the same in neuter nouns, undoubtedly derives from the pragmatic use of neuter (inanimate) nouns, which are rarely the subjects of transitive verbs. For this reason (and others), pre-PIE is considered by some to have been an ergative language (cf. 162–164). The ending *-eh₂ of the nom./acc./voc. pl. is identical to the nom. sg. of feminine *eh₂-stems. That is due to the fact that the “plural” of neuter nouns is originally a collective, not a plural per se. That is why in IE languages one finds the *-eh₂ plural forms for masculine nouns as well, cf. Av. regular masculine nom. pl. in -a (p. 275) or Lat. nouns like iocuus ‘joke’ – pl. both iocē and iocca (similar cases exist in Iranian, Greek, Anatolian, Slavic, etc.). In Greek, Anatolian, and Gatha-Avestan, the plural of neuter nouns agrees with verbs in the 3 sg. This is known as the τὰ ζῷα τρέχει ‘the animals (pl.) run (sg.)’ rule in Greek, and is an archaic PIE feature stemming from the said fact that later neuter nominative plurals were originally collective singulars.
**TABLE 1.13 IE O-STEMS (DUAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>du.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>GAv.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc. (m.)</td>
<td>*-o-h₁</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc. (n.)</td>
<td>*-o-yh₁</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>(?)</td>
<td>*-o-h₁</td>
<td>[-ayos]</td>
<td>-ai̯l̯a</td>
<td>{ouv}²</td>
<td>[+u]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-o-w</td>
<td>-ayojós</td>
<td>-ai̯l̯a</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(?) pusíau²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat./abl./instr.</td>
<td>(?)</td>
<td>*-o-b(y)oh₁</td>
<td>-aibhyam</td>
<td>-ai̯l̯i̯a</td>
<td>{ouv}²</td>
<td>-oma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a BSl. *-omoh₁; b cf. pronominal forms – p. 86; c dial. ‘in two/half’.

Old Church Slavic and Vedic point to *-ow in both gen. and loc. (the gen. *-s in Vedic is probably secondary), but Avestan has gen. -ā < *-ās (presumably from *-o-h₁-s with nom. *-h₁-r̥ + gen. *-s) and loc. -ā < *-aw, which is possibly archaic (Beekes 2011: 217). The loc. (and gen.) ending was originally perhaps *-u, thus *-o-u in o-stems, but this *-ow was later, possibly already in PIE, generalized in other stems as well.

**Eh₂-stems**

Eh₂-stems (which were always feminine) seem to be a post-Anatolian innovation, since they do not appear there. In late PIE, these stems are correlated to o-stems in adjectives: *newos (m.)/newom (n.) and *neweh₂ (f.) ‘new’. The post-Anatolian emergence of the new feminine gender could have originated from the identification of the collective *-eh₂ (and possessive *-ih₂, cf. Lat. o-stem gen. sg. -i) suffix with the accidental *-h₂ in the originally athematic word for ‘woman’: *g*enh₂ (Ved. jāni, OIr. bē, p. 77, 369).

**TABLE 1.14 IE EH₂-STEMS (SINGULAR)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-eh₂</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-e(h₁)</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>= nom.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>= nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-m</td>
<td>-ām</td>
<td>-āv</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-q</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-es</td>
<td>-āl̯as</td>
<td>-āz</td>
<td>OLat. -ās</td>
<td>[y/-e]</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-ey</td>
<td>-āl̯ai̯</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-ai</td>
<td>-ai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-i</td>
<td>-āyɑ̌m</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>[-ai/-p]³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-eh₁</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>κρυφ</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⁴ Hom. νύμφ-ά; b adv. ‘in secret’; c with a postposition -p in the new adessive.

All languages except Latin point to *-ā (cf. also Umbr./Osc. -o < *-ā and Celtic – p. 369) in the nom., which is then interpreted as older *-e-h₂ (p. 43), though the laryngeal is nowhere attested (*-e- is a thematic vowel). However, the existence of other feminine endings (*-i-h₂-s and *-u-h₂-s, p. 67, 74) indicates a laryngeal. Other cases have this *-eh₂- (which has a zero ending in the nom.) + general endings: acc. *-eh₂-m (not **-eh₂-m!) > *-ām (Stang’s Law – p. 70); gen. *-eh₂-es > *-ah₂-as > *-aas (p. 43) > *-ās; dat. *-eh₂-ey > *-ah₂-ay > *-aay > *-āy; loc. *-eh₂-i > *-ah₂-i > *-ai; instr. *-eh₂-eh₁ > *-ah₂-eh₁ > *-ai > *-ā, etc. Some endings are formally reconstructed on a structural basis in their laryngealistic and pre-contraction shape. Greek and Balto-Slavic (cf. also Umbr. voc.
turša! (name of a goddess) point to *-ā in the voc. In laryngeal terms, this is usually explained as *-e(h₂), with the laryngeal coloring the preceding vowel (*-a(h₂)) but then dropping before a pause without lengthening (cf. also Ved. devi! < *-i(h₁) from devī ‘goddess’ < *-ih₂, see below).

### TABLE 1.15 IE EH₂-STEMS (PLURAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-es</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>{-āi}</td>
<td>OLat. -ēs</td>
<td>[-y/-e]</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td>-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-(n)s</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>dial. -āvč</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-y/-e</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-om</td>
<td>-ānām</td>
<td>dial. -āω/ν</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td>-b₂</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-bʰos</td>
<td>-ābhýas</td>
<td>{-āːc₁}</td>
<td>{-ās}</td>
<td>-am₉</td>
<td>OLith. -om/ů's</td>
<td>-om</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-su</td>
<td>-āsu</td>
<td>dial. -os</td>
<td>-a'x/ɔ</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-bʰis</td>
<td>-ābhis</td>
<td>Myc. -āpʰi</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-omis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a BSl./Gmc *-mos, IIr. *-bʰyos; b Gr. *-bʰi, IIr. *-bʰis, BSl. *-miHs; c cf. pronominal *-som (p. 81); d PSlav. *-ʒ.

Some IE languages (Vedic, Gothic) show no trace of the original *-n- in the acc. pl., so it is possible to assume that this was already a PIE change (at least in some dialects). The gen. ending *-eh₂-om is formally reconstructed, since, if we disregard the secondary forms, all we have are a few reflexes pointing to a contracted long *-ōm (Goth. -o, Lith. -ū, PSl. *-ʒ).

### TABLE 1.16 IE EH₂-STEMS (DUAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>du.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-iḥ₁</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>-i c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./loc.</td>
<td>*-eh₂-u</td>
<td>{-ayos}</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat./abl./instr.</td>
<td>(?)*-eh₂-bʰyoh₁</td>
<td>-ābhýaṃ</td>
<td>-ama</td>
<td>-om/ům</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Or analogical *-eh₂-ow (p. 63); b BSl. *-eh₂-moh₁; c cf. -ie-ji-dvi in definite adjectives with -ie- < *-ayH-.

The nom./acc. endings point to *-ay (< *-aɪ < *-a(h₁)iḥ₁). The eh₂-stems have the dual *-iḥ₁ (like the neuter – perhaps due to the connection of the feminine sg. and neuter pl., p. 65), not *-h₁(e) like other feminine stems.

Two feminine *-iḥ₂-types can also be reconstructed (PIE *deyw-iḥ₂ ‘goddess’ > Ved. devi; cf. Lith. pati ‘wife’; PIE *w[kʰ]-iḥ₂-s ‘she-wolf’ > Ved. vṛkš, p. 236–237); one of the types had the apophonic alternation *-iḥ₁/-yeh₂- in the suffix (Ved. dat. sg. devyái < *deyw-yeh₂-ey but vṛkśe < *w[kʰ]-iḥ₂-ey).

### Athematic stems

**PIE athematic ablaut declension types**

As already said, in athematic nouns all morphemes (roots, suffixes, endings) could exhibit ablaut alternations – for instance, the suffix was in the lengthened grade in *ph₂tēr ‘father’, in the zero grade in *suHnus ‘son’ and the gen. sg. *ph₂tre/os, in the full grade...
in the gen. sg. *suHnows, while the ending was in the full grade in the gen. sg. *ph₂tré/os but in the zero grade in the gen. sg. *suHnows. PIE had quite a number of complex ablaut declension types (ADTs), which are difficult to reconstruct.

In the case of root alternations, the original ADTs can sometimes, but very rarely, be reconstructed from direct reflexes in some language (e.g., *ponteHs – gen. sg. *pnteHos ‘path’ can be reconstructed from Ved. pánthās – pathās). Usually, they have to be reconstructed from different reflexes in various languages, where one of the alternate PIE ablaut grades had usually been generalized – e.g., if one compares Lat. aurōra (< *ausōs-) with Ved. uṣā́s (gen. sg. uṣā́s), we can conclude that PIE had ablaut variants *h₁ēwsōs-, *h₂usōs-, and *h₂us(s)- (by additional analysis in the context of the whole PIE declension system, we come to the conclusion that the original pattern was probably nom. sg. *h₁ēwsōs – gen. sg. *h₂use/os ‘dawn’, p. 51). However, already in PIE, as far as can be reconstructed, many stem types (e.g., i-stems, most r-stems, etc.) did not exhibit ablaut alternations in the root (which may or may not be an innovation in comparison to the pre-PIE period). The alternations in suffixes (cf. Lat. pater ‘father’ – gen. sg. patris), more common in PIE, were also more likely to be preserved, though here one of the types usually tends to be generalized in the daughter languages.

The standard theory of ADTs connects the ablaut types with the supposed PIE accentual alternations, the usual supposition being that the full (especially *e) grade goes with accentedness, while the zero grade should be unaccented. However, there are many problems with this standard account, as well as with the reconstruction of PIE accent in general (p. 55–56), and its relation to ablaut patterns. The problem with the standard theory is that it usually (at least unconsciously) tries to reconstruct the ablaut types not of the latest stage of PIE, but rather of some “original” supposed pre-PIE stage, and thus often operates with the supposed, but completely speculative, forms, like **sēwHnus or **méntis, instead of *suHnús (p. 38) and *mn̥ tís (p. 35) (with the accent marked as traditionally reconstructed) that are actually attested in the daughter languages but often considered as secondary without any real evidence.

The standard theory usually operates with the following basic and neatly organized ablaut/accent types: static (acrostatic/acrodynamic) *nók*ts – gen. sg. *nék*ts ‘night’ (immobile root accent); proterodynamic (proterokinetic) *péh₂wr̥ – gen. sg. *ph₂wēns ‘fire’ (accent shifts from root to suffix); amphidynamic (amphikinetic, holokinetic/holo-dynamic) *h₂ēwsōs – gen. sg. *h₂us(s)ē/ós ‘dawn’ (accent shifts from root to ending); hysterodynamic (hysterokinetic) *ph₂tḗr – gen. sg. *ph₂tré/ós ‘father’ (accent shifts from suffix to ending). However, here we shall use an analysis that is somewhat heterodox in comparison to the standard one because it stresses morpheme alternations and not the supposed PIE accent shifts, with emphasis on the last stage of PIE (and not some supposed pre-PIE “original” stage). In this analysis, the reconstructed ablaut types are somewhat different than those in the standard analysis, but the usual terminology is more or less preserved.

In our analysis here, we take it that all PIE morphemes (roots R, suffixes S, endings E) in a nominal paradigm were either strong (+), alternating (±), or weak (–). Strong morphemes always have the full (or lengthened) grade; alternating morphemes have the full (or lengthened) grade in some cases but the zero grade in others; weak morphemes are always in the zero grade. E.g., if we look at the roots of the already mentioned words, *ne/okʷts- is (+), *h₂ēws-/h₂us- is (±), and *suHn- is (–). Most endings were invariant (whether they were weak like nom. sg. *-s or strong like nom. pl. *-es) – only gen. sg. *-es/-os/-s, instr. sg. *-eh₂/-h₁, and perhaps nom. du. *-h₁/-h₁e (cf. OLith. -e for the latter) had ablaut variants, i.e., were of the alternating type (thus, whether an ending in an ADT
The same morpheme did not have to be the same in all words – e.g., the suffix *-i- was weak in *potis and alternating in *mn̥tis (p. 35), etc. Thus, the (strong/alternating/weak) nature/valency of a morpheme was paradigmatic, not universal. A similar analysis can be applied to athematic verbs as well.

The following nominal ADTs can be reconstructed for the last stage of PIE:

1) **acrodynamic** (ἄκρος ‘outermost’, δύναμις ‘power’)
   RSE + ± -- *me-h₂tēr-Ø – gen. sg. *me-h₂t-s ‘mother’

2) **proterodynamic** (πρότερος ‘in front’)
   RSE ± ± -- *h₁neh₁-mn-Ø – gen. sg. *h₁neh₁-men-s ‘name’

3) **mesodynamic** (μέσος ‘middle’)
   RSE -- ± -- *suHn-ow-s – gen. sg. *suHn-ow-s ‘son’

4) **amphidynamic** (ἄμφι ‘on both sides’)
   RSE +-- *pot-i-s – gen. sg. *pot-y-e/os ‘master’ (cf. p. 77 for *melit)

5) **hysterodynamic** (ὕστερος ‘coming after’)
   RSE -- ± -- *p-h₂tēr-Ø – gen. sg. *p-h₂t-e/os ‘father’

6) **holodynamic** (ὅλος ‘whole’)
   - type a) RSE +± ± -- *h₁ek-mō(n)-Ø – gen. sg. *h₁ek-mn-e/os ‘stone’
   - type b) RSE ± ± -- *pont-eH-s – gen. sg. *p̥nt-eH-e/os ‘path’

7) **holostatic** (only neuter s-stems) (στατός ‘placed’)
   RSE +++ -- *neb₃-os-Ø – gen. sg. *neb₃-es-e/os ‘sky’

What is relevant in an ADT are not only the types of morphemes but the way they pattern – e.g., two holodynamic types are put together because they differ only in the number of morphemes that alternate (but both have + in the nom. sg. and -- in the gen. sg. in alternating morphemes), while acrodynamic (+ ± --) and proterodynamic (± ± --) type are distinguished because they differ not only in what morphemes alternate, but also in how they alternate (cf. the zero suffix in the gen. sg. *me-h₂t-s, but a full suffix in the gen. sg. *h₁neh₁-men-s). Additional (sub)types may also be potentially added (cf. p. 77), and different naming/grouping of the types is always possible. In separate stems (e.g., i-, n-, etc.), one can usually find one to three types. Because of numerous analogies and divergent later developments, reconstructions are sometimes speculative, and different authors have different opinions. Some nouns may have had coexisting different ablaut variants. For slightly different ADTs in root nouns, cf. p. 71.

**Athematic case endings**

All athematic stems had mostly the same endings (differing in a number of cases from the o-stems), the differences being in the presence of *-i in the loc. sg. and neuter *-h₂ in the nom./acc./voc. pl. (or synchronic *-Ø). In the gen. sg. acro-, protero-, and mesodynamic stems had a zero-grade *-s, while other types had a full-grade *-es or *-os. The
original distribution of *-es and *-os is not clear (it might have originally depended on accent, ADT, stem type, dialect, etc.) since most languages have generalized one of the variants – some languages have only *-es (OCS -e), some have only *-os (Gr. -ος), in some we cannot tell the original vowel (OInd. -as), and only rarely does one see both variants in one language (Lat. -is < OLat. -es, together with OLat. -us < *-os). The nom. pl. *-es is identical in form to the gen. sg. variant *-es but is invariant (as are most case endings), unlike the gen. sg. ending (however, cf. the pronominal plural *-s(-) – p. 83). In the gen. pl., one can assume an original short *-om on structural grounds (with possible reflexes in Celtic, Italic, Anatolian, and Slavic), while most languages show reflexes of a long *-ōm (presumably by early, perhaps partially already PIE, analogy to o- and eh₂-stems).  

Compensatory lengthening in athematic stems

A number of compensatory lengthening (CL) processes occurred word-finally in athematic nouns. The masculine/feminine ending *-s dropped in pre-PIE after a root- or suffix-final resonant (*m/n/l/r), *y, and *s, with subsequent CL (Szemerényi’s Law): *dʰegʰ.WindowManager < *-om-s (p. 77), *h₁ekm̥n(n) < *-on-s (p. 76), *h₁eböl < *-ol-s (p. 77), *ph₂tér < *-er-s (p. 75), *sekʰHóy < *-oy-s (p. 73), *h₂ewsōs < *-os-s (p. 79). The same kind of lengthening might have occurred in some other cases, like in *kérDo > *kér (with possible subsequent restoration of *-d, p. 53). This lengthening was morphonological, not a live phonological process, in the last stage of PIE as seen from forms like the gen. sg. *dems (p. 71) and the acc. pl. ending *-ons (p. 64). This law explains many s-less long-grade forms in the nom. sg. of athematic stems. However, the length in forms with the preserved *-s, like *pōds (p. 15), *gʷōws (p. 24), *(h₂)nepōts (p. 39), *-ōws (p. 74), and ptcp. *-ōnts (p. 104), is not completely clear. The original dropping of *-s, CL, and then analogical restoration of *-s is possible but perhaps not convincing (why would it be restored only in these forms and not after resonants, *y, and *s as well?). Perhaps it is a consequence of morphologization and analogical interplay of several earlier phonological processes like Szemerényi’s Law, early monosyllabic lengthening (p. 54–55) in cases like *pōds, and perhaps Stang’s Law (see below) in the acc. sg. like *gʷām. In some cases, the length can be interpreted in more than one way, e.g. *wīs ‘poison’ (p. 55) can be a result of either monosyllabic lengthening or CL from *wis-s.

CL occurs with *h₂ after *n, *r, and *s as well, cf. nom. pl. *h₂ph₂môn < *-on-h₂ (p. 77), *kʰetwōr < *-or-h₂ (p. 89), and nom. pl. *nebʰōs < *-os-h₂ (p. 79); and with *-i after glides, cf. loc. sg. *mpč̥ey < *-ey-i (p. 72) and loc. sg. *suHnůw < *-ow-i (p. 73). CL also occurred when glides and laryngeals dropped before the final *-m (Stang’s Law), cf. *dyēm < *-ewm (p. 40, 72), *gʰvˢ < *-owm (p. 71), and *-ām < *-eh₂-m in thematic stems (p. 66).

Root nouns

Most athematic nouns have a suffix of some kind between the root and endings and are usually disyllabic in the nom. sg. Those that do not have a suffix are monosyllabic in the nom. sg. and are called root nouns (the ending is added directly to the root), cf. *pōd-s ‘foot’, gen. sg. *ped-e/os. The root in root nouns can end in a stop (*pōd-s), resonant (*dō(m)-Ø ‘home’), diphthong (*dyēw-s ‘sky’), cluster (*kérDØ ‘heart’), etc. According to the final segment of the root, root nouns can also be considered plosive stems (*pōd-s), m-stems (*dō(m)-Ø), etc. Root nouns had a tendency to become less frequent
or disappear altogether in many IE languages, being replaced with various suffixal derivatives. In some cases, it is not clear whether certain nouns are indeed root or suffixal stems; e.g., is *kwō(n) ‘dog’ to be analyzed as a root noun or as an n-stem *kw-ō(n) with a vowelless root (p. 41)? Root nouns had the following ablaut types (although they have no suffixes, root nouns can tentatively be fitted into the above ADT scheme):

a) RE + – (acrodynamic) *dō(m)-Ø – gen. sg. *dem-s ‘home’
b) RE ++ (amphidynamic) *pōd-s – gen. sg. *ped-e/os ‘foot’
c) RE − + (hysterodynamic) *muHs-(s) – gen. sg. *muHs-e/os ‘mouse’
d) RE ±+ (holodynamic) *dyēw-s – gen. sg. *diw-e/os ‘day sky’

Acrodynamic nouns had *o in the nom./acc. and *e in other cases, cf. *dō(m) (Gr. Hom. ὅ̀δο, Arm. tun) – gen. sg. *dems (Ved. dān, GAv. dōm, Gr. δῆς-πότης ‘master’ < *dems potis ‘lord of the house’), or *gʷōws ‘cow’ (Ved. gāús, Gr. βοῦς) – gen. sg. *gwews (Ved. gōs, Av. gə̄uš).

Acrodynamic nouns had *o in the nom./acc. and *e in other cases, cf. *dō(m) (Gr. Hom. ὅ̀δο, Arm. tun) – gen. sg. *dems (Ved. dān, GAv. dōm, Gr. δῆς-πότης ‘master’ < *dems potis ‘lord of the house’), or *gʷōws ‘cow’ (Ved. gāús, Gr. βοῦς) – gen. sg. *gwews (Ved. gōs, Av. gə̄uš).

For the length in *dō(m) or *k ˊwō(n) cf. p. 70. Stang’s Law operates in the acc. sg. *gʷowm > *gᵈʷom (Ved. gā́m, Dor. βῶν, Umbr. bum) – cf. p. 70. The amphidynamic stems had a more complex ablaut pattern:

### TABLE 1.17 IE ROOT NOUNS (SINGULAR)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*pōd-s</td>
<td>pā́t</td>
<td>π’oû̄ς</td>
<td>p’ē’ss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*pod-η</td>
<td>pā́das</td>
<td>π’oû̄də</td>
<td>p’ē’dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*ped-e/os</td>
<td>padás</td>
<td>π’oû̄dəς</td>
<td>pedis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*ped-ey</td>
<td>padé</td>
<td>Myc. po-de</td>
<td>pedī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*ped-ı</td>
<td>padi</td>
<td>[dat. π’oû̄ı]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*ped-eh₁</td>
<td>padá</td>
<td>[abl. pede]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cf. p. 70 for the nom. sg. length.

### TABLE 1.18 IE ROOT NOUNS (PLURAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*pod-es</td>
<td>pādas</td>
<td>π’odèς</td>
<td>p’ē’dé̄ς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*pod-ŋs</td>
<td>padās &lt; *pādas</td>
<td>π’odāς</td>
<td>p’ē’dēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*ped-om</td>
<td>padāvm</td>
<td>π’oû̄dø̄vm</td>
<td>pedum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*ped-b’os</td>
<td>*padbhlȳás</td>
<td>[abl. pedibhul]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*ped-su</td>
<td>patsi</td>
<td>[dat. π’oû̄s/l]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*ped-b’h₁(s)</td>
<td>padbhís</td>
<td>Myc. p’ō-pi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Cf. RV ἄpas ‘waters’ (6x), together with the secondary apás.

Dual: nom./acc./voc. *pod-h₁(e) (Gr. π’odèς), dat./instr./abl. *ped-b’h₁(yoh₁) (Ved. padbhvã́m). The nom./acc. *pod- (accented in Vedic/Greek) and oblique *ped- stem are indicated by Ved. pād- (by Brugmann’s Law – p. 40, 206) and pad- respectively (Greek has generalized *pod- and Latin *ped-). The usual supposition is that the oblique *ped- is secondary for the supposedly original holodynamic *pd- (cf. Gr. ἔπι-βδ-ά ‘the day after the festival’ < ‘following the trace’, Ved. upa-bd-ās ‘trampling, rattle’, Av. fra-bd-āa- ‘front foot’).

**I-stems**

In the i-stems (as in the u-stems), the root was unchangeable (either full as in *h₁weisz ‘sheep’ or zero as in *mhtis ‘mind’), while the suffix could be in various ablaut grades (*-i/-ey/-oy/-ēy-). The i-stems had two ablaut types, mesodynamic and amphidynamic, of which the former generally prevailed in later IE languages. The mesodynamic i-stem (m./f.) paradigm in IE:

**TABLE 1.19 IE I-STEMS (SINGULAR)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-i-s</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-iζ</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-i-m</td>
<td>-im</td>
<td>-iυ</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-ey</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td></td>
<td>[ηοζ]</td>
<td>[-is]</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-iē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-ey-s</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>Hom.</td>
<td>[-ης]</td>
<td>[-is]*</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-iēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-ey-ey</td>
<td>-ey</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-ēy</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-ēh₁</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Cf. Osc. original (and generalized) -eis; b cf. original OHG (f.) -i < PGmc *-iż < PIE *-eys.

For the invariant zero grade of the root cf. also *ngw(n)is ‘fire’, *kwrmis/*wrmis ‘worm’ (p. 35), *mhtis ‘death’ (p. 35), and other nouns in *-tis, etc. (presumably, only the i-stems with the zero-grade root originally had this type of endings). In the gen. sg., the zero-grade suffix was followed by a full-grade ending and vice versa (gen. sg. *-y-e/os but *-ey-s). Goth. gen. sg. (f.) -ais and ONor. -ar are probably secondary (by analogy to u-stem *-auz < *-ows), and there is no need to reconstruct a PIE gen. sg. variant *-oys (OCS and OHG point to *-eys). The loc. sg. *-ēy is to be explained through a (pre-)PIE process of *-ey-i > *-ēy (p. 70).

**TABLE 1.20 IE I-STEMS (PLURAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-ey-es</td>
<td>-dyas</td>
<td>-ες</td>
<td>-eς</td>
<td>-bje</td>
<td>[-ys]</td>
<td>-eis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-i-ns</td>
<td>-iš \</td>
<td></td>
<td>-iσ</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-ins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-ey-om</td>
<td>-ián</td>
<td></td>
<td>-iυ</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-iē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-i-b/mos</td>
<td>-ibh\</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ibh</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>-ib</td>
<td>-mib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-i-su</td>
<td>-iṣu</td>
<td>[dial. dat. -iṣ</td>
<td>]</td>
<td>-iṣ</td>
<td>-iṣ</td>
<td>-y’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-i-b/h(s)</td>
<td>-ibh</td>
<td></td>
<td>-ibh</td>
<td>-hmi</td>
<td>-imi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Cf. also the Hitt. generalized nom. pl. -eš < *-eyes; b BSl. *-miHs; c *-iḥb.
The full grade (*-ey-) of the suffix is found in the gen./dat./loc./voc. sg. and nom./gen. pl. – other cases have the zero grade (*-i*). Dual forms are nom./acc./voc. *-i-h (Ved. -ī, OCS -i), dat./instr./abl. *-i-y-moh, (Ved. -ihyā|m|, OCS -bma), gen./loc. *-ey-ow < *-ey-u? (p. 63) (OCS kost-ju is likely archaic, since it is different from the other dual forms, while Ved. gen./loc. du. háryos ‘tawny’ < *-y-ow-s is probably analogical to them, though OCS form could also theoretically be due to analogy to the gen. pl.). The neuter forms differed in the nom./acc./voc. only: sg. *-i (Ved. váři ‘water’, Lat. mare ‘sea’, Hitt. tuppi ‘clay tablet’) and pl. *-ih2 (Ved. adj. šicē ‘bright’, Hitt. armizzi ‘bridges’).

The scarcely attested amphidynamic paradigm had a weak suffix (*-i-/-y-) in all cases, cf. gen. *pot-y-es ‘master’ (Gr. πόσιος ‘husband’), *h3ew-y-es ‘sheep’ (Ved. ávyas, Gr. Ion. ὀιός), dat. *-y-ey (Ved. pátye ‘husband’), loc. *-y-i (Gr. dat. oί), voc. sg. *-i (Gr. ποστ!), nom. *-y-es (Ved. adj. arýas ‘loyal’, Gr. Hom. δικαίος), gen. pl. *-y-om (Gr. οίων).

One could assume that originally all i-stems with a full-grade root – like *gōstis ‘guest’ (p. 40), *klownis ‘hip’ (p. 51), *h3egwhis ‘snake’ (Ved. áhis, Gr. ὀφίς ‘serpent’), etc. – were amphidynamic (i.e., that the ablaut of the suffix was connected to the ablaut of the root), even when we have no direct attestation for that (unlike the case in *h3ewis, *potis), though acrodynamic + ± stems like **gōst-ey-s (perhaps later and analogical) are not unimaginable. A holodynamic + ± + type can also be reconstructed, cf. *-ey < *-oy-s (Ved. sákhā ‘friend’, Gr. ἠχώ ‘echo’, Hitt. zah˘h˘aiš ‘battle’), acc. sg. *-oy-m̥ (Ved. sákhāyam, Hitt. zah˘h˘aiš), voc. sg. *-oy (Gr. Σαπφοῖ!), gen. sg. *-y-es (Ved. sákhyur with secondary -ur, Hitt. zahhīyaṣ), etc. For *-ih(s) f. stems see p. 67.

**U-stems**

The u-stems were mostly parallel to the i-stems concerning ADTs. The root was invariant in masculine/feminine stems but not in all neuter stems (cf. *dor-u – gen. sg. *dr-ews below). The mesodynamic (m./f.) paradigm prevailed in later languages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1.21 IE U-STEMS (SINGULAR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[a\] GAv. -u̯;  \[b\] mán-au ‘man’; \[c\] OLat. sena-ouver ‘of the Senate’, Osc. castra-ous (cf. Lat. castrum ‘fort’); \[d\] early runic/early OHG -iu < PGmc *-iwi < PIE *-ewey.

For the invariant zero grade of the root cf. also *prptus (Av. por‘tu- ‘crossing’, Lat. portus ‘harbor’, OEng. ford), *tn̥h2us ‘thin’ (p. 16), *g̥r̥h2us ‘heavy’ (p. 39) and other adjectives, etc. Loc. *-ow derives from pre-PIE *-ow-i (like i-stem loc. sg. *-ey above). Loc. *-ów is also reconstructable (cf. *-owy in i-stems), but the non-palatal -u (i.e., not -ju in OCS synu) is easier to explain from *-ow (cf. the *-eys : *-ows difference between i- and u-stems in the gen. sg. as well).
### TABLE 1.22 IE U-STEMS (PLURAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-ew-es</td>
<td>-āvas</td>
<td>dial. -e̞̞ez</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-ove</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-jus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*u-ns</td>
<td>-ūyn</td>
<td>dial. -u̞ez</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
<td>-y</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-uns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-ew-om</td>
<td>-iūnām</td>
<td>-u̞o̞v</td>
<td>-u̞m</td>
<td>-ūnō</td>
<td>-ū</td>
<td>-iw(e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*u-b^h/mos</td>
<td>-ubhḷyas</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>-ṇṃt</td>
<td>-ūms</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-u-su</td>
<td>-u̞su</td>
<td>-ńxb</td>
<td>-ńxb</td>
<td>dial. -u̞ṿe̞ḷ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-u-b^h/s</td>
<td>-ubhīs</td>
<td>-ńmi</td>
<td>-ńmi</td>
<td>-umis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Bsl. *-miHs; † dial. pl. δάκρ-ς(η)ʹ | 'tears'; ‡ dial. -aus < *-awes < PIE *-ewes.

The full grade (*-ew-/ow-) of the suffix is found in the gen./dat./loc./voc. sg. and nom./gen. pl. (the *e-/o-grade distribution is different from in i-stems) — other cases have the zero grade (*-u-). Dual forms are nom./acc./voc. pl. *-u-h₁ (Ved. -ū, OCS -y, Lith. -u), dat./instr./abl. *-u-b^h/moh₁ (Ved. -ubhyām, OCS -u̞ma), gen./loc. *-ew-ow < *-ew-u? (p. 63) (cf. OCS synovu | *-ew-ow but probably secondary Ved. hāhvōs 'arms' | *-w-ow-s, like in i-stems, p. 73). Neuters had a nom./acc./voc. sg. *-u (Ved. mādhū 'sweetness', Gr. μέθυ 'wine', Goth. faíhu 'cattle', Hitt. gēnu 'knee'), nom./acc./voc. pl. *-u-h₂ (Ved. vāsū 'wealths', Hitt. āšū 'goods'), and nom./acc./voc. du. *-w-ih₁ (Ved. adj. urvī 'wide').

The vestiges of the amphidynamic type (with weak suffix *u-/-w- in all cases) are often attested in neuters (e.g., *medu 'honey', *peku 'cattle'): gen. *w-e/os (Ved. mādhvas, krātvas (m.) 'ability', Gr. Myc. me-tu-wo, older Lat. senatus (of the Senate), dat. *-w-ey 'cattle' (Ved. pāśve, Goth. mann (m.) < *manw- 'man'), loc. sg. *-w-i (Gr. Hom. dat. yovvi | *yovvi 'knee'), nom. *-w-es (YAv. pasuū), and gen. pl. *-w-om (YAv. pasuām). It can be perhaps be assumed that all u-stems with full-grade roots were originally amphidynamic (even in cases where there is no direct evidence for that), e.g. *genus 'jaw' (Ved. hānum, Gr. γένος) — gen. sg. *genwe/os (Goth. kinnus 'cheek' with generalized -nn- < *-nw-), adj. *h₁oh₁kus 'fast' (Ved. āsūs, Gr. οκος), etc. Cf. also the proterodynamic neuter *dur-u-Ø 'tree' (Ved. dā́ru, Gr. δόρο, Hitt. tāru) — gen. sg. *dr-ew-s (Ved. drōs, YAv. draōs), though this might not be the oldest/only ablaut type; cf. the ablaut variant *derw- in OCS drēvo < *dervo 'tree', Lith. dervā 'resin, tar'. The original ablaut pattern of *genu- (Lat. genū, Hitt. gēnu/š /garū)*-gōn-u- (Ved. jā́nu, Gr. γονί)/*gōn-ew- (Hitt. gamu, Goth. thematized kniu) 'knee' is controversial (see above for Gr. dat. yovvi). There is some evidence of a holodynamic type with a nom. sg. in *-ē̞/os (m./f.). Av. hitāuš 'associate', Gr. ἵππως 'horseman', πάτρως 'paternal uncle', Hitt. ħaruwaš 'birthing chair'.

The suffix *u- is found in a feminine motion ending *u-h₂-s as well, cf. *swekuros 'father-in-law' (Ved. śvāśuras, Gr. ἕκυρος, Lat. socer, Lith. šešuras) and *swekruh₁-s 'mother-in-law' (Ved. śvaśrūs, OCS sēkry), declined like a normal consonant amphidynamic stem (gen. sg. *swekruh₁/s-os > OCS sēkrve, cf. Ved. tanuās 'body') and root nouns with roots ending in *-H-like *h₁brūH-s 'eye-brow' (p. 48) or *suhH-s 'swine' (p. 38).

#### R-stems

The r-stems are dominantly masculine/feminine nouns with an invariant root. Many of them belong to nouns denoting family relations — *ph₁tēr 'father' (p. 46), *meh₁tēr 'mother' (p. 45), *dugh₁tēr 'daughter' (p. 47), *b₂reh₁tēr 'brother' (p. 18), *swesōr 'sister' (p. 32), *deh₂iwer 'husband’s brother' (Ved. devār-, Lith. dieveris, OCS dēveris),
*ǵenh₇tôr ‘begetter’ (p. 46), etc. *Nomen agentis *-tēr/*-tôr nouns were also r-stems (cf. PIE *dh₁tēr > Gr. δοτηρ but *deh₂tôr > Gr. δῶτωρ, Ved. dātā; Lat. dātōr, gen. sg. -ōris is a mix of the two types – all ‘giver’). Some monosyllabic words ending in *-r# (like *h₂stēr ‘star’, *h₂nēr ‘man’) can be treated as root nouns – in such cases it is sometimes impossible to tell if a segment was originally part of the suffix or the root. One can reconstruct two basic ablaut types for most r-stems – hysterodynamic (H) and acrodynamic (A) – that differed only in a few cases:

### TABLE 1.23 IE R-STEMS (SINGULAR)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-ēr</td>
<td>-ā̀</td>
<td>-ηρ/-ήρ</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>- é̃/-ê</td>
<td>-ar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-er-mp</td>
<td>-āra</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>-ōpa</td>
<td>-r̥em</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-er</td>
<td>-ar</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) gen.</td>
<td>*-r̥s</td>
<td>-ūr</td>
<td>-ρόζς</td>
<td>-ris</td>
<td>-[e]r̥e</td>
<td>-[e]ρς</td>
<td>-rs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H) gen.</td>
<td>*-r̥ey</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-[e]r̥e</td>
<td>-[e]ρς</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) loc.</td>
<td>*-r̥i</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-[e]r̥i</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H) loc.</td>
<td>*-r̥i</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-[e]r̥i</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) instr.</td>
<td>(?) *-r̥h₁</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-[e]r̥i</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H) instr.</td>
<td>*-r̥h₁</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-[e]r̥i</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-[e]ρί</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Av. n-ər̥s ‘man’; b Av. brāθ-rō < *-rah ‘brother’; c OLith./dial. -erės; d ONor. fōd-ur, OEng. fad-ur, fēad-ur < PGmc *-urz.

The length in the nom. sg. is due to Szemerényi’s Law (p. 70). The vowel *e is more frequent in the nom. sg. than *o.

### TABLE 1.24 IE R-STEMS (PLURAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-er-es</td>
<td>-āras</td>
<td>-ēpaς</td>
<td>{-rēs}</td>
<td>-ere</td>
<td>-ers c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) acc.</td>
<td>*-r̥ns</td>
<td>-ūn&quot;</td>
<td>-ρας</td>
<td>-νές</td>
<td>-eri</td>
<td>-eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H) acc.</td>
<td>*-er-ns</td>
<td>-ρας</td>
<td>-νές</td>
<td>-eris</td>
<td>-eri</td>
<td>-eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-r̥om</td>
<td>-fōdąm b</td>
<td>-p̥ōdων</td>
<td>-rum</td>
<td>-[e]ρο</td>
<td>-[e]ρι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-r̥b̥h₁mos</td>
<td>-fōb̥hi</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>-r̥i</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>-[e]ρμη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-r̥su</td>
<td>-fōsu</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-r̥i</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>-[e]ρμη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-r̥b̥h₁(s)</td>
<td>-fōb̥is</td>
<td>-[dat. -p]</td>
<td>-r̥i</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>-[e]ρμη</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a GA V. māt-ərąš < *-r̥ns (p. 31); b cf. Ved. svās-rām ‘sisters’, nā-rām ‘men’; c OLith./dial. -erės.

The PIE ablaut pattern of the suffix is reconstructed mostly from the overlap of Vedic and Greek patterns, which look original (the ablaut is mostly generalized in other languages). The acro-/hysterodynamic opposition is seen in different attested endings in the daughter languages in the gen. sg., in the difference between Vedic and Greek in the loc. sg., in structural analogy to the gen. sg. in the loc. sg., and in the difference between Vedic and Greek in the acc. pl. From the reflexes, it is impossible to deduce which nouns had which type. For structural reasons, one can assume that the derivatives with an invariant full-grade root (*meh₂tēr, *b̥reh₂tēr, *swesōr, *deh₂iwēr, *ǵenh₇tôr,
etc.) were acrodynamic (full-grade root + zero-grade ending in gen./instr. sg.), while the nouns with an invariant zero-grade root (*ph₂tēr, *dugh₂tēr, etc.) were hysterodynamic (zero-grade root + full-grade ending). An exceptional proterodynamic type with ablauting root can tentatively be reconstructed for ‘husband’s brother’s wife’: *yen-h₂tēr (Gr. ἐνατήρ, OLith. jentė) – gen. sg. *yn̥-h₂ter-s (Skr. yātar-).

### N-stems

Masculine/feminine n-stems point to a holodynamic + ± + type with a complex suffixal ablaut pattern:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1.25 IE N-STEMS (SINGULAR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* With a younger variant *-on-ṃ; b mahim-nē ‘greatness’; c ōnu-ov! ‘god’; d adv. aịv ‘always’ < *h₂eywen (cf. Gr. aịv ‘age’ < *h₂eywō(n)); e older -enes; f cf. -o (f./n.); g loc. sg. (n.) laman ‘name’.

The length in *-ō(n) < *-on-s is due to Szemerényi’s Law (p. 70). Some believe that the final *-n had dropped already in PIE (i.e., *h₂ekmō, *kwō ‘dog’ unlike *swesōr ‘sister’), cf. Lat. -or, OIr. -ur < *-ōr in r-stems but Lat. -ō, OIr. -u < *-ō(n) in n-stems (unlike Gr. -ov, Arm. -un < *-ōn, and OCS -y < *-ōn-s, which would then have to have reintroduced *-n(s) by analogy later). Perhaps it is best to assume that both variants (*-n and *-ō) occurred in PIE, just as in *-ō(m) in m-stems (p. 77). Besides the usual *-ū(n), there might have also existed a less frequent *-č(n), cf. the Greek ποιμήν ‘herdsman’ (but Lith. piemuõ) – see below. As in s-stems (p. 78), the loc. sg. points to a zero-ending (*-en-Ø). This is different from the i- and u-stems, where *-čy and *-ōw can be derived from older *-ey and *-owi and thus do not have an original zero-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1.26 IE N-STEMS (PLURAL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* dur-nāmnām ‘ill-named’; b argamanuš ‘tributes’.
The original ablaut of the suffix (the interchanging *-on/-en/-n-) is best preserved in Vedic, with the other languages usually generalizing one ablaut grade in most forms (e.g., *-on-in Greek). Generalized BSL. oblique *-en- (which can hardly stem from the loc. sg. *-en alone) and Ved. nom. pl. -ānas but acc. pl. -anas could point to the same original ablaut variation in the sg. as well (cf. Lith. -uō but -enį). It seems that some nouns had an *-en- in all (full-grade) cases, e.g., (hysterodynamic) *uk-s-en- 'ox' – nom. pl. *uk-s-en- (Ved. uksānas, OEng. exen 'oxen'). Some possible root nouns (like *kwō(m) 'dog') can be treated as n-stems as well ('dog' can originally be *pk-ōn from *pek-uo 'cattle')

n- stems, the word 'name' and other derivatives in *-men- point to a proterodynamic declension: *h1neh3-m (Ved. nāma, Lat. nōmen, Gr. ὄνομα) – gen. sg. *h1nh3-men-s (OIr. gen. sg. annmae; GAv. haxmōng < *-anh < *-ens, Goth. -ins < *-en-s ← *-en-s; OCS im-, OPruss. emm-< BSL. *imHm-) – nom. pl. *h1n(e)h1-mōn (Ved. nāmā). In the neuter nom. pl., one has to suppose pre-PIE *-on-h2 > *-ōn with a compensatory lengthening (p. 70). For the *-mū (gen. sg. *-men-s) derivatives cf. also Ved. kār-ma ‘act’ (⇒ Eng. karma), Gr. ἰδέ-μα (⇒ Eng. theme), Lat. sē-men ‘seed’ (⇒ Eng. semen), etc.

M-, l-, laryngeal, and plosive stems

Unlike the frequent r- and n-stems, other resonant stems were less frequent. For m-stems, cf. the root noun *dō(m) (p. 71) and the holodynamic (type ±±+) *dēgō(m) ‘earth’ (Hitt. īkkan, cf. p. 53) – gen. sg. *dēgō(m)-e/os (Hitt. taknāš with an analogical -n-; Gr. χῆ-όν has the gen. root and the nom. suffix) and *gē-eyō(m) ‘winter’ (Gr. χῖόν ‘snow’, Arm. ĵiwn ‘snow’, YAv. ziiā all with secondary *gē-ı-, cf. OCS zim-a, Gr. χεύ-όν for *gē-ey(m)-) – acc. sg. *gē-ey-em-m (Lat. hiem-) – gen. sg. *gē-ī-m-e/os (GAv. gen. sg. zimō) (p. 22). Like in n-stems (p. 76), the final *m was unstable after a long vowel in the nom. sg. (cf. Hom. δῶ ‘house’ < PIE *dō(m) but otherwise -ow; Lat. homō ‘man’ but Hitt. īkkan; Arm. ĵiwn, etc.). In l-stems, one finds just a (potentially root noun) *seh1-l-s ‘salt’ with a controversial vocalism/ ablaut pattern (p. 42) and (dialectal?) *h2ebōl ‘apple’ (Lith. ąbuol-ąs) (p. 16).

Of the rare laryngeal stems, the holodynamic (±±++) word for ‘path’ is easily reconstructable (with Vedic preserving the original ablaut pattern): *pont-e/oH-s (Ved. pānthās, cf. generalized *pont- in Gr. τάπτο- sea), Lat. pont- ‘bridge’, OCS poto) – gen. sg. *pmt-H-e/os (Ved. pathās, cf. generalized *pmt- in Gr. τάπτος, OPruss. pintiś). An early proterodynamic laryngeal stem, transformed in most descendant languages to an eh₂-stem (p. 24, 66), was *gē-en-h2 ‘woman’ (OIr. bé, Ved. įáni-) – gen. sg. *gē-n-eH-s (OIr. gen. sg. mnd, Ved. nom. sg. gnāś ‘divine woman’, cf. gnāś-páti- ‘husband of a divine woman’ for the gen. sg.). Cf. also the adjective *mē-g-h2-s (p. 53, 79–80).

Stems ending in a stop were rare (cf. the root noun *pōd-s (p. 15, 60, 70–71). The masculine word *h₂nepōts ‘grandson, nephew’ (Ved. nāpāt, Lat. nepōs – p. 39) is widely attested, though it is unclear whether it was acrodynamic (gen. sg. *(h₂)nepōts > Ved. nāptur with secondary *-r-s from r-stems) or ±± holodynamic (gen. sg. *(h₂)nep-t-e/os > YAv. naptō). The neuter word *mel-it ‘honey’ (Hitt. mili, Gr. μέλι, Goth. acc. sg. milīþ) with the *-it- suffix (cf. Hitt. ėppitt- ‘a kind of grain’) perhaps had a special ±+ amphidynamic subtype (Hitt. dat./loc. sg. malitti < *ml-it-ey, cf. CLuw. generalized rallit-).

Heteroclitic stems

Heteroclites were an ancient class of PIE neuter nouns with suppletive suffixes (one variant in the nom./acc., the other in the oblique cases). Though sometimes difficult to reconstruct exactly (with many languages often showing only isolated relics), their number is
not so small in total. The most common suppletion type was *-r-/-n-: cf. Ved. ás-r-k – gen. sg. as-n-ás, Hitt. ēšh-ar – gen. sg. ish-ú-naš ‘blood’, Hitt. wāt-ar – gen. sg. wit-en-aš ‘water’, etc. The suppletion *-l-/-n- is attested in the word ‘sun’ (GAv. huuarā – gen. sg. xowangs < *sh₂wens), and there may have been some other, less frequent and more controversial, types of suppletion (cf. p. 429, 437). Some languages in some cases preserve the actual suppletion as in PIE: Hittite abundantly (cf. Hitt. pahh₁u-r – gen. sg. pahh₁u-en-aš ‘fire’, p. 15), often Indo-Iranian (cf. Ved. yák-r̥-t – gen. sg. yak-n-ás ‘liver’), sometimes Greek (ἱπ-αρ – gen. sg. ἥπ-α-τος ‘liver’), and Latin (iec-ur – gen. sg. ioc-in-eris ‘liver’, p. 33). Most descendant languages usually generalize one of the variants (e.g., ONor. vatn but OEng. wæter ‘water’; Lat. sōl, Goth. sauil but Goth. also sunno ‘sun’; Goth. fon but OEng. fyr ‘fire’; CS ikra ‘roe’ but OLith. jėkno ‘liver’). PIE nom. sg. forms are usually reconstructable (*h₁esh₂r̥ ‘blood’, *wodr̥ and coll. *wedōr ‘water’, *peh₂wṛ ‘fire’, *yēkʷṛ ‘liver’), though not always (cf. *seh₂-w₁-l ‘sun’ with a problematic nom. sg. ablaut pattern, often reconstructed as *seh₂-w₁l – p. 32), while the reconstruction of oblique cases and ADTs is often more speculative.

S-stems

Numerous neuter s-stems (with the *-e/os- suffix) had a unique holostatic ADT with all full grades (+++), like the thematic stems (p. 62) and unlike other athematic stems. Neuter s-stems are considered athematic only because they have no thematic vowel, but their characteristics, such as the invariant root (though this occurs in other athematic stems as well) and only qualitative (*-e-/-o-) ablaut alternation of the suffix, remind one more of the thematic o-stems than of the other athematic stems:

### TABLE 1.27 IE S-STEMS (SINGULAR)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr. (Hom.)</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Hitt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td>*-os</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-₁wₙ</td>
<td>-₁δš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-es-e/os</td>
<td>-asas</td>
<td>-esas</td>
<td>-eris</td>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>-isš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-es-ey</td>
<td>-asə</td>
<td>-asə</td>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-esi</td>
<td>-iš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-es²</td>
<td>-as[i]</td>
<td>[dat. -e[i]]</td>
<td>[abl. -er[e]]</td>
<td>-es[e]</td>
<td>-iš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-es-eh₁</td>
<td>-asā</td>
<td>-asā</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Younger analogue: *-es-i; b Myc. we-te-e ‘year’.

The original loc. sg. has *-Ø (cf. p. 76 for n-stems).

### TABLE 1.28 IE S-STEMS (PLURAL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr. (Hom.)</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td>*-ōs</td>
<td>-ām</td>
<td>s[i]</td>
<td>{-eₙ}</td>
<td>{-era}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-es-om *</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>oν</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-es-b₉/mos</td>
<td>-obh[y]as b</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-erᵦ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*-e(s)-su</td>
<td>-a(s)su</td>
<td>[dat. -e(ₙ)(o)u]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*-es-b₉/(s)</td>
<td>-obh[i]s d</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Cf. Hitt. nepišan; b < *-asbhyas; c < *-asbhṣ; d Myc. pa-we-pi ‘pieces of cloth’.
The original nom. pl. *-ōs (from older *-os-h₂, p. 70), which cannot be explained as secondary, can be seen regularly in Avestan (cf. raocā ‘lights’ < *-āh), contaminated in Ved. -āmsi, and indirectly perhaps in OEng. lombor ‘lambs’ (< P Germ. *-o-ž-a). Reflexes of the nom. pl. *-es-eh₂ etc. are secondary. The distribution of suffixal *-os-/es- reminds of the *pod-/ped- distribution in the root nouns (p. 71).

Masculine/feminine (holostatic) derivatives in *-ēs (derived from neuter s-stems) also existed – cf. PIE *h₁su-men-ēs ‘well-disposed’ (Ved. sumānās, Gr. εὐμενίς) from *menos – gen. sg. *menese/os (Ved. mānas ‘mind’, Gr. μένος ‘spirit’), Greek names ending in -κλής (like Sophocles), or Lat. Cerēs (goddess). A holodynamic (±±±) feminine noun can be reconstructed: *h₁ews-ōs-Ø (< *-os-s, p. 70) ‘dawn’ (Gr. Aeol. ἀοὐς, Lat. gen. sg. *menese/os (Ved. ušās and GAv. ušā with analogical u-) – gen. sg. *h₁us-s-e/os (Ved. ušās); cf. also Lat. honōs ‘honor’ – gen. sg. honōris with generalized -ōs- for the type. Note also the perf. ptcp. in *-wos- (p. 104). Other, shorter and infrequent, s-stem types can perhaps be reconstructed as well, cf. Ved. ákṣi < *h₁ekʷ-s-Ø (neuter) with OCS oko – gen. sg. oceše ‘eye’ (like nebo). There are also root nouns ending in (originally suffixal?) *-s, e.g., *muHṣ (p. 38, 71).

ADJECTIVES

PIE adjectives were morphologically identical to nouns. However, the number of possible stems in adjectives was much smaller. For the most numerous o-stems cf. *new-o-s (m.) – *new-e-h₂ (f.) – *new-o-m (n.) ‘new’ (Ved. nāvas – nāvā – nāvam, Gr. νέος – νέα – νέον, Lat. nouus – noua – nouum, OCS novъ – nova – novo, Lith. nūjas – nūja – nūja, p. 32). For the frequent u-stems cf. *sweh₂ dus (m.) – *sweh₂ dwiḥ₂ (f.) – *sweh₂ du (n.) ‘sweet’ (Ved. svādīs – svādī – svādī, Gr. ζύγως – ζύγη – ζύγον; cf. Lith. salūdus – salūdū – ‘sweet’; Goth. kaūrus ‘heavy’). Note that the -us form is used for the masculine only, unlike in nouns (p. 73). For the apparently not-so-frequent i-stems cf. *semh₁-l-is (m./f.) – *semh₁-l-i (n.) ‘similar’ > Lat. similis (m./f.) – simile (n.), OIr. samail ‘likeness’ (f.) (cf. also Hitt. pāly-ış-š ‘wide’). Original root adjectives may perhaps be reconstructed when dealing with different suffixes in later languages, i.e., *nogʷ-s ‘naked’ (cf. Ved. nagnáś, Gr. γυμνός, Lith. niogas, OCS nagъ, Goth. naqabs, Lith. nekmanza). A ±±± holodynamic laryngeal stem can be reconstructed for *meg₃-h₂-s (m./f.) – *meg₃-h₂ (n.) ‘big’ (Gr. μέγας (m.) – μέγα (n.), Ved. máhi (n.), Hitt. mek (n.)), gen. sg. *meg₃-h₂-e/os (Gr. Hom. ἀγα- ‘greatly’), acc. sg. *meg₃-eh₂-m (Aeol./Dor. adv. ἀγα- ‘very much’). Cf. p. 79 for s-stem adjectives in *-ēs. A heterolotropic adjective can be reconstructed as well: *piHwō(n) ‘fat’ (Ved. pīvān-, Gr. πιθανόν) – f. *piHwerih₂ (Ved. πίβαρι, Gr. πίθαρα). As can be seen, some adjectives had separate masculine/feminine/neuter forms (e.g., all thematic forms), while others had identical masculine/feminine forms (as in some nominal stems). There were a number of adjectival suffixes, cf. *medʰ-y-os (p. 31), *h₁rudʰ-r-os (p. 19), *-went- ‘having . . .’ (Ved. putrávant- ‘having a son’ from putrá ‘son’), etc. The Caland System is a name for a pattern of adjectives in *-ro-, *-mo-, *-u-, *-nt (often occurring with the same root, cf. Gr. ἐλαφρ-ρ-ός ‘light (in weight), nimble, small’, ἐλαξ-υ-ζ ‘small, short’) that have *-i- instead as the first element in compounds (cf. Gr. κῦδ-ρ-ός ‘glorious’ but κῦδ-ι-άνειρα ‘bringing men glory’) and that often go together with neuter s-stem nouns (Gr. κῦδος ‘glory’ ⇒ Eng. kudos) and stative *-eh₂- verbs (cf. Gr. ἐφισθ-ρ-ός, OCS ruδ-r-t, ‘red’, and Lat. rub-ē-re ‘to be red’) formed from the same root.

A couple of adjectival/adverbial prefixes appearing in compounds can be reconstructed: *-ne ‘no’ – p. 54; cf. the famous PIE collocation *klewos p-[dʰ]gʰśitom ‘imperishable fame’ > Ved. śrāvo . . . áksitam, Gr. Hom. κλέος ἀφθιτον), *h₁s- ‘good’ (p. 47,
Comparison of adjectives

PIE did not have the full-fledged paradigmatic comparison that later and modern IE languages
have. It apparently had a number of derivation suffixes (similar to Eng. -ish in smallish, etc.) that
modified the meaning of adjectives, some of which became regular comparative/superlative
suffixes in later languages. The most widespread comparative(-like) suffix was *-yōs (m./f.) (Lat. seniōr, arch. Lat. -ōr, OIr. siniu ‘older’) – *-yos (n) (Lat. melius, OCS bolje ‘better’, perhaps also *-is, cf. adverbial Lat. magis ‘more’, Goth. mins ‘less’, OPruss. tālis ‘farther’) – oblique *-is- (OCS oblique dražьšь ‘dearer’, Goth. batizä ‘better’), and probably *-yes- in some cases (Ved. oblique -yas-, with ±± holodynamic paradigm and a full root even from adjectives with a zero root in the positive, cf. Gr. (Ion.) krēsōn ‘stronger’ < *kret-yōs from krātōs ‘strong’ < *kr̥ t-u-s; Ved. drā́ gh|ī|yas- ‘very long; longer’ < *dl̥ Hgh-h-yos- from dīrghás ‘long’ < *dl̥ Hgh-os. The zero-grade *-is- also appeared in complex superlative suffixes *-is-t(H)o- (Ved. náviṣṭhas ‘newest’, Gr. βέλτιστος, Goth. batists ‘best’; made from a full-grade root and not from the positive, cf. Ved. tēj-iṣṭh-a- from tig-m-ā- ‘sharp’), pairing with the comp. *-yos-, and dialectal/innovative *-is-m̥-Ho- (Lat. máximus ‘biggest’, OIr. nessam ‘nearest’). The suffix *-ter-o-, originally used in contrastive (positive) meaning in adjectives (Lat. dexter, Gr. δεξίτερος ‘right’, Ved. úttaras ‘upper’) and pronouns (*k woteros ‘which (of two)’ > Ved. katarás, Gr. πότερος, OCS kot̄ɔryi ‘which’, Goth. ƕaþar), later yielded the comparative in Greek (σοφώτερος ‘wiser’) and Indo-Iranian (Skr. mahattaras ‘greater’). The complex suffix *-tm̥ -H-o- often yielded a superlative (Ved. uttamás ‘highest’, Lat. optimus ‘best’, Gaul. name Uertamocorii ‘highest warriors’; in Greek *-tm̥ -t-o-, cf. σοφώτατος ‘wisest’), pairing with the comp. *-tero-. It is possible that in some cases an unmarked PIE adjective might have functioned as a comparative/superlative, cf. Hitt. šallayaš šiunaš šalliš ‘the greatest (lit. great) of the great gods’, and p. 438 for the Armenian comparative. An interesting but not completely clear phenomenon in IE languages is that for frequent/basic adjectives (‘good’, ‘bad’, ‘small’, ‘big’) one often finds suppletive forms, which usually differ from language to language, cf. for ‘good’ – ‘better’ – ‘best’ Gr. ἀγαϑός – βελτ ῳων – βέλτιστος (with other variants), Lat. bonus – melior – optimus, OCS dobřь – bolii (lučii), Goth. göfs – batiza – batists, OIr. maith – ferr – deg. Cognates among the mentioned suppletive adjectives are just *bel-/mel- (cf. p. 17) ‘better’ and *min- ‘smaller’ (Lat. mínimus, OCS mьnii, Goth. minniza).

ADVERBS

PIE did not have general, special adverbial suffixes for derivation from nouns and adjectives (cf. Eng. man-ly, nice-ly). Instead, various (usually singular) nominal and adjectival cases (all except the vocative) were used adverbially. However, not a lot can be reconstructed directly for PIE since this type of adverb formation was very productive, and the forms are widely diverse in IE languages; cf., e.g., the adverbial ‘by night’ expressed by the gen. sg. in Gr. vuktός, Goth. nahts, the acc. sg. in Ved. náktam, and the instr. sg. in OCS noštijq ‘by night’. Neuter forms (in the nom./acc. sg.) are generally often used adverbially, cf. the neuter adjectival *meğh₂ (p. 79) used as an adverb (Ved. máhi ‘greatly’, Gr. μέγα ‘very much’, ONor. mjök ‘much, very’, Hitt. mekk[i] ‘very, greatly’), or Ved. purú ‘abundantly’, Gr. πολό ‘much’, Goth. filu ‘much, very’; OCS mьnogo ‘much’,
etc. For the adverbial use of the locative, cf. Lat. temere ‘blindly’ (< *in the dark’), OCS dolē ‘below’, dobrē ‘good’, etc.; for the instrumental, cf. Ved. divā ‘by day’, madhyā ‘in the middle’, Gr. κρυφ ‘in secret’ (p. 66), OCS vočera ‘yesterday’ (p. 64), etc.

Some apparently non-derived (or not easily analyzable) adverbs can also be reconstructed, e.g., *dʰǵʰyes (p. 53) ‘yesterday’ (Ved. hyás, Gr. ἵξος, Lat. herīn), OIr. [in]-dē, Alb. dje), originally perhaps a loc. sg.; *nā(n) ‘now’ (Ved. nū, Gr. νό(v)ē, Lat. mun[e], OCS ny[nē] and CS n[j]nē, Goth./OIr. nu, Hitt. nu ‘and, but’, [k]mūn ‘now’, etc. – p. 54–55), usually connected to the adj. *new-o-s ‘new’, etc. The later verbal augment *h₁e (p. 6, 95, 161) was originally probably an adverb. A few postpositions (p. 104–105) were originally probably adverbs or both postpositions and adverbs, cf. *(s)upo ‘below; under’ (Ved. úpa ‘up to, upon, above, near’, Gr. ὑπό ‘under’), Lat. sub ‘under, below, up to’, Goth. uf ‘under’, OIr. fo ‘under’) and *(s)uper(i) ‘above; over’ (Ved. upāri ‘above’, Gr. ὑπέρ ‘over, above’, Lat. super ‘over, above’, Goth. ufar ‘over, above’, OIr. for ‘over’). Some adverbial suffixes did exist; for *-d[e], *-r, and pronominal adverbs generally, cf. p. 89. For numerical adverbs, cf. p. 91; for adverbial compound prefixes like *h₁su- ‘good’, cf. p. 79–80.

**PRONOUNS**

Unlike nouns/adjectives and verbs, which always had CVC type roots, pronominal roots were usually CV, VC, or V (of course, *HV- is always theoretically possible for initial *V-, cf. p. 52). The pronominal declension had mostly the same endings as the nominal one, except for five special different endings (apparently, not all appeared in all pronominal declensions): nom. sg. m. *-Ø (cf. nominal *-*s), nom. sg. n. *-d (cf. nominal *-Ø/m), gen. sg. m./n. *-(e)so (cf. nominal o-stem *-osyo, otherwise *-es/-os), nom. pl. m. *-i (cf. nominal *-es), and gen. pl. *-som (cf. nominal *-om, p. 63). The oblique m./n. sg. cases (gen./abl./dat./loc.) of non-personal pronouns also feature the element *-sm- before the endings, usually thought to be the zero grade of *som- ‘one’ (p. 89); cf. the English use of *this one, which one, etc. In the plural (and dual) masculine/neuter forms, the nom. *-i- often spreads already in PIE to the oblique cases as part of the enlarged stem (e.g., gen. pl. *to-y-som, p. 86). Many basic pronouns had suppletive forms (cf. heteroclitic nouns – p. 77–78). Personal pronouns, unlike other pronouns and nouns, did not have all seven/eight cases (this is opposite to the situation in many present-day IE languages – like English, the Romance languages, and Macedonian/Bulgarian – where personal pronouns preserve the declension, while the nouns do not). In the history of the IE languages, pronominal and nominal forms often mixed, cf. *-o-i instead of original *-o-es in the nom. pl. o-stems in Latin/Greek/Balto-Slavic (p. 65), or -rum instead of the older *-um in the gen. pl. in Latin (p. 67). Non-personal pronouns, which have different gender forms, like adjectives, sometimes had two (m. = f., n.), sometimes three forms (m., f., n.).

**Personal pronouns**

The personal pronouns are rather difficult to reconstruct since the attested IE systems are in many cases rather different (due to copious innovation). They were characterized by partial (nom. sg. *tu ‘you’ – gen. sg. *teb(e) or complete suppletivity (nom. sg. *h₁eɡ ‘I’ – acc. sg. *me); by the existence of clitic forms – sometimes as the only existing, or at least reconstructable, form and often syncretic (like gen./dat./acc. pl. *nos ‘us’); and apparently by the lack of reconstructable loc./instr. cases (all languages have different, innovative-looking forms), which were either non-existent or, less likely, innovative in all languages – the lack of separate vocative forms is not strange, and the ablative is the same as the genitive
in most nominal declensions anyway. Like many older IE languages, PIE had no separate 3rd person forms of personal pronouns – demonstrative/anaphoric pronouns (p. 85) were used instead. Many monosyllabic forms exhibited facultative lengthening (p. 54–55). The reconstructed forms are not always completely morphologically transparent (i.e., the root, suffixes, and endings are not always easily distinguished – e.g., in gen. *mene ‘of me’).

I sg. ‘I’

nom. *h₁eǵ > GAv. as-eči (1x), Slav. *já (e.g., BCMS jâ), OLith. e[ech], Hitt. [e]ič *h₁eǵ-Hom > Ved. ahám, GAv. az̄m, Gr. ējów, Slav. *jazk (e.g., OCS azb), Goth. ik, Arm. e[i\i],

* h₁e-oh₂ > Gr. ējô, Lat. ego, Ven. ego

acc. *mē (accented/clitic) > Ved. mā, GAv. mā, Gr. [e]mē, clitic mē, Lat. mē, OCS m[ē],

OPruss. mie[n], Goth. m[ē]k, Ofr. mē

gem. *mene > Ved. mà/mac, YAv. manca, OCS mene

*moy (clitic) > Ved. me, GAv. mōi, Lat. mēs

dat. *me-ųi > Ved. máhy[a(m)], Lat. mih[t] (Umbr. me[b’, c’]), Arm. [i]nj

*moy (clitic) > Ved. me, GAv. mōi, Gr. mōi, OCS mi, OLith. mi

The 1 sg. pronoun showed the suppletivity of *h₁eǵ- (nom.) and *m- (oblique). The oblique cases had both stressed and clitic forms. Three nom. forms are reconstructable, one non-derived (*h₁eǵ) and two with suffixes, *-oh₂ one perhaps being dialectal. The existence of two (even three) parallel forms may not be as strange as it might seem (even without any specific different function/meaning, which may have existed in PIE), cf. Hitt. īk and ike, ukila ‘I, myself’. Hitt. oblique amme- (cf. acc. ammek ‘me’), Arm. i- (cf. acc. is ‘me’), and Gr. ē- in stressed forms (cf. acc. ēmē but clitic mē) would point to *h₁m- (p. 48), not *m-. However, this is not in accord with the glottogonic, but nonetheless persuasive, connection of pronominal *me- with verbal eventive 1 sg. *-m, 1 pl. *-me (p. 93). Thus, it is perhaps better to assume that this *h₁m- is innovative – an analogy to the initial *h₁- in the nom. (where *h₁eǵ, not *eǵ, has to be reconstructed in that case) or later to the initial *e- in the nom. However, *h₁m- would formally also work for PIE. Like in the 2nd person accented dat. sg., the ending is difficult to reconstruct (all languages show different endings). Here, we tentatively reconstruct PIE *-i, on the basis of Ved. -yam, OLith. dat. mani, and perhaps clitic *moi-i, but that is admittedly highly speculative. The element *-ųi- in the dat. is usually thought to be some kind of particle originally. It is possible that *moy had a variant *mey (which would be a more ready pre-form for Latin, Lithuanian, and Old Church Slavic). In the ablative, Ved. mād and OLat. mēd are formal cognates (PIE *me-t?) but are more likely separate innovations.

2 sg. ‘you’

nom. *tů > Ved. t(u)čvám, GAv. tů, Gr. (Dor./Aeol.) tů, Lat. tū, OCS ty, Lith. tū (OPruss. tů), Goth. þu, Ofr. tů (also tu-su), Arm. tvu, Alb. ti, Toch. B t(u)we|

acc. *twe > Ved. tvām, GAv. țăca, Gr. oć *tě (clitic) > Gr. (Dor.) tē, Lat. tē, OCS ťe, OPruss. tie[n], Goth. þi[k]


*toy (clitic) > Ved. te, GAv. tōi, Lat. tēs|

dat. *tubô-i > Ved. tūbhy[a(m)]; *tebô-i > Av. tēb[y]āi, Lat. tib[i] (Umbr. tef[e’]), OCS teb[ė], OPruss. tebb[ė/i] *toy (clitic) > Ved. te, Gr. (Dor./Lesb./Ion.) tōi, OCS ti, OLith. ti
The forms are in many ways parallel to those of the 1 sg. The stems *tew/-tu/-tw- and *t-
are marginally suppletive (these are probably ultimately somehow related to the verbal 2
pl. *te). Anatolian languages show *ti- in the nom. (CLuw. *i) and *tu- in oblique cases
(Hitt. tu-), which is difficult to explain as innovative so some think that PIE originally
*tu- is often thought to be the origin of the vocalism of Hitt. ūk ‘I’. The existence of
both short and long reflexes in the nom. points to monosyllabic lengthening (p. 54–55),
as in other similar personal pronouns forms (cf. acc. *mē and *(w)ē), not to a laryngeal
length. Ved. tūḥya(m) with tu- looks like an archaism (cf. OCS mъně ‘to me’, Latv. dial.
mun- by possible early analogy), while other languages point to a more regular *teb-
(cf. gen. *tewe and dat. *megʰ). The usual dat. ending *-ey in Lat. tībē, OPruss. tebbe(i) is
perhaps an innovation (by analogy to nouns). Unlike the 1 sg. pronoun, the stressed and
unstressed forms were distinguished in the acc.

1 pl. ‘we’

nom. *we-y(-es) > Ved. vay’ám, GAv. va[ē]m, Goth. we[ō], Hitt. wē[ā], Toch. B we{s}
(also archaic *mes?, see below)
acc. *nō̆-s-me > Ved. asmā|n, YAv. ahma (GAv. āhmā), Gr. ( Aeol.) āμμε, Goth. uns,
Hitt. ânū[ā]|s
*nō̆-s (clitic) > Ved. nas, GAv. nā (< *nās), Lat. nōs, OCS n’y\', Hitt. -naš, Alb. ne/na
gen. *nō̆-s (clitic) > Ved. nas, GAv. nō̆ (< *nas), Lat. nos[trum], OCS n’y\', OPruss.
n’ō̆[š]n(ā), Alb. na
dat. *nō̆-s (clitic) > Ved. nas, GAv. nō̆ (< *nas), OCS n’y\', Hitt. -naš, Alb. na

The suppletive forms were *we- and *no-/n̥- with plural endings (the pronominal *-i in
the nom. and *-s(-), presumably a variant of the nominal pl. *-es, in other cases). The form
*wey is not really attested as such, since Indo-Iranian has the usual additional *-om and
Germanic/Anatolian point to *wey-es with the additional plural *-es. For *we- cf. the dual
pronominal and verbal forms (p. 94), while *gs- is often derived from *g̣s- (cf. the nominal
acc. pl. – p. 63), i.e., from *me- as in the 1 sg. pronoun (cf. also verbal 1 sg. *-m) and *-me-
in 1 pl. verbal forms. Because of these considerations, one is prone to consider *mes ‘we’
(Lith. mēš, Arm. mek) an archaic dialectal by-form (with *we- often considered originally
dual), though it could also be an innovation due to analogy to the verbal ending *-mès
(p. 93). The acc. *(g̣s)me- is an unlikely source for *mes. For the gen./dat., only clitic forms
seem to be reconstructable. In the stressed acc., a suffix (or reduplication of the original
root?) *-me can be reconstructed on the basis of Greek and Avestan. It is not impossible
that the dat. had a non-clitic *g̣s-m- with an unreconstructable ending (cf. Ved. asm-é, Av.
ahm-ētiä, Gr. Aeol. āμμ-ū, Goth. uns-īs)), but this can also be a later analogy to the acc.
(apparently, this *-sm- had nothing to do with *-sm- in non-personal pronouns, see below).

2 pl. ‘you’

nom. *yū-s > Ved. yūyām, GAv. yūš, OCS v’y, Lith. jūs, Goth. jūs
acc. *ū-s-we > Goth. ūzwīs|n, MW čhwī; us-me > Ved. ā|mūšmā|n, Gr. (Aeol.) ūμμε,
Hitt. šummā|s (< *usmās)
*ū̆-s (clitic) > Ved. vas, GAv. vā (< *vās), Lat. ūōs, OCS v’y\', OPruss. wa|n’s
gen. *ū̆-s (clitic) > Ved. vas, GAv. vē (< *vēs), Lat. uas[trum], OCS vas|n’s
data. *ū̆-s (clitic) > Ved. vas, GAv. vē (< *vēs), OCS v’y\'
The forms are in many ways parallel to those of the 1 pl. The suppletive forms are *yu- (nom.) and *wo-/u- (oblique). A frequent ad hoc assumption is that *yu- stems from the older *u-. The nom. (which, unlike the 1 pl., has nominal *-s) is attested with a long *ū only, so a laryngeal *yuHs is theoretically possible instead of the monosyllabic lengthening (p. 54–55), but not likely (cf. the dual form). The stressed acc. again shows *-me, but Goth. izwis looks archaic if we consider this *-we (also seen in the dual) an original reduplication of the root. Cf. Katz 1998 for *-me/-we.

1 du. ‘us two’

nom.   *wē > Ved. vā|m| (1x), GAv. vā, OCS vē, OLith. ve|du|, Goth. wi|t|
acc.   *nh₁-we > Ved. āv|lām|, GAv. ȁlā, Goth. ug{kis}
       *no-h₁ (clitic) > Ved. nā|u|, Av. nā, Gr. (nom./acc.) vó, OCS na
       gen./dat. *no-h₁ (clitic)

The suppletive forms are much the same as in the 1 pl. Cf. also the verbal 1 du. *-we- (p. 94). We reconstruct the nom. form with monosyllabic lengthening because of the short and long reflexes. If one were to reconstruct *weh₁, OLith. ve-du and Goth. wi-t would be difficult to account for. The nom. form is the same as the plural one, except for the missing plural *-i. The laryngeal length of the gen./dat./acc. clitic (with the dual ending *-h₁) is proven by consistent long reflexes, parallelism to the plural forms (which are the same except for having the plural ending *-s(-)), and the zero-grade length in the stressed acc. form (*nh₁-). The clitic was probably *nōh₁ (like pl. *nōs), but no language distinguishes *ōH from *ōH. The reconstruction of the gen./dat. clitic is due to the supposed structural parallelism to the plural forms. In dual forms, the stressed acc. has only *-we (unlike the prevalent *-me in the plural), according to the reflexes. Some think this *-we is found also in the acc. sg. *t-we (but this may also be *tu-e, cf. nom. *tu).

2 du. ‘you two’

nom.   *yū > Ved. yu|vām|, OCS \v\y, Lith. jū|du|
acc.   *uh₁-we > Ved. yu|v|ām|
       *wo-h₁ (clitic) > Ved. vā|m|, OCS va, Toch. B nom. we|ne|
       gen./dat. *wo-h₁ (clitic)

The forms are parallel to the 1 du., and the suppletive stems to ones in the 2 pl. forms.

Reflexive pronouns

The reflexive pronoun ‘self’ was identical to the 2 sg. personal pronoun, except that it did not have a nom. sg. and had an initial *s- instead of *t-. Cf. gen. *sewe (OCs se|b|e), dat. *seb₁ (YAv. h|u|uaü|a|luhwawayal, OLat. sib{ei}, OCS seb{ei}, OPruss. sebb{ei}), clitic gen. *soy (GAw. höi), clitic dat. *soy (GAw. höi, Gr. oi, OCS si), acc. *swē̆ (Ved. sv|vām|, Gr. ē, Pamph. ë), clitic *sē̆ (Lat. sē, OCS sê\, OPruss. sie|n, Goth. si|k). The pronoun was originally used not only for the 3 sg. but for the 1 and 2 sg. as well.

Possessive pronouns

The singular possessive pronouns, derived from personal and reflexive pronouns, can be formally reconstructed, though their antiquity is not beyond doubt (the forms often differ
in specific languages): *m-o-s (Gr. ἐμός, GAv. mā) and *me/oy-o-s ‘my’ (Lat. meus, OCS moja), *tw-o-s ‘thy’ (Ved. tvās, GAv. ḍhā, Gr. σος, Arm. kō), *sw-o-s ‘own’ (Ved. svās, Gr. ὅς).

Demonstrative pronouns

A number of demonstrative pronominal stems can be reconstructed – some better attested than others. Considering the number of the attested stems, it is probable that PIE had a three-way system of demonstrative pronouns (like Lat. hic/iste/ille and most IE languages, or Japanese kore/sore/are), correlated with three persons, and not a two-way one (like English this/that), cf. p. 160. The exact reconstruction of the semantics of the stems is a bit speculative, since these change easily in languages. The three best-attested (and probably main) demonstratives are *ki- ‘this (near me/speaker)’, *s-/t- ‘that (near you/the addressed)’, and *(h)2/e/on- ‘that (near him)’ (OCS on, Lith. anās, Arm. na). It is not clear why there were five different reconstructable demonstrative stems (a number of scenarios are possible), though some languages preserve all of them, cf. OCS sb, ovna, tō, otna (suppletive acc. i).

For the pronoun *ki- ‘this’ (also *ko-?), cf. OCS sb (m.) – si (f.) – se (n.), Lith. šis – ši (f.), OIr. cē, Arm. sa, Hitt. kāš (CLuw. zāš) – kī (n.), PGmc *xī (OEng. ēhe ‘he’, Goth. himma daga ‘today’, etc.), also Lat. (hi)-c (cf. cis ‘on this side’), Gr. (ε)κεί- voc ‘that one there’ (*key-?), Alb. si-vjet ‘this year’. Owing to differences in languages and partial attestations, the PIE declension is not clear.

The suppletive forms are well attested in *s-o (m.) – *s-eh, (f.) – *t-o-d (n.) ‘that’ (cf. Av. hō – hā – tāt, Gr. ó – ó – tó ‘the’, Clb. so (?) – sa – sod, Toch. B se – sā – te, OLat. f. sa-psa ‘herself’). The *s- appears only in the nom. sg./m.; all other forms have a *t-.

Here is the declension (n. = m., except in the nom./acc. and du.):

| TABLE 1.29 IE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *SO – *SEH2 – *TOD (SINGULAR) |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| sg.             | PIE             | Ved.        | OCS            | Lith.          | Goth.         |
| nom.            | *s-o – *s-eh, – | sā(s) – sā – | \\b – \təa – tə | \\tə \= \tə \b – sā – sa – ̄pat(a) |
| acc.            | *t-o-m – *t-e-h, – | tām – tām – | tə – tə – to | \tā | \pan\[a\] – po – ̄pat[a] |
| gen.            | *t-e-so – *t-e-sy- | tās|ā – tāsās | tə∅|g∅ – tə∅∅ | t{∅} – t{∅} | \pis – ́πενos |
| abl.            | *t-o-sm-ōt –*t-e-sy- | tāsмāt – tāsās | | | |
| dat.            | *t-o-sm-ōy –*t-o-sy- | tāsmai – tāsai | tomu – to∅ | \tama – t{∅ai} | ̄\panma – ̄pa\=\u0173ai |
| loc.            | *t-o-sm-ī –*t-o-sy- | tāsmi|n – | tomb – to∅ | \tamo – \t∅ | \pis | |
| instr.          | *t-o-∅. – *t-o-∅- | tēnā – tāvā | tēmā – t∅∅ | t{u∅} – t∅ | |

In sg./pl. always m. – f. – n. and m./n. – f. (when just two forms); b Lithuanian has no neuter, cf. OPruss. sta < *s-t-od; c Old Lithuanian.

The *-o/-e- that appears after *s/t- in the sg./pl. is apparently a thematic vowel. The non-pronominal endings are from o-/eh₂-stems (except for masculine loc. *-i, not *-oy).
Ved. sú, Gr. ó, and Goth. sa, with no ending, are archaic (cf. also *ey below), though the Greek declension of the pronoun is otherwise innovative, with all nominal endings. Goth. *pat-a probably proves the neuter ending was *-d (not *-t). Germanic (and Slav. česo, Gr. Ion. téo) probably points to a gen. in *-e-so, replaced by thematic *-o- and other endings elsewhere. In the masculine abl./dat./loc., the element *-sm- (Ved. -sm-, OCS/Lith. -m- with a special development of *-sm-, OPruss. -sm-, Goth. -mm-) appears after the root, cf. also OPruss. dat. stesmu (with *s- + *t-), CIB. dat. somui (with generalized *s-), and Arm. dat. doma < *dmy (with *g- as in du ‘thou’, p. 438). The f. gen./abl./dat./loc. sg. forms appear, on the basis of Indo-Iranian, to have *-sy- instead (connected to *si- ‘one’ > Hitt. šī-, Gr. Ἰα, besides μία, cf. Beekes 1988: 81; or perhaps from older *-smy- from *smih ‘one’ – p. 89). In Old Church Slavic, *tosy- is replaced with *toy- (as in the pl. and instr. sg.); in Gothic with *tes- (as in the masculine gen.); in Lithuanian (and Greek) with a simple *t- plus endings (e.g., the gen. *t-es instead of *tesy-es). The instr. forms are unclear, though both Vedic and Old Church Slavic point to *toy- (otherwise the pl. stem).

**TABLE 1.30 IE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *SO – *SEH₂ – *TOD (PLURAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Lith.</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*t-o-n-s – *t-e-h₂</td>
<td>t̄ūn – tās – tā</td>
<td>ty (m./f.) – ta</td>
<td>tuōs – tās₂</td>
<td>p̄ans – p̄os – p̄o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-som – *t-e-h₂-som</td>
<td>té̄ȳm – tās̄m</td>
<td>té̄b</td>
<td>t̄ūȳ e</td>
<td>p̄̄̄n̄̄s̄ {e} – p̄̄̄n̄̄s̄ ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-bh</td>
<td>m̄os – *t-e-h₂-bh</td>
<td>m̄os</td>
<td>té̄bh</td>
<td>ȳas – tābh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-su – *t-e-h₂-su</td>
<td>tēsu – tāsu</td>
<td>té̄xb</td>
<td>tuos̄ {ê} – tos {ê}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-bh</td>
<td>m̄is – *t-e-h₂-bh</td>
<td>m̄is</td>
<td>tébhis̄ b – tābhis̄</td>
<td>tēmī ̄</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* BSL. *-miHs; AV tās (cf. Av. tāiš and Lith. taĩš) is innovative; ᵀ Old Church Slavic (and Gothic in the dat.) have generalized *toy- in both m./f. in the gen./dat./loc./instr. (cf. the Lat. f. gen. tōtārum); ⁴ cf. OPruss. stans; ⁵ cf. OPruss. steison; ⁶ OLith. -mus; ⁷ cf. adjectival -aize, -aizo.

The nom. and gen. have pronominal endings. From forms like *toy, many later languages generalized the originally pronominal ending *-oy in the nominal o-stems as well (p. 64–65). For gen. *-som (often changed to *-sōm, as in the nominal *-om/-ōm, p. 70), cf. also CIB. soïsum and Hitt. kinzan (from *ki-). This *toy- seems to have spread from the nom. to the gen./dat./loc./instr. pl. (and instr. sg.).

**TABLE 1.31 IE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *SO – *SEH₂ – *TOD (DUAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>du.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc/voc.</td>
<td>*t-o-h₁ (m.) – *t-o-yh₂ (f./n.)</td>
<td>tā (m.) – té (f./n.)</td>
<td>tō</td>
<td>ta (m.) – té (f./n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./loc.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-ow</td>
<td>t̄ūȳōs̄</td>
<td>tōj {v}</td>
<td>toju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat./abl./instr.</td>
<td>*t-o-y-bh</td>
<td>m̄/m̄oh₁</td>
<td>t̄ābhȳm̄</td>
<td>tōj {v}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The dual forms have the nominal endings, with the oblique *-oy- as in the plural. The pronoun for ‘that (over there)’ (used anaphorically as well — referring to something already mentioned — which was perhaps its original function) has suppletive *(h₁)e-y- (zero-grade (*h₁)i-) and *(h₁)e- (n.=m., except in nom./acc.):

**TABLE 1.32 IE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *EY (*IS) – *IH₂ – *ID (SINGULAR)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*i-h₂ – *i-d</td>
<td></td>
<td>id[ām]</td>
<td>}</td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*i-d</td>
<td></td>
<td>id[ām]</td>
<td>}</td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*e-so –</td>
<td>asy[ā] – asyās</td>
<td>e{iμa} – id</td>
<td>je{g}o – je{y}eʃ</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-sy-e-h₁-es</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>*e-sm-ōt –</td>
<td>asmāt – asyās</td>
<td>e{ā} – e’{ā}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-sy-e-h₁-es</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-sy-e-h₁-ey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*e-sm-i –</td>
<td>asm[īn] – asy{ām}</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>jem’ – je’ʃl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-sy-e-h₁-i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* this here; ° OLat. ei[s] (1x); c ‘that one; he/she/it’; ° from *e-syo-s; cf. South Picene loc. esme/ṁ; ° he, she, it’, cf. above for on-; the original forms are seen in the determinate adjective endings -i < *-jus, {-ja}, {-je}; ° < *ju; ° ‘he/she/it’ (cf. Germ. er – sie – es); ° OHG es (n.).

Many forms are parallel to those of *s-/t- (cf. above), but the nature of the suppletion pattern is different and the reconstruction more difficult and less secure in some cases. The variant *ey-/i- appears in the nom./acc. sg. and *e- elsewhere. For the nom. cf. also GAv. m. aii/o|m ‘this’ – f. ɨ|m ‘this’, n. ũ ‘it’; Lith. |ji|s ‘he’ – ji ‘she’ (this pronoun mixes with the relative *yo- in Balto-Slavic), and Ofr. é ‘he’ – |ji| ‘she’ – ed ‘it’. The archaic nom. m. form was perhaps, though a bit speculatively, *ey-Ō with a pronominal zero-ending (Ved. ay-, perhaps Ofr. é), occurring together with a younger *i-s (with nominal *s and zero-grade *i- as in the f./n. and acc.). For the acc. m. cf. also Gr. Cypr. ūv; the acc. f. is structurally reconstructed.

**TABLE 1.33 IE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *EY (*IS) – *IH₂ – *ID (PLURAL)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*e-y –</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-h₂</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*e-o-ns –</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-h₁-(n)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*e-y-som –</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-h₁-som</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*e-y-b³/mos –</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-b³/mos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*e-y-su – *e-h₁-su</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*e-y-b³(i)s –</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e-b³(i)s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Contracted to *ōns; ° BSl. -miHs; ° Plautus (also we|m|s), OLat. |we|s|; ° OLat., cf. Osc. eisun|k|; ° OLat. {eieis}; ° original forms in determinate adjective -ji, -je, -ja.
The *ey- appearing in the plural is not the *ey of the nom. sg. but *e-y- (with pronominal *i), parallel to *to-y- (see above), though synchronically it made no difference. The acc. pl. is difficult to reconstruct – Vedic seems to have a secondary *im- (that later spread to the nom. pl. as well) by analogy to the acc. sg., the Latin forms are “de-contracted”, while Gothic has a secondary ins (with i- as in most forms).

Interrogative pronouns

The interrogative pronoun for ‘who, what, which?’ has the root *kʷ-, which shows up in two forms – as *kʷ-o- and *kʷ-i-. Cf. *kʷ-o-s (m.) > Ved. kás ‘who, which?’ (GAv. sandhi-form kas); OCS kn-to (oblique ko-), Lith. kás, Goth. huas (all ‘who?’); *kʷ-o-d (n.) > Ved. kád ‘what, which?’ (GAv. kąt), Lat. quod ‘which?’, OPruss. ka ‘what’, Goth. hva ‘what?’ (cf. *kʷ-e-h₂ (f.) > Ved. ká, GAv. kā, Goth. huo). Cf. also *kʷ-i-s (m./f.) > Ved. ná-kwís ‘no one’, GAv. cišt, G. tίς, Lat. quis, Hitt. kuštš (all ‘who?’); *kʷ-i-d (n.) > Ved. cid ‘any’ (see below), GAv. -cišt (pronominal particle), G. tί, Lat. quid, Slav. čь (Croat. čà, cf. OCS č-to), Hitt. kütš (all ‘what?’). The relation of *kʷ-i- and *kʷ-o- is not clear; perhaps the first was originally ‘who/what?’, the second (adjectival) ‘which?’, cf. the opposition of Lat. quis ‘who?’ – quid ‘what?’ and quod ‘which?’, and Slav. čь ‘what’ and čь ‘which’ (Croat. North Čak. kā, OCS kūi < *kš-iš). Alternatively, it can be supposed that the thematic *kʷ-o- is innovative/secondary altogether (perhaps already in PIE). The declension is not easy to reconstruct, mainly because the relation of the two stems is unclear (*kʷ-o- and *kʷ-i-/*kʷey-; cf., e.g., the acc. sg. Ved. kám < *kʷ-o-m but Lat. quem, Hitt. kuin < *kʷi-m ‘whom? ’; nom. pl. Ved. kē, GAv. kōi < *kʷ-o-y but GAv. catías, OLat. quēís < *kʷey-es), but the reconstructable forms apparently parallel those of the demonstrative *sō, cf. the gen. *kʷ-e-so ‘of whom/what?’ (GAv. cahiššā, Gr. tό, early Lat. quě-o|w|s|, OCS česo ‘of what?’, Goth. huis), dat. *kʷ-o-sm-ōy ‘to whom?’ (Ved. kášmai, GAv. kahmāi, Umbr. pusme, OCS komu, Goth. haamma), etc. It is unclear whether separate *kʷ-o-so (Ved. kás|y|a, GAv. kahiššā ‘of whom/what?’; OCS ko|g|o ‘of whom?’), *kʷ-e-sm-ōy (OCS čemo ‘to what?’), etc. existed (with the oblique suppletive *kʷ-e- in alternation with the nom./acc. *kʷ-i-, and the oblique *kʷ-o- from the nom./acc. *kʷ-o-), though they are formally easily reconstructable. For interrogative pronominal adverbs, cf. p. 89.

Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronouns were derived from the interrogative ones. One pattern was doubling, cf. *kʷ-is-kʷis ‘whoever’ (Lat. quisquis, Hitt. kuštš kuštš), *kʷos-kʷid (Ved. kás cid ‘anyone’, GAv. kaseqš ‘everything’, any’), etc. The other one was adding the particle *kʷe (p. 105), cf. *kʷos-kʷe (Ved. kás ca ‘anyone’, Arm. ok ‘someone’ – p. 440), *kʷis-kʷe (Lat. quisque ‘whoever’), *kʷod-kʷe (Lat. quoque ‘whatever’, Goth. loah ‘each, every’ (n.)), etc. Sometimes simple interrogative pronouns were probably used as indefinite pronouns as well.

Relative pronouns

The relative pronoun is reconstructed as *y-o (m.) – *y-e-h₂ (f.) – *y-o-d (n.) ‘who/what/which’ (sometimes thought to be a thematicization of the demonstrative *i-, p. 87), with the same declension as *so – *seh₂ – *tod (p. 85–86). Cf. Ved. yás – yā – yād, Gr. οὗ – ἦ – ὅ, OCS i|že| (< *jib) – ja|že| – je|že| (for že cf. p. 535), Clb. io|s| (acc. sg. iom, dat. sg.
Pronominal adjectives

There are a number of pronominal adjectives, cf. *h₂elyos ‘other’ (Gr. ἄλλος, Lat. alius, Goth. aljis, OIr. aile, Toch. B alyek), *kʷoteros ‘which of the two’ (OCS kot'io/ryi, Lith. dial. kai'ar'as ‘which’, and cf. p. 55, 80), etc.

Pronominal adverbs

The pronominal adverbs are rather diverse in the IE languages, and not a lot of clear-cut correspondences exist. Cf. *kʷu-dh₁e 'where?' (Ved. kúha, OCS kъde; cf. Gr. πόθεν 'whence?' < *kʷo-dh₁e-n) and *kʷe/o-ti 'how many?' (Ved. káti, YAv. caiti, Lat. quot, Bret. pet, cf. Gr. adj. πόσος < *kʷotyos) from *kʷ- (p. 88); Ved. i-tás 'from here' from *i- (p. 87), cf. Gr. ἐν-τός, Lat. in-tus 'inside' for the suffix *-tos; similar forms from pronominal roots with the suffix *-r: Lat. quō-r₁ 'why?', Lith. ku-r̃ 'where?', Goth. ūa-r₁ 'where?', Alb. ku-r 'when?', Arm. u-r₁ 'where?', etc.

NUMERALS

PIE clearly had a decimal system. The reconstructed main cardinal numbers (with more or less direct reflexes), leaving out the many problematic issues, are:

1. *h₁oy-n-o-s ‘one’ (m.) (o-stem), *-eh₂ (f.), *-o-m (n.) > Gr. οἴνη ‘the ace on dice’, OLat. oinos, Lith. vianas (cf. Slav. *ín 'other' < *h₂eyn-, OCS in-o-rogъ ‘unique’), OPruss. acc. sg. ainan, Goth. ains, OIr. óen (with different suffixes Ved. ékas; OPers. aiva 'one'), Gr. Cypr. oιϝoς 'only', p. 49); *sôm (m.) 'one' (OCS sam-ъ 'alone') – *sm-ih₂ (f.) (Gr. μία, Arm. mi, cf. p. 86 for *si-) – *sem (n.) (Gr. ἕν, cf. Lat. sem-el 'once'), cf. Ved. sa-krā́ 'once' (*sm̥ -), Gr. ὁμός 'one and the same', Goth. sama 'same' (*som-)

2. *d(u)w-o-h₁ (m.) 'two' (cf. p. 54 for Lindemann's Law; o-stem du.) > Ved. d(u)vā́ (-áu), Gr. Hom. δῶ, Lat. duo, OCS dūva, Lith. dū, OIr. dōu, Arm. erku (p. 433–434), Toch. A wu, *d(u)w-eh₂-ih₁ (f.) (eh₂-stem du.), *d(u)w-o-yh₁ (n.) (o-stem du.) > Ved. d(u)vé (f./n.), Lat. duae (f.), OCS dūve (f./n.), Lith. dvi (f.), Toch. A we (f.); cf. likewise *-b-o-h₁ 'both' (Goth. b'ail)), *h₂ent-b-o-h₁ (Toch. B antapi, Gr. ἄμφω, Lat. ambō, also OCS oba, Lith. abú (*h₂e-b-h₁?), Ved. ubhā́ (*Hu-bʔoh?))

3. *tr-ey-es 'three' (m.) (i-stem, p. 32) > Ved. trávas, Gr. τρεῖς, Lat. tres, OCS trije, Lith. trýš, Goth. þrei, OIr. trí, Arm. erek', Toch. B trā'i, cf. loc. *tr-i-su (Ved. trisú), etc.; tisres (f.) (< *tri-sr-es, r-stem) > Ved. tirsás, OIr. teoir, *tr-ih₂ (n.) (i-stem pl.) > Ved. trí, Gr. τρία, OCS tri

4. *kʷetwor-es 'four' (m.) (r-stem, p. 23) > Ved. catvāras, Gr. τέτταρες, OCS četvoyre, OIr. ceth(a)ir, Arm. čork'; Toch. B šiver; oblique/compound *kʷetwČ/-urṾ (p. 52) > Arm. k'ar̥; *kʷete-sr-es (f.) (< *kʷetwer-sr-es?) > Ved. cátasras, OIr. ceitheor; *kʷetwör (n.) < *orh₂ (p. 70) > Lat. quā'ttur, Goth. ḥidwor (reshaped *kʷetwor-h₁ (n.) > Ved. catvārī, Gr. τέτταρα)
be ‘two-hand’, cf. Goth. origin ‘two tens’, and ‘hundred’ is derived from ‘ten’ (‘ten’ itself is usually thought to


7. *setpī ‘seven’ (loanword from Semitic *šəḇ- at-um, p. 29) > Ved. saptā, Gr. ἑπτά, Lat. septemb. Lith. sept.ėmi, Goth. sibwām, Ofr. secht, Arm. ưvtn, Toch. A spāt

8. *h₂kė tô(w) ‘eight’ (p. 45) > Ved. aṣā (ā-ə), Gr. ὀκτά, Lat. octō, Lith. aštu{o(i)}, Goth. ahtau, Ofr. ocht, Arm. ưv(t), (p. 440), Toch. B okt

9. *h₂newn ‘nine’ (p. 35) > Ved. nāva, Gr. ἑννεννά, Lat. novem, Goth. niun, Ofr. noj, Arm. inn, Toch. AB īnu

10. *deḵm ‘ten’ (p. 34) > Ved. dāśa, Gr. δέκα, Lat. decem, Ofr. deichel, Arm. ṭaśan, Toch. B šak

20. *wīḵṯh₁ < *dw-(h) -dḵnt-i(h) ‘twenty’ (du.) > Ved. vīṭm|satvu, YAv. visa’ti, Gr. Dor. πίκοτιν, Lat. nūginī, OW uceint, Arm. k’san, Toch. A wídi

100. *ḵtom < *dḵnt-o-m ‘hundred’ (p. 34) > Ved. šatām, Gr. εὐκότων, Lat. centum, OCS ssto, Lith. šintu’s, Goth. hunda, Clb. kantom, Toch. B kante

1000. *g₂esl- ‘thousand’ > Ved. sə-hāsram, Gr. Ael. γάλλοι (Lat. mīlle < *smih-, ĝesl- ‘one thousand’); dial. *tuH-s(d)ḵnt-ih, (literary *‘strong hundred’) > OCS tysē’q’sēt, OPruss. acc. pl. tìsìnt{ons}, Goth. þusundi (Eng. thousand)

Only numbers 1–4 had declension and distinguished gender. The two forms for ‘one’ (disregarding the different suffixes with the root *h₂,oy-) perhaps had slightly different semantics or usage. In 3 and 4, Indo-Iranian and Celtic point to feminine forms with *

2. ‘second’ cannot be reconstructed (all languages have different roots)

3. *tr̥-tri-t-y-o-s ‘third’ > Ved. τρίτος, YAv. ḍrīti[a-], Lat. tertius, OCS trā’ti’i, Lith. tr̥c̣ias; Gr. τρίτος, Goth. priḍi’a

4. *kʷtw-y-o-s ‘fourth’ > Ved. turiy̥as, YAv. tu’ri[a-], Gr. τέταρτος, Lat. quártus, OCS ē|q̥a’rtas, OEng. ē|q̥or̥t, Toch. B stärte

5. *penkʷ-t-o-s ‘fifth’ > Gr. πέμπτος, older Lat. quintus, OCS pęts, Lith. pe̞nḵtas, Goth. fimfata, Toch. B pinke
t
6. *(s)wek’t-o-s ‘sixth’ > Ved. ṣaṣṭḥās, Gr. ἕκτος, Lat. sextus, OCS šestь, Lith. ščėstas, OPruss. uschts (< *ukstos), Goth. saistā, Toch. B škaste
7. *septm-t-o-s ‘seventh’ > Ved. saptam’ās, Gr. ἑβδόμος, Lat. septimus, OCS sedmъ, OPruss. septmas; *septm-t-o-s > Ved. saptāt’hās, Lith. septiūt’as, OHG sibun’t’o, Toch. A šāptânt
8. *hek’t-ow-o-s > Gr. ὀκτώος, Lat. octōus
9. *hnewn-t-o-s ‘ninth’ > Gr. ἐννέατος, OCS ďevēt’b, Lith. deviūt’as, Goth. niund’ā, Toch. B ŋunte
10. *dekmt-o-s ‘tenth’ > Gr. δέκατος, OCS desēt’b, Lith. dešiūt’as, Goth. taihund’ā, Toch. B škante; *dekmt-H-o-s > Ved. dasam’ās, Lat. decimus

Multiplicative adverbial numerals *dwis ‘twice’ (Ved. dvis, Gr. δίς, Lat. bis, OIc. tvis-var), *tris ‘thrice’ (Ved. tris, Gr. τρίς, Lat. ter, OIc. pris-var), *k*eturs ‘four times’ (Ved. cātur, Lat. qu’a ter) can also be reconstructed (cf. also Arm. – p. 441).

VERBS

The reconstruction of the PIE verbal system is more complex than the reconstruction of the nominal system. There is some concord when it comes to the reconstruction of specific forms and paradigms (which is the primary task here – determining the exact function of specific forms is more difficult), although it is not always clear what categories were present in what phase of PIE. There are a number of reasons for disagreement in the reconstruction of the PIE verbal system. First of all, the verbal systems of the early attested IE languages are much less congruent than the earliest nominal systems – e.g., while Vedic has three voices (active, middle, passive), five tenses (present, aorist, imperfect, perfect, future), and five moods (indicative, injunctive, imperative, subjunctive, optative), Hittite has only two of each (active, middle; present, preterite; indicative, imperative). Thus, the PIE system is more difficult to reconstruct, and there is more room for different possible reconstructions. Generally speaking, analyzing verbal systems is often hard and controversial even when it comes to living languages, so it is no wonder that this is even more difficult when it comes to dead languages (like Vedic) and even more so for reconstructed languages (like PIE).

The earliest, traditional reconstructions of the PIE verbal system were based on the so-called Greco-Aryan model and the rich verbal morphologies of (mainly) Greek and Old Indic. However, as became apparent after the discovery of Anatolian (and Tocharian, but to a smaller extent), this reconstructed system was very different from the less complex systems found in Anatolian languages – for instance, Anatolian shows no traces of the subjunctive and optative moods that have to be reconstructed for the rest of IE. The basic problem is how to interpret these discrepancies – to consider them as the result of post-Anatolian common innovations in late PIE, to consider Anatolian as innovative (e.g., losing the subjunctive and optative), or some kind of combination of both (p. 194). This then results in the fluid nature of what exactly is reconstructed for PIE – sometimes it is Early PIE (with Anatolian) and sometimes it is Late PIE (post-Anatolian).

The following PIE verbal categories can be reconstructed (we will mention possible others later in the text):

**NUMBER:** singular, dual, plural
**PERSON:** 1st, 2nd, 3rd
ASPECT: present, aorist, perfect
VOICE: active, middle
MOOD: indicative, imperative, optative, subjunctive
NOMINAL VERB FORMS: participles (and verbal adjectives, verbal nouns)

Things are mostly straightforward when it comes to number, person, voice, and nominal formations. What were traditionally regarded as tenses are now most often interpreted as aspects (the present being imperfective, the aorist perfective, and the perfect stative aspect),8 with the system best preserved in (early) Greek. Thus, for PIE we can reconstruct the imperfective (“present”) *stisteh₂mi ‘I am getting up’ – the perfective (“aorist”) *steh₂m ‘I stood up’ – the stative (“perfect”) *stestoh₂e ‘I am standing’ (not all verbs could form all three). Present/imperfective and aorist/perfective are grouped together as eventive (as opposed to perfect, i.e., stative). The categories of voice and mood existed in the eventive system only (thus, the perfect had no middle and no moods). Both the present and aorist had separate middle forms. The (active or middle) indicative is unmarked, and the rest of the moods functioned as separate simple formations (there was only one optative, subjunctive, and imperative – though in the case of the latter also with special future endings); i.e., there were no separate forms for the subjunctive present, subjunctive aorist, etc. as in Vedic or Greek. The present/aorist opposition, optative, subjunctive, and dual (and special formations like thematic presents or reduplicated perfects) did not exist in Anatolian and were possibly post-Anatolian.

All verbal roots had a CVC structure (with possible clusters – p. 52–53), with *e usually thought to be the “basic” ablaut grade (p. 43), cf. *bʰer- (p. 40), *dʰeh₁- (p. 45), though there were exceptions like *kan- (p. 42). PIE verbal forms had the following structure: root (+ affix) (+ thematic vowel) + ending (+ particle). A verb had to have a root and an ending (even if a zero morpheme). Some forms also had derivational suffixes (a thematic vowel was a particular kind of them) and end-particles. Cf. verbal forms like *h₁-s-te ‘you (pl.) are’ (root + ending), *bʰer-e-te ‘you (pl.) are carrying’ (root + thematic vowel + ending), *bʰowdʰ₂-ey-e-me-s ‘we are waking (somebody)’ (root + suffix + thematic vowel + ending + particle). Reduplication (cf. *dʰe-dʰeh₁-mi ‘I am putting’) was more frequent than in nouns, and there was also an infix (cf. *yu-ne-g-mi ‘I am yoking’ from the root *yug-/yewg-).

PIE had a special class of particles that were attached after endings in some finite verbal forms. Some were a sort of secondary markers for a certain category, others had no clear function, some were probably facultative, and some forms could have had more than one particle. The major verbal particles were *-i (the present, hic & nunc, particle), *-u (the imperative particle), and *-o and *-r (the middle particles). Minor ones were the 1 (and 2) pl. and 1/2/3 du. present *-s and *-n, and the 1 pl. middle *-dʰ₂ (others also occur in specific languages or cases).

Present

What is traditionally called the “present” in world languages often does not only stand for events in real present time (which is its primary and prototypical role) but can also be used for general statements, future, past, etc. This was undoubtedly the case in PIE as well – for instance, having no separate future tense, PIE surely had to “replace” it with present forms (at least in some instances). However, we cannot get into the specifics of the usage of the present in PIE here.

There were two basic present conjugations (similar to noun declensions): thematic (with the thematic vowel *-e/o- between stems and endings and with no ablaut alternation) and
athematic (with endings right after the stems, and with ablaut alternations – most often *e in sg. and *∅ in pl.), like *bʰer-e-te 'you are bearing (pl.)' but *h₁d-te 'you are eating (pl.)'. Thematic and athematic verbs had the same/similar endings in the plural (*-me-, *-te, *-nt-), while the singulars forms originally differed. Athematic (and partly thematic) endings *-m-, *-s-, *-t- (sg.), *-me-, *-te, *-nt- (pl.) are shared with the aorist (p. 95–97). Some endings (especially athematic ones) had a hic & nunc particle *-i, while the 1 pl. had also *-s or *-n (also sometimes in the 2 pl.) – the endings with these present particles are traditionally called “primary” (though they are not really primary). In later IE languages, the non-ablauting thematic forms usually win, but usually with incorporation of at least some originally athematic endings. Here is the PIE athematic paradigm with reflexes:

**TABLE 1.34 IE ATHEMATIC PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁ex-m-i</td>
<td>ásmi</td>
<td>žiúi</td>
<td>{sum}</td>
<td>jesmœ</td>
<td>esm[ǐ]</td>
<td>∅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁e(e)s-s-i</td>
<td>ási</td>
<td>ží</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>jes{ǐ}</td>
<td>es{ǐ}</td>
<td>∅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁h₁es-t-i</td>
<td>ásti</td>
<td>žarti</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>jextũ</td>
<td>ēstí</td>
<td>ēzí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁h₁s-me-o/(-sn-(i))</td>
<td>smásí</td>
<td>Hom. žiūvěv</td>
<td>{sumus}</td>
<td>īeśmũ</td>
<td>eśmũěũ</td>
<td>{siumũ}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁h₁s-te</td>
<td>stʰa</td>
<td>žártê</td>
<td>īešṭũ</td>
<td>īešte</td>
<td>īeštẽũ</td>
<td>{sijũp}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁h₁s-ent-i</td>
<td>sánti</td>
<td>Dor. ēvři</td>
<td>sťũnt</td>
<td>sťũnt</td>
<td>sťũnt</td>
<td>ašəvũni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a With a younger variant *-onti; b also smas; c also sthá-na; d Umbr. sent; e with middle *-oy (p. 99) instead of *-i; f Slav. also *sękňa (> Mac. ce), OCS dadětvō; g accented -wenti; h -teni.

Thematic presents had a full grade (*h₁es-) in the sg. and a zero grade (*h₁s-) in the pl. Most endings had the present particle *-i. In the 1 pl. (like in thematic stems), numerous variants seem to have existed (the ending had ablaut variants *-me/o, together with particles *-s or *-n, and the present particle *-i in some languages): *-mes (Gr. Dor. -mēz, Ved. -mas, Cz. -me), *-mesi (Ved. -masi), *-men (Gr. Att. -mēv), *-mo (Slav. -mo), *-mos (Lat. -mus, OCS -mũ, Goth. -m), *-meni (Hitt. -wəněni), etc. (in some cases, different developments are possible). Their original distribution, exact formation, and number of existing variants is unclear. The athematic 3 pl. *-enti was replaced early on with thematic *-onti in many languages (perhaps facultatively/dialectally already in PIE). The thematic endings were:

**TABLE 1.35 IE THEMATIC PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*-o-h₁</td>
<td>-āmi</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>-ǭ</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*-o-h₁</td>
<td>-ēlɛ</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>∅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*-o-me/o</td>
<td>-āmas(i)</td>
<td>-ōmuŋ</td>
<td>-imus</td>
<td>-μo</td>
<td>-můvěũ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*-e-te</td>
<td>-atʰ</td>
<td>hã</td>
<td>-eće</td>
<td>-itĩš</td>
<td>-eťe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*-o</td>
<td>-anti</td>
<td>Dor. -ověn</td>
<td>-unt</td>
<td>-uťũ</td>
<td>-and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Cf. Toch. A-āć; b Dor. -oμeũ; c Slav. also *-ešu; d -e in West and (modern) South Slavic; e reflexive -ie-si; f reflexive -mē-si, -tē-si < *-mē, *-tē (cf. perhaps the rare Ved. scansion -mā in the aor. 1 pl.).
The 1 sg., 1 pl., and 3 pl. had thematic *-o-, and the other forms had *-e-. In the 1 sg.,
the reflexes point to *-ō, which is interpreted as *-oH (on the assumption that there were
no *-V# type endings9) and further as *-o-h2 (on the basis of the supposed relation to the
perfect ending *-h2e and middle *-h2(e) – p. 98–99), which is frequently reconstructed,
though in fact speculative. The usual reconstructions for the 2/3 sg. and 3 pl. are *-esi,
*-eti, *-onti (attested in most languages), with the endings as in athematic stems. In con-
trast to what is usually reconstructed, one can suppose that thematic stems originally had
different endings, perhaps coexisting with younger athematic-influenced ones already in
the last stage of PIE. The heterodox thematic reconstruction *-eh2i in the 2 sg. is based
on Greek (if not from *-esi + *-s) and Lithuanian (the accent points to a laryngeal); *-e
in the 3 sg. again on Greek/Balto-Slavic (with analogical thematic *-o in Lithuanian) and
Toch. B -ā-m (< *-e-nu);10 *-o in the 3 pl. on Lithuanian (where sg. = pl.) and Toch. A -e
< *-o (together with -eñc < *-onti) – cf. Beekes 2011: 260. The original thematic endings
in the 3 sg./pl. would thus be bare thematic vowels in different ablaut. Anatolian had no
thematic present.

The endings of the dual (athematic/thematic) are not easily reconstructable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 du.</td>
<td>*(o)-we-(s)</td>
<td>-(ā)vas</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-(a)vā̄</td>
<td>-oṣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 du.</td>
<td>*(e)-H-Vs/n</td>
<td>-(a)ihas</td>
<td>-(e)rov</td>
<td>-(e)ta</td>
<td>-(a)ta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 du.</td>
<td>*(e)-te/o-s/n a</td>
<td>-(a)tas</td>
<td>-(e)rov</td>
<td>-(e)te</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a Cf. Toch. B -tem < *-ton-V; b cf. Av. -suahit; c cf. perhaps Umbr. 2 pl. imp. eta-to < *-tā.

Cf. the pronoun *wē ‘us two’ (p. 84) for 1 du. Ved. 2 pl. -tha is perhaps influenced by
the 2 du.

The formation of the present stem is much more diverse than in other verbal forms –
both thematic and athematic present conjugations were formed in numerous ways
(usually with different affixes – some with a specific derivational meaning, others with-
out it or with a meaning difficult to reconstruct). The list here is non-exhaustive and
simplified:

**THEMATIC –** (a) root-stems (cf. PIE *wegh2-e-, *bher-e- above; with zero-grade PIE
*wegh2-e- ‘devour’ > Ved. girātī, OCS žbo; (b) reduplicated stems (PIE *pi-ph2-e-
from *peh2 ‘drink’ > Ved. pilbāmī, Lat. bibō); (c) *-y- suffix (PIE *leh2-y-e- ‘bark’
> Ved. rāyati, OCS lajp, Lith. lūj; also in denominatives like Ved. apasyātī
‘works’ from āpas- ‘work’ and rare causatives like Lat. sūpiō ‘I put to sleep’ <
*swōp-y-e from *swep- ‘sleep’); (d) *-ey- causatives/iteratives11 (PIE *mon-e-
mānāyati ‘honors’); (e) *-sk- (PIE *pp-k-sk-e- ‘ask’ > Ved. pychātī, Lat. poscō); (f)
*-eh2 statics (PIE *sed-eh2-e- ‘to be seated’ from *sed- ‘sit’ > Lat. sedēre, OCS
sedēti, Lith. sēdi ‘to sit’); (g) *-eh2-factitives (PIE *new-eh2-e- ‘to make new’ >
Hitt. nēvalbhe- from *newos ‘new’); (h) *(e)s- (Lat. gerō ‘I carry’ < *h2-g-es-e- from
*h2-gē- > Lat. agō ‘I drive’; also desiderative *-s-, which became the new future in
many IE languages)
ATHETMIC – (a) root-stems (cf. PIE *h₁-es- above or *h₁-ey- ‘go’ > Ved. émi, Gr. εἶμι; “Narten-presents” with long root, cf. Ved. dāsti ‘waits’ < *dēk-ti); (b) reduplicated stems (PIE *de/i-deh₃- ‘give’ > Ved. dādāmi, Gr. δίδωμι); (c) *n(e)- infix (PIE *yu-n(e)-g- ‘yoke’ > Ved. yunākti, pl. yuñjánti, Lat. iungō); (d) *-new/-nu- suffix (Ved. kṛnə́m ‘I make’, kṛṇuthā ‘you (pl.) make’)

One can distinguish primary (derived directly from a verbal root without a suffix or with a suffix with no exact derivational meaning) and secondary formations (derived with a suffix that changed the meaning of the verbal root – e.g., causative, iterative, etc. – or from a noun or adjective root). The primary ones are all athetic and thematic (a)-(c). One verb could have had more than one coexisting primary present forms (with or without different connotations) – cf. from *gʷem- ‘go, come’ both *gʷm-sk-e- (Ved. gácchati ‘goes, comes’, Gr. βάσκε! ‘come!’) and *gʷm-y-e- (Gr. βαίνω ‘I walk’, Lat. ueniō ‘I come’). It is possible, even likely, that some assumed thematic formations were originally athetic. What the exact formation of a specific PIE verb was has to be reconstructed word by word (cf. LIV). For the middle present see p. 99–100.

Aorist

The PIE aorist denoted perfective aspect. Its endings were basically the same as those in the athetic present (p. 93), pointing probably to a common pre-PIE origin of the present and aorist. However, the aorist did not have particles attached to endings as in the present (particularly not the hic & nunc *-i), except in the dual (but different from the present dual). The endings in the aorist (traditionally called “secondary”) are thus actually unmarked (unlike the present ones). Vedic preserves the complete opposition of the present and aorist endings (cf. Ved. pres. -mas(i) but aor. -ma), while many languages later generalized the original present endings in the aorist as well (cf. Gr. -μεν in pres./aor.). Greek and Indo-Iranian are the only branches to preserve both the aorist and perfect. In Italic and Celtic the aorist merges with the perfect into new preterite formations; in Germanic it is lost; in Slavic, Armenian, and Albanian it is preserved (while the perfect is generally lost there except for traces in Balto-Slavic and Armenian). Anatolian has no aorist (which is perhaps not an innovation). Greek, Indo-Iranian, Phrygian, and (limitedly) Armenian have a so-called augment in the past tenses (including the aorist), attached to the beginning of the form (Ved. a-, Gr. ē-, Phryg./Arm. e-), which stems from the PIE adverb *h₁, e ‘at that time’. Some linguists reconstruct the augment as part of the aorist for PIE as well (where it may have been at the most a facultative or dialectal feature).

Unlike the numerous present formations, the aorist had only these basic formations:

1) root-aorist – root [sg. – full grade, pl. – zero grade] + endings *deh₃-m – pl. *dh₃-me
2) sigmatic aorist – root [long grade] + *-s- + endings *wēǵ₃-s-₃-m
3) thematic aorist – root [zero grade] + thematic vowel + endings *wid-o₃-m

The root-aorist is attested in Indo-Iranian, Greek, and Armenian (perhaps partially in Old Church Slavic) only but is often considered the most archaic (while sigmatic/thematic aorists are often considered secondary). It is formed from the endings attached directly to the root (often of those verbs that have a reduplicated athetic present), with the *e
grade in the sg. and the zero grade in the pl. (the original ablaut is preserved in some verbs in Greek):

### Table 1.37: IE Root-Aorist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*deh₁-m</td>
<td>dām b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*deh₁-s</td>
<td>ōdās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*deh₁-t</td>
<td>ōdāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*dhr₁-me</td>
<td>ōdāva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*dhr₁-te</td>
<td>sthāva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*dhr₁-ŋ</td>
<td>ōdαŋ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Asyllabic because of Stang’s Law (cf. p. 70); b cf. ápām ‘has drunk’; c cf. the original a-bhūv-an < *buh₂-ŋt, Av. -at < *-t; d cf. the original e-ṣt-ŋ ‘stood’ < *steh₂-m; e cf. the more original (Homeric) eṣt-αν < *sth₂-ŋt

Cf. also *steh₁-m ‘stood’ (Ved. āsthām, Gr. ἔστην), *deh₁ ‘put’ (Ved. adhām, Gr. ἔθηκα with secondary -κα, 1 pl. ἔθηκεν, Arm. 3 sg. ed), etc. The root was perhaps exceptionally zero grade in *buh₂- ‘be’: 3 sg. *buh₂t (Ved. abhūt, Gr. ἔφῡ, (?) OCS by). In Vedic and Homeric Greek, one can also find augmentless aorists like Ved. bhūt, Hom. φῡ ‘became’, etc.

The sigmatic aorist, very productive in late PIE and later languages, was formed from a long-grade root, the suffix *-s-, and endings:

### Table 1.38: IE Sigmatic Aorist

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-ŋm</td>
<td>[a]prāksa</td>
<td>m]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-ŋ</td>
<td>[a]yāv</td>
<td>[ŋ]b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-t</td>
<td>[a]prāt</td>
<td>[Eːd̪o(c)z]a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-ŋme</td>
<td>[a]jaisma</td>
<td>[Eːd̪o(c)z]a[ŋ]μεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-te</td>
<td>[a]cchānta</td>
<td>[Eːd̪o(c)z]a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*wēgh₁-s-ŋt</td>
<td>[a]vāks</td>
<td>u]r</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Simplified to *wēg’s probably already in PIE (p. 53); b ‘has sacrificed’; from yaj- < *Hya-; c ‘have conquered’; from ji-; d < *cchanta ‘have seemed’, from chand-; e cf. Av. -at < *-t; f cf. perhaps OCS 2/3 by-st-ŋ ‘were/was’.

The long grade in the sg./pl. is well attested in Vedic, Old Church Slavic (vēsŋ ‘conveyed’ from vez- < *wegh₂, basŋ ‘jabbed’ from bod- < *bodh₂, grēsŋ ‘rowed’ from greb- < *grebh₂, etc.), and Latin, where some perfect forms preserve the ablaut and *-s- but not the original endings (uēxī ‘I conveyed’ from uēh- < *wegh₂, etc.). Some believe that the pl./du. originally had the *e-grade (which would then be generalized in Greek and attested in the Vedic middle).

The thematic aorist has a zero-grade root (preserved in Vedic and Greek), thematic vowel (like in the present), and endings:
TABLE 1.39 IE THEMATIC AORIST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*wid-o-m</td>
<td>á</td>
<td>vidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*wid-e-s</td>
<td>á</td>
<td>vidas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*wid-e-t</td>
<td>á</td>
<td>vidat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-o-me</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-e-te</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-o-nt</td>
<td>á</td>
<td>vidan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Cf. Arm. egit ‘found’; b cf. also augmentless vidam.

Cf. also Gr. ἤλυθε, OIr. luid < PIE *h₁ludʰet ‘went’, which can hardly be secondary. For the zero grade, cf. also Gr. aor. ἔφυγον, ἔτραπον from pres. φεύγω ‘I run’, τρέπω ‘I turn’, etc. Thematic aorists are often secondary, and exact correspondences are few – some researchers consider all (or most) of them as secondary/innovative. PIE may also have had a **repeated aorist**, cf. Ved. ávocam, Gr. εἶπον < *(h₁e)-we-wk*-*o*-m ‘I said’. The dual endings in Vedic/Greek differed from those of the present (the thematic vowel is in brackets): 1 *-(o)-we > Ved. -(ā)wa, OCS -(o)ψδ; 2 *(e)-to-m > Ved. -(a)tam, Gr. -(e) τον; 3 *(e)-te-h₂m > Ved. -(a)tām, Gr. -(e)την (< -(e)ταν).

Some also reconstruct **imperfect** for PIE, based on Greek and Vedic, cf. Ved. āsām, Gr. (Ion.) ἦα < (?) PIE *(h₁e)-h₁es-m; Ved. ābharam, Gr. ἐσφρον < (?) PIE *(h₁e)-bher-o-m. It is identical to the present except that it has aorist endings. This would then be the past tense of the imperfective aspect stem (the present being the present tense of imperfectives). Augmentless aorists and imperfects (sometimes used in a “timeless” meaning) found in Vedic, Gatha-Avestan, and Homeric/early Greek are often called **injunctives**. It seems that they were originally verbs unmarked for tense/mood when following preceding fully marked verbs or after the prohibitive imperative particle *meh, ‘not’ (= Ved. mā, Gr. μη, Alb. mo ‘do not!’), Arm. mi). In both cases, there was no need for redundant marking of tense/mood so it was left out, which is perhaps a structure of PIE origin – e.g., PIE may have used the injunctive forms like *(b)hēront ‘they are carrying’ without the pres. ptp. *, not the pres. *(b)heronti, after the present was already marked on a previous verb.12 This is typologically very similar to the Bantu consecutive (cf. Nurse 2003: 101–102). For the middle aorist see p. 100.

**Perfect**

The “perfect” originally (whether in the last phase of PIE or in pre-PIE) most likely indicated the stative aspect. The frequent, and plausible, assumption is that the original stative (expressing states like ‘I am dead’) at one stage, perhaps partially already in late PIE, became resultative (‘I have died [and I am dead now]’), and finally in post-PIE preterite (‘I died’). In most later IE languages, it has developed into a regular past tense. However, in Homeric Greek (with relics in Classical Greek) the perfect expresses the meaning of the state of the subject (this occurs less commonly also in Rgveda), cf. Homeric τέϑνηκε ‘is dead’, ἔστηκε ‘is standing’ (cf. p. 309). Some original perfect forms have a present tense (or stative) meaning in other languages as well – like *woydh₂ ‘I know’ almost everywhere, Latin verbs like meminī ‘I remember’ (cf. Goth. man ‘thinks’ and Gr. μέμονα ‘I yearn for’), or the Germanic *praeteritopraesentia class (p. 400). The PIE perfect is
preserved in Indo-Iranian, Greek, Italic/Celtic (mixed with aorist), Germanic, and Anatolian (albeit in different form than in Indo-Iranian/Greek) – elsewhere, it was lost, usually with some remaining traces.

The usual perfect formation had partial reduplication of the root (originally perhaps only *Ce- but also *CV-, cf. Gr. λέων but Ved. ri-réca < *le/loiyk*-h₂e from *leyk*- ‘leave’), the ablaut alternation in the root (*o-grade in the sg., zero grade in the pl. – preserved regularly in Vedic, sometimes in Germanic), and special (athematic) perfect endings (*-h₂e, *-th₂e, *-e, *-me, *-e, *-r̥/-êr). For reduplication cf. Ved. ja-gama ‘I went’ (from gáçchati ‘goes’), Gr. πέποιϑα ‘I am persuaded’ (from πείϑω ‘I persuade’), Lat. ce-cinī ‘I sang’ (from canō ‘I sing’), Goth. hai-hait ‘I called’ (from haitan ‘to call’), OIr. ce-chan ‘I sang’ (from canid ‘sings’), etc. Reduplication was regular in Indo-Iranian and Greek, and sporadic in Germanic, Italic, and Celtic. In PIE it may have been present in almost all forms (though we cannot be sure). The ablaut alternation is attested regularly in Indo-Iranian, in Germanic “strong” verbs, and some (early) Greek forms. The ablaut alternation includes the accent shift in Vedic (jujóṣa ‘he has enjoyed’ – jujuṣúr ‘they have enjoyed’) and Germanic “strong” verbs, cf. OEng. cēas ‘I/he chose’ – curon ‘we chose’ (with Verner’s Law – p. 20, 393) < PIE *(ǵu)ǵowse – *(ǵu)ǵusr. Anatolian shows no special perfect stem (cf. p. 187 for possible reduplication), just different endings. The exact relation of the PIE perfect to the Anatolian ḫi-present, in spite of the formally close similarity of endings, is controversial (p. 187).

The best-attested perfect form is the one that is rather aberrant – the perfect form *woyd-/wid- has no reduplication (it is the only such plausibly reconstructable form) and has a stative (in later languages present) meaning ‘know’, derived from *weyd- ‘see’ (p. 49). The apparent (already PIE) development was ‘I have seen’ > ‘I know’ (or, more precisely, ‘I am in the state of having seen/knowing’):

### TABLE 1.40 IE PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*woyd-h₂e</td>
<td>védá</td>
<td>oída</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*woyd-th₂e</td>
<td>vétha</td>
<td>oí(ɔ)á</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*woyd-e</td>
<td>védá</td>
<td>oídɛ</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-me</td>
<td>vidmá</td>
<td>iūμν</td>
<td>waitm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-e</td>
<td>vidá</td>
<td>iντɛ</td>
<td>waitp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*wid-r̥/-êr</td>
<td>vidur</td>
<td>iσ/Öστ</td>
<td>waitn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 du.</td>
<td>*wid-we</td>
<td>vidvá</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 du.</td>
<td>*wid-tH(-?)</td>
<td>vid[ā][θ][ur]</td>
<td></td>
<td>wits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 du.</td>
<td>*wid-t(-?)</td>
<td>vid[ā][θ][ur]</td>
<td></td>
<td>wits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Cf. OCS isolated vědě ‘I know’ < *woydh₂e-y (with hic & nunc *-i); b phonetically *woytsθ₂e (p. 54), cf. Hitt. pret. -tia; c phonetically *witst(H)- (p. 54).

The PIE perfect endings were close to both the pres./aor. active and middle endings, though the latter is often otherwise emphasized. The 1 sg. *-h₂e is attested directly as -lḥa in Anatolian (p. 187), and indirectly in the lack of Brugmann’s Law (p. 40, 206) in Ved. cakara ‘I have made’ < *kʷe-kʷor-h₂e (a closed syllable because of the laryngeal) but cakāra ‘he has made’ < *kʷe-kʷor-e (an open syllable). The opposition of the 1 sg. *-a < *-h₂e and the 3 sg. *-e is seen in the OIr. pret. 1 sg. gád ‘I asked’ but 3 sg. gáid ‘he asked’ (with palatalization form *-e). The 1 pl. *-me and the 1 du. *-we is the same as in the pres./aor.; the 2 pl. *-e (*-o is theoretically also possible) is attested only in Vedic but looks archaic (elsewhere we find the pres./aor. *-te). The variants in the 3 pl. are not clear – cf. Hitt. pret.
-ēr, older Lat. -ēr-e (with a secondary particle *-i) for *-ēr (from original *-er-s?, cf. p. 70); Av. *-ar, probably Ved. *-ur, and Hitt. rare *-ar for *-i (cf. also NPhryg. ὑάκαπος ‘they have made’); (?) GAv. cikōitorš (and perhaps Ved. *-ur and Lyd. *-rš) for *-r-s (cf. also Ven. *-ers (?)). The particle (?) *-s in some 3 pl. forms is perhaps the same as in the present *-me/o-s (and possibly identical to the nominal nom. pl. *-s?). The original perfect endings have been influenced by the aorist ones in a number of languages. The intrusion of the present *-i (p. 92–93) into Italic perfect endings (cf. Lat. 1 sg. -ē < early -ēt < *-h₂-e-y, 2 sg. -is-tū < *-th₂-e-y) points to the older stative (“present”) meaning of the perfect.

Middle (mediopassive)

The middle (medium) voice stands in opposition to the active voice (the present/aorist forms we have seen were all active – the perfect had no active/middle distinction but can be considered active of a sort). The reconstruction of the concrete meaning of the definitely polyfunctional PIE middle is rather speculative. The active typically expressed a simple action (or state) by the subject (cf. Gr. λῶο I unbind (something’)), while the middle indicated that the subject is doing an action for his or her benefit or that it is affected by the action (cf. Gr. λύομαι ‘I unbind (for) myself’). The meaning was thus reflexive (Gr. λύομαι ‘I wash myself’) and sometimes reciprocal (cf. Ved. vādete ‘two of them talk to each other’).

Since the PIE middle yielded a passive voice (cf. Goth. gibada ‘is given’) in some families (Italic, Germanic), it seems that the PIE middle also had that function in some cases (hence the other name, mediopassive). It also may have had an impersonal function (cf. Lat. itur ‘one goes’). Some verbs (called deponent or media tantum) had exclusively middle endings but non-middle meaning (cf. Ved. śāye, Cluw. zīyari śáye < PIE *k₁ ey-or ‘lies’; Ved. āśaī < PIE *-y₁-gar ‘is given’, etc.). Most families preserved the PIE middle (the opposition active : middle is best preserved in Anatolian, Indo-Iranian, and Greek), with the notable exceptions of Balto-Slavic (which preserves traces in active endings, cf. OPruss. assai ‘you are’ < *-so-y) and Armenian (with innovative mediopassive forms).

The middle had special endings – for the middle present and middle aorist – similar to both the present/aorist and perfect endings (though the latter is usually overemphasized), the reconstruction of which is rather difficult. It was typified by two particles: *-o (in both the present and aorist) and *-r (only in the present). Instead of *-r (attested in Anatolian, Italian, Celtic, Armenian, Tocharian, Phrygian, Venetic), posited as original by many researchers, some dialects have the hic & nunc *-y (Indo-Iranian, Greek, Germanic, Balto-Slavic, Albanian), which is likely secondary but possibly a dialectal feature already in PIE. In the 2/3 sg. and 3 pl., variant endings can be reconstructed (present/aorist-like and perfect-like) – their original function/distribution is not clear. Here is a tentative reconstruction of the present (primary) middle endings (both thematic and athematic):

**TABLE 1.41 IE MIDDLE PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*-h₂-e-y̥ (r)</td>
<td>-ei (dial.)</td>
<td>-e(ʔ)</td>
<td>-e(ʔ)</td>
<td>-ur</td>
<td>-mär</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*-s-o</td>
<td>-s-ei</td>
<td>-o(ʔ)</td>
<td>-r</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ta(r̥i̥)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*-t-o-r</td>
<td>-t(ό)</td>
<td>-to(ʔ)</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ta(r̥i̥)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*-me(s)-d₃h₂</td>
<td>-mah</td>
<td>-m(ʔ)</td>
<td>-m(s)y̥</td>
<td>-m(ʔ)</td>
<td>-m₃(ʔ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*(s)-d₃we</td>
<td>-d₁h</td>
<td>-θ</td>
<td>-m(ʔ)</td>
<td>-i(ʔ)</td>
<td>-t(ό)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*(c)-r-o</td>
<td>-m(ʔ)</td>
<td>-ro(ʔ)</td>
<td>-n(ʔ)</td>
<td>-n(ʔ)</td>
<td>-n(ʔ)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the 1 sg. (best preserved in Anatolian) cf. thematic pres. *-h₂ and perf. *-h₂e (some reconstruct *-h₂o(r) for the middle); for the 2 sg. pres./aor. *-s-o and perf. *-th₂e (some reconstruct *-th₂o(r) for the middle); for the 3 sg. pres./aor. athematic *-t-o and thematic pres./perf. *-e; for the 3 pl. pres./aor. *-nt-o and perf. *-r̥/-ēr (the *n/r here reminds one of heteroclitic nouns – p. 77–78). Some linguists reconstruct the PIE forms without the particle *r, which they believe to be secondary (stemming supposedly, not too convincingly, from the 3 pl. ending). However, it is not impossible that *-r was facultative or dialectal in PIE. The present/aorist-like endings *-so, *-to(r), *-nto(r) are sometimes thought to be innovative (with *-o originating perhaps in the 3 sg. ending *-o), but they must have been there already in PIE. Others think that variant endings point to two different original categories (one with the ending *-to and one with the ending *-o, etc.). Ved. forms like brūtē ‘calls (for himself)’ but bruve (pass.) ‘is called’ suggests some facts would perhaps point to a possible original meaning distinction. In the 1 pl., *-me- is the ending attested in all verbal finite forms (the optional *-(s)-, attested in Greek/Hittite, is perhaps related to the pres. *-mes and then transferred to 2 pl. *-(s)-d₂h₂w, and *-d₂h₂ is probably some kind of particle. As in the active, the -w- in Hitt. -wašta may be from the old du. *-we-(s)-d₂h₂, (cf. Ved. 1 du. pres. -vahe, aor. -vahi, Av. aor. -vadi). The 2 pl. *-d₂h₂w is unique to the middle, though the final *-e (cf. Gr. -ōe), perhaps accidentally, reminds one of the pres./aor. *-te and perf. *-e; some, however, reconstruct *-d₂h₂w (cf. Luw. -tuwa-ri). Many later endings (like the 1 pl. Lat. -mūr, OIr. -mmar) are remodeled by analogy to the active. A thematic media tantum present with many reflexes is PIE *sekʷ-e-tor ‘follows’ > Ved. sācāte, Gr. ἑπεται, Lat. sequitur, OIr. sechithir.

These are the aorist (“secondary”) endings:

### TABLE 1.42 IE MIDDLE AORIST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*h₂</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>{-mēν}</td>
<td>{-maï}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*-s-o</td>
<td></td>
<td>{-i}</td>
<td>{mēν}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*-th₂e</td>
<td></td>
<td>-th₂</td>
<td>{-i}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*-t-o</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-to</td>
<td>-ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*-o</td>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a[i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*-me-(s)-d₂h₂</td>
<td>mahi</td>
<td>{-μe(σ)δα}</td>
<td>-mte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*-(s)-d₂we</td>
<td>-dhva(i)n</td>
<td>-σe</td>
<td>-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*-nt-o</td>
<td>-ata, -nta</td>
<td>-vto</td>
<td>-nte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*-r-o</td>
<td></td>
<td>-r[i]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Cf. Av. -sa.

The endings were probably mostly the same as the present ones but with no *-r (i.e., dial. *-y). Ved./Av. -i would point to *-h₂ (unlike the present *-h₂e(r)). Perhaps the 1 pl. *-mes-d₂h₂ was originally the present ending and *-me-d₂h₂ the aorist ending.

### Subjunctive

The present/aorist forms we have seen were all indicative (the perfect had no mood distinction but can be considered indicative of a sort). The subjunctive and optative were originally probably normal verbal suffixes (like many others that existed in the present – p. 94–95) that only later became full-fledged moods. The PIE subjunctive probably expressed something that the speaker thought was uncertain, a future action with a slight
reservation (e.g., *h₁esoh₂ ‘I suppose/guess I will be’). Thus, it is understandable that it yielded the future tense in Latin. The formation of the subjunctive was simple – root in the full grade + suffix *-e-/o- + present/aorist endings. The suffix *-e-/o- was formally (and probably etymologically) identical to the thematic vowel and followed the same qualitative pattern. The subjunctive thus in a way presents the “thematized” forms of the indicative, where the already thematic forms become “doubly thematic” in the subjunctive (with *-e-e-, *-o-o-) and the athematic forms become thematic. Why the thematic vowel (or a morpheme formally identical to it) functions as a subjunctive suffix is not clear. These are the forms of athematic verbs:

**TABLE 1.43 IE ATHEMATIC SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr. (Hom.)</th>
<th>Lat. *</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁es-o-h₁</td>
<td>ásājnil</td>
<td>ēo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁es-e-s(i)</td>
<td>ásas(i)</td>
<td>ēη'ζ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁es-e-t(i)</td>
<td>ásat(i)</td>
<td>ēη'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁es-o-me(o-(s/n))</td>
<td>ásāma</td>
<td>έω'μεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁es-e-te</td>
<td>ásat[h]a</td>
<td>ēη'te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁es-o-nt(i)</td>
<td>ásan</td>
<td>έω'εν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* Also *-e-h₁-i? (p. 93–94); *b* also *-e-e? (p. 93–94); *c* cf. the older ending in brav-ā ‘I speak’ (-ā 13x in RV); *d* cf. Hom. ἰ-o-μεν ‘we would go’ for the original short *-o-; *e* future tense.

It is not clear whether the endings in PIE were originally primary, secondary, or both (either mixed or facultative). Vedic has a curious mix of primary and secondary endings. The 1 sg. shows only (thematic primary/present) *-h₁ (unlike in the optative), which is in accord with the fact that all subjunctive forms were “thematic”. Thus, other primary endings might be expected as well. However, some Vedic endings (1 pl. -ma, 3 pl. -n, 1 du. -va), parallelism to the optative, and structural reasons (a mood unmarked for present/aorist could have used generic, and not present, endings) could point to originally secondary endings. Both primary and secondary endings can be secondary in certain cases in later languages. If variants existed already in PIE, they probably carried no special (present/aorist) semantics. The forms of thematic verbs are:

**TABLE 1.44 IE THEMATIC SUBJUNCTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Lat. *</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>*b'er-o-o-h₁</td>
<td>vāhāniz</td>
<td>φέρο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*b'er-e-e-s(i)</td>
<td>bhārās</td>
<td>φέρης</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*b'er-e-e-t(i)</td>
<td>bhārāt(i)</td>
<td>φέρη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>*b'er-o-o-me(o-(s/n))</td>
<td>bhārāma</td>
<td>φέρουμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*b'er-e-e-te</td>
<td>vāhāt[h]a</td>
<td>φέρητε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*b'er-o-o-nt(i)</td>
<td>vahān</td>
<td>φέρουσι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* Also *-e-h₁-i? (p. 93–94); *b* also *-e-e? (p. 93–94); *c* cf. older arc-ā ‘I may shine/praise’, GAv. yaojā ‘I will yoke’; *d* cf. vahāsi, *e* cf. Arc. ἱερ ‘has’, Thess. ἱελατ ‘wishes’ < *-ēt (?); *f* future tense (3rd/4th conjugation); * with -t < *-t, cf. Osc. fakiiad ‘makes’ < *-t.

*-ee- contracted to *-ē-, and *-o-o- to *-ō- (others believe that It. -ō- in all persons is actually archaic). The contraction was probably post-PIE (Gatha-Avestan still has two syllables there).
Optative

The optative probably expressed the wishes of the speaker (e.g., *h₁syeh₁m ‘I would be’). An athematic and thematic optative existed, though the latter was perhaps very late PIE, post-Tocharian (p. 91–92, 455). The PIE optative yielded the (so-called) subjunctive mood in Germanic and Italic, and the imperative in Balto-Slavic. The athematic forms were made of the zero-grade root, an alternating suffix (sg. *-yeh₁-, pl. *-ih₁-), and mostly generic (“aorist/secondary”) endings:

### TABLE 1.45 IE ATHEMATIC OPTATIVE

| PIE          | Ved. | Gr. (Hom.) | OLat. *
|--------------|------|------------|--------
| 1 sg. *h₁s-yeh₁-m | syā́m | eṽnv | siem |
| 2 sg. *h₁s-yeh₁-s | syā́s | eṽγ | sīẹš\,* |
| 3 sg. *h₁s-yeh₁-t \(b\) | syā́t | eṽη | sīẹareth\,* |
| 1 pl. *h₁s-ih₁-me | syā́ma | eṽμε\|v | sīṃ\{|us\} |
| 2 pl. *h₁s-ih₁-te | syā́ta | ἔθε | sīτ\{|ls\} |
| 3 pl. *h₁s-ih₁-ent | syā́\{|úr\} | ἔλεν | sīem\|^\(|\) |

* Cf. the OCS athematic imp. ėžd-ь! ‘eat!’ < *h₁ed-y- (also dažd-ь! ‘give!’); \(^b\) cf. OCS eša ‘if only’ < *h₁esyeh₁t (with secondary *h₁es-); \(^c\) subjunctive; \(^d\) with secondary -t < *-ti, cf. oldest SIED with -d < *-t.

The ablaut scheme, typical for athematic paradigms, is preserved in Greek and Latin. The zero-grade *-ih₁- can also be seen in Vedic (middle opt. bruv-ī- ‘talk’), Old Church Slavic (imp. dad-i-te! ‘give (pl.)’), Lithuanian (dial. imp. sēdźīte! ‘remain (pl.) seated!’), Gothic (pres. wil-i-ma ‘we will’, cf. Lat. subj.uel-i-mus ‘we may want’), and Tocharian (opt. klyaus-i-m ‘I might hear’, p. 468). The 3 pl. ending was *-ent from the athematic present (not the aorist *-nt), based on Latin/Greek. The thematic optative had a full-grade root + thematic vowel *-o- + suffix *-ih₁- + generic (“aorist”) endings:

### TABLE 1.46 IE THEMATIC OPTATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>OCS (^d)</th>
<th>Goth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-m</td>
<td>bhav(^i)e(^y){</td>
<td>ma} (^a)</td>
<td>φέροι{μι} (^c)</td>
<td>boðē{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-s</td>
<td>bhaves (^a)</td>
<td>φέρος</td>
<td>berti! (^f)</td>
<td>bairais</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-t</td>
<td>bhāvet (^a)</td>
<td>φέροι</td>
<td>berti!</td>
<td>bairai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-me</td>
<td>bharema</td>
<td>φέρομε{</td>
<td>v}</td>
<td>berēm{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-te</td>
<td>Skr. bhareta</td>
<td>φέροιτε</td>
<td>berētē! (^g)</td>
<td>bairaip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. *b(^h)er-o-yh₁-ent</td>
<td>vah(^e)(^y){</td>
<td>ur} (^b)</td>
<td>φέροισν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* \(^a\) *b\(^h\)uh₁- ‘be’; \(^b\) *weq\(^b\)- ‘convey’, cf. the old ending in Av. baraiiš; \(^c\) cf. Arc. ežgaλanōna ‘I would drive out’; \(^d\) imperative; \(^e\) ‘I would be’ (*b\(^h\)uh₁- ‘be’); \(^f\) cf. OPruss. wedais! ‘lead (sg.)’; \(^g\) cf. OLith./dial. sākaite! ‘will you (pl.) please say!’

The lack of qualitative ablaut of the thematic vowel is conspicuous. In most languages, the suffix *-oyh₁- yields (or reflects just like) *-oy-. However, the Slavic acute in *-έτε would point to a laryngeal.
The imperative, easily reconstructable, had forms only for the 2nd and 3rd persons. It had eventive endings in the 3 sg. and 2/3 pl., and was characterized by the particle *-u in the 3 sg./pl. The athematic forms were:

**TABLE 1.47 IE ATHEMATIC IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁,ey</td>
<td>*h₁,ey</td>
<td>ihi</td>
<td>ἴ</td>
<td>ἔπ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*h₁,i-dʰi</td>
<td>*h₁,i-dʰi</td>
<td>etu</td>
<td>ἵ</td>
<td>ἔπτυ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁,i-te</td>
<td>itā</td>
<td>ἵτε</td>
<td>ἴτε</td>
<td>ἴτενυ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁,y-ent-u</td>
<td>yāntu</td>
<td>ἱττ -νυ</td>
<td>ἱττ -νυ</td>
<td>ἱττ -νυ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Cf. OCS *-dʰʰi! ‘go!’, *-eždʰ-ʰi! ‘know!’; * cf. śrū-dʰi! ‘hear!’ for -dh-; cf. ástu < *h₁,es-tu for the accent; epp- ‘take’ (PIE *h₁,ep-).*

The 2 sg. is either the full-grade endingless root or the zero-grade root plus *-dʰi (probably a particle). Except for the *-dʰi form, the singular has the full-grade and the plural the zero-grade root, as usual in the athematic stems. The thematic forms were:

**TABLE 1.48 IE THEMATIC IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>*b₁,er-e</td>
<td>bhāra</td>
<td>φέρε</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>bair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>*b₁,er-e-tu</td>
<td>bhārata</td>
<td>φέρετε</td>
<td>agite</td>
<td>bair̲₃ap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>*b₁,er-e-te</td>
<td>bhārata</td>
<td>φέρετε</td>
<td>agite</td>
<td>bair̲₃ap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*b₁,er-o-nt-u</td>
<td>bhārantu</td>
<td>φέρετε</td>
<td>agite</td>
<td>bair̲₃ap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a ag- ‘drive’ (PIE *h₂,eg-); b as if from a full-grade *-t-ow?*

The 2 sg. has a zero-ending (cf. also OIr. beir!). The 2 pl. imp. seems to have been identical in some cases (like *h₁,ite, *b₁,erete) to the 2 pl. pres./inj.

There were also special future imperative forms that express the meaning of a delayed (future) command (*h₁,itiōt ‘go later!’):

**TABLE 1.49 IE FUTURE IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Ved.</th>
<th>Gr.</th>
<th>Lat.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2/3 sg., 2 pl.</td>
<td>*h₁,i-itiōt</td>
<td>vittā</td>
<td>ἱτο</td>
<td>ἴτο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/3 sg., 2 pl.</td>
<td>*b₁,er-e-itiōt</td>
<td>φέρετο</td>
<td>agitō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>*(o)-n(t)-itiōt</td>
<td>dial. -ντο</td>
<td>euntō, aguntō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a Usually just 2 sg.; b ‘thou shalt regard’; c used as regular imperative for the 3 sg.; d cf. arch. Lat. da-tōd ‘let him give’, Clb. ta-tuz ‘he must give’; only 2/3 sg. in Latin.*

The ending *-tōt (often reconstructed as *-tōd) is usually explained as originally an abl. sg. (p. 63) of the pronoun *tod ‘that’, meaning originally ‘from that > after that’ or
the like, but the pronominal form was actually *tosmōt (p. 85). The 2/3 sg. and 2 pl. had the same ending (probably from older *-ō-tōt, *-et-tōt, *-ete-tōt), and the 3 pl. was made from *-nt- + *-tōt-.

Non-finite verb forms

Unlike many later IE languages, PIE had no infinitive but had participles, verbal adjectives, and verbal nouns. The participles were those of the active present, middle, and perfect. The present active participle had the *-ont- suffix (with no thematic vowel before it): m. +*⁺⁺ holodynamic *bʰer-ōnt-s ‘carrying’ (Ved. bhārōṇ, Gr. φέρον, Lat. ferōns, OCS bery, Goth. bairōnds; Lith. nёšq̣s; cf. Hitt. ašanza ‘being’ (active!) but kunanza ‘killed’) – gen. sg. *bʰer-ŋt-e/os (Ved. bhārātas, Lat. ferentis); f. *bʰer-ont-ih₂ (Ved. bhāranti, Gr. φέρουσα) – cf. p. 38 for “laryngeal breaking”, OCS beryšti; Lith. nėšanti) – gen. sg. *bʰer-ont-yeh₂-es (OCS beryst(ɛ), Lith. nėšančios) (cf. p. 67). Cf. also the athematic stem *h₁s-ōnt-s ‘being’ (Lat. sōns ‘guilty’ < *‘he who is’, OCS sy), *h₁s-ŋt-ih₂ (f.) (Ved. sāti, Gr. Dor. Εασσα). The present middle participle was a simple o-stem: *bʰer-o-mh₁n-o-s ‘carrying for himself/cared’ (Ved. bhāramāṇas, YAv. baramna-, Gr. φέρουμενος; OCS nesom, Lith. nėšamas ‘being carried’; CLuw. kišama- ‘combed’; cf. Lat. alumnus ‘nursling’) – f. *mh₁n-e-h₂ (cf. Lat. fēmina ‘woman’ < *dʰeh₁nh₁neh₂ ‘she that is sucked’); athematic *-mh₁n-os (Ved. vidānā-/vidānā- ‘finding’) The perfect participle was an s-stem (*-wos- suffix): m. +*+++ holodynamic *weyd-wōs ‘in the state of knowing’ (Ved. vēdvā|m|s-, GAv. vēdvau, Gr. εἰδός ‘knowing’; Goth. weidwo|ds ‘witness’) – oblique *wid-us- (Ved. vidu-, OCS nes̄isi- ‘having carried’, Lith. likus-‘having left’, cf. Goth. noun berusios ‘parents’); f. *wid-us-ih₂ (Ved. vidu|i, Gr. Hom. īōu, OCS nes̄i, Lith. likusi), n. *weyd-wos (Gr. εἰδός). Unlike the participle of *woydją (p. 98), other perfect participles were originally reduplicated (cf. Ved. ja-ghan-vā|m|s- from PIE *gʰen- ‘beat’).

Besides the three participles, embedded paradigmatically in the PIE verbal system, there were also some verbal adjectives and nouns, less directly connected (in the realm of word formation) to verbal finite forms. The zero-grade verbal adjective in *-to- is widely attested, e.g., *sth₁-t-o-s ‘placed’ (Ved. sthitas ‘standing, settled’, Gr. στατός ‘placed, standing’, Lat. status ‘set’; cf. OCS pro-strę́b ‘spread’, Goth. nasipis ‘saved’). The adjectives in *-n-o-s (cf. Ved. vimnās besides vittās ‘found’; OCS znam, OEng. ge-cnāwen ‘known’; cf. also *plh₁n-os – p. 37) of a similar function are not as widely attested. The suffix *-t- was present also in the i-stem verbal noun: *gʰm-t-i-s ‘going’ (Ved. gātis, Gr. βάτς ‘stepping’). The acc. sg. of the *-t-u-s nouns might have been used as a supine (after motion verbs): *-t-u-m (cf. Lat. sup. -tum, OCS sup. -tǔ, Lith. dial. sup. -tų, Ved. inf. -tum), cf. Lat. cubi-tum uēnerunt ‘they went to sleep’, OCS ido lovi-tb ‘I go to hunt’.

POSTPOSITIONS

A considerable number of postpositions can be reconstructed for PIE, with some of them functioning also as adverbs (p. 80–81). Most modern and some older IE languages (like Latin, Greek, Old Church Slavic, or Gothic) predominantly have prepositions (which are to have an even more important role in younger IE languages with simplified or lost declensions), which often function as verbal prefixes (modifying the meaning of the verb) as well, cf. the Lat. preposition ad ‘to, toward’ and ad-ueniō ‘I come to’. However, these verbal prefixes were originally independent of verbs (cf. Eng. come to), and some more archaic old IE languages (Anatolian, Vedic) predominantly had postpositions, which is
mostly held to have been the case in PIE as well (though it is possible that there were also some prepositions, or that at least some postpositions could have also been placed prepositionally, etc.). Some postpositions can be found in languages that are mostly prepositional (like Latin, Greek, Old Persian), cf. Lat. mé-cum ‘with me [lit. me-with]’. As examples of reconstructed postpositions (later becoming prepositions in many languages) cf., e.g., *(h)en ‘in’ (Gr. ēv, Lat. in, OPruss. en, Goth./Eng. in, Ofr. i), *hypo ‘(away) from’ (Ved. āpa, Gr. ἀντό/ἀντό, Lat. ab, Goth. af, Eng. of), etc. There are a few suffixes that appear in postpositions like *-ti, *-bʰi, *-r(i), cf. *pro-ti ‘towards’ (Ved. prāti, Gr. epic προτι, OCS prot-ivъ ‘against’ – Slav. also *protъ) from *prō̆ (Ved. prá, Gr. πρό ‘before, forth’, Lat. prō ‘in front of, before’, OCS pr-, Lith. pra- ‘through’, Goth. fra-, Eng. from, Ofr. ro-). As already said, PIE (mostly plural) case markers, like instr. *-bʰi, were also originally postpositions, and some of them were not completely transformed to proper endings (p. 63).

CONJUNCTIONS

Not a lot of conjunctions can be reconstructed. It is an old idea that PIE had almost no subordinate clauses (or that they were at least rare)¹⁴ and expressed those constructions mainly through participles (e.g., ‘the going man’ instead of ‘the man that is going’ – but cf. the relative pronoun *yo-, p. 88–89), verbal nouns, and likely pronominal forms used as conjunctions. This means that the syntax of the subordinate clauses (and its conjunctions) is mostly innovative in later IE languages. However, not even the conjunctions in independent clauses were stable. The two best-known independent-clause reconstructed conjunctions are *-kʷe ‘and’ (Ved. ca, GAv. -cā, Gr. τε, Lat. -que, Clb. -kue, OIr. -ch, W -p, Goth. -h, Hitt. -kkw; for the negative *nekʷe cf. below) and *-wē (with optional monosyllabic lengthening – p. 54–55) ‘or’ (Ved./GAv. vā, Lat. -ue, Clb. -ue, Toch. B wa-t). Unlike ‘and’ and ‘or’ in modern IE languages, these were elitics (placed after the second word – one could call them postpositive particles), cf. Lat. Senātus populus-que Rōmānus ‘the Senate and people [lit. people-and] of Rome’, Ved. Mitráṃ huve Várunaṃ ca ‘I invoke Mitra and Varuna [lit. Varuna-and]’. As in modern languages, they could be used twice with slightly different meanings (*wl̥kwōs h1 ek ˊwōs-kʷe ‘wolves and horses’ and *wl̥kwōs-kʷe h1ekwōs-kʷe ‘both wolves and horses’), cf. Gr. (Hom.) πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν τε ϑεῶν τε ‘father of (both) men and gods’, Ved. divāś ca gṁāś ca ‘(both) of heaven and of earth’, nāktaṃ vā hī divā vā vārsati ‘for it rains (either) by night or by day’. These conjunctions connected phrases, verbs, and sentences as well, cf. Ved. ā devēbhir yāhi yāksi ca ‘come with the gods and sacrifice!’ In Rg-Veda (rarely in Greek as well), when connecting what should be vocatives only the first form is actually voc. (the other one is nom.), cf. Ved. Vāyav Īndraś ca... ā yātam ‘O Vayu [voc.] and Indra [nom.], come!’ This reminds one of the pres./inj. (p. 97) and instr. sg./nom. du. ellipsis (p. 63). As in later languages, some pronominal forms (like *yod ‘that’, *kʷod ‘which’, *kʷid ‘what’ – p. 88–89) probably functioned as conjunctions already in PIE, cf. Ved. yād ‘because; when’, Lat. quod ‘(in) that; because; though’, Hitt. kuit ‘because’, etc.

PARTICLES

Particles are usually short and unaccented. Several particles can be reconstructed for PIE, the best known of which is the negative particle *nē̆ ‘no(t)’ (p. 54). Cf. also the compound *ne-kʷe ‘and not’ (Lat. neque ‘not, and not, also not’, Clb. nekue ‘nor, neither, and not’, Hitt. nekku ‘not?’, Alb. nuk ‘not’). A prohibitive particle *meh₁, (Ved. mā, Gr. μη, Arm.
mi, Toch. A/B mà, Alb. mo, cf. p. 97) can also be reconstructed, originally perhaps the imperative of *mehe₁-, cf. Hitt. reduplicated *mi:mm(a)- ‘refuse’ (Kloekhorst 2008). A couple of other particles can be reconstructed, but often the meaning is not too clear – cf. the emphatic particle *gʷe/o (Ved. ha, gha, OCS že, -go in the gen. sg. m. pronouns like togo ‘that’). In some cases, the particles can appear often after certain forms (cf. the verbal particles that had integrated with verbal forms already in PIE – p. 92), like *g/ǵe after personal pronouns, cf. Gr. ἕγω-ǵε ‘I’ – dat. sg. ἤμοι-ǵε, Goth. acc. sg. mi-k ‘me’ (but also Goth. au-k ‘also’), Hitt. acc. sg. tu-k ‘you’ (p. 181), etc.

INTERJECTIONS

As usual, interjections are often onomatopoeic and can have otherwise non-existent or rare phonological and phonotactical characteristics. In historical view, their phonological development can be irregular, and cognates can be accidental, which makes their reconstruction provisory. Many of them are really simple, like *ā ‘ah!’ for surprise or pain (Skr. ā, Gr. ἄ, Lat. ā, Lith. ā, Goth. o), *ay for surprise or pity (Skr. e, ai, Gr. αἱ, Lat. ai, etc.), or exclamation (sometimes used with vocatives) *ō ‘oh!’ (Gr. ὅ, Lat. ó, OIr. ā, a, Eng. oh, etc.). In some cases, the usual sound laws clearly do not apply (for obvious reasons), cf. the laughter onomatopoeia in IE languages (PIE *ha ha?): Skr. ha ha, Gr. ἄ ἄ, Lat. hahae, Slav. ha ha, Eng. ha ha, etc. In others, it (partially) does – cf. Lat. ēheu ‘ah, alas!’ (Latin otherwise has no diphthong eu) and Skr. aho ‘o, oh, alas!’ (with *ew > o), where PIE *ēheu (or *eHew?) is reconstructable. A perhaps less trivial reconstruction, but still with many irregular correspondences, is *way ‘alas, woe!’ (Gr. οὐαί, Lat. uae, GAv. vaiiōi, Goth. wai, W gwae, Arm. vay).

Note: I would like to thank David Mandić, Thomas Olander, Petra Šoštarić, and my students Matija Mužek and Marul Kuljiš for valuable comments on the first draft of the chapter. Of course, all the mistakes are just mine.

FURTHER READING

The literature on specific problems of PIE morphology is immense – however, there are no modern one-volume monographs dedicated to the whole of PIE morphology as such (or even to the nominal and verbal parts separately). Most PIE comparative grammars (cf. p. 56–57) deal with both phonology and morphology, though their overview of the morphology is often concise in many segments. Of those more recent ones, Szemerényi 1996 is rather detailed, with very helpful explanations of numerous reflexes of morphological forms in separate IE languages, often providing commentary on different views on problems, as well an extensive (pre-1990) bibliography. However, his views are in some instances dated, as is to be expected. The reconstructions in Beekes 2011 are sometimes idiosyncratic, though some of his heterodox views are very interesting (his take on nominal inflection, such as it is, is presented in Beekes 1985). Fortson 2010 is not too detailed in the PIE section and, for instance, does not provide separate paradigms for all nominal athematic stems. Meier-Brügger 2003 is very useful for his references to literature but also often not too detailed (e.g., he does not list the paradigms in separate IE languages or the reconstructions of all nominal athematic stems), while sometimes dealing too extensively with less important minutiae. A lot of information on the reconstruction of PIE morphology can be found in handbooks on specific branches and languages, e.g., in Sihler 1995, Ringe 2006, or Olander 2015 (with useful references and short surveys of differing views on specific reconstructions). An overview of reconstructed PIE
nouns and adjectives (with their stems) is available in NIL. The problem of PIE gender is tackled in a recent monograph (Matasović 2004) and a collection of articles (Neri & Schumann 2014). A recent monograph covering the IE dual is Fritz 2011. Schmidt 1978 gives an overview of the material and earlier literature concerning personal pronouns, but his reconstructions are rather implausible (cf. Katz 1998 and Kapović 2006 for more recent takes on PIE personal pronouns). For numerals, Szemerényi 1960 is still useful but obviously dated; the Gvozdanović 1991 collection provides a survey of numerals in all IE branches with a number of eminent scholars taking part. Rau 2009 deals with the decades (and also the Caland System). Monographs concerning various aspects of the PIE verbal system are more numerous than works on the nominal system. Hewson & Bubeník 1997 give a useful overview of the verbal systems in various IE branches. LIV is an established handbook on PIE verbal formation, although it has its perks. Clackson 2007 gives an excellent short, problem-based overview of the current issues (the Greco-Aryan model, present/aorist origin, injunctive, optative, middle, etc.) in reconstructing the PIE verbal system. For different famous approaches to pre-PIE origins of the verbal system, cf. Rix 1986 and Jasanoff 2003. The much older Watkins 1969 is still insightful as well, though very controversial. The following monographs deal with specific parts of the verbal system: the aorist (Harðarson 1993 – root aorist; Drinka 1995 – sigmatic; Cardona 1960 – thematic; Bendahanman 1993 – reduplicated); the perfect (di Giovine 1990/1996a/b); the middle (Jasanoff 1978, Stempel 1996); the moods (the already mentioned Rix 1986); verbal reduplication (Niepokuj 1997). Further references are available in the mentioned works and chapters in this volume on separate IE branches.

NOTES

1 Hitt. -uš may indeed point to *-ms, not *-ns (cf., e.g., Kloekhorst 2008: 929).
2 With further possible *-m- cognates in Tocharian (p. 456).
3 One must be aware that not all the endings of the words usually taken as examples are always attested. Some actual forms usually cited in full paradigms in handbooks (and sometimes also here) are also not always actually attested as such in the texts (but are assumed according to other attested forms).
5 The original distribution of the thematic *-ōm (< *-o-ōm, *-ehry, *-ōm) and athematic *-ēm is possibly preserved in (part of) Slavic, cf. the Neo-Štokavian (BCMS) gen. pl. (o- and ā-stems) -ā < PSlav. *-ē < PIE *-ēm/-ehićōm but gen. pl. (i-stems) -i (never *-i-ejā) < *-ijā < PSlav. *-ijō < PIE *-eyīm (e.g., the o-stem gen. pl. zūhā ‘teeth’ < PIE *gōmbhōm but the old ī-stem gen. pl. črītī ‘worms’ < PIE *g̥myōm).
6 This did not occur in the gen. pl. ending *-ēm, because this was originally *-om in most cases (p. 70). The *-m did not drop in the Stang-form *gōmōm (p. 71) either.
7 The PIE reconstruction here mostly follows the one in Kapović 2006.
8 English terminology is rather unfortunate because the traditionally reconstructed PIE categories perfect and imperfect may be confused with aspectually redefined categories of perfective (for traditional “aorist”) and imperfective (for traditional “present”).
9 The claim that the Lithuanian original acute accent in the 1 sg. -ù (reflexive -ūo-si) points to a laryngeal is not completely compelling, since Balto-Slavic exhibits the acute accent on some (non-contractional) long-grade endings as well (e.g., in i-stem loc. sg. *-ēj, cf. the Latvian reflexive infinitives in -tiē-s from PIE abstract nouns with the loc. sg. *-tēj).
11 It is possible to connect the *-ey-(e)- (zero *-i-) suffix with *-y-e- originally.
12 Such injunctives could have been the basis for the making of the Indo-Iranian/Greek imperfect and the Old Irish absolute berid ‘carries’ < *bʰereti, berait < *bʰeronti but conjunct -beir ‘says’ < *bʰereti, -berat < *bʰeront, though this is highly controversial (p. 358, 372–373).
13 Cf., e.g., Oettinger 1976, Rix 1986, 1988, Kümmel 1996 for the reconstruction of stative (besides the middle).
14 Cf. Hermann 1895.

REFERENCES

Cardona, George 1960, *The Indo-European Thematic Aorists*, Yale University, New Haven [PhD dissertation]
Harðarson, Jón Axel 1993, *Studien zum urindogermanischen Wurzelaorist*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck
Jasanoff, Jay 1978, *Stative and Middle in Indo-European*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck
Kapović, Mate 2006, *Reconstruction of Personal Pronouns in Balto-Slavic with Emphasis on Accretion*, University of Zadar, Zadar [PhD dissertation]
LIV = *Lexikon der Indogermanischen Verben*, Rix, Helmut (ed.), Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag, Wiesbaden 2001
Matasović, Ranko 2004, *Gender in Indo-European*, Universitätsverlag Winter, Heidelberg
Rix, Helmut 1986, *Zur Entstehung des urindogermanischen Modussystems*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck
Stempel, Reinhard 1996, *Die Diathese im Indogermanischen: Formen und Funktionen des Mediums und ihre sprachhistorischen Grundlagen*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck


CHAPTER 3

PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN SYNTAX

Thomas Krisch

After general remarks mentioning and evaluating older literature and the data basis for Proto-Indo-European (henceforth PIE) syntax, this article will describe major fields of present day research. Clause alignment and the ergative hypothesis are not dealt with in this article (see the treatment by Matasović, p. 162–164). The end of this article contains a short conclusion.¹

GENERAL REMARKS

A very short survey of older literature on PIE syntax

Berthold Delbrück (1842–1922) is the “father” of comparative PIE syntax. His monumental work on comparative syntax in three volumes encompasses phenomena that we now subsume under morphosyntax and syntax. Among them are the use of nominal number, case (including matters of valency of the verb), prepositions, the alternations between adjectives and nominal genitives, the use of tenses, moods and genera verbi and the organization of sentence structure (word order, elliptical constructions, appositions, agreement issues, question sentences, relative clauses). Delbrück analyses numerous examples from ancient Indo-European languages (AIETs), and he states that if constructions and meanings coincide in the AIETs, this could mean that the same was true also for PIE (Delbrück 1967=1893: 86). This statement still makes sense today.

The syntactic framework of Delbrück and other eminent researchers like Jacob Wackernagel (e.g. Wackernagel (1920 and 1924), outstandingly translated and edited by Langslow (2009)) was based on traditional Latin grammar and philological interpretation. The next methodical landmark was an article in the spirit of structuralism by Calvert Watkins (1963) about word order in Old Irish with archaic verb-final position (which Watkins expects to reflect the PIE state). These are cases of Bergin’s Law (Watkins 1963: 24) and of tmesis. In Irish tmesis, the preverb, optionally followed by Wackernagel clitics, introduces the sentence, and the finite verb ends it. Assuming a univerbation process where the verb moves from the final position to “its” preverb in sentence-initial position, Watkins succeeds in integrating the deviating (unmarked verb-initial order) Old Irish data into a general picture of PIE with verb-final as the unmarked order. The preverb could not move to the end of the sentence because that would violate Wackernagel’s Law in case clitics are attached to it. This reasoning is still convincing and very modern. The first part of McCone’s outstanding dissertation (1979) takes ideas from Watkins 1963 and describes sentence patterns in Hittite, Vedic and Greek with Watkins’ formal devices.

The 1970s laid the ground for much of what is still discussed today in studies on PIE syntax. They brought typology (in the Greenberg 1966 tradition, cf. also Matasović,
p. 165) and theory to bear on the description of PIE syntax, with an emphasis on word order: Lehmann (1974) reconstructs *SOV, Friedrich (1975) thinks *SVO and *SOV are equally important, and Miller (1975) considers *VSO as well. Referring to this typological approach, Watkins (1976: 305) deplores “. . . that the rebirth of Indo-European syntax has taken place in the bed of Procrustes”. This criticism is true as long as one looks at the word order typology as rigid order (as was partly done in the cited literature) and wants to sweep the counterexamples under the carpet. The development of research in the last 40 years has brought some progress in this respect; see our section on word order. Another criticism of Watkins, however, is still to be kept in mind today: He suspects that the picture of PIE syntax could also be influenced by “Teeter’s Law” (the language of the family you know best always turns out to be the most archaic; cf. Watkins 1976: 310). I think that every researcher (including myself, of course) faces this problem, but this does not have to be evaluated in a purely negative way. Also, the chance of getting precious new insights is thus increased.

A very influential article of the 1970s was Dressler 1971. In that paper, the author mentions a number of important fields of research on PIE syntax, which are, among others, still elaborated in current research: typological issues (cf. also Dressler 1968), the syntax of case (see our sections on case functions and on argument structure), sentence prosody (see our section on Wachernagel’s law), word order and text syntax (see our section on verb positions with arguments taken from text syntax).

Today’s research on PIE syntax encompasses a broad spectrum with regard to contents. Most of it shows a sharpened awareness of methodology and search for points of contact with general linguistic ideas. This new perspective is an outcome of research done in the 1960s and 1970s.

The data

The comparative method of reconstructing the PIE language system has been very successful in the realm of phonology, morphophonology (especially ablaut) and morphology. It was developed in the 19th century (e.g. Franz Bopp (1791–1867), Jacob Grimm (1785–1863) and the Neogrammarians like Karl Brugmann (1849–1919)) and is still being refined on today in numerous publications. Using this method, one collects probable cognates (units in form and function, normally words) in a number of related languages, investigates regular correspondences between them and finally reconstructs proto-forms. These, in turn, give rise to sound correspondences, to morphophonological theories of nominal and verbal inflection and derivation (accent-ablaut types), to the reconstruction of compound types, etc.

It is very difficult to apply this comparative method to syntax since the oldest texts in a number of ancient Indo-European (IE) languages do not even share a type of text. In Hittite, one finds prose texts with laws, narratives and rituals. In Greek (apart from the Mycenaean inventories), one has the great monument of Homer, a poetic text; prose texts are attested only in later times. In Vedic and Avestan, we have metrical texts with ritualistic content, etc., etc. There are no primary data for PIE sentences available, and there are no attestations of exactly the same sentence with all words cognate in more than one language in the AIELs with the exception of frozen syntagms (see below) in the language of poetry. The attempted material reconstruction of “real” PIE sentences normally reveals only the state of research for the respective reconstruction, and therefore one cannot use it as primary data, of course.2

In the case of attested texts in ancient languages, one at least has access to some data which have been handed down and have survived time largely by chance. Even these
data suffer from big disadvantages when compared with linguistic data from living languages. One cannot freely form sentences which can be judged by native speakers as to whether they are grammatical or ungrammatical. Normally syntactic reconstruction can just reconstruct schemata, abstract sentence structures, and thus differs from phonological, morphological and lexical reconstructions with more “substance”. But there are very rare cases where one can reconstruct, e.g., word order including “substance”, with the same (ideally etymologically related) words occurring in more than one language. This could offer a “punctum Archimedis”, an Archimedean starting point. Let us start with the one which to my knowledge is the best syntagm that can be reconstructed with “substance” for PIE, namely that a hero is killing a dragon (cf. also Watkins 1995, esp. chapter 27 and 28; Krisch 2001). There is good evidence to reconstruct this syntagm as offered in (1), with government of the verb to the right (data from Vedic, Avestan and Greek (see the examples in (2a–d)):

(1) PIE *(é) gʷh-en-t *(H)e/ogʷh-im
(Augment)-kill-3SG.INJ.PRES./(IMPF.) serpent-ACC.SG.
‘He kills /(killed) the serpent’

(2) a) Vedic: RV 1,32,2 *(áhann < PIE *e-gʷh-en-t; áhim < PIE *(H)e/ogʷh-im)
áhann áhim
kill.3SG.IMPF. serpent.ACC.SG.
‘he killed the serpent’

b) Avestan: Y.9,8 *(janañ < transposed PIE *gʷh-en-e-t; ažīm < PIE *(H)e/ogʷh-im)
yo janañ ažīm
do dāhākam
who kill.3SG.INJ.PRES. serpent.ACC.SG. Dahāka.ACC.SG.
‘who killed Aži (“the dragon”) Dahāka’

c) Greek: Pindar P. 10,46 *(ἐπεφνε(ν) < PIE *e-gʷh-e-gʷh-n-e reduplicated aorist; Gorgon: lit. ‘the terrible one’; winged daemon with serpentine locks in the hair)
ἐπεφνέν τε Γοργόνα
kill.3SG.AOR. and Gorgon.ACC.SG.
‘he killed the serpent /dragon’

d) Pindar, P. 4,249: *(κτείνε < PIE *tkenyeº/κβενyeº (injunctive present) or < PIE *tken-sº/κβen-sº (injunctive aorist); ὀφιν < PIE *(H)e/ogʷh-im)
κτεινε . . . ὀφιν
kill.3SG.IMPF. / AOR. serpent.ACC.SG.
‘he killed the serpent /dragon’

If one combines the Greek sentences (2c) and (2d), one gets Greek ἐπεφνε(ν) ὀφιν, which can be projected back to *e-gʷh-e-gʷh-n-e *(H)e/ogʷh-im. Except for the tense of the verbal form, this reconstruction is the same as the one in (1), which was arrived at by the Vedic and Avestan forms.
But from this evidence one must not draw the conclusion that the ancient languages in question and PIE were necessarily languages with a VO order. This is confirmed by the fact that the inverse order (OV) of the same syntagm is attested in a number of ancient IE languages as well and can be reconstructed for the proto-language preceding Vedic, Greek and Hittite (which of course is PIE as well). Cf. the reconstruction in (3) with government to the left:

(3) PIE *(H)e/og\textsuperscript{wh}-im *(\textsc{e})- g\textsuperscript{wh}en-t
serpent-ACC.SG. (Augment)-kill-3SG.INJ.PRES./IMPF.

‘He kills /(killed) the serpent’

This reconstruction is supported by syntagms attested in Hittite, Vedic and Greek (see the examples in (4a–d)):

(4)

a) Hittite KUB 17.5 Vs I (Middle Hittite): (\textit{kuenta} < PIE *g\textsuperscript{wh}en-t(o))

\begin{verbatim}
17) \textsc{PI}\textsc{m-aš} \textsc{u}-\textsc{it} \textsc{nu-kán} \textsc{MUS}il-lu-[\textsc{ya}-\textsc{an}-\textsc{ka-}an] (18) \textsc{ku}-\textsc{en-}\textsc{ta} DINGIR\textsc{MES-ša kat-}\textsc{i}-\textsc{iš-ši} e-\textsc{še-ir}
\textsc{PI}\textsc{m-aš} \textsc{u-}it \textsc{nu}=\textsc{kán} \textsc{MUS}illu[yankan] (18) \textsc{ku}enta
\end{verbatim}

Weathergod come.3SG.PRET. SC=LOC.PTCL Illuyanka,ACC.SG. kill.3SG.PRET.

\begin{verbatim}
DINGIR\textsc{MES-š}=a katti=\textsc{šši} e\textsc{šer}
\textsc{Go}d.NOM.PL. = but with=him (lit. POSS.PRON.) be.3PL.PRET.
\end{verbatim}

‘The weathergod (i.e. Tarhunnaš) came and killed (the serpent) Illuyanka; but the gods were with him’

b) Vedic RV 2,15,1 (\textit{áhim} < PIE *(H)e/og\textsuperscript{wh}-im; \textit{jag\textsc{há}na} < PIE *g\textsuperscript{wh}e-g\textsuperscript{wh}on-e)

\begin{verbatim}
17) \textsc{trikadruse}su \textsc{apibat} \textsc{suta}si\textsc{a} \textsc{asyá} \textsc{máde}
\textsc{Tri}kadruka-day,LOC.PL. drink.3SG.IMPF. \textsc{Soma},GEN.SG. he,GEN.SG. intoxication,LOC.SG.
\textsc{áhim} \textsc{indro} \textsc{jag\textsc{há}na}:
\textsc{serp}cnt.ACC.SG. \textsc{Ind}ra,NO\textsc{M.SG}. \textsc{slay},3SG.PERF.
\end{verbatim}

‘At the Trikadruka-days he drank from Soma; in the intoxication (caused) by this (one), Indra has slain the serpent’

c) Greek: H. Ap. 300-301 [\textit{tk\textsc{e}nve} < PIE *tk\textsc{en}-y\textsc{e}/k\textsc{pen}-y\textsc{e} (injunctive present) or < PIE *tk\textsc{en}-s\textsc{o}/k\textsc{pen}-s\textsc{o} (injunctive aorist)]

\begin{verbatim}
17) \textsc{ēn}\textsc{θa} \textsc{drák}k\textsc{in}\textsc{a}n / \textsc{k}t\textsc{e}n\textsc{e}n \textsc{ān}\textsc{ux} \textsc{Δi}o\textsc{ς} \textsc{v}i\textsc{ó}\textsc{ς}
\textsc{t}here \textsc{she},dragon,ACC.SG. kill.3SG.IMPF./AOR. lord,NOM.SG. Zeus,GEN.SG. son,NOM.SG.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\textsc{απ}ó \textsc{krat}p\textsc{e}ro\textsc{io} \textsc{β}\textsc{io}ù
\textsc{with} (lit. from) \textsc{strong} \textsc{bow},GEN.SG.
\end{verbatim}

‘there, the lord (i.e. Apollo, TK), the son of Zeus, killed the (female) dragon with the strong bow’

d) Greek: Pindar, O. 13,88 ff. (\textit{ἐπεφνέ\textsc{vė}(v)} < PIE *e-g\textsuperscript{wh}e-g\textsuperscript{wh}n-e reduplicated aorist) κα\textsc{t}ι \textsc{Χι\textsc{m}a}r\textsc{an} π\textsc{ύρ} π\textsc{ν\textsc{έ}ο}\textsc{i}\textsc{s}αν κα\textsc{t}ι \textsc{Σο\textsc{l}û\textsc{m}ou\textsc{e}ς \textit{ἐπεφνέ\textsc{v}}}
καὶ Χίμαιραν πῦρ πνέοισαν καὶ
and Chimaira.acc.sg.f. fire.acc.sg.f. breathe.ptcp.aor.acc.sg.f. and
Σολύμοις ἐπεφνεν
Solymoi.acc.pl. kill.3sg.aor.

‘And he (i.e. Bellerophontes, TK) killed the fire-breathing Chimaira and the Solymoi’

The Hitti
te example in (4a) shows a cognate verb form that fits with the reconstruction in (3), and the Vedic instance in (4b) is (with the exception of tense) almost an exact equivalent to (3). In the Greek example (4c), the ‘dragon’ word and the verb have only a semantic correspondence to the reconstruction in (3), and in (4d) only the verb is etymologically related to the reconstruction, and the object shows words and names for dragons with etymologies different from *(H)e/og*whi-. But, nevertheless, a word for ‘dragon’ is put in the accusative case in both Greek examples. This is as close as one can get when one wants to reconstruct genuine PIE sentences.

The reconstructions in (1) and (3) seem to contradict each other. A number of conclusions from this fact are possible, e.g. the following:

a) IE and the oldest languages were fluctuating between OV and VO. This would describe the fact that our sentence appears in both varieties in Greek and in Vedic Sanskrit. Note, however, that Hittite shows no variant with VO. This scenario could lead to a project which tries to disentangle the OV and VO features of the ancient IE languages and the reconstructed proto-language, using, e.g., typological criteria like those of Greenberg (1966) and his followers.

b) IE was like Hittite, which, as Luraghi has shown in her seminal book from 1990, is a fairly strict OV language. Note also that our sentence in Hittite shows no variant with VO. The languages with VO order for this sentence, namely Greek, Sanskrit and Avestan, could reflect a younger state, a shift to VO. If one adopts this scenario, this could result in looking for layers of OV or VO in the oldest history of the languages showing variation and depicting developments from OV to VO in these languages.

c) The IE base-type was OV, but under certain pragmatic conditions it allowed for a movement of the verb to the front of the sentence. This is the view I will adopt.

We have seen that frozen syntagms in cognate languages can lead to revealing conclusions for PIE syntax and may lead to further investigation. Most of these frozen syntagms go back to poetic language. An up-to-date overview of all aspects of IE poetic language including syntax (using a generative framework) is Hajnal 2008. An extensive collection of text correspondences and of frozen syntagms in AIELs can be found in Schmitt 1967.

MAJOR PRESENT FIELDS OF RESEARCH ON PIE SYNTAX

Word order

Inspired by Mark Hale (1987) and Paul Kiparsky (1995) and expanding some earlier ideas of Krisch 1990, I have used generative grammar (the Government and Binding model) to describe word order in AIELs and in PIE in a number of publications. The model I use now is slightly different from the models I have used in earlier publications, but it is
compatible with the older model. Following Keydana (2011), I have integrated the label Df-slot, and I have renumbered the Wackernagel clitics following Keydana (2011) and Lühr & Zeilfelder (2011). For practical purposes (mainly motivated by the treatment of Wackernagel particles) I assume two schemes of phrase structure: (5) and (6). The two schemes are compatible with Government and Binding (the labels form a subgroup of the universal set of phrase structure), and they are in fact only one structure: The second scheme is derived from the first one by “Chomsky adjunction”. For the abbreviations used see the appendix above the bibliography. The Df-slot (discourse functional slot) is a “landing-site” for topical and focal material. The number of categories used is held as small as possible. The morphology is not done in a generative way; the word forms are inserted fully inflected into the syntactic tree.

One can use these schemes for a number of phenomena, which I will shortly characterize in the following sections.

Discontinuous constituents (hyperbaton/tmesis)

One of the most striking features of AIELs are discontinuous constituents. Most of them (except for movements inside DP and PP) can be quite simply described by moving parts
of constituents to the left or the right of the VP. In (7) (Scheme 1), the interrogative pronoun τίς is fronted out of its DP to the front, into the Df-slot, which is not surprising for a clear focal element. In this case, only Wackernagel particles intervene (cf. also Krisch 1998: 372).

(7)  
Hom. Il. 1,8:

\[ \text{τίς} \quad \text{τάρ} \quad \text{σφωε} \quad \text{θεών} \quad \text{ξυνέηκε} \]

Who. NOM. SG. there they ACC. DU. god. GEN. PL. quarrel. DAT. SG. bring.together. 3SG. AOR. fight. INF. MID.

“Who on earth of the gods brought both of them together to fight in quarrel?”

FIGURE 1.4 STRUCTURE OF HOMER, I LIAD 1,8

In (8), part of the DP is fronted, and part of it is extraposed to the right of the VP (by adjunction): The Homeric article/determiner οἱ, which has stronger demonstrative value than the article of later Greek (cf., e.g., Chantraine 1981=1953: 158), and which conveys anaphoric-topical information, is put into the Df-slot to the left, whereas the head of the NP, θεοί, is extraposed to the right.

(8)  
Hom. Od. 4,353:

\[ \text{oī} \quad \text{δ’} \quad \text{αιεί} \quad \text{βούλοντο} \quad \text{θεοί} \]

The(se) NOM. PL. but always want. 3PL. INJ. MID. god. NOM. PL. remember. INF. PERF. MID. command. GEN. PL.

“But the(se) gods always want to remember their commands”
Hyperbata are widespread among AIELs, and thus they are a syntactic device which can easily be reconstructed: In (9) one finds examples for this phenomenon in Vedic (ūtim sahasrasātamām is extraposed), (10) is an example from Latin (pulmoneum is fronted), and there are also examples in Hittite ((11); the genitive is extraposed to the right).

(9) Vedic RV 1,10,10:
\[ vṛṣantaṃsyahūmahaūtim\\text{extremely,bull-like.one.GEN.SG. call.1PL.PRES.MID. help.ACC.SG.F.} \]
\[ \text{saḥasrasātamām} \]
most.winning.a.thousand.ACC.SG.F.

‘We ask for the most bull-like one’s (i.e. god Indra’s, TK) help, which excels in winning a thousand’

(10) Old Latin Plaut. Rud. 511:
\[ \text{Pulmoneum edepol nimis} \]
Consisting.of.lung.ACC.SG.M. by.Pollux! too much
\[ \text{uēlim uomītum uomas} \]
wish.1SG.SUBJ. vomit.ACC.SG.M. vomit.2SG.SUBJ.

‘I wish very much that you vomit a vomit consisting of lung particles.’
(11) Hittite StBoT 8, Vs I 22 (Old Hittite ritual) (Otten & Souček 1969: 20)

Ⅱ ḫantasepuš ẖarwani GI[(Ṡ-aš)]

Two Hantasepa-deities ACC.PL. have.1PL.PRES. wood. GEN.SG.

‘We have two Hantasepa-deities (made) of wood.’

Normally, the phenomenon of hyperbaton/tmesis is looked upon as a poetic device. But it is also a feature which appears in everyday speech. This is shown by the Plautus example in (10) and by the fact that inscriptions also show the phenomenon (cf. (12), where the location from which Dropides comes (the adjective Ἀφίδναιος) is moved to the right)


[Δ]ρωπίδης κατέλαβε [ἀ]νασάξιμον Drōpidēs NOM.SG.M. take. possession. of.3SG.AOR. equipped. again. ACC.SG.

Αφίδναιος mine. ACC.SG. from. ApʰiDNA. NOM.SG.M.

‘Dropides from ApʰiDNA took possession of a mine which was restarted’

A surely old PIE construction pattern is a sentence where a preverb (originally an adverb) is fronted, thus appearing apart from “its” verb. This is usually called “tmesis” (Gr. τμῆσις lit. ‘cutting’). Already Wackernagel observed this for Greek: “from the earliest period, tmesis . . . is commonest when the preverb is in clause-initial position” (Wackernagel 1924: 174 = Langslow 2009: 616). Actually, in this case, for PIE the term “tmesis” is misleading. The most probable scenario for the oldest texts and for PIE is that the “preverb” had only a loose connection to the verb and has to be looked upon more as a (normally local) adverb (cf. also Krisch 1984, especially chapter 3), which can appear in sentence-initial position (DF-slot) to give a frame to the sentence. Of course, the sentence-initial position is not the only position of these adverbs in PIE and in the AIELs, but as already sketched above, Watkins (1963) has taught us that this construction helps to understand the development of the Celtic verb-initial construction. Examples (13)–(15) offer some examples for this construction in Hittite, Vedic and Greek. In all three examples, the preverb can be understood as an independent adverb or as a preverb. For the Hittite example in (13) note that, e.g., German has a prefixed verb hinterherrufen ‘to call after someone’ with the prefix hinter ‘behind’.


appananda=ma=šše kē mēmahhi

behind. after=but=he DAT.SG. this ACC.SG./PL. say. 1SG.PRES.

‘but from behind I say this to him (i.e. to the eagle who is set free, TK) / but after him (i.e. the eagle set free, TK) I say this’

(14) Vedic RV 6,53,4

vī pathō vājasātaye cinuhī away path. ACC.PL. obtaining. good. DAT.SG. arrange. 2SG. IMP.PRES.

vī mḗdho jahi away adversary. ACC.PL. strike. 2SG. IMP.PRES.

‘open up paths for obtaining goods, slay enemies’
(15) Greek Hom. Il. 1,308–11:

In but/and rower.acc.pl. chose.3sg.impf. twenty in but/ Hekatomb.acc.sg. and

‘(But the son of Atreus launched a swift ship on the sea,) and chose for it twenty rowers, and drove on board a hecatomb for the god, and brought the fair-cheeked daughter of Chryses onto it and made her sit.’

Wackernagel’s Law

In 1892 Wackernagel published his long famous article “Über ein Gesetz der indogermanischen Wortstellung”. He states (elaborating earlier work by Delbrück and Bartholomae) that certain clitics tend to occupy the second position in the PIE sentence. He mainly bases this claim on data taken from Ancient Greek, but he also deals with a small amount of Latin, Vedic and Old Iranian and Celtic material. Already eight years later, Delbrück integrated the law into his handbook (Delbrück 1967=1900: 49–50). The following remark by Watkins dating from 1964 is still valid today: “... one of the few generally accepted syntactic statements about IE is Wackernagel’s Law, that enclitics originally occupied the second position in the sentence” (Watkins 1964: 1036).

Decades after Wackernagel, this law has also been confirmed by newly discovered AIELs, especially the Anatolian languages (see the Hittite examples in Krisch 1990) and Mycenaean, thus making it a robust candidate for reconstruction. In the following examples, the clitics in Wackernagel position are in boldface. For reasons why some of the Greek clitics (see (16)) carry an accent and nevertheless “count” as clitics, see Krisch (1990: 75–76).

(16) Greek Hom. Il. 18,394:

in.truth then now terrible.nom.sg.f. and also honorable.nom.sg.f. goddess.nom.sg. inside ‘then, in truth, now the terrible and honorable goddess (is) inside for me’

(17) Vedic RV 1,175, 2

here you.gen.sg. come.3sg.imp.aor. bull-like.nom.sg.m. intoxicating.nom.sg.m. drunkenness.nom.sg.m. excellent.nom.sg.m. ‘The intoxicating, bull-like, excellent drunkenness of you (i.e. God Indra, TK) shall come to us.’

(18) Hittite (Held 1957: 14) KUB XIII 2 III 16:
Wackernagel’s Law has become clearer through the research of the last few decades. This research is mainly based on Vedic, which probably can be taken as a model for PIE. Now one divides the clitics into three groups (cf. also Keydana 2011). Only the first two are genuine Wackernagel clitics.

- WL₁ clitics (clitic pronouns) typically occupy the second position in the sentence, but in sentences with wh-words they always follow the wh-word (see examples (21) and (22))
- WL₂ clitics (sentence connectors and sentence adverbs) always occupy the position after the first word of the sentence
- WL₃ clitics are adjacent to the word or constituent they take scope over. Typically, these are emphatic particles. If their host is put at the front of the sentence, they also occupy the Wackernagel position (cf. already Hale 1987: 44). Lühr (2009) deals with such particles from an information structural point of view.

In the R̥ gveda, the following (types of) data have to be described (cf. Keydana 2011: 122):

(19) RV 1,176,4

(ásunvantam sameṣaṃ jahi dūnsaṃ yó ná te máyāḥ |) asmābhyam asya vēdanam daddhi (sūriś cid ohatē) ||

‘(Kill everyone who does not press soma, the inaccessible one, who is not your delight) Give to us his property! (He boasts (being) an inciter (of a sacrifice))’

asmābhyam asya vēdanam daddhi we dat. this gen sg property acc sg give 3sg imp pres.

As the context (19) shows, the accented pronoun asmābhyam is in contrastive focus to the ásunvant-, the ones not pressing soma. Therefore, it stands in the Df-slot (cf. (5)) and the WL₁ asya is immediately following.

(20) RV 1,76,1

Kēna vā te mánasā dāśema

Which instr sg or you dat sg spirit instr sg sacrifice 1 pl opt pres.

‘With which spirit should we sacrifice you?’

In (20), we see that the WL₂ clitic vā precedes the WL₁ clitic te (the wh-word + WL₂ clitic form a prosodic word to which the WL₁ clitic attaches).

(21) RV 6,27,1

indraḥ kim asya sakh’yē cakāra

Indra nom sg what acc sg n this gen sg m friendship loc sg do 3sg perf.

‘What has Indra done in his (i.e. Soma’s, TK) friendship?’
Example (21) shows a remarkable feature of the WL₁ clitics: they follow the wh-word, even if another word/constituent precedes it. This construction can also be found in Greek (scheme 2):

(22) Od. 20,47–48

(αὐτὰρ ἐγὼ θεός εἰμι), διαμπερὲς ἦ σε φυλάσσω ἐν πάντεσσι πόνοισ’

'(But I am a goddess,) (I) who incessantly protect you in all toils’

διαμπερὲς ἦ σε φυλάσσω ἐν πάντεσσι πόνοισ’
incessantly who.nom.sg.f. you.acc.sg. protect.1sg.pres. in all.dat.pl. toil.dat.pl.

These facts have led to a number of proposals for how to characterize them. Hale (1987) is not very explicit about whether Wackernagel’s Law is a syntactic process (a movement operation leaving a trace) or another type of process interacting with syntax. He describes example (21) and others in the following way: “It is clear from these examples that the WL clitics take second position, defined before the topicalization but after WH-movement places ká- (i.e. the wh-question word, TK) in COMP” (Hale 1987: 42). Applied to (21) and to our model in (2) this means that kim is in the XP position of the second CP (like hḗ in (22)), then WL clitics “take” second position, and finally índraḥ is topicalized. “Take” could either mean a syntactic operation or some kind of intervening prosodic operation. Keydana (2011: 115) criticizes this account by calling attention to the fact that an example like (19) cannot be described this way. The WL₁ clitic asya could not appear in this position because it cannot move there before topicalization.

In a later paper, Hale abandons rule ordering and describes Wackernagel clitics as “syntactic movement to C°” (Hale 1996: 192). I agree with Keydana (2011: 119) that such a movement appears to be strange. The base position of the pronouns should be a full XP, and movement from an XP to a head position (C°) is disallowed by the concept of the structure preservation principle (cf. Haegeman 1994: 338). But, on the other hand, there are examples with clitics of the WL₁ type far away from the left periphery (cf. the clitic personal pronoun t₁vā in (23):
Hock’s (e.g. 1996) account of the Vedic left periphery offers a prosodic (not syntactic) template solution. The idea of prosody is taken up by Keydana (2011), who analyses the WL\textsubscript{2} clitics as prosodically attached to the first word in the sentence, whereas the WL\textsubscript{1} clitics always stand at the right of the left periphery, having the prosodic prefield of the sentence as their host.

In my model (see above, examples (5) and (6)) these “Wackernagel particles” occupy positions which are marked with dotted lines, which means that I think their syntactic status is rather loose, representing an interface between syntax and prosody. This solution could suit Keydana’s idea of insertion of the clitics into the prosodic prefield of the sentence (in my model: before VP) but also allows taking into account that the WL\textsubscript{1} clitics can occupy an argument position in the sentence. For the last point see coindexed σε in parentheses in (22). Cf. also (23), where prosody attaches the clitic \textit{tuvā} to tonic \textit{āvase} at the end of the sentence. In (23) the syntactic base position of \textit{tuvā} would probably be a position in front of the verb (a fully fledged DP would occupy this position). Thus, also in the case of (23), the prosody and syntax interact. Coindexing σε in parentheses in (22) should indicate that I do not assume a movement operation here which is motivated by syntax alone.

A view completely different from the ideas just presented is promoted by the phonol-ogists Agbayani and Golston (2010), who work with the concept of postpositives (Dover 1960) like the clitic *k\textit{we} (= Lat. -\textit{que}, Gr. -\textit{τε}) ‘and’ or (in their view) non-clitic Greek -\textit{δέ} that cannot begin a phonological phrase. In their analysis, conjunctions (also the post-positive ones) originate syntactically between the conjoined phrases or clauses, and in the case of a postpositive conjunction like *k\textit{we} an adjacent (phonological) word of the second conjunct is moved to the left of it (a phonological, not a syntactic process). In the case of clauses which are not conjoined, but would syntactically start with postpositives, the first (phonological) word of the second conjunct would also be moved to the left. An example of the last case is (24): \textit{kēv} is a postpositive clitic particle denoting a “possible world” (cf. Krisch 1986: 18), and \textit{μιν} is a postpositive clitic personal pronoun. According to Agbayani and Golston, the sentence (without a conjunction) would start syntactically with two postpositives, and phonology would trigger movement of τότε ‘then’ to the front of them, since postpositives cannot begin a phonological phrase. But this would mean that (syntactically) the Wackernagel clitics \textit{kēv (WL\textsubscript{2})} and \textit{μιν (WL\textsubscript{1})} do not occupy the second position but rather that the sentence starts with \textit{kēv} in the syntactic component.

(24) Hom. Il. 1,1,00 (Agbayani & Golston 2010: 18; \(\phi\) = phonological phrase; the authors underline the word that is moved and indicate the position from which it has moved with underlining as well)

\[
(\text{τότε } \text{kēv } \text{μιν } \text{ιλασσάμενοι})_\text{φ} \ (\text{πεπίθοιμεν})_\text{φ}
\]

then ptcl. him appeasing let.us.persuade

‘then let us persuade him by appeasing him’

But, as far as I see, this interesting approach does not really solve the problem of the different behaviour of WL\textsubscript{1} and WL\textsubscript{2} clitics as outlined above.
The position(s) of the verb in AIELs and in PIE

The author of this chapter has worked extensively on the position(s) of the verb in PIE. The model used is again the one presented in (5) and (6).

The unmarked order: verb-final

I start with unmarked verb-final in the AIELs and in PIE. This position of the verb can be found in many texts in AIELs at every turn, and it is unproblematic to reconstruct it for PIE. Already Delbrück (1967=1900: 83) wrote about PIE word order: “Das Verbum stand im unabhängigen Aussagesatz am Ende . . .” (In an independent declarative sentence the verb appeared at the end). One may refer to the following examples with verb-final taken from AIELs in this chapter: (4a–d), (13), (14), (15).

Now, in the texts of all AIELs one meets sentences where some linguistic material is put after the verb in the right periphery. Syntactic research by Gonda (1959) and McCone (1979) could clarify that much of this extraposed material falls into categories which are non-obligatory. Gonda (1959) calls sentences like that “amplified sentences” (cf. also Krisch 1997; 2001). One may discern the following types of extraposition (cf. Krisch 2001: 162–164): (a) apposition(s) to constituents overtly appearing in the VP before the verb; (b) extraposition of the subject (which is already expressed in the verbal form in AIELs and in PIE); (c) part of a Determiner phrase/Noun phrase, the other part being inside the VP (hyperbaton, see above); and (d) non-obligatory constituents. The following sentences are examples for these categories from Mycenean Greek (25), Celtic (26), Vedic prose (27) and Hittite (28). The finite verb forms are in boldface.

(25) Mycenean Greek

a) apposition:
Ep 613,8 (Pylos):
[sa-sa-wo] o-na-to e-ke ka-ma-e-u
[Sasawo] beneficiary.right,ACC,SG. have,3SG,PRES. man.who.has,a.kama,NOM,SG,M.
‘Sasawo has a fief as Kamaeus.’

b) subject:
Le 641 (Knossos):
o= a-po-te de-ka-sa-to a-re-i-jo
so= from.afar receive,3SG,AOR,MID. Areios,NOM,SG,M.
‘So from outside Areios received (a delivery)’

c) part of an NP/DP:
Ep 704,3 (Pylos):
e-ri-ta i-je-re-ja o-na-to e-ke
Eritha priest,NOM,SG,F. beneficiary.right,ACC,SG. have,3SG,PRES.
ke-ke-me-na ko-to-na pa-ro da-mo
estate,GEN,SG. plot.of.land,GEN,SG. from community,DAT,SG.
‘Eritha, the priestess, has (got) a fief (consisting) of an estate, of a plot of land from the community.’

d) non-obligatory constituents:
Ma. 225,2 (Pylos):
o-da-a, ka-ke-we o-u= di-do-si za-we-te
and.so bronze.smith,NOM,PL. not= give,3PL,PRES. this.year
‘and so the bronze-smiths do not deliver this year’
(26) Celtic

a) apposition:
Celtiberian: Botorrita 95–99 (Meid 1993)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Tocoitei} & \quad \text{ioś} & \quad \text{urantiom=} & \quad \text{we} & \quad \text{auseti} \\
\text{Tocoit.} & \text{DAT.-LOC.SG.} & \text{who.NOM.SG.} & \text{pasture.ACC.SG.} & \text{or make.use.of.3SG.AOR.SUBJ.} \\
\text{arantim=} & \quad \text{we} & \ldots \\
\text{arable.land.ACC.SG.} & \quad \text{or} & \ldots
\end{align*}
\]

‘Who wants to use pastureland or arable land in the Togoit-(district) (Togoit is the name of a Celtiberian god, TK) . . . ’

b) subject:
Gaulish (Genouilly, Stele) (after Lambert 1994: 94)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ELVONTIV} & \quad \text{IEYRV.} & \quad \text{ANEVNO} & \quad \text{OCLICNO} & \quad \text{LVGVRIX} \\
\text{Elontios.} & \text{DAT.SG.} & \text{make.3SG.PRET.} & \text{Aneunos.NOM.SG.} & \text{Oclo.} & \text{ADJ.NOM.SG.} & \text{Lugurix.NOM.SG.} & \text{ANEVNICNO} \\
\text{Aneunos.} & \text{ADJ.NOM.SG.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘Aneunos, (son) of Oclo, (and) Lugurix (son) of Aneunos have made (3SG.PRET. ! TK) (me) for Eluontios (name of a god? TK)

c) part of a DP/NP
Celtiberian: Botorrita 23–25 (Meid 1993)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{uta} & \quad \text{oścues} & \quad \text{śtena} & \quad \text{uersoniti,} & \quad \text{śilapur} \\
\text{and whoever.} & \text{NOM.SG.} & \text{this.ACC.PL.N.} & \text{carry.through.3SG.PRES.} & \text{silver.ACC.SG.} \\
\text{śleitom} & \quad \text{conścilitom} & \quad \text{capišeti,} & \quad \text{cantom} \\
\text{śleitom.ACC.SG.} & \quad \text{conścilitom.ACC.SG.} & \quad \text{take.3SG.AOR.SUBJ.} & \quad \text{100} \\
\text{śanciliśtara} & \quad \text{otanaum} & \quad \text{tocoitei} & \quad \text{eni,} & \quad \text{eni.} \\
\text{śanciliśtara.} & \text{ACC.PL.N.} & \text{giving.to.ACC.SG.} & \text{Togoit.} & \text{DAT.-LOC.SG.} & \text{into} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘And whoever carries this through, will take śleitom- and conścilitom-silver, (namely) 100 śanciliśtara (monetary unit, TK), for the giving-to into the (temple of) Togoit—'

d) non-obligatory constituents
Celtiberian: Botorrita 23–35 (Meid 1993)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{uta} & \quad \text{oścues} & \quad \text{śtena} & \quad \text{uersoniti,} & \quad \text{śilapur} \\
\text{and whoever.} & \text{NOM.SG.} & \text{this.ACC.PL.N.} & \text{carry.through.3SG.PRES.} & \text{silver.ACC.SG.} \\
\text{śleitom} & \quad \text{conścilitom} & \quad \text{capišeti,} & \quad \text{cantom} \\
\text{śleitom.ACC.SG.} & \quad \text{conścilitom.ACC.SG.} & \quad \text{take.3SG.AOR.SUBJ.} & \quad \text{100} \\
\text{śanciliśtara} & \quad \text{otanaum} & \quad \text{tocoitei} & \quad \text{eni.} \\
\text{śanciliśtara.} & \text{ACC.PL.N.} & \text{giving.to.ACC.SG.} & \text{Togoit.} & \text{DAT.-LOC.SG.} & \text{into} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘And whoever carries this through, will take śleitom- and conścilitom-silver, (namely) 100 śanciliśtara (monetary unit, TK), for the giving-to into the (temple of) Togoit—'

(27) Vedic

a) apposition:
JB 1,28

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{tam} & \quad \text{eva} & \quad \text{tābhīr} & \quad \text{āhutibhiś} & \quad \text{śamayitvā} & \quad \text{ūrjaṃ} \\
\text{this.ACC.SG.M.} & \quad \text{so this.INSTR.PL.F.} & \quad \text{rite.INSTR.PL.F.} & \quad \text{appease.ABS.} & \quad \text{power.ACC.SG.} \\
\text{lokānāṃ} & \quad \text{jayati} & \quad \text{vamam} & \quad \text{devam} & \quad \text{devānām} \\
\text{world.} & \text{GEN.PL.} & \text{win.3SG.PRES.} & \text{Yama.} & \text{ACC.SG.} & \text{god.} & \text{ACC.SG.} & \text{god.} & \text{GEN.PL.}
\end{align*}
\]

‘having appeased him, the god of the gods Yama with these rites, he wins the power of the worlds.’
b) subject (with an emendment by Caland 1970–1919: 27, fn. 1)

JB 1,117,1:

etasya ha vā ēdāṃ sāmnaḥ kṛte varṣati

This,GEN,Sg,N. PTCL. PTCL. present song,GEN,Sg,N. for.the.sake.of rain.3SG.PRES. ca parjanya uci ca grhnāti.

and Parjanya.NOM,Sg. out and seize

‘for the sake of this present song (god) Parjanya lets it rain and stops (raining).’

AB 2,14,6:

amṝtam vā ājyam, amṝtam hiranyam

Ambrosia,NOM,Sg. PTCL. butter,NOM,Sg. ambrosia,NOM,Sg. gold,NOM,Sg. tatra sa kāma upāpto va ājye.

there he longing,LOC,Sg,M. arrive,PERF,PTCP. which,NOM,Sg,M. butter,LOC,Sg.

tatra sa kāma upāpto ya hiranye

there he longing,LOC,Sg,M. arrive,PERF,PTCP. which,NOM,Sg,M. gold,LOC,Sg.

‘Butter is ambrosia, gold is ambrosia. There he has arrived in the longing which (is) in butter, there he has arrived in the longing which is in gold.’

d) non-obligatory constituents

AB 2,11,1:

te devāḥ pratibudhyā ēdāṃ ājyam

this,NOM,PL. god,NOM,PL. perceiving,ABS. fiery,ACC,PL. citadel,ACC,PL.

tripuram paryāsyanta vajñasya cā
triple.fortification,ACC,Sg. place.around.3PL,IMPF,MID. sacrifice,GEN,Sg. and ātmanaḥ ca ājye.

self,GEN,Sg. and preserving,DAT,Sg.

‘The gods, perceiving, placed around fiery citadels, a triple fortification for the preservation of the sacrifice and of themselves.’

(28) Hittite

a) apposition

Ges. 2, §86a, 27–29 (Friedrich 1971: 86)

(27) takku DUMU-an an[nanumanzi] (28) kuiški pāi naššu

If son,ACC,Sg. be.educated,INF. anybody give,3SG,PRES. either nāšma LÚAGAR n{l(našma 1}Š[IMUGA ŠL UŠ B]AR (29) našma LÚAGAB našma
carpenter or smith weaver or leather.worker or LÚTŪG . . .

fuller . . .

‘if anybody gives a son to be educated, either as a carpenter or as a smith, weaver or as a leather worker or as a fuller . . .’

b) subject

Ges. II § 76, 29 (Friedrich 1971: 82)

tākku=ššan GEDIM-it tianzi LÚ-MA

if= PTCL. ghost.of.a.dead.person,INSTR. step.forward,3PL,PRES. man=alas MUNUS

woman,NOM,Sg.

‘if they step forward, man – alas- (and) woman.’

c) part of a DP/NP

StBoT 8, Vs I, 21’–25’ (cf. Otten-Souček 1969: 20)

(21) aṟuš šantezumni tēḫhi, ūeš-a namma anda

this,ACC,PL. forecourt,DAT,/LOC,Sg. put,1SG,PRES. we=CoT again inside
‘I put these (unclear reference in the text, TK) into the forecourt and we go inside again. We have two Hantasepa-deities (made) of wood.’

d) non-obligatory constituents

StBoT 8, VS I, 14’–15’ (cf. Otten-Souček 1969: 18)

DUMU.É.[(G)]AL šuppi wātar parā ēpzi LUGAL-i palace-official clean.ACC.SG.N. water.ACC.SG.N. out hold.3SG.PRES. king.DAT.SG. MUNUS.LUGAL=ya queen=and

‘The palace-official holds out clean water for the king and the queen’

(28c), part of which has already been cited as a hyperbaton construction (11), shows the amplified construction in the context of a number of regular Hittite OV sentences.

Marked order 1: verb-initial (V-1)

As we have seen, the PIE base-type was OV, a type which also encompasses the “amplified” structures in 2.1.3.1.

Under certain conditions, a movement of the verb to the top of the sentence was allowed. Whereas, e.g., in NHG this move is connected with certain sentence types (yes/no questions and imperative sentences show the finite verb at the beginning of the sentence), the AIELs and therefore PIE had a pragmatic condition for putting the verb at the top (V-1) (see below).

In the beginning of this paper we reconstructed word order variation (VO vs. OV) for PIE, leading to the results in (29a) and (29b):

(29) a) (=1) (based on Vedic, Avestan and Greek)

PIE *(é)- gʷen-t *(H)e/ogʷ-im (Augment)-kill-3SG.INJ.PRES./IMPF. serpent-ACC.SG.

► ‘He kills /(killed) the serpent’

b) (=3) (based on Vedic, Greek and Hittite)

PIE *(H)e/ogʷ-im *(é)- gʷen-t serpent-ACC.SG. (Augment)-kill-3SG.INJ.PRES./IMPF.

◄ ‘He kills /(killed) the serpent’

Much has been written about the reasons for fronting the verb in AIEL and in PIE, e.g.

• Delbrück (1967=1900: 81) (my translation): “a word [moves] to the front or to the front edge of the sentence respectively, if it is of paramount importance for the statement . . . A verb can be important, if, in an isolated sentence, the action is more important than the other components . . . [I]n a series of sentences, it pushes the narrative or the discussion ahead.”

• Dressler (1969: 3) (my translation): “Verb-first is textually cataphoric or (much more frequent) anaphoric and (as a word order variant) characterizes textually bound sentences.”
• Dressler (1971: 18) (my translation): “Verb-first points to another sentence (either before or after) to which it is connected.”

• Klein in his article on Vedic verb-first states that the fronting of constituents seems universally to be associated with salience (Klein 1991: 135). He lists some environments where one encounters verb-first in Vedic texts: in imperative sentences, in iterative anaphoric structures, in chiastic constructions, in cases of simultaneity between the event referred to in the hymn and actions occurring at the same time within the ritual, in the situation of fronting of verbs of speaking before a quotation, and in case of the Vedic verb han- ‘smite’ a tendency to front it.

• Luraghi (1995: 380): “On account of its lower frequency, the verb initial order was in a certain sense ‘abnormal’. By an iconic principle, it came to be used in cases where something abnormal was going on, either in the arrangement of the discourse, or in the course of the events reported.”


• Bauer (2011: 47) (about Hittite; my translation): “Thus, one can note that it is the distribution of topic and comment in the sentence which is crucial for V1. The verb is the dummy-topic and the comment is the focus.”

Depending on the text, there is some truth in all of these statements. In my present view,

• verb-first introduces an important (often unexpected new) topic for the narrative with the consequence that further comments are given on it. In a coherent narrative, its general function is to accelerate narration, to drive forward the action.

Let us look again at (29a)=(1) in a fuller context, namely stanzas 1–3 of our Vedic example (2a):

(30) RV 1,32,1–3

1. indrasya nū vīr,ṇyi prā vocam, yāṇi
   Indra, now manly.deeds, ACC.PL. prv. proclaim, ISG.INI.AOR. RP
cakāra prathamāṇi vajrī | āhann āhim,
   make, 3SG.PERF. first, ACC.PL. thunderbolt-wielder, NOM.SG. kill, 3SG.IMPF. serpent, ACC.SG.
   án, apās tatarda, prá vaksāṇā abhinat
   water, ACC.PL. disclose, 3SG.PERF. prv. cave, ACC.PL. cleave, 3SG. IMPF.
pārvatānām ||
   mountain, GEN.PL.

‘I now proclaim the manly deeds of Indra, the first ones that he achieved, the thunderbolt-wielder. He killed the dragon, he disclosed the waters, he cleft the caves of the mountains.’

2. āhann āhim pārvate śiśriyānām.
   kill, 3SG. IMPF. serpent, ACC.SG. mountain, LOC.SG. lean, PERF. PTCP. MID, ACC.SG.
tvāṣṭā śmai vájam svar, yāṃ tatksa |
   Tvaṣṭar he, DAT. thunderbolt, ACC.SG. shining, ACC.SG. produce, 3SG. PERF.
vāśrā iva dhenāvah syāndamāṇā
   mooing, NOM.PL. like cow, NOM.PL. hurrying, up, PRES, PTCP. MID, NOM.PL.
   áṇjah samudrāṃ áva jagmur ápah ||
   straight confluence, ACC.SG. PRV. go, 3PL.PERF. water, NOM.PL.
‘He killed the dragon who was lying on the mountain. God Tvaṣṭar has produced a shining thunderbolt for him. Like the mooing cows (go to their calves) hurrying up, the waters glided straight downwards to the confluence.’

Note that the VO order with the lexical material of ‘kill’ and ‘snake’ reoccurs another two times in the three stanzas in (30). In all these cases the order is VO and not OV. Example (30) 1 starts with an OV sentence with the verb form vocam in absolute final position. Then follows the most important action of the god Indra, that he slew the dragon Vṛtra, a verb-initial sequence (starting with áhann). That Indra disclosed the waters is a consequence of his slaying of the dragon who locked them up. Also, the cleaving of the mountain serves to get the waters free. These actions, since they are not so important, are presented in a sentence which is absolutely verb-final (tatarda) and in an OV sentence with amplification (genitive pārvatānām belonging to vakṣāṇa). In (30) 2, the important fact of killing Vṛtra is again emphasized by a verb-initial sentence (starting with áhann). In the following context, the scene is broadening again and describes things preceding the killing (that a thunderbolt was made for him) and, again, the situation afterwards (the waters glide downwards). (30) 3 goes back to the fighting scene and describes how the god Indra prepared himself to fight: He drinks soma and takes his weapon. Then the main action of Indra, the killing of the dragon, is repeated with the verb áhann in initial position.

There is no coherent narration; aspects of the topic are presented in little scenes jumping forward and backward. This function of comments, namely subdividing the scene opened by ahann ‘he kills’, is chosen in the whole hymn RV 1,32, where subdivisions of the act of killing are brought into little scenes with repetition. This hymn is like a musical piece consisting of a theme plus variations.

In contrast to this VO order, the OV order of the sentence dealing with Indra and the dragon, cited again in (31), does not indicate the TOPIC of what follows. It is part of new information given in the hymn, thus belonging to the informational focus of the text, the comment.

(31) = (4b) Vedic RV 2,15,1 (áhim < PIE *(H)e/og-wh-im; jaghāna < PIE *g-wh-e-g-whon-e) trikadrueṣu apibat sutasya |
    Trikadruka-day.LOC.PL. drink.3SG.IMPF. Soma.GEN.SG.M. he.GEN.SG. intoxication.LOC.SG.
áhim indro jaghāna:
    serpent.ACC.SG. Indra.NOM.SG. slay.3SG.PERF.

‘At the Trikadruka-days he drank from Soma; in the intoxication of (caused by) this (one), Indra has slain the serpent’
The hymn RV 2.15 contains a short enumeration of all the noteworthy deeds of Indra without going into details. To illustrate this fact, (32) cites the first three stanzas of this hymn, which consists of ten stanzas:

(32) RV 2.15 (translation Griffith (1896); bold passage marked by TK)

1. Now, verily, will I declare the exploits, mighty and true, of him the True and Mighty.

   In the Trikadrugas he drank the Soma then in its rapture Indra slew the Dragon.

2. High heaven unsupported in space he established: he filled the two worlds and the air’s mid-region.

   Earth he upheld, and gave it wide expansion. These things did Indra in the Soma’s rapture.

3. From front, as ’twere a house, he ruled and measured; pierced with his bolt the fountains of the rivers, And made them flow at ease by paths far-reaching, These things did Indra in the Soma’s rapture.

In this hymn the scene that Indra slew the dragon appears only once, namely in stanza 1, cf. the passage given in boldface. In the other verses various deeds of Indra are mentioned. Even stanza 3, which one could associate with the myth of the dragon, is formulated in a neutral way without any overt hints toward the dragon-story.

This enumeration of the deeds of Indra is underlined by a refrain starting with stanza 2 and going until stanza 9: “These things did Indra in the Soma’s rapture.”

Let us now turn to the Pindar examples (2c–d above) in Greek, which are interesting because they contain a native speaker’s, namely Pindar’s or, more correctly, the narrator’s, comment on how to interpret the order with the verb in the front. The example for VO from the Pythian Ode Nr. 4, which has been mentioned earlier, is repeated as (33) (κτεῖνε δρῆν):

(33) = (2d)

Pindar, Pyth. 4, 249: [κτεῖνε < PIE *tkenye°/kṣenye° (injunctive present) or < PIE *tken-s°/kṣen-s° (injunctive aorist); δρῆν < PIE *(H)e/og-whim]

κτεῖνε . . . δρῆν
kill.3sg.impf./aor. serpent.acc.sg.
‘he killed the serpent /dragon’

This text is about the Argonauts and the winning of the golden fleece. Jason the Argonaut has to get the golden fleece, which lies in a sacred grove in Kolchis. In (34), the context of (33) is offered in an English translation:

(34) Pindar, P. 4, 240–252 (translation, see: Odes, translated by Diane Aramson Svarlien [The Annenberg CPB Project, the Perseus Digital Library, accessed 9 September 2014])

But at once the marvellous son of Helios spoke of the shining fleece, telling where the sword of Phrixus had stretched it out. He expected that Jason would not be able to accomplish this further labour. For the fleece lay in a thicket, held in the ravening jaws of a serpent, [245] which in thickness and length surpassed a ship with fifty
oars, built by the blows of a hammer. It is too long a way for me to go by the beaten track; for time presses, and I know a shortcut. In poetic skill I am a guide to many others. Jason killed the grey-eyed serpent with its dappled back by cunning, [250] Arcesilas, and stole away Medea, with her own help, to be the death of Pelias. And they reached the expanses of Ocean, and the Red Sea, and the race of the Lemnian women, who killed their husbands.”

There is a remarkable breaking-off in the middle of this passage, where Pindar intervenes as a poet and reflects on his technique of presentation. These verses interrupt the calm flow of narration, and they are, on the one hand, a rather boastful demand the narrator makes of himself to speed up, and, on the other hand, they characterize the following lines as a short, condensed, so to speak “fast flowing,” version of the narrative. The original text of this passage is cited in (35).

(35) Pindar P 4, 247–248
μακρά μοι νεῖσθαι κατ’ ἀμαξητόν ὡρα γάρ
συνάπτει καὶ τίνα οἴμον ἱσαμι βραχύν
pολλοίσι δ’ ἥγημι σοφίας ἐτέρῳ.
‘It is too long a way for me to go by the beaten track; for time presses, and I know a shortcut. In poetic skill I am a guide to many others.’

Pindar’s remarks in (35) offer a rather unique native speaker’s intuition about the functions of VO in quite a clear way. The next sentence, our sentence (33)=(2d), starts with marked verb-first, showing the poetic skills of Pindar, which he himself just mentioned. The VO sentences that follow (35) are cited in (36) in full. The two verbs in sentence-initial position are put in bold:

(36) (cf. (33)) Pindar P 4, 249–250:
κτεῖνε μὲν γλαυκῶπα τέχναις ποικιλόων ὄφιν,
ὁ Ἀρκεσίλα, κλέψεν τε Μήδειαν σὸν αὐτὴ τὰν
ο Arkesilaos. Voc. steal. Aor. 3sg. and Medea. Acc. SG. F. with she. Dat. she. Acc. SG. F.
Πελιάο φονόν ἐν τ’ Ωκεανοῦ πελάγεσσι
μίγεν
make.acquaintance. with. 3pl. Aor II
‘He (i.e. Jason, TK) killed the gray-eyed serpent with its dappled back by cunning, [250] Arcesilas, and stole away Medea, with her own help, to be the death of Pelias. And they reached the expanses of Ocean (the name of a god and a river which is the origin of all oceans, TK) . . .’

Basically, the function of verb-first in (36) is similar to the one which we have seen in Vedic: The scene is opened up by the verb, which states an important topic pushed forward in a lively way and leads to further comments: the action is pushed ahead by a second verb form in initial position (verb κλέψεν). With the last verb-final sentence (verb μίγεν), the scene comes to a rest.
On the other hand, the Pindar citation (37)=(4d), the evidence for verb-final position, has a context similar to the comparable Vedic sentences with the verb in final position ((31) and (32)): The deeds of the hero Bellerophontes are simply enumerated and not expanded; they do not form the basis for a narration. The killing of the dragons is part of this enumeration. The context of (37) is cited in (38).

(37)=(4d) Greek: Pindar, O. 13,88 ff. (ἔπεφνε(ν) < PIE *e-gʷ*e-gʷh-n-e reduplicated aorist)
καὶ Χίμαιραν πῦρ πνέοισαν καὶ Σολύμους ἐπεφνεν

καὶ Χίμαιραν πῦρ πνέοισαν καὶ and Chimaira,acc.sg.f. fire,acc.sg.f breathe,ptcp.aor,acc.sg.f. and Σολύμους ἐπεφνεν Solymoi,acc.pl. kill,3sg.aor.

‘And he (i.e. Bellerophontes, TK) killed the fire-breathing Chimaira and the Solymoi’

(38) Pindar, O. 13,88 ff. (translation based on Odes, translated by Diane Arnson Svarlien [The Annenberg CPB Project, the Perseus Digital Library, accessed 9 September 2014])
σὺν δὲ κείνῳ καὶ ποτ’ Ἀμαζονίδων αἰθέρος with but that.one,dat.sg. and once Amazones,gen.pl. heaven,gen.sg. ψυχρῶν ἀπὸ κόλπων ἐρήμου τοξόταν cold,gen.pl. from bosom,gen.pl. lonely,gen.sg. archer,army,acc.sg. βάλλων γυναικεῖον στρατόν καὶ attack,ptcp,pres,nom,sg,m. female,acc.sg. army,acc.sg. and Χίμαιραν πῦρ
Chimaira,acc.sg.f. fire,acc.sg.f. πνέοισαν καὶ Σολύμους ἐπεφνεν.
breathe,ptcp,aor,acc.sg.f. and Solymoi,acc.pl. kill,3sg.aor.

‘And with that one (i.e. Pegasus, TK), from the chilly bosom of the lonely air, he (i.e. Bellerophontes, TK) once, – attacking the Amazons, the female army of archers, – killed the fire-breathing Chimaera, and the Solymi.’

From these and similar examples one may hypothesize that Greek and Vedic, and presumably also IE, had both possible verb orders, verb-initial and verb-final, and that the difference between them is that the final position of the verb shows a regular sequence with the topic in front of it and the comment in the predicate part, whereas the verb-initial construction serves stylistic purposes indicating a (new) topic, represented by the action expressed by the verb and its object, which leads to further comments directly derived by the verbal action.

In my model (see (5) and (6)), sentences with an initial finite verb can be represented by movement of the finite verb into the C position. This is a sort of movement which is well established in generative grammar (cf., e.g., Haegeman 1994: 302). Since Vedic (like PIE) is a fully inflecting language, the empty subject pro is licensed by the agreement morphology present in āhann (cf. also Axel 2007: 314 and Sternefeld 2006: 613, referring to Barbosa 1995). A syntactic tree of part of the Vedic sentence in (30) 2 is (39):
For a Greek instance of V-1 cf. example (41).

Marked order 2: verb-second (V-2) / verb-third (V-3)

Whereas the existence of verb-first in PIE is uncontroversial, the reconstruction of verb-second (as in modern German) can be found mainly in the work of the author of this article. But also Keydana (2011: 109–110) assumes verb-second at least for Vedic. The ideas presented here are work in progress.

In fact, verb-second is structurally identical to verb-initial with scheme 1 in the approach used here (cf. (5)): The verb is moved into C. The only difference is that (in the case of verb-initial, cf. (36)) the Df-slot is empty, whereas in verb-second the Df-position is filled. If one takes scheme 2, V-2 is possible if the Df-slot is filled, the verb is moved to C, and the second XP in front of the C position is empty. With scheme 2, verb-third (V-3) is a possible option when the verb is moved into C and the two XP positions in front of it are also filled. According to Krisch 2004 the function of verb-second in PIE is similar to
the function of verb-initial. Its function is “establishing a connection between sentences/sequences of action, but not as close as verb initial” (Krisch 2004: 116). It is viewed as a probably late IE feature, since this phenomenon can be observed very frequently in Ancient Greek and in the Germanic languages, whereas it is rare in Vedic and seems to be absent in Hittite (cf. Krisch 2004: 119). Whether verb-third has a special function is still unclear but it probably does not differ much from unmarked V-end.

A clear instance of V-3 is II. 18, 468 (μὲν is interpreted as a WL3 particle (see section 2.1.2) which is attached directly to its host, τὴν). Since the local specification αὐτοῦ is demanded by the verb in my model, this cannot be an extraposed constituent.

(40) II. 18, 468

Ως εἰπὼν τὴν μὲν λίπεν αὐτοῦ
thus speak. ptcp. aor. nom. sg. m. she. acc. sg. verily leave.3sg. aor. there
‘After he had spoken thus, he (i.e. the god Hephasitos, TK) left her (i.e. Thetis, Achill’s mother, TK) there.’

This sentence is part of the shield description of Achilleus in the Iliad. As shown in Krisch 2001: 169–170, this sentence starts a sequence of sentences describing the lively scene where Hephaistos does his blacksmith’s job and one action follows the other like the V-1 sentence immediately following 40 in the text, cf. (41):

(41) II 18, 468

βῆ δὲ ἐπὶ φύσας
go.3sg. aor. inj. but to bellow. acc. pl.
‘And he (i.e. the god Hephaistos, TK) went to the (pair of) bellows’
In the following illustration from the fifth book of Homer I want to show the phenomenon: that V-1 and V-2 appear in the same function (cf. also Krisch 1997: 299–300). But I also want to draw the reader’s attention to the fact that it is quite often not possible to decide formally whether a sentence is V-2 or verb-final, if the sentence is too short for a decision:

(42) Il. 5, 97–101

'Quickly he (i.e. Pandaros the son of Lykaon, TK) bent the curved bow and arrow against the son of Tydeus (i.e. Diomedes, TK) and hit the assaulting one successfully on the right shoulder, (on) the curvature of the corselet. And the arrow went straight through and the corselet was sprinkled with blood. And then, thereupon Lykaon the splendid son of Lykaon cried out.'
The first sentence in (42) is a V-3 sentence according to our model. The accusative καμπύλα τόξα cannot be an amplification, since it is an obligatory constituent. One can describe it with scheme 2 (cf. (6)):

(43)

FIGURE 1.10 STRUCTURE OF HOMER, ILIAD 5.97

The next sentence (starting with καὶ βάλ') is a V-1 sentence (like (39) and (41)), since the sentence connector καὶ does not “count”. The sentence starting with διὰ δ' ἐπτατο could be either a verb-final sentence or a V-2 sentence with διὰ in the Df-slot and δ' in WL₂-position, again using scheme 2. (44) offers a tree for the interpretation as V-2:

(44)

FIGURE 1.11 STRUCTURE OF HOMER, ILIAD 5.99
Also, the following short sentence (ἀντικρύ δὲ διέσχε,) could be either an example for verb-final or a case of V-2. The tree for V-2 would look like (45):

(45)

\[
\text{FIGURE 1.12 STRUCTURE OF HOMER ILIAD 5,100}
\]

The sentence starting with παλάσσετο is unambiguously V-1. The last sentence is unambiguously verb-final (with amplification); see (46):

(46)

\[
\text{FIGURE 1.13 STRUCTURE OF HOMER, ILIAD 5,101}
\]

If our interpretations are right, the scene narrated starts with a V-3 sentence when Pandaros stretches his bow against Diomedes. The scene where the arrow hits Diomedes’ shoulder, penetrates the corselet and causes the blood to sprinkle is described by sentences which can be analysed as V-1 and V-2.

Conclusion:

- V-1 and V-2 have the function of driving forth the action in a narrative text, of making it lively. V-1 presumably is the “livelier” of the two.
Object ellipsis

A remarkable feature of PIE word order is object ellipsis. It is ubiquitous in Greek (cf. (47)), but also Latin, Vedic and Hittite show plenty of examples.

(47) Ancient Greek Hom. Il 5, 22–24, cf. Krisch (2009: 207) (Dares, a priest of the god Hephaistos, has two sons, Phegeus and Idaios. In the Trojan war, they fight against Diomedes. Diomedes kills Phegeus and would have killed Idaios as well, but Hephaistos rescues Idaios).

οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ κεν αὐτός ὑπέκφυγε κήρα μέλαιναν, / ἄλλ᾽ Ἡραίστος ἔρυτο, σάωσε δὲ νυκτὶ καλύψας, / ὅς δή οἱ μὴ πάγχω γέρων ἀκαχήμενος εἴθ. ‘Nay, he [Idaios, TK] would himself not have escaped the black goddess of death, but Hephaistos guarded HIM, rescued HIM, enfolding HIM in darkness so that the aged one [= Dares, TK] might not be utterly fordone with grief’

ἀλλ’ ΜΗΝ Ἡραίστος ἔρυτο, σάωσε but ΜΗΝ Hephaistos guard.3SG.AOR.MID. rescue.3SG.AOR.
dὲ ΜΗΝ νυκτὶ ΜΗΝ καλύψας and ΜΗΝ night.LOC.SG. ΜΗΝ hide.PTCP.AOR.NOM.SG.M.

After discussing examples from Latin, Vedic and Hittite and recent scholarly literature on the topic, Krisch (2009: 211) concludes that ‘PIE had a rule that allowed deleting objects which refer back to already mentioned ‘thematic’ material. This ‘null object’ type of ellipsis thus is operating in a forward direction.’ Their frequency in coordinate conjunction is underlined by Keydana and Luraghi (2012).

Absolute constructions

Absolute constructions (henceforth ACs) of the type Latin me absente (I.ABL.SG. absent.PTCP. PRES.ABL.SG.) ‘in my absence’ or piro florente (pear.tree.ABL.SG. blossom.PTCP.PRES.ABL.SG.) ‘when the pear tree is in blossom’ may be found in a number of AIELs and are a candidate for reconstruction. Ruppel 2013 is the latest reference work on this topic with an extensive bibliography. According to her, ACs denote spaces or points in time with an obligatory qualifier (normally a participle/verbal adjective) when the respective head noun does not refer to time, but is “put into time” (Ruppel 2013: 31) by the predicatively used participle. She sees the IE origins in regular locative expressions of nouns denoting time, like “at dawn” and “in spring”, which, when applied to nouns not referring to time, are “put into time” by the qualifier. Thus, compare regular Vedic uṣāsi ‘at dawn’ (dawn.LOC.SG., e.g. RV 4,2,8; expressing a definite point in time, conveyed by a locative) with sū́rye udyatí (sun.LOC.SG. up-go.PTCP. PRES.LOC.SG.) ‘at sunrise’, where ‘sun’ is not per se expressing a point in time.

If one takes (as Ruppel 2013 does) the Vedic situation with the locativus absolutus as reflecting the PIE state, one may easily explain the Latin situation (with the ablative as the case form in the AC, which also encompasses the PIE locative via syncretism) or the Germanic situation (with a dative as the case form in the AC, which can also continue a PIE locative via syncretism). Greek, however, is problematic because the genitive which appears in the Greek AC (a genitivus absolutus construction) does not go back to a PIE locative, but can represent either a PIE ablative or genitive. One may argue here that genitives can be used as case forms for locative meaning in Greek also outside of ACs, e.g. νυκτός (night.GEN.SG.) ‘at night’, πολέμω καὶ εἰράναρ (war.GEN.SG. and peace.GEN.SG.) ‘in war and peace’ (Elis, 200 BC) (cf. Ruppel 2013: 220). Such genitives are traditionally classified as “partitive” in the handbooks (e.g. νυκτός ‘(time portion of) night’, πολέμω καὶ εἰράναρ
‘(time portion of) war and peace’). These constructions compete with constructions showing (preposition +) dative, cf. ἐν ἐιρήνῃ καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ (in war.DAT.SG. and in peace.DAT.SG.; e.g. X.Lac. 11.1.2). The only attestation of this phrase in the dative which I could find without a preposition is in a Scholia in Iliadem 18, 490. The Greek dative can continue the PIE dative, instrumental and locative. Starting from such competing constructions, there could have been a transfer to the genitive. Unlike others (including Krisch 1988, Keydana 1997: 9), Ruppel is not interested in the semantic equivalence of ACs to finite subordinate clauses.

Krisch (1988: 8–9, following Holland 1986) reconstructs a nominativus absolutus (nominative + participle) for PIE. This construction is very rare but appears in a greater number of AIELs than the ACs with oblique cases. One can imagine these nominatives, loosely connected with the neighbouring sentence, as forming a frame for the adjacent sentence and can interpret (with Krisch 1988) the (presumably later, but still PIE) development of ACs with oblique case forms as a stronger integration of the temporal frames into the sentence. Since the locative with its temporal function is the ideal candidate for this, the rest of the story could roughly go as sketched above when dealing with Ruppel 2013. An example for a nominativus absolutus is (48):

(48) Greek, Hom. Il. 3,211:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both. NOM.DU.</th>
<th>δὔσομεν</th>
<th>ἐξομάλυνος</th>
<th>ἐκεῖνος</th>
<th>Ὀδυσσεύς</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>sit. PTCMP.MID.NOM.DU.</td>
<td>well-built. COMP.NOM.DU.</td>
<td>be. IMPF.3SG.</td>
<td>Odysseus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘when both (i.e. Menelaos and Odysseus, TK) were seated, Odysseus was the more impressive’

Other languages where this construction appears are Vedic, Latin, Germanic, Hittite and Lithuanian. The Hittite examples are doubtful, though (cf. Keydana 1997: 288).

An attempt to draw the semantic paths from an original temporal meaning of ACs to other meanings of ACs (conditional, causal, concessive, modal) is made by Krisch (1988: 9). Keydana (1997) offers a very extensive selection of attested ACs in AIELs arranged according to a number of important syntactic categories. Like the author of this chapter, he considers a late PIE origin for ACs (Keydana 1997: 34), but he does not take the temporal value of ACs as basic and wants to explain the relationship between the ACs and the rest of the sentence by relational semantics/pragmatics (Keydana 1997: 45).

Case functions in the AIELs and in PIE

Introduction

In IE studies, the semasiological approach has a long tradition. One takes the case form of a particular language and describes the functions which this case form can be associated with. This type of research is still ongoing and now centres on the question of determining the “core” meaning of the cases and their relation to more peripheral uses and on the question of which uses of the case in question can be taken over by other case forms. This type of research is certainly still a rewarding task if it is carried out meticulously.

The instrumental

The Vedic instrumental case

As an elaborate example for such an investigation, I mention Hettrich 2002, a specimen from a work in progress on Rgvedic uses of case forms. The article deals with the instrumental.
Hettrich (2002: 46) defines the core/prototypical meaning of the instrumental in the Rgveda (RV) as the ‘instrumental of means’. According to him, an NP carrying the prototypical instrumental case exhibits the following features:

(49)

a) It is -animate, concrete and easy to handle.

b) It is a (physical) object the existence of which is independent of the actual situation and of the participants in this situation.

c) This (physical) object is under the control of the one controlling the action and stays there during the action.

d) This (physical) object enables the controller to carry out an action which is controlled by him or her, which is dynamic and oriented towards a patient, or facilitates such an action.

This prototypical usage is presented in (50):

(50) RV 2,15,6b:

vájreṇā ána uṣásah sám pipeṣa


‘With the Vajra (i.e. the thunderbolt, TK) he (i.e. the god Indra, TK) demolished the cart of Uṣas (i.e. the goddess of dawn, TK)’

The other shades of meaning of the instrumental case are explained linguistically by the absence of one or more of the features of the prototypical usage enumerated above. If one takes away feature c) one gets sentences like (51):

(51) RV 2,10,4a:

jígharmy agníṃ haviṣā gṛhtēṇa


‘I sprinkle Agni with an oblation, with butter’

A further example is the causal meaning of an NP using an instrumental. This meaning is achieved if the NP slot is headed by a noun which is -concrete (i.e. +abstract), and it is sometimes doubtful whether there exists a full and sole control over it by the subject controlling the action. Consider example (52), where the subject is Indra, the mighty god who sets free the waters and makes springtime possible:

(52) RV 2,13,7 (Hettrich 2002: 49)

yáḥ puspínīś ca praṣ,vaś ca dhármanā


ádhi dāne víy avānīr ádhrāravaḥ

onto.adv. field.loc.sg. asunder river.acc.pl.f. bear.forth.2sg.imperf.

‘you who distributed the blossoming and fruitful (flowers) (and) the rivers onto the field according to/because of divine law’.

The causal usage of the instrumental in (52) corresponds to non-prototypical uses of the locative (53) and the accusative (54) (with the adverb ánu), and with a reading of the ablative (abstract source) which is fairly near the ablative prototype (55).

(53) RV 9,7,1:

áṣ,gram indavah pathā dhárman

release.3pl.aor.pass. sap.nom.pl.m. path.instr.sg. divine.law.loc.sg.
rtásya suśríyaḥ
truth.gen.sg. very.beautiful.nom.pl.
‘The saps poured out along the path because of/according to divine law of truth, the utmost excellent (ones).’

(54) RV 3,17,1:
samidhyámānah pratham ānu dhármā
kindled.pres.pass.ptcp.nom.sg. first.acc.pl.n. according.to divine.law.acc.pl.n.
‘kindled according to the first divine laws (referring to Agni, TK)’

(55) RV 6,70,3:
prá prajāˊ bhir jāˊ yate dhármanas pāri
forth.adv./prv. descendant.instr.pl. create.3sg.pass. divine.law.abl.sg. around.adv./prv.
‘he is created further through descendants because of/according to divine law (being) around’

Hettrich uses the (slightly adapted and translated) diagram in Figure 1.14 to show the core and the peripheries of the usages of the instrumental in Vedic. This method of describing the function of cases in AIELs in my opinion is true progress compared to the traditional descriptions of the function of cases: It makes use of ideas from general linguistics (the use of features and the application of prototype theory), and it illustrates the results in a geometric symbolization (see Figure 1.14). Hettrich’s method is extendable to other languages and may lead to more detailed functional reconstructions. Any reconstruction is of course much less secure than the philological reasoning in a language with a clearly marked morphological instrumental.

FIGURE 1.14 HETTRICH 2002: 47 (slightly adapted): THE SPECTRUM OF MEANING OF THE RGVEDIC INSTRUMENTAL (prototypical meaning in the circle, other meanings radiating with arrows) WITH CONCURRING CASES (inside the rectangles)
The Hittite instrumental case and questions of reconstruction

Let us have a look at another AIEL, Hittite. We here make use of the very detailed and philologically excellent dissertation by Melchert 1977, dealing with the functions of the ablative and instrumental in all historical strata of Hittite.

Like in Vedic, the most common uses of the instrumental in Old Hittite (arguing functionally, not formally) are near its prototypical use, the instrumental of means. In (56) the prototype is evident:

(56) (cf. Neu 1980, 105) Ritual text Nr. 43, Vs. I 12’ (= KBo XVII 43 12’):

`appa=ma=šta nēa LÚ mēnean KUŠ šarazzit walahzi`  
back-but-PTCL. turn.3SG.MID. ritual.official.ACC.SG. waterhose.INSTR. beat.3SG.PRES.  
‘but he turns then, beats the ritual official with a waterhose.’

The instrumental KUŠ šarazzit ‘with a waterhose’ (the Hittite instrumental ending -(i)t is not a morphological cognate of any Vedic instrumental form, and its formal origin remains uncertain) fulfills all the criteria mentioned above for a prototypical instrument. As in Vedic, there are other uses, e.g. one where the feature c) (cf. (49)) is taken away:

(57) Old Hittite, Zalpa-Text (cf. Otten 1973: 6) A Vs. 2:

`tuppūš šakānda šunnaš`  
container.ACC.PL. excrement.INSTR. fill.3SG.PAST  
‘she filled the containers with excrement’

Taking into account the Vedic and Old Hittite examples just mentioned, one may reconstruct the functions “prototypical instrumental” (cf. the examples (50) and (56)) and “prototypical instrumental use minus feature c)” (cf. the examples (51) and (57)) for PIE.

If one seeks for parallels to Vedic examples with a causal nuance like the one under (52) one does not find comparable uses in Hittite for the instrumental case, neither in Old Hittite nor in the subsequent stages of the language. This is a caveat for reconstructing this use of the instrumental case for PIE.

On the other hand, the ablative in Hittite (already in Old Hittite) can be found in causal contexts, just like the Vedic ablative (cf. (55) above):


`nu LÚNI-DU₈ punuššanzi nu GIŠŠUKUR.ḪI.A apāš and doorkeeper interrogate.3PL.PRES. and spear.ACC.PL. he.NOM.SG. nahšaraz (!) (i.e. nahšarattaz) uškizzi fear.ABL. see.3SG.PRES.‘They interrogate the doorkeeper and he will (always) see the spears out of fear.’

For a PIE reconstruction this means that the causal reading of the ablative is a candidate for reconstruction, whereas the causal reading of the instrumental seems to be an Indo-Aryan innovation.

Thus, an example like the Latin text from Plautus in (59) with a causal ablative will probably continue a PIE ablative and not a PIE instrumental:
Case syncretism

“Case syncretism” is the linguistic term for a formal collapse of originally separate functions of cases, so that one case form covers different functions. In more recent times there have been attempts to make use of models to get insights into this phenomenon.

In his model of a causal order of participants, Croft (1991: 186) states that the (universal) causal chain of constituents in a sentence is influenced by a cause-result scheme, "cause" starting the causal organization of sentence and "result" ending it. Consequently, he distinguishes semantic roles which belong to the “antecedent” type (such as AGENT, COMITATIVE, MEANS, MANNER, INSTRUMENT, SOURCE and CAUSE) from semantic roles belonging to the “subsequent” type (such as DIRECTION, GOAL, RESULT, BENEFACTIVE, RECIPIENT and LOCATIVE). Croft claims that case syncretism is preferably possible inside these types, viz. that case syncretism is preferred among antecedent roles or among subsequent roles, respectively. Croft offers a table of 35 languages surveyed (Croft 1991: 237–239). In principle, he takes into account synthetic case forms and adpositional phrases, but he does not discuss data from AIELs in any detail.

If we interpret the syncretism of the PIE ablative and genitive into the Greek genitive (cf. also Luraghi 1987: 362–363) along these lines, one could argue that the main function of the genitive case (also in PIE) is the marking of a (nominal) dependency. In the case of the frequent genitivus subjectivus (e.g. Gr. φόβοϛ τῶν πολεμίων ‘fear of the enemies’ (meaning: ‘the enemies fear s.b.’) the genitive denotes an Agent and belongs to the “antecedent” group, just like the ablative with its core semantics (Source).

It appears, though, that this model is too simplistic for the description of the syncretisms observed in AIELs. Luraghi (2001) argues that “illicit” syncretisms across Croft’s two groups do occur. Her main point is that not only semantics has to be considered when dealing with syncretism but also syntax and the lexicon. This point was already made by Serbat (1992: 281), who deals with the syncretism of the PIE ablative, instrumental and locative (note: for Croft, the locative belongs to a different group than the ablative and instrumental) into a single case called “ablative” in Latin. He emphasizes that this syncretism has to be interpreted as mainly syntactic, since these cases form the central domain of the circumstantial cases (“adjuncts”), whereas the rest of the cases represent the core syntactic relations (“arguments” in the narrow sense). The Latin syncretism thus underlines a syntactic opposition formally. But one has to be careful about making too general statements: The ablative in Latin is also a formal mixture: The consonant stems still preserve the locative ending as the “ablative” in the singular, and the pure “ablative” in Latin was used mainly to express instrumental meanings, while the other functions were expressed either by certain prepositions + ablative or by lexical restrictions on certain verbs (cf., e.g., the pure “ablative” designating a location with incolit ‘lives (in)’ (Pl. Rud. 907)). In her analysis of the syncretism of the PIE dative,
instrumental and locative into the Greek dative, Luraghi (2001: 42) emphasizes that lexical features like \(+/-\)animate are important: If the Greek dative reflects a PIE dative, it has to have the feature \([+\text{animate}]\); if it reflects the PIE instrumental, the relevant feature is \([-\text{animate}]\); and in the case of an original PIE locative, the following lexical features have to co-occur: \([-\text{animate}]\), \([+\text{place}] / [+\text{time}]\). In the exceptional case where someone who is \([+\text{animate}]\) is used as an instrument, a prepositional phrase διά ‘through’ + genitive is used (Luraghi 2001: 42).

**Argument structure**

This section, though it deals with one of the most discussed issues in PIE syntax, will be kept very short here, due to lack of space and also due to the fact that a long article with an overview of PIE argument structure and current research in this area by the author of this chapter will soon appear (Krisch, forthcoming).

**Intransitive, transitive, ditransitive and labile verbs**

**Intransitive** verbs, i.e. verbs that do not govern an accusative, do exist in the AIELs and in PIE. However, most instances of these verbs are transitives used “absolutely”, i.e. without an accusative. PIE also has some true intransitive verbs, now termed “unergative”, where the subject has agentive qualities, like the verb ‘to yawn’, PIE *ǵʰi-ne/n-h₁₁ (LIV²: 173). Another group of PIE intransitives are the “unaccusatives”, which have a subject exhibiting the properties of a direct object, e.g. PIE *key- ‘lie (outstretched)’ (LIV²: 20). The verbs of movement are situated between these two classes, since, on the one hand, when moving takes place, there is normally agentive activity involved but, on the other hand, with these verbs the mover and the moved one are identical, e.g. PIE *h₁₁ey- ‘go’ (LIV²: 232). Unergatives show a tendency to take active endings (e.g. PIE *wiwekʷ-ti ‘s/he is speaking’), whereas unaccusatives take stative/middle voice (=medio-passive) endings (e.g. PIE *key-(t)oy ‘s/he lies’)

**Transitive** verbs, i.e. the verbs that govern an accusative, can be reconstructed for PIE. Also, the “absolute” use of transitives without an overt accusative is a heritage from PIE (see Krisch forthcoming for examples of AIELs with the root PIE *gʷen- ‘beat/kill someone’ (LIV²: 218)).

**Ditransitive** verbs take a subject, object and “indirect object” and express transfer. Both of the objects either may be expressed or may remain unspecified in the AIELs and in PIE. Examples are PIE *deh₁₁- ‘to give something to someone’ (LIV²: 105) and *bʰer- ‘to carry/ bring something to someone’ (LIV²: 76).

**Labile** verbs, sometimes also called P(atient preserving)-labile verbs, are common in a number of modern IE languages but are rare in AIELs, and until now I have not seen a convincing example of a reconstruction. The object of these verbs can also serve as a subject with the same verb without any formal change on the verb (as in English: John opens the door vs. The door opens). The reason these verbs are so rare in the AIELs: The early IE languages normally use a specific set of endings (the so-called middle or medio-passive endings) in contrast to active endings to indicate a decrease in valency in the way of the “labile” verbs. If one looks at the diachrony of Modern English, where this phenomenon is most conspicuous, the modern language definitely shows more productivity than the older stages in history (cf. Kulikov 2003: 96 with literature). There are also examples of labile verbs in Vedic Sanskrit (Kulikov 2003: 99; 2014). A good case is svádate (3 sg. middle/ medio-passive): transitive ‘someone makes sweet something’ (RV 3,54,22) vs. intransitive
'something is sweet' (RV. 9,74,9). Investigating Vedic Sanskrit, Kulikov (2003: 103–104; 2014: 1145–1147) regards the intransitive forms of a few labile verbs such as puṣ ‘prosper; make prosper’ as older and the transitive constructions as derived from constructions originally containing cognate accusatives. Lavidas (2009) demonstrates that a later development of labile verbs can be proven also for Greek.

Subjecthood

This part of the argument structure has received growing attention in the last years. The normal case form for the subject in the AIELs and in PIE was the nominative. But there does exist so-called non-canonical marking for the underlying subject in a number of languages. This phenomenon (sometimes also labelled “quirky subject” or “oblique subject”) is most prominently present in Icelandic, but there is a growing group of researchers around Jóhanna Barðdal (Bergen) who are collecting and analysing instances of this construction from many IE languages (http://org.uib.no/iecastp/IECASTP/people.htm, seen 31 October 2016). In one of the latest publications, one finds the following definition for the oblique subject: “With the terms oblique subject construction and dative subject construction, we ... refer to constructions where the so-called logical subject is in an oblique case, for instance the dative” (Barðdal & Smitherman 2013: 29). The authors consider the oblique subject construction inherited from PIE. They claim an inherited predicate structure (cognate argument structures; Barðdal & Smitherman 2013: 53) and also present some cognate sets. This seems to me the right way to argue. One of their examples for a cognate set with this kind of construction is the Germanic-Latin-Ancient Greek corresponding construction of the PIE adjective *sweh₂du- ‘sweet’:

(60) (cf. Barðdal & Smitherman 2013: 42)
   a. Old English, Blick. Hom, 17: 74–75
   \& him swete wærōn to arefhenne
      and him,DAT. sweet were to perform,INF.
   ‘and he enjoyed performing’

   b) Latin, Lucr. 4,658
   quod suauē est aliis
   which sweet is others,DAT.
   which others like/find sweet

   c) Ancient Greek (Homer), Od. 24,435–436
   οὐκ ἂν ἐμοὶ γε μετὰ φρεσὶν ἥδυ γένοιτο ζωέμεν
   not PTCL. me,DAT. at.any.rate with souls,DAT. sweet becomes,3SG.OPT. live,INF.
   ‘Then in my heart, I would not find it at all sweet to live.’

CONCLUDING REMARKS

After touching upon the history of research and the data situation, this chapter tried to present major fields of study in PIE syntax today: word order; absolute constructions; case functions, including syncretism; and argument structure. Because of the author’s own research interests, the section on word order was especially extensive. The field of PIE syntax radiates in many directions and hopefully will lead to a coherent picture of the syntactic properties of the proto-language.
FURTHER READING

The text of this chapter has already contained a number of references for the topics dealt with here. One of these references, the English translation of Wackernagel’s lectures on syntax (1920, 1924) by Langslow (2009), is an especially interesting read because it combines a masterly translation of one of the most influential books on comparative syntax of the classical languages and Germanic of the 20th century with many footnotes, comparing Wackernagel’s ideas with modern viewpoints. Götz Keydana, who has been cited with a number of contributions in this chapter, also wrote an article with a survey of PIE syntax that has been published on the internet, which is worth reading (Keydana 2008).

Some 20 years ago, the introductory textbooks on IE linguistics either did not have chapters on syntax at all (e.g. Szemerényi 1996) or devoted only two or three pages to it (Beekes 1995: 93–95). In more recent introductions, the chapters on syntax are still shorter than those on phonology and morphology, but one can observe an increasing interest in integrating syntax into the picture of PIE. I can recommend Clackson’s (2007: 157–186) chapter on PIE syntax, where general methodological questions of syntactic reconstruction, word order (including Wackernagel’s Law), clause-linking, alignment change and PIE phraseology are treated. There is also a very useful “Further Reading” section. Fortson (2010: 152–169) deals with topics like constituency (tmesis), subject-verb agreement, Wackernagel’s Law, negation, absolute constructions and the interaction of prosody and syntax followed by a short list of “further readings”. Meier-Brügger (2003: 238–276; the syntax part is by Matthias Fritz) offers a short discussion of and many bibliographical references to (morpho-)syntactic issues like parataxis and hypotaxis, non-finite constructions, tense-aspect-mood, diathesis, case and gender.

SOME ABBREVIATIONS USED

Abs.: absolutivum/gerund; AC: absolute construction; AIELs: ancient Indo-European languages; AP: adjectival phrase; C or COMP: complementizer (= subordinate conjunction not forming a phrase in the sentence, e.g. that, if, because; this slot may also be occupied by the finite verb, see the German generative tradition; cf., e.g., Haider 2010: 57); CoT: change of topic particle; CP: complementizer phrase; Df-slot: discourse-functional slot; DP: determiner phrase; Mid.: middle (=medio-passive); NP: noun phrase; O: object; t: trace left behind when syntactic movement occurs; PP: prepositional phrase; PRO: empty subject, e.g. in infinitival constructions; pro: “small pro”, non-overt noun phrase; rP: relative pronoun; S: subject; sConn: sentence connector; V: verb; V-1: verb in sentence-initial position; V-2: verb in second position; V-3, verb in third position; VP: verb phrase; WL₂, Wackernagel clitics serving as sentence connectors; WL₁, other Wackernagel clitics (pronouns); WL₃, particle adjacent to the word or constituent it takes scope over; XP: any phrase.

NOTES

1 I thank Stefan Niederreiter for proofreading the text. The remaining mistakes are mine, of course.
2 Cf., e.g., the various reconstructions of Schleicher’s fable in http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Schleicher's_fable#L.C3.BChr_.282008.29 [seen 31 October 2016] or in Birkhan 1985: 307–308. If one compares the syntax of Schleicher’s reconstruction from 1868 (cited in Lehmann & Zgusta 1979: 456), dadarka akvams (see.3SG.PERF.ACT.
horse\textsubscript{acc.pl.}, and Peters’ reconstruction from 1980 (in Birkhan 1985: 308), dedorke \( (h) \text{eky} \text{ons} \) (see 3\text{sg}.\text{perf}.\text{act.} horses\textsubscript{acc.pl.}), with the reconstruction of Lehmann and Zgusta, ek\text{w}öns espe\text{k}et (horses\textsubscript{acc.pl.} catch\text{.sight}.of.3\text{sg}.\text{aor.}, Lehmann \& Zgusta 1979: 462), there is a V(erb)-O(bject) order in the first two versions and an OV order in the last one. The OV order clearly reflects Lehmann’s syntactic views (cf. also above). One may find a very witty example for a “new” PIE text in the starting episode of the Austrian film \textit{MA 2412. Die Staatsdiener} (MA 2412. The civil servants) by Harald Sicheritz (2003). The PIE text of this film (with German subtitles) was provided by David Stifter (now a professor at Maynooth, Ireland) (2003).


A more much more complete version of the project can be accessed through the internet (Hettrich 2007). There is much other recent work on functions of cases in AIEls, including monographs (e.g. Hajnal 1995, especially on Myc. -\text{pi}; Luraghi 2003 on prepositional phrases in Greek) and articles on the accusative (e.g. Boley 2002, Gotō 2002), the dative (e.g. Nowicki 2002, Hettrich 2006) and the genitive (Neumann 2001, Serbat 1992). For Ancient Greek (mainly prepositional phrases) I can recommend a number of very thoroughly argued articles by Conti (e.g. 1996, 2003).

**REFERENCES**


Hajnal, Ivo 1995, *Studien zum mykenischen Kasussystem*, de Gruyter, Berlin (= Untersuchungen zur indogermanischen Sprach- und Kulturwissenschaft, Neue Folge 7)


from the Fourth East Coast Indo-European Conference, Cornell University, June 6-9, 1985, de Gruyter, Berlin–New York: 38–50


Hettrich, Heinrich & Kim, Jeong-Soo (eds.) 2002, *Indogermanische Syntax. Fragen und Perspektiven*, Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag, Wiesbaden


Krisch, Thomas 1986, Überlegungen zur Herkunft und Entwicklung der irrealen Kon- ditionalsätze des Altgriechischen, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft, Innsbruck (= Innsbrucker Beiträge zur Sprachwissenschaft. Vorträge und Kleinere Schriften, Band 38)

Krisch, Thomas 1988, „Zur semantischen Interpretation von absoluten Konstruktionen in altindogermanischen Sprachen (v.a. lateinische und griechische Beispiele),“ Scientia, Innsbruck (= Scientia Band 10)


Langslow, David 2009, Jacob Wackernagel. Lectures on Syntax with Special Reference to Greek, Latin, and Germanic, ed. with notes and bibliography, Oxford University Press, Oxford–New York


Lehmann, Winfred P. 1974, Proto-Indo-European Syntax, Univ. of Texas Press, Austin (Tx)


McCone, Kim Robert 1979, Aspects of Indo-European sentence patterns and their role in the constitution of the Old Irish Verbal system, Oxford Phil. Diss (= British Theses Service D 29191 80LI)

Meid, Wolfgang 1993, Die Botorrita-Inschrift. Interpretation eines keltiberischen Sprachdenkmals, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft, Innsbruck (= IBS 76)


Melchert, Craig 1977, Ablative and Instrumental in Hittite, Harvard University [PhD dissertation]


Neu, Erich 1980, Althethitische Ritualtexte in Umschrift, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden (=StBoT 15)


Otten, Heinrich & Souček, Vladimir 1969, *Ein altethitisches Ritual für das Königspaar*, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden (=StBoT 6)


Sicheritz, Harald 2003, *Die Staatsdiener (MA 2412 The civil servants)*. Film https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2i87oG1WQcg (seen 31 October 2016)


INTRODUCTION

This chapter will give an overview of the typologically relevant features of Proto-Indo-European. By “typologically relevant” we mean those features that are cross-linguistically rare, or those that are correlated with other features, thus defining a linguistic “type”, a set of languages sharing a number of logically independent features. Moreover, we will consider those features of PIE that show genetic and/or areal patterning, in the sense that they statistically tend to be more common in certain linguistic families and/or language areas than in others. Particularly relevant are diachronically stable features that tend to be shared by most genetically related languages of a single family. Such features are important for questions about the deep genetic relatedness of Indo-European and about early language contacts between PIE and its neighbours. It has been long suggested that Indo-European languages and Uralic languages are related, forming a putative Indo-Uralic family (e.g. Collinder 1960), and Vladimir Illič-Svityč (1971–84) included both Indo-European and Uralic into a wider family, “Nostratic”, which would also include Altaic, Kartvelian and Afro-Asiatic languages. Several variants of this hypothesis are currently in circulation, including the daring proposal by Joseph Greenberg (2000), who also includes Gilyak, Ainu, Chukchi-Kamchatkan and Eskimo-Aleut (but excludes Afro-Asiatic, Kartvelian and Dravidian) in his “Eurasian” language family. None of these hypotheses can be considered as proven, but many linguists believe that Indo-European is indeed related to Uralic, and that it is more likely to be related to Altaic and Kartvelian than, say, to NW Caucasian or Sino-Tibetan. As this chapter will show, PIE shares a number of typologically relevant features with Uralic and, to a lesser extent, with Altaic and other language families of Northern Eurasia. However, PIE also shares a considerable number of features with languages of the Caucasus, including not only Kartvelian – which is included in the putative Nostratic macrofamily – but also NE and NW Caucasian languages, to which it is probably unrelated. These shared features can be understood only as results of prehistoric language contacts, so they are very relevant for the question of the homeland of the speakers of PIE (Mallory 1989, Anthony 2007).

PHONOLOGICAL TYPOLOGY

There is far more agreement, among linguists, about the reconstruction of PIE phonology than there is about the reconstruction of the proto-language’s morphology and syntax. Today, it is almost universally agreed that PIE had three series of stops, traditionally labelled as voiceless, voiced and (voiced) aspirated (i.e. *T, *D and *Dʰ, respectively). The phonological interpretation of these segments remains an open matter. The traditional
interpretation has been challenged by Roman Jakobson (1962) and other linguists, since there are apparently no languages that have voiced aspirates unless they also have voiceless aspirates. Moreover, the very term “voiced aspirates” is somewhat misleading, since consonants that are represented (and transcribed) as /bh, dh, gh/, etc., in Hindi and other Indo-Aryan languages actually have breathy voice. It is still not clear whether there are languages with voiceless and voiced stops as well as those with breathy voice (but without voiceless aspirated stops), but if such languages exist, they are certainly very rare. Moreover, it has been pointed out that the apparent rarity, or non-existence, of PIE *b is at odds with the typological generalization that if one of the labial stops is missing in a language with a voice opposition in stops, it is the voiceless labial /p/ rather than its voiced counterpart /b/ that is missing (e.g. in Classical Arabic). These facts led to a phonetic re-interpretation of stops in PIE, known as “glottalic theory”, first proposed by Paul Hopper and, independently, by Tamaz Gamkrelidze and Vyacheslav Ivanov, in the early 1970s (see Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1984 and Salmons 1994, with references). According to this theory, the stops traditionally interpreted as voiced were actually glottalized, presumably ejectives. It has been noted that the bilabial ejective stop (/p'/, corresponding to the *b of traditional Indo-European reconstruction) is highly marked, and that it is sometimes lacking in languages having ejective consonants. The change of glottalized stops into voiced stops, which has to be posited for several branches of PIE (e.g. for Italic, Celtic and Slavic), is well attested in a number of languages, and the developments in Germanic and Armenian (where voiceless stops correspond to PIE *b, *d, *g, etc., of the traditional reconstruction) are seen as simple deglottalization. Moreover, certain sound developments, such as Winter’s Law in Balto-Slavic (the lengthening of vowels before voiced stops, perhaps only in closed syllables), have been claimed to be more plausible, from the phonetic point of view, if the glottalic theory is correct. However, the glottalic theory has not been generally accepted by Indo-Europeanists, and many scholars prefer to remain agnostic about the correct phonetic interpretation of the PIE system of stops.

In terms of the number of segments, PIE was well within the average of Eurasian languages. However, the number of stops, with three series and three different types of gutturals (plain, palatalized and labiovelar), is unusual, as such complex systems are found mostly in the languages of the Caucasus and in those of South Asia and SE Asia. If one accepts the glottalic theory, it is highly significant that Caucasus is the only area in Eurasia where ejective consonants are common. They even spread to some intrusive languages, such as dialects of Armenian and Ossetic.

One disputed matter in PIE phonology is directly relevant to the typological profile of the proto-language. It is the number of vowels: in traditional handbooks, it is usually assumed that PIE had the typologically most widespread five-vowel system, with a length contrast, i.e. that there were ten vocalic phonemes (*a, *e, *i, *o, *u, *ā, *ē, *ī, *ō, *ū; cf., e.g., Cowgill & Mayrhofer 1986, Szemerényi 1989). However, the discovery of laryngeals has allowed Indo-Europeanists to show that *ā, *ī and *ū were actually sequences of short *a, *i and *u and laryngeals (i.e. that we should reconstruct *eh, instead of *ā, and *iH and *uH instead of *ī and *ū respectively), and it has been suggested that all instances of alleged PIE *a can be eliminated, either by positing new sound laws or by assuming that etymons with this vowel were early borrowings from unknown sources, chiefly in the languages of the European branches of Indo-European (Lubotsky 1989). It has also been argued that the PIE long vowels *ē and *ō were certainly rare, occurring only in a number of morphological categories, such as the sigmatic aorist and the nominative singular of certain nominal stems, and it appears likely that they developed in Late PIE by lengthening of *e and *o, respectively, in certain environments. For example, the
long vowel in the nom. sg. of *ph₂tēr ‘father’ has been plausibly derived from earlier short *e in Early PIE *ph₂tēr-s, with the nom. sg. ending *-s, by compensatory lengthening, i.e. with the development *-ers > *-err > *-ēr. Furthermore, if the high vowels *i and *u are analysed as syllabic allophones of the glides *y and *w, we are left – at least in Early PIE – with a binary vocalic system with only *e and *o, typologically similar to the binary systems found in NW Caucasian languages such as Abkhaz and Ubykh. Phonetically, *e and *o could have been /ǝ/ and /a/, since languages with two-vowel systems appear always to oppose a low and a mid vowel, rather than a front and a back vowel.

PIE vocalism was characterized by productive ablaut. In PIE, this type of non-linear morphology was used both in the nominal inflexion (to distinguish case forms, e.g. nom. sg. *pōd-s and ass. sg. *pod-ḥ and gen. sg. *ped-os or *pd-os) and in the conjugation of verbs (e.g. to distinguish the singular forms of athematic presents from their plurals, cf. Skr. āśmi ‘I am’ < PIE *h₁esmi vs. smās ‘we are’ < PIE *h₁sma). Similar morphologically conditioned vowel alternations exist in several language families of Eurasia, most notably in Afro-Asiatic and Kartvelian (Gamkrelidze & Mačavariani 1982). However, those language families ablaut is far more productive in the verbal system than in the inflecction of nouns.

It is very likely that PIE had a simple, free tone accent, similar to that found in Vedic, where two phonological tones (high and low) must be distinguished. In Ancient Greek, the accent was tonal, but its position was wholly predictable on verbs and partially predictable on nouns. The accent in Latin was described as tonal by Roman grammarians, but its position is completely predictable and it is likely that all Italic languages went through a stage with a dynamic accent which caused syncope and the reduction of vowel timbres in unaccented syllables. The evolution of tonal accent in Balto-Slavic is still controversial: most scholars would posit an opposition between an acute and a circumflex on long vowels and diphthongs, and a simple high tone on short syllables, but it is unclear whether this system developed from PIE tonal oppositions or arose independently after the loss of PIE laryngeals and some Balto-Slavic phonological processes such as Winter’s Law. The nature of accent in Anatolian and Tocharian is unclear, and all the other early Indo-European languages had dynamic accent (stress). With very few exceptions, modern Indo-European languages have dynamic accent; the old tonal oppositions were preserved in parts of the South Slavic area and in the remaining Baltic languages, and new tonal accents arose independently in parts of Scandinavia and in some West Germanic dialects (Franconian). On the whole, languages with tonal accent are rare in Eurasia: Altaic, Uralic, Kartvelian, Afro-Asiatic, Dravidian and most languages of Siberia (with the exception of Ket, which belongs to the small Yeniseian family) are characterized by dynamic accent, while complex tonal systems are clearly an areal phenomenon in SE Asia, in languages belonging to different families such as Sino-Tibetan (e.g. Mandarin and Myanmar), Austro-Asiatic (e.g. Vietnamese), Daic (e.g. Thai), etc. If PIE had tones, its accentual system was certainly not similar to systems found in SE Asia, but it may have been similar to the simple tonal system reported for the NW Caucasian language Abaza and some NE Caucasian languages such as Ingush.

MORPHOLOGICAL TYPE, WORD CLASSES AND LEXICAL TYPOLOGY

PIE was a synthetic, fusional language, which means that its words were polymorphic and that single morphemes could express more than one grammatical category (e.g. the Lat. dat. pl. ending -ibus in ped-ibus ‘feet’ cannot be segmented into separate morphemes
for case and number). In this respect, it was similar to Afro-Asiatic and Kartvelian languages, which are also predominantly fusional, while the North Caucasian, Uralic and Altaic languages are mostly agglutinative (e.g. the Hungarian acc. pl. ember-ek-et ‘people, men’ contains separate morphemes for plural, -ek-, and accusative, -et). It has been claimed that there are traces of an early, more agglutinative morphology in PIE (cf., e.g., Szemerényi 1989): for example, the loc. pl. ending of the o-stems *-isu has been segmented into the plural morpheme, *-i- found in pronouns, and the locative ending, *-su, found in consonant stems, which developed from an earlier postposition. Likewise, the first person plural ending *-mes/-mos (e.g. Gr. Dor. -μες, Lat. -mus) may have been originally segmentable into the first person marker *-m and the plural marker *-es/-os), but such analyses are very speculative. In terms of the level of synthesism, PIE had 4–5 categories per word, which is the most common type cross-linguistically according to WALS (feature 22A, “Inflectional synthesis of the verb”), in between the extreme cases of the radically isolating languages of SE Asia (e.g. Vietnamese, with 0 categories per word) and polysynthetic languages, such as Circassian (NW Caucasian), with as many as 12 categories per word.

Like Uralic, Altaic, Kartvelian and NE Caucasian languages, Indo-European languages are dependent-marking (Nichols 1992), which means that the dependent element of a syntactic constituent is morphologically marked, rather than its head. Dependent-markedness can be realized on different levels:

1) in dependent-marking adpositional phrases, the governed noun is case-marked, while the governing adpositions are unmarked, e.g. in the Latin phrase in urbe ‘in the city’, where the noun urbs ‘city’ is in the ablative singular, and the preposition in is unmarked. The converse of this is the head-marked adpositional phrase, where the adposition is marked (usually by person and/or gender markers), while the noun is unmarked (such a construction exists, for example, in the NW Caucasian language Abkhaz).

2) in the dependent-marked possessive construction, the possessed noun is marked (usually by the genitive case), while the possessor is unmarked, e.g. in Lat. domus uirī ‘the man’s house’. In a head-marking possessive construction, the possessed noun would be unmarked, while the possessor would get a possessive affix, e.g. in Hungarian az ember ház-a (the / man / house-his) ‘the man’s house’.

3) on the clause level, in dependent-marking languages objects are case-marked (usually by the accusative case), while verbs are unmarked if they have direct objects, e.g. in Lat. uide-ō uir-um (see-1sg.pres / man-acc.sg.) ‘I see the man’. In a head-marking construction, the object would not be case-marked, while the verb would express both the person of the subject and the person of the object (again, this is what we find in Abkhaz, among other languages).

On the whole, dependent-marking languages predominate in Eurasia, but there are exceptions like the NW Caucasian languages and the isolates Burushaski (in the Hindukush) and Ket and Nivkh (in Siberia).

Like the vast majority of languages of Northern Eurasia, PIE was a predominantly suffixing language. Whether it had any prefixes at all, apart from the negative prefix *n̥- (> Lat. in-, Gr. ἀ-, Skr. a-), is questionable. The prefix *ni-, identified in *ni-sdo- ‘nest’ (Lat. nīdus, etc., from the root *sed- ‘sit’ > Lat. sedeō, OCS sěsti, Gr. ἑζομαι, etc.) is an often mentioned candidate, but it is possible that it should actually be interpreted as a nominal element *h₂ni-, a locative singular of the same root found in Gr. ἀνω ‘up’, Lith. nuo
'from' and OCS *na 'on'. In that case, we should not reconstruct a prefixed noun *ni-sdo-but rather an old compound *h₂ni-sdo- 'upward seat' > 'nest'. There was one infix in Late PIE, the present-stem infix *-ne-/-n-, e.g. in Lat. tangō 'I touch' vs. the perfect tetigī (without the infix), or the Skr. 1 sg. pres. yunājmi 'I harness' vs. the aor. ṛojojan (without the infix). It is probable that this present-stem infix developed from an earlier nasal suffix, by a metathesis in certain types of roots, cf. Lat. pandō 'I spread', which developed from *pat-n- by metathesis (Gr. πιτνημι < PIE *pt-né-h₂-). Verbs with a nasal present in PIE almost universally have roots ending in stops, never in resonants or *s, so the metathesis was perhaps regular in structures of the type *C₁VC₂-n- > *C₁VnC₂-, where C₂ was a stop.

Almost all the Indo-European languages remained predominantly suffixing, with the possible exception of modern Insular Celtic languages such as Irish, which is classified as equally prefixing and suffixing by WALS (feature 26A). However, some prefixes developed in nearly all branches of Indo-European, mostly in the verbal system, e.g. the aspectual prefixes in Slavic, or the Germanic verbal prefixes with directional meaning such as German bei-, auf-, ein-, etc. These prefixes usually developed from adpositions, and this is a process that may be observed in its development in the early history of Greek. In Homer, verbal prefixes are still detachable from the verbal root, and intervening elements occur freely. This is the so-called tmesis, e.g. Γέλασσε δὲ πᾶσα περὶ χθῶν 'the whole earth laughed around', II. 19.362 (Γέλασσε . . . περὶ instead of περιγέλασσε). However, in later Greek, the association of prefixes with verbal stems becomes fixed. Adpositions are prepositions in most Indo-European languages, but in Vedic and in the Old Anatolian languages they are postpositions, so most linguists assume that they functioned as postpositions in PIE as well. It has also been argued that PIE did not have any adpositions, but that they developed from adverbs independently in early Indo-European languages (Comrie 1998). Languages without adpositions are rather rare typologically, but there are such languages, especially among the Aboriginal languages of Australia. However this may be, it is worth noting that many, and perhaps most, PIE adpositions can be derived from earlier nouns, petrified in some grammatical case. For example, the adposition *h₂enti 'against, in front of' (Gr. ἀντί, Lat. ante) is actually the petrified loc. sg. of a noun preserved in Anatolian, which meant 'face' (Hitt. ḥanza < PIE *h₂ent-s).

The lexicon of PIE and all of the early attested Indo-European languages was verb-based, rather than noun-based (Nichols 2007). This means that simplex verbs were an open class and many nouns were derived from verbal roots, e.g. the word for 'word, utterance', *wōk̕w- (Skr. vāk-, Lat. uōx), is derived from the root *wek̕- 'to say, utter' (LIV 614, cf. Ved. vivakti 'says'); the word for 'eye', *h₃ekw- (Lat. oc-ulus, OCS oko, Gr. ὄξ, du. ósos), is derived from the verbal root meaning 'to see' (LIV 264, cf. Gr. fut. ὄῦμαι, Skr. īkṣate 'perceives'); and the word for 'wheel', *kʷek̕los (Gr. κύκλος, Skr. cákra-), is derived from the root *k̕welh₁- 'to turn' (LIV 345, cf. Ved. cārati 'moves'). In noun-based languages, on the other hand, lexical verbs are a small, closed class, and new verbal meanings can be derived by using constructions with auxiliaries (light verbs) and nouns, e.g. in Ingush (NE Caucasian) Cuo nab ju (He-erg. / sleep / does) 'He sleeps'. Of course, PIE also had nouns underived from verbal roots, but they seem to have been a closed class, e.g. *kwōn 'dog' (Skr. śvan-, OIr. cú, Lat. canis, etc.), *ped- 'foot' (Skr. pad-, Lat. pēs, etc.). Languages with noun-based lexica include Basque, the Dravidian languages and many NE Caucasian languages, while verb-based lexica are typical of the NW Caucasian languages and (to some extent) Semitic languages.

Cardinal numerals from one to four were inflected for gender, case and number, like nouns and adjectives, and the higher numerals were uninflectable. From the grammatical point of view, the PIE numerals are hardly distinguishable from adjectives; i.e. their
identification as a separate word class is questionable. Likewise, participles were syntactically adjectives derived from verbs. They distinguished different gender forms, just like ordinary adjectives, and were inflected for case and number. The participles included the present active participle (PIE *bʰer-o-nt- ‘carrying’ > Skr. bhārant-, OCS bery, Gr. φέρων, etc.), the perfect participle (PIE *weyd-wos- > Skr. vidván-, Gr. εἰδῶς), the present middle participle (PIE *bʰer-o-mh₁nos > Skr. bhāramānas, Gr. φερόμενος) and a verbal adjective in *-to- with passive meaning (PIE *bʰr̥tós > Skr. bhr̥tá-, OIr. -breth). In areal terms, rich systems of participles are very common in Uralic and Altaic languages, but they are also well attested in many Caucasian languages. Verbal adverbs (also called “gerunds” or “converbs”), forms translatable as ‘while doing X’, where X is the verb from which the adverb is derived, cannot be posited for PIE. They are very common in Altaic and North Caucasian languages.

PIE also had interjections and particles (e.g. the negation *ne > Lat. ne, Skr. na, OCS ne, etc.), and there may have been some conjunctions, though these are usually clitics in the early Indo-European languages (e.g. Skr. -ca, Lat. -que, Gr. -τε < PIE *-kʷe ‘and’). These word classes are probably universal, or nearly so. We may note the lack of proper conjunctions in Altaic languages, except for some loanwords from Arabic or Indo-European languages.

Although a lot has been written about the word classes in PIE, there has been relatively little research into the lexical typology of the proto-language. A recent study on the diachronic typology of motion event encoding (Verkerk 2014) found some evidence that PIE tended towards the satellite-framed type of language, which means that motion events were more commonly encoded by verbs and adpositions, as in English walk across (the river), rather than by verbs alone, as in the verb-framed type of language, such as French, where the equivalent construction is traverser (la rivière). The distinction between satellite-framed and verb-framed languages, proposed by Leonard Talmy (e.g. Talmy 2007) is not absolute, of course, and PIE, like most of its descendants, certainly had both verb-framed and satellite-framed constructions. However, some branches tended to develop more towards the verb-framed end of the scale (e.g. Romance and Indo-Iranian), while others evolved more towards the satellite-framed type (e.g. Germanic and Balto-Slavic; see Verkerk 2014).

**GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES**

The PIE nouns, adjectives and pronouns distinguished the grammatical categories of case, number and gender. The case system of PIE is fairly typical of a large number of languages and language families of Eurasia. The case system in PIE, with its eight or nine cases (nominative, accusative, vocative, genitive, dative, ablative, locative and instrumental), is comparable to the one found in several Altaic languages (especially in the Turkic branch), but it is significantly smaller than the exuberant case systems, with many local cases, found in Uralic or NE Caucasian. A typologically unusual feature of the PIE case system is the fact that the nominative case of the masculine and feminine gender is marked (usually with the morpheme *-s), cf. PIE *h₁ekwos ‘horse’. In most languages with the nominative-accusative alignment system, the nominative is the unmarked case, while the accusative is usually marked by an affix. In PIE, the accusative of the feminines and masculines (and the nominative-accusative of the thematic neuters) is marked with the suffix *-m (cf. PIE acc. sg. *h₁ekwom ‘horse’, nom./acc. sg. n. *yugom ‘yoke’). The nominative-accusative of the athematic neuters was unmarked (cf. PIE *medh₁u ‘mead’). Another typologically interesting feature of the PIE case system is the widespread syncretism of core and non-core inflectional case-marking, the pattern in which two different
case functions are expressed by a single morpheme (WALS feature 28A). In PIE, this type of syncretism affected both core cases (e.g. the nominative, vocative and accusative of neuters) and non-core cases (e.g. the ablative and genitive singular, except in the thematic inflection), but this pattern is rather rare cross-linguistically, as case syncretism usually affects only core cases. However, the PIE pattern of case syncretism is found in some Uralic languages (e.g. Finnic and Nenets) and in some languages of the Caucasus (e.g. Georgian and Lezgian).

Some PIE nouns belonging to the neuter gender (on which see below) had heteroclitic inflection, which means that they formed their oblique cases from a stem different from the stem of their nominative-accusative singular, e.g. PIE *yēkʷér ‘liver’ (nom./acc. sg.) vs. *yēkʷen-s (gen. sg.). This pattern of inflection is preserved only in a few archaic cases in early Indo-European languages (e.g. Lat. iecur ‘liver’, gen. sg. iocineris, Skr. yākṛ, gen. sg. yāknās), but it is still fairly common in the Anatolian branch, and it was probably more widespread in PIE. This kind of inflectional pattern, where a noun has different stems in grammatical and in oblique cases, is rare in Eurasia, but it is well attested in the NE Caucasian family (Matasović 2012; cf., e.g., Dargi neš ‘mother’ with oblique stem neš-li-, dat. sg. neš-li-s).

The number system, with its opposition of singular, dual and plural, is not so common in Eurasia. In many languages, the number oppositions are not obligatorily expressed; i.e. nouns and verbs are inherently neither singular nor plural (nor dual), although there may be affixes indicating number which may be used when this is appropriate (e.g. in Japanese). In PIE, the expression of number was obligatory for all nominal and verbal forms, and the dual number is probably as old as the singular and the plural, although it appears to have been lost in Anatolian (Fritz 2011). The dual is particularly rare in languages of Northern Eurasia: it is found in some Uralic languages (especially in the Samoyedic branch), but not in Altaic, Sino-Tibetan (though there are exceptions) and Dravidian, and it is generally absent in the languages of the Caucasus. However, early Semitic languages had the dual, but it was gradually lost in most of them.

Late PIE had three genders: masculine, feminine and neuter. It is highly probable (although not generally accepted) that this system developed from an earlier one in which only two genders were distinguished, a common gender (for animates and some inanimates) and a neuter gender (for the remaining inanimates). Such a system could be reflected in the Anatolian languages, which may have separated from the other branches of Indo-European before the feminine gender developed (Matasović 2004). The gender system of PIE is typologically somewhat unusual when compared with the gender systems of other language families of Eurasia, particularly with those found in Dravidian and NE Caucasian (e.g. Chechen). In most of them, purely semantic principles of gender assignment are found; i.e. the gender of a noun is predictable only from its meaning. In PIE, on the other hand, gender can be assigned to only a few nouns on the basis of their meaning only: nouns denoting male persons and higher animals are masculine, while nouns denoting females are feminine. For all the remaining nouns, gender is partly predictable from the declension class that the noun belongs to. For example, nouns derived with the suffix *-ti- are feminine (e.g. *mptis ‘thought, memory’), while those derived with the suffix *-r/-n- (the heteroclitics) are neuter (e.g. *yēkʷr ‘liver’). Surprisingly, the only language in Eurasia with gender assignment principles and three genders, similar to those found in PIE, is Ket, the only surviving language of a small Yeniseian family in Siberia (Matasović 2004).

Most modern Indo-European languages preserved gender, but the reduction of the three inherited genders to a binary system was common, e.g. in Insular Celtic, in most
Romance languages (the neuter gender is partially preserved in Romanian), in Lithuanian and Latvian, and in many Indo-Aryan languages such as Hindi. However, gender was lost almost without a trace in Armenian and in some Iranian languages such as Farsi.

Most language families of North Eurasia are genderless, and it has been shown that gender is a genetically very stable feature, in the sense that languages belonging to genderless families almost never acquire it, while it is seldom lost in languages (Nichols 1992, Matasović 2004). Even in the Indo-European family, gender was completely lost in only a few languages, such as Armenian and a number of Iranian languages. Thus, Altaic, Uralic, Sino-Tibetan, Daic, and most language isolates of Northern Eurasia are genderless, while Dravidian, Afro-Asiatic and NE Caucasian have gender.

PIE pronouns distinguished case, number and gender, just like the nouns and adjectives, but their inflection patterns were very different. It is not only that they had different case/number endings (e.g. the nom. pl. ending *-i vs. the ending *-es found in masculine and feminine nouns), but they were characterized by a high degree of suppletivism. For example, the first person singular pronoun had the stem *(h₁)eg- in the nominative (cf. Lat. egō, Gr. ἐγώ), but the stem *(h₁)me- in the oblique cases (cf. Lat. acc. mé(d), Gr. ἐμέ), and one of the demonstrative pronouns had the stem *so- in the masculine and feminine nominative singular, but *to- for the oblique cases and the neuter nominative/accusative singular (cf. the opposition between Skr. nom. sg. m. sas ‘this’ and nom./acc. sg. tad). Moreover, the personal pronouns had different stems in the singular and plural (1 sg. *h₁eg- vs. 1 pl. *we-/*ne-, 2 sg. *tuH- vs. 2 pl. *we-/*yuH-), which is a common pattern in Caucasian languages and in the Uralic languages spoken in Europe (e.g. Finnish and Hungarian). Cross-linguistically, this pattern of suppletivism is also common in other macroareas (e.g. in Africa and parts of South America), but not in most parts of Eurasia (e.g. in Altaic, Sino-Tibetan and most Uralic languages). It is difficult to ascertain how many distance contrasts were found in PIE demonstratives. Early Indo-European languages usually have three, roughly corresponding to Lat. hie / iste / ille, but in some languages a two-way contrast is also found (as in the English opposition between this and that). Cross-linguistically both patterns are equally common and widespread in most of the world (WALS feature 41A), with the two-way contrast slightly predominating in Eurasia.

It has been argued that PIE pronouns distinguished between inclusive and exclusive forms of the first person plural (e.g. Lehmann 1993, Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1984). The exclusive form in PIE would have been built with the stem *ne- (Lat. nōs), while the inclusive would be the stem in *we- (Skr. váyam, Eng. we). This would explain not only why there are two different stems for the first person plural pronoun, but also why the stem *we- is also found in the second person plural in some languages (e.g. Lat. uōs): it could be argued that in those languages the inclusive form (originally referring to both the speaker’s and the hearer’s group) narrowed its reference to the hearer’s group only (i.e. to the plurality of the addressees, the second person plural). However, the hypothesis is strictly unprovable, and it is worth recalling that the opposition between exclusive and inclusive pronouns is unattested in the early Indo-European languages (it developed in a few modern Indo-Aryan languages, such as Gujarati and Marathi, presumably under the areal influence of Dravidian and/or Munda languages, where it is sometimes found). Moreover, it is not characteristic of most language families of Central Eurasia, with the single exception of NE Caucasian languages (it is found, for example, in Chechen).

There is no consensus about the grammatical categories reconstructable for the PIE verb. It is clear that verbs were inflected for person/number of the subject, as in most language families of Eurasia. Agreement with the object (found in languages like Basque,
or the NW Caucasian languages such as Abkhaz) cannot be posited for PIE, nor can we assume that gender distinctions were ever made on PIE verbs (as in Afro-Asiatic or NW Caucasian languages).

The moods reconstructable in Late PIE are (besides the unmarked indicative) the imperative (*bhere ‘carry!’), the subjunctive (*bher-e-e-si ‘that you carry’), the optative (*bher-o-ih1-s ‘may you carry’) and, perhaps, the desiderative (*bher-is-ye-si, which is semantically difficult to distinguish from the optative). Note, however, that the Anatolian languages distinguish only between the indicative and the imperative, and it is not entirely certain that they lost the optative and the subjunctive (although many specialists on Anatolian believe they did). Be that as it may, the subjunctive was also lost in some Indo-European languages (e.g. Balto-Slavic), or it was replaced by new subjunctive formations, e.g. in Celtic and Germanic. In Latin it lost its modal function and became the future tense of the verbs of the 3rd and 4th conjugation (e.g. Lat. leget ‘will read’). The optative was also lost in many languages, but in Slavic it became the new imperative (e.g. OCS beri ‘take!’), with -i- developing regularly from the PIE optative marker *-ih1- added to the thematic stem *-o-). The desiderative exists as such only in Vedic, but it left its traces in the forms of the future tenses in Old Irish, Lithuanian and elsewhere. It is unclear whether prohibition was expressed by using the imperative and the default negative particle, as in OCS ne beri ‘do not take!’; or there was a special prohibitive negation used with some form of the verb other than the imperative, as in Gr. μή φέροις ‘do not carry’ (with the prohibitive negation μή and the optative, rather than imperative, form of the verb). The prohibitive negation *meh1- might be a dialectal form with reflexes in Greek, Indo-Iranian, Albanian and Armenian, but it might also be an archaism preserved in those branches only. Languages with special forms of prohibitive negation and non-imperative forms used in prohibitions are more common in Eastern Eurasia than in its western part (though there are exceptions on the extreme western periphery, such as Irish and Welsh; see WALS feature 71A).

On the whole, the PIE system of moods is not typologically unusual, except for one of its features: according to WALS (feature 73A), the morphological optative (i.e. the morphologically expressed mood whose primary function is expression of wishes) is very rare cross-linguistically, except in some linguistic areas. In the whole of Eurasia, the only such area is the Caucasus, where most languages have a morphological optative (Matasović 2012).

The PIE verb was characterized by three different stems: the present stem, the aorist stem and the perfect stem, cf. the following forms of the first person singular of the verb *leikʷ- ‘leave’: *li-ne-kʷ-mi (present, formed with the nasal infix), *likʷ-0-m (aorist), *(le-)lɔykʷ-h₁e (perfect), corresponding to Gr. λιμπάνω (an innovative thematic present formation, besides equally innovative λείπω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, respectively. The imperfect, which is formed from the present stem by adding the aorist endings and the past tense prefix *e- (the so-called augment) is probably an innovation of a group of Indo-European dialects. Its reflexes are attested in Greek, Indo-Iranian, Armenian and Phrygian, which also share other dialectal features. It is unclear what was the exact nature of the opposition between the verbal forms derived from the present stem and those derived from the aorist stem, but it is more likely to have been aspectual than temporal. Most linguists believe that the forms derived from the present stems were inherently imperfective, while those derived from the aorist stem were perfective, and that this system was best preserved in Greek. It should be noted, however, that no traces of inherited aspectual oppositions exist in the Anatolian languages, which have a purely tense-based opposition between the present and the preterite. Moreover, the position of the perfect stem in the
system remains somewhat unclear. The perfect may have been, originally, a resultative form, expressing the resultant state of a previous action (Comrie 1998), cf. PIE *woydh₂-e (Skr. vēda, Lat. uīdī), which is the perfect form derived from the root *weyd- ‘to see’ (cf. Skr. aor. āvidam ‘I saw’). The perfect developed into a tense form in several individual languages, e.g. in Latin, where it merged with the aorist into a single category traditionally called “perfect”, and in Germanic, where it is called the “(strong) preterite”. A typologically similar opposition of three aspectual stems is found in Kartvelian languages, which distinguish between imperfect, aorist and present stems. Languages of the Semitic branch of Afro-Asiatic systematically oppose perfective and imperfective verbal forms with different person/number affixes, which is similar to the PIE distinction between primary (present) and secondary (aorist) verbal endings on the one hand, and perfect verbal endings on the other. Uralic and Altaic languages have tense-based rather than aspect-based verbal systems and generally distinguish between past and non-past tenses. Different tenses are usually formed by adding different suffixes to the verbal root, while the person/number suffixes tend to be the same (or very similar) in all tenses.

The future tense cannot be reconstructed for PIE; it is most likely that the future events were referred to either by using the indicative present tense forms of verbs (as, e.g., in Gothic and in Welsh) or by using one of the subjunctive forms (as in Classical Armenian, where the aorist subjunctive is mostly used). In individual Indo-European languages, new future tenses were created, sometimes by re-interpretation of modal forms (e.g. in Latin or Sanskrit), sometimes analytically by using auxiliary verbs such as ‘want’, ‘become’ or ‘have’, e.g. in Slavic (PSl. *pëti xotjǫ ‘I want to sing’ > Croat. pjevat ću ‘I will sing’) and Germanic (Germ. ich werde singen, Eng. I will sing). Sometimes the auxiliaries became affixes on main verbs, and thus new synthetic forms of the future came into existence, e.g. in Romance (Lat. cantare habeo > Ital. cantarà, Fr. chanterai).

PIE apparently did not have a proper morphological passive. It is possible, of course, that there was some sort of analytical passive construction, but no clear traces of it have been preserved in the early Indo-European languages. The voice system of PIE is characterized by the opposition between active and middle, whereby the middle voice expresses that the subject is affected by the action of the verb, or that it benefits by it; cf., e.g., Gr. act. λούω τὰς χείρας τοῦ παιδός ‘I wash the hands of the child’ vs. mid. λούομαι τὰς χείρας ‘I wash my hands’. Besides this primary function, the middle probably also expressed reflexivity (Gr. λούομαι ‘I wash myself’) and reciprocal action for some verbs (e.g. Skr. vādete ‘they (dual) talk to each other’). The middle is characterized by a special set of personal endings, which seem to be derived from the active endings, e.g. 3 sg. mid. aor. *-to vs. act. aor. *-t, 3 sg. mid. pres. *-tor vs. act. pres. *-ti. The similarity of the personal endings of the PIE middle to those of the perfect has long been noted, but there is no consensus about the explanation of this similarity. From the typological point of view, the PIE middle is similar to the grammatical category of “version” in Kartvelian languages, cf. Georgian (“subjective version”) v-i-c’er ‘I write (for myself)’ vs. (“neutral version”) v-c’er ‘I write’.

CLAUSE ALIGNMENT

All the early Indo-European languages have nominative- accusative clause alignment, with the partial exception of Hittite. Hittite has a split-ergative alignment, since neuter nouns receive the suffix -anza when they are the subjects of transitive verbs, but not when they are the subjects of intransitives or direct objects, cf. Hitt. (KUB XIV (23): nu KUR Ḫatti-ya apaš išhan-anza arha namma zinnešta ‘and that murder moreover ended
the land of Hatti’. The common gender nouns in Hittite have the nominative-accusative alignment, with direct objects in the accusative case and all the subjects (of both transitive and intransitive verbs) in the nominative. A similar split-ergative system is attested in the Australian language Mangarrayi, where masculine and feminine nouns have the nominative-accusative alignment, while the neuters have the ergative alignment (Dixon 2002: 508). However, most specialists agree that the ergativity in Hittite is unlikely to be inherited from PIE and that it is probably a dialectal development, perhaps under the areal influence of ergative languages such as Hattic and Hurrian.

Among the modern Indo-European languages, ergative patterns developed in the Iranian languages of the Pamyry. Split-ergative systems also developed in some Indo-Aryan languages, such as Hindi, where clauses with perfective verbs have ergative alignment, while those with imperfective verbs have nominative-accusative alignment.

Since early Indo-European languages are overwhelmingly nominative-accusative, it would be natural enough to assume, as many linguists did, that the same situation obtained in PIE. However, as early as 1901, Christian Uhlenbeck proposed to reconstruct the ergative alignment for the proto-language, and he was followed by a substantial minority of Indo-Europeanists, such as Vaillant (1936), Beekes (1995) and Kortlandt (2009), who adduced some new arguments for this hypothesis.

The case for the ergative hypothesis is usually made by pointing out that it allows us to find a single explanation for a number of seemingly unconnected, and typologically somewhat unusual, facts about PIE morphology:

1. That PIE has – at least for the masculine and feminine nouns – a special marker for the nominative case (the nominative is usually the unmarked case in nominative-accusative languages, as we saw above).
2. That there is an unusual system of gender assignment, with many inanimate nouns belonging to the common (masculine or feminine) gender.
3. That the ending of the nominative singular is similar to the ending of the genitive singular.
4. That personal pronouns have very different case endings than nouns.
5. That the stem of one demonstrative pronoun begins with *s- in the nominative singular of the common gender, but with *t- in the oblique cases, as well as in all the cases of the neuter gender.

The fact that only nouns denoting animates have the special nominative ending, while the nominative-accusative form of neuters is unmarked, may be explained if one assumes that the inanimates were seldom – if ever – subjects of transitive clauses in Early PIE. Hence, their zero-marked form is derived from the original absolutive, while the nominative form of the animates is the original ergative. Those nouns denoting inanimates that belong to the common gender (e.g. the masculine noun *pōds ‘foot’) might have the nominative ending because they generalized the ergative, rather than the absolutive, ending when the clause alignment pattern changed to the nominative-accusative system. Moreover, the nominative ending *s of the masculines and feminines is similar to the genitive ending of athematic stems *-es/-os, which appears to be its ablaut variant. The syncretism of the genitive case with the ergative is well attested in ergative languages, e.g. in Yup’ik (where the genitive is traditionally called relative) and in the NE Caucasian language Lak. The reason why there is a “leak” of inanimates into the “animate” gender (i.e. the common gender comprising the masculine and the feminine) might be that the masculine and feminine inanimates are precisely those that generalized their old ergative ending,
rather than their absolutive ending, as the new nominative. It has been established that the pattern in which pronouns have nominative-accusative alignment, while the nouns follow the ergative pattern, is quite common cross-linguistically, occurring, e.g., in several Aboriginal languages of Australia, including the well-described Pama-Nyungan language Dyirbal. Finally, the curious heteroclisis of the demonstrative stems may be explained if *so- is the original ergative case form, while *to- is the absolutive and oblique form. Since the neuters were seldom, if ever, in the ergative case, they generalized the absolutive stem *to- in all their case forms. Of course, all of these arguments in favour of the ergative hypothesis are very speculative, and there may be alternative explanations of the features of PIE morphology that it seeks to explain. Some linguists would even argue that there is nothing to explain, as the development of PIE morphology was subject to many complex factors, including phonological changes that we cannot reconstruct any more.

It has also been argued that clause alignment in Early PIE was active (Lehmann 1974, 1993, Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1984, Drinka 1999, Bauer 2000). Languages with active clause alignment have two types of intransitive verbs: those expressing actions, such as ‘run’ or ‘jump’, treat their single arguments morphosyntactically as the subject of transitives (if the language has case, the only argument of such verbs would be in the nominative). On the other hand, the single arguments of stative intransitives (e.g. verbs like ‘sit’ or ‘sleep’) are treated as the objects of transitives (if the language has case, the single argument of such verbs would be in the accusative). It has been proposed that traces of active morphosyntax can be found in constructions with “accusative subjects”, which are found in some early Indo-European languages such as Latin, where the verb paenitet ‘be discontent with’ takes the accusative (quemque ‘each man’):

Suae quemque fortunae paenitet (Cicero, Ad familiares, 6.1.1)
‘Each man is discontent with his lot.’

However, as has been argued elsewhere (Matasović 2013b), constructions with such “quirky case-marking” can arise in nominative-accusative languages, and there are clear indications that such constructions in early Indo-European languages are innovations rather than archaisms.

Ultimately, the question of clause alignment in Early PIE probably cannot be resolved; although the evidence that Early PIE had active clause alignment does not carry much weight, the arguments for ergativity are inconclusive, and the hypothesis that it was nominative-accusative, just as Late PIE was, is quite tenable (Villar 1983, Rumsey 1987). From the areal point of view, languages with active clause alignment are quite rare in Eurasia. One such language is Batsbi (also called Tsova-Tush), a NE Caucasian language spoken in Georgia, and Georgian also shows some features of active clause alignment. Nominative-accusative languages predominate in the North and Northeast of Eurasia (notable exceptions are Chukchi in Eastern Siberia, and the isolate Burushaski in Pakistan). Ergative languages are found in the Caucasus (both NE and NW Caucasian languages are overwhelmingly ergative), and most languages of the Ancient Near East, including Hattic, Hurrian and Sumerian, were also ergative, as is Basque, spoken on the western periphery of Europe. The Afro-Asiatic, Uralic and Altaic families are consistently nominative-accusative.

WORD ORDER, AGREEMENT AND COMPLEX CONSTRUCTIONS

The earliest attested Indo-European languages, Hittite and Vedic Sanskrit, have the basic SOV order, and several linguists have concluded that the same order of syntactic
elements must have been regular in PIE (e.g. Lehmann 1974, 1993, Watkins 1976), cf. Skr. viśah kṣatrīyāya balīṃ haranti (villagers / to.prince / tax / they.pay) ‘The villagers pay taxes to the prince’. However, others have pointed out that many early Indo-European languages have rather free word order (Friedrich 1975) and that in some of them, e.g. Ancient Greek, the SVO order actually predominates, at least statistically. The Insular Celtic languages are VSO from their earliest attestations, early Germanic languages and Latin are SOV, and Baltic and Slavic languages are mostly SVO.

The basic order of subject, object and verb in PIE has been the centre of the controversy since many linguists believe that the relative order of other elements, such as nouns (N) and adjectives (Adj), demonstratives (Dem) and nouns, relative clauses (Rel) and head nouns, and possessors and possessums (usually represented as nouns and adposited genitives, Gen), can be predicted from it, in accordance with implicational universals posited by Joseph Greenberg (1963, see also Dryer 1992). Thus, it has been argued that in a SOV language we expect to find the orders Dem-N, Adj-N, Rel-N and Gen-N, and postpositions rather than prepositions, as we do in consistently head-final languages such as Turkish and Japanese. If PIE had all the other orders of syntactic elements harmonic with the SOV order, as claimed by Lehmann (1974) and others, including Gamkrelidze and Ivanov (1984), then the inherited construction is found in Hitt. É-ri anda ‘in the house’ (with a postposition) rather than in Lat. in casā (with a preposition). Moreover, we would expect that the PIE poetic formula ‘daughter of the sky’ is preserved in Ved. divō duhitā (with the Gen-N order) rather than in Gr. θυγάτηρ Διός (with the N-Gen order), and the Vedic phrase ākṣiti śrávas ‘imperishable fame’ (Adj-N) would be more archaic than the synonymous Gr. κλέος ἄφθιτον (N-Adj).

However, subsequent work on word order regularities and universals (especially Dryer 1992 and his contributions to WALS) has shown that some alleged word order universals cannot be confirmed if large enough samples of languages are used, and that some word order patterns accidentally co-occur in particular macroareas, but that there is no global implication relating them. For example, the order Dem-N is extremely common in Eurasia (with only marginal exceptions, such as Basque and Insular Celtic, which have the opposite order), so it appears to be correlated with the order OV, which is also very common in Eurasia. However, in other macroareas, the order OV co-occurs with the order N-Dem, and overall there is no implicational universal OV → Dem-N. Therefore, if we assume that objects preceded verbs in PIE, it does not follow that demonstratives must have preceded nouns in the NP. Similarly, adjectives tend to precede nouns in Eurasia, but the order Adj-N is not correlated with the OV order globally, so we cannot infer it from the hypothesis that PIE was an OV language.

Moreover, it is not entirely clear that we are right in attributing the SOV order to PIE in the first place. The order of syntactic elements can change very quickly in the history of a language, it is far less stable than clause alignment or agreement patterns, and it is strongly subject to substratum influences (Thomason 2001). Thus, it is entirely possible that Indo-Iranian acquired the SOV order through contact with some language of the SOV type (both Dravidian and Elamite are basically SOV), and the same goes for the Old Anatolian languages (Hurrian and Akkadian are both quite consistently SOV languages).

No single infinitive form can be reconstructed for PIE (Disterheft 1980), although Indo-European languages usually have it (with the exception of Insular Celtic). Infinitives in early Indo-European languages are clearly derived from petrified case-marked forms of abstract verbal nouns. For example, Latin infinitives in -ere, -āre, -ire are originally locative singular forms of s-stems (with rhotacism, the change of *s > r between vowels,
which is regular in Latin). In Classical Sanskrit, the infinitive in -tum (e.g. bhartum ‘to carry’) is the accusative singular of the verbal noun derived with the suffix *-tu- (identical to the supine in Slavic, cf. OCS bratъ vs. the infinitive brati ‘carry’). There are also no subordinating conjunctions (subordinators) that can be posited for PIE, so apparently the proto-language did not have constructions of the English type *I see that he is coming* (with the subordinator *that*) or *I want him to come* (with the infinitive to come). Rather, it probably used a number of subordinating strategies involving participles (the English type *I see him coming*) or paratactic instead of hypotactic constructions (*I see it, he is coming*). Many early Indo-European languages have the so-called absolute constructions with participles, which are constructed with one of their arguments in a specific case, e.g. the ablative absolute construction in Latin, cf. *Sōle ortō Uolscī sē corcumāllātōs uidēruni* (Livius, IV.9.13) ‘when the sun was risen, the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment’ (with the expression *sōle ortō* in the ablative absolute). However, the cases used in the absolute constructions do not agree: we find the genitive absolute in Greek and the dative absolute in Old Church Slavic, cf. Gr. τούτων λεγόντων ἀνέστεσαν ‘this said, they rose’ (Xenophon, Anabasis 3.3.1, with τούτων λεγόντων in the genitive plural), OCS narodomъ že sъbirająštemъ sę načętъ glagolati ‘when the people assembled, he started to speak’ (Luke, 11.29, with narodomъ . . . sъbirająštemъ in the dative plural). Thus, it is unclear whether a single absolute construction can be posited in PIE.

The use of infinite verbal forms, rather than finite subordinate clauses, is actually the more common strategy of clause combining in Eurasia. Uralic and Altaic languages (except those strongly influenced by Indo-European) usually do not have subordinators and finite subordinate clauses, and the same holds for both North Caucasian families. The use of finite subordinate clauses is more typical of various branches of Afro-Asiatic, especially the Semitic languages.

Two different forms of relative pronouns, *(H)yo- (> Skr. yas, yā, yad) and *kʷo- (> Lat. qui, quae, quod), can be reconstructed, and they either represent dialectal forms or were used in different types of relative clauses (Hajnal 1997). One type of relative clause that is well attested in the early Indo-European languages, and that certainly goes back to a PIE prototype, is the so-called correlative construction, equivalent to the English *He/the man who sees the woman, he is a warrior* (rather than *He/the man who sees the woman is a warrior*). This is the default relative construction in Hittite and Vedic, and it can be safely posited for PIE, cf. Hitt. nu kaš kuit memai n-at zik šakti (ptcl. / this.one / what / says / ptcl.-it / you / know) ‘You will know what this one says’. Overall, inflected relative pronouns as a device for introducing relative clauses are typologically rather rare. Most language families of Eurasia use uninflectable relative clause markers (e.g. Hebrew *ʔašer* ‘such that’) or participles rather than finite relative clauses (e.g. the North Caucasian languages and most Altaic languages). However, inflectable relative pronouns are found in Kartvelian, cf. Georgian *vinc* ‘he who’.

PIE had extensive agreement on both the clause and NP levels. On the clause level, verbs agreed with their subjects in person and number. An exception to this is the so-called τὰ ζῷα τρέχει construction, attested in Greek and Indo-Iranian: the neuter plural (τὰ ζῷα ‘animals’) triggers singular agreement on verbs (τρέχει ‘runs’ is the third person singular present). This construction is generally believed to be archaic, and it shows that neuter plurals behaved as collective nouns in PIE, i.e. that they were singular for purposes of agreement. On the level of the NP, adjectives, pronouns and some numerals agreed with the head nouns in case, gender and number, cf. Lat. *hic bonus puer* ‘this (m.) good (m.) boy’ vs. *haec bona puella* ‘this (f.) good (f.) girl’. This type of adnominal agreement is
typologically rather rarer than clause-level agreement. Areally, it is more common in South and Southwestern Eurasia, typically in such language families as Afro-Asiatic, Dravidian and NE Caucasian. The Altaic, Uralic and NW Caucasian families typically lack adnominal agreement, except in those languages that underwent extensive influences from languages with this agreement pattern (for example Finnish, where case agreement is usually considered to be the result of the areal influence of Indo-European languages). Although case and number, as grammatical categories, appear to be old in PIE, agreement in case and number (and perhaps in gender) may be of more recent origin. There are archaic traces of uninflectable adjectives in PIE (e.g. the prefixed forms *h₁su- ‘good’ and *dus- ‘bad’), and demonstrative pronouns that have different case/number/gender forms seem to be derived from uninflectable deictic particles. For example, the pronoun *so- / *seh₁⁻ / *to- (Skr. sas, sā, tad) seems to be etymologically related to Hittite uninflectable sentence particles -šu and -ta (Matasović 2013a).

As Meillet (1937) noted, the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs in PIE appears to have been slight, as most verbs taking two arguments (bi-valent verbs) could be used with one argument only; e.g. verbs such as ‘to love’ and ‘to hate’ could be used without the undergoer argument, as in Catullus’ verse Odi et amo ‘I love and I hate’. The government relation between the verb and its arguments was probably loose and subject to semantic, more than strictly syntactic, principles, as verbs could govern their arguments in different case forms with slightly different meanings. For example, the Greek verb κλύω ‘to hear’ (< PIE *k₁lew-) could govern the accusative (Homer’s ἔκλυον ἀυτὴν ‘They heard a voice’), the genitive (ἔκλυον αὐτοῦ ‘They heard (it) from him’) and the dative (ἐυχόμενοι μοι ἔκλυον ‘They obeyed my prayer’, lit. ‘they obeyed to me praying’). No valence-decreasing morphosyntactic operation, such as passive, can be reconstructed in PIE. On the other hand, there is a causative construction, expressed by a verb form marked by the o-grade of the root and the suffix *-e₁y-, which is a valence-increasing operation, cf. PIE *mon-e₁y- > ‘cause to remember, admonish’ > (Lat. moneō) from the root *mën- ‘remember’ (cf. Lat. meminī ‘I remember’, which is an old perfect).

CONCLUSION

In a general survey of the areal typology of PIE, Johanna Nichols (2007) found evidence that PIE shared more areally diagnostic features with languages of Northern Eurasia than with languages of Southern Eurasia. These features would include the nominative-accusative clause alignment, the lack of polyvalent verbs, the suffixes as person markers on verbs and the low index of verbal inflectional synthesis. However, she acknowledged the presence of some features linking PIE with languages of South Eurasia, including three series of stops and the presence of gender. A later study (Matasović 2012) argued that PIE shared some typologically rare features with languages of the Caucasus, including the presence of a morphological optative and a heteroclitic inflection of nouns, while pointing out that some features of PIE are rather rare in Northern Eurasia (e.g. nominal agreement and the high consonant-to-vowel ratio). Several features that could potentially link PIE with the Caucasus as a linguistic area are disputed, in that they are not generally reconstructed in the proto-language, e.g. the glottalized stops, the ergative clause alignment and the opposition of exclusive and inclusive pronouns. Hence, it is difficult to reach firm conclusions about areal-typological affinities of PIE, and it is probable that no consensus about these matters will be attained until substantial progress is made in the reconstruction of the proto-language.
FURTHER READING

There are several good introductions to linguistic typology and language universals, e.g. Comrie 1989, Whaley 1997, Croft 2003 and Velupillai 2012, and one can also learn a lot about typology and the areal distribution of typologically relevant features by reading the chapters on linguistic features in WALS. The typological profile of PIE is given in an excellent overview by Bernard Comrie (1998). A (rather too radical) critique of the application of typological methods to PIE reconstruction can be found in Haider 1985. The problem of areal-typological affinities of PIE is discussed in Nichols 2007 and Matasović 2012. On the possible deep genetic relations of PIE the literature in English is scant; besides the rather speculative monograph by Greenberg (2000), there is a joint volume edited by Salmons and Joseph (1998), which offers an overview of the Nostratic hypothesis.

Many controversial features of the reconstructed PIE are treated from the areal and typological points of view in the large monograph by Gamkrelidze and Ivanov (1984). Typological arguments relevant for the phonetic interpretation of the PIE phonological system are discussed in the papers assembled in Vennemann 1989 and in the monograph by Joe Salmons (1994). The syntax of PIE is treated from the typological point of view by Lehmann (1974, 1993), but most of the conclusions of both books are highly controversial. Several articles about the typology of certain PIE syntactic constructions are contained in the volume edited by Paolo Ramat (1980). The category of gender in PIE is typologically and areally compared with other gender systems in Eurasia by Matasović (2004), and the typology of the verbal categories of tense and aspect in PIE and its descendants is the subject of Hewson and Bubenik 1997.

REFERENCES

Anthony, David 2007, The Horse, the Wheel, and Language, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore
Beckes, Robert S.P. 1995, Comparative Indo-European Linguistics, Benjamins, Amsterdam
Collinder, Björn 1960, Comparative Grammar of the Uralic Languages, Almqvist & Wiksell, Stockholm
Disterheft, Dorothy 1980, The Syntactic Development of the Infinitive in Indo-European, Slavica, Columbus, Oh
Fritz, Matthias 2011, Der Dual im Indogermanischen, Winter, Heidelberg
Illič-Svityč, Vladimir M. 1971–1984, Opyt sravnenija nostratičeskix jazykov, Nauka, Moscow
Lehmann, Winfred P. 1974, Proto-Indo-European Syntax, The University of Texas Press, Austin
LIV = Lexikon der Indogermanischen Verben, Rix, Helmut (ed.), Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag, Wiesbaden 2001
Matasović, Ranko 2004, Gender in Indo-European, Winter, Heidelberg
Matasović, Ranko 2013a, “Nominal agreement in PIE from the areal and typological point of view,” in: Neri, Sergio & Schuhmann, Roland (eds.), Studies on the Collective and Feminine in Indo-European from a Diachronic and Typological Perspective, Brill, Leiden: 133–155
Matasović, Ranko 2013b, “Latin paenitet me, miseret me, pudet me and active clause alignment in PIE,” Indogermanische Forschungen 118: 93–110
Verkerk, Annemarie 2014, *The Evolutionary Dynamics of Motion Event Encoding*, Max Planck Institute for Psycholinguistics, Nijmegen
Villar, Francisco 1983, *Ergatividad, Accusatividad y género en la familia linguística indoeuropea*, Universidad de Salamanca, Salamanca
PART 3

ANATOLIAN

H. Craig Melchert

INTRODUCTION

The Anatolian subgroup as a whole

The Anatolian subgroup of Indo-European is attested from the middle of the second millennium BCE to approximately the first and second centuries CE. There are no modern representatives of the family. The evidence ranges from the extensive records for Hittite through the significant but progressively smaller text corpora in Luwian, Lycian, Lydian, Carian, and Palaic to the mere handful of inscriptions in Sidetic and Pisidian. We have Hittite, Palaic, and Luwian texts from the second millennium in the cuneiform writing system borrowed from Mesopotamia and Luwian inscriptions in a native Anatolian system of hieroglyphs from the late second and early first millennium BCE. After a significant break, the remaining languages from the late first millennium are written in alphabets closely related to or derived from that of Greek. The great disparity in the amount of evidence for the respective languages and the nature of the cuneiform and hieroglyphic writing systems limit to a serious extent our ability to make assured generalizations about features of the Anatolian family. These limitations will be addressed explicitly wherever appropriate.

Like other such designations (Celtic, Germanic, etc.), “Anatolian” as used here is primarily a linguistic concept. The languages named above are all assumed to be derived from a reconstructed stage “Proto-Anatolian” (PAnat.), comparable to Proto-Celtic, Proto-Germanic, and so forth, defined by certain unique shared innovations. While most of the languages of the family are in fact attested in Anatolia (Asia Minor), Luwian was also spoken in parts of Syria. On the other hand, Phrygian, although it is an Indo-European language attested from west central Anatolia, is not a member of the Anatolian subgroup as defined here.

The dearth of evidence for certain linguistic categories beyond Hittite and Luwian, and especially our poor understanding of Lydian grammar, reduces the number of assured common innovations that define Proto-Anatolian, that is, that differentiate the Anatolian subgroup from the rest of the Indo-European languages and from Proto-Indo-European. Nonetheless, one may cite a few such defining features: (1) Proto-Indo-European voiceless stops were “lenited” (probably simply voiced) between unaccented morae in Proto-Anatolian (for this formulation see Adiego Lajara 2001 and the discussion below under phonology); (2) Proto-Anatolian created a pronominal stem *obʰô/i-*, which definitely functioned as the accented third person anaphoric pronoun (see Melchert 2009a: 156–159 with references, and below on its deictic use); (3) Proto-Anatolian developed third person subject enclitic pronouns for “unaccusative” verbs (see Garrett 1996, and below under pronouns). For a longer list of Proto-Anatolian innovations, including some more arguable features, see Melchert forthcoming, section 6.3.1.

I follow the majority viewpoint that the ancient Indo-European languages of Anatolia are intrusive to Asia Minor, resulting from in-migrations from somewhere to the north, via either the Balkans or the Caucasus (see further Mallory 2009 and Melchert 2011a with
references to dissenting views). Since neither the route nor the timing of the supposed entry into Anatolia can be determined with any precision, it remains an open question whether the prehistoric stage labeled Proto-Anatolian was spoken in Anatolia. Nevertheless, in the absence of contrary evidence, we may make the default assumption that the differentiation of the attested Anatolian languages was mostly associated with the spread of Indo-European speakers through Asia Minor.

There is solid evidence for extensive prehistoric contact between Hittite and Luwian and for less intensive contact between Lydian and Palaic (Yakubovich 2010: Chapter Three). We may safely assume some similar contact between Lycian and Carian. Under these circumstances, attempts to describe the relationships of the Anatolian languages to each other in terms of divergence by a “family tree” model (e.g., Oettinger 1978) are less than satisfactory. Use of dialect geography presents a more realistic picture (see Melchert 2003 for detailed justification of the description give here). Luwian and Lycian undeniably share a number of innovations that justify a “Luwo-Lycian” or “Luwic” dialect group, and it is likely, but not strictly provable, that Carian belongs to this group as well. A subset of these innovations is also shared by Lydian (most notably so-called i-mutation, described below under nominal morphology), so that one may also speak of “western” dialects of Anatolian. On the other hand, Luwian also shares several phonological innovations with Hittite and Palaic. Since these are of a “shallower” nature than some of the features common to Luwian and the other western dialects, they might be regarded as chronologically later than the latter, but we hardly have enough facts to assert this with confidence. What does seem clear is that Luwian plays a central role in terms of shared isoglosses, as one might expect from its geographic position.

The individual languages

Hittite

The language we call Hittite was the chief administrative language of the kingdom and subsequent empire centered on the capital Hattusha in central Anatolia (see Map 3.1), which flourished from the sixteenth to the end of the thirteenth century BCE. The Hittites themselves called the language nešili, after the city of Nesha (also Kanish), to the southeast on the Marassantiya River (= classical Halys, modern Kızılırmak). The original locus of Hittite speakers was thus probably an area along the upper course of the Halys. They subsequently became the ruling class in Hattusha and in the Hittite kingdom, but the extent to which Hittite functioned as a spoken language beyond this group is impossible to determine. After 1350 BCE Hittite was likely in serious competition with Luwian as the spoken language even among this elite (Yakubovich 2010: Chapter Five).

Documentation of Hittite is extensive and includes a wide variety of genres: annals, treaties, letters, the state cult, therapeutic rituals, myths, and more. Our understanding of their content and of the grammar is good, but certain aspects of the phonology are obscured by limitations of the cuneiform writing system. As adopted by the Hittites, this mixed logographic-syllabic system (compare Japanese) has phonetic signs for V, CV, VC, and CVC sequences. Word-initial or word-final strings of two or more consonants and word-internal strings of three or more can only be spelled with sequences containing “empty” vowels: e.g., pár-ah-ta = /parxta/ ‘chased’. The system also does not fully differentiate e- and i-spellings. The resulting ambiguities leave much room for debate about the phonological interpretation of the orthography. These remarks naturally also apply to Palaic and to Luwian written in cuneiform.
Palaic

Palaic was the language of the land of Palā, almost certainly located to the northwest of the lower Halys river (Map 3.1). It is attested in a few fragmentary cuneiform texts from Hattusha (sixteenth–thirteenth centuries BCE), all dealing with the Palaic state cult, which was heavily influenced by the religion of the Hattians, a non-Indo-European people who dominated north and central Anatolia before the Hittites. Palaic is arguably the most conservative Anatolian dialect, but our evidence for it is severely limited. For further on Palaic see Carruba 1970.

Luwian

Luwian is attested in cuneiform from Hattusha (sixteenth–thirteenth centuries) and in a hieroglyphic script native to Anatolia. A few hieroglyphic inscriptions date from the last Hittite kings (thirteenth century), but most hieroglyphic texts (monumental inscriptions and a few letters and economic documents on lead strips) date from the Iron Age (eleventh–eighth centuries) after the fall of the Hittite Empire, the products of various small city states and kingdoms in southern Anatolia and Syria. Traditionally, one has referred simply to Cuneiform and Hieroglyphic Luwian according to the writing system used (as followed here for convenience), but Yakubovich (2010: Chapter 1) has shown that one must distinguish between two dialects: (1) Kizzuwatna Luwian, the language of the incantation portions of Luwian rituals originating in southwestern Anatolia (Map 3.1), but as redacted by cuneiform scribes in Hittite context in Hattusha (with a few exceptions, effectively those texts collected in Starke 1985); and (2) Empire Luwian, a koine developed in and promulgated from Hattusha starting in the thirteenth century, continued in the
later Iron Age hieroglyphic texts. The “Luwianisms” scattered through Hittite cuneiform texts of the fourteenth and thirteenth centuries also belong to this dialect.

The Iron Age Luwian texts provide our richest documentation for an Anatolian language outside of Hittite, but the logographic-syllabic hieroglyphic script is even more problematic for phonological interpretation than is cuneiform. The syllabary has only V and CV signs, so that even word-final consonants must be written with an “empty” vowel, and many of the CV signs do not distinguish /a/ and /i/ vocalism. These and other practices produce spellings such as wa/i+ra/i-ya-ya for what is probably /warriyai/ ‘helps’. Luwian written in cuneiform helps resolve some of the resulting ambiguities, but by no means all. The Iron Age hieroglyphic texts are masterfully edited by Hawkins (2000).

MAP 3.2 ANATOLIA IN THE IRON AGE

Lycian

Lycian is attested in close to two hundred inscriptions, nearly all on stone, from various sites in classical Lycia in southwestern Asia Minor (Map 3.2), dating from the fifth and fourth centuries BCE. These texts, written in a form of the Greek alphabet, are nearly all funerary in nature, with the exception of a few decrees and the “stele of Xanthos”, a long but poorly understood text describing the military exploits and building activities of one dynastic family. Our understanding of Lycian grammar was significantly improved by the discovery in 1973 of a decree establishing a religious cult written in Lycian, Greek, and Aramaic versions: see on the Lycian text of the “Létôon Trilingual” Laroche 1979.

A portion of the Xanthos stele text and one other inscription are written in a different dialect known conventionally as Milyan or “Lycian B” (the latter as opposed to the ordinary “Lycian A”). While the sociolinguistic relationship of the two forms of Lycian remains unclear, there is no doubt that they are dialects of the same language, despite
some claims to the contrary. Lycian A does show some unique phonological changes (*s > h except next to consonants; *kʷ > t before front vowels), but it shares important features with Lycian B that separate both from Luwian: the change of *o to e, massive syncope of unaccented vowels, and widespread regressive vowel assimilation, among others (for arguments that Lycian is not a dialect of attested Luwian, see also Gusmani 1960).

Lydian

Lydian was the language of the classical kingdom in west central Anatolia with its capital at Sardis (Map 3.2). There are now more than a hundred extant Lydian texts, but only a couple dozen are of significant length and reasonably preserved, all dating from the fifth and fourth centuries, thus roughly contemporaneous with our Lycian corpus. In the absence up to now of a Lydian-Greek bilingual text of sufficient length, our comprehension of Lydian lags far behind that of the other Anatolian languages described above, even Lycian. While we can largely parse the grammatical structure of most textual passages, many details still elude us, and our grasp of the lexicon is especially poor. As a result, we must be duly cautious in claiming that certain features are pan-Anatolian, since we do not know their status in Lydian. For all aspects of Lydian see Gusmani 1964 and subsequent supplements, especially 1986.

Carian, Pisidian, and Sidetic

Carian was the language of classical Caria, in southwestern Anatolia between Lycia and Lydia (Map 3.2). A few extant texts, tentatively dated to the fourth and third centuries BCE, have been found in Caria itself, but most Carian texts, consisting of tomb inscriptions and graffiti of Carian mercenaries, are from Egypt, dating from the seventh to fifth centuries. Thanks to the discovery of a Carian-Greek bilingual text in 1986 (see Frei & Marek 1987), we can now be sure that Carian does belong to the Anatolian family of Indo-European, and it appears to share some features of the “Luwo-Lycian” dialect group. However, our understanding of Carian grammar and vocabulary remains limited, and the language cannot be regarded as fully deciphered – in particular we cannot yet analyze Carian verbal morphology, or even identify verbal forms, with confidence. Carian will thus play a very small role in the description of Anatolian grammar that follows. See on all aspects of the language Adiego 2007.

Some ten inscriptions have been discovered in Sidetic, the language of Side, a major city on the coast of Pamphylia (Map 3.2), dated very approximately to the third to second centuries BCE. Those consisting of more than personal names are largely unintelligible, and we can at present affirm only that the language is Anatolian Indo-European, belonging to the “Luwo-Lycian” dialect group. See Nollé 2001: 625–646 for the texts, but for revised readings of some letters and a tentative grammatical sketch also Pérez Orozco 2007. For Pisidian (Map 3.2) we have a mere handful of tomb inscriptions consisting of only names and patronymics, dated tentatively to the first and second centuries CE. These again can tell us only that the language is a “Luwo-Lycian” dialect of Anatolian. The very sparse evidence for both Sidetic and Pisidian leaves open the possibility that they represent late dialects of Luwian in the narrow sense. See Brixhe 1988 for the then published texts in Pisidian. We will have nothing more to say about Sidetic and Pisidian in what follows.
PHONOLOGY

Vowels

There was very little change in the vowels from Proto-Indo-European to Proto-Anatolian. Evidence that *o merged with *e in Lycian instead of with *a as in the rest of Anatolian shows that Proto-Anatolian still maintained the PIE system of five contrasting vowel phonemes, both short and long (Rasmussen 1992 and Melchert 1992a, upheld by Hajnal 1995: 90–97): e.g., PIE/PAnat. *pedóm > Lyc. pddē ‘place’, PIE gen. pl. *-ōm > PAnat. *-om > Lyc. -ē. As reflected in the second example, unaccented long vowels inherited from Proto-Indo-European were shortened in Proto-Anatolian (Eichner 1973: 79 and 86°°). A PIE tautosyllabic sequence *eh₁ became a Proto-Anatolian long vowel that merges with inherited long *e in Hittite but with a in Luwian and Lycian (represented here conventionally as PAnat. *ǣ): e.g., *dēh₁ti > *dēti > Hitt. tēzzi ‘says’ but Lyc. tādi ‘puts’. Anatolian thus uniquely distinguishes between PIE *ē and the result of tautosyllabic *eh₁.

Since Hittite maintains the PIE short diphthongs *ay and *oy as /ay/ and PIE *aw and *ow as /aw/ before coronal consonants (see Kimball 1994), these must have still been preserved at least in this environment in Proto-Anatolian. In those cases where PIE *aw and *ow became monophthongs in Hittite (and undoubtedly also Palaic and Luwian) they appear as a new vowel /o(ː)/ distinct from inherited *ā, which has merged with *ā as /aː/¹. As shown by Kloekhorst (2008: 35–60), vindicating the earlier claims of several scholars, the new /o(ː)/ phoneme is spelled with the sign u in Hittite, versus /u(ː)/ spelled with the sign ü. Prehistoric *u is also regularly lowered to the new /o/ vowel next to *h₁ or *h₂, PAnat. long *āy and *ēy are reflected in Hitt. /aːy/, and PAnat. long *āw and *ōw in Hitt. /aːw/ (spelled Ca-a-ú¹). The precise timing, conditioning, and outcome of the monophthongization of PIE *ey and *ew and *ēy and *ēw remain under debate (but contra Melchert 1994a: 56 and passim there is no basis for supposing that the reflex of *ey in Proto-Anatolian or Hittite was distinct from that of *ē).

Consonants

Evidence from Luwian and Lycian shows that Proto-Anatolian preserved the PIE three-way contrast of dorsal stops, at least for the voiceless series *K, *k, *kʷ. However, the claim in Melchert 1989: 23–31 for an unconditioned contrast in Luwo-Lycian must be abandoned. A reassessment of all available evidence confirms that Anatolian is a “centum” subgroup that keeps labiovelars distinct while eventually merging the “palatal” (more accurately front velar) and velar series as velars (see for full argumentation Melchert 2012a). Before the latter merger, however, there was a conditioned palatalization in Luwo-Lycian of just the front velar series in fronting environments (*ē, *i, *y and *w): contrast, e.g., *keyori > CLuw. zivar(i) and Lyc. sījēni ‘lies’ with *kēsäye/o- > CLuw. kišā(i)- ‘to comb’, but *koto- > HLuw. /kata-/ ‘enmity, opposition’ and CLuw. kattawat-nalla/i- ‘opponent, enemy’ (cognate with Gr. κότος ‘spite’ and Skr. śātru- ‘enemy’). The facts for reflexes of the voiced dorsal stops are compatible with this analysis, but strict proof is prevented by the widespread loss of medial voiced dorsal stops in Luwo-Lycian.

There are two major changes in the stop system from Proto-Indo-European to Proto-Anatolian. First, in the absence of any compelling examples of differing reflexes, we may and should assume that the PIE voiced aspirated stops merged with voiced stops. Second, as already mentioned above, PIE voiceless stops are “lenited” (or rather simply voiced) between unaccented morae: e.g., PIE *dēh₁ti > PAnat. *dēti (i.e., *dēṭi) > *dēedi > Lyc. tādi ‘puts’, PAnat. abl.-instr. *-ōti > *-ōdi > Luw. /-adi/ and Lyc. -edi. For this unified formulation
as a single rule see Adiego Lajara 2001, combining the two rules posited by Eichner (1973: 79–83 and 100*) and Morpurgo Davies (1982/83). Evidence for this rule is more plentiful in Luwo-Lycian than in Hittite, where most of its effects were undone by analogy.

Before leaving the stops, we should note that Hittite scribes did not employ the cuneiform stop+vowel signs such as \( \text{ta} \) and \( \text{da} \) to indicate the phonemic contrast between voiceless and voiced stops. In intervocalic position they spelled inherited voiceless stops as geminates, while inherited voiced stops and those produced by the change just cited were spelled as single stops: thus both \( \text{pē-e-ta-an} \) and \( \text{pē-e-da-an} = /\text{pe:da/} \) ‘place’, contrasting with \( (i-)\text{ya-at-ta(-ri)} \) and \( \text{i-ya-ad-da(-ri)} = /\text{yata(r)i/} \) ‘goes’. This practice has aroused much discussion regarding the synchronic distinctive features of the Hittite stops (see Melchert 1994a: 13–21 and compare the very different view of Kloekhorst 2008: 21–25), but for the purposes of Anatolian as a whole we may continue to speak of a voiceless vs. voiced contrast.

There were no major changes in the PIE sibilant *s or the sonorants *m, *n, *r, *l, *w, and *y in Proto-Anatolian. The syllabic liquids and nasals eventually appear in the attested languages mostly as \( aR \) but occasionally as \( uR \) instead (e.g., HLuw. \(/\text{tum}/-\) ‘horn’ < *\( \text{kmngid}-\) cognate with Hitt. \( \text{karkidant-} \) ‘horned’), but they were likely still syllabic sonorants in Proto-Anatolian. As part of a widespread areal feature, word-initial \( r- \) is lacking in the attested Anatolian languages, except for extremely rare secondary instances in Luwian, Lycian, and Lydian.

As for the PIE “laryngeals”, *h\( _1 \) appears in the cuneiform languages as \( h \) (geminant \( HH \) intervocally, thus voiceless or fortis); e.g., Hitt. \( \text{hans(a)} \) ‘in front’ < PIE *\( h_{1}\text{enti} (= \text{Lat. ante ‘in front’ etc.}) \) and CLuw. \( \text{hantili-} \) ‘foremost, first’, Hitt. \( \text{newahh} \)– ‘make new’ < PIE *neweh\( _2 \). This result was subject to the Proto-Anatolian voicing rule described above, whence CLuw. 1 sg. pret. \( \text{a}^h \text{ha} \) and Lyc. \( \text{ag}^h \text{ā} \) ‘I made’ < PAnat. \( \text{*yē}^{\text{h}} \text{ya} < \text{*yēh-}^\text{h2}\text{e} \) versus regular CLuw. \( \text{-h}^\text{h} \text{ha} \) and Lyc. \( \text{-xa} < \text{PAnat. *xa} \). As shown by Kloekhorst (2006: 97–101), a sequence of *\( h_{2}\text{w} \) developed into a PAnat. unitary labialized fricative \( /x^h/ \); e.g., Hitt. /\text{tarx}/- ‘conquer’ spelled \( \text{tar-}^\text{h} \text{u-} \) and \( \text{tar-uh}- \) (parallel to \( e-\text{ku}- \) and \( e-\text{uk}- \) for \( /\text{eg}/-\) ‘drink’). In Lycian the labialized fricative turned into a labiovelar stop, represented by \( q \) (contra Melchert 1994a: 305–307), as shown by the name of the Storm-god, \( \text{trqq̥ñt-} < \text{*trh}_1\text{w}^\text{t}-\). PIE *\( h_{2} \) was lost in word-final position and before \( y \) and underwent assimilation in certain environments (cf. Melchert 1994a: 68–71).

PIE *\( h_{3} \) is reflected in word-initial position by \( h- \) or zero in Hittite and Luwian, under conditions that remain much debated: compare Hitt. \( \text{hāppar} \) ‘transaction’ < *\( h_{3}\text{êpr} \) or *\( h_{3}\text{êpr} \) (cognate with Lat. \( \text{opus} \) ‘work’ etc.) but Hitt. \( \text{art}a \) (stands up) < *\( h_{3}(e)r\)tor. Contrary to previous opinion, Kloekhorst (2008: 838 and 946) has demonstrated that medial *\( h_{3} \) is preserved in the immediate environment of sonorants: CLuw. \( \text{tatarh} \)– ‘break’ < *\( \text{terh}_2 \) (Gr. \( \text{τρώω} \) ‘wound’) and Hitt. \( \text{wall}- \) ‘strike’ < *\( \text{welh}_1 \) (Gr. \( \text{ἐκλόγω} \) ‘perished’). For the suggestion that a sequence *\( h_{2}\text{w} \) is preserved in Hittite as \( -\text{hw} \)– \( (/y^h/)-\) parallel to *\( h_{2}\text{w} > \text{-hw} = /x^h/ \) in \( \text{lathw-} \) ‘pour’ (cognate with Gr. \( \text{λόφω} \) ‘bathe’ etc.) see Melchert 2011b.

Aside from secondary effects such as compensatory lengthening or assimilation, there is no compelling evidence for any direct reflex of PIE *\( h_{1} \) in Anatolian, pace Kloekhorst 2004 and 2006: 77–81 (see Melchert 2010: 152–153 and Weeden 2011: 61–68).

**Accent**

The results of the PAnat. “lenition” or voicing of stops and *\( h_{2} \) cited above suggest that the position of the inherited PIE accent was mostly retained in Proto-Anatolian. For some exceptions see Melchert 1994a: 89. For some instances of mobile accent in Hittite noun paradigms see Melchert 2012c: 180. Eichner (1986) established the synchronic accent of Lydian.
Nominal inflection

The attested Anatolian languages show only two numbers, singular and plural, the latter distinguishing in Old Hittite a count plural versus a collective (Melchert 2000 after Eichner 1985). Possible traces of a dual are sparse and limited to the nominative-accusative. It is a matter of great controversy whether Anatolian inherited the feminine gender from Proto-Indo-European and lost it (as, e.g., Armenian did) or whether its absence reflects an archaism not shared by the rest of Indo-European. One thing that is now clear is that, contrary to previous claims (Oettinger 1987, Starke 1990: 85–89, Melchert 1994b), the phenomenon of “i-mutation” in the western Anatolian languages is not a reflex of the PIE feminine gender. As first identified and described by Starke (1990: 54–85), in Luwian, Lycian, and to a lesser extent Lydian many (though by no means all!) nominal stem classes show an inserted -i- between the inherent stem and the endings of just the common gender nominative and accusative. In the case of stems in -a- (which mostly but not exclusively continue PIE o-stems) the -i- replaces the stem-final -a-. The paradigm of the Cuneiform Luwian synchronic i-stem ādduwal- ‘evil’ is nom. sg. comm. ādduwalḵ, acc. sg. comm. ādduwalin, nom.-acc. sg. n. ādduwal(=za), nom. pl. comm. ādduwalinzi, acc. pl. comm. ādduvalinz(a), nom.-acc. pl. n. ādduwal, dat. pl. ādduwalanz(a), abl.-instr. ādduwalati. As argued by Rieken (2005b), this pattern arose due to particular formal changes in the paradigms of some ablauting i-stems and was then analogically extended. This feature tells us nothing about the status of the feminine grammatical gender in Anatolian.

Old Hittite has at least eight cases: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative-locative, allative, instrumental, and ablative. The vocative is replaced by the nominative, the allative by the dative-locative, and the instrumental by the ablative by the time of New Hittite. The common gender nominative and accusative plural also merge, mostly in favor of the original accusative form. The ablative (distinct from the dative-locative only in the singular) expresses goal with verbs expressing translocation (see Hoffner & Melchert 2008: 263 for examples). Its existence already in Proto-Anatolian is made likely by its use to form infinitives in multiple languages. It is indeterminate whether it is an inheritance from Proto-Indo-European or an innovation of Proto-Anatolian. Likewise, we cannot at present determine whether the merger of the dative and locative singular that took place in Hittite had already happened in Proto-Anatolian. It is also a matter of debate whether the “ergative” was a fully grammaticalized case in Proto-Anatolian (see most recently Goedegebuure 2012).

### TABLE 3.1 ANATOLIAN NOMINAL ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Proto-Anatolian</th>
<th>Hittite</th>
<th>Palaic</th>
<th>Cuneiform Luwian</th>
<th>Hieroglyphic Luwian</th>
<th>Lycian</th>
<th>Lydian</th>
<th>Carian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom. sg. comm.</td>
<td>*-s</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. sg. comm.</td>
<td>*-m</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-n</td>
<td>-V</td>
<td>-v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc. sg.</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. sg.</td>
<td>*-nts</td>
<td>*-nts</td>
<td>*-nts</td>
<td>-ntš</td>
<td>-ntš</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>-d</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. sg.</td>
<td>*-os</td>
<td>-aš</td>
<td>-aš</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-Vhe</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>-š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. sg.</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i/a</td>
<td>-i/a</td>
<td>-i/a</td>
<td>-i/e</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all. sg.</td>
<td>*-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3.1 summarizes the nominal case endings of Anatolian, athematic and thematic (since Anatolian has very few oxytone thematic stems, the thematic endings are given in Proto-Anatolian form, with unaccented long *ō already shortened). Endings in boldface represent innovations, — indicates that the category has been lost, [] marks an assured ending accidentally not attested, while a question mark means that we have reason to believe the form existed but do not yet have any evidence for it.

The direct cases call for only minor comment. In addition to the expected animate nominative singular -s, there are a few reflexes of sonorant stems reflecting *-ē/ōR: OHitt. keššar=šiš ‘his hand’ remarkably continues PIE *ǵhēysōr, but in most cases the PIE form has been renewed with a secondary -s (e.g., Hitt. and Pal. hāraš ‘eagle’ < *h3rē+r+s, Hitt. bašter (a) ‘star’ < *h2stēr+s). Lydian has generalized the pronominal neuter nominative-accusative singular ending *-(o)d to all nominal stem classes. Only Palaic preserves the animate nominative plural endings *-es and *-ōs, while Hittite has generalized a prehistoric *-ēs < *-eyes, the i-stem ending, and at least Luwian and Lycian, and probably Carian, have renewed the animate nominative plural ending based on the accusative plural (for details see Melchert 2009b). Old Hittite still shows some traces of the athematic nominative-accusative neuter plural ending *-h2 (e.g., aššū ‘goods’ = /aːssoː/ < *-u(h)2), but elsewhere it has been renewed by the thematic ending -a < *-eh2. Hittite and Luwian also preserve some examples of lengthened-grade nominative-accusative neuter plurals such as Hitt. widār ‘waters’ < *wedōr.

The history of the genitive case in Anatolian is complex. For further details of the picture presented here and references to differing views see Melchert 2012b. Hittite, Palaic, and Hieroglyphic Luwian all preserve the PIE athematic ending in the form *-os and also a thematic ending *-o-s. The PIE thematic genitive singular ending *-oso is continued by at least HLuw. /-as(s)i/ and by Carian -š in personal names, the latter generalized to all stem classes. The PIE thematic genitive singular *-eoso appears in Lyc. *Vhe, likewise spread to all stem classes but restricted to personal names, and probably in the Carian synchronic dative singular ending -s. Whether Cuneiform Luwian attests either *-eoso or *-oso is uncertain. Old Hittite, Lycian, and Lydian show reflexes of the PIE genitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case Type</th>
<th>Proto-Anatolian</th>
<th>Hittite</th>
<th>Palaiq</th>
<th>Cuneiform Luwian</th>
<th>Hieroglyphic Luwian</th>
<th>Lycian</th>
<th>Lydian</th>
<th>Carian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom. pl. comm.*-es</td>
<td>-eš</td>
<td>-eš</td>
<td>-nzi</td>
<td>-nzi</td>
<td>-Vš</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. pl. comm.*-ms</td>
<td>-uš</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>-nz(a)</td>
<td>-nzi</td>
<td>-Vš</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>-š</td>
<td>-š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. pl. n.*-h₁</td>
<td>zero/-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. pl.*-om</td>
<td>-an</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>-av</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. pl.*os</td>
<td>-aš</td>
<td>-aš</td>
<td>-anž(a)</td>
<td>-anž(a)</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-av</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.-instr.*-óti/-odi</td>
<td>-az(zi)</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>-ati</td>
<td>-adi/-ari</td>
<td>-Vdi</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
plural *-ōm, but in Lydian the ending mostly functions as the dative-locative plural. The western Anatolian languages largely replace the genitive case with inflected forms of possessive adjectives, mostly reflecting a secondary inflection of the ending *-osyo, but Lydian employs rather an adjective in -la/i/- (< PIE *-lo- with i-mutation), and Hieroglyphic Luwian also uses adjectives in -iya- < PIE *-iyo- in this function.

As per Hajnal (1995: 98), Lycian infinitives in -Vna reflect the expected athematic allative ending *-eh₂ (Hajnal) or less likely *-h₂,e (Melchert 1994a: 324), while -Vne continues the analogically spread thematic ending *-o-h₂ (as in Lat. quō ‘whither?’). It is unclear to what extent Proto-Anatolian distinguished the dative and locative singular and, if so, athematic and thematic inflection. The dative-locative plural ending *-os attested in Hittite, Palaic, and Lycian represents an archaic form of the dative plural not yet reinforced as *-bh₂(y)os or *-mos. For more on this ending and the history of the number-indifferent ablative and instrumental in Anatolian see Melchert and Oettinger 2009.

Nominal derivation

This topic can be treated here only in the most summary fashion. For a still largely valid overview of the presence and productivity of various PIE suffixes in Anatolian see Oettinger 1986. More focused treatments of particular stem classes are found in Weitenberg 1984, Starke 1990, and Rieken 1999a. In brief, Anatolian shows the usual mixture of archaisms and innovations and its own patterns of productivity. Root nouns are present but recessive (Rieken 1999a: 18–82). PIE *-e/ont- is attested throughout Anatolian in a variety of functions (Melchert 2000: 58–70) but notably not in that of an active participle (see further below under non-finite verbal forms). Neuter s-stems of the type *kléw-os, *kléw-es- ‘fame’ (Skr. śrávas- etc.) are barely attested, if at all, but there are examples of other types (Rieken 1999a: 185–237).

Stems in -i- (e.g., Hitt. arkiš ‘testicle’ < PIE *h₁ór₁ís, d(a)lugaštiš ‘length’) are productive in Hittite but mostly recast in Luwo-Lycian in terms of i-mutation (see again Rieken 2005b). Stems in -u- (e.g., Hitt. gėnu ‘knee’ < *gēnū, CLuw. maddu ‘wine’ < *méd₃u) are likewise reasonably productive in Hittite (Weitenberg 1984) but extremely recessive elsewhere. The well-known PIE suffix *-ti- is modestly productive (e.g., Hitt. išpanduzzi ‘libation vessel’, CLuw. arut(i)- ‘wing’), while *-tu- is virtually unattested. Most synchronous l-stems (e.g., Hitt. išḫuul ‘binding; obligation; treaty’) are secondary from original thematic stems in *-lo- (thus with Rieken 2008). There are relatively few reflexes of neuter men-stems in Hittite, but the class is very productive in Luwian, e.g., tatariyaman- ‘curse’ (Starke 1990: 243–299) and likely was in Lycian as well. Perhaps most notorious is the abundance in Anatolian of neuter heteroclite stems in -r/-n-: see Oettinger 1986: 11–15, Rieken 1999a: 290–417, and Starke 1990: 435–525.

Primary barytone action nouns with suffix *-o- are moderately productive, but oxytone agent nouns in *-o- are virtually unattested (Oettinger 1986: 19). Secondary derivatives in *-o- are plentiful. There is a modest number of denominative stems in *-no- and *-to-, but exceedingly few verbal adjectives in *-to- and none in *-no- (cf. Oettinger 1986: 22–23). The thematic suffixes *-iyo-, *-lo-, and *-ro- all enjoy some degree of productivity in Anatolian.

PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns

The Anatolian accented personal pronouns all continue PIE preforms, and Old Hittite maintains the PIE suppletive pattern in the first person singular and plural and second
person singular. For the second person plural we find only forms based on the PIE non-subject stem *us- (see Katz 1998: 138–141 for competing accounts of their derivation). In New Hittite (and all the other languages for which we have evidence) the first persons and the second person plural generalize the dative-accusative, but the second person singular maintains the contrast of subject and non-subject forms (Table 3.2).2

There is considerable mutual influence between the first and second person pronouns. One defining innovation of Anatolian is the spread of the u-vocalism from the second person singular to the first person singular. However, the spread of the final dorsal stop from the subject form of the first person singular to the non-subject form and to both forms of the second person singular is a specifically Hittite innovation, since it is not seen in Palaic (which does not lose final stops). Likewise, reshaping of the second person plural *unz- to *anz- based on the first person plural *anz- < *ns- is thus far attested only for Luwian. The attested enclitic non-subject forms of the first persons and the second person singular are also clearly based on PIE preforms, while the second person plural is based on the accented form, but there are signs that the Proto-Anatolian situation was more complicated, with a distinction of enclitic dative and accusative forms and subsequent differing developments of enclitic reflexives (see Yakubovich 2010: Chapter 3).

**TABLE 3.2 ANATOLIAN PERSONAL PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First person singular</th>
<th>First person plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hittite</td>
<td>Palaic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>ūk</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Second person singular</th>
<th>Second person plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hittite</td>
<td>Palaic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>zīk</td>
<td>tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-acc.</td>
<td>tuka</td>
<td>tū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-acc.</td>
<td>-tta</td>
<td>-tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enclitic</td>
<td>tuēl</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>tuēdaz</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Demonstrative and anaphoric pronouns**

As noted above, one defining innovation of Proto-Anatolian is the creation of a demonstrative stem *obʰō/í-. This is attested as the accented third person anaphoric pronoun in Hittite, Palaic, both forms of Luwian, Lycian, and Lydian and surely had this function in Proto-Anatolian. The inflection is that of an o-stem (Table 3.3) in all the languages except Lydian, where it is consistently an i-stem. This pattern certainly has nothing to do with i-mutation; whether it gives a clue to the origin of the pronoun is unclear (cf. Melchert 2009a: 159 with references). Not only the Hittite nom. pl. comm. -e but also
the -i- of CLuw. zinzi and zinz(a) reflects PIE nom. pl. animate *-oy (Melchert 2009b). For the Hitt. nom.-acc. pl. n. -e as also continuing PIE *-oy see Jasanoff 2008: 144–149. The Hittite genitive singular ending -ēl reflects a suffix *-élo- (thus with Rieken 2008: 250–251 against all others). See Goedegebuure 2007 for apin as the Hieroglyphic Luwian synchronic ablative-instrumental ending < PIE *-im (vindicating the claim of Dunkel (1997) for such an ending) and Goedegebuure 2010 for the contrast between Luw. dat.-loc. sg. apati and original abl.-instr. apadi (attested as an adverb ‘thus’).

The enclitic anaphoric pronouns of Anatolian reflect a mixture of reflexes of PIE *e/o- and *se/o-, subject to various innovations, again marked in boldface. On these developments and the creation of enclitic reflexive pronouns (and the spread of reflexive *-ti from Luwian to Hittite, Lycian, and Lydian) see Yakubovich 2010: Chapter 3.

**TABLE 3.3 ANATOLIAN ANAPHORIC PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Accented third person anaphoric pronouns</th>
<th>Enclitic third person anaphoric pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hittite</td>
<td>Cuneiform Luwian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom. sg. comm.</td>
<td>apāš</td>
<td>apāš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. sg. comm.</td>
<td>apān</td>
<td>apān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. sg. n.</td>
<td>apāt</td>
<td>[apa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. sg.</td>
<td>apēl</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. sg.</td>
<td>apēḍ(ani)</td>
<td>apātti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom. pl. comm.</td>
<td>apāš</td>
<td>apinz(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. pl. comm.</td>
<td>apē</td>
<td>[apa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. pl. n.</td>
<td>apēdand(a)/apēt</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. pl.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. pl.</td>
<td>apēdaš</td>
<td>[apattanz(a)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>apēz</td>
<td>apati/apatiñ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Determining the Proto-Anatolian system of deictic pronouns is made difficult by our lack of evidence for the languages other than Hittite: we have almost no data for Cuneiform Luwian, or for anything but near deixis in Lycian, Lydian, and Carian. Furthermore, some cognate stems have very different deictic values in the various languages. The overview here reflects Melchert 2009a, but much remains indeterminate. The only thing that seems clear is that the Proto-Anatolian marker of near deixis was *ko- (compare Lat. citrā ‘on this side’ etc. < *ki-), reflected in Hitt. and Pal. kā-, CLuw. and HLuw. zā-, and
probably Carian s(a)-. The inflection is entirely that of an a-stem, except for the aberrant and as yet unexplained Hitt. nom.-acc. sg. n. kī. As shown by Goedegebuure (2002/2003), Hittite has a three-way deictic contrast like that of Lat. hic, iste, and ille: kā- for near the speaker, apā- for near the addressee, and aši/uni (< PIE *é/ó- plus particle *-i) for far deixis. In attested Hieroglyphic Luwian, apa- covers the range of both iste and ille, but there is indirect evidence that at least Cuneiform Luwian once also had far-deictic *é/ó- (Melchert 2009a: 152). Very confusingly, however, Lyd. es- < *é/ó- marks near deixis, and Lyc. ebe- does as well. It is quite unclear just which stem(s) marked far deixis in Proto-Anatolian and whether it had a system with a two- or three-way contrast.

Enclitic possessive pronouns

Emphatic pronominal possession is expressed throughout the history of Hittite by the genitive of the personal pronouns and the accentuated anaphoric pronoun, preceding their head noun. In Old Hittite, unemphatic pronominal possession is marked by enclitic pronouns (more properly pronominal adjectives) attached to the head noun and agreeing with it in gender, number, and case: e.g., nom. sg. comm. attaš=miš ‘my father’, nom.-acc. sg. n. šaheššar=šummet ‘our fortress’, dat.-loc. pl. haššaš=šaš ‘for his offspring’ (see Hoffner & Melchert 2008: 137–141). However, there were no specific forms for the nominative-accusative plural neuter or the ablative, and the nominative-accusative singular neuter and the instrumental forms were used respectively by suppletion: šākuwa=šmet ‘their eyes’ and iššaz=(š)mit ‘from their mouths’. By New Hittite, use of the enclitic possessives was no longer part of the synchronic grammar, as shown by the fact that copyists misunderstood the forms in -et and -it and misused them for cases like the vocative and dative-locative singular. Unemphatic possession in New Hittite was conveyed by use of the appropriate enclitic dative pronoun: nu=šši KUR=SÚ GUL-un (conj. + ‘him’ (dat.) ‘land’ (obj.) ‘I struck’) = ‘I struck his land’. It is likely that Cuneiform Luwian attests a few examples of enclitic possessives (Carruba 1986), and the category is probably to be reconstructed for Proto-Anatolian (thus Garrett 1991–1993: 160–161).

TABLE 3.4 ANATOLIAN INTERROGATIVE-RELATIVE PRONOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Hittite</th>
<th>Cuneiform Luwian</th>
<th>Hieroglyphic Luwian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom. sg. comm.</td>
<td>kūiš</td>
<td>kūiš</td>
<td>REL-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. sg. comm.</td>
<td>kūin</td>
<td>kūin</td>
<td>REL-in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. sg. n.</td>
<td>kuit</td>
<td>kui</td>
<td>REL-anz(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. sg.</td>
<td>kuedani</td>
<td>kuwatti</td>
<td>REL-ati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom. pl. comm.</td>
<td>kuēš kuēš</td>
<td>kuēzi</td>
<td>REL-inzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc. pl. comm.</td>
<td>kuītuš</td>
<td>[kuīnz(a)]</td>
<td>REL-inzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.-acc. pl. n.</td>
<td>kue</td>
<td></td>
<td>REL-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. pl.</td>
<td>[kuēzan]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.-loc. pl.</td>
<td>kuēdaš</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>kuēz</td>
<td>kuwatti(n)</td>
<td>REL-adi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interrogative, relative, and indefinite pronouns

Anatolian uses the PIE stem *kʷo/i- as both the interrogative and relative pronoun – there is no trace of PIE relative *Hyo-. The interrogative-relative was clearly inflected as an i-stem in the nominative and accusative, subject to very minor innovations: besides the
Hittite and Luwian forms in Table 3.4 note also Pal. *kui-*, Lyc. *ti-*, Lyd. *qi-*, and Carian *xi-*. In the other cases the interrogative shows the same endings as the anaphoric demonstrative stems in Hittite, and our very limited evidence suggests the same for the other languages. Hittite attests the occasional use of the bare interrogative stem *kui-* as an indefinite, but the latter is usually expressed by a form with an added particle: nom. sg. *kuiški*, acc. sg. *kuninki*, gen. sg. *kūelka*, etc., and the other languages display similar creations: CLuw. *kuišha*, Lyc. *tike* and *tise*.

**VERBAL MORPHOLOGY**

**Verbal categories**

The Anatolian verb system is markedly different in certain basic features from that of the oldest stages of Indo-Iranian and Greek and thus from that traditionally reconstructed for PIE. As with the absence of the feminine gender, this glaring discrepancy has been the object of long and heated controversy: is it to be explained by loss of categories in Anatolian, by shared innovations in the rest of the Indo-European languages, or by a combination of the two? There is not remotely a consensus on this important issue, and what follows necessarily represents a particular viewpoint. One should not, however, overstate the matter: many aspects of the Anatolian verb are reassuringly familiar and not subject to serious dispute. One should also distinguish between the presence/absence of categories and the presence/absence or relative productivity of particular formal means of expressing a given category.

The Anatolian verb is inflected for the expected three persons and for two numbers, singular and plural. There is a contrast between active and medio-passive voice, and the latter attests the functions seen in other older Indo-European languages. Oppositional middles indicate “subject affectedness”: (1) reciprocal (Hitt. med.-pass. *zahḫanta* ‘they strike each other’ vs. act. *zahḫanzi* ‘they strike’); (2) self-interest (Hitt. med.-pass. *ušneškatta* ‘offers for sale’ < *pledges in return for payment’ vs. act. *ušneškemi* ‘I pledge’; and (3) passive (Hitt. med.-pass. *ḫullattati* ‘was struck’ vs. act. *ḫulet* ‘struck’). The passive use is rare in Old Hittite but becomes highly productive by New Hittite. Delimiting the functions of *media tantum* is notoriously more difficult, but Hittite shows most of the well-known types: (1) body care/grooming (Hitt. *wēšta* ‘wears’), (2) change of body posture (Hitt. *kitta(ri)*, Pal. *kītar*, CLuw. *ziyar(i)*, Lyc. *sijẽni*/ *sitẽni* ‘lies (down)’), (3) non-translational motion (Hitt. *wēḥatta(ri)* ‘spins (intr.’), (4) translational motion (Hitt. *iyatta(ri)* ‘walks’), (5) mental states (Hitt. *lēlaniyatta* ‘becomes angry’), and (6) "spontaneous" events/changes of state (Hitt. *kīša(ri)* ‘happens; becomes’).

The Anatolian verb displays only two moods: indicative and imperative. There are no obvious reflexes of the PIE optative or subjunctive. In Hittite the function of the optative to express the non-factual (what is possible, contrary to fact, or desired) is filled by the particle *mān/man*, a secondary use of the subordinating conjunction *mān* ‘when(ever), if’, itself derived from a rare PIE interrogative-relative stem *mo-* (compare Hitt. *maši-‘how/as many’, Toch. B *mäksu* ‘who, which’). For a likely indirect trace of the PIE subjunctive in Hittite see Jasanoff 2012, but compare Oettinger 2007.

The Anatolian verb has two tenses, present (which also serves for the future) and preterite. Hittite does famously develop a periphrastic perfect with *hark- ‘hold, have’ and *ēš- ‘be’ and the past participle, comparable to similar formations in modern western European languages; see Boley 1984 and, on the correlation of auxiliary selection and unaccusativity, Garrett 1996: 102–106. As described in summary fashion below, Anatolian attests
virtually all of the suffixes used to form the “present”, that is, imperfective, stem in “Core Indo-European”. It is quite uncertain, however, whether Anatolian inherited a true aspectual contrast of imperfective (“present”) vs. perfective (“aorist”). The evidence presented in Melchert 1997 for reflexes of such a contrast is suggestive, but far from compelling, and one may also suppose that Anatolian inherited the various present-forming suffixes merely as markers of Aktionsart and that the development of a true aspectual system is a common innovation of the non-Anatolian languages; for a well-reasoned presentation of this viewpoint see Strunk 1994.

Synchronically, most, if not all verbs are “monothematic”, showing a single stem that may be understood as perfective or imperfective according to context. However, as shown by evidence that is plentiful in Hittite and limited but clear in the other languages, Anatolian developed the means to optionally mark a finite verb as explicitly imperfective, most often by addition of a reflex of the PIE suffix *-sḱe/o-, but also for some verbs of *

*enh₂ʃi- or *-s(e/o)- (whose PIE antecedents have not been fully elucidated). This “marked” imperfectivity may be realized as various Aktionsarten, depending on the context and the lexical semantics of the base verb: progressive, iterative, durative, habitual, inceptive, or distributive (see Hoffner & Melchert 2008: 318–323 for illustrations from Hittite).

There is no Anatolian category corresponding to the PIE perfect, generally agreed to have expressed an attained state, whether one defines it as an aspect (e.g., Meier-Brügger 2000: 155) or an Aktionsart (e.g., DiGiovine 1996: 273). Once again, explanations for this absence differ radically, as discussed further in the next section.

Verbal inflection: active

The Hittite finite verb follows in the active voice one of two inflectional patterns, labeled after the respective present first-person singular endings the “mi-conjugation” and the “hi-conjugation” (Table 3.5). Evidence from Luwian (see Morpurgo Davies 1979) suggests that this system is Proto-Anatolian, although examples from Lycian and Palaic are extremely sparse and not beyond question. Even in Hittite there was much mutual influence between the two conjugations, and in the other attested languages the difference may have been reduced to just the present third singular indicative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 3.5 HITTITE VERBAL INFLECTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mi-conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hi-conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preterite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Active imperative

#### $mi$-conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-allu</td>
<td>-weni</td>
<td>-allu</td>
<td>-weni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>zero/-t</td>
<td>-tten</td>
<td>zero/-i</td>
<td>-tten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ttu</td>
<td>-antu</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-antu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### $hi$-conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-allu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-tten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ttu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Medio-passive indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-(h)hr̥a(ri), -(h)hr̥hari</td>
<td>-waštatt(i)</td>
<td>-(h)hr̥at(i), -(h)hr̥hat(i)</td>
<td>-waštatti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-(t)ta(ri), -(t)ta(i)</td>
<td>-(t)uma(ri)</td>
<td>-at, -(t)tat(i)</td>
<td>-(d)dumat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-a(ri), -(t)ta(ri)</td>
<td>-anta(ri)</td>
<td>-at(i), -(t)tat(i)</td>
<td>-antati</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Preterite

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-(h)hr̥ar, -(h)hr̥aru</td>
<td>-waštatt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-̥hr̥at(i)</td>
<td>-(d)dumat(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-aru, -(t)taru</td>
<td>-antaru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Medio-passive imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-hhr̥ar, -hhr̥aru</td>
<td>-waštatt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-̥hr̥at(i)</td>
<td>-(d)dumat(i)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-aru, -(t)taru</td>
<td>-antaru</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The singular endings of the $mi$-conjugation manifestly match the primary and secondary endings standardly reconstructed for the present-aorist system in PIE. While only Hittite has 1 sg. pres. -$mi$ (see below on the other languages), Palaic, Luwian, and Lydian also attest to 2 sg. pres. -$si$, and these plus Lycian attest to 3 sg. pres. -$ti$ (only Hittite assimilates *$t$ before syllabic *$i$). Hitt. 1 sg. pret. -$un$ continues athematic *-$m$, while -$anun$ reflects thematic *-$om$ renewed by the athematic ending. Lyd. 1 sg. pret. -$v$ continues at least *-$om$ (with syncope) and perhaps also *-$m$. Older Hittite still preserves -$š$ as the 2 sg. pret. ending of vocalic stems (e.g., iēš ‘you did’), but consonant stems have already adopted -$ta$ from the $hi$-conjugation (e.g., ēpta ‘you took’). Hittite and Palaic show 3 sg. pret. -$V$-$t$ but -$C$-$ta$, the latter with a genuine “prop-vowel” (Hitt. 3 sg. pret. e-$ku$-$ut$-$ta$ ‘drank’ = /eg*ta/, not † e-$ku$-$ut$). On the other hand, the consistent 3 sg. pret. ending -$(t)t$a of Luwian and -$te$/$de$ of Lycian after a vowel as well as a consonant reflects renewal of the third person preterite active endings by those of the medio-passive (thus with Yoshida 1993).

The Anatolian first person plural active endings show a -$w$-, recalling the PIE first person dual endings, but also an -$n$ matching the Greek dialectal 1 pl. act. -$μεν$ (cf. Eichner 1975: 79). Hitt. 1 pl. pret. -$wen$ and Lyd. -$wv$ reflect a virtual *-$wen$, to which was added the usual mark of the present *-$i$ to form 1 pl. pres. *-$wen$ continued by Hitt. and Pal. -$wen$ and CLuw. -$wanni$/unni. On the model of the first person plural in *-$wen$($i$), Anatolian created a matching second person plural *-$ten$($i$), extending PIE *-$te$, attested in Hittite, Palaic, and Luwian. In postonic position *-$wen$ and *-$ten$ regularly became
Hitt. -wani and -t(t)ani (Melchert 1994a: 137–138 after Cowgill). The ending -t(t)ani has no connection whatever to the *-th2ene seen in Skr. -thana, contra Eichner 1975: 79 and others. The present third person plural ending of Hittite -anzi and -anti elsewhere probably reflect PIE athematic *enti and *-ṛti as well as thematic *-onti, but it is difficult to establish this beyond doubt. Only Pal. 3 pl. pret. -anta may preserve a trace of the expected secondary ending *-enti/-ṛti/-onti (but it cannot be excluded that Pal. -anta reflects medio-passive *-onto, as in Luwian and Lycian; see Yoshida 1993: 34, note 21). In Hittite, the third person plural preterite ending of the h2i-conjugation has been generalized to all verbs, usually in the form -ėr < *-ėr, but there are a few examples of -ar < *-i. Much less certain is whether Lyd. 3 pl. pret. -rs/-ris continues PIE *-ṛs, matching Skr. -ur (see Melchert 2004a: 147, note 14, on the synchronic ending). The Anatolian preterite shows no credible traces of the PIE “augment” *ē-.

The present singular endings of the h2i-conjugation strongly resemble those of the PIE perfect and can in fact be straightforwardly derived from endings matching the latter plus the *-i particle that characterizes the present indicative: PIE *-h2e > OHitt. -he and PIE *-ey > OHitt. -e, already mostly leveled to -hī and -i after the majority of present endings in -i. The leveling has already occurred in Hitt. 2 sg. pres. -tti for *-tte < *-th2ey. The third singular ending is renewed partially in Hittite and totally elsewhere by an ending -āi spread from monosyllabic stems where it results from contractions (thus Luw. -āi and probably Pal. -ai and Lyc. -e). An entirely unsolved problem is the generalized 1 sg. pres. -wi of Luwian, which is surely matched by Lyd. -Cu/-Vw (with regular apocope) and probably also by Lyc. -u.

Endings matching the perfect also appear in 1 sg. pret. Pal. -hha, CLuw. -hha, HLuw. -ha, and Lyc. -xa/-ga < *-h2e (Hitt. -hun has been reshaped after mi-conjugation -un). However, Hitt. 3 sg. pret. -š cannot obviously be connected with the PIE perfect, and the ending -ta in Luwian and -te in Lycian is again a renewal by the medio-passive ending *-to (Yoshida 1993: 31–33) that tells us nothing about the Proto-Anatolian state of affairs.

It is extremely unlikely that the Anatolian h2i-conjugation is to be derived from the PIE perfect, or vice versa (for trenchant criticism of attempts at the former see Jasanoff 2003: 7–17), but just what the true relationship of the two categories is remains to be determined. Jasanoff (2003), elaborating earlier publications, has made a strong case for both a “h2e-present” and a “*h2e-aorist” in PIE, but many issues remain unresolved. On the status of *h2e and *h2e-zero ablaut in root *h2e-verbs see Melchert 2013 versus Kloekhorst 2012. Regarding the ablaut pattern of *h2e-presents in -i- (Hitt. 3 sg. pres. dāi, 3 pl. pres. tianzi ‘put(s)’) compare the differing analyses of Kimball (1998), Jasanoff (2003: 98–107), and Kloekhorst (2008: 807 and passim). For the source of the 3 sg. pret. ending -š of the h2i-conjugation and of the -š that appears in the second person plural of h2i-verbs in -i-, one may contrast the proposals of Jasanoff (2003: 174–197 and 2012: 118–119), Kloekhorst (2007), and Melchert (2015).

The status of the perfect in Anatolian also remains disputed. Jasanoff (2003: 11 and 37 and 117–118) argues that Hitt. wewakk- ‘demand’ and mēmīa- ‘speak’ continue reduplicated perfects. See also Forssman 1994: 103 for Hitt. šipand- ‘libate; sacrifice’ < *spand- (vs. špant- ‘idem’ < *spend/spnd-). But even if one or more of these verbs reflects a perfect in formal terms (which is far from assured), none demonstrably shows the “attained state” meaning assumed for “Core Indo-European”. Oettinger (2001: 80–83 and 2006: 37–42) views the perfect (along with the present type of Skr. dadhāti and the intensive type of Skr. vārvarti) as a post-Anatolian development of a PIE reduplicated present that appears in mostly de-reduplicated form in the Anatolian h2i-conjugation. Hajnal (1999: 8–25) sees rather the Anatolian h2i-conjugation and the post-Anatolian perfect as
separate developments of a PIE "proto-perfect", the perfect having been formally influenced by inherited intensive presents. A reasoned choice between these competing scenarios is not yet possible.

The imperative is marked in the third person by replacing the -i of the indicative endings with -u, a clearly Proto-Anatolian feature, as shown by the equation of 3 sg. imp. Hitt. ėšdu, Pal. ėšdu, CLuw. ėšdu, HLuw. /a:stu/, and Lyc. esu 'let be'. In Hittite this -u was spread to the first person singular voluntative in -allu, whose prehistory remains unclear. The exhortative first person plural in -weni is formally identical to the indicative and can be identified only by context; whether it continues a PIE subjunctive is impossible to determine. The second person singular imperative is, as expected, usually the bare verbal stem with a zero ending. One finds the reflex of the PIE ending *-dʰi in the Hitt. 2 sg. imp. īt 'go!' (cognate with Skr. ihí and Gr. ἵθι) and in verbs with the suffix -nu-: 2 sg. imp. warnut 'burn!'. The second person plural imperative continues PIE augmentless forms with secondary endings. Since the preterite indicative also lacks the "augment", one can distinguish second person plural preterites and imperatives only by context.

**Verbal inflection: medio-passive**

The endings of the PIE medio-passive are also ultimately related to those of the perfect and the Anatolian hji-conjugation, but this relationship is a pre-PIE matter. Anatolian incontrovertibly inherited a formally and functionally distinct medio-passive voice. As demonstrated by Yoshida (1990), the present medio-passive was marked in Proto-Anatolian at least in the third person by endings in *-r (a feature shared with Italo-Celtic and Tocharian). This ending was lost by regular sound change, totally in Lycian, but only partially in Hittite, Luwian, and Palaic (the situation in Lydian is unclear). In the course of attested Hittite, the r-endings were restored, reinforced by the particle -i of the present active (Table 3.5). The details of the developments in Palaic and Luwian remain unclear due to the paucity of evidence (see Yoshida 1990: 115–117). In Lycian we find a few medio-passive forms marked by a nasal ending (1 sg. pres. sixani 'I lie', 3 sg. pres. sijên/i/sitên 'lies', 1 sg. pret. axagã 'I became', for which see Melchert 1992b). The source of this inflection is quite uncertain.

In the preterite and also in the second person singular and first person plural of the present, the Hittite medio-passive shows inherited endings enlarged by a particle -ti (reduced to -t in the preterite after Old Hittite, surely because verbal endings in -i were strongly associated with the present tense). As already seen by Neu (1968: 145), this element -ti ([−di]) must be a variant of the reflexive particle *-ti, which in the latter function appears assimilated as Hitt. -z(a). See for details of the derivation Yakubovich 2010: 199–205 and Yoshida 2010: 237–238. Late Hieroglyphic Luwian attests preterite medio-passives ending in -si (Oshiro 1993: 53–54 and Rieken 2004), which must somehow continue a reflexive use of *-soy (attested as such in Palaic), but the appearance of HLuw. -si in this function so late raises serious issues of relative chronology (cf. Yakubovich 2010: 201–202).

As in the active, the imperative is marked in the third persons by replacing -i with -u (cf. also CLuw. 3 sg. imp. āyaru and HLuw. 3 sg. imp. /iːtːiːyar/ 'let it become'), and at least in Hittite this was also spread to the first person singular. Again as in the active the first person plural exhortative in Hittite is formally identical to the indicative, and the second person plural is identical with the preterite indicative. The Hittite 2 sg. imp. ending -hut(i) is of uncertain origin, though it is likely that the -t(i) is again the reflexive particle [-di].
Verbal stem formation

As indicated above, whether or not Anatolian inherited a fully developed aspectual contrast of imperfective versus perfective, it certainly does preserve evidence for virtually every type of PIE “present”-forming stem. The following summary agrees on most substantial points with the presentation in Oettinger 1979, with the important updates in Oettinger 2002. We find the following familiar primary formations: (1) root presents (PIE *h₂t₁est₁i, *h₂-s₂-ént₁i > Hitt. ėšt₁i, ašenzi, CLuw. āšt₁i, *ašanti, Lyc. esi, *aḥnī ‘is, are’), (2) acrostatic “Narten” presents (PIE *wékt₁ < Hitt. węk₁zi, wék₂(z)anzi ‘demand(s)’), (3) barytone and oxytone media tantum (PIE *kéyor > CLuw. ziwar(i), Lyc. sijēnī ‘lies’ and renewed *kéyor > Hitt. kitta(ri), Pal. kītar, and Lyc. situñi; PIE *t/ dukör > Hitt. tuqqārī ‘is visible; important’), (4) nasal infix presents (e.g., PIE *h₂u-neh₂-ti > Hitt. ĕninkzi, ĕnninkanzi ‘wound(s)’ – see Hatry 2006 on the Hittite stem formation – and PIE *d₃wr-n₁h₂-ti, *d₃wr-n₂h₂-ént₁i > Hitt. d(u)warnezi, d(u) warnanzi ‘breaks’ – see Kloekhorst 2008: 907 on the Hittite stem formation), (5) verbs with the suffix *-n(e)u- (extremely productive, as in Hitt. huinu- and CLuw. huinu(wa)-run and Lyc. qanuw ‘cause to be slain’), (6) presents in *-ye/o- with a full-grade root (PIE *kěp₂-ye-ti, *kěp₂-yonti > Hitt. kärpiēzzi, kärpiyanzi ‘lift(s)’, Lyd. fa-korf₂ ‘undertakes’), (7) iterative presents in *-eye/o- and a zero-grade root (virtual *(s)tubh-ey/o- > CLuw. dūpiti, dupainti and Lyc. turbid, tubeiti ‘strike(s)’), and (8) causative presents in *-eye/o- and an o-grade root (PIE *lōkwēye/o- > Hitt. lukkezzi, lukkanzi ‘kindle(s)’ – see Oettinger 2002: xx).

Simple thematic presents existed in Anatolian: HLuw. tama- (/damma-/ ‘build’ with 3 sg. pres. AEDIFICARE +M₁-ri+i = /dammar(e) < *dēmh₂-eti – where the rhotacized ending reflects *-di voiced from *-ti between unaccented morae – and Hitt. swezzi, swanzzi ‘push(es), reject(s)’ < *suh₁-eti, *suh₁-onti (Oettinger 1979: 297). They are, however, startlingly rare vis-à-vis “Core Indo-European”: for one account of this situation see Jasanoff 1998. As already discussed above, “i-presents” in Hittite belong to the hi-conjugation, with an ablaut pattern that is disputed. The status of “u-presents” is unclear, with Hittite attesting one clear case in the mi-conjugation (tarḫuzz-i/tarḫzi ‘conquers’ < *tērh₂-uti – see Kloekhorst 2006: 98–101 and 2008: 835–838) and one in the ħi-conjugation (lāhui ‘pours’ < lōh₂-w-ey – see Melchert 2011b). There are numerous reduplicated stems in Anatolian, but they have not yet received a systematic treatment, and the possible relationships of the various types to those of PIE remain to be elucidated.

PIE denominative formations are also well attested in Anatolian. Those in *-ye/o- are very productive in all the languages and hardly need illustration. We also find factitives in *-eh₂, which as shown by Hittite originally belonged to ħi-conjugation (Jasanoff 2003: 139): OHiitt. 3 sg. pres. suppiyāhḥī ‘purifies’. In New Hittite there is transfer to the mi-conjugation (suppiyalzi), and this shift is complete in the other languages (e.g., Lyc. prínawat ‘builds’), but the secondary nature of this inflection is betrayed by the lack of voicing of the -t- of the ending (correct Hajnal 1995: 162, note 82, contra Melchert 1994a: 69). Anatolian also attests the extended factitive suffix *-eh₂-ye/o- represented by the Hittite type of armāizi, armanzi ‘impregnate(s)’ (beside armah’h-’) and Lyc. xttadi, xttaiti ‘harm(s)’.

Continuants of PIE root aorists are assured (Eichner 1975: 82): e.g., Hitt. kuerzi, kuranzi = CLuw. k(u)warti, *kurant₁ `cut’ (Skr. akar ‘made’) and Hitt. tēzzi ‘says’ = Lyc. tadi ‘puts’ (Skr. ādhātī ‘put’). Whether there are any attested reflexes of the PIE sigmatic aorist is uncertain. Anatolian tells us nothing about the PIE status of the thematic or reduplicated aorist.
Non-finite verbal forms

Proto-Anatolian clearly formed productive neuter verbal nouns with a suffix *-wer/-wen-. Hittite evidence suggests that these originally were inflected according to the “proterokinetic” pattern, in idealized form nom.-acc. R(é)-w(r̥), gen. R(zero)-wén-s. Hittite productively generalizes the post-vocalic form -war of the nom.-acc. and the gen. sg. -waš < *-wen-s. There are, however, some traces of post-consonantal *-w(r̥) and a generalized zero grade of the suffix: Hitt. ʰenkur, ʰenkunaš ‘offering’. Hittite no longer has a full paradigm of this verbal noun, but the old abl.-instr. *-wen-ti functions as the infinitive in -wanzi, and the endingless locative in *-wen appears as the “supine” in -wan (see below for its use). The other languages appear to have generalized the zero-grade form of the suffix, based on the use of the allative of the paradigm as the infinitive in Palaic, Luwian, and Lycian: Pal. -una, Luw. -una, and Lyc. -na < PAnat. *-una < *-uneh₂ (as per Hajnal 1995: 98, the more common Lyc. -ne reflects analogical influence of the thematic allative ending *-oh₂). The other attested Hittite infinitive in -anna is a specific Hittite innovation, representing the allative of the Hittite verbal abstract in *-eh₂-t(r̥), *-eh₂-t(n):- virtual *-eh₂-t(n)-eh₂. Hittite no longer has a full paradigm of this verbal noun, but the old abl.-instr. *-wen-ti functions as the infinitive in -wan (see below for its use). The other languages appear to have generalized the zero-grade form of the suffix, based on the use of the allative as the infinitive in Palaic, Luwian, and Lycian: Pal. -una, Luw. -una, and Lyc. -na < PAnat. *-una < *-uneh₂ (as per Hajnal 1995: 98, the more common Lyc. -ne reflects analogical influence of the thematic allative ending *-oh₂). The other attested Hittite infinitive in -anna is a specific Hittite innovation, representing the allative of the Hittite verbal abstract in *-eh₂-t(r̥), *-eh₂-t(n):- virtual *-eh₂-t(n)-eh₂. Lydian infinitives have not yet been identified with confidence. Brief mention should also be made of Hieroglyphic Luwian gerundives in -min(a), thus far attested only in predicativital function in nominal sentences with the meaning ‘(X is) to be ___ed’ (Melchert 2004b).

One of the great surprises of Anatolian from the viewpoint of other older Indo-European languages is that, as intimated earlier, there is hardly any trace of verbal adjectives in *-to- and none in *-no-. Instead, one finds in the function of a past participle (that is, one expressing an attained state) derivatives in *-e/ont-. This is the productive form in Hittite, predictably usually with a passive sense for transitive verbs (e.g., kunant- ‘killed’), but merely resultative for intransitives (e.g., uwant- ‘come, arrived’). Also unsurprising is that in generic use (i.e., without an expressed object) the participles of transitive verbs can have an active sense (e.g., adant- ‘having eaten’, pah(ha)šnuwant- ‘protecting, on guard’). How one is to explain this use versus the active processual meaning of *-e/ont- in “Core Indo-European” has yet to be decided.

In Luwian and Lycian there are mere relics of the past participle in *-e/ont- (e.g., CLuw. walant- /ulant- and Lyc. lāta- ‘dead’). The productive past participle is of the form -mma/i- = -me/i- (with the ubiquitous i-mutation). Despite its enduring popularity, the derivation of this suffix from a PIE medio-passive participle cannot possibly be correct. One must insist on the fact that the function of this participle is precisely the same as that of Hitt. -ant-: it does not express an ongoing activity “being Xed”, but rather an attained state, predictably usually passive for transitive verbs: e.g., CLuw. dūpaimma/i- ‘struck’, awimmali- ‘come, arrived’. The usual exceptions apply to transitive verbs, and we find HLuw. /adamma/i-/ ‘having eaten’ and /uwamma/i-/ ‘having drunk’. Given this meaning and the rampant productivity of neuter verbal nouns in *-men precisely in Luwo-Lycian, there should be no doubt that these past participles originate in secondary thematic derivatives with possessive sense: virtual *-o-mn-o- (Melchert 2014: 206–207).

ADVERBS AND ADPOSITIONS

There is no truly productive means of forming manner adverbs in Anatolian. Both Hittite and Luwian show use of the nominative-accusative plural neuter of adjectives in this function: e.g., Hitt. karšī (and renewed karšaya) ‘frankly’ < karšī- ‘bare, unadulterated; frank’ and CLuw. wāšu ‘well’. Hittite does show a limited productive use of adverbs in -ili (e.g., duddumili ‘silently’ < duddumili- ‘silent, mute’), almost certainly the nominative-accusative plural neuter of adjectives in *-ili- (compare Lat. -ilis).
What calls for extended comment is the Anatolian system of “local adverbs”, attested as free-standing adverbs, adpositions, and preverbs. Starke (1977: 127–180) established that in Old Hittite there were several pairs of such adverbs, one expressing location and the other direction. However, there are signs that the Old Hittite situation is in certain respects innovative vis-à-vis Proto-Anatolian. E.g., the form of the Hittite hi-verb āppāi, āppianzi ‘step back; be finished’ argues that the Proto-Anatolian form of the adverb ‘back’ was *ōpi, as attested in CLuw. āppi/HLuw. api, and that Hitt. āppa ‘back; again’ has been reshaped after other directional adverbs that came to end in -a in Hittite (such as anda ‘into’ < *endo).

Despite repeated claims to the contrary, there is no evidence that most Anatolian local adverbs represent frozen case forms of original substantives. As described in Melchert 2009c, the use of enclitic possessives with local adverbs in Old Hittite is in most cases merely analogical to new postpositions that manifestly are case forms of nouns, such as tapušz(a) ‘beside’ < tapuš- ‘side’. The one notable exception is the family of Hitt. šēr ‘above; over’ and šarā ‘up’ (with plentiful cognates elsewhere in Anatolian). Here we truly are dealing with an archaic noun referring to a height: compare Gr. πίον ‘mountain peak’. Much work remains to be done in establishing the Proto-Anatolian antecedents of the respective systems of the attested languages.

SYNTAX

Morphosyntax

The use of the nominal cases in Anatolian is mostly unremarkable in Indo-European terms. We find the “dative of disadvantage” with persons: e.g., OHitt. LÚSAGI (subj.) LUGAL-i (dat. sg.) NINDA.GUR₄.RA (obj.) ēpzi ‘takes’ = ‘The drink-server takes the leavened bread from the king’. Due to the formal merger of the dative and locative, the dative-locative could analogically also be used to express ‘place from which’ with inanimate objects, in competition with the ablative: OHitt. kardi=šmi=at ‘your heart’ (dat. sg.) + ‘it’ (nom.-acc. sg.) dāh˘un ‘I have taken’ = ‘I have taken it (the sickness) from your heart’. Hieroglyphic Luwian shows the same use of the dative-locative beside the ablative-instrumental (see KARKAMIŠ A6, §§27–28, Hawkins 2000: 125). Due to a reanalysis of a dative of goal beside an infinitive expressing purpose with motion verbs, Anatolian came to use the dative-locative for objects of infinitives besides the accusative: see Melchert 2012 (2014). On the controversial issue of “split ergativity” see Goedegebure 2012 with references to previous analyses.

To express ‘begin to __’, Hittite uses either a combination of the reflexive particle -z(a), the finite verb ēp- ‘take’, and the infinitive, or the finite verb dai- ‘put’ (secondarily also tiya- ‘step’) plus the so-called supine in -wan (see Hoffner & Melchert 2008: §§25.20 and 25.37–38). Hittite also famously develops a “serial” or “phraseological” construction that combines a finite form of pai- ‘go’ or uwa- ‘come’ with another finite verb in a single clause. The precise meaning, synchronic structure, and historical source of this construction have elicited a variety of analyses. For a recent discussion see Koller 2013 with ample references to previous treatments.

Configurational syntax: word order

The unmarked, functionally neutral word order of all the second-millennium languages is clearly SOV. Lydian also is unmistakably SOV. Lycian has manifestly innovated, but the paucity of diagnostic examples has made it hard to determine just what the “basic”
Lycian word order is; for a tentative claim of VSO see Garrett 1994: 30–32. One must emphasize the notion of “unmarked” or “basic” word order, because other orders of major constituents are by no means rare, and recent intensified study of Hittite order has revealed even more variation than previously acknowledged. In trying to make sense of this variety, one must distinguish two separate though interrelated issues: (1) how do various configurations correlate with discourse structure (topic, focus, anaphora); and (2) which orders are licensed by the syntax, and which by the phonology? Significant progress has been made in addressing these questions, but much work remains to be done. One complicating factor is that it is now clear that for Hittite one cannot use as primary data material from mythological texts or ritual incantations, since word order in these may show influence from Hattic or Hurrian (see Rizza 2007 and Rieken 2011). A systematic overview is impossible here and would be almost immediately outdated in any case. In addition to the summary in Hoffner and Melchert 2008: 406–409 (flawed by the uncritical use of material from translation literature), one may get a sense of what has been achieved and how much remains to be done by consulting Bauer 2011, Goedegebuure 2013 (with references to previous analyses), and Sideltsev forthcoming.

One famous feature of Anatolian syntax is that most clauses in connected discourse are linked to a preceding clause by “sentence-initial” conjunctions to which are attached sequences of enclitics (unemphatic anaphoric pronouns plus a variety of “particles”) by what is known as “Wackernagel’s Law”. For persuasive arguments that said conjunctions are actually interclausal see Agbayani and Golston 2010. The beginnings of this system are certainly Proto-Anatolian, but several facts argue that it was there only embryonic and that each of the Anatolian languages has elaborated it in its own fashion. First, there are differences in the order of the clitics: in Hittite the singularative clitics follow third person nominative or accusative clitics (n=at=muši conj. + nom.-acc. sg. n. ‘it’ + ‘to me’/’to him’), but in Luwian the order is the reverse (HLuw. /a/=wa=/m(u)/=an/ conj. + quotative marker + ‘to me’ + acc. sg. comm. ‘it’). Second, different morphemes are used for the same function: Hittite uses =ma to mark contrastive focus, while Palaic and Luwian employ =ppa in this function. Third, the same morpheme appears in different functions: PIE *nú ‘now’ still appears as such in Pal. nū, but it has begun to be grammaticalized as a clause-linking conjunction (Carruba 1970: 65), a development completed in Hittite, while the Lydian cognate -in (with apocope of the original vowel and then anaptyxis) comes at the end of the clitic sequence and likely has an asseverative value (that it is cognate cannot be doubted, contra Gusmani 1964: 133).

Nevertheless, some features can tentatively be attributed to Proto-Anatolian. The only clause-linking conjunction that may be Proto-Anatolian is *oh₁ (cf. Dunkel 2007: 57), the frozen instrumental of the PIE *h₁-o- anaphoric pronoun, attested as a- in Hittite (rare), Palaic, and both forms of Luwian, and in extended Lyd. ak, in all cases with a prosecutive sense, roughly ‘and then’. Contrary to the claim of Watkins (1963: 13–16) and others, the Old Hittite set of clause-linking conjunctions šu, ta, and nu cannot be compared with OIr. se, to, and no. As shown by Weitenberg (1992: 327), OHitt. šu is used only with the pret- erite, while ta is used with the present-future. This distribution supports the etymology of šu < PIE *h₁-su (Zimmer apud Dunkel 2007: 56–57) and of ta < instr. *oh₁ (Rieken 1999b: 86). In any case, all three of the cited conjunctions are creations of Hittite. Of the various “local particles” that follow the anaphoric pronouns in the clitic sequence, that most likely to have existed already in Proto-Anatolian is *-te, which probably indicated movement from one spatial domain across a boundary into another (Josephson 1995:...
171), attested in Pal. and Luw. -(a)šta, Lyd. -(i)t-, and Hitt. -tta, the last via metanalysis (Josephson 1972: 419).

**Configurational syntax: subordinate clauses**

Anatolian has conditional and temporal subordinating clauses, using a variety of conjunctions built on interrogative-relative stems (see Hoffner & Melchert 2008: 414–423 for an overview of these in Hittite). Differences in detail among the various languages leave in doubt the status of such clauses in Proto-Anatolian. Anatolian lacks “final clauses” and uses parataxis (Hitt. nu, Lyc. me): e.g., Hitt. takku LÚ-an pahšu Ęni kuški peššiezzi n=aš aki ‘if anyone makes a man fall into a fire, so that he dies’.

Our understanding of Hittite and Anatolian relative clauses has changed dramatically in the last decade, and ongoing research promises to bring further changes in the next few years. Contrary to a long-standing consensus (Garrett 1994, following Hale 1987), Goedegebuure (2009) and Huggard (2011) have shown that Hittite does not have overt “wh-movement”; the surface order of wh-interrogative and relative clauses is governed by considerations of focus. Furthermore, there is also counterevidence to the claim that Hittite distinguishes “determinate” from “indeterminate” preposed relative clauses in that the former must be preceded by at least one full constituent, while the latter occur only clause-initially (not counting clause-linking conjunctions and any attached clitics); see Held 1957, Hale 1987: 46–49, and Garrett 1994: 45–49. Note the two indeterminate relatives preceded by focused constituents in the following New Hittite text (KBo 5.4 Ro 33–34):

\[ \text{nanna} \, \text{AN}4\, \text{UTU-ŠI} \, \text{kuš} \, \text{LÚ.KÚR} \, [n=aš=tta] \, \text{LÚ.KÚR} \, ėšdu \, \text{tuk}=\text{ma} \, \text{kuš} \, \text{LÚ.KÚR} \, \text{AN} \]

His Majesty=also=enemy

‘Furthermore, whoever is an enemy to His Majesty shall be an enemy to you, while whoever is an enemy to you is an enemy to His Majesty.’

While preposed correlative relative clauses of the type just shown are statistically by far the most common type in Hittite, Probert (2006) showed that Old Hittite also has a type of embedded relative clause. Current research reveals that Hittite also has relative clauses embedded *between* constituents of the main clause, as well as “free relatives”, while postposed restrictive and non-restrictive relatives are far more common than previously acknowledged.

**LEXICON**

Tischler (1979) demonstrated that contrary to a widespread perception (see, e.g., Kronasser 1956: 219), at least two-thirds of Hittite’s core vocabulary that is known is either inherited from PIE or built on inherited material. The misperception that a majority of the Hittite lexicon is non-Indo-European is due to the nature of our textual evidence, much of which deals with the state cult and rituals. Since Hittite religion and ritual were heavily influenced by Hattic and Hurrian, unsurprisingly much of the vocabulary for the relevant personnel and apparatus is borrowed. Nor is it unusual that a significant portion of the words for Anatolian flora and fauna are loanwords. This has nothing to do with core vocabulary, which is securely Indo-European. Our knowledge of the core vocabulary of the other Anatolian languages is woefully inadequate, but what is known suggests the same for them.
THE POSITION OF ANATOLIAN

The notable differences between the Anatolian languages and the grammar reconstructed for PIE on the basis of the other subgroups has elicited a variety of responses. Some scholars have attributed them nearly entirely to changes in Anatolian (mostly losses, hence the overly simplistic label “Schwundhypothese”): see Pedersen 1938 and Eichner 1975. Others have argued that Anatolian is in Stammbaum terms a “sister” of reconstructed PIE, one that preserves many archaic features of a much earlier proto-language labeled “Indo-Hittite”, from which PIE had markedly diverged: thus Sturtevant 1933 and Lehrman 1998. In the 1960s a number of scholars proposed that the reconstruction of PIE itself, especially the verbal system, needed to be drastically revised, on the basis of data not only from Anatolian but also from other subgroups: see the very diverse views of Adrados 1963, Meid 1963, Neu 1968, and Watkins 1969.

After more than two decades during which a compromise between these diametrically opposed views seemed unlikely, there has since developed a growing consensus that the non-Anatolian languages did participate in some common innovations setting them apart from Anatolian, but that these innovations are neither particularly numerous nor for the most part profound. Nor do they preclude that Anatolian shared in certain post-PIE innovations with particular subgroups (cf. Puhvel 1994). Debate now centers on just how many revisions must be made to PIE to account for the features of Anatolian – or, to phrase it differently, just which features of “Core Indo-European” (= “Restindogermanisch”) actually represent common innovations not shared by Anatolian. For three individual viewpoints one may compare Rieken 2009, Oettinger 2013–14, and Melchert forthcoming, but one should not conclude that these by any means represent the full spectrum of opinion.

FURTHER READING


NOTES

1 In the special case of word-final accented *-óm(s), PIE *o does appear as Hitt. /oː/, thus acc. sg. comm. ku-u-un = /koːn/ < *kóm and comm. acc. pl. ku-u-uš = /koːs/ < *kòms: cf. Kloekhorst 2008: 54–57.
2 For the Hieroglyphic Luwian first and second person plural as ending in */-unts/, not /-ants/, see Yakubovich 2010: 65–68.

REFERENCES

Adrados, Francisco R. 1963, *Evolución y estructura del verbo indoeuropeo*, Instituto Antonio de Nebrija, Madrid


Boley, Jacqueline 1984, *The Hittite Hark- Construction*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck


DiGiovine, Paolo 1996, *Studio sul perfetto indoeuropeo II*, Il Calamo, Rome


Goedegebuure, Petra 2009, “Focus structure and q-word questions in Hittite,” *Linguistics* 47: 945–969

Goedegebuure, Petra 2010, “The Luwian demonstratives of place and manner,” in: Singer, Itamar (ed.), *ipamati kistamati pari tumatimis. Luwian and Hittite Studies Presented to J. David Hawkins on the Occasion of his 70th Birthday*, Institute of Archaeology, Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv: 76–94


Hajnal, Ivo 1995, *Der lykischer Vokalismus*, Leykam, Graz


Josephson, Folke 1972, The Function of the Sentence Particles in Old and Middle Hittite, Skriv Service AB, Uppsala
Kronasser, Heinz 1956, Vergleichende Laut- und Formenlehre des Hethitischen, Winter, Heidelberg
Lehrman, Alexander 1998, Indo-Hittite Redux, Paleograph, Moscow
Meid, Wolfgang 1963, Die indogermanischen Grundlagen der altirischen absoluten und konjunktiven Verballexion, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
Meier-Brügger, Michael 2000, Indogermanische Sprachwissenschaft, 7e völlig neubearbeitete Aufgabe, de Gruyter, Berlin–New York


Melchert, H. Craig 2010, “Spelling of initial /a-/ in hieroglyphic Luwian,” in: Singer, Itamar (ed.), *ipamati kistantamati pari tumatimis. Luwian and Hittite Studies presented to J. David Hawkins on the Occasion of his 70th Birthday*, Institute of Archaeology, Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv: 147–158


Neu, Erich 1968, Das hethitische Mediopassiv und seine indogermanischen Grundlagen, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden

Nollé, Johannes 2001, Side im Altertum. Geschichte und Zeugnisse, Band 2, Habelt, Bonn


Oettinger, Norbert 1979, Die Stammbildung des hethitischen Verbums, Carl, Nürnberg

Oettinger, Norbert 1986, “Indo-Hittite” -Hypothese und Wortbildung, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck


Pedersen, Holger 1938, *Hittitisch und die anderen indo-europäischen Sprachen*, Munksgaard, Copenhagen
Popko, Maciej 2008, *Völker und Sprachen Altanatoliens* [tr. Cyril Brosch], Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
Rieken, Elisabeth 1999a, *Untersuchungen zur nominalen Stammbildung des Hethitischen*, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
Rizza, Alfredo 2007, *I pronomi enclitici nei testi etei di traduzione dal hattico*, Iuculano, Pavia
Shatskov, Andrej 2006, “Some remarks on Hittite infix verbs of the type harni(n)k-,” *Altorientalische Forschungen* 33: 286–292

Sideltsev, Andrej V. forthcoming, “Clause internal and clause leftmost verbs in Hittite”


Tischler, Johann 2001, *Hethitisches Handwörterbuch*, Institut für Sprachen und Literaturen der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck


PART 4

INDO-IRANIAN
CHAPTER 1

INDO-IRANIAN

Leonid Kulikov

INDO-IRANIANS AND THEIR ORIGINS

Indo-Iranian languages (another, outdated and quite misleading term is “Aryan”), which form a major branch of the Indo-European language family, are spoken by more than a billion of speakers occupying an immense territory from the Caucasus and southeastern Anatolia in the West to Northeast India and Bengal in the East and the Maldive Islands in the South. This grouping includes the Indo-Aryan, Iranian, Nūristānī (in earlier scholarship also called Kāfir), and Dardic branches. The latter is considered by many scholars as part of the Indo-Aryan branch (e.g., Morgenstierne 1961, 1973, Strand 1973, Southworth 2005: 127, 149). Convincing argumentation for treating the Dardic languages as a separate genetic group, a fourth sub-branch of Indo-Iranian, alongside Indo-Aryan, Iranian, and Nūristānī, can be found in Kogan 2005.

All Indo-Iranian languages derive from a common ancestor, the reconstructed Proto-Indo-Iranian language that was spoken around the end of the 3rd millennium BCE. The speakers of this proto-language, Proto-Indo-Iranians, are commonly identified with the Sintashta archaeological culture and its successor, the (early) Andronovo culture, located in the vast area between the Southern Ural and the Tian Shan mountains and dated to the end of the 3rd millennium BCE to the 1st half of the 2nd millennium BCE.

The oldest preserved linguistic evidence comes from the Mitanni kingdom, which existed between ca. 1500 BCE and 1300 BCE on the territory that is now northern Syria and southeastern Anatolia (and thus almost precisely matching with the easternmost end of the territory populated by the speakers of the modern Indo-Iranian languages). The main language of the kingdom was Hurrian (belonging to the Hurro-Urartian language family, probably related to the Northeast Caucasian, or Nakh-Daghestanian, family). However, the names of the ruling elite (such as Artaššumara [~ IIr. Artas-mara ‘who thinks of Arta/Rta’] or Biridashva (biridašṷa, biriiašṷa) [~ Pṛītāśva ‘whose horse is dear’]), and, particularly, the names of the gods (Mitra, Varuṇa, Indra), as well as a number of technical terms preserved in a Hittite treatise on horse training (such as aika ‘one’ [cf. Ved. Skr. éka], panza (~ pāṅca) ‘five’), vartana ‘round’), preserve traces of an Indo-Iranian language (or perhaps, more precisely, Indo-Aryan, as a few features may point to an Indo-Aryan, rather than common Indo-Iranian, character for this hypothetical idiom; see Mayrhofer 1974).

The actual text documentation starts from the 2nd half of the 2nd millennium BCE (ca. 1200–1000 BCE) for Indo-Aryan, with the hymns of the R̥gveda (RV), the main sacred text of the Hinduism, while the text documentation of Iranian begins in the 1st half of the 1st millennium BCE (Avesta).

Due to the essentially uncontroversial character of the Proto-Indo-Iranian reconstruction, Indo-Iranian remains probably the best-established larger subgrouping within the Indo-European family and the only one that is adopted by all Indo-Europeans (even another very likely subgrouping of approximately the same level, Balto-Slavic, is doubted by a number of scholars).
The most important features characterizing Proto-Indo-Iranian as opposed to all or most other branches of Indo-European include:

(i) The merger of the two PIE vowels, e and o, in a, with the preservation of the quantity distinctions, i.e., PIE *e, *o > PIIr. *a; PIE *ē, *ō > PIIr. *ā; cf. Ved. dāśa, Av. dasā ‘ten’ (~ Gr. ὀκτά, Lat. decem) < PIE *dekъ; Ved. vāk, Av. vāxš ‘speech’ (~ Lat. uox ‘voice’) < PIE *wōkʷs. The same holds for the vocalic part of the PIE diphthongs, which invariably changes to a, i.e., PIE *ey, *oy > PIIr. *ai; etc. The only phonological context where the original opposition between two PIE timbres leaves traces in the form of a new opposition (in length) is the open non-final syllable, where the original short *o was lengthened (*o | _CV > *ā), while *e was not (Brugmann’s Law); cf. the acc. sg. form Ved. dātā́ram ‘giver’, Av. dātārəm ‘creator’ (~ Gr. δώτορα) < PIE *-tor-m̥ as opposed to acc. sg. Ved. pitāram, Av. pītārəm ‘father’ (~ Gr. πατέρα) < PIE *-ter-m̥.

(ii) Another source of PIIr. *a is the vocalic allophone of the two nasal sonants, i.e., PIE *n̥ , *m̥  > PIIr. *a; cf. Ved. matí- ‘thought’ (~ Lat. mentis ‘mind’) < PIE *mn-ti-[*mn̥-ti] and the words for ‘ten’ mentioned above.

(iii) The phonological status of *l was weakened in Indo-Iranian. l changed to r in Iranian, and in many, but not all, cases in Indo-Aryan. In particular, l always changed to r when surfacing as a vocalic allophone; in the language of the RV, words containing l are very rare, but from the end of the early Vedic period, more forms with l start to appear (perhaps originating in one or several hypothetical l-dialects, where the original opposition was preserved); cf. RV reh- as opposed to the younger Atharvavedic (Paiṗalāda) root variant leh- ‘lick’ < PIE *ley̥g̥h-.

(iv) Proto-Indo-Iranian is very conservative as far as the system of stop consonants is concerned, preserving the PIE system virtually intact: the opposition of three series – voiceless T, voiced non-aspirate D, and voiced aspirate Ḏ (or glottalized ‘D’ and simple voiced D, if we accept the glottalic theory for the PIE reconstruction) – remains without changes. Voiceless aspirates (and, within the glottalic theory, voiced aspirates, too) must represent Indo-Aryan innovation.

(v) Palatalizations: Indo-Iranian belongs to the satǝm languages; that is, the simple velar (*k *g *g̊h) and labiovelar (*kw *gw *gẘ) PIE series of consonants merged together, while the palatovelars were palatalized: *k̥ *g̊ *g̊h > *č *j̊ *j̊h; cf. Ved. dāśa, Av. dasā ‘ten’ < PIIr. *dača < PIE *dekъ (~ Gr. ὀκτά etc.). Another series of palatal consonants, PIIr. *č *ǰ *ǰh, reflects PIE simple velars and labiovelars before /ē̆/ and /i/; cf. Ved. ca, Av. -ca ‘and’ < PIE *kve (~ Lat. que etc.).

(vi) The only PIE sibilant, *s, is retroflexivized in PIIr. after i, u, r, and K (= all velars); cf. Ved. tṛṣṇā-, Av. tarśna- ‘thirst’ < PIE *trś-n- (~ Eng. thirsty); Ved. viśā-, Av. viśa- ‘poison’ < PIE *vis-ō- (~ Lat. vīrus). This phonetic law, known also as the RUKI rule, is an isogloss (partly) shared with the Balto-Slavic, Armenian, and Albanian branches.

(vii) Indo-Iranian differs from all other branches in the timbre of the vocalization of the PIE laryngeals (in the interconsonantal position): *H > *i (unconditionally in the final syllable and occasionally also in other positions); cf. PIE *ph₂,-ter- ‘father’ > PIIr. *p(i)ter- > Ved. pitár-, Av. dat. sg. pīṭrē, pōrōi, OPers. pītār-.

(viii) Indo-Iranian is the most conservative branch of Indo-European as far as the accentuation system is concerned: Vedic is the main source of our knowledge about PIE accentuation, preserving it, presumably, virtually intact.
THE INDO-IRANIAN MORPHOLOGICAL SYSTEM

From the morphological point of view, Indo-Iranian is also one of the most archaic branches of Indo-European, probably preserving the original system of inflectional and derivational categories as reconstructable for the proto-language better than any other branch.

In particular, within the nominal system Indo-Iranian perfectly preserves the three numbers (singular, dual, and plural) and eight cases (nominative, accusative, instrumental, dative, ablative, genitive, locative, and vocative) as well as the three genders of PIE. Only some regularizations in the system of endings in nominal paradigms must represent Indo-Iranian innovations, though. These include, for instance, introducing $y$ after $bʰ$ in the dative-ablative dual and plural endings $*-bʰyā(m)$ and $*-bʰyas$, respectively (for $*-bʰō$ and $*-bʰos$ reconstructable on the basis of evidence from other branches), apparently from the instrumental plural $*-bʰi-s$.

Another probable innovation in the Indo-Iranian pronominal system was adding (prefixing or suffixing) the particle of remoteness $*u/*au$ to certain forms derived from the pronominal stem $*a-$ (cf. Iranian $*aʊ-a-$ and Indo-Aryan $*ad-u → *ad-āu$ by analogy with $*sāu; *am-ū-$), in order to distinguish between proximal and distal demonstratives, presumably due to the fact that some originally distinct pronouns fell together after the merger of the two PIE vowels $*e$ and $*o$ in Indo-Iranian (Klein 1977).

The Indo-Iranian verbal system was also quite archaic. It had five moods: indicative, injunctive (very productive in the earliest periods, where it was used as an “‘extratemporal’ tense category rather than a special mood” (M. Kümmel forthcoming/2017), mentioning an event or activity as a “known fact”), imperative, optative, and subjunctive; and it distinguished between the present tense and three past tenses (aorist, imperfect, and perfect) in the indicative. The function of the future was largely taken over by the subjunctive mood, which denoted the expected action (cf. Tichy 2006).

Indo-Iranian had two voices, active and middle; at least in the 3 sg. and 3 pl. forms, many verbs could distinguish between “(medio-)passive” and “non-passive”. The “(medio-)passive” paradigm was differentiated from the non-passive forms partly by means of special stem formative morphemes (such as the present passive suffix $*-i̯a-$, the use of which in this function was an important Indo-Iranian innovation), partly by means of specific inflection (see Kümmel 1996, Kulikov 2006).

THE INDO-IRANIAN LEXICON

The inherited IE lexicon

A large part of the Common Indo-Iranian vocabulary is inherited from PIE, being, at the same time, an important source for its reconstruction. This inherited part of the lexicon covers all important domains of lexica (see numerous examples above and in the Indo-Aryan and Iranian chapters) and, like other parts of the linguistic system, testifies to a considerable conservatism of Indo-Iranian.

Loan-words in the Indo-Iranian lexicon and substrate/adstrate influence

Alongside with the well-established inherited part of the lexicon, there are a considerable number of words that cannot be traced to PIE but are safely reconstructable for Proto-Indo-Iranian on the basis of evidence from both Old Indo-Aryan and (Old) Iranian (evidence from Middle and New Iranian may be relevant, as the expected cognates may
be lacking from the Old Iranian corpus, which is somewhat more limited as compared to Old Indo-Aryan), thus representing loan-words into Proto-Indo-Iranian before its split. Such borrowings encompass a variety of cultural domains, such as agricultural and farming terms, animal names (cf. Ved. úṣṭra-, Av. uṣṭra-, OPers. uśa- < PIIr. *uštra- ‘camel’; Ved. kasyápa-, Av. kasiapa- < PIIr. *kaçápa- ‘tortoise’), household and building (cf. Ved. īṣṭakā-, īṣṭikā-, Av. īṣṭiia-, OPers. īšti- < PIIr. *išta-, *išti- ‘brick’), irrigation terms, religious terms, and mythology (Ved. aṃśú-, Av. aṣu- < PIIr. *aṃću- ‘Soma plant’; Ved. āθharvan-, Av. āθrauan- < PIIr. *āt’arvan- ‘(a particular type of) priest’ (see Pinault 2006)).

Candidates for the sources of these borrowings may be cultural languages that were spoken in and around the area populated by the Proto-Indo-Irani ans, that is, from Mesopotamia to the South Ural, around the 3rd millennium BCE, as well as some isolated languages spoken in remote mountain areas, such as Burushaski (see Tikkanen 1988). Proto-Uralic could also borrow loan-words from some Indo-Iranian dialects; see, e.g., Katz 2003. However, the origin of most of these loan-words is unclear. Quite attractive is the theory about the borrowing of the bulk of these Common Indo-Iranian loan-words from the unidentified language spoken by the population of the Bactria-Margiana Archaeological Complex that was located immediately to the south of the Andronovo culture’s area and had a well-developed urban civilization (see Lubotsky 2001).

**INDO-IRANIAN LANGUAGES IN A DIACHRONIC TYPOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE**

The relevant shared features of the languages belonging to the Indo-Iranian branch are not confined to the peculiarities inherited by Proto-Indo-Iranian from PIE and thus are shared, foremost, by the oldest representatives of this subgrouping, i.e., by Old Indo-Aryan (Vedic/Sanskrit) and Old Iranian (Avestan and Old Persian), but they are only partly (if at all) preserved in the modern members of the branch. Of no less importance are much more recent features of the group that emerged after the split of Proto-Indo-Iranian (or even of Proto-Indo-Aryan and Proto-Iranian) and must be due to the fact that many members of the Indo-Iranian branch belong to the same linguistic area (together with languages of non-Indo-European affiliation). Specifically, virtually all Indo-Aryan and Nūristānī languages as well as a few neighboring Iranian languages such as Pashto (together with the non-Indo-European Dravidian, Munda, and the isolate Burushaski) form the South Asian linguistic area (which is notorious as one of the handbook examples of a linguistic area; see Masica 1976). There are also some good reasons to extend this area further to the North and East, including such languages or families as Tocharian (Indo-European) and Turkic/Altaic into the large Central-South Asian linguistic area (see, e.g., Hock 2007).

The features briefly summarized below thus reveal the same basic type of evolution, representing shared innovations due to parallel developments and/or triggered by shared influences of neighboring (substrate or adstrate) languages. The list of linguistic features given in this section by no means claims to be exhaustive.

**Diachronic trends within the system of transitivity oppositions:**

**voice and valency-changing categories**

Considering the system of transitivity oppositions in Indo-European in a diachronic typological perspective, one may posit two major evolutionary types attested for the
members of this linguistic family (briefly outlined in Comrie 2006; for details, see Kulikov 2009; 2012). One major type is located in the West of the Indo-European area and includes such branches as Germanic, Romance, Greek, and Slavic. These branches share a number of parallel tendencies in the system of encoding transitivity oppositions and valency-changing categories that can be qualified, by and large, as instantiating a “syncretic” type of evolution: (i) The old syncretic marker encoding a number of valency-reducing (intransitivizing) derivations (such as passive, anticausative, and reflexive), the middle voice (type of inflection), is either preserved (as in Greek) or replaced with a new middle, mostly going back to the PIE reflexive pronoun *s(w)e-, (ii) The PIE morphological causatives with the suffix *-éye/o-, reflexes of which are still relatively well attested in Old Germanic (e.g., in Gothic jan-verbs) and (early) Slavic (i- causatives), virtually disappear. (iii) Many languages of this “Western” area attest the emergence and expansion of labile verbs (i.e., verbs or verbal forms that can show changes in syntactic pattern, with no formal change in the verb) of the type John opens the door / The door opens (this trend is particularly well attested in the history of English; see, e.g., McWhorter 2002, Gelderen 2011).

By contrast, several other daughter languages, mostly those belonging to some Eastern branches of Indo-European, such as, first of all, Indo-Iranian, radically abandon the syncretic strategy in the system of encoding transitivity oppositions and valency-changing categories, developing, by and large, in the opposite, “antisyncretic”, direction. The most important diachronic typological features shared by the representatives of the Eastern type include the following: (i) The middle voice declines, which amounts to the loss of most original (intransitivizing) functions of the PIE middle and the lexicalization of many middle forms; subsequently, the active/middle opposition, albeit physically preserved in the paradigm, loses a large part of its functional content, thus being degrammaticalized. (ii) Instead, most languages of this area develop special markers for several intransitivizing voices and valency-changing categories. These include, in particular, Indo-Iranian and Armenian markers of a morphological passive going back to the PIE suffix *-ye/o- and Indo-Iranian reflexive and reciprocal pronouns (cf. Ved. tanū́-, Av. tanū- ‘self’ ← ‘body’; Ved. anyó... anyá- (anyo-‘nya-), anyonya-, Av. aniiō. ainīm ‘one another, each other’; see Kulikov 2014b). Morphological causatives (in particular, the reflexes of the PIE *-éye/o-causative – cf. Vedic and Avestan morphological causatives with the suffixes -áya- and -aiia-, respectively – but also other morphological causatives, especially with nasal affixes) demonstrate a considerable increase in productivity. This increase in the productivity of morphological causatives can be observed during the entire history of Indo-Iranian languages and eventually gives rise to the complex systems with two or even more causatives (including double causatives with a reiterated causative morpheme, as in Marathi and Tajik; see examples in Masica 1976: Ch. 3) in some members of this branch, which distinguishes them from other Indo-European groups. (iii) Labile verbs, still common in (early) Old Indo-Aryan and Avestan, become rarer; in particular, in Vedic this tendency is clearly observable as early as in the post-Rgvedic language; see Kulikov 2014a.

Typologically, the antisyncretic (Eastern) type, as attested in Indo-Iranian, shares more features with the languages of some non-Indo-European families, such as Turkic (or, more generally, Altaic) or Dravidian, than with the languages of several Western Indo-European branches. This is demonstrated in Table 4.1, which compares a few related features characterizing the main trends in the development of the systems of transitivity oppositions for a variety of both Indo-European and non-Indo-European language groups.
TABLE 4.1 ENCODING TRANSITIVITY OPPOSITIONS: DIACHRONIC TYPOLOGICAL FEATURES OF SOME LANGUAGE FAMILIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>middle voice</th>
<th>morphological valency-changing categories</th>
<th>labile syntax</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>East Caucasian</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kartvelian</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egyptian/Coptic</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>(+)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo-European</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germanic</td>
<td>+ (new)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romance</td>
<td>+ (new)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slavic</td>
<td>+ (new)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>0/(+)</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indo-Iranian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkic</td>
<td>0/+</td>
<td></td>
<td>0/⁻</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0  lacking
(+)+ present but rare or non-productive
+  present
⁻  increasing (in productivity, frequency, etc.)
⁻⁻  decreasing/disappearing

Diachronic changes within the case system

As mentioned above, the Proto-Indo-Iranian morphological system was very conservative, perfectly preserving the eight PIE cases, which further remained intact in both main branches, Indo-Aryan and Iranian, for more than 1000 years after the split of Proto-Indo-Iranian, as documented in Old Indo-Aryan (Vedic) and Old Iranian (Avestan). After the end of the Old Indo-Aryan and Old Iranian periods, we observe a dramatic decline of the case systems in both subgroups, which thus represents another shared innovation. By the end of the Middle Indo-Aryan/Iranian period, the Indo-Iranian languages had lost the majority of the conservative Old Indo-Aryan/Iranian case system. Generally, only two cases survive, direct (resulting from the merger of nominative and accusative) and oblique (mostly going back to the Old Indo-Aryan/Iranian genitive); in some languages traces of some other oblique cases, such as the instrumental, locative, or ablative, can still be found, such as the Sinhala instrumental case in -en/-in and the Assamese ergative -e, both probably reflecting the OIA instrumental singular ending of the -a-declension, -ena. The functions of the lost cases are largely taken over by postpositions of different origin.

In several New Indo-Aryan and New Iranian languages we observe the grammaticalization of such new postpositions, which are normally added to the oblique case form. Very often this grammaticalization results in the amalgamation of a postposition with the oblique and, ultimately, in the rise of a new case. Such is, for instance, the origin of the two new case endings in Sinhala, viz. dat. -ṭa (< Skt. artha ‘goal, purpose’, used as the final member of a nominal compound) and gen. -ge (< Skr. grhe ‘in the house’ = loc. sg. of grha- ‘house’), and several case morphemes in Ossetic, such as dat. -en (< *ana, cf. Av. ana ‘upon, over, across’, or *anu, cf. OPers. anuv, Av. anu ‘along, after, according to’) and adessive -bæl (Digoron) (< *upari ‘above, upon, on’); for details and discussion, see Kulikov 2011.

Other shared syntactic innovations

There are a number of other syntactic innovations shared by many or most Indo-Iranian languages of both major subgroups:

(i) The emergence of the ergative construction, first of all, on the basis of the syntactic reanalysis of constructions with resultative verbal adjectives (traditionally
also called “perfect passive participles”) with the suffix -ta/-na-, is a syntactic innovation shared by several Indo-Aryan and Iranian (foremost Western Iranian) languages. This development started during the Middle Indo-Aryan/Iranian period, when the agentive noun (the passive agent) of constructions with -ta/-na-adjuncts acquired some subject properties (such as the referential control of converbs). In fact, however, the origins of the ergative alignment can presumably be dated as early as Old Indo-Aryan/Iranian or perhaps Proto-Indo-Iranian. In particular, there are some reasons to take Vedic constructions with -ta/-na-adjuncts and the genitive marking of the agent separately from canonical passives with the instrumental. According to P. K. Andersen (1986), the genitive noun displays a number of subject properties (usually animate; definite and/or refers to old information) in such constructions, and therefore they should be qualified as ergative rather than passive, properly speaking.

(ii) Constructions with oblique (non-canonical) subjects, quite common in many Indo-European branches (in particular, in the Western part of the Indo-European area; see, e.g., Barðdal et al. 2012), had become relatively rare in the easternmost branches (in particular, in Indo-Iranian), being replaced by the canonical (nomina-
tive) subject pattern. This innovation appears to be shared with some other Eastern (antisyncretic) branches of Indo-European, such as Tocharian; see Viti (forthcom-
ing). Nevertheless, many New Indo-Aryan languages have ultimately developed new oblique (non-canonical) subject constructions (see Masica 1991: 346ff.).

(iii) A remarkable feature of the syntax of many modern Indo-Iranian languages is the existence of long chains of converbs in narrative texts (see, e.g., Masica 1976). This feature is shared with a number of non-Indo-European languages of South, East, and Central Asia (cf. Bickel’s (1998) “Asian type”).

The origin of the cluster of (diachronic) typological features described above, such as, above all, the antisyncretic evolutionary type of encoding transitivity oppositions, the rise of new agglutinating case systems, and the decline of constructions with non-canonical (oblique) subjects in Old Indo-Aryan, is a difficult problem on its own. It may be partly due to the influence of substrate (or adstrate) languages of the Altaic or Dravidian type. Further study of these areal features in typological context is required for a better understanding of the mechanisms of these changes in the historical period.

**FURTHER READING**

There is no comprehensive monographic description of Proto-Indo-Iranian and its his-
torical grammar. However, the relevant chapters of de Gruyter’s forthcoming Handbook of Comparative and Historical Indo-European Linguistics, Lubotsky forthcoming/2017, Kümmel forthcoming/2017, and Schmitt forthcoming/2017, give excellent brief surveys of the corresponding parts (phonology, morphology, and the lexicon, respectively) of the Proto-Indo-Iranian linguistic system. In addition, Gotô 2013 offers a comprehensive overview of the Indo-Aryan morphological system in a diachronic perspective, tracing most of its aspects back to the Indo-Iranian. The reconstructable Indo-Iranian vocab-
ulary is fairly well represented in the Indo-Aryan etymological dictionary Mayrhofer 1992–1996.

There are several works on the South Asian linguistic area that discuss the features shared by its members, i.e., virtually all Indo-Aryan, Nūristānī, and some Iranian lan-
guages, starting with such seminal works as Masica 1976 (see also Masica 1991); see also, more recently, Southworth 2005 and Hock 2007.
REFERENCES


Kogan, Anton I. 2005, *Dardskie jazyki: genetičeskaja xarakteristika* [Dardic languages: Genetic characterization], Vostočnaja Literatura, Moskva


Mayrhofer, Manfred 1974, *Die Arier im Vorderen Orient – ein Mythos?* (Sitzungsberichte der Oesterreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften 294,3), Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna


INTRODUCTION

General information

The Indo-Aryan languages (sometimes also referred to, misleadingly and not quite correctly, as Indic) represent the largest group of the Indo-European both by the total number of speakers of the present-day Indo-Aryan languages (approx. one and a half billion of the total three billion speakers of Indo-European languages) and by the number of languages (ca. 225 languages recognized, for instance, by Ethnologue, thus making up more than half of all Indo-European languages listed by this source). The largest Indo-Aryan languages include Hindi and Urdu (about 240 million speakers), Bengali (about 230 million), Punjabi (about 110 million), Marathi (about 70 million), Rajasthani (about 50 million) and Gujarati (about 45 million). At present, Indo-Aryan languages are spoken, above all, on the Indian subcontinent, also referred to as South Asia. This region includes India proper (officially the Republic of India), Bangladesh, Pakistan, Nepal, Bhutan, Sri Lanka and the Maldives (Republic of the Maldives). Due to labor migration, large groups of speakers of Indo-Aryan languages have settled all over the world, and these languages are now spoken in a number of diasporas, in particular, in such regions as South-East Asia, Africa, South America (in particular, Guyana and Surinam), Australia and Melanesia (in particular Fiji), as well as in the USA and some European countries, foremost in the United Kingdom.

The Indo-Aryan group is also the easternmost branch of the Indo-European languages (except for the extinct Tocharian languages, which were spoken still further to the East). The Indo-Aryan-speaking peoples probably came to the Indian subcontinent from the North-West, entering the greater Punjab (where the oldest Vedic text, the R̥gveda, was composed) by the end of the first half of the second millennium BC. In that epoch, Proto-Indo-Aryan was a single language (still very close to Proto-Iranian), which started to split into dialects essentially after the arrival in India.

Chronology of the Indo-Aryan languages and the sociolinguistic situation in ancient India

The most ancient Indo-Aryan language is Vedic (Vedic Sanskrit), characterized as the main representative of the Old Indo-Aryan (OIA) linguistic period in the development of the Indo-Aryan languages, which is attested from the second millennium BC onwards. Chronologically, Vedic can be divided into at least two main periods, early Vedic (also called “mantra language”, i.e. the language of the hymns addressed to the Vedic gods, mantras and magic spells, and middle/later Vedic (also called “Vedic prose”). The oldest layer of Vedic is attested in the language of the R̥gveda (RV), which remains the main sacral text of the Hindus and which can approximately be dated to the second half of the second millennium BC. Within the RV, we can distinguish between the early RV (“family books”, or maṇḍalas, which include books II–VII) and the late RV (encompassing, above all, maṇḍalas I and X, as well
as a part of book VIII, Vālakhilya); books VIII and IX are chronologically rather heterogeneous. The language of the second most ancient text, the Atharvaveda (AV), resembles in many respects (and is essentially synchronic with) the language of the late RV. Early Vedic is followed by middle and late Vedic (= the language attested in the Brāhmaṇas, Āraṇyakas, oldest Upaniṣads and Śūtras); the post-Vedic period covers younger Upaniṣads and Śūtras, as well as Epic and Classical Sanskrit. The term “Sanskrit” is sometimes used as a cover term encompassing the idioms of both the Vedic (= Vedic Sanskrit) and post-Vedic periods.

The absolute chronology of these periods poses serious problems (see, e.g., Witzel 1995: 97f.), so that we can only afford very rough approximations. Thus, the early Vedic period cannot be dated earlier than 1500 BC (and it hardly begins much later than 1200 BC); the middle Vedic period probably starts after 800 BC; and the post-Vedic period must have started somewhere in the second half of the first millennium BC, hardly much earlier than 300 BC.

The Middle Indo-Aryan époque lasts approximately from 600 BC (the time to which the oldest Middle Indic, Pāli, texts may reach back) till the end of the first millennium AD. From 1000 AD onward, the earliest forms of New Indo-Aryan (NIA) languages, such as Old Hindi, Old Bengali etc., are attested.

The general chronology of the Indo-Aryan languages as well as the main subdivisions within the Old and Middle Indo-Aryan periods is shown in Figure 4.1.

The sociolinguistic situation in ancient India is a particularly complex issue and requires at least a short commentary. Already by the Middle Vedic period, Sanskrit was no longer a spoken language but co-existed, as a sacral language, alongside the Middle Indo-Aryan (MIA) vernaculars. During the middle and late MIA period, a number of languages (or, to be more precise, “forms of speech”) were used in India. In fact, we are dealing with triglossia, or even polyglossia: Sanskrit was used in the Hindu sacral context, in scientific treatises and some literary works; MIA languages (Prākrits) were used in poetry and dramatic works as well as in religious (Buddhist and Jainist) texts and in epigraphy. Late MIA vernaculars (Apabhraṃśa Prākrits) found their place in the literary tradition as well, while, finally, the colloquial vernaculars, which represented the earliest forms of the NIA languages, were employed in everyday life.

It is important to emphasize that in the course of these developments Sanskrit and Prākrits were not replaced and ousted by later varieties (i.e. Sanskrit by Prākrits, Prākrits by Apabhraṃśas, etc.), but moved up vertically into the position of the high/prestigious form of speech (as indicated by simple arrows in Figure 4.2), to be imitated by the low varieties of speech.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Periods</th>
<th>Old Indo-Aryan</th>
<th>Middle Indo-Aryan</th>
<th>New Indo-Aryan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
<td>Pāli</td>
<td>Aṣoka Prākrits, Middle Prākrits, Apabhraṃśa</td>
<td>Hindi, Marathi, Bengali, Assamese, Sinhala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Early Vedic</td>
<td>Middle Vedic</td>
<td>Late Vedic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Early Post Vedic – Epic Sanskrit – (Class. Sanskrit)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texts</td>
<td>Atharvaveda</td>
<td>Yajurveda, early Brāhmaṇas</td>
<td>Mahābhārata, Rāmāyaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>late Brāhmaṇas, Āraṇyakas</td>
<td>Upaniṣads, Śūtras</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years</td>
<td>-1200</td>
<td>-1000</td>
<td>-500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIGURE 4.1 CHRONOLOGY OF INDO-ARYAN LANGUAGES AND TEXTS
All these languages (or forms of speech) co-existed with each other. Most importantly, while the phonological systems and inventories of morphological forms of OIA and MIA languages have been preserved basically intact over the centuries, we can observe numerous traces of the influence of the spoken MIA and NIA vernaculars in the syntax and semantics of forms in the languages of higher rank. In a way, their grammatical systems, albeit morphologically stable, were open for syntactic “infection” from below, as indicated by the vertical dotted arrows in Figure 4.2. This fact is of crucial importance for understanding the syntactic developments in the late OIA and MIA texts.

Another peculiar feature of the sociolinguistic situation in Ancient India is the enormous authority of the Ancient Indian linguistic tradition, differing in many respects from the younger traditions of Europe and, particularly, that of Pāṇini, the author of the famous grammatical treatise *Aṣṭādhyāyī* (lit. ‘consisting of eight chapters’), dating to the fifth to sixth century BC. By now, it has become the *communis opinio* that the language described by Pāṇini (Pāṇini’s object language) can be roughly identified with middle Vedic Sanskrit (also known as the language of the Vedic prose), attested in the Brāhmaṇas, Āraṇyakas, early Upaniṣads and Sūtras. The oldest of these prose texts can probably be dated to the middle of the first millennium BC (see Figure 4.1). However, this scheme is imprecise in some respects. In particular, we find linguistic phenomena (forms, constructions etc.) that are prescribed by Pāṇini’s grammar but are not found in the Vedic corpus. The most plausible explanation for this mismatch can be found in the peculiar sociolinguistic situation in Ancient India, briefly outlined above. Specifically, a number of linguistic phenomena described by grammarians did not appear in Vedic texts but existed within the semi-colloquial scholarly discourse of the learned community of Sanskrit scholars (comparable to Latin scholarly discourse in medieval Europe); for a discussion of the linguistic status of the Pāṇinian Sanskrit, see Kulikov 2013 and Hock 2016. Some such phenomena may result from the influence of Middle Indic dialects spoken by Ancient Indian scholars, thus representing syntactic and morphological calques from their native dialects onto the Sanskrit grammatical system.
Furthermore, we even have some reasons to assume that the rise and rapid development of the Pāṇinian prescriptive grammatical tradition was due, foremost, to the fact that Vedic had ceased to be a living language and the necessity of its codification had been clearly formulated by the contemporary scholarly community. This task was particularly pressing in view of increasing variation within the (semi-colloquial) idiom – essentially based on Middle Vedic Sanskrit, but heavily influenced by Middle Indic dialects – that was used by Ancient Indian paṇḍitas in their scientific and, to some extent, informal discourse.

Remarks on the genetic classification of (new) Indo-Aryan languages

The genetic classification of Indo-Aryan languages is a much debated and fairly controversial issue. Due to a variety of circumstances, such as the peculiar sociolinguistic situation in Ancient and Medieval India, strong influence from the languages of the sacral and cultural tradition (above all, Sanskrit), and strong convergent processes that never stopped during the more than three thousand year history of the Indo-Aryan languages on the Indian subcontinent, a consistent genetic classification of the modern Indo-Aryan languages is virtually impossible. All classifications are mainly based on structural (grammatical) features, rather than on phonetic developments, and typically posit four or five major subgroups. Thus, according to the notorious Grierson’s division, the eastern languages (foremost, Bengali, Oriya and Assamese) share more features with the southern (Marathi and Sinhala with the closely related Maldivian) and northwestern (Sindhi, Lahnda) languages than with two other groups, the “inner”, or central (Western Hindi), and the “intermediate” (Eastern Hindi, Panjabi, Nepali etc.), which implies a larger subdivision into “outer” (= eastern + southern + northwestern) and “inner” languages. Some scholars attempted to trace at least this macro-division back to the dialectal variation within late Old Indo-Aryan and MIA periods and consider such features as, in particular, the merger of the three Old Indo-Aryan sibilants (ś, ś, ṣ) in s as “East-West” (= “outer”) innovation. The three- or two-fold macro-division of the Indo-Aryan languages is often connected with the hypothesis about two waves of Indo-Aryan migration, where the first wave is said to correspond to the outer group.

This chapter will concentrate on the earliest attested Indo-Aryan language, Vedic Sanskrit, which can be roughly identified with Old Indo-Aryan and provides the most valuable evidence for Indo-European comparative studies and Indo-European reconstruction. Vedic is one of the most ancient attested Indo-European languages, and from the structural point of view this languages is considered in many respects as one of the closest approximations to the reconstructed Proto-Indo-European language. Vedic and post-Vedic Sanskrit are documented with an enormous corpus of literature – larger than the corpus of any other Indo-European literary tradition.

The Vedic corpus includes four main categories of texts, or Vedas, which fulfill different roles in the Hindu ritual: reciting hymns (ṛc-), pronouncing sacrificial formulae (yajus-) that accompany performing sacrifices, chanting songs (sāman-); the fourth Veda, which mainly contains magic spells and is called Atharvaveda was added later to the Vedic canon. Each Veda is transmitted in a number of schools, or “branches” (śākhās), and is subdivided into four genres of texts, depending on their function within the ritual: Saṃhitās (mantras addressed directly to the gods), Brāhmaṇas and Āraṇyaka (explanatory texts and commentaries on mantras) and Upaniṣads (philosophical texts). These four categories are followed by a variety of Sūtras related to the rituals as well as scientific and law texts (śāstras). The content of the Vedic and early post-Vedic corpus of texts is summarized in Table 4.2.
### TABLE 4.2 VEDIC TEXTS AND SCHOOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>re- (hymns)</th>
<th>sāman- (chants)</th>
<th>yajus-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Šākala</td>
<td>Bāṣkala</td>
<td>Kauthuma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Šruti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śaṅhitās (mantras)</td>
<td>RV</td>
<td>RVKh.</td>
<td>SV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brāhmaṇas</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>KB</td>
<td>PB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āraṇyakas</td>
<td>AĀ</td>
<td>ŚA</td>
<td>JUB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upaniṣads</td>
<td>AiU</td>
<td>KauṣU (= AĀ 2.4–6)</td>
<td>ChU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Śrauta-Sūtras</td>
<td>ĀśSS</td>
<td>ŚŚS</td>
<td>LatyŚS DrāhyŚŚ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vedāṅga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grhya-Sūtras</td>
<td>ĀśGS</td>
<td>ŚGS</td>
<td>GobhGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KauṣGS</td>
<td></td>
<td>DrāhyGS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitrmedha- Sūtras</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vyākaraṇa [grammatical treatises]: Pāṇini’s Aṣṭādhyāyī; Nirukta [etymology]; Jyotiṣa [astronomy/ astrology]; etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharma-Sūtras</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smṛti (Dharma-Śāstras)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ManB, SVB

GautPS

Vyākaraṇa [grammatical treatises]: Pāṇini’s Aṣṭādhyāyī; Nirukta [etymology]; Jyotiṣa [astronomy/ astrology]; etc.

Dharma-Sūtras

GautDhs  YājñSmṛ.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Taittirīya</th>
<th>Maitrāyaṇī</th>
<th>Kāṭhaka</th>
<th>Kapiṭhala</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TS(m)</td>
<td>MS(m)</td>
<td>KS(m)</td>
<td>KpS(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(TS'), TB</td>
<td>(MS')</td>
<td>(KS'),</td>
<td>(KpS')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TĀ</td>
<td></td>
<td>KāṭhĀ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaiU</td>
<td>MaitrU</td>
<td>KāṭhU</td>
<td>MunḍU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= TĀ 7–9)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MNU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= TĀ 10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢvetU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhŚS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VādhśS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BhārŚS</td>
<td>MānŚS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpŚS</td>
<td>VārŚS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirŚS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VaikhŚS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BhārGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpGS</td>
<td>MānGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirGS</td>
<td>VārGS</td>
<td>KāṭhGS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VaikhGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢgnivGS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhPS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirPS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpDhS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhDhS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirDhS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ViṣṇuŚmr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(sacrificial formulae)*

**athanvan**- (magic spells)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Šaunakiya</th>
<th>Paippalāda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*ŚvetU* | MaitrU | KāṭhU | MunḍU |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BaudhŚS</th>
<th>VādhśS</th>
<th>BhārŚS</th>
<th>VaikhŚS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ĢpŚS</td>
<td>VārŚS</td>
<td>HirŚS</td>
<td>VaikhŚS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpGS</td>
<td>MānGS</td>
<td>KāṭhGS</td>
<td>KauśS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BaudhŚS</th>
<th>VādhśS</th>
<th>BhārŚS</th>
<th>VaikhŚS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ĢpŚS</td>
<td>VārŚS</td>
<td>HirŚS</td>
<td>VaikhŚS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpGS</td>
<td>MānGS</td>
<td>KāṭhGS</td>
<td>KauśS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BaudhŚS</th>
<th>VādhśS</th>
<th>BhārŚS</th>
<th>VaikhŚS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ĢpŚS</td>
<td>VārŚS</td>
<td>HirŚS</td>
<td>VaikhŚS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĢpGS</td>
<td>MānGS</td>
<td>KāṭhGS</td>
<td>KauśS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vedic Texts and Schools**

- śruti
- r̥c (hymns)
- sāman (chants)
- atharvan (magic spells)
- Saṃhitās (mantras)
- Brāhmaṇas
- Āraṇyakas
- Upaniṣads
- vedāṅga (grammar, etymology, astronomy/astrology, etc.)
- Smr̥ti (Dharma-Śāstras)

**Middle Vedic**

- *ŚvetU* | MaitrU | KāṭhU | MunḍU |

**Late Vedic**

- *ŚvetU* | MaitrU | KāṭhU | MunḍU |

**Early Vedic**

- *ŚvetU* | MaitrU | KāṭhU | MunḍU |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AĀ</td>
<td>Aitareya-Āraṇyaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB</td>
<td>Aitareya-Brāhmaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀgnivGS</td>
<td>Āgniveśya-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AitU</td>
<td>Aitareya-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀpDhS</td>
<td>Āpastamba-Dharma-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀpGS</td>
<td>Āpastamba-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀpM</td>
<td>Āpastamba-Mantrapāṭha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀpŚS</td>
<td>Āpastamba-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀśGS</td>
<td>Āśvalāyana-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĀśŚS</td>
<td>Āśvalāyana-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td>Atharvaveda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVP</td>
<td>AV, Paippalāda recension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVŚ</td>
<td>AV, Śaunakīya recension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhDhS</td>
<td>Baudhāyana-Dharma-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhGS</td>
<td>Baudhāyana-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhPS</td>
<td>Baudhāyana-Pitr̥ medha-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BaudhŚS</td>
<td>Baudhāyana-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BĀU(K)</td>
<td>Brhad-Āraṇyaka-Upaniṣad (Kāṇva recension)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BĀUM</td>
<td>Brhad-Āraṇyaka-Upaniṣad, Mādhyandina recension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BhārGS</td>
<td>Bhāradvāja-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BhārPS</td>
<td>Bhāradvāja-Pitr̥ medha-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BhārŚS</td>
<td>Bhāradvāja-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br.</td>
<td>Brāhmaṇas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChU</td>
<td>Chāndogya-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DrāhyGS</td>
<td>Drāhyāyaṇa-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DrāhyŚS</td>
<td>Drāhyāyaṇa-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GautDhS</td>
<td>Gautama-Dharma-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td>Gopatha-Brāhmaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GobhGS</td>
<td>Gobhila-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirDhS</td>
<td>Hiranyakṣi-Dharma-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirGS</td>
<td>Hiranyakṣi-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirPS</td>
<td>Hiranyakṣi-Pitr̥ medha-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HirŚS</td>
<td>Hiranyakṣi-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĪŚU</td>
<td>Īśa-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JB</td>
<td>Jaiminiya-Brāhmaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JGS</td>
<td>Jaiminiya-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JŚS</td>
<td>Jaiminiya-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUB</td>
<td>Jaiminiya-Upaniṣad-Brāhm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaṭhā</td>
<td>Kaṭha-Āraṇyaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KaṭhGS</td>
<td>Kaṭhaka-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaṭh-Śaṃk.</td>
<td>Kaṭhaka-Śaṃkalana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KaṭhU</td>
<td>Kaṭha-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KātyŚS</td>
<td>Kātyāyaṇa-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KausGS</td>
<td>Kausṭaka-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KausU</td>
<td>Kausṭaki-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KauśŚ</td>
<td>Kauśika-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KB</td>
<td>Kausṭaki-Brāhmaṇa (= Śāṅkhāyana-Brāhmaṇa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KenaU</td>
<td>Kena-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KpS</td>
<td>Kapiṣṭhala-Kaṭha-Śaṃhitā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KS</td>
<td>Kaṭhaka( Śaṃhitā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LātyŚS</td>
<td>Lātyāyaṇa-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LaugGS</td>
<td>Laugākṣi-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaitrU</td>
<td>Maitri- (Maitrī), Maitrāyaṇa-, Maitrāyaṇīya-Upaniṣad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ManB</td>
<td>Mantra-Brāhmaṇa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MānGS</td>
<td>Mānava-Gr̥ hya-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MānŚS</td>
<td>Mānava-Śravaṇa-Sūtra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ManuSmṛ.</td>
<td>Manu-Smr̥ ti (= Mānava-Dharma-Śāstra)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The phonological system of Old Indo-Aryan

The phonological system of Vedic includes only two vowels proper, a and ā, which differed not only in length but also in timbre (the long vowel was a back vowel). Other monophthong items represent either vocalic allophones of sonants (\(v/i\), \(r/ṛ\) etc.; the contrast between \(v\) and \(u\) is phonemic, not allophonic, however) or former diphthongs (\(e\), \(o\), phonetically long and probably still preserving the diphthong pronunciation in early Old Indo-Aryan). The vowel system can be summarized as follows:

Vowels proper:

| a | ā |

|---|---|
Diphthongs:

e o
ai au

Sonants that have vocalic variants:

v ~ u ū
y / i ĭ
r / ř (ř)
l / (ł)

The consonant system includes plosives (voiceless, voiceless aspirates, voiced and voiced aspirates) and nasals (some of which have weak or no phonemic status), organized by five places of articulation, as well as three sibilants and the voiced (pharyngeal) ĥ:

**TABLE 4.4 OLD INDO-ARYAN CONSONANTISM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place of articulation</th>
<th>pharyngeal</th>
<th>(morpho-phonological symbols)</th>
<th>labial</th>
<th>dental</th>
<th>retroflex</th>
<th>palatal</th>
<th>velar</th>
<th>laryngeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless stops</td>
<td>(T)</td>
<td></td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ţ</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless aspirates</td>
<td>(Th)</td>
<td></td>
<td>ph</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>ţh</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced stops</td>
<td>(D)</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ţ/ļ</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced aspirates</td>
<td>(Dh)</td>
<td></td>
<td>bh</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>ţh</td>
<td>jh</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasals</td>
<td>(N)</td>
<td></td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ŋ/ā</td>
<td>ņ/ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless fricatives</td>
<td>(S)</td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ṡ</td>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>ś</td>
<td></td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced fricatives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Accentuation

A number of the early and middle Vedic texts mark accents. In particular, both early Vedic texts, RV and AV (in the Śaunakīya recension), as well as a number of early Saṃhitā prose texts (Taittirīya and Maitrāyaṇī) and early Brāhmaṇas (Taittirīya, ŚB), are preserved in accented form.

Phonetically, three tones (degrees of pitch) can be distinguished, high (udātta’) [= principal accent], middle (svarita’) and low (anudātta). Phonologically, we only have an opposition between the vowels (or syllables) that bear the principal accent, or the high pitch, and those which bear no principal accent (= unaccented), i.e. middle or low pitch. A word-form can have only one principal accent (or high pitch), except for some compounds and tavāi-infinitives. The placement of middle and low pitches is determined automatically within the sequence of words forming metrical units (pāda): (i) all vowels/ syllables that have no principal accent bear the low pitch (anudātta); and (ii) the vowel/ syllable that immediately follows udātta receives the middle pitch (svarita), unless the following syllable bears high pitch (udātta).

The European tradition of the transcription of Vedic texts marks only the principal accent (high pitch),2 using the acute accent mark (á etc.). Svarita is marked, by using the gravis accent mark (ā etc.), only if the vowel that bears the preceding udātta is not written as the full vowel as well as in the case of “independent svarita” (due to a particular
external sandhi). By contrast, the Devanāgarī notation accepted for the RV, AV and Taittirīyā texts marks only udātta and svarita.

There are certain historically conditioned (essentially going back to the Proto-Indo-European morphophonological system) correlations between the ablaut grade and the placement of the accent. In particular, the first morpheme that shows a non-zero grade typically bears the accent. Yet numerous exceptions and analogical developments make these two parameters essentially independent from the synchronic point of view.

A number of word-forms bear no principal accent. These include (i) finite verbal forms, unless they are employed at the beginning of a sentence and/or pāda (= minimal metrical unit), or in a subordinate clause; (ii) vocatives, except at the beginning of a sentence and/or pāda; and (iii) clitics.

History of common Indo-Aryan phonemes

Vowels and diphthongs

The vowel system of Common Indo-Aryan is almost identical to that of Proto-Indo-Iranian and reproduces its main distinctive features: the loss of most quality distinctions (*e/o), as opposed to the preservation of most quantity (length) distinctions. The main innovations in Indo-Aryan (partly shared with Iranian) include (i) the merger of all proper Proto-Indo-European vowels (that is, *e and *o) as well as the vocalic allophones of the nasal sonants in *a; the same holds for its long pendants and vocalic elements of diphthongs; (ii) monophthongization of diphthongs (*VI > *e, *Vu > *o); and (iii) merger of the vocalic variants of *i/*y and of all laryngeals in *i.

The history of the Common/Old Indo-Aryan vowels and diphthongs can be illustrated with the following examples:

\[ a < *e, *o, *m, *n \]

\[ dása ‘ten’ < *dekʰ, cf. Gr. δέκα, Lat. decem \]
\[ márta ‘mortal, man’ < *mor-to-, cf. Gr. (Kallimachos) μορτοι pl. \]
\[ ájra ‘field’ < *h₂eǵ-ro-, cf. Gr. ἔγρος, Lat. ager, Goth. akras \]
\[ māti- f. ‘thought’ < *mṭi-, cf. Lat. mēns, mentis f. ‘mind’, Lith. mintis f. \]
\[ a-(pūtra-) ‘without (a son)’ < *ṇ- adj., cf. YAv. a-puṭra-, Gr. ἀ-ϑεος adj. ‘without a god’, Lat. in-, Goth. un- \]

\[ ā < *ē, *ō, *o (|_CV, _#), *eH, *oH, *mH, *nH \]

\[ mātā ‘mother’ < *meh₂tē(t), cf. Av. mātā, Gr. μάτηρ, Lat. māter \]
\[ vāk ‘speech, voice’ < *wōkʷs, cf. OAv. vāxš, Lat. uōx \]
\[ jānu- ‘knee’ < *ǵōnu-, cf. YAv. zānu ᵗ, Gr. γόνο \]

The only trace of the original Proto-Indo-European *e/o distinction can be found in the open non-final syllable, where PIE *o is lengthened, in accordance with Brugmann’s Law, which operated as early as Indo-Iranian, cf. 1 sg. perf. jagāma < *gʷe-gʷom₂-h₂-e (cf. Gr. μέμνενα) vs. long vowel in 3 sg. perf. jagāma < *gʷe-gʷom₂-e (cf. Gr. μέμνευε; or in causatives like janāyati ‘to beget’ (< *ǵonh₂-eye-), not **jānāyati!)

\[ jātā-‘born’ < *ǵnH-to-, cf. Lat. nātus \]
i < *i, *H/o (ir < *rH | _V)

i-hí ‘to go’, 2 sg. imp. < *h₁-i-ḍi, cf. OCS idi, Gk. ἰὴ
pitár ‘father’ < *ph₁-tē(r), gen. *ph₁tr-ēs, *-ōs, cf. Gr. πατήρ, πατρός; Lat. pater, -tris;
Goth. fadar
-mahī (sec. ending 1 pl. mid.) < *-medʰh₁, cf. Gr. -μέθα
-tirā ‘to pass’ 2 sg. imp. act. < *-tēr₂-s-, cf. LHitt. tar-ra-at-ta (<*tēr₂-o-to-) ‘to be
able’; Lat. trāns (<*tēr₂-nt-)

ī < *iH, *H/o (ir < *rH, *lH | _C)

jīvā- ‘alive, living’ < *g₂ih₁-wō-, cf. Lat. uīuus, OCS živъ, Lith. gývas
pu-n-i-mas ‘to cleanse’ 1 pl. pres. < *pu-n-H-mes
a-tārīt ‘to pass’ 3 sg. aor. < *e-tēr₂-s-
tīrya- ‘to pass’ perf. ptcp. < *-tēr₂-no-

u < *u (ur < *rH | _V)

vāsini, uśmāsi ‘to wish’, 1 sg., 1 pl. pres. < *wek-mi, *uḳ-mes, cf. OAv. vasəmī,
usōmahī /vasmi, usmahi/, Hitt. 1 sg. ú-e-ek-mi
sphurāti ‘kicks’ < *sp₂ḥ₁-H-e-, cf. Lat. spernō ‘to dissociate, reject, spurn’, OIc. sperma
‘to kick out with the feet’

ū < *uH (ūr < *rH, *lH | _C)

mūṣ- ‘mouse’ < *muHs-, cf. Gr. μῦς; Lat. mūs; OHG mūs; Russ. myš
pūrō- ‘full’ < *pl̥₁H-no-, cf. Goth. fulls, Lith. pilnas, OCS plъnъ, Av. pərəna-

r < *r, *l

mṛtā- ‘died, dead’ < *mr-to-, cf. Lat. mortuus
vēkā- ‘wolf’ < *wl̥₂-k₁-o-, cf. Goth. wulfis, Lith. vilkas, ORuss. vulkɔ
Γ arises from r analogically, cf. piṭṛn ‘father’, acc. pl. (*ph₂r-h₁-ns) in analogy with devā-
‘god’ : acc. pl. devān

e < *ey, *oy

ēti ‘to go’, 3 sg. pres. < *h₂eyti, cf. Gr. ἔτη
 cetāyati ‘to reveal’ < *k₂ōyt-ey-, cf. Goth. haidu- (< *k₂oyt-ū- or *k₂o rupture)–
‘manner’

ai < *ey, *ōy
(vēk-)aih ending instr. pl. o-decl. < *-ōys, cf. Lith. vilk-aĩs, Lat. lup-īs

o < *ew, *ow

ōjas- ‘strength, power’ < *h₂ewg-es-, cf. Lat. augustus ‘elevated’; Lith. augestis
‘growth’


bódhati ‘to perceive’ < *bhewdh-e-, cf. Gr. πεύϑομαι ‘to learn, to hear’
bodháyati ‘to make awake’ (caus.) < *bhowdh-eye-ti, cf. OCS buditi

au < *ēw, *ōw

dyáuh ‘heaven, Father Sky’ nom. sg. < *dyēw-s, cf. Gr. Ζεύς, Lat. diūs
gáuḥ nom. sg. ‘cow’ < *gōw-s, cf. Gr. βοῦς

Sonants

The system of sonants is quite conservative, except for the weakening of the phonemic status of l (completely lost in Iranian, but partly preserved in Indo-Aryan), which merges with r in many cases.

\( y < *i/y \) | _V (allophonic variant of i)

\( yívan- ‘young, young hero’ < *h₂yu-h₂, on-, cf. Arm. yavanak/yovanak ‘young (of animal)’; Lat. iuvenis \)

\( r < *r, *l \)

bhrú- ‘(eye)brow’ < *h₂bʰruH-, cf. Gr. ὀφρῦς; OEng. brū; Lith. bruvis; OCS brъvь
mriyá-te ‘die’ < *mr̥ye-, cf. Lat. morior
srávas- ‘fame’ < *klēwes-, cf. Gr. κλέος ‘call, fame’, OCS slovo ‘word’

\( l < *l, (*r) \)

lúbhyati ‘to be in disorder’ < *lubʰ-, cf. OCS ljubiti ‘to love’
reh-leh- (RV)/(AVP+) ‘to lick’ < *leyǵʰ-, cf. OCS lizati

\( v < *u/w \) | _V

vā́k ‘speech, voice’ < *wōk-w, s, cf. OAv. vāxš, Lat. uōx

Plosives

The system of sonants and plosive consonants is both conservative, preserving the main contrasts of the Proto-Indo-European consonantism, and innovative, exhibiting a number of additions to the original system. The most important innovations include (i) the rise of voiceless aspirates from the combination of voiceless stops and laryngeals (*TH > Th); (ii) the rise of retroflex consonants, foremost on the basis of retroflexivization of s after r, k and vowels distinct from ā˘ (see also the section on sandhi below), which further retroflexivizes adjacent dental stops; retroflexivization of n after r; and the development of final *-ks > ṭ; (iii) two palatalizations, which result, in particular, in the merger of the Proto-Indo-European voiced palatal gutturals (*ḡ and *gʰ) with simple voiced gutturals before front vowels (e, ī) in j and h, respectively; notice that these two types of sources can still be distinguished morphophonologically; that is, they yield distinct reflexes (j₂ and h₂ as opposed to j₁ and h₁) in sandhi.
The history of the Common/Old Indo-Aryan consonants is summarized and illustrated with examples below:

**VELARS**

\[ k < *k\textsuperscript{(w)} | \_X_{\text{velar}}, *i \]

- **kād** nom./acc. sg. n. interrog. pron. \(< \ast k\textsuperscript{w}od\)
- **lokā-** m. ‘free/light space, world’ \(< \ast \text{lewk}\text{-o-}\)
- **lokā-** m. ‘light, white, bright’
- **lāx** f. ‘light’

\[ \text{kh} < \ast k\textsuperscript{w}H | \_V_{\text{velar}}, *i \]

- **šākharā-** ‘branch, twig’ \(< *\text{kok}[\text{w}]-\text{h}_2\)
- **lokā-** m. ‘free/light space, world’ \(< *\text{lewk}-o-, \text{Gr. }

\[ g < *g\textsuperscript{(w)} | \_X_{\text{velar}}, *i \]

- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’ \(< *g\textsuperscript{o}m\)
- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’
- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’
- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’
- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’
- **gām** acc. sg. ‘cow’

\[ \text{gh} < \ast g\textsuperscript{wh} | \_X_{\text{velar}}, *i \]

- **ghnānti** ‘to slay’ 3 pl. pres. \(< *g\text{wh}nenti\)
- **ghnānti** ‘to slay’ 3 pl. pres. \(< *g\text{wh}nenti\)
- **ghnānti** ‘to slay’ 3 pl. pres. \(< *g\text{wh}nenti\)
- **ghnānti** ‘to slay’ 3 pl. pres. \(< *g\text{wh}nenti\)
- **ghnānti** ‘to slay’ 3 pl. pres. \(< *g\text{wh}nenti\)

\[ \text{i} < *n | \_C_{\text{velar}} \]

The velar nasal emerges only through sandhi before velar plosives, and the following example represents the only grammatical context where this sound has phonemic status:

\[ \text{prāṅc-} \]

- **prāṅc-** nom. sg. m. of the adjective **prāṅc-** ‘directed forwards’

**PALATALS**

\[ c < *k\textsuperscript{(w)} | \_*, *i \]

- **ca** ‘and’ \(< *\text{k}\text{e}\)
- **ca** ‘and’ \(< *\text{k}\text{e}\)
- **ca** ‘and’ \(< *\text{k}\text{e}\)
- **ca** ‘and’ \(< *\text{k}\text{e}\)

\[ ch < \ast \text{sk} | \_*, *i/y \]

- **chid-** ‘to split, break’ \(< *\text{skid-}\)
- **chid-** ‘to split, break’ \(< *\text{skid-}\)
- **chid-** ‘to split, break’ \(< *\text{skid-}\)

\[ J_{(1)} < *g\textsuperscript{(w)} | \_*, *i, i (\text{j}_1 = \{j/g/k\}) \]

- **J_{(1)}** \(< *g\textsuperscript{(w)} | \_*, *i, i (\text{j}_1 = \{j/g/k\}) \)

\[ J_{(2)} < \ast \text{g} (\text{j}_2 = \{j/s\}) \]

- **J_{(2)}** \(< \ast \text{g} \text{ (j}_2 = \{j/s\}) \)

- **jānu-** ‘knee’ \(< *\text{gόnu-}\)
- **jānu-** ‘knee’ \(< *\text{gόnu-}\)
- **jānu-** ‘knee’ \(< *\text{gόnu-}\)

- **yaj-** ‘to worship, sacrifice’ \(< *\text{Hyag-}\)
- **yaj-** ‘to worship, sacrifice’ \(< *\text{Hyag-}\)
- **yaj-** ‘to worship, sacrifice’ \(< *\text{Hyag-}\)

- **yaj-** ‘to worship, sacrifice’ \(< *\text{Hyag-}\)
\( \text{INDO-ARYAN} \ 227 \)

\( jh \) emerges only through borrowing or in onomatopoeia, as in \( \text{jájjhat-} \) pres. ptcp. ‘laughing’

\( [\ddot{n}] < n \mid _C \text{palatal}, \ddot{n} \) is a non-phonemic (allophonic) variant of \( n \), cf. \( \text{yu-\ddot{n}-j-anti} \) ‘to yoke, join’ 3 pl. pres. < \( \text{*Hyu-n-g-nti} \)

\textbf{RETROFLEX}

\( \ddot{s} < *s \mid {*i, *u, *r, *k}_\_

\( \ddot{s} < *k, *\ddot{g} \mid {*t} \)

\( \text{áraiksám} \) ‘to leave’ 1sg. aor. < \( *(-\text{leyk}*-)-s, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{ēλευψα} \)

\( \text{visā-} \) ‘venom, poison’ < \( *\text{wis}-, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{iōς, Lat. uīrus} \)

\( jūs- \) ‘to enjoy’ < \( \text{gūs}-, \) cf. Lat. \( \text{gustō} \) ‘to taste’, Goth. \( \text{ga-kiusan} \) ‘to test’

\( \text{vāṛṣmān-} \) ‘height, peak, top’ < \( *\text{wers-men-}, \) cf. Lith. \( \text{viršūs} \), OCS \( \text{vṛkṛ} \)

\( \text{vāṣ-ti} \) ‘to wish, desire’ 3 sg. pres. < \( *\text{wek-ti}, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{ἐκόν} \) ‘voluntary’, Hitt. /\( \ddot{u̯ ēkts}i/ \)

\( \ddot{t} < t \mid s_-, \text{\( *\ddot{k} \mid s \)} \)

\( \text{justā-} < *\ddot{g} \text{-to-} \) ‘enjoy’ perf. ptcp.

\( \text{vīj} (\text{vīs-}) \) ‘settlement, community’, nom.sg. < \( *\text{wik-s}, \) cf. OCS \( \text{vьsь} \) ‘village’, Gr. \( \text{οἶκος} \) ‘house, dwelling’

\( \ddot{t}h < *\ddot{t}H \mid s_-, V \)

\( \text{tiṣṭha-} \) ‘stand’, pres. < \( *\text{stĭ-h2-e-}, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{ἰστῆμι} \) ‘I place’

\( \ddot{d} < \ddot{z} < *\ddot{s} \mid \text{D(h)} \)

\( \text{vipruḍ-bhiḥ} < *\ddot{p}-\text{rus-bh}-. . . \) ‘drop’ (\( \text{vi-pruś} \))

\( [\ddot{f}] \) is an allophonic variant of \( d \) that emerges only in the intervocalic position (\( | \text{V-V} \)) in the dialect of the RV, cf. RV \( \ddot{ī}lē (\ddot{i}dē \text{in other texts}) \) ‘I worship’ 1 sg. pres.

\( (\ddot{V})\ddot{d}h < *(\ddot{V})\ddot{g}dh < *(\ddot{V})\ddot{s}dh \)

\( \ddot{u}dhdh- \) ‘carry’ perf. ptcp. (\( \sqrt{\text{vah}} \) *\( \ddot{u}g^2-\text{-to-} (> *\ddot{u}g^2-\text{-d}^3 \text{-o-}) \)

\( \text{nīḍā-} < *\text{ni-sdo-} \) ‘nest’, cf. Lat. \( \text{nīdus} \), Eng. \( \text{nest} \)

\( n < *n \mid s, r (\ldots) \_

\) Notice that the retroflexivization of \( n \) is blocked by dental, retroflex and palatal consonants in (\( \ldots \)), cf. \( \text{tīrṇa-} \) ‘to pass’ perf. ptcp. < \( *\text{ṭṛh₂}-\text{-no-} \)

\( \text{vāṛśmān-} \) ‘height, peak, top’ < \( *\text{wers-men-} \)

\( \text{grḥyāmāṇa-} (\sqrt{\text{grb}^2-\text{-ye-mh}, \text{no}}) \) ‘to seize’ pres. pass. ptcp. but not \( \text{rājānām} \) ‘king’ acc. sg.; \( \text{prṣṭhēna} \) ‘back’ instr. sg.; etc.

\textbf{DENTALS}

\( t < *t \)

\( \text{tri-} \) ‘three’ < \( *\text{tri}-, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{τρεῖς} \), Lat. \( \text{třēs} \) (nom. pl.), Goth. \( \text{þrins} \) (acc. pl. m./f.), OCS \( \text{tri} \) (f.)

\( \ddot{t}h < *\ddot{t}H \mid V \)

\( \text{prṣṭhū-} \) ‘broad, wide’ < \( *\text{plḥ₂-ú-}, \) cf. Gr. \( \text{πλατύς} \), Lith. \( \text{platūs} \)
d < *d
pád- ‘foot’ < *ped-/*pod-, cf. Gr. (Dor.) πός, ποδός (gen. sg.), OEng. fēt (nom. pl.), Lat. ped-is (gen. sg.)

dh < *dʰ

n < *n
náva- ‘new, young’ < *newo-, cf. Hitt. neća-; Gr. νέος; Gr. (Myc.) ne-wo; Lat. nouus; OCS novъ

LABIALS

p < *p
pitár- ‘father’< *ph₂tér-, nom.sg. pitā < *ph₂ti(r), cf. Gr. πατήρ, Lat. pater, Goth. fadar

ph < *pʰ | _V
phéna- ‘foam’ < *phöyno- (?), cf. OCS pěna

b < *b
bála- ‘power, strength’ < *bēl-o-, cf. Lat. dē-bilis ‘without strength’, Gr. βέλτερος ‘better’; OCS bolijь ‘bigger’

bh < *bʰ
bhuj- ‘to enjoy, consume’ < *bʰewg-, cf. OAv. būj- f. ‘expiation’, Lat. fungor ‘to enjoy, suffer, get rid of’
bhrú- ‘(eye)brow’ < *h₁bʰruH-, cf. Gr. ὀφρῦς; OEng. brū; Lith. bruvis; OCS brъvь

m < *m
mātā ‘mother’ < *meh₁tē(r), cf. Av. mātā, Gr. (Dor.) μάτηρ, Lat. māter

SIBILANTS and h

s < *s
as, āsti 3 sg. act. ‘to be’ < *h₁es-, cf. Gr. ἔστι, ἐστί; Hitt. e-eš-izi; Lat. est; Goth. ist

š < *k
dāša ‘ten’ < *dek₃, cf. Gr. δέκα, Lat. decem

h₁(1) < *gʷh₁ | _ *č₁, *i
hánti 3 pl. pres. ‘to slay’ < *gʷen-ti
dáhati ‘to burn’ 3 sg. pres. < *dʰegʷh₁-e-ti (: dagdḥā- ptcp. perf. < *dʰegʷh₁-to-), cf. Lith. degu, Lat. foueō ‘to make warm’

h₁(2) < *gʰ (also < dʰ, mostly in | ḫ|, ḥ; rarely < bʰ)
hāsta ‘hand’ < *gʰes-to-, cf. Av. zasta-; Lith. pa-žastis ‘armpit’
ànhám ‘I’ < *h₁egH-om, cf. Av. azōm, OPers. adam, OCS azь, cf. Gr. ἐγώ, Lat. egō < *h₁eg-oH
vāhati ‘to move, carry, drive’ 3 sg. pres. < *wegʰ-e-ti (: ūdhā- ptp. perf. < *u̱gʰ-dʰ-o- < *u̱gʰ-dʰ-o- < *u̱gʰ-to-), cf. Av. vazaيتi, Lat. uēhō, -ere, OIC. vega, OHG wegan, OCS vezo

Note that the voiced sibilants z (existing in Avestan) and *z disappeared in Proto-Indo-Aryan.

To conclude this section, one should mention two important phonetic laws that are important for the development of aspirates in Old Indian:

Bartholomae’s Law (Dʰ+T > DʰDʰ, Dʰ+s > Dʰzʰ, also where the consonants are separated by s or a laryngeal) is responsible for the shift of aspiration to the second member of a consonant cluster and its subsequent voicing, cf. buddhā- ‘awaken’ < *bʰudʰ-to-; ápi gda 3 sg. inj. mid. ‘to devour’ < PIIr. *gʰzdʰa < PIE *gʰs-to; duhitár- ‘daughter’ < *dʰugʰHtar- < PIE *dʰugh界限- (OAv. duguḍar-).

Grassmann’s Law (Dʰ . . . Dʰ > D . . . Dʰ | . . . ≤ 1 syllable) accounts for the loss of the aspiration of the first aspirate in case of a sequence of aspirates separated by no more than one syllable, cf. dugh- ‘to give milk’ < PIE *dʰewgh- (cf. Goth. daug ‘to be good for smth., fit’); dā-dhā-ti ‘to put, place’ 3 sg. pres. < PIE *dʰe-dheh₁-ti (cf. Gr. τίϑη(-μι)); bódh-a-ti ‘to perceive’ 3 sg. pres. < PIE *bʰewdh-e-ti (cf. Gr. πεύϑομαι ‘to learn, to hear’).

MORPHOPHONOLOGY

Morphotactics

Sanskrit is notorious for its extremely rich system of processes that occur at morpheme or word boundaries that are called, in accordance with Indian tradition, sandhi (a Sanskrit term, literally meaning ‘together-posing, joining’, which has been borrowed into European linguistic terminology). Some of these processes have an allophonic nature (such as, for instance, palatalization of the dental nasal before palatals) and thus can be described in terms of phonological rules, but many others represent phonological, non-automatic phenomena and thus belong to the domain of morphophonology. The main two types of sandhi include internal and external sandhi. External sandhis operate on the boundaries between words (= free morphemes), as well as, normally, (i) between members of compounds, (ii) between preverbs/prefixes and roots, and (iii) between nominal stems and the following endings of the dual and plural: three plural/dual case endings beginning with bh-, i.e. -bhis, -bhyaś and -bhyaṃ and the loc. pl. ending -su. Internal sandhis operate on the boundaries between (bound) morphemes.

Typical examples of internal sandhi include, for instance:

i) C₁C₂ . . . Cₙ → C₁ | _# (all members of the final consonant cluster are dropped except for the first one), cf. pácant-s → pácan (act. ptp. (nom. sg. m.) of pac ‘cook’); á-chānd-s-t → áchān (3 sg. aor. act. of chand ‘appear’);

ii) devoicing and deaspiration of stops before s or in auslaut: T(h), D(h) → T | _#, _s [except for palatales: T(h), D(h) ≠ c, f], cf. labh-syate → lapsyate (3 sg. fut. mid. of labh ‘obtain’); yūdh-s → yūt ‘fighter’ (nom. sg.); yūdh → yūt ‘O fighter!’ (voc. sg.);

iii) retroflexivization of s after r, k and vowels distinct from ā (see 2.3.2 above), also known as the “RUKI rule”: s → s | k, r, V₃a (not _, r = not in auslaut or before r), cf. á-raik-s-am → áraikṣam, á-kār-s-am → ákārṣam, juhó-si → juhó-ṣi;
iv) assimilation to the following plosive in the way of articulation (i.e. T(h), D + t → Tr; T(h), D + th → Th; T(h), D + dh → Ddh), accompanied by progressive retroflexivization (retroflex consonants retroflexivize the following stop), which can be conveniently presented in table form (Table 4.5; adopted from Zaliznjak 1978/1987):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.5 ASSIMILATION IN CONSONANT CLUSTERS BEFORE DENTAL STOPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k, kh, g, c, j₁+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t, th, d +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t, th, d +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p, ph, b +</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s, ś, ch, j₂+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s +</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cf. yoj-tum → yoktum (inf. of yuj ‘yoke, join’); vac-tum → vaktum (inf. of vac ‘say’); prach-tum → prasṭum (inf. of prach ‘ask’); mṛj₂-tha → mṛṣṭha (2 pl. pres. act. of mṛj ‘adorn, anoint’); mṛj₂-dhvam → mṛṛdhvam (2 pl. pres. act. of mṛj ‘adorn, anoint’); ās-dhve → ādhve (2 pl. pres. mid. of ās ‘to sit’); but cf. also as-dhi → edhi (2 pl. imp. of as ‘to be’).

External sandhi (many of which – especially the vowel sandhi – are optional in early Vedic) can be illustrated, for instance, by the following rules:

i) merger (contraction) of two homorganic vowels (optional in early Vedic, which is shown by a bracketed arrow): -V + V- → -Vː, cf. ihá asti → ihāˊ sti ‘here is’; su uktám → sūktám ‘well-said’;

ii) monophthongization:

-ā + ĭ- → -e- (cf. ihá tha → ihéha, pīṭāva → pītēva ‘like father’) and

-ā + ŭ- → -o- (cf. ā ubhâ → ōbhâ ‘to both’);
-ās + a- → -o’, cf. devās atha → devō ‘tha and the god’.

Ablaut alternation

Most morphemes may appear in one of the three alternation grades (traditionally called “ablaut” grades): (i) zero, or weak; (ii) full, or normal (guṇa “quality” in Indian tradition); and (iii) long (vṛddhi ‘increasing’). Historically, this alternation goes back to the Proto-Indo-European ablaut, *zero/*e/*o/*ē/*ō. Thus, for roots with the structure CaC, the alternation between the zero, full and long grades will manifest as ø/a/ā (e.g. pt-/pat-/pāt- ‘fly’). The alternating vowel can be followed by a sonant (i/y, u/v etc.), which can be realized in different ways, depending on the phonological context. Altogether, this results in a rich allomorphy, such as i – e/ay – a[i]ay (e.g. ji/-je/-jay/-jai/-jāy- ‘win’) etc.

The choice of the alternation grade is determined by the grammatical form. Next to the forms that require one of the three “traditional” grades listed above, there are a number of grammatical positions (causative stem, 3 sg. perf. act.), where some morphemes
show the full grade, while others have the long grade. In Indo-Iranian, e and o merge in a, but o changed to ā in open syllables, according to Brugmann’s Law. Thus, the original ablaut is reflected in Vedic as the zero/a/ā + a/ā opposition. Accordingly, for descriptive purposes it seems appropriate to posit (iv) the fourth (“Brugmann’s”) grade for such grammatical contexts as causative stem or 3 sg. perf. act.

Table 4.6 presents the main alternation grades (in a somewhat simplified form; for detailed rules that describe the choice of the alternation grade depending on the phonological context, see Zaliznjak 1975):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.6 THE MAIN ALTERNATION GRADES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| | a(C) | a(CC) | i(V) | i(C) | u(V) | u(C) | ... | r(C) | ... | an | an(C) | am(V) | ...
| zero | – | – | i(y) | i | u(v) | u | ... | r | ... | a/n | a/n | a(m)/m | ...
| (guna) full | A | A | ay | e | av | o | ... | ar | ar | ... | an | an | am | ...
| (Brugmann’s grade) | ā | ā | āy | āv | āv | o | ... | ār | ār | ... | ān | ān | ām | ...
| (vṛddhi) long | ā | ā | āy | āv | āv | au | ... | ār | ār | ... | ān | ān | ām | ...

Illustrations

A:

pat ‘fall, fly’: 3 sg. redupl. (non-caus.) aor. act. á-pa-pt-at, 3 sg. pres. I act. pát-ati, 3 sg. caus. pres. act. pát-áyati
tap ‘heat’: 3 sg. pres. I act. táp-ati, 3 sg. caus. pres. act. tāp-áyati, 3 sg. sigm. aor. act. a-tāp-sīt
yaj ‘sacrifice’: ptcp. perf. pass. iṣ-tā-, 3 sg. pres. I act. yáj-āti, 3 sg. sigm. aor. inj. act. yāṭ

Ā:

sthā ‘stand’: ptcp. perf. pass. sthi-tā-, 3 sg. root aor. act. á-sthā-t, 3 sg. pf. act. ta-sth-āu [full grade before a vowel], 3 sg. caus. pres. act. sthā-p-āyati
I:

rie ‘leave’: ptcp. perf. pass. rik-tá-, 3 sg. pluperf. act. á-ri-rec-īt, 3 sg. perf. act. ri-ré-ć-a, 3 sg. sigm. aor. act. á-raık

Ī:


Ṛ:

kr ‘make’: ptcp. perf. pass. kr-tā-, ptcp. root aor. mid. kr-āṇā-, 3 pl. root aor. act. á-kr-an, 3 sg. them. aor. act. á-ka-r-at AV+, 3 sg. perf. act. ca-kāṝ-a, 1 sg. sigm. aor. act. á-kāṝ-ś-am
dṛś ‘see’: ptcp. perf. pass. dṛṣ-tā-, 1 sg. root aor. act. á-dārś-am, 3 sg. perf. act. da-dārś-a (3 sg. sigm. aor. act. a-drāk Br., a-drāk-ś-īt)

ṝ:


N:

-an- (nominal stem suffix), stem rāj-an- ‘king’: loc. pl. rāj-a-su, dat. sg. rāj-ᵻ-e, loc. sg. rāj-an-i, acc. sg. rāj-an-am
-ant- (act. ptcp. suffix), act. ptcp. cār-an- ‘wandering’: loc. pl. cār-at-su, nom. sg. cār-an(t), acc. sg. cār-ant-am

Ṇ:

jani ‘be born, generate’: ptcp. perf. pass. jā-tā-, 3 sg. pres. IV mid. jā-ya-te, 3 sg. perf. mid. ja-jñ-ė, 1 sg. pres. I act. jān-āmi, 3 sg. perf. act. ja-jān-a

Morphophonological classification of (root) morphemes

In accordance with the ability of the root to appear in all or some of the above-listed ablaut grades, all Vedic roots can be divided into the following three main classes:

(i) Fully alternating roots (hereafter called “alternating” for short) attest all three morphophonological grades; cf. ji-/jy- : je-/jāy- : jai-/jāy-, etc.
(ii) Non-zeroing roots show the full grade in the forms where the zero grade is expected; cf. pad ‘fall’: pres. IV pād-ya-te ‘falls’ (instead of **pd-ya-te) etc. In Vedic, a number of roots that in later (Classical) Sanskrit belong to the non-zeroing
type (in particular, most of the CaC roots) still attest isolated forms with the zero grade, thus vacillating between the type (i) and type (ii) behavior; cf. the thematized reduplicated present (I←III in the notation of Table 4.18) pibdamāna- {pī-pd-} made from this root.

(iii) Non-alternating roots appear only either in the full or (for only a few roots) in the long grade; cf. vīḍ ‘be firm’ etc.

Another important division distinguishes between seṭ and aniṭ roots. seṭ roots require insertion of -i- before certain suffixes (inf. -tum, ptcp. perf. pass. -tā-, fut. -sya-, sigm. aor. -s-); cf. e.g. vad ‘say’: ptcp. perf. pass. ud-i-tā- (not *ut-tā- ‘said’; bhū ‘become’: inf. bhāv-i-tum. Historically, this i goes back to the vocalic realization of a laryngeal in the interconsonantal position, but in Sanskrit the class of formations with the inserted i was considerably expanded by analogy.

MORPHOLOGY

Nominal morphology

The grammatical categories of the noun include (i) the case (nominative, vocative, accusative, instrumental, dative, ablative, genitive and locative); (ii) the number (singular, dual and plural); and (iii) the gender (masculine, feminine and neuter).

Alongside inflection proper, the forms of the paradigm may differ in their stems. The two main types of stem alternations include (i) ablaut in the root (only in a few noun stems) or, much more often, in stem suffixes; and (ii) accentuation. The ablauting morpheme may exhibit as many as three grades within the paradigm: (i) long or “Brugmann’s”, (ii) full and (iii) zero; the zero grade may be represented by two variants in some declension types (e.g. in the an-declension). Accordingly, in terms of the ablaut type, all declension types can be divided into “three stem”, “two stem” and non-ablauting declensions. Within those types that distinguish between at least two stems, i.e. with the long or full grade, on the one hand, and with the zero grade, on the other, all forms of the paradigm are traditionally divided into “strong” and “weak” forms, respectively. The strong forms include nom., acc. and voc. of the masculine and feminine genders, except for the acc. pl., as well as nom./acc./voc. pl. of the neuter. The weak forms encompass all other members of the paradigm. Among the strong forms, the voc. sg. may differ from the others as the only form that has the full grade (shown with the underline font) as opposed to the long grade of other strong forms. In some declension types, the loc. sg. may have the full grade and, accordingly, be grouped with strong forms.

The endings attested in the declension paradigm are summarized in Table 4.7. The rightmost column shows the pronominal endings that do not occur in the substantive declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.7 OLD INDO-ARYAN CASE ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Substantive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Below are given in table form a few important declension types: simple consonant stems as attested in root nouns; the nt-declension (represented, foremost, by present active participles and mant-/vant- adjectives); the most productive masculine a-type (type devā-); and the feminine ī-types. The forms unattested in early Vedic but reconstructable and/or known from later texts are in square brackets.

(i) Root consonant stems

((m./n./f.) °kṛ- ‘doing, producing’, °jīt- ‘winning, conquering’, °cyūt- ‘moving’, soma-sūt- ‘pressing Soma’, dīrgha-śrūt- ‘heard far’); pād- ‘foot’, āp- ‘water(s)’, (m./n./f.) sāh- ‘overwinner’, vāh- ‘carrying, drawing’ (e.g. in anaḍ-vāh- ‘ox’)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Pronominal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>-ā, -ena (in a-declension, pron. m.)</td>
<td>-smai (m./n.), -syai (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>-e; -ai (in ā, ī, ā-declensions, pron. f.)</td>
<td>-smāt (m./n.), -syās (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>= GEN. (except for a-type); -āt (in a-declension)</td>
<td>-syās (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>-as, -syu (in a-declension, pron. m.); -ās (in ā, ī, ā-declensions, pron. f.)</td>
<td>-syās (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>-i, -ām (in ā, ī, ā-declensions, pron. f.)</td>
<td>-smin (m./n.), -syām (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. n.</td>
<td>-o, -m (in a-declension)</td>
<td>-d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Dual | | |
| NOM./ACC./VOC. | -ā, -̃, -au | |
| INSTR./DAT./ABL. | -bhyām | |
| GEN./LOC. | -os | |
| NOM./ACC./VOC. n. | -ī | |

| Plural | | |
| NOM./VOC. | -as | e (m.) (← . . . a-i) |
| ACC. | -as, -̃s (in vocalic declensions, f.), -n | |
| INSTR. | -bhīs | |
| DAT./ABL. | -bhīyas | |
| GEN. | -ām, -n-ām (in vocalic declensions) | |
| LOC. | -su | |
| NOM./ACC./VOC. n. | -i, -̃, -n-i (in vocalic declensions) | |

V = vowel; ̃ = length of the stem vowel; boldface = strong forms; underlined = full grade of alternation.
TABLE 4.8 CONSONANT DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Alternating nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
<td>°kṛt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
<td>°kṛt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>°kṛt-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>°kṛt-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>°kṛt-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL./GEN.</td>
<td>°kṛt-āḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>°cyūt-i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dual</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. n.</td>
<td>°jīt, °kṛt-au</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR./ABL.</td>
<td>°kṛt-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN./LOC.</td>
<td>°kṛt-bhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. n.</td>
<td>°kṛt-su</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM./VOC.</td>
<td>°kṛt-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>°kṛt-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT./ABL.</td>
<td>°kṛt-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>°kṛt-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>°kṛt-śu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. n.</td>
<td>°śrūt-ś</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) (a)nt-declension

TABLE 4.9 (A)V-T-DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>“Lengthening” type (m/vant-)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
<td>cáran; jānān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
<td>[cáran]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>cárant-am; grñánt-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>cárat-ā; jānat-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>cárat-ē; jānat-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL./GEN.</td>
<td>cárat-ēḥ; yāt-āḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>[cárat-śi], yat-śi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. n.</td>
<td>cárat; sāṭ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 4.9 (CONTINUED)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Dual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc.(/Voc.)</td>
<td>cárant-ā, yajant-au; sānt-ā, sānt-au⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr./Dat./Abl.</td>
<td>[cārad-bhyām]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen./Loc.</td>
<td>[cārat-oh]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc./Voc. n.</td>
<td>[cārat-ī]; °yat-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.(/Voc.)</td>
<td>pāśyant-ah⁶; jānānt-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vādat-ah; grnāt-ah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr.</td>
<td>patāyad-bhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat./Abl.</td>
<td>pāśyad-bhyah; yād-bhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cárat-ām; sat-ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>patāyat-su; grnāt-su</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc./Voc. n.</td>
<td>[cārant-i]; sānt-ī⁷ paśu-mānt-i⁸</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iii) a-stems (devá- ‘god’, yajñā- ‘sacrifice’, padá- ‘foot’, kārṇa- ‘ear’)

### TABLE 4.10 A-DECLENSION (TYPE DEVÁ-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>devá-ḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>déva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>devá-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr.</td>
<td>devéna, (yajñā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deváya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>yajñāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>devásya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>devé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc./Voc. n.</td>
<td>padá-m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Dual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc.(/Voc.)</td>
<td>devá, deváu⁹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr./Dat./Abl.</td>
<td>kārṇābhyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen./Loc.</td>
<td>devá-γ-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc./Voc. n.</td>
<td>padé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.(/Voc.)</td>
<td>deváḥ, devásah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deván</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instr.</td>
<td>deváḥ, devébhiḥ¹⁰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat./Abl.</td>
<td>devébhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>devánām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>devéṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom./Acc./Voc. n.</td>
<td>padá, padān¹³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iv) i-declension

TABLE 4.11 Ī-DECLENSION (TYPES DEVĪ- AND VRKĪ-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>root stems</th>
<th>vȳk̄ī-type</th>
<th>dev̄ī-type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
<td>dhī-ī</td>
<td>vȳk̄ī-h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
<td>dhīy-am</td>
<td>vȳk̄y-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>dhīy-ā</td>
<td>rath̄y-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>dhīy-ē</td>
<td>vȳk̄y-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>dhīy-ās</td>
<td>adȳ-āh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL./GEN.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>nadj̄</td>
<td>nadj̄-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC.</td>
<td>dhīy-āḥ</td>
<td>rath̄y-āḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN./LOC.</td>
<td>dhīy-ōḥ</td>
<td>napt̄y-ōḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The history of the nominal inflexion is summarized in Table 4.12:

TABLE 4.12 PIE SOURCES OF CASE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM.</td>
<td>-s, -ø &lt; *s, *-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOC.</td>
<td>-ø &lt; *-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>-(a)m &lt; *-m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>-a, -e &lt; *-eh1 (-ena is borrowed from pronominal declension)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>-e; -ai &lt; *(e)y (a-declension:) -āy &lt; *-o-ey + ā (particle (?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>-āt &lt; *-o-ed (?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>-as &lt; *-o( )s, -sya (from pronominal)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>-i, -ø &lt; *-i, *-ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./ VOC. n</td>
<td>-ø, -m (in a-declension)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dual</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./ VOC. n</td>
<td>-ah &lt; *-h1, -au &lt; ā + y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN./LOC.</td>
<td>-bhyām &lt; *?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./ VOC. n</td>
<td>-h1y &lt; *-h1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NOM./VOC.</td>
<td>-as &lt; *-es</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>-ās &lt; *-o-es (a-declension)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-as &lt; *a( )s (&lt; *-m-s (?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ān (a-declension): analogy with nom. pl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- n: analogically from a-declension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Verbal morphology

Grammatical categories of the verb

The Vedic verbal paradigm includes four main classes of forms (“tense systems”), called present, aorist, perfect and (rare in early Vedic) future systems. Within each of these subsets, forms are built on the same stem, i.e. on present, aorist and perfect stems, respectively. There are several sets of personal endings: “primary” (used foremost in the present tense) and “secondary” (endings used in the imperfect, aorist and pluperfect, as well as in two non-indicative moods, the optative and subjunctive), perfect, imperative and subjunctive. Each tense system includes a number of finite forms and a pair of participles, active and middle.

The inventory of the grammatical categories of the verb includes (i) person (1st, 2nd and 3rd) and number (singular, dual and plural); (ii) mood (indicative, imperative, injunctive, subjunctive, optative and conditional); (iii) tense: present, three past tenses (imperfect, perfect and aorist, in Vedic typically encoding a recent past event, most often experienced by the speaker/author of the text) and future; and (iv) diathesis, also called “voice” (active and middle). The range of the functions rendered by the middle diathesis is typical for the ancient Indo-European linguistic type as attested in “Classical” languages (Ancient Greek, Latin). Here belong the self-beneficent meanings with no valency change (“do smth. for oneself”, as in the textbook example yájati ‘sacrifices’ ~ yájate ‘sacrifices for oneself’), as well as a number of intransitivizing derivations, such as passive, reflexive and anticausative (decausative); see Gonda 1979. The choice of the function(s) idiosyncratically depends on the base verb. However, already in the language of the earliest text, RV, we observe the loss of several grammatical functions of the ancient Indo-European middle, and the intransitivizing functions are largely taken over by special productive markers, such as the passive suffix -yá- and the reflexive pronouns tanu- and ātmán-; see Kulikov 2012b.

The non-finite forms include two participles (active and middle) for each tense, converbs (traditionally called “absolutives” or “gerunds”), infinitives, gerundives and some others.

The morphemic structure of the verbal form

The verbal form has the following maximal morphemic structure: (preverb(s)).../-augment-a-)-(reduplication syllable)-root [which may incorporate the nasal infix]-derivational stem suffix)-(thematic vowel a12)-(mood)-personal ending. Cf. ā-cu-cyuv-tā-māhi (RV 8.9.9) = preverb + reduplication syllable + root + optative morpheme + ending of the 1st person plural middle optative form (= 1 pl. opt. mid. form of the reduplicated (causative) aorist of the verb cyu ‘move, impel’) ‘(if) we could impel [you]’; vy-a-di-divs-a-h (AV) = preverb + augment + reduplication syllable + root + thematic vowel + secondary (= aorist/imperfect) ending of the 2nd person singular active form (= 2 sg. act. of the reduplicated (causative) aorist of the verb dviṣ ‘hate’) ‘you have made (them) hate each other’; {ā-chānd-s-t} → āchān augment + root + sigmatic aorist morpheme + secondary ending of the 3rd person singular active form (= 3 sg. aor. act. of chand ‘appear’) ‘s/he has appeared’.  

TABLE 4.12 (CONTINUED)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSTR.</td>
<td>-bhis &lt; *-bhi + *-s (plural)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ais (pronominal)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT./ABL.</td>
<td>-bhyas : *-bhi + *(y)os (abl. pl.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>-ām &lt; *...o-om (a-declension; then analogically to other types)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC.</td>
<td>-su &lt; *-su</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM./ACC./VOC. N.</td>
<td>-i, -i &lt; *-hi; -n-i is borrowed from n-declension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 4.12 (CONTINUED)
Personal endings and ablaut alternation in the verbal stem

The general system of personal endings is summarized in Table 4.13. Wherever possible the morphemic border between the ending and the thematic vowel is shown with a hyphen; the lack of a hyphen before the endings of the thematic conjugation shows its coalescence with the thematic vowel (a).

![Table 4.13 Vedic Verbal Personal Endings](image)

The two main classes of stems, athematic and thematic, differ in that the latter appear in the same shape in all forms of the paradigm, while the former exhibit a number of alternations. Like in the declension paradigm, the main types of stem alternations include (i) ablaut in the verbal stems, that is, in the root (in athematic root stems) or in the suffix (in other athematic stems), and (ii) accentuation (partly correlating with the ablaut grade of the morpheme).

The ablauting morpheme may appear (i) in the full (or “Brugmann’s”) grade or (ii) in the zero grade. Accordingly, all forms of the paradigm are divided into “strong” and “weak” forms, respectively. The strong forms (the corresponding endings are in boldface in the tables) include (i) the sg. act. of the present, imperfect/injunctive and perfect (3 sg. perf. act. has the “Brugmann’s” grade); (ii) 3 sg. imp. act.; (iii) all forms of the
subjunctive; (iv) 3 pl. impf. act. of the reduplicated present (class III) [before -ur]. The forms that often or sporadically (shown with the underline font) have the full grade are (iv) 2 pl. pres./imp. act. (almost always before -tana, sporadically before -ta); and (v) 2 sg. imp. act. (with a few roots). Forms that have the zero grade are called “weak forms”. The accent is on the stem in the strong forms and on the endings in the weak forms (except for some weak forms of the reduplicated present).

**History of Old Indo-Aryan personal endings**

The rich variety of the Old Indo-Aryan personal endings must go back to the six or seven series of the Proto-Indo-European verbal endings as reconstructed, in particular, by Kortlandt (1979: 66ff.) or Beekes (2011):

**TABLE 4.14 SERIES OF THE PIE VERBAL ENDINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>2nd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>3rd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the asterisked Roman numbers to refer to Table 4.14, one may synopsize the history of the attested Vedic personal endings in Table 4.14 (individual endings are explained only where their origin is not straightforwardly explained by the general correspondence given in the heading of the column).

**TABLE 4.15 PIE SOURCES OF VEDIC PERSONAL ENDINGS**

Active diathesis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SG</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“primary” &lt; *I</td>
<td>“secondary” &lt; *II</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>...āmi &lt; *-oH + *-mi</td>
<td>-am / -m</td>
<td>(* subj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= *I + *IV)</td>
<td>&lt; *-m̥ / -m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-th,e</td>
<td>-te</td>
<td>+ particle u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-th,a</td>
<td>-ta</td>
<td>+ particle na (?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PL</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-mas(i) &lt; *-mes(-i) (analogically)</td>
<td>-ta (+ na – particle?)</td>
<td>-nti, -ati &lt; *-nti/-ati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(→ subj.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-th,a</td>
<td>-ta</td>
<td>-ur &lt; *-r (from *V)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
General overview of tense systems and formation of tense stems

The system of the finite forms of the Vedic Sanskrit verb (and, particularly, its variant attested in the most ancient Vedic text, the RV) is generally considered extremely complicated and irregular as compared to the corresponding system of Classical Sanskrit. Yet this opinion seems to have been imposed by the Sanskritist tradition (essentially going back to the approach of Old Indian grammarians), which usually takes Classical Sanskrit paradigms as a starting point for a grammatical description of Vedic. Such a perspective presents the Vedic paradigms in terms of a list of differences from the Classical Sanskrit system. This approach is, in a sense, anhistorical and methodologically (as well as pedagogically) misleading, since it does not reflect the evolution of the Old Indian morphological system. As is well known, the Classical verbal system evolves from the Vedic, not the other way around. More specifically, the former system can be regarded as a result of reduction of the latter.

To put it differently, the Vedic verbal system shows very few constraints on applying inflectional morphemes to various verbal stems as compared to what we observe in the Classical language. In fact, the Vedic system can be said to be much larger and yet much simpler, in terms of the number of combinatory constraints, as compared to the much smaller Classical system.

The Vedic verbal system can be presented as based on two parameters (see Kulikov 2008): (i) the type of stem and (ii) the type of inflection. There are four types of stems: present (pres.), aorist (aor.), perfect (perf.) and future (fut.). The types of inflection include (1) primary endings (1 sg. act. -mi, 2 sg. act. -si, 3 sg. act. -ti, ... , 3 pl. act. -nti/atti, etc.); (2) augment ạ- + secondary endings (1 sg. act. -(a)m, 2 sg. act. -s, 3 sg. act. -t, etc.); (3) secondary endings; (4) imperative endings; (5) subjunctive morpheme a + subjunctive endings (which are distinct from primary or secondary endings only for some middle forms); (6) optative morpheme ī/yā (which coalesces with the preceding thematic vowel a into e) + secondary endings; and (7) perfect endings; all these types are exemplified in the upper row of Tables 4.16–17 by the 3 sg. act. and mid. endings. Combining these two sets, we obtain $4 \times 7 = 28$ logically possible formations. Most of them are actually attested in Vedic (though some are very rare). Only ten of them survive into the Classical
Sanskrit paradigm, including the present and aorist injunctive (which only survives with the prohibitive particle mā) and aorist optative (which is only preserved in the preceptive, based on the root aorist optative). Note that all formations that belong to the standard Classical Sanskrit paradigm (= cells bordered with a shadowed line in Table 4.16) are also present in Vedic, though some of them are very rare (or even exceptional) in the early language, as is the case with the conditional (one attestation in the RV).

Some of these formations require special comments. Thus, “perfects with present endings” include such forms as 3 sg. act. jāgār-ti ‘watches’ (vij ‘become awake’), 3 pl. act. dīdy-ati ‘(they) shine’ (vīḍi ‘shine’). These formations do not represent a separate synchronic category. Historically, these forms are based on regular perfects, which, at some stage, have been reanalyzed as belonging to the present system – most often on the basis of non-indicative forms (in particular, subjunctives) that share endings with present forms. Once these forms had been transferred to the present system, they lost their synchronic link with the perfect system, becoming present formations with irregular (“perfect”) reduplication (see Kümmel 2000: 59ff., 191–194, 227–230 et passim).

The non-indicative moods of the perfect and aorist are attested only in early Vedic and are non-productive already in the early language (for aorist imperatives, see Baum 2006). Still rarer, even exceptional, are “aorist injunctives with present endings” (labeled by Hoffmann “the type gathā”), which include a few isolated forms attested in the RV. Here belong, in particular, 2 du. act. kṛ-thās (√kṛ ‘make’) RV 1.112.8, 5.74.5, 10.39.8; bhū-thās (√bhū ‘become’) RV 6.67.5, 3 du. act. bhū-tas RV 10.27.7, and 2 pl. act. ga-thā (√gam ‘go’) RV 8.20.16; 1 pl. med. dhī-mahe (√dhā ‘put’) RV 2.23.10 should perhaps be included in this group, too. These nonce formations (see Lubotsky 1997: 439, 471, 747, 992) do not instantiate root presents (contra Whitney 1885: 21, 34 etc.). As Hoffmann (1952 [1957]: 128–130 [= Hoffmann 1976: 364–366]) has demonstrated, they are built on the basis of root aorist imperatives (such as 2 du. imp. act. kṛ-tám, 2 pl. imp. act. kṛ-ta, 2 pl. imp. act. ga-ta etc.), and on the model of 2 pl. pres. imp. act. ha-ta : 2 pl. pres. ind. act. ha-tha (√han ‘kill’). Their status within the inventory of finite forms is clearly marginal.

Future injunctives (= conditionals without augments) and optatives are extremely rare. A few such forms are attested in Epic Sanskrit: 2 sg. opt. act. pari-trāsyaḥ (√trā ‘rescue’) MBh 8.13.24, 3 sg. opt. act. bhaviṣyat (√bhū) MBh 2.51.25, 3 sg. opt. act. dhaksyeta (√dah ‘burn’) MBh 1.221.19 v.l., 3 sg. opt. med. draksyeta (√dṛṣ ‘see’) Rām. 3.1074* .4; see Whitney 1889: 334; Renou 1930: 401f., 462; Oberlies 2003: 236f., 240.

The system of present formations is the richest subsystem of the verbal paradigm, which is often said to abound in irregular and abnormal forms. The traditional Old Indian system of ten “primary” present classes satisfactorily captures the main morphological types. However, it is also simplistic in some respects, grouping together some types of clearly different nature. In particular, it disregards the important difference between (i) the two main thematic types, classes I (with the accent on the root) and VI (with the accent on the thematic vowel), on the one hand, and (ii) secondary thematicizations, i.e. present types that have been transferred from some athematic types to classes I and VI or that can be regarded as such transfers (irrespective of their origin).

Below I outline a somewhat different system of description based on a few parameters that enable us to generate virtually all present formations attested in Vedic. Combining the three main morphological and morphophonological features, we obtain all present stems, including “minor types”, which find no place in the traditional Indian nomenclature. These parameters include (i) the present stem formative (symbolized as F in Table 4.18): no present stem morpheme (ø); stem suffixes (-y(a)-, -nó-/-nu- etc.); nasal infix (-ná/-n-; placed between · · in the illustrative examples); and reduplication; (ii) the presence of the thematic vowel -a-; and, for thematic present stems, (iii) the placement of the
### TABLE 4.16 THE VEDIC VERBAL SYSTEM: EXAMPLES

#### General survey of tense systems

**Inflection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>(Pres.) injunctive</th>
<th>(Pres.) imperative</th>
<th>(Pres.) subjunctive</th>
<th>(Pres.) optative</th>
<th>Stative (only 3sg., pl. med.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AORIST</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Aorist</td>
<td>Aorist with prim. endings (‘type gathā’)</td>
<td>Aorist injunctive</td>
<td>Aorist imperative</td>
<td>Aorist subjunctive</td>
<td>Aorist optative (with precative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>Perfect injunctive</td>
<td>Perfect imperative</td>
<td>Perfect subjunctive</td>
<td>Perfect optative</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- belongs to the standard Classical Sanskrit paradigm
- (relatively) rare in early Vedic, more common from middle Vedic (Brāhmaṇas) onwards
- rare in early Vedic, exceptional/non-existent after early Vedic
- exceptional in Vedic, non-existent in post-Vedic Sanskrit
- non-existent in Vedic, rare/exceptional in post-Vedic Sanskrit
- non-existent
**TABLE 4.17** THE VEDIC VERBAL SYSTEM: EXAMPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roots</th>
<th>Inflection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>√r̥</td>
<td>bhāra-ti, bhāra-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>√kan i</td>
<td>á-dhā-ti, a-dhi-ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>√kr̥</td>
<td>cākān ‘n-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>√gam</td>
<td>3pl.act. draksya-ntu, 2sg.med. tyaksya-sva</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

main accent: on the root vs. on the thematic vowel. Note that the stem suffix (or infix) of the secondary thematic classes always appears in the zero grade and contains no vocalic element; for that reason, it cannot bear the accent.

For the sake of convenience, I use a complex notation that is as close as possible to the traditional Indian system of ten classes (symbolized by Roman characters). Each of the secondary thematic types (qualified by the Sanskritist tradition as belonging either to class I or to class VI) is related to the corresponding athematic type (I←V, VI← VII, etc.), thus being presented as the result of thematicization. This is a purely synchronic notation: the arrow (←) does not necessarily mean that the thematic type in question historically goes back to a (hypothetic) athematic pendant. Thus, for instance, I do not argue that, for the class “VI←VII” present kr̥n·t-á-ti, we have to reconstruct the athematic class VII present *kr̥ ·nt-á-ti, etc. A few secondary thematic(ized) types are not actually attested. These include classes I←IX, VI← V 22 and VI←III.

In addition to the nine “primary” classes, this calculus generates one type that is traditionally not included in the system of ”primary” present types, passives with the suffix -yá (traditionally considered as one of “secondary” formations, which also include -áya-causatives, intensives and desideratives). In fact, the only formal difference between class IV presents and -yá-passives is the place of the stress (on the root vs. on the thematic vowel/suffix). Thus, this formal opposition follows the same pattern as the opposition between types I←VII (śú·m·bh-a-ti) and VI←VII (kr̥ ·n·t-á-ti). Note that the -yá-class also includes a few non-passive -yá-presents (symbolized as *IV in Table 4.18) of the type mri-yá-te (√m r˳'die') with passive accentuation (← *mr̥ ́ye-te). On this type, see Kulikov 1997.

There are no athematic presents with the suffix -i in Sanskrit (= athematic counterparts of the -ya-presents); one of the few traces of the Proto-Indo-European athematic i-type might be the present kṣéti (√kṣi ‘dwell’) < *tk ˊ-éy-ti; see Kortlandt 1989: 109; LIV 2001: 644, note 1.

Next to the main present classes, Table 4.18 also includes two non-productive present types with the suffixes -cha- and -va-23 (on which see, in particular, Gotô 1987: 73).

### TABLE 4.18 THE VEDIC SYSTEM OF PRESENT STEM TYPES

| pres. stem formatives (suffixes and other morphemes) | II á-ti | V, VIII su-nó-ti, ta-nó-ti (√han) | IX pr-ad-ti | VII yunák-ti | III dá-dá-ti | (VIII) (tar-a-te)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accent on the root:</td>
<td>bháv-a-ti lábh-ya-ti</td>
<td>I-V</td>
<td>(I←IX)</td>
<td>I←VII</td>
<td>I←III</td>
<td>I²s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accent on the them. vowel:</td>
<td>VI tud-á-ti</td>
<td>pass., *IV han-yá-te, mri-yá-te</td>
<td>(VI←V)</td>
<td>VI←IX</td>
<td>VI←VII</td>
<td>VI²s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice, causatives and transitivity oppositions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Voice and passives

There are several verbal formations in Vedic that can be employed in passive constructions. Non-finite passives are passive perfect participles with the suffix -tá/-ná- and gerundives, or future passive participles, with the suffixes -ya-, -tavya- and -anya-. Finite passive formations include (1) presents with the suffix -yá- (derived from the root by means of the suffix -y(a)-), which can only take middle endings; e.g. han ‘kill’: 1 sg.
han-yé, 2 sg. han-yá-se, 3 sg. han-yá-te, etc.); (2) medio-passive i-aorists (with defective paradigm: only 3 sg. in -i, 3 pl. in -ran/-ram and participle; e.g. yuj ‘yoke, join’: 3 sg. áyaji, 3 pl. áyjur, ptcp. yujānā-); (3) middle perfects and statives (which supply passive perfects for some verbal roots; also with defective paradigm: 3 sg. in -e, 3 pl. in -re and participle; e.g. hi ‘impel’: 3 sg. hinvé ‘(it) is impelled’, 3 pl. hinviré ‘(they) are impelled’; ptcp. hinvānā-); and (4) some (isolated) middle forms (e.g. yuj ‘yoke, join’: 3 pl. sigm. aor. ayukṣata; gr̥ ‘praise’: 3 sg. class IX pres. gr̥ītē ‘is praised’).

The inventory of the present passive forms attested in the RV and AV is shown in Table 4.19. The members of the paradigm are mainly exemplified by forms of the verb yuj ‘yoke, join’ (which exhibits one of the most complete attested paradigms), supplemented by forms of other verbs where those of yuj are unattested. The lacking tense-moods of the passive paradigm (which include imperfect, injunctive, subjunctive and optative) are shown with dark gray shading – with the exception of a few hapaxes marked with middle gray shading.

### TABLE 4.19 THE INVENTORY OF THE PRESENT PASSIVE FORMS ATTESTED IN THE RV AND AV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present</th>
<th>imperfect</th>
<th>injunctive</th>
<th>imperative</th>
<th>subjunctive</th>
<th>optative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SG</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>yujyá-se</td>
<td>dhīya-sva</td>
<td>RVL1×</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>yujyá-te</td>
<td>a-nīya-ta RV1×</td>
<td>sīya-ta RV1×</td>
<td>dhīya-tām AV</td>
<td>bhriyā-te RV1×</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DU</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ucyete RV1×</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-panyāmahe RV1×</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>yujya-nte</td>
<td>-ā-sicya-nta AV1×</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICIPLE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yujyá-māna-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1× = one attestation; RV₁ stands for late RV.

Only the 3rd person singular and plural forms are well attested. Next to a dozen 2 sg. forms (yujváse ‘you are (being) yoked’, śasyáse ‘you are (being) praised’ etc.), we find only one occurrence of a 3 du. form, ucyete (RV 10.90.11) ‘[the two feet] are called’, and one (philologically and grammatically rather unclear) form -panyāmahe, which may represent a 1 pl. ‘we are (being) glorified’ (?); see Kulikov 2012a: 144–146). 1 sg., 1 du., 2 du. and 2 pl. forms are unattested.

Next to present forms proper, participles and rare imperatives (10 forms or so in the RV and AV), only exceptional attestations of other tense-moods are found. These include as few as five forms:

(i) 3 sg. impf. anīyata ‘(she) was brought’ in the late RV (8.56.4 = Vālakh. 8.4) and 3 pl. impf. -āsicyanta ‘(they) were besprinkled’ in AV 14.1.36;
(ii) 3 sg. inj. sīyāta ‘(he) is consecrated’ in the late RV (10.132.4) (see Kulikov 2012a: 284ff.) and 3 pl. inj. -aprcyanta in the late RV (1.110.4) ‘(they) united’ (non-pass. intr.) (see Kulikov 2012a: 154);
(iii) 3 sg. subj. -bhriyāte (RV 5.31.12) ‘(it) will be brought’.
Optatives of the present passive do not occur before the very end of the early Vedic period.

Only from the middle Vedic period onwards, when the present passive system becomes well established, do we find a good many imperfects, subjunctives and optatives of -yá-passives.

The early Vedic passive paradigm (for all three tense systems, present, aorist and perfect) is summarized in Table 4.20. An almost complete paradigm is attested for the verbs su 'press (out)' and yuj 'yoke, join'. (In the cases where forms of these two verbs are unattested, I put in square brackets forms made from other roots.) Different degrees of shading show the status of the corresponding forms: dark gray = lacking and morphologically impossible; middle gray = morphologically possible but unattested or only exceptionally attested (underdeveloped part of the paradigm); light gray = morphologically possible but rare (perhaps primarily for pragmatic reasons; cf. the rarity of passive imperatives).

**TABLE 4.20 PASSIVE PARADIGM IN EARLY VEDIC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>aorist</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>perfect/stative</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>inj.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>stative</td>
<td>indicative</td>
<td>imper.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>yujyáse</td>
<td>[dhiyásva]</td>
<td></td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>sūyáte</td>
<td>yujyáte</td>
<td>[dhiyáta]</td>
<td>ásávi, áyoji</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>sunvé, yuyujé</td>
<td>[duhám]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[ucyete]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td></td>
<td>-panyámahe (?)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>yujyadhvam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>yuyjante</td>
<td>[badyantá]</td>
<td></td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td>[ ...</td>
<td>... ]</td>
<td>sunvire, yuyujré</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Furthermore, there are some reasons to assume that static -āna-participles could have active counterparts, that is, participles derived from the static stem with the active participle suffix -ant, cf. such forms as stavánt- (active participle?) ‘praised’ (first noticed by Watkins 1969: 142ff.) and pépiśat- ‘adorned’ (RV 10.127.7; see Schaefer 1994: 45, 152f.), which may point to the unattested static *pêpiše ‘is adorned’ of the type cékite (Schaefer 1994: 44); (iii) mahánt- ‘great’ (probably belonging with the hapax static mahe ‘is able’ (RV 7.97.2) (see Kulikov 2006b: 59ff. for details). These forms represent a good structural parallel to Hittite participles with the suffix -ant- that form passives for transitive verbs (but hitherto have generally been considered isolated phenomena, without parallels in other Indo-European branches), such as kunant- ‘killed’ (kuen- ‘to kill’) or dant- ‘taken’ (dā- ‘to take’).

The hypothesized existence of active participles in the static paradigm, which, in spite of their “active” morphology, were employed in passive constructions, still further supports the connection between the static formation and the passive syntactic pattern, on the one hand, and, on the other hand, serves as additional evidence against the traditional assumption about a straightforward connection between middle morphology and passive syntax in Vedic.
Causative oppositions

Vedic attests a remarkable variety of morphological types of causative oppositions and a rich system of morphological causatives.

(i) The most regular and productive causative marker in the present system is the suffix -(p)áya- attached to the “Brugmann’s” (full/long) grade of the root, cf. vr̥dh- ‘grow, increase’ – vardháyati ‘makes grow, increases’, cit- ‘appear, perceive’ – cetáyati ‘shows (= makes appear), makes perceive’ (~ citáyati ‘appears’).

(ii) In early Vedic we also find a few other types of the causative opposition within the present system, where the causative member is represented by another present type, usually by one of the presents with nasal affixes: suffixes -nó-/nu- (pres. class V), -nāˊ-/nī- (pres. class IX) or infix -ná-/-n- (pres. class VII); the intransitive member (anticausative) is often a class IV present (with the suffix ‘-ya’) or a class I present. Generally, the intransitive (anticausative) member of the opposition is inflected in the middle, the transitive-causative in the active (but transitives with middle inflection are possible as well). Cf. i- ‘go, send’: étí (pres. class II) ‘goes’ ~ inóti, invati (pres. V and its thematicization) ‘sends’; kṣī́ ‘perish, destroy’: kṣíyate ‘dies, perishes’ (pres. IV) ~ kṣiṅ̄áti (pres. class IX) ‘destroys’; jan- ‘be born, arise’: jáyate ‘is born’ (pres. class IV) ~ jánati (pres. class I) ‘begets’; pū́- ‘purify’: pāvate ‘becomes clean, purifies oneself’ (pres. class I) ~ punā́ti (pres. class IX) ‘purifies’.

Two minor types of causative oppositions in the present system include pairs with

(iii) reduplicated causatives (pres. class III, cf. yúcchati ‘keeps away’ ~ yuyóti ‘makes keep away’) and

(iv) present class VI causatives (cf. tárati (pres. class I) ‘crosses’ ~ tiráti (pres. class VI) ‘passes over, rescues’).

(v) Finally, for some verbs, the causative opposition is marked only by the diathesis (middle: intransitive ~ active: transitive); although some middle forms can also be used transitively (with their self-beneficent meaning), thus showing the labile syntax (Kulikov 2014). This type of opposition is mostly attested for class I presents; see, for instance, Gotō 1987: 48ff., cf.: námate ‘bends’ (intr.) ~ námati (/-te) ‘bends’ (trans.); váhate ‘drives, goes’ ~ váháti (váhatē) ‘carries’; svádate ‘is sweet’ ~ svádati ‘makes sweet’.

(vi) In the aorist system, the causative meaning is typically expressed by the reduplicated aorist, cf. vr̥dh ‘grow, increase’ ~ ávīvr̥dhat ‘has made grow’.

(vii) Furthermore, the intransitive (anticausative) member of the causative opposition can also be expressed by the medio-passive -i-aorist, sometimes alongside the sigmatic aorist; cf.: jan ‘be born, arise’: ájani, sigm. aor. ájaniṣṭa ‘has been born’ ~ ájījanat ‘has generated’.

(viii) In the perfect system, the causative/non-causative distinction can only be rendered by the diathesis opposition, although not quite consistently: active forms can be used both transitively and intransitively (thus being labile; see Kulikov 2014: 1151–1152). Cf. 3 sg. perf. mid. paprátha ‘has spread (intr.)’ ~ 3 sg. perf. act. paprātha ‘has spread (trans.), filled out’; 3 sg. perf. mid. vāvrdhē, 3 sg. perf. act. vavárdha ‘has grown (intr.)’ ~ 3 sg. perf. act. vavárdha ‘has increased (trans.)’ (see, in particular, Kümmel 2000: 319ff., 469ff. et passim).

(ix) For a number of verbs, there is a correlation between transitivity and tense: forms of the present system (i.e. the present proper and imperfect) are employed transitively, while perfect forms are intransitive; cf. 3 sg. perf. tatānā ‘has stretched’ (intr.) ~ 3 sg. pres. act. tanóti, 3 sg. pres. mid. tanute ‘stretches’ (trans.); see Kulikov 1999, where this phenomenon (“split causativity”) is discussed in a typological perspective.
Within a short chapter, it is impossible to discuss in detail the main syntactic features of Old Indo-Aryan. Only a few remarkable syntactic peculiarities will be mentioned in this section.

**Passive and ergative(-like) constructions**

Passivization typically suggests (i) the promotion of the initial direct object to the subject position (= the subject of the passive construction or passive subject for short) and (ii) the demotion of the initial subject (usually, an agent). The demoted subject either becomes an oblique object (encoded by the instrumental case, as, e.g., in RV 9.86.12d s-vāyudhāh sotṛ̥ bhiḥ pūyate vṛ̥ ṣā ‘[Soma], the well-armed bull, is being purified by pressers’; more rarely by the genitive case (cf. RV 1.61.15a asmā id u tyād ānu dāyy esām ‘this very thing was granted to him by them’) or, more frequently, remains unexpressed (see Gonda 1951: 77f.), as in RV 9.97.35c sōmah sutāḥ pūyate ajyāmānah ‘Soma, pressed out, is purified, being anointed.’ See Jamison 1979: 133ff.; P. K. Andersen 1986. There are some reasons to treat Vedic constructions with perfect passive participles in -ta/-na- and genitive marking of the agent separately from canonical passives with the instrumental. According to P. K. Andersen (1986), the genitive noun displays a number of subject properties (usually animate; definite and/or refers to old information) in such constructions, and therefore they should be qualified as ergative rather than passive properly speaking.

**Reflexive constructions**

The reflexive pronoun tanū- has developed from the substantive meaning ‘body’ and, like its Old Iranian (OAv.) cognate tanū-, is well attested in this grammaticalized usage in the RV, as in RV 1.147.2 vandārus te tan_vām vande agne ‘As your praiser, I praise myself, o Agni.’ In some cases it is nearly impossible to draw with accuracy the distinction between the reflexive and non-reflexive (‘body’) meanings: both interpretations are perfectly appropriate in the context, as in RV 10.54.3 yān mātāraṃ ca pitāraṃ ca sākām / ājanayathās tan_vāh svā́yāḥ ‘. . . since you produced (your) mother and (your) father together from your own body / from yourself.’

Next to the reflexive usages proper, the Vedic reflexive pronouns can be employed in emphatic usages, i.e. as an emphatic reflexive, or intensifier, signaling the fact that its referent is somewhat unexpected in the role where it appears (cf. two usages of Eng. -self: Peter saw himself in the mirror ~ Peter drew this picture himself); see Kulikov 2007. In the more common adverbial case pattern we find the instrumental forms (as in RV 6.49.13 quoted below). The nominal pattern is attested, for instance, with accusatives and datives, as in AV 1.13.2 = RVKh. 4.4.2 mṛḍāyā nas tanābhyo / máyas tokēbhyas kṛdhī ‘Be gracious toward ourselves, make pleasure for [our] offspring.’

The reflexive usage of ātmán- becomes common after the RV but is still in competition with tanū- in the AV (see Kulikov 2007). In Vedic prose, ātmān completely outs tanū-; see Delbrück 1888: 207ff., 262f, Wackernagel 1930: 489ff., §240b; and, especially, a brief survey in Oertel 1926, with a rich collection of examples.

The emphatic usage is attested for ātmān- from the AV onward, cf. TS 1.7.3.3 táto devā ābhavan pārāˊsurā yásyaivaṃ vidūṣo ‘nvāhārya āhriyate bhavati ātmānā pārāsya bhṛatryo bhavati ‘Then the gods prospered, the Asuras perished. He, who, knowing thus, performs the Anvāhārya-rite, prospers himself, his rival perishes.’

In contrast to ātmān-, the more archaic stem variant tmān- already occurs in emphatic usage in the early RV. Its instrumental appears in the very frequent regular form tmānā
(63 attestations in the RV) and in the form tmányā (built on the stem tmánī- or tmánya-, of unclear origin), which occurs in the late RV (1.188.10, 10.110.10) and in the late mantras (VS 20.45 = TBm 2.6.8.4 etc.), cf. RV 10.110.10 upāva srjā tmányā ‘Release [the sacrificial animal] yourself.’

SOME REMARKABLE TYPOLOGICAL FEATURES OF THE LATER (MIDDLE AND NEW) INDO-ARYAN LANGUAGES

Although this chapter mostly concentrates on the earliest chronological layers of Indo-Aryan, which furnish the richest evidence for Indo-European comparative and historical linguistics it will be appropriate to briefly summarize the most salient typological features shared by all or most of the later (Middle and New) Indo-Aryan languages, which continue the developments and result from the innovations and trends starting as early as Old Indo-Aryan.

Replacement of the old case system with new agglutinative cases

By the end of the MIA period, that is, at the turn of the second millennium AD, the Indo-Aryan languages lost most of the cases of the original Sanskrit, or Old Indo-Aryan (OIA), system of eight cases (which, except for minor details, is nearly identical to the case system reconstructed for Proto-Indo-European). Generally, only two cases survive, direct (resulting from the merger of nominative and accusative) and oblique (mostly going back to the OIA genitive), although in some languages isolated traces of some other oblique cases, such as the instrumental, locative or ablative, can still be found, sometimes even within the declension paradigm; cf. the Sinhala instrumental case suffix -en/-in and Assamese ergative -e, both reflecting the OIA instrumental singular ending of a-stems -ena. The functions of the lost cases are largely taken over by morphemes (bound or free, i.e. postfixes or postpositions) of different origin.

These include:

(i) Primary, or “old”, postpositions, going back to Proto-Indo-European morphemes that were used in the adpositional function already in the proto-language. An example of an old OIA postposition reflected as a case suffix in a daughter language, in MIA, is the Māhārāṣṭrī ablative suffix -āhi (constructed with the ablative in OIA); see Insler 1991–92; Bubeník 1998: 68f.

Next to old postpositions, there are several markers that result from grammaticalization of some verbal and nominal forms:

(ii) Postpositions descendant from

(ii.a) non-finite verbal forms, in particular, converbs (traditionally called “absolutes” or “gerunds”, cf. Skr. ādāya ‘with’, lit. ‘having taken’), gerundives (participia necessitatis) and verbal adjectives;

(ii.b) case forms of some nouns (such as Skr. gr̥he ‘in the house’; see below);

(iii) final members of compounds, which, again, may represent

(iii.a) non-finite verbal forms (cf. nominal compounds in -sthita-; see below) or

(iii.b) nominal case forms (cf. nominal compounds in -artham ‘goal, purpose’; see below).
The markers of the first three types (i, ii.a and ii.b), representing free morphemes (words), were originally attached to (non-nominative) case forms of the noun, thus forming, after having become bound morphemes, the second layer of case forms (see below). In type (iii), the source of the new case morpheme was attached to the nominal stem, thus creating a new case within the first layer. In fact, due to the erosion of the nominal inflection by the end of the MIA period, some (oblique) case forms may eventually become indistinguishable from bare stems, and thus the border between types (ii) and (iii) cannot always be drawn with accuracy.

A number of examples of grammaticalization of new postpositions and case suffixes can be found already in the MIA period, in particular, in Apabhraṃśa Prakrits (for details, see Bubeník 1998: 67, 80), cf. the ablative postfix -ṭṭhiu < OIA sthita- ‘standing’ (passive perfect participle of the verb sthā ‘stand’) and the locative postposition majjhe < Skr. madhye (loc. sg. of madhya ‘middle’) in Apabhraṃśa Prakrit (Bubeník 1998: 67, 80; Bubeník & Hewson 2006: 113):

a. hiaya-ṭṭhiu
   heart-LOC
   ‘out of [my] heart’

b. gharaho majjhe
   house:GEN in
   ‘in the house’

In NIA languages we observe a rapid increase in use of such new postpositions, which are normally added to the oblique case form. This grammaticalization may result in the amalgamation of a postposition with the nominal stem or oblique case and, hence, in the rise of a new case. Such is, for instance, the origin of some new case endings, for instance, Sinhala dat. -ṭa, Khowar dat. -te < Skr. -artham ‘goal, purpose’; Sinhala gen. -ge < Skr. grhe ‘in the house’ (loc. sg. of grha- ‘house’).

Case markers containing -k- and/or -r-, which go back to nominal derivatives of the OIA verbal root kr- (kar-) ‘make, do’, can be found in several NIA languages. These include, in particular, genitive morphemes in several NIA languages (see, in particular, Bubeník & Hewson 2006: 122f.), such as Hindi -kā, -ke < Apabhraṃśa -kera < Skr. gerundive kārya- ‘to be done’; Awadhi, Maithili -ker < Skr. ptp. perf. pass. kṛta- ‘done, made’; Bhojpuri -kæ < Skr. adj. kṛtya- ‘to be done’.

Likewise, some dative -k-morphemes, such as Hindi -ko, Oriya -ku, Marathi -kē and Romani -ke/-ge, reveal a vestige of the same Sanskrit root kr- (kar-).

The initial stages of the corresponding grammaticalization processes can be dated as early as OIA. Thus, the starting point of the grammaticalization path of Skr. -artha ‘goal, purpose’ toward the Sinhala dative case suffix -ta is the adverbial usage of the accusative of the Sanskrit bahuvrīhi compounds in -artha- (X-arthan), meaning ‘having X as a goal, purpose’ → ‘for (the sake of) X’: udakārtham ‘having water as a goal’ → ‘for water’, sukẖārtham ‘having happiness, pleasure as a goal’ → ‘for happiness, for pleasure’, tadar- thanam ‘having that as a goal’ → ‘for that, therefore’.

In NIA languages, the morphological status of the resulting markers may vary from bound morphemes (case suffixes), tightly connected with the nominal stem (as in Sinhala, cf. examples above), to free morphemes (postpositions). The latter type can be illustrated by the Hindi dative-accusative morpheme -ko, which can be shared in some constructions
by several nouns (as in राम और मोहन ko ‘to Ram and Mohan’), exemplifying a “Gruppenflexion”, which pleads for a postposition rather than for a suffix analysis.

The difference between these groups of case morphemes is often described in terms of the distinction between cases of the first, second and third layers (Zograf 1976; Masica 1991: 230ff.; Matras 1997). The first layer corresponds to the case in the strict sense of the term and, in Hindi, is limited to the opposition between the direct and oblique cases. The third layer corresponds to clear instances of postpositional phrases, while the second one takes an intermediary position between cases proper and postpositional phrases. It is important to note that only the first-layer case can trigger agreement on adjectives. Although both “Gruppenflexion” and the lack of agreement with second-layer cases appear to distinguish these morphemes from cases proper, the high degree of grammaticalization makes appropriate their association with the category of case in general.

**Productive morphological causatives**

NIA languages are notorious for their system of productive morphological causatives, continuing the OIA causatives in -(p)áya-, which go back to going back to the Proto-Indo-European *-éye/o-causative. This distinguishes Indo-Aryan from other Indo-European branches and, in particular, from many Western Indo-European languages that lost the remnants of the Proto-Indo-European causatives. From the MIA period onward, we observe the tendency to develop double (second) causatives. Many NIA languages distinguish between contact (direct) and distant (indirect) causatives and may have up to four members of causative chains, differing both in suffixes and root vowel; cf. Hindi खुल- ‘open’ (intr.) – खोल- ‘open’ (trans.), चल- ‘go’ – चलाय- ‘drive (make go)’.

**Ergative construction**

Many NIA languages exhibit an ergative pattern, usually alongside a nominative-accusative construction (split ergativity). Ergativity is particularly common for Central and Western NIA languages, where ergative pattern appears with perfective verb forms; cf. Punjabi:

```
tarkhān-nej kursi-ā̃ banā-i-ā̃
carpenter-ERG chair:F-PL.DIR make-PAST.PFV-F-PL
```

‘The carpenter has made chairs.’

Historically, the ergative construction continues the (late) OIA nominal passive construction with the perfect passive “participle” (more precisely, verbal adjective); see section 5.1.

**FURTHER READING**

**Editions and translations of ancient Indo-Aryan texts**

Virtually all important Vedic texts have been critically edited, and for most of them there are European translations, with one important lacuna, some parts of the Paippalāda recension of the Atharvaveda (on which see below). The most ancient OIA text, which is also the most important source of information for comparative Indo-European studies, the RV, was edited by Aufrecht (1877), and remains the standard edition; there is also a more
recent edition by van Nooten and Holland (1994), which offers a metrically restored text. There are a number of complete translations of the RV, which include that of Geldner (1951/2003; in German, still remains standard and most often quoted); a new German translation by M. Wittel, T. Gotô and several other scholars (2007–; work in progress; by now two volumes have been published, which encompass books I to V); a Russian translation by Elizarenkova (1989–1999); and the most recent English translation, by Jamison and Brereton (2014). Renou’s translation (1955–1969), published in several issues of Études védiques et pāṇinéennes, has remained incomplete but nevertheless is of extreme value for a linguistic and philological study of the RV.

For the second most ancient OIA (Vedic) text, the Atharvaveda in the recension Śaunakīya, editio princeps by Shankar Pândurang Pandit (1895–1898), still preserves its value; the standard European edition by Roth and Whitney (2nd rev. ed. 1924) has no critical apparatus, which is partly reproduced in Whitney and Lanman’s (1905) translation. Alongside a number of anthologies, such as Bloomfield 1897, Whitney and Lanman 1905 had remained the only complete translation of the AV (without the last, 20th, book, or kāṇḍa, which almost exclusively is taken from the RV, however) till recently, when Elizarenkova’s (2005–2010) Russian translation appeared. Sadly, the second and third volumes of this last work of the great Russian Vedicist were published posthumously, and the last 30 hymns of kāṇḍa XIX have remained untranslated. Another (and presumably more ancient) recension, Paippalāda, which has survived into modern times, became available to Sanskritists in fairly readable Orissa manuscripts only in the middle of the 20th century. The edition, translation and study of the Paippalāda is work in progress, one of the biggest challenges of the contemporary Vedic (and, in general, Indo-Aryan) scholarship. By now, approximately half of the books (kāṇḍas) of this important text have been critically edited and translated; see, in particular, Bhattacharya 1997, 2008 (edition of kāṇḍas I–XVI); Zehnder 1999, Lubotsky 2002, Griffiths 2009 and Kim 2014 (edition and translation of kāṇḍas II, V, VI–VII and VIII–IX, respectively).

Next to numerous printed editions and translations of Vedic texts, there are also a number of online resources, such as the website of Thesaurus Indogermanischer Text und Sprachmaterialien, or TITUS (http://titus.uni-frankfurt.de/indexe.htm?/texte/texte.htm); GRETLIL – Göttingen Register of Electronic Texts in Indian Languages (see http://gretil.sub.uni-goettingen.de/); a few cumulative websites providing links to existing resources, such as INDOLOGY (http://www.indology.info/etexts/); as well as several resources for MIA and (early) NIA languages, such as, for instance, the Online Pāli Tipitaka Website (http://tipitaka.sutta.org/#/). Note, however, that some of these online editions may represent mere mechanical transliteration of certain printed editions, not always corresponding to standard scholarly notation, and therefore should be used with caution.

**Historical grammars**

Although the main details of the historical grammar of the Indo-Aryan branch are discussed at length in numerous studies and reference books on Indo-European comparative linguistics, a comprehensive updated monographic study tracing the origin of the entire OIA linguistic system from Proto-Indo-Iranian and, further, Proto-Indo-European remains a desideratum. The monograph Burrow 1973 offers an overview of the Sanskrit grammar in a historical perspective, but many of Burrow’s analyses and claims (as, for instance, his variant of the laryngeal theory with one single laryngeal phoneme) are questionable and not adopted by most Indo-Europeanists.
Comprehensive historical surveys of the Indo-European origins of the Indo-Aryan phonological systems can be found in Kobayashi 2004 (which covers only the consonant system) and a short overview (chapter) of the origins of the whole phonological system by the same author Kobayashi (forthcoming/2017). An excellent outline of the origin of the OIA morphology from Proto-Indo-Iranian and Proto-Indo-European is Gotô 2013.

The further history of the OIA linguistic system throughout the MIA and NIA periods is outlined in the classical studies Bloch 1934/1965 and Chatterji 1926/1970, which appeared nearly a half century ago and also requires an update. A brief sketch of the linguistic developments from OIA to NIA is given in Oberlies (forthcoming/2017).

**Synchronic grammatical descriptions and dictionaries of OIA and MIA**

The most comprehensive grammatical description of the OIA linguistic system is the fundamental compendium, consisting of three volumes, started by Jacob Wackernagel at the end of the 19th century with the first volume of his *Altindische Grammatik*, continued after his death by Albert Debrunner (Wackernagel & Debrunner 1896–1957), and still remaining unachieved. The three published volumes encompass phonology, nominal inflection, pronouns, numerals, nominal compounds and nominal suffixes. The fourth volume that should give an exhaustive description of the verbal system is now probably the main desideratum and challenge of Old Indian linguistics. Although a number of monographic studies have appeared by now, dedicated to nearly all verbal formations (that is, individual present and aorist types, the perfect, so-called secondary derivatives and a variety of regular deverbative nominal formations), such as the classical monographs Narten 1964 (on sigmatic aorists), Gotô 1987 (on thematic root presents = Old Indian present class I) and Kümmel 2000 (on perfects), a full systematic overview of the entire verbal system remains a task for future researchers.

There are dozens of more condensed grammars and many reference handbooks on Sanskrit. A few of them have become classics, and have remained such over decades, even though they were written more than a century ago and require updates. These include Whitney 1889 (which encompasses both Vedic and Classical Sanskrit), two Vedic grammars by Macdonell (1910 and 1916) and a very condensed (and therefore hardly appropriate for beginners), yet very rich Vedic grammar by Renou (1952). An extremely well-organized condensed outline of Classical Sanskrit grammar is Zaliznjak 1978 – a masterpiece of grammatical description. For late OIA, as attested in the great Old Indian epics, see Oberlies 2003.

For syntax, Delbrück 1888 still remains probably the most comprehensive monographic study, alongside with two equally old handbooks by Speijer [Speyer] (1886 and 1896). An overview of the most important aspects of the OIA (Vedic) syntax in modern linguistic perspective is given in Kulikov (forthcoming/2017).

The most comprehensive complete dictionary of Sanskrit remains the famous Great Petersburg Dictionary of Sanskrit (Sanskrit-German) compiled by O. Böhtlingk and R. Roth (1855–75) – a true monument of the Sanskrit lexicography. Even in spite of several lacunae due to the fact that several Vedic texts were unavailable (or at least not yet critically edited) at that time, it offers the most complete coverage of the lexical material. Further dictionaries are largely dependent on this chef d’œuvre, including the most widely used more compact one-volume Sanskrit-English dictionary, Monier-Williams 1899. A new lexicographic project that started in India in the 1970s, *An Encyclopaedic*
Dictionary of Sanskrit on Historical Principles (Ghatage et al. 1976–), under the general guidance of A. M. Ghatage (from vol. 3 on, the supervisor of the project was S. D. Joshi; from vol. 8 on, V. P. Bhatta), aims to update and replace the Petersburg Dictionary. This fundamental dictionary is far from completion, however, still dwelling on the character a.

There are several concordances of OIA texts. The largest among them, under the general editorship of Vishva Bandhu (1935–1992), covers nearly all Vedic texts, locating all Vedic word-forms attested in the entire Vedic corpus (with relatively few exceptions and lacunae). The concordances for the RV are Lubotsky 1997 (word-forms without translations); Grassmann 1873, out-of-date in many respects but still useful; and Krisch et al. 2006– (ongoing project, aiming to replace Grassmann’s dictionary), both with translations.

Finally, one should mention the grammatical dictionary of the Old Indian (non-denominative) verbs, Whitney 1885, conveniently cumulating all verbal formations derived from each verbal root. This lexicon has several lacunae, and some of Whitney’s interpretations are out-of-date, but nevertheless it remains an indispensable tool for any student of Sanskrit. A dictionary of Old Indian verbs Werba 1997 (only one volume published so far) is very rich and informative, but uses highly cryptic notation and is more difficult for beginners.

For MIA, the most comprehensive overviews are Pischel 1900 (outdated in several parts but still very useful) and Hinüber 2001; see also an important syntactic survey, Bubeník 1998. A convenient didactically oriented survey of individual Middle Indic languages is Mylius 2013, based on the personal teaching material of the author. Grammatical descriptions of individual languages, starting with the oldest documented MIA idiom, Pāli, include important reference grammars, such as Oberlies 2001.

General and typological overviews of the Indo-Aryan languages

A comprehensive survey of the Indo-Aryan branch is offered in the classic book Masica 1991. Masica 1976 is a pioneering work that defined the major features of the South Asian linguistic area (which includes virtually all Indo-Aryan languages); a short overview of the languages of this area can also be found in Zograf 1990. Zograf 1976 gives an excellent survey of the typologically relevant morphological features of the modern Indo-Aryan languages. Southworth 2005 is a useful overview of the issues arising at the crossroads of linguistics, history and archaeology, intended, above all, for non-linguists, focusing on the aspects of linguistic research that are relevant for those interested in the history and, especially, prehistory of South Asia.

An encyclopedic survey of the major languages of the Indo-Aryan branch is given in the volume edited by G. Cardona and D. Jain (2003) within the Routledge language family series. Although this thousand-page compendium is very informative, it is, unfortunately, quite poorly edited, very inconsistent in terminology and inaccurate in glossing, which severely hampers the use of the volume as a reference handbook for the Indo-Aryan languages; besides, it offers rather limited coverage of the Indo-Aryan languages (about 20 languages). Much more comprehensive, methodologically consistent and uniform are two encyclopedic volumes published within the series Jazyki mira (Languages of the World), Elizarenkova et al. (2004) (on OIA and MIA) and Oranskaja et al. (2011). The latter volume offers an unprecedented coverage of the NIA languages, containing short but very informative sketches of nearly 40 languages, prepared in accordance with rigorous and methodologically consistent principles.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This paper was finalized thanks to a grant from the ERC (grant agreement 313416, EVALISA project) to Jóhanna Barðdal and thanks to a Marie Skłodowska-Curie grant from the European Commission (Grant Proposal number 702895, TRIA project). I would like to thank Alexander Lubotsky for his invaluable remarks, criticisms and comments. I am also grateful to Mate Kapović for careful editing of these chapters.

NOTES

1 This is a somewhat simplified picture, since, in some periods and/or communities, certain MIA languages could even overrun Old Indo-Aryan (Sanskrit) in prestige.
2 Except for a few highly infelicitous attempts to introduce the Indian system of accent marking into the Latin transcription, such as the one adopted in Cardona & Jain 2003.
3 dvi-pāṭ ‘biped’, cātus-pāṭ ‘quadraped’.
4 dirgha-śrūt ‘heard far’ RV 8.25.17.
5 Almost exclusively from the late RV on and before vowels: sānt-av RV 1.184.1, 10.117.9, yānt-av RV 1.139.4.
6 vi-carānt-āḥ (wrong accent) RV 8.55.4.
7 Only sānti RV 2.28.1, 8.8.23 (Pādapatha sant-i).
8 paśumānti RV 9.92.6, 9.97.1 and ghṛtāvantī ‘having ghee’ RV 9.96.13 (P. o. ant-i).
9 The ratio of the endings -ā : -āu in the RV is 7:1.
10 -āih :: -ēbhīh : RV 1:1 ; AV 5:1 ; Br.+ almost exclusively -āih.
12 In the case of thematic and thematicized suffixes such as -ya-, -sa-, -nva- etc., the thematic vowel (a) is traditionally regarded as a part of the suffix, “properly speaking” being -y-, -s-, -nv-.
13 Athematic conjugation, after vowels.
14 Athematic conjugation, mostly after consonants.
15 Pres. class IX.
16 With reduplicated presents (class III).
17 With nearly all reduplicated presents (class III), some root presents (class II) and many root aorists.
18 Mainly late early and middle Vedic.
19 Mainly late early and middle Vedic.
20 Only 1× in the RV.
21 In the optative.
22 An example of this type might be the Rgvedic present ṣravati (*ṣr-ṇv-ā-ti?) ‘moves, raises’, which does not occur unambiguously accented, however.
23 The only formation that might be qualified as the athematic counterpart of this latter type is the RVic hapax tar-u-te (\textit{\textsc{\texttt{\texttt{t}}}}- ‘pass, overcome’), attested in RV 10.76.2.
24 Athematic middle participles with the suffix -āna- exhibit unusual syntactic properties in the language of the RV. While the corresponding finite forms are used only transitively, the -āna-participles are attested in both transitive and intransitive (passive) patterns (see Delbrück 1888: 264). For instance, the participle hinvānā- (root hi ‘impel’), taken by all grammars as the middle participle of the nasal present with the suffix -nō-/nu- (class V in the Indian tradition), occurs 18 times in intransitive (passive) patterns and 10 times in transitive patterns in the RV). Similarly, the participle yujānā- (root yuj ‘yoke’) occurs 8 times in intransitive (passive) syntactic patterns (e.g. rātha yuj-ānāḥ ‘a chariot that has been yoked’) and 14 times in transitive syntactic patterns (as in yuj-ānō haritā rāthe ‘yoking two fallow [horses] to the chariot’). As demonstrated in Kulikov 2006a, 2006b, the grammatical characteristics
of such passive -āna-participles should be reconsidered. These participles are grammatically ambiguous; that is, they belong to the following two paradigms: (1) to the paradigm of the (middle) root aorist and medio-passive aorist and (2) to the paradigm of the (middle) present and stative. Thus, the participle hin-vānā in its transitive use, meaning ‘impelling’, belongs to the paradigm of the transitive nasal present (hin-vāte etc.), but it is a member of the paradigm of the stative (3 sg. hin-vē, 3 pl. hin-vi-rē), i.e. a stative participle, when used intransitively (in a passive syntactic pattern), meaning ‘impelled’. Similarly, yujānā- is a member of the paradigm of the (transitive) root aorist (āyukta etc.) when used transitively (‘yoking’), but it is a member of the paradigm of the passive aorist (3 sg. āyoji, 3 pl. ayujran), that is, a passive aorist participle, when used in passive syntactic patterns (‘yoked’). Likewise, 3 sg. and 3 pl. middle perfect forms (with the endings -e and -re, respectively) attested in passive constructions should be taken as statives built on perfect stems, rather than as middle perfects proper. For instance, the form dadhē (root dhā ‘put’) should be taken to be a 3 sg. form of the middle perfect when it means ‘has put’, and a 3 sg. form of the stative with the passive interpretation ‘is put/has been put’.

25 As opposed to the -āya-presents with the short grade of the root, which are mostly intransitive.


27 An annotated translation of these hymns is now being prepared by the author of this chapter (Kulikov, in preparation) and will be published as a separate volume, together with a translation of the independent (i.e. not borrowed from the RV) Kuntā-pa-hymns of book XX.

28 This is, for instance, the case with the TITUS online edition of the Śatapatha-Brāhmaṇa, in particular, as far as the word division and accent notation is concerned.

29 For instance, readers interested in Indo-Aryan ergativity will find a few remarks on ergative markers and constructions in Hindi and Urdu, but no mention of ergativity in the chapter on Assamese. In fact, however, the authors of this chapter posit two endings of the nominative case, -e and -o (p. 419), used in transitive and intransitive constructions, respectively, and thus representing two different cases, ergative and absolutive/nominative. Likewise, readers will not find any mention of converbs (one of the remarkable typological features of Indo-Aryan languages); instead, individual chapters use a few less standard terms such as “conjunctive participle” or “absolutive”. Furthermore, the chapter on the earliest attested Indo-Aryan language, Sanskrit, uses heavily Pāṇini-dependent notation and is barely accessible for non-Sanskritists. These are obvious editorial slips and inconsistencies; see detailed criticism in the reviews Kulikov 2004 and Peterson 2006.

REFERENCES

Editions and translations of early Vedic texts (Ṛgveda, Atharvaveda)

Aufrecht, Thomas 1877, Die Hymnen des Rigveda, Herausg. Von Th. Aufrecht, 2 Bde. 2. Aufl, Bonn


[Repr. in one volume (Paperback) as Harvard Oriental Series; 63 (2003)]
Kim, Jeong-Soo 2014, *Die Paippalādasamhitā des Atharvaveda: Kāṇḍa 8 und 9; eine neue Edition mit Übersetzung und Kommentar*, Röll, Dettelbach
Witzel, Michael et al. 2013, *Rig-Veda: das heilige Wissen. Dritter bis fünfter Liederkreis / aus dem vedischen Sanskrit übers. und hrsg. von Michael Witzel (Buch III), Toshifumi Gotō (Buch IV) und Salvatore Scarlata (Buch V), Verlag der Weltreligionen, Berlin
Historical grammars


Kobayashi, Masato 2004, *Historical Phonology of Old Indo-Aryan Consonants*, ILCAA, Tokyo University of Foreign Studies, Tokyo


Handbooks and grammatical studies of Vedic and Classical Sanskrit


Baum, Daniel 2006, *The Imperative in the Rigveda*, LOT, Utrecht


Gonda, Jan 1951, *Remarks on the Sanskrit Passive* (Orientalia Rheno-Traiectina; 4), Brill, Leiden

Gonda, Jan 1979, *The Medium in the Rgveda* (Orientalia Rheno-Traiectina; 24), Brill, Leiden


Kümmel, Martin 2000, Das Perfekt im Indoiranischen, Reichert, Wiesbaden

Macdonell, Arthur Anthony 1910, Vedic Grammar, Trübner, Strassburg


Narten, Johanna 1964, Die sigmatischen Aoriste im Veda, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden


Oertel, Hanns 1926, The Syntax of Cases in the Narrative and Descriptive Prose of the Brāhmaṇas. I. The Disjunct Use of Cases, Winter, Heidelberg

Renou, Louis 1930, Grammaire sanscrite, Adrien-Maisonneuve, Paris (2me éd. revue, corrigée et augmentée: 1960)

Renou, Louis 1952, Grammaire de la langue védique, Lyon

Schaefer, Christiane 1994, Das Intensivum im Vedischen, Vandenhoeck und Ruprecht (HS; Ergänzungsheft 37), Göttingen

Speijer [Speyer], Jacob S. 1886, Sanskrit Syntax, Brill, Leyden
Speijer [Speyer], Jacob S. 1896, *Vedische und Sanskrit-Syntax*, (Grundriss der Indoirischen Philologie und Altertumskunde; Bd. I, Heft 6), Trübner, Strassburg


(1896) J. Wackernagel, Bd. I, Lautlehre
(1905) J. Wackernagel, Bd. II/1, Einleitung zur Wortlehre. Nominalkomposition
(1930) J. Wackernagel, Bd. III, Nominalflexion – Zahlwort – Pronomen
(1954) A. Debrunner, Bd. II/2, Die Nominalsuffixe
(1957) Introduction générale par L. Renou
(1957) A. Debrunner, Nachträge zu Bd. I


**Grammars and handbooks of Middle Indic**

Bubeník, Vít 1998, *A Historical Syntax of Late Middle Indo-Aryan* (Apabhraṃśa) (Current issues in linguistic theory; 165), Benjamins, Amsterdam


Mylius, Klaus 2013, *Zur Didaktik mittelindischer Sprachen* (Beiträge zur Kenntnis südasiatischer Sprachen und Literaturen; 23), Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden


Pischel, Richard 1900, *Grammatik der Prakrit-Sprachen*, (Grundriss der indo-arischen Philologie und Altertumskunde; 1/8), Trübner, Strassburg

**Dictionaries, grammatical dictionaries, concordances**

Böhtlingk, Otto & Roth, Rudolf 1855–1875, *Sanskrit-Wörterbuch*, Eggers, St. Petersburg

Grassmann, Hermann 1873, *Wörterbuch zum Rig-Veda*, Brockhaus, Leipzig

Krisch, Thomas [et al.] 2006–, *RIVELEX: Rigveda-Lexikon*, Bd. 1 (2006); Bd. 2 (2012) (Grazer vergleichende Arbeiten: 20, 26), Leykam, Graz


Overviews of Indo-Aryan languages


Elizarenkova, Tatjana, Kibrik, Andrej & Kulikov, Leonid (eds.) 2004, Jazyki mira: Indo-arijskie jazyki drevnego i srednego periodov [Languages of the World: Old and Middle Indo-Aryan Languages], Academia, Moscow


Zograf, Georgij A. 1990, Jazyki južnoj Azii [Languages of South Asia], Nauka, Moskva

Other works

Beekes, Robert S.P. 2011 2 [Revised and corrected by Michiel de Vaan], Comparative Indo-European Linguistics, John Benjamins, Amsterdam–Philadelphia

Bubeník, Vit & Hewson, John 2006, From case to adposition: The development of configurational syntax in Indo-European languages [Current issues in linguistic theory 280], Benjamins, Amsterdam


Kortlandt, Frederik H. H. 1979, “Toward a reconstruction of the Balto-Slavic verbal system,” Lingua 49: 51–70


LIV = Lexikon der Indogermanischen Verben, Rix, Helmut (ed.), Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag, Wiesbaden 2001


CHAPTER 3

IRANIAN

Nicholas Sims-Williams

INTRODUCTION

At present, Indo-European languages of the Iranian group are spoken over a wide area including virtually the whole of Iran, Afghanistan and Tajikistan, together with the neighbouring parts of Turkey, Syria, Iraq, Pakistan and Uzbekistan, as well as larger or smaller enclaves in Oman, Armenia, Georgia, Azerbaijan, Turkmenistan and western China (see the map at the end of Schmitt 1989). In mediaeval times Iranian languages such as Sogdian and Khotanese were well established even further east, in the area which later became Chinese Turkestan (Xinjiang); at a still earlier period, the original homeland of the Iranian-speaking peoples seems to have lain to the northeast of the present state of Iran.

The present chapter will concentrate on the earliest attested Iranian languages, Avestan and Old Persian, which are naturally the most important for Indo-European studies. These two Old Iranian languages will be described to a large extent in terms of their similarities to and differences from the closely related Old Indian, a procedure justified in the first place by pragmatic considerations. Old Indian (Vedic and Sanskrit) is attested by a huge and varied corpus of literature, written in a clear, almost phonemic script which allows the phonological and morphological structure of the language to be clearly perceived. On the other hand, each of the attested Old Iranian languages is known from a limited corpus – in the case of Old Persian, a tiny corpus – of rather repetitive and monotonous texts, one written in an ambiguous cuneiform writing system, the other by means of an over-elaborate, almost phonetic alphabet, whose intricacies obscure rather than illuminate its grammatical structure. Although some of these deficiencies are made good by the more abundant Middle and Modern Iranian material, it cannot be denied that Iranian evidence is usually more difficult than Indian for a student of Indo-European to evaluate.

From a theoretical point of view, too, it is proper to treat the Iranian languages in constant comparison with Indian, since the two groups are not merely closely related but jointly constitute a single Indo-Iranian branch of the Indo-European family, as is indicated by the innumerable phonological, morphological and lexical isoglosses which they share to the exclusion of all other branches of Indo-European. One such isogloss is the use of OInd. ā́rya-, Av. a̯rīia-, OPers. ariya- (from which the name of the country “Iran” derives) as a self-designation for the speakers of Indo-Iranian, whence the alternative term “Aryan”. The closeness of the relationship between Indian and Iranian is most clearly demonstrated by the fact that it is possible to find not just words but whole sentences in Vedic or Avestan which may be transposed from the one language into the other merely by observing the appropriate phonological rules; e.g. Av. tām amavaṃtaṃ yazāt-tom sūrom dāmōhu sauviśṭam mithrōm yazāi ‘this powerful, strong (being) worthy of worship, Mithra, the strongest amongst creatures, I shall worship’ (Yasht 10.6) = Ved. *tām ā́dvantaṃ yaṭatām śūrāṃ dā́mhaśa sāviśṭham mītrāṃ yajai (Jackson 1892: xxxi–xxxii).

Despite the overwhelming similarity of Indian and Iranian, each is distinguished from the other by a number of characteristic innovations. Phonological innovations on the Indian side include the loss of the Indo-Iranian diphthongs *ai, *au (> e, o) and voiced sibilants (*z, *ȳ, etc.) and the development of a series of retroflex consonants (tʃ, n̪, s̪, etc.), whilst Iranian
languages typically show the loss of the voiced aspirates *bʰ, *dʰ, *gʰ, etc. (> b, d, g), the development of the voiceless fricatives f, θ, x (from IIr. *p, *t, *k before consonants, and from IIr. *pʰ, *tʰ, *kʰ), the depalatalization of IIr. *č, *ǰ(ʲ) (> *ʦ, *ʣ, OPers. θ, d, Av. s, z) and the change of *s (in most positions) to h. Some apparent exceptions to these isoglosses may be due to the reversal of a sound-change: for instance, Av. pt (as in haptopa ‘seven’) may derive from the expected *ft (as attested, directly or indirectly, in all other Iranian languages, e.g. Pers. hafti) rather than preserving IIr. *pt (cf. Olnd. saptā). In other cases, however, it is clear that a development characteristic of Iranian cannot in fact have been fully carried through at the Common Iranian stage: cf., for instance, p. 271 below on evidence for the survival of the palatal *č in certain clusters. Similarly, the development of *s to h, though common to Avestan, Old Persian and all later Iranian languages, is demonstrably later than the earliest attestations of Iranian in Ancient Near Eastern sources (cf. the next paragraph on the divine name Assara mazaš). Thus, at least in phonology, the innovations attributable to Common Iranian are comparatively few in number (though significant in kind).

The original homeland of the Aryans, the speakers of Common Indo-Iranian, cannot be precisely identified, but is thought to have been in western Central Asia, to the east and northeast of the Caspian Sea. At a time when “Proto-Indian” and “Proto-Iranian” (i.e. the ancestral dialects from which the Indian and Iranian languages respectively derive) had already become differentiated to some extent, perhaps about the beginning of the 2nd millennium B.C.E., two groups of “Proto-Indian” or “Indo-Aryan” speakers began to migrate from this homeland, one towards the west (cf. above, p. 205, on traces of the Indo-Aryans in the Hurrian empire of Mitanni in northern Mesopotamia) and the other towards India. At a later date, Iranian tribes too began to migrate westwards, reaching central and western Iran by the middle of the ninth century B.C.E., at which period they are referred to for the first time in Assyrian sources; whether they had come from the northeast by the most direct route, to the south of the Caspian, or more circuitously through the Caucasus is still uncertain. (For a more detailed summary and references to the literature on the prehistory of the Aryans see Schmitt 1987.) From the ninth century B.C.E. onwards, a scattering of Iranian linguistic material is to be found in Mesopotamian sources, beginning with the names of the Medes (Matai) and Persians (Parsuaš) and most notably including the name of the principal deity of the Iranians in the form Assara mazaš (= Common Iranian *Asura-mazdās, later *Ahura-mazdāh, cf. OPers. Auramazdā, Av. Ahurō Mazdā).

It is in part as a result of the fact that Common Iranian cannot have differed greatly from Common Indo-Iranian (or “Aryan”) that it is difficult to determine the precise status of the so-called Nuristani languages (formerly known as “Kafiri”). This group of languages, recorded in modern times in the northeast of Afghanistan and neighbouring parts of Pakistan, undoubtedly belongs to the Indo-Iranian family, but the nature of the relationship is not clear. All three theoretically possible solutions have been advocated: a third, independent sub-group beside Indian and Iranian (Morgenstierne 1973: 327–343); an archaic form of Iranian, much influenced by several millennia of proximity to languages of the Indian group (Mayrhofer 1983); or a branch of “Proto-Indian” which split off before the arrival of the Indo-Aryans in India and subsequently developed in intensive contact with Iranian languages (Degener 2002).

Only two Old Iranian languages are attested by texts, namely Avestan and Old Persian. Others, such as Median and Scythian, are known to us only through occasional words and names transmitted in texts in other languages.

Avestan is the language of the Zoroastrian scriptures, the Avesta, the earliest parts of which are the Gāthās (“Songs”) of Zoroaster or Zarathushtra – whom tradition places in the sixth century B.C.E., though many scholars argue, partly on linguistic grounds, for a date five centuries or more earlier – and the Yasna Haptaŋhāti “Service consisting of seven chapters”. These texts,
together with a few short prayers, are preserved in Old or “Gathic” Avestan, a highly archaic dialect comparable to Vedic in its stage of development. Later Avestan, also known as Younger Avestan, is attested by a much larger corpus of texts, including the Yashts (hymns in honour of individual divinities) and the \textit{Vidēvdād} (“Law against the demons”). The manuscript tradition of the Avesta goes back to the Sasanian period (224–651 C.E.), when these orally transmitted texts were written down, probably for the first time, in a specially invented and extremely elaborate alphabetic script (see Hoffmann & Narten 1989 and the script table below).

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{cccccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\
\hline
a & ā & ā & ā & ā & ā & ā & ā \\
9 & 10 & 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 & 15 & 16 \\
e & ē & o & ō & i & ĭ & ĭ & ŭ \\
17 & 18 & 19 & 20 & 21 & 22 & 23 \\
γ & ϯ & ϯ & ϯ & ϯ & ϯ & ϯ & ϯ \\
k & x & x & x & g & g & γ \\
24 & 25 \\
\hline
γ & \hline
26 & 27 & 28 & 29 & 30 \\
\hline
φ & ϕ & ϕ & ϕ & ϕ & ϕ & ϕ & ϕ \\
31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\
\hline
ν & \hline
35 & 36 & 37 & 38 & 39 & 40 & 41 & 42 \\
\hline
θ & θ & θ & θ & θ & θ & θ & θ \\
33 & 34 & 35 & 36 & 37 & 38 & 39 & 40 \\
\hline
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Schripttafe of the Avesta-Schrift}
\end{table}
The Avestan orthography was designed to preserve the traditional pronunciation with great accuracy and contains much phonetic detail which is irrelevant for the comparatist. For example, the word for ‘land’ appears in such different forms as dāŋ́hu- and dašiuu-, both representing what is etymologically and probably phonemically *dahyu-. A particularly confusing feature of the Avestan writing system is the frequent notation of anaptyctic and epenthetic vowels. In the present chapter such unetymological vowels will be written in superscript, as in daδāiti ‘he gives’ (= OInd. dādāti) – contrast the diphthong aï in aíði ‘come!’ – or GAv. dëbitïita- ‘second’ (= OInd. dvïïy-.). Note too that the semi-vowels y and w are regularly represented by ii and uu (which can equally represent the sequences iy and uw) and that i, ū are not consistently distinguished from i, u.

Old Persian, which is known from inscriptions of the Achaemenian period (sixth to fourth centuries B.C.E.), represents a later stage of linguistic development as well as a different dialect from the language of the Avesta. Like Avestan, it is written in a specially invented script, in this case a form of the cuneiform writing commonly used in the Ancient Near East. The Old Persian script combines syllabic and alphabetic principles. For example, there are two t-signs, of which t̠ is syllabic (representing [tu(ː)], since i and ū are not distinguished from i and u) whilst ṭ can represent either a syllable [ta, tə] or the simple consonant [t]. Since there is no sign for *t̠ (though comparable signs such as d̠ do exist), [ii] or [ti:] has to be written by means of two signs (t-i), a combination which can also denote [tai]. The fact that a sign such as ṭ has both syllabic and consonantal values is the source of much ambiguity, as is the fact that in most cases a nasal is not written before another consonant. As a result of these two deficiencies, for instance, the 3 sg. pres. ind. act. and mid. (-ti and -tai) and the equivalent pl. endings (-nti and *-ntai) are all indistinguishable in writing. In this chapter, for the sake of clarity, Old Persian forms will generally be cited in phonemic transcription rather than in transliteration. (On the Old Persian writing system see further Hoffmann 1976: 620–645.)

Only a brief survey can be given here of the great variety of languages attested at the Middle Iranian stage. Western Middle Iranian is represented by Middle Persian, which is essentially, though not in every detail, a later form of the same dialect as Old Persian, and by Parthian. The Eastern Middle Iranian languages include Khotanese and the closely related Tumshuqese, which are the most conservative of the Middle Iranian languages in their morphology, Sogdian, Bactrian and Choresmian. Amongst the even more numerous Modern Iranian languages we shall occasionally have reason to refer to Persian (or New Persian), Pashto, Ossetic and the Shughni group. Further information on these and other Iranian languages may be found in the relevant chapters of the Compendium Linguarum Iranicarum (Schmitt 1989); on the Middle Iranian languages see also Henning 1958.

PHONOLOGY

The vocalic system of Common Iranian is almost identical to that of Old Indian. The main difference is the lack of ē and ō, the diphthongs from which OLd. e and o derive being preserved in Old Iranian as ai (Av. aē or oī) and au (Av. ao or əu). Cf. OPers. daïva-, Av. daēuua- ‘(evil) god, devil’ = OLd. devā- ‘god’; OPers. raui- ‘river’ = OLd. srōtas- ‘stream’. The comparatively rare long diphthongs aï and āu, which are shortened in Indian, also survive in Old Iranian, cf. Av. instr. pl. yasnāiš ‘by sacrifices’ = OLd. yajñāiś; Av. nom. sg. gāuš ‘ox, cow’ = OLd. gāuṣ.

The etymological origins of the Iranian vowels a, i, u, r (= [ɾ]) put and ū in general the same as those of the equivalent Old Indian vowels. In particular, as in Indian, PIE *a, *e, *o, *u, *m fall together as a, and the corresponding long vowels (including those
which ultimately derive from short vowel + laryngeal) as ā. Brugmann’s Law, according to which PIE *o gives ā in open syllables, seems to apply in the same circumstances in both branches of Indo-Iranian, e.g. Av. nom./acc. sg. dārū, Olnd. dārū ‘wood’ = Gr. ὀξύς. However, the contexts in which the PIE laryngeals are vocalized (to Iran. i, Olnd. ī, e.g. OPers./Av. pītār-, Olnd. pītār- ‘father’ < PIE *ph₂tēr-) are more restricted in Iranian, resulting in many cases of the correspondence Iran. 0 : OInd. ī, e.g. GAv. dūγRa- = OInd. duhitār- ‘chooses’ < *wl̥₂nH-toy. Where Old Indian has īr, ur (before vowels) or īr, ūr (before consonants) from PIE *r̥ or *l̥, Iranian has uniformly ar:

Av. sarah- = Olnd. śiras- ‘head’ < *kṛh₂:os-
OPers. paru- = Olnd. purū- ‘much’ < *p̥ḥ₁-u-
OPers. darga-, Av. darγa- = Olnd. dīrγā- ‘long’ < *dḥ₁g³o-
Av. vərṇā- = Olnd. ārṅā- ‘wool’ < *h₂:wl̥₁:neH₂-

Since short a and long ā probably differed markedly in quality as well as in quantity (as they do both in Sanskrit and in many Modern Iranian languages), the system of simple vowels in Common Iranian may be represented diagrammatically as in Figure 4.3.

![Diagram of simple vowels](image)

**FIGURE 4.3** SIMPLE VOWELS

This simple system seems to survive almost unchanged in Old Persian (in so far as the inadequate cuneiform orthography allows one to tell), though the unitary sound r had probably developed into a sequence of vowel + consonant, most likely [ər] (written a-r- in initial position, but distinct from the sequence [ar], as is proved by its different fate in Middle and New Persian). A similar development is found in Avestan, where r usually gives ār (i.e. ar’) as in kərṇāotī ‘makes’ = Olnd. kṛṇotī. But many other outcomes of r are found in Avestan, e.g. ar before s (aršti- ’spear’ = OPers. a-r-s-t-i- [əṛšτi-], Olnd. ṛṣṭi-), ohr before k, p (vəhrkə- ‘wolf’ = Pers. gurg < OPers. *varka-, Olnd. vṛka-, cf. below, p. 272–273), ir before y (pres. stem kiriia- ‘to be done’ = OPers. kərviya- < *kṛya-, Olnd. kṛiyā-), rə after t (pres. stem təftiia- ‘to steal’ = Sogd. čəft- < *təfyə-, cf. Olnd. ət̥p- ‘stealing’).

The example of r may serve to illustrate the complexity of Avestan vocalism. Considerations of space make it impossible to follow in equal detail the development of all the vowels (for which see de Vaan 2003), but the most important contextual changes must be noted. These include the (re)appearance of mid-high vowels ē and ŏ. In final position Ir. *-ai and *-au give -ē and -ō (or -uə) respectively (e.g. 3 sg. pres. mid. ending -tē = OPers. -təi, Olnd. -te < *-tai, PIE *-toyy), while *-yə gives LAv. -e (e.g. a-stem gen. sg. ending LAv. -aθe = GAv. -aθiā, OPers. -aθyā, Olnd. -asya, PIE *-osyo). Internally, a often becomes e between two palatal sounds, as in GAv. yəhiā, LAv. yəγhe ‘of whom’
Differing or -ō above on this page). Final -ō (GAv. -ō or -ā) most often derive, via *-ah and *-āh, from *-as (PIE *-os, *-es) and *-ās respectively, e.g. yō (GAv. yē) ‘who’ (nom. sg. m.), yā ‘who’ (nom. pl. f.). Before nasals, especially in final syllables, a and ā normally develop into ə and q (= [aː̃]) respectively, so that -ōm and -qm are the regular acc. sg. endings of a-stems and ā-stems. The ə which arises thus is subject to further changes, for instance to i after a palatal, as in əcānah- ‘desire’ < *cēnah- (beside OPers./Av. əcānah-, OInd. cānas-). The sequences *(i)yə, *(u)wə frequently contract to aə, ao. Cf. īm ‘this’ (= OPers. iyám, OInd. iyám, nom. sg. f.); LAv. tūm ‘thou’ (= GAv. tuwām, OPers. tuvam, OInd. tuvám, nom.); aēm ‘this’ (beside GAv. aiiṁ, OInd. ayām, nom. sg. m.); baon ‘they became’ (= OInd. (ā)bhave).

The consonantism of the Iranian languages diverges much more fundamentally from that of Old Indian. Two major innovations in Iranian are the loss of all aspirates and the appearance of a series of fricatives (f, θ, s) unknown to Old Indian. In most cases these fricatives derive from p, t, k in preconsonantal position, but they also correspond to the Old Indian voiceless aspirates ph, th, kh (in all positions). The voiced aspirates (PIE *bʰ, *dʰ, **gʰ/gʰw, OInd. bh, dh, gh) merely lose their aspiration, thus merging with the original non-aspirate series:

| Iran. p | OInd. p; OPers./Av. pităr-, OInd. pitār- ‘father’ |
| Iran. f | OInd. p; Av. fria-, OInd. priyā- ‘dear’ |
| Iran. t | OInd. t; OPers. tuvam, GAv. tuwām, LAv. tūm, OInd. tuvām (nom.) ‘thou’ |
| Iran. th | OInd. t; OPers. thevām, Av. ṭhēm, OInd. tvām (acc.) ‘thee’ |
| Iran. kh | OInd. kh; Av. xā-, OInd. khā- ‘spring, well’ |
| Iran. b | OInd. b; Ossetic baḷ ‘group’, OInd. baḷa- ‘power’ (?) |
| Iran. d | OInd. d; Av. dantā-, OInd. dant- ‘tooth’ |
| Iran. g | OInd. g; Av. gaṝ-, OInd. girī- ‘mountain’ |

Despite their loss of aspiration in Iranian, the PIE voiced aspirates are still occasionally distinguishable from the equivalent non-aspirates by the effects of Bartholomae’s Law (cf. above, p. 229), according to which a combination such as *gʰ+t was assimilated to *gdʰ in Indo-Iranian (and perhaps already in Indo-European), whereas *gʰ+t gave *kt. By this rule, which applied to all combinations of voiced aspirate + voiceless stop or sibilant, one may deduce from a form such as GAv. aog’dā ‘he said’ (= aog + morpheme -tā) that the root aog originally ended in an aspirate *gʰ or *gʰw; in this case *gʰ is confirmed by Gr. e̞yγəθαι, etc. Unfortunately, the contrary deduction cannot usually be made from the presence of a voiceless cluster, since the effects of Bartholomae’s Law tended to be cancelled out by the restoration of the normal form of the morpheme, as in LAv. aoxta for GAv. aog’dā or OPers./LAv. bastā- ‘bound’ for expected *bazda- (= OInd. baddha-).

Common Iranian was rich in both bilabials (s, z, š, ž) and affricatives (č, j, i.e. [ʃ, ʤ]) – differing from the OInd. c, j, which, at least in the earliest period, were palatal stops – and
possibly *c, *j, i.e. [ts, dz]). These stem in part from PIE *s and in part from the “two series of palatales”, i.e. (i) PIE *k, *g, *gʰ (> OInd. ś, j, h) and (ii) PIE *k/kʷ, *g/gʰ, *gʰ/gʰ when secondarily palatalized before PIE *e, *i, *y, etc. (> OInd. c, j, h). The history of these sounds is rather complicated, but is worth examining in some detail in view of the fact that Iranian here retains evidence of distinctions which are lost in Old Indian.

For Indo-European only one sibilant is to be assumed, namely *s (with the allophone *z in clusters such as *zd). In addition to its role as an independent phoneme, PIE *s has a secondary origin as an automatic feature of the juncture of two dental stops (cf. above, p. 54): *t+t/*d+t = *tst, *dʰ+t = *dzdʰ, e.g. PIE *sed+to- = *setsto- ‘seated’ > OInd. sattā-, MPers. [ni]šast (< OPers. *[ni]šasta-), Lat. sessus, cf. also OIr. sess ‘seat’, etc.; *wr̥dhʰ/to- = *wr̥zdh’dʰo- ‘increased’ > OInd. vr̥ddhā-, Av. vər̥zdʰa- (the development of a voiced group in the latter case being a further instance of Bartholomae’s Law). As these examples indicate, the resulting clusters were simplified in different ways in Indian, where the sibilant disappeared, and in Iranian, where the first of the two dental stops was lost, giving the regular correspondences OInd. tt : Iran. st and OInd. ddh : Iran. zd.

In Indo-Iranian, much as in Slavic (cf. below, p. 526–527), PIE *s and *z underwent a split, becoming Indian ś, *z, Iranian š, ž after the sounds collectively known as “RUKI” (i.e. r, r̥, ţ, ã/u; k and other velars and palatales; ḫ, ā̄i) but remaining, at least in the first instance, unchanged in other contexts. Examples: the loc. pl. ending Av. -śu (OInd. -su) after stems in u (etc.) but -su after stems in ant; Av. mīḏda- ‘reward’, OInd. mīḍdā- < *mizḏhā-, PIE *miz-dʰ(h)₂-o- (Gr. μῖσθος) but OPers./Av. Mazdā- (divine name) < PIE *mṇz-dʰ-eh₁-, cf. OInd. medhā- ‘wisdom’ < PIE *mṇz-dʰ-eh₁-, st. (Note that the Iranian forms with z and ž here clarify their Indian counterparts, which have become opaque as a result of the loss of voiced sibilants in Old Indian.) This change does not affect Iran. st, zd < *st, *dzdʰ, showing that the sibilant was still protected by the preceding stop when the RUKI rule operated: Av. vista- ‘known’ < *witst-o- = *wid+to- (Gr. μῖσθος, OIr. fess). In Iranian (but not Indian) the change to š, ž also takes place after a labial: Av. diβza-, OInd. diβsa- < *di(d)zβa-s-, desiderative of Av. dab, OInd. dabh ‘to injure, deceive’.

Finally, those instances of PIE *s which had so far survived unchanged in Iranian underwent a further split, s remaining in groups such as sn, sp, st, *ts (> s) but becoming h in all other contexts, e.g. OPers. a(h)mi, Av. ahmi, Khot. imā ‘I am’, OPers. hanti, Av. hanti, Khot. īnād ‘they are’ (= OInd. āsmi, sānti < PIE *h₁esi, *h₁enti), but OPers. asti, Av. asti, Khot. ašṭa- ‘he is’ (= OInd. āsti < PIE *h₁esiti); ā-stem loc. pl. Av. -ā-hu (= OInd. -ā-su). Although this development is found in all Iranian languages it must be comparatively late, since Proto-Iranian forms with s (for later h) are preserved in ancient Near Eastern sources (cf. above, p. 264).

An important implication of this fact is that the development of the PIE “first palatal series” (*k, *g, *gʰ) to sibilants (s, z), which occurs in Avestan and all branches of Iranian other than Old Persian (and later dialects of southwestern Iran), must also be later than the Common Iranian period, since the s arising from PIE *k does not participate in the change of PIE *s to h. As a plausible intermediate stage between the attested Iranian series (Av. s, z, z, OPers. ð, d, d) and the presumed Indio-Iranian palatal affricates *č, *j, *j̥ (< PIE *k, *g, *gʰ) the dental affricates *ts and *dz may be reconstructed for Common Iranian. In Figure 4.4 the postulated development of this “first series” of palatals is set beside that of the “second series” (i.e. the Indo-Iranian palatal stops arising from the secondary palatalization of PIE velars or labio-velars, which eventually gave palatal affricates in Iranian) in order to show how the resulting Iranian and Indian forms disambiguate one another.
As Figure 4.4 shows, only the voiceless sounds (OInd. ś, Iran. *ʦ < PIE *k; OInd. c, Iran. č < PIE *k/kw before a palatal) are etymologically unambiguous. Each of the voiced sounds, OInd. j and h, Iran. *ʣ and *ǰ, has a double origin, since Old Indian confuses the two palatal series while Iranian (as always) confuses aspirates and non-aspirates. However, the ambiguity is resolved in the case of words preserved in both branches of Indo-Iranian, each of which preserves the distinction lost in the other:

Iran. *ʦ = OInd. ś: OPers. θard-, Av. sar’d-, cf. OInd. šarād- ‘year’ (PIE *k)
Iran. *ʣ = OInd. j: OPers. yad, Av. yaz, OInd. yaj ‘to worship’ (PIE *g)
Iran. ċ = OInd. c: OPers. ċi, Av. čį, OInd. cit (enclitic) ‘also, even’ (PIE *k̞w)
Iran. j = OInd. h: Av. jāni-, OInd. jāni- ‘woman’ (PIE *g̞w)

The depalatalization seen in the unconditioned reflexes of the PIE palatals (Av. s, z, OPers. θ, d) failed to take place in most combinations with consonants, where the usual outcome in all Iranian languages is palatal š, ž, as in Av. fsu- beside pasu- ‘sheep’ (OInd. paśú-, PIE *p(e)k ˊu-). In most cases the Old Indian equivalent is retroflex ṣ, *ẓ, cf. Av. ašta ‘eight’ = OInd. aṣṭā́ (PIE *Hok ˊtoh 1); Av. mərəždika- ‘mercy’ = OInd. mr ˳ḍīkā- (< *mr ˳ẓḍīkā-, PIE *-ǵd-).

An important special case is that of PIE *sk ˊ, which gives OInd. (c)ch, Iran. s, as in the inchoative present stem OInd. gāccha- ‘to come’, Choresmian [n]γs- < *[n]gasa- ‘to arrive’ (a more archaic form than Av. jasa-), all < PIE *g̞m-skó- (Gr. βάσκε). Regarding PIE *kw (> OPers. s, Khot. šš [j], elsewhere sp), *g̞kw (> OPers. z, Khot. š [ʒ], elsewhere zh) and *kr see below, p. 271.

Finally, we should note the outcome of PIE clusters of velar, labio-velar or palatal + *s. All such groups give OInd. ks, whilst Iranian distinguishes four possibilities: (i) xš < *k(ʾ)s, e.g. Av. vaxšīta-, OInd. vakṣyā-, future of vak ‘to speak’; (ii) gž < *g̞kw (for *g̞kw)+s by Bartholomae’s Law), e.g. GAv. aogžā- ‘saidst’; (iii) š < *ks, e.g. Av. mošu, OInd. maksi ‘quickly’; and (iv) ž < *g̞ž (for *g̞b+s), e.g. GAv. dīdərəža- , desiderative of dar’z ‘to make firm’ (OInd. dfmḥati).

The following schema shows the minimum complement of consonantal phonemes to be assumed for Common Iranian. An asterisk (*) indicates those which do not survive as such in any attested language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>First palatal series</th>
<th>Second palatal series</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
<td>*g̞w</td>
<td>*g̞b/g̞wh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ts</td>
<td>*dzh</td>
<td>*č</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIGURE 4.4** THE FIRST AND SECOND SERIES OF PALATALS IN IRANIAN
Regarding the reappearance of PIE *l (> OPers./Av. r) as l in later Iranian see the next paragraph. On the reconstructions *ts and *dz see above, p. 269–270. The symbol *H represents a consonant deriving from the PIE laryngeals, whose survival, at least in certain positions, is indicated by metrical and other considerations; e.g. GAv. mazdâ, a form which is disyllabic as the nom. sg. but trisyllabic as the gen. sg., indicating nom. *mazdaH-s (> *mazdâs) ~ gen. *mazdaH-as.

Not all of the phonological developments shared by Avestan and Old Persian can be ascribed to Common Iranian. The change of *s to h (except in certain groups), which occurs in all attested Iranian languages, cannot have been completed until after the arrival of Iranian speakers in western Iran, as has already been pointed out. The replacement of *l (and *l*) by r (and r*), which Avestan and Old Persian have in common with Vedic, was nevertheless not universal in Iranian, as is shown by the later reappearance of dialectal forms with l < PIE *l, e.g. Pers. lištan ‘to lick’ beside Av. raēz (PIE *leyǵh-, Gr. λείχω). Similarly, the two Old Iranian languages share a development of PIE *k(ʷ)y to šy, as in OPers. šiyav, Av. š/i/i/aau ‘to go’ (PIE *kyew-, OInd. cyav-, Gr. σεύομαι and κῑνέω), but the preservation of an affricate in Khot. tsū- [tʃuː]-, Tumshuqese cch- ‘id.’ indicates that only the intermediate stage *čy is to be attributed to Common Iranian.

The most important isogloss separating Old Persian from Avestan is to be seen in the treatment of the “first palatal series”, PIE *k, *g, *gʰ, which are thought to have developed via palatal affricates (IIr. *ć, *j, *jʰ) and dental affricates (Common Iranian *ts, *dz) and which give θ and d in Old Persian (and later dialects of southwestern Iran) but s and z in Avestan and all other Iranian languages (cf. above, p. 269 ff.). The treatment of the PIE combinations *kw and *g(ʰ)w provides a three-way isogloss, giving sp, zb in most Iranian languages (including Avestan), s, z in Old Persian, and š, ž in the group of northeastern Iranian Saka (Scythian) languages represented by Khotanese. Examples: Av. aspa-, OPers. asa-, Khot. aśša- [aʃa]- ‘horse’ (= OInd. āśva-, PIE *-kw-); Parthian əzūn, OPers. hōzan-, Khot. biśāa-[biʃāa]- ‘tongue’ (cf. OInd. jihvā-, PIE *-ʃw-/w-). Since the palatals š, ž can hardly be derived from *tw and *dzw, it is simplest to assume Common Iranian *c̩w and *jw. The palatal nature of IIr. *c̩ < PIE *k seems also to have been preserved up to the Common Iranian stage in the case of the cluster *čr, cf. Khot. ššāra- [ʃəra]- ‘good’ (= Av. srīra-, OInd. śrīla- ‘beautiful’, cf. Gr. κρείων). In Old Persian *čr gives ʒ (a sibilant of unclear phonetic character), which a development which may have proceeded via *tsr and *θr, since ʒ is also the outcome of Iran. *θr < PIE *tr or *tl, as in puça- ‘son’ (= Av. puthra-, OInd. putrá-).

It is not surprising to find that it is the languages spoken at the fringes of the Iranian world – Old Persian in the extreme southwest and the languages of the nomadic Saka peoples of the Eurasian steppes – which stand out as aberrant in respect of the old isoglosses mentioned above. In each case, Avestan represents the Iranian mainstream. Avestan is often regarded as an Eastern Iranian language, which is no doubt correct from a purely geographical point of view, but it shows none of the phonological developments which are characteristic of Eastern Iranian in later periods, such as the voicing of the fricative in the groups *xt and *ft or the depalatalization of *č. Avestan does indeed have its peculiarities, such as the reversion of *ft to pt (cf. above, p. 264), the development of *rt
to ʃ (cf. below, p. 272–273) or the frequent insertion of a nasal ɲ before h (e.g. anhaʃ, 3 sg. subj. of ah- ‘to be’, OInd. āsat), but they do not seem likely to be very ancient, nor do they provide evidence of a particularly close relationship with any other Iranian language.

**Morphophonology**

At the end of the word certain special phonological changes take place. In the attested Old Iranian languages the original distinctions between long and short final vowels are lost. In general, Old Persian and Old Avestan tend to lengthen short final vowels, while Later Avestan shortens many that were originally long. In the a-declension, for instance, both the voc. sg. (originally *-a) and the instr. sg. (originally *-ā) appear as OPers./GAv. -ā, LAv. -a, so that the length of the final vowel no longer has any phonemic (or etymological) significance. The merging of long and short final vowels was not universal, however; cf. Morgenstierne 1973: 108–9 on remnants of a distinction between *-a and *-ā in Shughni and other Modern Iranian languages of the Pamir mountains.

A feature common to all the Iranian languages is the loss of final *-h (< PIE *-s). In some languages the loss of *-h is accompanied by a change in the quality of the preceding vowel, whereby *-ah > Av. -ā (GAv. also -ā), Khot. -ā [-e], Sogd. -i, and *-āh > Av. -ā, Khot. -e [-e:] (but Sogd. -a; cf. the similar changes accompanying the loss of final *-m in Middle Iranian: *-am > Khot./Sogd. -u; *-ām > Khot. -o but Sogd. -a). In Old Persian, on the other hand, *-h is lost without a trace, as are *-d/-t and perhaps some other final consonants, so that *-ah/-ad and *-āh/-ād give -a and -ā respectively (thus re-establishing the recently lost phonemic distinction between long and short final vowels). Such developments had a significant impact on the morphology of the Iranian languages, as may be seen from the paradigm of the a-stems in Table 4.21.

The changes typical of absolute word-final position are sometimes found also internally, in compounds and before particular morphemes: cf. Av. vačō.mar.ta- ‘recited aloud’ and instr. pl. vačōbiš, both from vačah- ‘speech, word’ with the same treatment of *-ah < *-as as occurs in final position in the nom./acc. sg. vačō/vačə́ (= OInd. vácas, Gr. (Ϝ)ἔπος). In other cases, however, compound-juncture is treated as internal position, as in Av. vačas.tašti- ‘strophe’, where the original *s “reappears” in accordance with the regular treatment of the PIE cluster *st. Such combinatory variants as vačas° are referred to as sandhi-forms, “sandhi” being the Sanskrit term for the “combination” both of elements within a word and of words within a sentence (cf. above, p. 229–230); in Old Iranian, however, the occurrence of sandhi is almost entirely restricted to the juncture of elements within a single accential unit, i.e. of morphemes in a word, of words in a compound or of a clitic with its host as in Av. frađātaē-ča ‘and (it) will prosper’ (= frađāča-te, 3 sg. subj. mid. of frađ + encl. -ča ‘and’, cf. Hoffmann 1975: 262ff.), kas-čiť ‘someone’ (= nom. sg. m. kō ‘who?’ + encl. indefinite ptcl. -čiť), OPers. kaś-či. As these examples show, the forms occurring in sandhi before enclitics often preserve older phonological forms of the inflections: -taē° < PIE *-toy (cf. above, p. 267), kas° < PIE *k°os. The shortening of the vowel in the first syllable of frađātaē-ča is probably due to a shift of accent to the syllable preceding the enclitic -ča (= Gr. τε, Lat. -que, etc.).

Since the accent is not noted in writing in any Old or Middle Iranian language, its position and nature can only be deduced – as in Germanic – from its observable effects. In Avestan the most important phonological change connected with the accent is the devoicing of r (and or < *r) before k, p, t, which is restricted to forms in which the accent falls on the syllable containing r. The working of this rule, which results in written hrk,
hrp and (*hrt >) š, indicates the existence of a free accent, which is often though not always on the same syllable as in the equivalent Vedic form, e.g. vohrka- ‘wolf’, aməša- ‘immortal’ = Ved. vṛka-, amṛta-, but mahrka- ‘destruction’ = *márka- (as against Ved. markā-). The formation of a compound or the addition of a suffix or enclitic (cf. the preceding paragraph) can result in a shift of accent, as in amər’ta-tār- ‘immortality’ (cf. Ved. sarvā-tāt(i)- beside sārva-). See Mayrhofer in Schmitt 1989: 12–13, Beekes 1988: 55–69.

Whether the Avestan accent was still a musical (pitch) accent like that of Greek and Vedic or a dynamic (stress) accent is controversial, but there is no doubt that most Middle and Modern Iranian languages have developed a strong stress accent, which often causes syncope in unstressed syllables. In many Iranian languages the position of the stress has come to be wholly determined by the quantitative shape of the word, but a free stress, possibly reflecting the PIE accent, is still found in some modern Eastern Iranian languages; cf. Morgenstierne 1973a on the difference in stress in such pairs as Pashto wúča (f.) ‘dry’ (= Ved. śūskā-) and ricá ‘nit’ (= Ved. likšā-).

The assumed close relationship between accent and ablaut (cf. above, p. 68) has become effaced in Iranian, as in other branches of PIE, to the extent that the accent can fall on any syllable, regardless of its vocalism. As a result of the merger of *ē̆ and *ō̆ in IIr. ā, the PIE qualitative ablaut has disappeared, although the palatalization of the IE (labio-)velars before *ē̆ occasionally allows its former presence to be discerned, as in the inflection of GAv. aogah- (n.) ‘strength’, acc. sg. aogō, instr. sg. aojāŋhā < *h₂ewg-os, *h₂ewg-es-ch₂, cf. Gr. μένος, μένεος (Hoffmann 1958: 14–15), or the interrogative pronoun Av. ka-, ča- < *k’o-, *k’e- (cf. below, p. 277). Some such contrasts between forms with and without palatalization survive into Middle Iranian, as in Parthian paryōḏ beside paryōḏy ‘victory’ or Khot. tcamāna, instr. sg. of kye ‘who’. On the other hand, the quantitative ablaut (the PIE alternation 0 ~ e/o ~ ē/ō) is well preserved and productive in Indo-Iranian, where it appears as 0 ~ a ~ ā, or, in combination with a following semi-vowel or consonant, i/y ~ ai/āi ~ āi, v/r ~ ar ~ ār, a/n (< *n̥/n) ~ an ~ ān, etc. It is to be noted that the Indo-Iranian long grade (ā, etc.) does not always derive from a PIE long grade but can also represent the o-grade by Brugmann’s Law (cf. above, p. 267).

These alternations, which can occur in any part of a word (root, suffix or ending), are of great importance for the historical morphology of Iranian (cf. also p. 282 below on the function of “vrddhi” in word-formation). Ablaut occurs both within a single paradigm, a particular grade of the root and/or suffix being associated with each individual ending, and between contrasting paradigms. Ablaut of the root is most often attested in formations without a suffix, particularly in root-presents such as ah-/h- ‘to be’ and reduplicated presents such as daddā-/dad- ‘to give’ (< *de-deh₂/*de-dh₂-). In formations containing a suffix (or infix) it is usually this element which shows alternation, e.g. nouns in -tār-/tar-/tṛ- (-tṛ-), athematic optatives in -yā/-i- or present stems with infixed -na-/n-. The preservation of an alternation in both root and suffix, as in Av. nom. sg. pani, gen. sg. paḥō ‘path’ (< PIE *pent-oh₁-s/*pṇt-h₂-es), is exceptional.

Each individual form in such an alternating paradigm is characterized by a particular ablaut grade of the stem as well as by a specific ending. In the root-present, for instance, the 1/2/3 sg. pres. ind. active generally require the full grade of the stem (as in GAv. mrao-mī, etc., from mrau ‘to say’), while the equivalent middle forms require the zero grade (*mru-yē, etc.). Similarly, a u-stem such as OPers. Kuru- ‘Cyrus’ has the zero grade of the stem in the nom. sg. (Kur-u-š) but the full grade in the gen. sg. (Kur-au-š).
Occasionally the occurrence of an abnormal ablaut grade (e.g. the long grade of the root in GA\textit{v.} \textit{stāumī}, 1 sg. pres. ind. act. of \textit{stauu} ‘to praise’, or the long grade of the suffix in OPers. \textit{dahovāuš}, nom. sg. of the \textit{u}-stem \textit{dahovu}- ‘country’) indicates that a category such as “root-present” or “\textit{u}-stem” is not unitary but is made up of stems which originally belonged to various classes characterized by different configurations of accent and ablaut.

The endings do not normally display ablaut variation within a single paradigm, but only between contrasting paradigms (but cf. Table 4.22 on the inflection of AV. \textit{xratu}-). Thus, the gen. sg. ending is attested as *-as (PIE *-es/-os) in AV. \textit{rāiiō}, \textit{uxšnā} and OPers. \textit{piça} (< *piθras, cf. Gr. \textit{πατρός}, Lat. \textit{pātris}) from the stems \textit{ratii}- ‘wealth’, \textit{uxšan}- ‘bull’ and \textit{pitar}- ‘father’, but as *-s in AV. \textit{garōiš}, GA\textit{v}. \textit{čašmōng} (with -\textit{ng} < *-\textit{nh} < *-\textit{ns}) and \textit{nərš} from the stems \textit{ga iri}- ‘mountain’, \textit{čašma}- ‘eye’ and \textit{nar}- ‘man’. Not all of the individual forms attested are ancient: \textit{nərš}, for instance, with its remarkable combination of the zero grade in both stem and ending, is probably an innovation for expected *\textit{narō} (cf. OInd. \textit{nāras}, Gr. \textit{ἀνδρός}). Nevertheless, since the innovation must have been based on an already existing form – in this case perhaps *\textit{bṛa}-\textit{tṛ-š} (= OInd. \textit{bhṛātur}, ONor. \textit{brādor}), gen. sg. of \textit{bṛātar}- ‘brother’ (cf. Hoffmann 1976: 598) – such a form can justifiably be used as evidence that Iranian inherited \textit{r}-stems with “acrodynamic” accent and the associated type of ablaut (cf. above, p. 69).

\section*{Morphology}

\section*{Nouns}

In Avestan, as in Old Indian, the system of three genders, three numbers and eight cases is well established (though it is only in the singular of a few declensions that all eight cases are formally distinct). During the later history of Iranian this system was gradually simplified. Old Persian has already reduced the cases to six by conflating the dative with the genitive and the instrumental with the ablative; Khotanese has gone further, retaining only remnants of the neuter gender and the dual number, while Sogdian has replaced most of the old plural inflections by forms derived from a collective noun in *-\textit{tā}-. Many Modern Iranian languages have dispensed both with the case system and with grammatical gender, so that in New Persian, for instance, the only morpheme surviving from the Old Iranian system of nominal inflection is the plural in -\textit{ān} (< OPers. gen. pl. -\textit{ānām}).

In Old Iranian the various declensions are principally distinguished by the final sound of the stem: stems in \textit{a}, \textit{ā}, \textit{i}, \textit{r}, etc. They are further divided into sub-classes by gender (e.g. stems in \textit{a} into masculines and neuters) and, to a limited extent, by the different accent and ablaut patterns referred to on p. 273–274 above. The number of distinct declensions is very much reduced in Middle Iranian, where there is a marked tendency to transfer all masculine and neuter nouns to the \textit{a}-declension and feminines to the \textit{ā}-declension.

The most common declension in all Iranian languages is that of the masculine \textit{a}-stems (PIE *o-stems), whose inflection in Avestan (exemplified by \textit{yasna}- ‘sacrifice, worship’ = Ved. \textit{yajñá}-), Old Persian, Khotanese and Sogdian is shown in Table 4.21, together with the corresponding Vedic forms. (Only a selection of the numerous variant forms attested, especially in Avestan and Khotanese, is included in the table.)
TABLE 4.21 DECLENSION OF MASCULINE A-STEMS (PIE STEMS IN *O)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Vedic</th>
<th>Avestan</th>
<th>Old Persian</th>
<th>Khotanese</th>
<th>Sogdian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sg. nom.</td>
<td>yajñ-ás</td>
<td>yasn-ō</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ām</td>
<td>yasn-om</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>yajñ-ā</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-na</td>
<td>(= abl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>yajñ-āya</td>
<td>yasn-āi, GAv. also -āi.ā</td>
<td>(= gen.)</td>
<td>(= gen.)</td>
<td>(= gen.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>yajñ-āt</td>
<td>yasn-ā, LAv. also -āa</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>yajñ-āsya</td>
<td>yasn-āhe, GAv. -āhiā</td>
<td>-ahyā</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ē</td>
<td>yasn-e, yasn-āliā</td>
<td>-āi, -āyā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>yajñ-i</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Du. nom.acc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ā, -āu</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.dat.abl.</td>
<td>yajñ-ābhiyām</td>
<td>yasn-ābhiōa</td>
<td>-a-biyā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>yajñ-āyoś</td>
<td>yasn-āiūa</td>
<td>-āi</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>(= gen.)</td>
<td>yasn-āiū</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ā, -au</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl. nom.</td>
<td>yajñ-ās, -āsas</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ān</td>
<td>yasn-q, GAv. -āŋ</td>
<td>(= nom.)</td>
<td>(= nom.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>yajñ-ās, -ēbhīṣ</td>
<td>yasn-āiš</td>
<td>-ābhīṣ</td>
<td>-yau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>yajñ-ēbhyās</td>
<td>yasn-ābhīā</td>
<td>-ābhīā</td>
<td>-yau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>(= dat.)</td>
<td>yasn-ābhī</td>
<td>-ābhī</td>
<td>-yau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>yajñ-ānām</td>
<td>yasn-ānām</td>
<td>-ānām</td>
<td>-ān</td>
<td>-ān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ēśu</td>
<td>yasn-āśu, -āśu</td>
<td>-āśu</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>yajñ-ēś, -ēsas</td>
<td>yasn-a</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This type of stem seems always to have had a fixed accent (with the exception of the voc. forms, which in Vedic are either unaccented – cf. Sogd. encl. voc. sg. βaγ ‘sir!’ beside stressed βaγā – or accented on the first syllable regardless of the position of the accent in the rest of the paradigm, a rule for which there is some evidence also in Avestan; see Hoffmann 1975: 266 and cf. Gr. ἀδέλφε ~ ἀδελφός, etc.). As for the individual endings, the majority of the Iranian forms are directly comparable with their Old Indian equivalents (see Table 4.10 above). The Av./OPers. instr. sg. in -ā̄ rather than to that in -ena (which is of pronominal origin, as is Khot. -na < Old Iranian *-anā). The usual Av. dat. sg. -āi, which may be compared directly with Gr. -o, is more archaic than GAv. -āi.ā, Oldn. -āya; the final -ā of the latter form seems to be a fossilized postposition, which may be found also in some Iran. abl. sg., loc. sg. and loc. pl. forms. In the nom./acc./voc. du. the Iranian forms agree with Ved. -ā (= Gr. -o, cf. also Lat. ambō) rather than Ved. -au; the two forms are thought to be old sandhi-variants. In the remaining cases of the dual the Iranian and Indian forms are not precisely comparable, the most important difference being the preservation of a distinction between gen. and loc. du. in Avestan. In the nom./voc. pl. the regular equivalents of Oldn. -ās and -āsas are the rare endings Av. -ā and -āhō, OPers. -āha, which seem to be particularly favoured for words pertaining to the sacral sphere (Av. amaśā ‘the immortal ones’, yazatāŋhō ‘(beings) worthy of worship’, OPers. bagāha ‘gods’). The usual form in both Avestan and Khotanese is -a, which has been explained as a PIE collective in *-ā (< *-eh), cf. Lat. loca ~ locus (Hoffmann 1958: 13); OPers. -ā and Sogd. -a are ambiguous and may equally well derive from *-ā or *-ās (or both).

Although Iranian inherited many varieties of stems showing ablaut variation (originally associated with a mobile accent), these seldom survive as independent types. As a result of a tendency to harmonize the inflection of all stems ending in the same sound (e.g. all stems in u), forms deriving from different ablaut types may be combined in the inflection of a single word, often making it difficult to discern its original ablaut pattern.
This point may be illustrated by the u-stem Av. xratu- (m.) ‘mental power, intention, etc.’ (= OInd. krátu- ‘power’), of which all the attested forms are shown in Table 4.22. (The only forms which occur in Old Persian are the two acc. sg. forms xratum and xraθum, the latter showing generalization of θ from a form such as instr. sg. *xraθuvā = Av. xraθβā.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.22 DECLEXION OF AV. XRATU-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this paradigm the suffix appears in the zero grade as *u (Av. ū) or *w (> Av. θ after θ), in the full grade as *au (Av. ūu, in final position ūuũō) or *aw (Av. auu) and in the long grade as *āu (> Av. ā). Note also the occurrence of two ablaut variants of the ending itself in the instr. sg. (-ū < *-u-h₁; -βā < *-w-eh₁ or *-w-oh₁) and gen. sg. (-ūš < *-ow-s; -βō < *-w-es or *-w-os). The etymologies of the remaining endings are as follows. Singular: nom. -s < *-s; acc. -m < *-m (LAv. variant -əm borrowed from the a-stems); dat. -e < *-ey. Originally the abl. sg. was formally distinct from the gen. only in the a-declension; LAv. xraθβa exemplifies a later tendency to create special abl. forms by borrowing the final -t of the a-stems. The loc. and voc. sg. are both endingless but differ in the grade of the suffix. Plural: nom./voc. -ō < *-es; acc. -i < *-(u-)ns; instr. -bīš < *-b-eh₁ or *-b-oh₁; dat./abl. -biiō < *-b-eh₁ or *-b-oh₁; loc. -šu < *-su. The gen. pl. (like that of the a-stems and most other declensions) was remodelled in Indo-Iranian after that of the n-stems, but the older ending -qm (< *-ōm, Gr. -ov) is occasionally attested, as in LAv. yāθβaṃ (beside yātunām), gen. pl. of yātu- ‘sorcerer’.

Adjectives, pronouns and numerals

In general, adjectives are inflected exactly like nouns, though a few common adjectives, such as Av. vīspa- ‘all’ and its cognates, display some of the peculiarities of pronominal declension (see below), e.g. Sogd. abl. (originally instr.) sg. m. wispna, LAv. nom. pl. m. vīšpe (= Khot. bīššā, contrast with GAv. vīšpāṇhō), gen. pl. m. vīšpašqm (beside vīšpanqm). The feminine forms of adjectives are usually derived from a separate stem in -ā or -ī (even where the m./n. stem belongs to a class, such as the u-declension, which includes feminine nouns). Examples from Avestan: sūra- (f. sūrā- ‘strong’; poṛru-, f. poaṛīr- ‘much’; bərəzant-, f. bərəzadīrī- ‘high’.

As in Old Indian, comparatives and superlatives can be formed in two ways: with the suffixes -tara- and -tama- added to the stem of the positive (e.g. Av. aš.aojah-, aš.aojastara-, aš.aojastama- ‘possessing much, more, most power’) or with the suffixes -yah- and -išta- added directly to the underlying root in the full grade (e.g. Av. uy-ra-, aço-iiah-, aço-išta- ‘strong, -er, -est’). Also formed directly from the root is the compound form in -i-, as in Av. tiži.asūra- ‘sharp-tusked’ (< *tiǰ-i- beside tiγ-ra- ‘sharp’), bərəzî.čaxra- ‘high-wheeled’ (beside bərəz-an-), cf. OInd. tji-, Gr. ṛγ- as the compound form of tji-rā-, ṛγōς (< ṛγ-ṛ-) ‘swift; bright’, etc. (cf. above, p. 79).
The principal Avestan demonstrative pronouns are *hā (nom. sg. m.), *hā (nom. sg. f.), *taṭ (nom. sg. n.) ‘this; he, she, it’, and its compound *aēšā, *aēša, *aētāt; *aēm, *īm, *imaṭ ‘this’; and *hāu, *hāu, *awaṭ ‘that’. In their inflection these show the same kinds of peculiarity as the equivalent Old Indian forms (cf. above, p. 85 ff.), including the employment of suppletive stems, often opposing the nom. sg. m. and f. (e.g. *hō, *hā) to the rest of the declension (stem ta-), and the prefixation or suffixation of deictic particles (e.g. *aē- in *aē-śa-, etc., *-am in *aēm), im = OInd. ay-ām, iy-ām). The use of certain endings different from those of nouns (e.g. nom./acc. sg. n. in -t, instr. sg. m./n. in -na, nom. pl. m. in -e) and the infixation of additional elements between the stem and ending (e.g. -hm- and -hy- respectively in several cases of the m. and f. sg., -h/--š- in the gen. pl.) may be exemplified by the following forms of the demonstrative Av. *aēm ‘this’ (stems ay-/ā-, a- and ima-): nom. sg. n. ima-t, instr. sg. m. a-na, dat. sg. m. a-hm-āi, dat. sg. f. a-‘ų-h-āi (< *a-hy-āi), nom. pl. m. im-e, gen. pl. m. aē-š-qn, gen. pl. f. ā-ų-h-qm. The Old Persian forms follow the same principles.

Similar irregularities occur in the inflection of the relative pronoun, Av. yō (GAv. yō), yā, yat, OPers. haya, hayā, taya (where the relative has been compounded with the demonstrative *hā-, *ta-), and of the interrogative pronouns. In Old Iranian, unlike Old Indian, all of the four interrogative stems, ka-, kā-, ēa- and či-, still function as pronouns and tend to combine into a suppletive system like that of the demonstratives: Av. kō, kā, či (nom. sg. m., f., n.), cf. OPers. kaš-či ‘someone’, čiš-či ‘something’.

The inflection of the personal pronouns differs even more markedly from that of nouns, as may be illustrated by the following selection of first person forms:

| nom. sg. | Av. azōm, OPers. adam |
| acc. sg. | LAv. mām, OPers. mām |
| dat. sg. | GAv. mā’biiā, mā’bītō, LAv. mā’uē’iia |
| gen. sg. | LAv. mana, OPers. manā |
| nom. pl. | Av. vaēm, OPers. vayam |
| dat. pl. | GAv. ahma’biiā |
| gen. pl. | LAv. ahmākōm, OPers. amāxam |

(cf. OInd. ahām, mām, māhyā(m), máma; vayām, asmābhya(m), asmākam).

It will be noted that, as in Old Indian, these forms show no distinction of gender and that the singular and plural forms are derived from apparently unrelated stems. A further peculiarity of the personal pronouns is the existence of alternative unaccented (enclitic) forms in certain cases, e.g. 1 sg. Av. mā, OPers. -mā (acc.), GAv. mōi, LAv. mē, OPers. -mai (gen./dat.). In the plural, Old Avestan preserves a distinction between the encl. acc. nā ‘us’, vā ‘you’ (cf. Lat. nōs, vōs) and the encl. gen./dat. nā, vā, while LAv. nō and vō, like OInd. nas and vas, are used for all three cases. Finally, we may note the GAv. nom. sg. f. forms əβōi and x’āe[čā] (from the possessive adjectives əβ-i- ‘thy’, x’ā- ‘(one’s) own’), whose ending may be compared with that of Lat. quae, etc. (Hoffmann 1958: 16).

The numerals show many peculiarities, both archaisms and innovations, in their inflection and word-formation. These are discussed in detail by Emmerick (1992), whose study shows that the rich data from Middle and Modern Iranian languages can be useful in clarifying the Old Iranian forms.

Verbs

In Old Iranian, and especially in Avestan, the inflection of the verb is extremely rich as a result of the numerous intersecting categories into which its forms are classified: person (first, second or third), number (singular, dual or plural), mood (indicative, injunctive, subjunctive, optative or imperative), tense (present, aorist, perfect, etc.) and voice.
NICHOLAS SIMS-WILLIAMS

(active, middle or passive). In general, the category of tense is indicated by the stem of the verb; that of mood by the presence or absence of a modal suffix following the tense-stem, the presence or absence of the augment -a- before the tense-stem and the choice of ending; those of person, number and voice by the verbal endings alone (except in the case of the passive present stem in -ya-). In addition to the finite forms of the verb, participles and infinitives are also attested. The following survey (based on the comprehensive description of Kellens 1984) is primarily concerned with Avestan; Old Persian provides examples of most of the corresponding types and categories but no complete paradigms.

Present stems can be formed in many ways, of which only the principal types can be mentioned here. The most important division is that between “thematic” and “athematic” presents. The thematic presents are formed by adding to the root (in a particular, invariable ablaut grade) a suffix consisting of or ending in -a- < PIE *-e/o-:

Av. θβərəs-a- ‘to fashion’ (zero grade of root + suffix -a-)
baum-a- ‘to become’ (full grade + -a-)

bū-ð-iia- ‘to notice’ (zero grade + -ya-)

zb-aiia- ‘to invoke’ (zero grade + -aya-)

band-aiia- ‘to bind’ (full grade + -aya-)

xšnāuu-aiia- ‘to satisfy’ (long grade + -aya-)

ja-sa- ‘to come, go’ (zero grade + -sa- < PIE ‘inchoative’ *-sko-)

The various types of athematic present have in common certain endings different from those of thematic stems (see below on the indicative and imperative) and the occurrence of ablaut alternation in the stem:

jan-/γn- ‘to strike’ (root-present)
da-dā-/da-d- ‘to give’ (reduplicated present)
vi-na-d-/vi-n-d- ‘to find’ (infixed nasal)

dəbə-nao/*dəbə-nu- ‘to deceive’ (zero grade + -nau/-nu-)

stərə-nā-/stərə-n- ‘to spread’ (zero grade + -nā/-n-)

In origin, these last two classes are special cases of the preceding type, the nasal infix having been inserted into a root with final */w- or */H-, cf. ā.da-bao-man ‘deception’ (which demonstrates the existence of a root dabə beside dab), star-ta- ‘spread’ (< *stθ3-to-, Gr. στρώτος), etc.

Certain types of present stem, notably the passives in -ya-, causatives in -aya- and future stems in *-syə- (> -hya-, -śya-), express a special or modified sense of the verb:

jan-iiia- ‘to be struck’ (beside jan-/γn- ‘to strike’)

jām-aiia- ‘to cause to go’ (beside ja-sa- ‘to come, go’)

The future stem is most often attested by its participles, the sense of a fut. indicative being more commonly expressed by the pres. subjunctive. The passive stem in -ya- (which in Iranian, unlike Old Indian, takes mid. or act. endings indifferently) is also comparatively rare, in part as a result of the fact that a passive sense can alternatively be expressed by the use of the normal (non-passive) pres. stem with mid. instead of act. endings, e.g. vaēnāte (mid.) ‘is seen, seems’ as opposed to vaēnāiti (act.) ‘sees’.
The principal types of aorist stem are the sigmatic aorist, e.g. xšnāu-š-/xšnao-š- ‘to satisfy’, in which the suffix *s- (> -s-, -h-, -š- according to phonological context) is combined with alternation between the long grade and full grade of the root, and the root-aorist, e.g. jam-/ym- ‘to come, go’, which displays alternation between the full grade and zero grade as in the most common type of root-present (though the distribution of the two alternants is slightly different in the aorist). The perfect stem is usually formed by reduplication, e.g. va-uuac-/va-oc- ‘to say’. As in other IE languages, the verb ‘to know’ irregularly forms an unreduplicated perf. stem vaēd-/vid-, cf. OInd. vēda, vidmā, Gr. (ϝ)οἴδα, (ϝ)ἴδμεν (cf. above, p. 98), etc. The role of the aor. and perf. stems is very much restricted in Later Avestan – even more so in Old Persian – a development marking the first stage in the creation of the Middle Iranian verbal system (based on the pres. stem and a new “past stem” derived from the past participle in -ta-).

It is convenient to begin a survey of the formation of the moods with the injunctive, which is formed by the addition of the so-called secondary endings – in fact the verbal endings in their most basic forms, see above, p. 95 – directly to the pres. or aor. stem. The “secondary” endings (omitting those of the dual, since they are poorly attested and often etymologically obscure) are given in Table 4.23. With the exception of 2 sg. mid. *sa (cf. Gr. ἔθου, Hom. ἔθεο < *h1e-dhh1-so, etc., as against OInd. -thās) and 3 pl. act. -at (< *-nt), an ablaut variant lost in Old Indian, these endings correspond precisely to the equivalent Old Indian forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 4.23 SECONDARY ENDINGS IN AVESTAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect is formed, as in Old Indian, by prefixing the augment a- (= OInd. a-, Gr. ὁ-, Arm. e-) to the pres. injunctive. The imperfect is well attested in Old Persian and in some later Iranian languages such as Sogdian, but comparatively rare in Avestan, where the pres. injunctive has largely taken over its function as a past tense. The even rarer aor. indicative, of which a few forms are attested in Old Avestan and Old Persian, is similarly formed by the prefixation of the augment to the aor. injunctive. The pres. and perf. indicatives, however, are characterized in a different way, by the use of endings distinct from those of the injunctive.

The so-called primary endings of the pres. indicative (again omitting the dual forms), as attached to athematic pres. stems, are given in Table 4.24. All of these endings have exact cognates in Old Indian. The inflection of thematic stems differs only in the 1 sg. active, where Old Avestan attests the ending -ā (= Gr. -o, Lat. -ō, etc.) as against OPers./LA ∨ OInd. -ā-mi. The thematic vowel, in general a, appears as ā (< *o by Brugmann’s Law, cf. above, p. 267) in 1 pl. act. -ā-mahi and mid. -ā-māde; on the other hand, the thematic 1 sg. middle has merely -e < *-ai, where *-āi < *-a-ai might have been expected. Since the thematic pres. indicative is well attested in most Iranian languages, it is possible to give some complete paradigms, at least of the sg. and pl. forms, based on the pres. indicative of bar, pres. stem bar-a- (act.) ‘to carry’, (mid.) ‘to ride’; see Tables 4.25 and 4.26.
### TABLE 4.24 PRIMARY ENDINGS IN AVESTAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Middle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-mi</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>*-si (&gt; -hi, -shi, etc.)</td>
<td>*-sai (&gt; -he, -še, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-ti</td>
<td>-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-mahi</td>
<td>-maide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>*-θa</td>
<td>-duiē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-onti, -nti or -arth (=&lt; *-qti)</td>
<td>-nte or -aite (=&lt; *-qtoy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 4.25 CONJUGATION OF THE THEMATIC PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Avestan</th>
<th>Old Persian</th>
<th>Khotanese</th>
<th>Sogdian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>bar-ā-mi</td>
<td>bar-ā-mi</td>
<td>bārimā</td>
<td>bārām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bar-a-hi</td>
<td>bīri</td>
<td>bēre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bar-a-ti</td>
<td>bar-a-ti</td>
<td>būdā</td>
<td>bārti/bārt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>bar-ā-mahi</td>
<td>bar-ā-mahi</td>
<td>barāmā</td>
<td>bārēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bar-a-θa</td>
<td>bāda</td>
<td>bārtā/bārta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bar-a-nti</td>
<td>bar-a-nti</td>
<td>bārindā</td>
<td>bārānd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 4.26 CONJUGATION OF THE THEMATIC PRESENT INDICATIVE MIDDLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Avestan</th>
<th>Old Persian</th>
<th>Khotanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>bar-e</td>
<td>bar-ai</td>
<td>bare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bar-a-he</td>
<td>bar-a</td>
<td>bara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bar-a-te</td>
<td>bar-a-tai</td>
<td>bade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>bar-ā-maide</td>
<td>barāmane</td>
<td>barāmāne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(GAv.) bar-a-duiē</td>
<td>barīru</td>
<td>barīru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bar-a-nte</td>
<td>bar-a-nte</td>
<td>barāre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 2 pl. act. ending *-ta in Khot. bāda, Sogd. bārta (beside bārtā) is a secondary ending borrowed from the injunctive, etc., as is the 2 sg. mid. *-ha in Khot. bara; the Khot. 2 pl. mid. ending -īru is borrowed more closely from the optative. The ending of Khot. 1 pl. act. barāmānā seems to correspond more closely with Classical Skr. -mas than with its Vedic variant -masi (= OPers./Av. -mahi). A more significant division amongst the various Iranian languages is found in the 3 pl. middle, where Khotanese and some other languages attest an ending *-ārai (= Av. -āre) or *-rai (= OInd./Av. -re). In Avestan, as in Old Indian, this ending is restricted to a small group of root-presents, some of which also have a 3 sg. middle in -e rather than -te. These special endings, which are also found in the perf. ind. middle, seem originally to have characterized a particular sub-class of root-presents (with a fixed accent on the root and ablaut alternation between long grade and full grade instead of between full grade and zero grade; see Narten 1968).

The endings of the perf. ind. active (sg. and pl.) are as follows: singular: 1 -a, 2 -θa, 3 -a; plural: 1 -ma, 3 -arō or -arōs. It is not clear which of the two 3 pl. endings is to be equated with OInd. -ur (< *-r = arō or < *-rṣ = arōs). The endings of the perf. ind. middle, in so far as they are attested, are the same as those of the pres. ind. middle, with 3 sg. -e and probably 3 pl. *-re (cf. Khot. byaure ‘they exist’ < *abi-āf-rai, originally 3 pl. perf. middle of abi-āp ‘to find, obtain’); see above.

The subjunctive is characterized by a suffix -a-, which is inserted between the stem (whether present, aorist or perfect) and the endings. In the case of thematic stems, the
subj. suffix combines with the final vowel of the stem to a long ā. The endings are a mixture of primary and secondary, the choice being fixed in some cases and free in others, except in the first person singular, where GaAv. act. -ā and mid. -āi are later replaced by the special endings -ānī (= OInd. -ānī beside -ā; cf. above, Table 4.13) and -āne respectively.

The optative is similarly characterized by the insertion of a suffix between the pres., aor. or perf. stem and the endings, which in this case are always the secondary endings, apart from the special endings 3 pl. act. -ārə or -ārəs (beside secondary -n) and 1 sg. mid. -ā. In the case of most athematic stems, the optative suffix shows ablaut alternation between -yā- and -ī- (from *-ye, */-ih-). In all other cases the suffix is a non-alternating -ī-, which combines with the final vowel of thematic stems to form the diphthong *ai (> Av. aē or āi). A special feature of Iranian (attested in Avestan, Old Persian and Sogdian) is the employment of the augment with certain optative forms which express a repeated or habitual action in the past (cf. below, p. 282).

The endings of the imperative are added directly to the pres. or aor. stem. (No perf. imperative is attested.) Active: singular: 2 (thematic) -0, (athematic) -dī, 3 -tu; plural: 2 -ta, 3 -nītu or -ntu. Middle: singular: 2 *-swa (> -swa, -huwa, -suaa), 3 -tam or -qa; plural: 2 -*dīm or -dībīm, 3 -*ntam. These endings, all of which have exact cognates in Old Indian, are peculiar to the imperative (except for those of the second person plural, which are identical with the secondary endings). There is no first person imperative in Iranian.

Pres. and aor. stems form their active participles by means of the suffix -ant/-at- (athematic) or -nt- (thematic), while perf. stems employ the suffix -uah/-us-. All three types of stem form their middle participles in the same way, with the suffix -āna- (athematic) or -mna- (thematic). The latter form may be directly equated with Gr. -mvo< (> *-mh, no-), while its OInd. equivalent, -māna-, shows the influence of the athematic suffix -āna- (< *-m, no-). Certain other verbal adjectives or participles are not formed from a tense-stem but directly from the root, the most important being the “past participle” in -ta-, which has a passive sense in the case of transitive verbs and which comes to provide the basis for all the past tense formations in most Middle and Modern Iranian languages. Various types of infinitive are attested in Avestan, although none of them are common. As in the case of the participles, some are derived from a tense-stem, others directly from the root. The Old Persian infinitives, on the other hand, are all of a single type (not found in Avestan or Old Indian), the suffix -tanai being added to the full grade (PIE e-grade) of the root, e.g. čartanaí ‘to do’ from the root kar.

**WORD-FORMATION**

The principal means of creating new nominal stems in Iranian are suffixation and compounding, the individual suffixes and types of compound being largely identical with those found in Old Indian. There are also a few prefixes, such as a-, an- ‘un-’ and hu- ‘good’, cf. above, p. 79–80. A peculiarity of Avestan, of which traces survive in some Middle Iranian languages, is the tendency to replace the bare stem by the nom. sg. form, both in compounds and before certain suffixes, e.g. bāzuš.aojah- ‘strong-armed’, daēwō. dāta- ‘devil-created’, daēwō.toma- ‘arch-devil’ (beside bāzu.stauah- ‘as thick as an arm’, daēwō.iasna- ‘devil-worshipper’, etc.). A further Avestan development is the employment of the compound form in -dō, originally the nom. sg. m. of the a-declension (cf. daēwō.dāta-, etc.), without regard to the gender or declension of the stem, as in daēnō.sāč- ‘well versed in the religion’ (from the feminine noun daēnā-’) or kar’pō.tāt- (a collective noun derived from kar’pan-, the designation of a class of priests). Similarly, in Sogdian, a feminine ā-stem such as xānā < *xānākā- ‘house’ appears before certain
suffixes as xānē- < *xānāki- (-i being the nom. sg. m. ending of the Sogd. a-declension; cf. Table 4.21), e.g. pl. xānē-t ‘houses’, in origin a collective noun with suffix *-tā-.

The use of “vrddhi” of the first syllable as a derivational device (cf. above, p. 273) is well established in Iranian, although it never became common as it did in Classical Sanskrit. As parallels to the Old Indian forms with ā and ār as vrddhi of a and f/ār respectively, one may cite such forms as Av. āhauani- ‘(time) appropriate for pressing’ from *hauuana- ‘act of pressing’ (Olnd. sāvana-), vārθrayni- ‘victorious’ from vərθrayna- ‘victory’, OPers. Mārgava- ‘inhabitant of Margu’. Some Iranian languages seem to have agreed with Old Indian also in using the long diphthongs āi, āu (= Olnd. ai, au) as vrddhi of i and u, cf. the OPers. month-name θāigrači-, probably from *θigra-ka- ‘garlic’ (cf. Pers. sīr ‘id.’ < *θigra-), MPers. wāspuhr (< *wāispuhr) ‘principal’ from wispur ‘prince’, etc. In such cases, however, Avestan consistently follows an older derivational pattern in employing the short diphthongs *ai, *au (> aē, ao, etc.), as in duvaēpa- ‘island’ (contrast Olnd. dvīpā- ‘island’ < *dwi-hp-o- ‘(between) two waters’, without vrddhi), daožaŋvha- ‘hell’ from duž-ahu- ‘id.’ (literally ‘evil existence’).

SYNTAX

Traditionally, much less attention has been paid to the syntax of the Iranian languages than to their phonology and morphology. In this respect many of the chapters in Windfuhr 2009 offer a refreshing break with tradition, dealing systematically with topics such as word-order, noun phrase structure, use of the cases, tenses and moods, co-ordination and subordination. On the syntax of Old Avestan see also West 2011. Here it must suffice to mention some of the more important points in which the Iranian languages differ from Old Indian.

One of the most remarkable features of Old Iranian nominal syntax is the ability of the instr. pl. form to substitute for other cases of the plural, as in Av. vīspāiš aoi karšuuąn yāiš hapta ‘to all the seven continents’ (instr. vīspāiš, yāiš for acc.), OPers. XIV raucabiš thakatā āha ‘14 days had passed’ (instr. raucabiš for nom.). Cf. also the use of the instr. pl. for the voc. pl. in Khotanese (see Table 4.21) and as a generalized oblique case of the plural in some of the Modern Iranian languages of the Pamir mountains (Wakhi -əv < *-aibiš, etc.). Equally noteworthy is the use of the relative pronoun (Av. yā-, OPers. hayā-/taya-, see p. 277 above) in attributive constructions such as Av. daēūm yim apaošəm ‘the demon Apaosh’ (acc.) or OPers. dahayānām tayašām parinām ‘of many lands’, a usage which results from the reinterpretation of a nominal relative clause such as Av. daēuuō yō apaošō, originally ‘the demon who (is) Apaosha’, and the attraction of the relative pronoun (and predicate) into the case of the antecedent, giving daēūm yim apaošəm for *daēūm yō apaoš. (See Reichelt 1909: 370–371.)

Several characteristic features of the syntax of the verb in Old Iranian have already been referred to above, including the use of the injunctive rather than the imperfect as the normal narrative past tense, which is peculiar to Avestan, and the use of the optative (sometimes with augment) to express a repeated or habitual action in the past, e.g. Av. tūm zəmargūzō ākərənuuō vīspe daēuua, zaraθuštra, yōi para ahmāt vīrō.raodo apataiš pəlti āiia z əmā ‘you, Zarathushtra, drove underground all the demons who previously used to go about on this earth in human form’; OPers. yαhā-sām hača-ma aθahəya, avāθa akunavayantā ‘as was said to them by me, so they used to do’; Sogd. čaʃ avya nāra awi δaʃta niʃəse, ʃti-ʃi xa nāra čaʃ δaʃta wəpate ‘however many pomegranates she took in (her) hands, the pomegranates fell from her hands’.
The loss of the PIE perfect system, which is incipient in Late Avestan and almost complete in Old Persian, is made good by the creation of a new type of perfect based on the past participle (with an obligatory passive construction, the agent being originally in the dative, replaced in Old Persian by the genitive): Av. yezi-ça hē anitia aya šiiaofna frauuaršta ‘and if he has committed other evil deeds’; OPers. ima taya manā kormt ‘this (is) what I have done’, lit. ‘what (has been) done by me’. In many later Iranian languages this construction comes to express a simple past tense, as in MPers. man karda ‘I did (it)’. Another verbal periphrasis which later becomes widespread, especially in Eastern Middle Iranian, is the so-called potential construction (Sims-Williams 2007). This is first attested in Old Persian, where the past participle of a transitive verb is used with the auxiliary kar ‘to make’ (in the active) or bav ‘to become’ (in the passive) to express either a potentiality or the consummation of an action: nai āha martiya . . . haya avam Gaumātam tayam magum xšaçam dītam čaxriyā ‘there was no-one . . . who could have deprived that Gaumāta the magus of the kingship’; yatā kantam abava, pasāva ḍīkā avaniya ‘when it had been dug, then it was filled with gravel’. In Middle Iranian the potential construction also occurs with intransitive verbs (auxiliary ‘to become’, Sogd. βw-, Khot. hām-), e.g. Sogd. ne nippasta βōt ‘he cannot lie down’; Khot. ku vā drai māstā parrāte hāmite, balysā rrundu kṣamotte ‘when three months had passed, the Buddha took leave of the king’.

Note: The author would like to thank Almut Hintze and Philip Huyse for valuable comments on earlier drafts of this chapter.

FURTHER READING

In addition to bibliographic details of works cited in this chapter the following list includes a selection of basic literature on the Iranian languages, especially Avestan and Old Persian.

The most up-to-date survey of the whole field, with a primarily typological rather than historical orientation, is to be found in Windfuhr 2009, with a monograph-length chapter on Old Iranian (p. 43–195) by P. O. Skjærvø. The Compendium Linguarum Iranicarum (Schmitt 1989), which includes chapters on the prehistory of the Iranian languages (p. 4–24, by M. Mayrhofer), on Old Persian (p. 56–85, by R. Schmitt) and on Avestan (p. 32–55, by J. Kellens), is still very useful. For Avestan see also K. Hoffmann 1987. An earlier article by the same author (Hoffmann 1958) gives an incisive characterization of the special features of Old Iranian, as compared with Old Indian, a topic covered in greater detail in Goto 2013. These surveys supplement but do not replace Geiger & Kuhn 1895–1903, whose chapters on the Old Iranian languages (p. 1–248, by Christian Bartholomae), though in many respects dated, remain unsurpassed in comprehensiveness.

An etymological dictionary of the Iranian languages (Rastorgueva and Èdel’mam 2000–2007, Èdel’mam 2011–, in Russian) is in progress; Cheung 2007 lists Iranian verbal roots with their derivatives.

The standard edition of the Avesta is that of K. F. Geldner (1886–1896, in the original script). The dictionary of Bartholomae (1904) has likewise not been superseded. Martinez and de Vaan 2014 provide an introduction to Avestan from an IE perspective and include text specimens, a glossary and an up-to-date basic bibliography. On Avestan syntax see Reichelt 1909: 218–387 and Skjærvø 2009: 94–166. A modern treatment of Avestan phonology and morphology is provided by Hoffmann and Forssman 2004; see also Kellens 1984 and 1995 on the morphology and syntax of the Avestan verb.
All the works mentioned above cover both Old and Later Avestan. Modern editions of the Old Avestan texts, with translation and commentary, include Insler 1975 (Gāthās only), Narten 1986 and Hintze 2007 (both Yasna Haptaŋhāti only), Kellens and Pirart 1988–91, Humbach 1991 and Humbach and Fais 2010. The phonology and morphology of Old Avestan are treated in Beckes 1988 (cf. also Kellens & Pirart 1988: 42–88 on “phonétique et graphic”), aspects of its syntax in Kellens and Pirart 1990 (which also contains a complete lexicon to the Old Avestan texts) and in West 2011.

The most comprehensive edition of the Old Persian inscriptions is that of R. G. Kent (1953; supplemented by Mayrhofer 1978). Kent’s book also contains a historical grammar (more detailed but less reliable than Schmitt 1989: 56–85 or de Vaan & Lubotsky 2012) and a lexicon, the latter now superseded by Schmitt 2014. Several of the most important inscriptions have been re-edited by R. Schmitt (1991, 2000).

Finally, the existence of useful on-line resources for a number of Iranian languages should not be overlooked. These include introductory texts by P. Oktor Skjærvø on Avestan, Old Persian and Sogdian (all at http://www.fas.harvard.edu/~iranian/).

REFERENCES

Èdel’man, D. I. 2011–, *Ètimologičeskij slovar’ iranskix jazykov*, 4–5, Vostočnaja Literatura, Moscow
Geiger, Wilhelm & Kuhn, Ernst (ed.) 1895–1903, *Grundriss der irischen Philologie*, 1, Trübner, Strassburg
Henning, W.B. 1958, “Mitteliranisch,” in: Spuler (ed.): 20–130
Humbach, Helmut & Faiss, Klaus 2010, *Zarathushtra and his Antagonists. A Sociolinguistic Study with English and German Translations of his Gāthās*, Reichert, Wiesbaden
Insler, Stanley 1975, *The Gāthās of Zarathustra* (Acta Iranica, 8), Brill, Leiden
Martínez, Javier & de Vaan, Michiel 2014, *Introduction to Avestan*, Brill, Leiden
Mayrhofer, Manfred 1978, *Supplement zur Sammlung der altpersischen Inschriften*, Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna
Narten, Johanna 1986, *Der Yasna Haptaŋhāiti*, Reichert, Wiesbaden
INTRODUCTION

Greek is today the official language of Greece and of the Republic of Cyprus, and is spoken by sizeable diaspora communities across the globe. Varieties of Greek are spoken by minorities in southern Italy (Griko) and on the coast of the Black Sea (Pontic). Until the early part of the twentieth century there were large numbers of Greek speakers in Turkey; dialects such as Cappadocian are now all but extinct. All of the modern dialects of Greek, with the possible exception of Tsakonian (spoken by a declining minority in villages on the slopes of Mount Parnon), which may be a survival of the ancient Laconian dialect, descend from the variety known as the Koine (Gr. κοινὴ διάλεκτος, ‘common dialect’) which itself developed from the “internationalised” version of the dialect of Athens of the fifth century BC, “Great Attic”, and was adopted by the Macedonian kings as the official court language. From an IE perspective Greek is a member of the “core” group of languages left behind by the split of Anatolian and Tocharian. It is generally now considered that it developed in situ in the Balkan Peninsula in the second millennium BC. A number of words, including some place names, terms for flora and fauna, and cultural items (Κόρινθος ‘Corinth’, σῦκον ‘fig’, ἀσάμινθος ‘bath-tub’) attest substrate influence of non-Greek (even non-IE) languages. Some, with problematic phonological details (e.g. ἵππος ‘horse’ < PIE *ekwos, with unexplained aspiration and vowel quality), suggest contact with otherwise unknown IE varieties.

Before the prestige of the Koine caused their ultimate demise in the Hellenistic period there had existed in the Greek-speaking world a large variety of regional dialects. None had the status of a standard language; the Greeks were clear enough that they all spoke varieties of Greek – famously according to Herodotus 8.144 τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ‘Greekness’ is ὁμόγλωσσον ‘of one language’ – but “Greek” in this sense was no more than an abstraction (Morpurgo Davies 1987). Certain dialects, often with extreme local features watered down or altogether removed, did become the conventional medium for certain genres of literature. For example, no matter what the native dialect of the poet, choral lyric – even the lyric passages of Attic tragedy – was written in a literary version of Doric (although in tragedy this largely amounts to the replacement of Att. η by Dor. ā and the use of the Dor. first-declension gen. pl. in -āν rather than Att. -ōν). Epic poetry was composed in the largely Ionic-based Homeric Kunstsprache.

The dialects have traditionally been classified into two main families, designated East Greek and West Greek according to their distribution in the first millennium. East Greek comprises Attic-Ionic and the more conservative Arcado-Cypriot; West Greek consists of (Peloponnesian) Doric and North-West Greek. A third group, Aeolic, made up of Thessalian and Boeotian on the Greek mainland, and Lesbian, spoken on the island of Lesbos and the facing northern part of the coast of Asia Minor, is difficult to fit into this binary classification. García Ramón (1975) argues that these dialects arose from contact between East and West Greek varieties; recent scholarship (following Parker 2008) calls
into question the very existence of an Aeolic group and suggests that the three dialects in question may be unrelated archaic varieties. The dialect of Pamphylia is similarly hard to place (see Brixhe 1976). On the question of whether or not ancient Macedonian was a Greek dialect – a matter of no less heated debate in the ancient world than it is today – see Mendéz Dosuna 2012.

MAP 5.1 THE GREEK DIALECTS

From the second half of the eighth century BC (the earliest examples are the “Dipylon pitcher” from the Kerameikos cemetery in Athens, dated to ca 740 BC, and the “cup of Nestor” from Pithekoussai on the Italian island of Ischia, dated to 750–700 BC) inscriptive material is written in a number of related local (“epichoric”) alphabets, all deriving ultimately from an adaptation of the Phoenician abjad. Gradually they came to be replaced by a standardised alphabet of East Ionic origin (Table 5.1). Modern conventional orthography mixes upper- and lower-case graphs and employs diacritics of Alexandrine
and Byzantine origin for the accent, for aspiration (or the lack of it) on vowels and \( r \), and for the second member \( i \) of long diphthongs. For details of the epichoric alphabets see Jeffery 1990. In addition to the epigraphic record the contemporary written material is augmented by a large number of papyri from Egypt dating to the Hellenistic and Roman periods. These include a variety of personal and official documents which provide invaluable evidence of the linguistic behaviours of a broad spectrum of social strata. They also include early copies of some literary texts. The literary evidence has otherwise been mediated by a long tradition of manuscript copyists.

### TABLE 5.1 THE GREEK (IONIC) ALPHABET.
Phonetic values are those of Attic ca 400 BC. The equivalent spellings in the Old Attic alphabet, used in Athens before 403 BC, are also shown.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grapheme</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Phonetic value</th>
<th>Old Attic equivalent</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Α, α</td>
<td>alpha</td>
<td>[a, aː]</td>
<td>Α</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Β, β</td>
<td>beta</td>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>Β</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Γ, γ</td>
<td>gamma</td>
<td>[g] / [ŋ]</td>
<td>Γ</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Δ, δ</td>
<td>delta</td>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>Δ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ε, ε</td>
<td>epsilon</td>
<td>[e]</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ, ϕ</td>
<td>digamma (wau)</td>
<td>[w]</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ζ, ζ</td>
<td>zeta</td>
<td>[zd]</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Η, η</td>
<td>eta (heta)</td>
<td>[eː]</td>
<td>E (Η= […h])</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Θ, θ/Θ</td>
<td>theta</td>
<td>[θ]</td>
<td>Θ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ι, ι</td>
<td>iota</td>
<td>[i, iː]</td>
<td>Ι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Κ, κ</td>
<td>kappa</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Λ, λ</td>
<td>lambda</td>
<td>[l]</td>
<td>Λ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Μ, μ</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ν, ν</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Σ, ξ</td>
<td>xi</td>
<td>[ks]</td>
<td>ΧΣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ο, ο</td>
<td>omicron</td>
<td>[o]</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Π, π</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>Π</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ρ, ρ</td>
<td>rho</td>
<td>[r, r̥]</td>
<td>Ρ</td>
<td>(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ζ, ζ</td>
<td>sigma</td>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>Σ</td>
<td>(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Τ, τ</td>
<td>tau</td>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Υ, υ</td>
<td>upsilon</td>
<td>[uí, ùː]</td>
<td>Υ</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ, φ</td>
<td>phi</td>
<td>[pʰ]</td>
<td>Φ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Χ, χ</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>[kʰ]</td>
<td>Χ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ψ, ψ</td>
<td>psi</td>
<td>[ps]</td>
<td>ΦΣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ω, ω</td>
<td>omega</td>
<td>[ɔː]</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ει</td>
<td>[eː]</td>
<td>EI = [ei], E = [eː]</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ου</td>
<td>[uː]</td>
<td>OY = [ou], O = [oː]</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ά</td>
<td>[aː(i)]</td>
<td>ΑΙ</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>η</td>
<td>[ɛː(i)]</td>
<td>EI</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ο</td>
<td>[ɔː(i)]</td>
<td>OI</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes to Table 5.1:**

1. Before κ, χ, μ or another γ the letter γ has the articulation of a velar nasal [ŋ].
2. The sound [w] was lost prehistorically in Attic-Ionic, and consequently the grapheme <Ϝ> was not used in those dialects. The name “digamma” comes from its shape, which resembles two capital gammas superimposed.
In most varieties of the Greek alphabet the grapheme <Η> has the value [h]. East Ionic, lacking the phoneme h, redeployed the redundant sign as a grapheme for the long vowel which became ē. (See below under “Phonology”.) Current practice, originating in Alexandrian notation, is to print the rough breathing <῾> above initial vowels (and r) which have aspiration and the smooth breathing <῾> above those which lack it.

Word-initially, and perhaps in the second member of a geminate, r is voiceless and aspirated, [r̥h]. Elsewhere it is voiced and unaspirated [r]. Word-initial rho is thus traditionally written with the rough breathing, ῥ.

The lower-case form σ is used medially, ζ word-finally. The ancient Greeks themselves used only upper-case letter forms, and so made no such distinction. Consequently, some scholars prefer to use “lunate” sigmas Σ, ζ, with the same lower-case form used in all environments.

In most dialects, and originally in Attic, the value of υ is [u, uː]. See below under “Phonology”.

The sequences ει and ου are known as “spurious diphthongs”. Originally they represented diphthongs [ei] and [ou], but sometime before 403 BC in Attic they had monophthongised to close-mid vowels [eː, oː] (transcribed here ē, ô), the latter subsequently raising to [uː].

These represent original “long diphthongs” āi, ei, ōi – see Allen 1987a: 84–88 for the likely phonetic reality of these sounds – which were in inscriptions written ΑΙ, ΕΙ (later ΗΙ), ΟΙ (later ΩΙ), but which by ca 200 BC lost the second element to merge with ā, ē, ō and were then written A, H, Ω. The convention of indicating this lost i with an iota subscriptum is of Byzantine origin and is generally followed today, except in the case of capitals, e.g. Ἄιδης = Hāidēs ‘Hades’: were it Haidēs the accent and breathing would be printed over the iota: Α自然而ς. Some scholars prefer to print such iotas adscript, āi, ηι, ωι.

Before 1952 the earliest Greek material known to us was provided by the two epic poems attributed in antiquity to Homer, the Iliad and the Odyssey. The language of these poems is broadly Ionic, but has an admixture of archaic, Aeolic and wholly artificial forms. Thanks to the work of Milman Parry (Parry 1928a, 1928b; see also Parry et al. 1971) it is known that this Homeric Kunstsprache owes its formation to a long tradition of oral poetry, dating back to the Bronze Age and beyond. The poems are composed in strict dactylic hexameters, and to assist the process of oral composition the poets had evolved a complex system of formulae, “building-blocks” of convenientmetrical shape, e.g. πολύτλας δῖος Ὀδυσσεύς ‘much-suffering godlike Odysseus’ or πολύμητις Ὀδυσσεύς ‘much-cunning Odysseus’, which fill in the shapes, so conveniently completing the line from the weak third-foot caesura and strong fourth-foot caesura respectively. Where such formulae contained material which was no longer linguistically current the Ionic poets replaced it with contemporary Ionic forms if they had the same metrical shape; otherwise with suitable contemporary forms from a parallel Aeolic tradition; and failing that they retained the archaic material (so Horrocks 1987, 1997; but the idea that the tradition went through a distinct Aeolic phase before passing entirely into Ionic hands is not totally laid to rest. For discussion see the contributions by Janko and Jones in Andersen and Haug 2012). The result is an amalgam from various time-depths, containing, for example, contemporary AI o-stem gen. sg. in -ου alongside its earlier form, -οι; and some features, such as “tmesis” – the separation of a preverb from its verb – and the scansion of ἄνδρότητα ‘manhood’ at Iliad 16.857
as if *anṛtāta, must pre-date the Bronze Age. The poems took their present form probably in the eighth or seventh century BC, and it is doubtful whether there was a single poet responsible for each poem, let alone both; but the name “Homer” is a convenient shorthand for the poetic tradition.

Excavating in Knossos on Crete in 1900, Sir Arthur Evans discovered clay tablets written in an unknown script, today called Linear B, dating to ca 1400 BC. Similar documents of a slightly later date were unearthed in subsequent excavations at Pylos in Messenia, at Mycenae in the Argolid and at Thebes in Boeotia, and continue to be found to the present day, the most recent discoveries coming from Ayios Vasilios in Lakonia. A collaboration in the 1950s between Michael Ventris and John Chadwick, building on earlier work by the American scholar Alice Kober, revealed that these documents were the economic records of Bronze Age palatial elites written in a very early form of Greek which today we call Mycenaean. Despite its early date and obvious conservatim in some areas (e.g. retention of PIE labiovelars and *w, preservation of instrumental morphology) Mycenaean has undergone the assimilation of Proto-Greek *ti to si which characterises the East Greek dialect family, indicating that the split into East and West Greek had taken place already in the second millennium.

Linear B evidently derives from an earlier script, Linear A, used to write an unknown language of Crete (and which itself superseded a more elaborate writing system called Cretan Hieroglyphic). The script is not especially well adapted to writing Greek. In addition to a large number of ideograms it contains some 88 syllabic signs, each of which denotes a simple vowel, a sequence of consonant + vowel or, in a small number of cases, more complex sequences such as rai or nwa. It does not normally distinguish between voiceless, voiced and aspirated stops (except that t and ō are distinguished from d, and there is an optional sign representing pʰu), nor between r and l, and vowel length is not marked. Consonant clusters cannot be written: the scribes either omit consonants (“partial spelling”, e.g. pe-ma = sperma ‘grain’) or insert “dummy vowels” (“plene spelling”, e.g. wa-na-ka-te = wanaktei ‘for the king’). Diphthongs are not always marked, and word-final consonants almost never are.

Another syllabic script derived ultimately from Linear A was used to write the ancient dialect of Cyprus. The earliest example may be the spat inscribed with the gen. of the man’s name Opʰeltau dating from the tenth century BC, although it has recently been suggested that this may be the earlier “Cypro-Minoan” script (used to write one or more non-Greek languages). The Cypriot script differs from Linear B in lacking signs for voiced dentals, and in its strategies for writing consonant clusters.

PHONOLOGY

The consonantism of Greek is fairly conservative. Being a centum-type language, the PIE velars and palatals have merged as velars. The major development of the consonant system which characterises Proto-Greek is the loss of voicing on the PIE voiced aspirates, PIE *bʰ, *dʰ, *gʰ becoming φ, θ, χ = [pʰ, tʰ, kʰ]. The voiceless aspirated stop articulation of these phonemes is preserved into the Roman period: the earliest evidence for a pronunciation [f] for φ and [θ] for θ is from the first century AD. (This is true at least for Attic and its descendant, the Koine. In Laconian θ may have become a fricative by the end of the fifth century. In the Lysistrata, Aristophanes has the Spartans use forms such as σιός for Attic θεός, perhaps an attempt to write [θ].) Similarly, β, δ, γ retained their articulation as voiced stops throughout the ancient period; it is
not clear when they became the fricatives \(\beta, \delta, \gamma\) of Modern Greek, but it may be as late as the ninth century AD.

**Labiovelars**

The PIE labiovelars are originally retained, except when adjacent to \(\ddot{u}\) or \(w\) when they lose their labialisation and merge with the plain velars. Mycenaean spells all labiovelars with a series of signs transcribed qa, qe, qi, go, e.g. a-pi-go-ro = \(\text{amp}\ddot{h}k\ddot{h}\ddot{o}\ddot{s}\) (Att. ἀμφίπολος) ‘attendant’ while qa-si-re-u = \(\text{g}\alpha\text{sa}\text{l\ddot{e}us}\) (Att. βασιλέως, a local official in Mycenaean, ‘king’ in later Greek). In go-u-ko-ro = \(\text{g}\ddot{o}\text{oukolos}\) (Att. βουκόλος) ‘cowherd’ the first labiovelar is retained, and the second has become velar because of the preceding \(u\).

In the dialects of the first millennium the remaining labiovelars merged with various other consonantal phonemes. In Attic-Ionic and West Greek the development is twofold: (i) before \(e\) (and in the case of \(*k\ddot{w}\) also before \(i\)) the outcome is dental, \(*k^w > t, *g^w > d, PIE *g^wh > \text{Proto-Greek} *k^wh > r\); (ii) elsewhere the outcome is labial, \(*k^w > p, *g^w > b, PIE *g^wh > \text{Proto-Greek} *k^wh > p\). This is the major source of the \(b\) phoneme in Greek. Examples are given in Table 5.2. Other dialects behave differently. In Aeolic, for example, the outcome is labial across the board (e.g. thus Lesb. πέμπε = Att. πέντε ‘five’), but even in Aeolic the pronominal stem \(*k^w*i-\) gives τίς etc.

**Laryngeals**

The behaviour of the PIE laryngeals is similar in Greek to in the other daughter languages, with two important exceptions. First, and unique to Greek, is the so-called triple-reflex of laryngeals in positions where they vocalise. In all other IE languages all three laryngeals give the same reflex, \(\text{i}\) in Indo-Iranian, \(\text{a}\) elsewhere; in Greek, however, \(*h_1\) vocalises to \(e\), \(*h_2\) to \(a\), \(*h_3\) to \(o\). Thus, \(*d^h\ddot{h}t\ddot{os} > \ddot{e}\delta\ddot{t}\ddot{o}\ddot{s}\ \text{‘set’}, *s^h\ddot{h}t\ddot{os} > \ddot{e}\sigma\ddot{t}\ddot{a}t\ddot{o}\ddot{s}\ \text{‘placed’}, *d^h\ddot{h}t\ddot{os} > \ddot{d}\sigma\ddot{t}\ddot{o}\ddot{s}\ \text{‘granted’}. Second, word-initial \(*H\) before a resonant other than \(*y\) also vocalises rather than being lost as in other languages (other than Armenian): \(*h_r\ddot{ud}\ddot{h}- > \ddot{e}\rho\ddot{u}\ddot{h}\ddot{r}\ddot{o}\ddot{s}\ \text{‘red’}, *h_r\ddot{h}\ddot{e}r- > \ddot{a}\nu\ddot{i}\ddot{p}\ \text{‘man’}, *h_r\ddot{n}\ddot{om}\ddot{h} > \ddot{o}\nu\ddot{m}\ddot{a} \text{‘name’}. This is the origin of at least some prothetic vowels in Greek (compare Lat. ruber, Nero and nōmen for the equivalent forms without). The triple reflex is also seen in the outcome of \(*R^h\), as \(\rho\eta, \rho\ddot{u}, \rho\ddot{o}\) etc.

**Semivowels**

PIE \(*w\) was inherited into Proto-Greek, is preserved in Mycenaean, but was lost at various stages in the later dialects. Where retained, it was written with the letter \(\ddot{f}\). In Attic-Ionic its disappearance was prehistoric. It was originally present in the Homeric tradition, where at the convenience of the poet it is either observed — to block hiatus (e.g. μελημέα (\(\ddot{f}\)ινον ‘honey-sweet wine’) or make a preceding vowel long by position (e.g. είτας (\(\ddot{f}\)ίπτει) — or ignored (e.g. μελημέας οίνου).
Greek 293

Medially, PIE *y was lost via [h]. Word-initially it shows a double treatment. In some roots it gives Greek ζ- (originally with the value [ʣ]), in others [h]. The outcome is consistent across the dialects. Those roots which give later Greek ζ- are in Mycenaean spelt with signs of the z-series (e.g. PIE *yw-g-s > Myc. ze-u-ke-si = dzeuges(s)i ‘pair (dat. pl.)’, Att. ζεύγεσσi); those which give [h] are spelt with signs of the j-series or simple vowels (e.g. from the *yo- nominal stem adverbs jo- = yō and o- = hō ‘how’). This probably shows that the change *y > h was in progress at the time the Linear B documents were written. The alternation between h- and ζ-roots has not been satisfactorily explained, although as *Hy- does not give a prothetic vowel, word-initial laryngeals have sometimes been supposed to underlie one development or the other.

Later Greek ζ has two other sources: (i) the palatalisation of *dy and *gy, e.g. *ped-yos > πεζός ‘on foot’, *meg-yos- > Ion. μέζων, comp. of μέγας ‘big’; and (ii) the combination of s+d, e.g. Αθήναζε < ΑΘΗΝΑΣ ‘to Athens’. The former type is spelt in Mycenaean with z-series signs (e.g. me-zo-e = medzohes ‘bigger’), the latter with signs of the d-series (e.g. te qa-de = PÉGAn-DE ‘to Thebes’). This indicates that the original outcome of *dy and *gy metathesized to zd and thus merged with s+d in the post-Mycenaean period.

Voiceless *t(h) and *k(h)y also underwent palatalisation. There are two distinct phases. First, those sequences of *ty and *t(h)y where no morpheme boundary intervened palatalised to [ʦ], which gives -tt- in Boeotian, -ss- elsewhere, simplifying to -s- in Attic-Ionic, e.g. *yotyos > ΑΙ ὅσος ‘how big’ vs. Lesb., Thess., Dor. (h)οσσος; PIE *medh-yos > Proto-Greek *meth-yos > ΑΙ μέσος ‘middle’, Boe. μεττος, elsewhere μεσσος. Where a morpheme boundary intervenes the change is delayed. For most dialects the outcome is the same as homomorphemic *t(h)y (viz. Boe. -tt-, general -ss-), but Attic this time follows the Boeotian treatment (e.g. *melit-ya > Att. μέλιττα ‘honey bee’) and in Ionic the -ss- does not simplify (e.g. μέλισσα). The outcomes of *k(h)y and *tw are the same: Proto-Greek *phulak-yō ‘guard’ > Att. and Boe. ϕυλάττω vs. ϕυλάσσω elsewhere; and Proto-Greek *kewt-wr- ‘four’ > Att. τέτταρες, Boe. πετταρες vs *kewter- > Ion. τέσσερες. Interestingly, words of non-Greek origin show the same distribution of -ττ- vs -σσ-, e.g. Att. and Boe. θάλαττα vs. general θάλασσα ‘sea’.

The PIE fricative

Between vowels, and before a vowel at word-beginning, PIE *s > h, and medially is then lost. The lenition of *s > h is pre-Mycenaean, the subsequent loss post-Mycenaean: from Proto-Greek *pha̱rwesa ‘cloths’, Mycenaean has pa-we-ā = pharweha. This has interesting implications for Grassmann’s Law, by which the first in a sequence of two aspirates loses aspiration (e.g. *sekʰ- > Proto-Greek *hekʰō > Att. pres. ēχω, vs. fut. *hekʰsō > *heksō > ēξω). Since *dhesos > Proto-Greek *tʰehos > θεός ‘god’ we can perhaps infer that, although it is common to all dialects of the first millennium, Grassmann’s Law operates after the loss of medial -h-, i.e. in the post-Mycenaean period. Otherwise, the classical form would be ἕτεός.

The vowel system

Proto-Greek inherited from PIE a simple vowel system with five short vocalic phonemes, a, e, i, o, u, each with a corresponding long equivalent. There were also diphthongs ai, ei, oi, au, eu, ou, and long diphthongs āi, ēi, ēi, āu, ēu, ōu. Early in the history of the
language, perhaps at the Proto-Greek stage, certain medial clusters involving a liquid or nasal and s underwent loss of the s and gemination of the resonant. Mycenaean attests this stage; thus, e.g., from Proto-Greek *agersantes, the aor. ptcp. m. nom. pl. of the verb ἀγείρω ‘collect’, Mycenaean has a-ke-ra-te = agerrantes. The geminate is preserved in Lesbian and Thessalian, but the other dialects further simplify the cluster by degemination with compensatory lengthening of a preceding short vowel. In the case of a, i and u the outcome is identical to the existing long vowels; this is also true of e and o in Boeotian, Arcadian (and one supposes Cypriot, although the writing system obfuscates the details) and some Doric dialects labelled by Ahrens (1843: 403–414) as Doris seuerior (‘severer Doric’); in other dialects, however, including Attic, Ionic and those Doric varieties labelled as Doris mitior (‘milder Doric’), e and o lengthened not to inherited ἐ and ὀ (which were [e̞ː, o̞ː]) but to new close-mid vowels ἐ̣ and ὀ̣ (phonetically [eː, oː]).

Allen (1959, 1987b) suggests that in these varieties the short-vowel system was skewed towards the top of the vocalic space (Figure 5.1), so that short e, o were of noticeably closer quality than inherited long ἐ, ὀ. He cites in support the fact that in these dialects PIE *r̥ and *l̥ give αρ~ρα and ἀλ~λα: the original outcome is likely to have been [ər] etc., and the top-skewing would mean that [ə] was sufficiently close to a as to merge with it. The result of this is shown in Figure 5.2. The new ἐ̣ and ὀ̣ phonemes were spelt in Old Attic orthography as <Ε, Ο>. After 403 BC and in standard modern orthography they are spelt ει and ου for reasons which are explained below. Examples of the treatment of various clusters are:

Proto-Greek *kheslioi > Ion. χείλιοι, “severe” Dor. χηλιοι, Lesb. and Thess. χέλλιοι ‘thousand’
Proto-Greek *asmes > AI ἡμεῖς (< *ᾱμεις), Dor. ἀμες, Lesb. ἄμες ‘we’
Proto-Greek *esmi > AI εἰμί, “severe” Dor. ἦμι, Lesb. ἐμι ‘I am’

![FIGURE 5.1 INHERITED VOWEL SYSTEM OF PROTO-ATTIC-IONIC](image-url)
The resulting system seems to have suffered from overcrowding on the back axis, which is substantially shorter than the front. In Proto-Attic-Ionic this had implications for both the top and bottom of the back axis. First, the ā phoneme underwent fronting to become [æː]. A second wave of compensatory lengthenings, this time involving word-final ns clusters and those with secondary s, added to the inventory of ē and ō and reintroduced a new ā. It is at this stage that Eastern Ionic redeployed the redundant grapheme <H> to represent the shifted ā phoneme: a seventh-century BC inscription from Naxos spells the word ‘sister’, phonetically [kasiɡnɛ́ːtæː], as ΚΑΣΙΓΝΕΤΗ, using <Ε> for inherited ē (and also for e and ẹ) and <H> for ā < ā. <A> is used for inherited ā and the new ā from the second wave of compensatory lengthening. Eventually, in Ionic, ā merged completely with ē, taking its grapheme with it, so the standard spelling of the ‘sister’ word became κασιγνήτη, representing [kasiɡnɛ́ːtɛː]. In Attic it split, merging with the new ā after e, i or r, and with ē elsewhere.

The effects of overcrowding were now felt again, this time causing a shift in the top of the back axis. Inherited ŭ (spelt <Y>) was pushed over onto the front axis, becoming ũ (a high front vowel with lip-rounding), and for reasons of symmetry the short u followed it to become ũ. The original value of <Y> is seen in the onomatopoeic verb μυκάομαι ‘moo’, and in the spellings <AY, EY> of the diphthongs au, eu. The close-mid ō then moved up to occupy the space so vacated at the top of the back axis and became [uː]. This is its value in Classical Attic. As a consequence there is no longer a corresponding short u phoneme. These developments explain why the Boeotians, when they adopted the Attic alphabet in the fourth century, considered <Y> unsuitable for writing their own phonemes which had retained the values [u, uː] and instead used the digraph <OY>. Occasionally, too, spellings <AO, EO> are found for au, eu.

In the Old Attic orthography <E> was used not only for ē but also ẹ̄ and ẹ̄, and <O> likewise for ō, ọ̄ and ọ̄ (> ū). In 403 BC, under the archonship of Euclides, Athens adopted the Ionic alphabet, which used <H> and <Ω> for ẹ̄ and ọ̄. At the same time
<EI> and <OY> were employed for ɐ and ù. These spellings originally represented the diphthongs [ei] and [ou], which had by the fifth century BC monophthongised and merged with ɐ and ɔ (> ʊ), and it is unsurprising that they should then be used for the simple vowels from wherever source. They are traditionally called “spurious diphthongs” but are properly speaking digraph spellings of monophthongs. The vowel system of Classical Attic, with the post-Eucleidean spellings, is shown in Figure 5.3.

![Figure 5.3 Vowel System of Classical Attic, Showing Official Spellings After 403 BC](image)

It is worth saying a few words about the later developments of the vowel system into the Koine and beyond. Around the end of the fourth century BC ɐ raised and merged with ɪ; one imagines that ɐ itself then raised slightly from [ɛː] to [eː]. By the end of the first century AD a new wave of monophthongisations caused oi to merge with ʊ, and turned ai into [ɛː]; in turn, ɐ raised to [eː] and eventually [iː], merging with ɪ. Between the second and third centuries AD phonemic vowel length was lost, probably in connection with the change from a pitch to a stress accent, and, finally, sometime after the fourth century ʊ (including the outcome of earlier oi) lost its lip-rounding and merged with i, giving the simple five-vowel system of Modern Greek: a <α>, e <ε, αi>, i <i, η, ν, οi>, o <ο, ω>, u <ου>.

**Accent**

The details of the Greek accentual system are beyond the scope of the present chapter. The reader is referred to Probert 2003. Only a basic overview is presented here.

From the time of Plato ancient commentators on the accentual system of Greek describe two categories of accent, ὀξύς ‘sharp’ and βαρύς ‘heavy’. Two of the general terms for accent, τόνος and τάσις, both meaning ‘stretching’, are metaphors of the tension in the strings of a musical instrument, and the third, προσῳδία ‘singing-along-with’, also
implies an accent based on pitch rather than stress. The categories ὀξύς and βαρύς are themselves associated with the terms ἐπίτασις ‘stretching’ and ἄνεσις ‘slackening’, and are thus clearly high and low pitch respectively.

The tradition of marking the accent with diacritics originates in Alexandria ca 200 BC, but the present system of notation is Byzantine. The acute marks a rise in pitch followed by a fall in pitch on the next syllable, e.g. ἄνθρωπος with rise on the α and fall on the ω. Each change of pitch requires one mora (the length of a short vowel). If the accent is borne by a long vowel or diphthong (both of which equal two morae) the pitch may rise on the second mora and then fall on the following syllable, in which case it is still marked acute (e.g. ἄνθρωπου, which may be regarded schematically as ant’éroúμ), or it may rise on the first mora and fall on the second mora of the same syllable, in which case it is marked with the circumflex (e.g. πράγμα, schematically prágma). When a word which bears an acute on its final syllable (the traditional term is “oxytone”) is followed by another accented word, its accent is written grave (barytonesis, e.g. ἀγαθός ἄνθρωπος). It is not clear what this represents, but it is a reasonable assumption that the pitch was required to return to the base level by the word end, and that the grave accent indicates that the expected rise in pitch is suppressed, or at least moderated.

The position of the accent is free within certain constraints, known collectively as the law of limitation: if the final syllable is light (i.e. contains a short vowel followed by at most one consonant) an acute can stand on the final, penultimate or antepenultimate syllable and a circumflex on the penultimate; if it is heavy, an acute can stand on the final or penultimate syllable and a circumflex on the final. A word which bears its accent as far from the word-end as permitted by the law of limitation is said to have recessive accent. Most verbal forms are accented this way. A handful of verbal categories have specific accents, for example the strong aorist participle, accented finally, e.g. εἰπών ‘having said’. Nouns, adjectives, adverbs and pronouns have a particular accent as part of their lexical specification. A further rule, known as the sōtēra rule, stipulates that if the accent falls on a long vowel in the penultimate syllable and the final vowel is short, the accent is circumflex (thus σωτῆρα, not σωτήρα). The accent is also circumflex if it falls on a contracted final syllable. For all of the foregoing purposes the diphthongs ai and oi, when word-final, count as short rather than long vowels except in optatives and locative adverbs.

Certain types of word, including indefinite pronouns, adjectives and adverbs, and some sentence particles and forms of the verbs εἰμί ‘be’ and φημί ‘say’, are atonic enclitics which cohere so closely to a preceding word as to form a single unit for accentual purposes. An oxytone word followed by an enclitic retains its acute accent (thus ἄγαθός τις ἄνθρωπος vs ἄγαθος ἄνθρωπος). In some other cases either the preceding word or the enclitic may gain a secondary accent (e.g. ἄνθρωπος τις).

The remarks made thus far concern the accentuation of Attic and the Koine, until around the second or third century AD. Very little is known about the accentual systems of other dialects. Ancient grammarians and papyri concur that in Lesbian the accent was recessive; thus Lesb. θέοισι = Att. θεοῖς ‘gods (dat. pl.)’. Grammarians and papyri also suggest that in Doric the sōtēra rule did not apply, and that final -ai and -oi counted as long in nominative plurals. Chadwick (1992) argues that Thessalian had a word-initial stress accent. Previously, editors of epigraphic texts have accented dialect material (except Lesbian) in the manner of Attic. It is common today to omit accents in dialect texts.

Between the second and third centuries AD the accent became one of stress, as it is in Modern Greek.
MORPHOLOGY

In both nominal and verbal morphology Greek inherited three values of the category number: singular, dual and plural. In Mycenaean whenever two items are recorded the dual is used, for example in the list of banqueting equipment from Pylos (PY Ta 641.2) *diphe medzohe triwehe* ‘two larger three-handled goblets’, where the noun and both adjectives are dual. In Homer and in classical Attic the dual is used (i) for “natural pairs” (such as eyes, hands, etc.); and (ii) for “accidental pairs” when the numeral δύο ‘two’ (itself a dual form) or the word ζευγος ‘pair’ is used in conjunction; but even in these cases the plural is frequently used. Ionic had lost the category early, and its retention in Attic was considered parochial. It was therefore eliminated in Great Attic and the Koine.

Nominal morphology

There are three main nominal declensional types: the *-eh₂ type (the Greek “first declension”) continue the PIE *-eh₂ and *-ih₂ types, the “second declension” the IE *-o-stems, and the “third declension” the various IE athematics.

### TABLE 5.3 FORMS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-STEMS) IN CLASSICAL ATTIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>-ā type (f.)</th>
<th>-ā type (f.)</th>
<th>m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>χώρα-</td>
<td>γνώμα-</td>
<td>ὑγιεία-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>χώρα-</td>
<td>γνώμη</td>
<td>ὑγίεια</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>χώραν</td>
<td>γνώμην</td>
<td>ὑγείαν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>χώρας</td>
<td>γνώμης</td>
<td>ὑγείας</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>χώρᾳ</td>
<td>γνώμῃ</td>
<td>ὑγείᾳ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>χώραι</td>
<td>γνώμαι</td>
<td>ὑγείαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td>χώρα</td>
<td>γνώμα</td>
<td>ὑγία</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>χώραιν</td>
<td>γνώμαιν</td>
<td>ὑγείαιν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>χώραι</td>
<td>γνωμαί</td>
<td>ὑγείαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>χώρας</td>
<td>γνωμᾶς</td>
<td>ὑγείας</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>χώρον</td>
<td>γνωμόν</td>
<td>ὑγείων</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>χώρας</td>
<td>γνωμάς</td>
<td>ὑγείως</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 5.4 FORMS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-STEMS) IN CLASSICAL ATTIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>m./f.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>λόγος-</td>
<td>ζυγόν-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>λόγος</td>
<td>ζυγόν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>λόγον</td>
<td>ζυγόν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>λόγοι</td>
<td>ζυγοδό</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>λόγοι</td>
<td>ζυγόδ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>λόγον</td>
<td>ζυγόν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>λόγοι</td>
<td>ζυγοδ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second declension (Table 5.4) consists largely of masculines and neuters. There are a handful of feminines (e.g. ἡ ὀδός ‘way’) which decline in the same way as the masculines. The gen. sg. is originally in -oio, which is preserved in Mycenaean and Homer. Loss of the intervocalic glide gave -oo (perhaps to be reconstructed in some Homeric forms), which contracted in Attic-Ionic to -ου. Acc. pl. -ους is from -ons, retained in some dialects, including Mycenaean; Lesbian has -οις. In Attic, stems ending in -o and -e undergo contraction (e.g. νοῦς ‘mind’ = νόος, ὀστοῦν ‘bone’ = ὀστέον). Stems in -ē are affected by twin processes of quantitative metathesis and prevocalic shortening, which cause both *-ēo- and *-ēō- to become -εω-. Thus Proto-Greek *lāwos > *lēos > λεώς. This type is known as the “Attic declension” because in the Koine it is replaced by the (non-Attic-Ionic) common Greek forms such as λαός.

TABLE 5.5 UNDERLYING ENDINGS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND CONSONANT STEM FORMS IN CLASSICAL ATTIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>m./f.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>πατέρ-</td>
<td>ἑρωτ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>πάτερ</td>
<td>ἑρωτ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>πατέρα</td>
<td>ἑρωτα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>πατρός</td>
<td>ἑρωτός</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>πατρί</td>
<td>ἑρωτί</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>πατέρε</td>
<td>ἑρωτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>πατέρες</td>
<td>ἑρωτες</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>m./f.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>ἐρωτ-</td>
<td>ποιμεν-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>ἑρωτ</td>
<td>ποιμήν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>ἑρωτα</td>
<td>ποιμένα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>ἑρωτός</td>
<td>ποιμένος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>ἑρωτί</td>
<td>ποιμένι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>ἑρωτε</td>
<td>ποιμένε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>ἑρωτες</td>
<td>ποιμένες</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>m./f.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>σοματ-</td>
<td>‘body’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>σώμα</td>
<td>σώμα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>σώμα</td>
<td>σώμα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>σώματος</td>
<td>σώματος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>σώματι</td>
<td>σώματι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>σώματε</td>
<td>σώματε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>σώματα</td>
<td>σώματα</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>m./f.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg.</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>(zero)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>-η &gt; -α</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>-os</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>-oin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>nom., voc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>-ns &gt; -as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>-δν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>-si</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The third declension consists of many sub-types. Only an overview can be given here; consult a reference grammar such as Smyth and Messing 1956 for a complete catalogue of forms. The basic underlying endings are given in Table 5.5, but because they are joined directly to the stem with no intervening vowel, if the stem ends in a consonant it undergoes various changes. Variations in stem ablaut must also be taken into account. Where the stem ends in a consonant other than -s or *-w (also Table 5.5) the oblique cases (other than the dat. pl.) generally show the underlying form of the stem. An important archaic type is reflected in the noun πατήρ ‘father’, which shows the e-grade of the stem in the nom., voc., acc. sg., in the dual, and in the nom., voc., acc. and gen. pl., but the zero-grade in the other cases. The nom. sg. of consonant stems regularly ends in -s, but when the stem ends in a liquid or nasal it has no termination, and the preceding vowel, if short, lengthens (as in both πατήρ, stem πατερ-, and ποιμήν ‘shepherd’, stem ποιμεν-). In the acc. sg. the ending *-η (< PIE *-m̥) surfaces as -α, and in the acc. pl. *-νς as -ᾱς.

Neuter C-stems are endingless in the nom., voc. and acc. sg. The stem-final consonant is dropped if it is one which is not permitted at word-end (as in σῶμα ‘body’ from the stem σωματ-).

When the stem-final consonant was -s, between vowels it had passed to [h] in the second millennium (hence Myc. *pʰarweha < Proto-Greek *pʰarwesa ‘cloths (nom./acc. pl.)’). In Attic the result undergoes contraction (Table 5.6), and it is therefore customary to treat the s-stems as a special type apart from the C-stems proper. There are two main sub-types. For those with a stem in *-es- throughout (e.g. Σωκράτης), most, if not all, are masculine personal names (the one exception, τριήρης ‘trireme’, is probably in origin an adjective). The second major group consists of neuters with nom./voc./acc. sg. in -ος and *-es- in the remaining cases, e.g. γένος ‘family’.

| TABLE 5.6 FORMS OF THE THIRD-DECLENSION S-STEMS, I-STEMS AND U-STEMS IN CLASSICAL ATTIC |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|                 | s-stems         | i-stems         | u-stems         |
| m.              | n.              |
| nom.            | Σωκρατεσ-       | γενεσ-          | πολι-            | συ-              | πηχυ-              |
| (man’s name)    | γένει           | ‘family’        | ‘city’           | ‘pig’            | ‘forearm’           |
| voc.            | Σωκράτης        | γένος           | πόλις            | σύς              | πήχυς              |
| acc.            | Σωκρατες        | γένος           | πόλιν            | σύν              | πήχυν              |
| gen.            | Σωκράτους       | γένους          | πόλεος           | σῦς              | πήχεως              |
| dat.            | Σωκράτει        | γένει           | πόλει            | σῦν              | πῆχει              |
| du.              | nom./acc./voc.  | —               | γένη             | πόλει            | σῦς              | πῆχει              |
| gen./dat.       | —               | γενοῖν          | πολέουν          | σοῦν             | πηχέοιν             |
| pl.              | nom., voc.      | —               | γένη             | πόλεις           | σῦς              | πῆχες              |
| acc.            | —               | γένη            | πόλεις           | σῶς, σὺς         | πηχές              |
| gen.            | —               | γενοῦν          | πολέουν          | σοῦν             | πῆχεον             |
| dat.            | —               | γένεσι          | πόλεσι           | σοσί              | πῆχεσι             |

The i-stems in Greek (Table 5.6) consist largely of feminines, though there are a few neuters (e.g. σίναπι ‘mustard’) which differ only in the nom. and acc. sg., which are endingless, and pl. (σίναπη < σίνάπεα). The type has been extensively remodelled from
PIE. First, the forms which had the full-grade stem *-ey- have been changed to *-ēy- (e.g. gen. sg. *polēyos). Loss of the intervocalic *-y- leads to forms such as gen. sg. πόληος (attested in Homer). In Attic we see the effects of quantitative metathesis (πόληος > πόλεως) and prevocalic shortening (*polēōn > πόλεων). Other dialects have generalised a stem in -i (gen. sg. πόλιος etc.).

The u-stems (Table 5.6) are of two types. The more common (e.g. σῦς ‘pig’, gen. sg. συόν) follows the PIE -uH-stems, having an invariant stem in -u to which the C-stem endings are added. The other (e.g. πῆχυς ‘forearm’) follows the PIE u-stems proper with an ablauting stem in -(e)u-. Nouns of this type are considerably rarer, though adjectives are well represented. In nouns Attic has a gen. sg. in -εος, which has been imported from the i-stems. Other dialects (and, in adjectives, Attic) have -εος, which goes back to a remodelled *-ewos.

### Table 5.7 Underlying Forms of the -ēu Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>underlying ending</th>
<th>early Attic</th>
<th>Att.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*-ēws &gt; -eus</td>
<td>-ευς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*-ēw &gt; -eus</td>
<td>-ευς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-ēwa</td>
<td>-ηα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>-ēw</td>
<td>-ηος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>-ēw</td>
<td>-ηι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du. nom./acc./voc.</td>
<td>*-ēwe</td>
<td>-ηε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>*-ēwoin</td>
<td>-ηοιν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. nom., voc.</td>
<td>*-ēwes</td>
<td>-ηες</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*-ēwos &gt; -euses</td>
<td>-ηας</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*-ēwōn</td>
<td>-ηον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*-ēwsi &gt; -eusi</td>
<td>-ευσι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special mention must be made of the nouns in -ευς (Table 5.7), mostly denominatives denoting occupations (e.g. ἵππευς ‘horseman’) or instruments (e.g. τομεύς ‘knife’), but also ethnics (e.g. Μεγαρεύς ‘Megarian’) and personal names (e.g. Ὀδυσσεύς). The type is unique to Greek. The underlying forms have stems in -ēw- to which the standard C-stem endings are added. When the stem comes into contact with a consonant – i.e. in the nom. sg. and dat. pl. – Osthoff’s Law shortens the stem vowel to give nom. -ευς and dat. -ευς. Other forms have intervocalic -w-, which is lost early in Attic-Ionic. In Attic the paradigm is further affected by quantitative metathesis (e.g. -ēos > -eōs) and prevocalic shortening (gen. pl. ἐον > -eōn).

Turning now to the inventory of case forms, the eight cases of PIE (nom., voc., acc., gen., dat., abl., instr. and loc.) are reduced in the dialects of the first millennium to five. Of these the nom., voc. and acc. directly continue their PIE counterparts. The PIE abl. was distinct only in the singular of the o-stems and was elsewhere identical with the gen. in the singular and the dat. in the plural. In Proto-Greek the abl. has been subsumed completely in the gen. (By a simplification of prepositional case government ablative prepositions have come to govern the dative rather than genitive in Arcado-Cypriot and probably Mycenaean (Morpurgo Davies 1966), but this does not imply an ablative-dative
syncretism in these dialects, since the genitive continues ablative functions in non-prepositional constructions. See also Thompson (1998, 2000, 2014) for further discussion of the Mycenaean evidence.

The PIE dat., loc. and instr. collapse in a complex series of mergers which are underway at the time of the Mycenaean tablets. The first-millennium dialects have a case conventionally called “dative” which carries the functions of the PIE dat., loc. and instr. In the a- and o-stem declensions this continues, in the singular, the forms of PIE dat. sg. in *-āi and *-ōi. (In some dialects this undergoes later shortening, e.g. in Arc., Boe. and NWGr. -ōi. The Mycenaean spellings -a and -o are ambiguous between the PIE dat. and loc. in -ai, -oi, but in light of the developments in the other dialects it is generally assumed that they represent -āi, -ōi.) The PIE loc. sg. -ai, -oi and -ei of these declensions survive only in adverbs (e.g. ἐκεῖi ‘over there’) and isolated forms such as οίκοι ‘at home’. In the third declension, however, the dialects of the first millennium continue not the PIE dat. in *-ey but the loc. in *-i. In Mycenaean we see a transitional stage, with forms spelt <-e> = dat. -ei and <-i> = loc. -i used interchangeably with both datival and locatival function. The instr. sg. of all three declensional classes would be spelt in an identical way with the corresponding dat. and loc. It is thus impossible to tell whether a separate instr. sg. still existed.

In the plural no Greek dialect preserves forms of the PIE dat. in *-bhos (cf. Lat. -bus). Already in Mycenaean the endings of the loc. pl. -āsi > -āhi, -oisi > -oihi, -si (remodelings of the PIE forms in *-āsu, *-oysu, *-su) have replaced those of the dat. Mycenaean does, however, preserve a distinct instr. pl. with endings -a-pi = -āpʰi, -o = -ois and -pi = -pʰi. The -pʰi endings of the a- and C-stems have disappeared from first-millennium Greek, except in Homer, where they have been reanalysed as generic oblique case markers and extended into the singular and the o-stems. Although these are the only plural exponents of instrumental force in Mycenaean they can also have locatival and even pure datival force: Sp'agiamphʰi (instr. pl.) occurs in parallel with Helehi (loc. sg.; both are place names), and kʰitomphʰi describes cloth ‘for khitons’. In Mycenaean, then, we seem to have a transitional stage where remnants of the morphology of dat. and loc. remain in free variation to express a syncretic dat.-loc., with which the instr. is also beginning to fall together.

In Attic-Ionic and in Lesbian the o-stem dat. pl. -oisi simply continues the loc. pl. Attic had generalised a shortened form in the definite article, τοῖς (presumably a pre-vocalic sandhi variant) by the beginning of the fifth century, and the same ending was standardised in nouns and adjectives by 420 BC. Other dialects have -oic from the earliest times, which is presumed to continue the instr. pl. In the a-stems early Attic and Ionic inscriptions have -ησι (also -ōσi in Attic), remodelled by analogy with -oisi to give -ησι/-αισι (written -ησι, -αισι), but in Attic these were replaced by -αισι, and, by 420 BC, by the short form -αις. (Lesbian has -αισι from the earliest times by analogy with -oic, and the other dialects have -αις by analogy with -oic.)

**Adjectives and adverbs**

Adjectives follow the nominal declension. The most common type has forms of the second declension for the masculine and neuter and of the first for the feminine, e.g. σοφός, σοφή, σοφόν ‘wise’, and φίλιος, φιλί, φιλίν ‘friendly’. Some, have no separate feminine forms (e.g. ἄθανατος, -ον ‘immortal’).

C-stem formations are most common in participles, e.g. pres. ptcp. λέγον, gen. sg. λέγοντος ‘speaking’; the n. nom./acc. sg. is endingless λέγον (< *legont), the pl. in -a
GREEK

Although not a productive class, u-stem adjectives are well represented, following the declension of πήχος in the m. and n., but with gen. sg. -εος. The f. follows the first declension (λέγουσα). Similarly weak aor. ptcp. λύσας, λύσασα, λῦσαν (m./n. stem λυσαντ-), and perf. λελυκώς, λελυκυῖα, λελυκός, the m./n. originally an s-stem (Mycenaean preserves n. pl. forms in -oха) but recharacterised as a C-stem, λελυκοτ-.

The adjective also has comparative and superlative degrees. There are two different methods of formation. In the first the suffixes -yon- or -ion- (comparative) and -ιστος (superlative) are added directly to the root (not the stem) of the adjective, originally in the e-grade: μέγας ‘big’ gives comparative μείζων (-ει- by an internal development in Attic for μείζων of other dialects; -ζ- < *-gy-) and superlative μέγιστος. ήδυς ‘sweet’ gives comparative ήδιων and superlative ήδιστος. ισχρός (root ισχ-) gives comparative ισχίων and superlative ισχιστος. The original comparative suffix was *-yos- (cf. Lat. -ior), an s-stem attested in Myc. medzohes ‘bigger (m./f. nom. pl.)’, and preserved in the Attic alternative m./f. acc. sg. μείζω < *-oha, nom. and acc. pl. μείζων < *-ohas, *-ohas, and n. nom./acc. pl. μείζω < *-oha. In the zero-grade it was compounded with an indefinite nominalising suffix -ον- to give n-stem -oν-. Forms such as μείζων are a conflation of the two. The superlative -ιστος, a regular first/second declension adjective, is a compound of the same zero-grade *-is- and a definite nominalising suffix *-to-.

The second formation adds -τερος (comparative) and -τατος (superlative) to the (m./n.) stem. Both are first/second declension adjectives. This -τερος was originally contrastive in force rather than comparative, a meaning preserved in formations such as δεξιότερος ‘right-hand’ (contrasting with σκαίος ‘left-hand’) and ἀριστέρος ‘left-hand’ (contrasting with δεξιός ‘right-hand’). In Mycenaean, wa-na-ka-te-ro = wanakteros means ‘of the royal (rather than of another) type’. The same suffix is also seen in the possessives ἡμέτερος ‘our’ and υμέτερος ‘your’. The superlative -τατος appears to be a contamination of the PIE absolutive suffix *-t(mo)H- (Lat. ultimus) by -ιστο-. Examples of paradigmatic comparatives and superlatives are δεινότερος, δεινότατος from δεινός ‘strange’, γλυκύτερος, γλυκύτατος from γλυκύς ‘sweet’, μελάντερος, μελάντατος from μέλας ‘black’ (stem μέλαν-). Stems in -o- lengthen the theme vowel if the preceding syllable is light, e.g. σοφότερος, σοφότατος from σοφός ‘wise’ (instead of σοφότερος, σοφότατος). Metanalysis of formations such as ήληθιοτερος ‘more true’ gives rise to -έστερος and -έστατος (so εὐδαιμονέστερος built to εὐδαιμός ‘fortunate’), and of ἀχαρίστερος ‘more ungracious’ (< *akh'àrid-tero-) to -ιστερος, -ιστατος (so λαλίστερος built to λάλος ‘talkative’). Similarly, forms built regularly to adverbs such as παλαιότερος ‘older’ (to πάλα ‘long ago’) instead of the positive grade of the adjective (παλαιός ‘ancient’) cause some adjectives in -αιος to form comparatives and superlatives in -αίτερος and -αίτατος (so ευδαιμονεστερος built to ευδαιμονί- ‘fortunate’), and of ἀγαθότερος ‘more good’ (< *agath'ared-tero-) to -ιστερος, -ιστατος (so λαλίστερος built to λάλος ‘talkative’). Similarly, forms built regularly to adverbs such as παλαιότερος ‘older’ (to πάλα ‘long ago’) instead of the positive grade of the adjective (παλαιός ‘ancient’) cause some adjectives in -αιος to form comparatives and superlatives in -αίτερος and -αίτατος rather than expected -αιότερος, -αιότατος (e.g. ἰησουαῖος, ἰησουαῖτας, ἰησουαῖτας ‘quiet(er, -est)’, and conversely some forms in -oς to give -αίτερος, -αίτατος rather than expected -ότερος, -ότατος (e.g. μέσος ‘middle’ gives μεσαίτερος, μεσαίτατος).

Besides these regular formations there are many irregularities caused by stem ablaut and other phonetic changes (πολύς ‘much’ gives πλείον/πλέον, πλείστος) and by suppletion (ἀγαθός ‘good’ has both βέλτιων, βέλτιστος and αμείνων, ἀριστος).

Adverbs are regularly derived from adjectives by the addition of the suffix -ας to the (m./n.) stem, thus, e.g., φίλως ‘friendlily’ from φίλος, ταχέως ‘swiftly’ from ταχύς;
but many are fossilised case forms (e.g. ἐκεῖ ‘over there’ with o-stem loc. sg. ending). The comparative and superlative of the adverb are identical with the n. nom./acc. sg. comparative and pl. superlative of the corresponding adjective (e.g. σοφῶς ‘wisely’ has σοφότερον, σοφότατα).

**Pronouns**

The definite article is in origin a pronoun built to the PIE demonstrative stems *so (m. nom. sg. is endingless, ὁ; f. ἡ < ἅ, preserved outside Attic-Ionic) and *to (other forms; West Greek preserves m. and f. nom. pl. in τὸν, τὰ, while the other dialects have οἱ, ἡι by analogy with the sg.). In Attic it is obligatory with nouns of definite reference, including personal names and abstracts, but its use as an article is evidently a late development. It is entirely absent from Mycenaean, and although in Homer it has uses which approach those of later Greek, it still functions as an independent pronoun with demonstrative, anaphoric, contrastive or relative force. The use as a relative (compare English *that*) survives in the dialects and in Attic verse.

As a demonstrative the same pronoun survives in the composite ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, which has a strongly deictic force ‘this one (over here)’. Other dialects have similar forms with different deictic particles, e.g. Arc. (h)ονυ. It contrasts with ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο ‘that one (over there)’. The pronoun οὗτος, αὐτη, τοῦτο ‘this’ has more anaphoric than deictic force.

**TABLE 5.8 FORMS OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS** (enclitic forms are bracketed)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First person</th>
<th>Second person</th>
<th>Third person/reflexive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. nom.</td>
<td>ἐγώ</td>
<td>σό (also voc.)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>ἐμέ (με)</td>
<td>σέ (σε)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>ἐμοῦ (μου)</td>
<td>σοῦ (σου)</td>
<td>οὗ (οὐ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>ἐμοί (μοι)</td>
<td>σοι (σοι)</td>
<td>οἷ (οἱ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du. nom./acc.</td>
<td>νό</td>
<td>σφόν</td>
<td>(σφωκ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>νοῦ</td>
<td>σφάν</td>
<td>(σφων)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. nom.</td>
<td>ἡμεῖς</td>
<td>ὑμεῖς (also voc.)</td>
<td>σφεῖς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>ἡμᾶς</td>
<td>ὑμᾶς</td>
<td>σφάς, σφά (σφας)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>ἡμῶν</td>
<td>ὑμῶν</td>
<td>σφέον, σφόν (σφεον)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>ἡμῖν</td>
<td>ὑμῖν</td>
<td>σφίσι (σφισι)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The forms of the first and second person pronouns are shown in Table 5.8. The singular has both emphatic accented and unemphatic enclitic forms. The second person nom. sg. should be *tu (cf. Lat. tū), and this is the form preserved in WGr. το. The oblique forms are *twe etc., which give Gr. σε etc.; and the other dialects have levelled the σ to the nom. There is in Attic no third person pronoun per se. For the oblique cases the pronoun αὐτός, αὐτη, αὐτό is pressed into service, but this is properly an intensive pronoun (corresponding to Lat. *ipse*), and its nom. cannot be used as a third person pronoun. In the combination ὁ αὐτός it means ‘the same’. In Homer the pronoun *ἐ* is sometimes reflexive, more often anaphoric (when it is always enclitic). In the reflexive use it is often strengthened with the appropriate case of αὐτός. In Attic *ἐ* has become an indeclinable prefix conjoined to αὐτός to form the standard reflexive pronoun ἐαυτόν, ἐαυτήν, ἐαυτό.
‘himself’; so also ἐμ- and σε- in ἐμαυτόν and σεαυτόν ‘myself’ and ‘yourself’. The only forms of ἕ which are regularly used in Attic prose are the dat. sg. οἷ and pl. σφίσι, which are used as indirect reflexives (to refer in a subordinate clause to the subject of the matrix clause). Mycenaean uses the dat. sphehi (= σφίσι) as an anaphoric pronoun in the phrase meta-k’ e sp’e hi ‘and with them’. The enclitic acc. sg. μιν ‘him/her’, seen in Homer, is also attested in Mycenaean in the phrase dāmos de min pʰāsi . . . hekʰēhen ‘but the dāmos says that she has . . .’.

Of the PIE pronominal stems *kʰi- and *yo- both survive into Greek. The latter is the basis of the relative pronoun ὅς, ἥ, ὅ. The former is remodelled as an n-stem τίς, n. nom. sg. τί, gen. sg. τίνος, and becomes the standard interrogative pronoun ‘who?’ In an enclitic form it serves as the indefinite pronoun. Compounded with the relative pronoun ὅς, it gives the indefinite relative and indirect interrogative ὅςτις, ἦτις, ὅτι.

Verbal morphology

The verb expresses the categories of person (first, second, third), number, time reference (past, present, future), aspect (durative, punctual, stative), mood (indicative, subjunctive, optative, imperative) and voice (active, middle, passive). Non-finite forms include infinitives and participles. In the indicative, time reference and aspect combine to give the seven tenses of traditional grammars, present, future, imperfect (past durative), aorist (past punctual), perfect (originally present stative), pluperfect (originally past stative) and future perfect.

The difference between durative and punctual aspect is encoded in different stems, traditionally labelled “present” and “aorist”. In some verbs the present stem seems to be basic, and the aorist stem is derived, usually by the addition of -s- (e.g. λύ-ω ‘loose’, aor. ἔ-λυ-σ-α). In others the aorist stem seems basic, and the present stem is derived by one of several means including ablaut (aor. ἔ-λιπ-ον, pres. λείπ-ω ‘leave’); suffixation with -σκε-ο-, originally an iterative/durative suffix (e.g. aor. ἔ-παθ-ον, pres. πάσχω < *πάθ-σκω ‘suffer’); reduplication (e.g. aor. ἔ-στη-μι, pres. τέστημι < *si-stā-mi); or addition of a nasal suffix (e.g. aor. ἔ-τιμ-ον, pres. τιμ-ε-μι ‘cut’); aor. ἡμαρτ-ον, pres. ἁμαρτ-άν-ω ‘err’) and/or infix (e.g. aor. ἔ-μαθ-ον, pres. μα-ν-θ-άν-ω ‘learn’). The difference between the two types is sometimes explained as motivated by the inherent atelicity (underived present stem) or telicity (underived aorist stem) of the verbal action, but the correlation is not perfect. In yet other verbs both stems are derived (e.g. pres. αὐξ-άν-ω ‘increase’, aor. ἤνεγκα; pres. ὁράω ‘see’, aor. ἤθελ-ε-μ-ον), and others where the operation of sound change on a regularly derived paradigm creates the appearance of suppletion (e.g. aor. ἅμαρτ-άν-ω ‘err’). Especially common is the large class where the present stem is derived (often from a nominal stem) by the suffix *-ye/o-, the aorist stem with the *s- suffix (e.g. pres. φυλάττω/φυλάσσω ‘guard’ with -ττ-<σσ- < *ky-, aor. ἔφύλαξα = ἐ-φύλακ-σ-σ-; pres. κόπτω ‘strike’ with -ττ-<σσ- < *py-, aor. ἔκοπ-σ-σ-; pres. ἀγγέλλω ‘announce’ with -λλ-<σσ- < *ly-, aor. ἄγγελ-ελ-α < *μεγαλ-σ-σ-<σαλ-σ-). There are many verbs where the different stems are provided by suppletion (e.g. pres. φέρω ‘bear’, aor. ἠγγίξα; pres. ὁδόω ‘see’, aor. ἠδόν), and others where the operation of sound change on a regularly derived paradigm creates the appearance of suppletion (e.g. aor. ἡμόλ-ον, pres. βλάσκω < *μιλ-, σκε/o-).

The distinction between present and past time reference is encoded partially in the endings (which also encode for person, number and voice) and partially in the presence or absence of the augment. In the dialects of the first millennium the augment ἐ- is a compulsory marker of past time reference prefixed to the stem of indicatives. (In roots starting with a vowel it surfaces as lengthening of the initial vowel, and is called the temporal, as opposed to syllabic, augment.) In Homer, as in the Ṛg Veda, the augment is optional, being present or absent at the convenience of the poet. Absence of the augment was
formerly held to be a poetic feature. Its almost total absence from Mycenaean, however – there are one or two possible examples – can scarcely be so explained.

TABLE 5.9 THEMATIC AND ATHETMIC PRIMARY AND SECONDARY ENDINGS OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Thematic</th>
<th>Athematic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>λύω ‘loose’</td>
<td>τίθημι ‘place’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary (present)</td>
<td>Historic (imperfect)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>λύ-ω</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>λύ-ες</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ες</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>λύ-ει</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du. 2</td>
<td>λύ-ετον</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ετον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>λύ-ετον</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ετον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. 1</td>
<td>λύ-ομεν</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ομεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>λύ-ετε</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ετε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>λύ-ουσι</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ουσι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the indicative the present stem combines with the so-called primary endings to form the present tense and with the secondary or historic endings (and augment) to form the imperfect tense (past durative) – see Table 5.9. Two different formations must be distinguished, one thematic (presents in -ω), one athematic (presents in -μι). The latter are no longer productive in Greek, and tended to be replaced by thematic formations.

From the derivational point of view the historic endings are in fact basic, and several of the primary forms are transparently derived from them by the addition of the *-i “hic et nunc” deictic marker. The 1 sg. historic -v goes back to *-m, from which primary -μι is derived. In thematic -ον the -μι is the thematic vowel. The thematic ending -ω is from unrelated *-oh2, in which the -μι is again the thematic vowel.

The 2 sg. historic -(ε)ς is original (-ει is the thematic vowel). The expected primary endings would be in *-si, where the -s would be lost (via [h]) between vowels. The resulting forms *luei and *titει had the -s restored by analogy with the secondary endings: in the thematic class it is added to the end to give λύεις, while the athematic class borrows the entire secondary ending.

In the 3 sg. the athematic secondary ending was *-t, which was lost at the word-end. Athematic -σι derives from *-ti by the normal assimilation *-ti > -si in East Greek dialects. The original -σι is preserved in ἐστι and in West Greek (τοθητι etc.). Thematic -ει cannot go back to *-ει, which would remain in West Greek and give *-σι in East Greek. The standard explanation of -ει is that it results from the four-part analogy ἔλυες : ἔλυεις :: ἔλυε : X, X = ἐλύει. Sihler (1995: 462) instead endorses the view that the thematic historic 3 sg. was endingless *-ε, and that -ει derives straightforwardly by the addition of i-deictic.

Athematic root presents like τίθημι show stem ablaut with the full grade (θη- < *dθē-) in the sg. and the zero-grade (θε- < *dθē-) in the pl. In the verb ‘be’ the sg. ει- goes back to *h1es-, the pl. ει- presumably to *h1s- (cf. Ved. sānti). The athematic secondary 3 pl. ending was originally *-nt. The imperfect of ‘be’ *e-h,s-ent > *ēhen, whence WGr. ἦ, a form which was replaced in Attic-Ionic by ἦσαν with an ending from the weak aorist.
Original ἦν was redeployed in Attic as a 3 sg. Outside Attic-Ionic the other athematic verbs have historic 3 pl. -ν < *nt (imperfect ἔτιθεν etc.). Attic-Ionic has made the same replacement as in ἦσαν. Thematic primary -ουσι shows the expected East Greek development from *-o-nti (with -o- as the thematic vowel); West Greek preserves -οντι. Atmatheic -ἀσι is peculiar to Attic. West Greek has τίθομαι, διδομαι, ἱσταμαι etc.

In verbs with stems ending in -ε-, -α- and -ο- in Attic and in some other dialects the stem vowel and ending coalesce in a process known as contraction, e.g. ποιέω > ποιῶ, ὀράμεν > ὀρᾶν, δηλόει > δηλοῖ. In other dialects the vowels remain uncontracted. In yet others – particularly Aeolic – these conjugate as athematics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 5.10 ENDINGS OF THE STRONG AND WEAK AORIST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strong aorist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πείθω 'persuade'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sg.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>du.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pl.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The aorist stem forms only one indicative, the **aorist tense** (Table 5.10), a punctual preterite which corresponds in meaning not only to English ‘I did’ but also ‘I have done’ and ‘I had done’. There are two main formations, known as the strong (or second) and weak (or first) aorists. Most verbs follow one or the other formation, but some have both in different senses (e.g. ἰστημι ‘I place’ has a transitive weak aorist ἐστησα ‘I placed’ but intransitive strong aorist ἔστην ‘I stood’), and others follow the weak formation in the sg. and the strong in the du. and pl. (e.g. τίθημι has ἔθηκα but ἔθεμεν; the 3 pl. is either weak ἔθηκαν or strong ἔθεσαν). The strong aorist uses the thematic secondary endings; it therefore differs from the imperfect only in the form of the stem. The weak aorist continues the PIE *-s-aorist, which was originally athematic but has been remodelled in Greek so that it effectively has a theme vowel -a. Additionally, there are root aorists of the type ἔβλην ‘threw’ < *e-gwle1; these take the athematic secondary endings.

PIE had no **future tense**. The Greek future derives from the PIE desiderative suffix *-h,s-, which was added directly to the root and originally formed athematics, but has come to take the thematic primary endings. After stems ending in a stop the laryngeal seems to have been lost, giving rise to forms such as λείψω ‘I will leave’ = λειπ-σ-ω. This is the regular formation in Attic. After stems ending in a resonant, however, the laryngeal was not lost, giving a suffix *-es- whose -s- was invariably intervocalic and therefore lost (via [h]). This gives rise to the so-called **liquid or contracted futures** such as βαλῶ = βαλέω from βάλλω (root βαλ-). The so-called **Attic futures** are an analogical extension of the liquid type to stems in which they do not properly belong and which in most dialects form sigmatic futures. Despite the name they are not, in fact, restricted to Attic. The so-called **Doric future** (e.g. κλέψω from κλέπτω ‘steal’) is a blend of both types which has become standard in West Greek.
In addition to the active, Greek inherited from PIE a middle voice, originally denoting an action in which the agent was particularly involved, either reflexively (λούω ‘wash’ is transitive; λούομαι is ‘I wash myself’) or with specialised meaning: so, for example, while λυω means ‘I loose’, λύομαι means ‘I ransom’; and while φέρω means ‘I carry’, φέρομαι means ‘I win (i.e. carry off) a prize’. Many verbs have middle rather than active forms of the future, perhaps reflecting the original desiderative function of the future suffix; so, for example, ἔσομαι from the verb ‘be’. Some verbs, said to be deponent, have only middle forms, often for reasons which are no longer semantically transparent (so, for example, ἔσομαι ‘follow’). The middle came, however, to be the exponent of passive voice. The forms of the middle are given in Table 5.11; the future middle uses the thematic primary endings on the future stem.

**TABLE 5.11 ENDINGS OF THE MIDDLE VOICE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present stem</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thematic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Historic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύω ‘loose’</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-όμαι</td>
<td>τί-θε-μαι</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ἔ-τι-θε-μῆν</td>
<td>ἐ-πιθ-οῦ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ο-άμην</td>
<td>ἔ-λυ-ο-σ-ο</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τίθημι ‘place’</td>
<td>Προσευχόμενα</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ἔ-μη</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The 3 sg. historic form -ιοτι is original. The derived primary ending ought to be -ιοι, which is in fact preserved in Arcado-Cypriot and in Mycenaean. -ται has been influenced by -μαι and -σαι. The same holds for the 3 pl. -ντο, -ντα.

In early Greek the aorist middle is used with passive sense, but two distinctively passive aorist formations arose within the history of the language, dubbed strong and weak. The strong aorist passive conjugates like the (active) root aorists such as ἔβλην, with -η- throughout and athematic secondary endings. Indeed, it probably originates in aorists of this type, many of which are intransitive. In Homer, the vast majority of strong aorist passives are in fact intransitives, e.g. ἐχάρη ‘I rejoiced’. The weak aorist passive is formed with a suffix -θη- (of unknown origin) to which the athematic historic endings are added. It thus conjugates in an identical fashion to the strong aorist passive – the difference is simply in the stem. Originally θη- was added to the zero-grade of the stem (e.g. τείνω forms ἐτάθη), later to the weak aorist stem without – or even with – the -σ- marker. In Homer the -θη- aorist passive is frequently used interchangeably with the corresponding middle.
From the new aorist passives arose also two corresponding future passives. The stem is in -η- ("strong") or -θη- ("weak") followed by the future marker -σ- with primary middle endings. The -θήσομαι type is completely absent from Homer, the -ήσομαι type attested in two forms only, μιγήσεσθαι (Iliad 10.365) and δαήσεαι (Odyssey 3.187 and 19.325), suggesting that both are rather late formations. Supporting this view is the use in Mycenaean of a middle future participle with passive sense in the phrase aleip'atei dzes(s)omenoi 'for an unguent to be boiled'.

The subjunctive mood is formed in thematic stems by lengthening the vowel of the ending. Thus subjunctive λύῃ, λύομεν vs indicative λύει, λύομεν. In athematic formations the vowel e/o was originally inserted between the stem and the ending; many of these "short-vowel" subjunctives survive in Homer and some dialects (e.g. subjunctive ἵμεν vs indicative ἴμεν), but the lengthened thematic forms quickly replaced them. On the use of the subjunctive, see under "Syntax" below.

The optative mood was formed in PIE in athematic stems by the addition of the suffix *-yeh₁,/*-ih₁- to the zero-grade of the root, the suffix appearing in the e-grade in the sg. and the zero-grade in the du. and pl. This is exactly what happens in Greek: from the verb 'be' 1 sg. εἶην < *h₁s-yeh₁-m, 1 pl. εἴμεν < *h₁s-ih₁-men. Similarly, in verbs such as τίθημι, 1 sg. τιθείην < *dhh₁-dhh₁-ih₁-m, 1 pl. τιθεμέν < *dhh₁-dhh₁-ih₁-men, although one would expect the intervocalic *-y- to have been lost in the former, and, perhaps, the outcome of the latter to have been τιθόμεν; evidently some analogical rebuilding has taken place. Note that the endings are the athematic secondary ones (with original 3 pl. -εν < *-ent preserved even in Attic, rather than the replacement -σαν).

In thematic formations Greek uses a suffix -οι-, which is perhaps the thematic vowel followed by the zero-grade of *-yeh₁- (the laryngeal having disappeared, except in Slavic). The endings are once again the athematic secondary ones, except in the 1 sg., which has been replaced by -οιμι, containing the athematic primary ending.

It is important to note that outside the indicative and participles (and some uses of the infinitive) the difference between so-called present and aorist formations is not one of time reference but of aspect. The "present subjunctive" is not a present-time subjunctive, nor does the "aorist subjunctive" refer to past time. Both indeed can refer to future events. "Aorist" forms, built to the aorist or punctual stem, refer to simple events, while "present" forms, built to the present or durative stem, refer to ongoing or repeated events.

As well as the eventive formations discussed so far, PIE possessed a stative, which is the origin of the Greek formation known as the perfect tense. Originally it denotes a state in which the subject finds itself – characteristic examples are οἶδα 'I know', τέθνηκε 'he is dead' (vs eventive θύησκει 'he dies' and ἄπεθανε 'he died'), ἕστηκα 'I am standing' (vs ἵσταμαι 'I (go and) stand (somewhere)'). As such the stative originally stood outside the tense and mood system, and in Mycenaean we still find forms such as ἐτεθυκ'woha, perf. ptcpl. of τεῦχο 'make', with what from a later Greek perspective is active morphology but passive sense, ‘finished off, completed’; in fact, the meaning is ‘in a state of completion’. Similarly, in Homer δέδος means ‘is ablaze’, from δαίω 'kindle'. Even by the time of Mycenaean, however, middle-passive forms of the perfect have been created, e.g. dedemena 'bound', perf. of δέω, indicating that the perfect has begun to align itself with the voice system of the eventives. Semantically a present state can often be viewed as the result of a completed action in the past – 'he died and therefore is dead' – and so the perfect came to denote past action with continued relevance in the present time, 'he has died'. In this sense it is properly speaking an eventive present perfect and has become aligned to the tense system. It is therefore no surprise that corresponding past and future forms were created, the pluperfect ἐτεθνήκει 'he had died' and future perfect
Although it lacks the reduplication characteristic of the PIE stative, οἶδα ‘I know’ most closely represents the original with o-grade of the root in the sg., zero-grade in the du. and pl. (Table 5.12). In the forms which are productive in Greek, however, the endings have been heavily remodelled. Reduplication remained the hallmark of the perfect system. The so-called strong perfect usually has the root in the o-grade and no special suffix (e.g. λέλοιπα, perf. of λείπω ‘leave’). The “weak” or kappatic perfect adds -κ- to the present stem (e.g. λέλυκα, perf. of λύω); the origin of this formation is obscure, but it is already represented in Homer in verbs with stems in long vowels. The middle is an internal Greek development formed from the reduplicated stem (usually zero-grade) with primary athematic middle endings.

The pluperfect, again, is a Greek innovation, but it may have originated at a time when the perfect had a purely stative function to express a state in past time. The stem is the perfect stem with augment. The endings, apparently, are the perfect endings prefixed with -ε-, but the details are obscure.

The perfect stem, like the present and aorist stems, forms subjunctives and optatives, albeit rarely. They may be internal Greek developments (certainly perfect-stem optatives are vanishingly rare in Vedic). The active forms are built on the same model as the thematic subjunctives and optatives (λέλύκω, λέλύκοιμι); the passives are periphrastic (λελυμένος ῤ, λελυμένος εἶν). Greek has a fully developed system of infinitives and participles, with present, future, aorist and perfect stems giving both active and middle forms. Additionally, the future and aorist have distinctively passive forms. In the accusative and infinitive indirect statement construction present and aorist infinitives have present and past time reference respectively, while in other constructions the difference is one of aspect only. Participles encode time relative to the action of the main verb (aorist for anterior, present for contemporary, future for posterior action).
SYNTAX

Word order

Having a richly articulated inflexional morphology Greek has relatively free word order. Nonetheless, in classical Attic prose we can detect a preference for SOV order (Dover 1960: 25), although this is often disrupted for pragmatic reasons (Dik 1995).

In Mycenaean we have in main clauses examples of both SOV (kritēwiai onāton hek’onsi ‘the barley-women have an onāton (a type of lease)’) and SVO (Kōkalos ape-dōke elaiwon tosson Ehunēdehi ‘Kōkalos gave so much olive oil to Eumēdēs’); and in subordinate clauses of SVO (hote wanaks tēke Augēwān dāmo-ko-ro ‘when the king appointed Augēwās as dāmo-ko-ro’).

Various words including sentence-connective particles and atonic, clitic pronouns originally occupied the “Wackernagel’s Law” position immediately after the first constituent of the sentence. The interplay between the requirements of SV order and Wackernagel’s Law frequently meant that clitic pronouns were often either widely separated from their governing verb or placed following the verb but out of second position. In the Hellenistic period the tension was resolved by putting the verb in first position so that clitic pronouns naturally followed in second position, and this led to a development of VS word order even in those sentences which lacked clitics (Horrocks 1990; 2010: 108–109).

Mood, complementation and subordination

The subjunctive seems originally to have been used to refer to future events, while the optative expressed the category irrealis. Traces of these functions are preserved in the use of the subjunctive in the protasis of future open conditions (ēán taúta poitoi, kalōs poitoi ‘if you do this you will do well’) and of the optative in the protasis and apodosis of future remote conditions (ei taúta poitoi, kalōs an poitoi ‘if you were to do this, you would do well’) and in wishes for the future (eiθe Élloī ‘would that he would come’).

Over time, however, the subjunctive encroached on the modal uses of the optative, which became increasingly marginalised. In the Koine it survives only in fossilised expressions such as μη γένοιτο ‘God forbid!’.

Greek has a range of methods for embedding clauses as the complements of verbs, both finite and non-finite. Finite declarative and interrogative complements (i.e. expressions of indirect statement and question) are introduced by an overt complementiser (òti, òi both ‘that’, ei ‘whether’ etc.) or an interrogative, and ordinarily have their verb in the indicative. Unlike English, Greek has no rule of sequence of tenses: the verb in the complement clause takes the tense of the verb in the equivalent direct statement or question: so διήλθε λόγος ὅτι διώκει αὐτοῦς Kūroς (Xenophon Anabasis 1.4.7) ‘a report spread that Cyrus was pursuing them’, lit. ‘is pursuing’ because the report was ‘Cyrus is pursuing them’; but after a past tense matrix verb (traditionally called historic sequence) the verb in the subordinate clause may become optative, retaining, so far as possible, the tense of the direct form (in violation of the normal principle that the optative does not express time reference but only aspect): so ἐγνωσάν ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἰ (Xenophon Anabasis 2.2.21) ‘they realised that their fear was (lit. is) groundless’ with εἰ for ἐστι.

Thus, Greek is often said to have a rule of sequence of mood rather than of tense. This sequence-of-mood rule was optional, however, and is abandoned in the Koine. The negative in such declarative clauses is ou.
Finite clauses can also be used for non-declarative complements. Verbs of effort, such as ἐπιμελοῦμαι ‘take care that’, are complemented by clauses introduced by ὅπως with the future indicative. The negative is μή. By the same sequence-of-mood rule mentioned above the indicative may, in historic sequence, be replaced by the future optative: ἐπιμελοῦμην ὅπως (μὴ) ταῦτα ποιήσει (ποιοίη) ‘I took care that he should (not) do this’. Verbs of fear for the future are followed by μή (negative μὴ οὐ) with the subjunctive (optionally the optative in historic sequence): φοβοῦμαι μὴ (οὐ) γένηται ‘I fear it will (not) happen’.

Non-finite complements use either an infinitive or a participle. Declarative infinitive complements follow verbs of thinking and some verbs of saying. Such infinitives express tense as well as aspect – the present infinitive standing for a present or imperfect indicative, future infinitive for future indicative, aorist for aorist, perfect for perfect – and the negative is οὐ. If the subjects of the infinitive and of the matrix verb are co-referential, the subject of the infinitive is left covert and anything in agreement with it is nominative. If the two subjects are not co-referential the subject of the infinitive is overt and accusative. (Note that this is a substantial difference from Latin, where the subject of an accusative and infinitive construction is compulsorily expressed except when the matrix verb is passive.)

Non-declarative infinitives are used after verbs of wishing, commanding, ability etc. Most of these are control structures (subject control in (ἐγὼ) βούλομαι [PRO, ταῦτα ποιεῖν] ‘I want to do this’, object control in κελεύω αὐτὸν [PROj ταῦτα ποιεῖν] ‘I order him to do this’). Such infinitives express aspect but not tense (the present is used for ongoing or repeated actions, the aorist for simple actions; the perfect is rare, and the future not permitted).

Participles, similarly, may be used in declarative and non-declarative complements. Declarative participial complements are marked for factivity, and as such follow verbs of perception and knowledge. The verb φαίνομαι ‘seem, appear’ selects either a factive participle complement (φαίνομαι ὤν = ‘it is obvious that I am’) or a non-factive infinitive complement (φαίνομαι εἶναι = ‘I appear to be’, a raising structure).

Adjectival and adverbial subordinate clauses follow the same range of strategies. Relative and temporal clauses are introduced by relative pronouns and temporal conjunctions respectively (ὅς ‘who’, ὅτε ‘when’ etc.) and usually have indicatives. Indefiniteness (‘whoever’, ‘whenever’) is expressed by replacing the indicative with the subjunctive along with the modal particle ἄν (optionally in historic sequence by the optative without ἄν). Temporal clauses referring to the future are treated usually as indefinite and behave the same way. Causal clauses introduced by conjunctions such as διότι ‘because’ also have their verb in the indicative; but if the speaker wishes not to vouch for the veracity of the reason expressed, the clause becomes virtually one of reported speech and may, in historic sequence, take the optative.

An important class of finite adverbial clause is that introduced by ἵνα, ὡς or ὅπως with a verb in the subjunctive (optionally the optative in historic sequence), used to express purpose or intention.

Infinitives are rarer in non-complement subordinate clauses than in complements. When the temporal conjunction πρὶν means ‘before’ rather than ‘until’ (so always in Attic after verbs in the affirmative) it governs an infinitive. Result clauses introduced by ὡς θετε have an indicative if the consequence actually did (or did not, when the negative is οὐ) follow, and an infinitive if the intention was that the consequence should (or should not, μή) follow.
Participles, on the other hand, are abundant and are able to substitute for a wide range of adjectival and adverbial finite clauses, including relative and temporal clauses and expressions of manner, either with or without introductory particles such as ἃτε or ὥς, both ‘because’, καίπερ ‘although’. Where the subject of such a participle is not co-referential with another constituent of the sentence it defaults to the genitive case, a construction known as the genitive absolute. See Ruppel 2013 for a discussion of this construction and its origins.

It will be seen that other than in future remote conditions and in wishes the optative had become an optional substitute for the subjunctive or indicative in certain constructions. It is no surprise, then, that it was lost in the Koine. Other patterns of complementation were also simplified. The complementary participle lost ground to the accusative and infinitive construction after verbs of perception and knowledge; and the declarative accusative and infinitive itself lost ground to finite complements introduced by ὅτι and ὥς. In control structures the infinitive also had a tendency to be replaced by finite subjunctive complements introduced by ἵνα. This in turn lost its force ‘in order that’ and became grammaticalised first as a generic complementiser for subjunctive clauses and then, in a phonetically reduced form να, as a marker of the subjunctive itself.

Prepositions

The class of words known to traditional grammars as prepositions, denoting such notions as spatial relations and selecting for nominal arguments in particular grammatical cases, originate as independent adverbials. Spatial relations were, at an early stage of the language, encoded solely in case morphology – acc. for ‘motion towards’ (allative sense), gen. for ‘motion away from’ (ablatival sense) and loc., later dat., for ‘place where’ (locative sense). Traces of this system are preserved in Mycenaean, which uses bare forms with dat./loc./instr. morphology to express locational sense (dat.-loc. Spagiamptُi, instr. Spagiamptُi, both ‘at Sphagianes’), as well as in poetry. Adverbials were used to further specify or nuance the precise relation involved, e.g. παρά, which in one set of uses implies the presence of some person, so παρά τινα ‘into someone’s presence’, παρά τινος ‘away from someone’s presence’, παρά τινι ‘in someone’s presence’.

Where these adverbials occurred immediately before the verb they became regarded as prefixes or preverbs. Their original autonomy is attested by the phenomenon of tmesis in Homer, where what from a classical perspective is a prefix appears to have become separated from its verb. This must reflect a very ancient stage indeed, as there are no examples of tmesis in Mycenaean.

Where the adverbial occurred immediately before a noun, however, it is easy to see how it could become regarded as a head governing a case form, i.e. a preposition. Some, where the sense was appropriate, came to govern all three local cases; others only two (e.g. ἐν + dat. = ‘in (locative)’, + acc. = ‘into (allative)’ – although in this latter sense it was recharacterised in Attic-Ionic and West Greek as ἐν-ς, whence εἰς); and yet others only one (e.g. ἀπό, ‘away from’ with gen. only).

Word formation

An old pattern of derivation has the e-grade in verbs and the o-grade in derived nouns. When accented on the root they are often (result of) action nouns, on the suffix often agents: e.g. λέγω ‘speak’, λόγος ‘speech’; τρέφω ‘nourish’, τροφός ‘nurse’. Many have an -ū suffix, e.g. τροφῆ ‘nourishment’.
There is a rich derivational morphology. Buck (1955a: 315–348), although rather old-fashioned, collects a catalogue of morphs. Of particular note, the PIE agent noun suffix *-tēr/-tōr- tends in Attic to be replaced by -της (e.g. σωτήρ ‘saviour’, ρήτωρ ‘speaker’), but Att. κρίτης ‘judge’ = dialectal κριτήρ). The -ευς suffix is very common in occupational terms (ἱππεύς ‘horseman’ etc.). From PIE *-yo- and *-yeh₂, Gr. -ιον forms neuter diminutives (παιδίον ‘small child’) and -ια feminine abstracts (σοφία ‘wisdom’). Action nouns are derived with *-tis, becoming -σις (mostly abstract, e.g. πίστις ‘trust’) and -ματ- (tending to become concrete, πράγμα ‘thing’ from πράττω ‘make, do’). The PIE adjectival suffix *-yos forms adjectives of a very general type (πλούσιος ‘wealthy’ from πλοῦτος ‘wealth’), and becomes a standard way of forming patronymics in some dialects. Its e-grade *-eyo- forms adjectives of material (χρύσεος, Att. χρύσους ‘gold’). The suffix -ικο-, although as yet unattested in Mycenaean and rare in Homer, has become the most productive formant of general (mostly denominial) adjectives in Attic prose.

Greek also forms compounds extremely freely. An extensive survey is provided by Meißner and Tribulato (2002), to which the reader is referred.

FURTHER READING

The most recent comprehensive reference works are those of Bakker (2010), who includes chapters on all aspects covered here and many others, and Colvin (2014). Additionally, for the dialects, see Colvin 2007; Buck 1955b contains a useful collection of dialect inscriptions with commentary but is rather dated. For the history of Greek from Great Attic onwards, see Horrocks 2010. On the decipherment of Linear B see Chadwick 1958 and Fox 2013, which expands on Kober’s contribution. Ventris and Chadwick’s seminal Documents in Mycenaean Greek (1956; 2d ed. 1972) remains an essential introduction to the Linear B documents and their language; a third edition is at the time of writing in preparation under the editorship of John Killen and Anna Morpurgo Davies. Until then the most current survey of the state of the discipline is provided by the three-volume Companion edited by Duhoux and Morpurgo Davies (2008, 2011, 2014). On Cypri-Minoan see Ferrara 2012–13 and Steele 2013; on the Cypriot dialect and its writing system see Egetmeyer 2009. For the pronunciation of Greek see Allen 1987a and Sturtevant 1940, and for the historical developments in phonology Lejeune 1972. On morphology see Chantraine 1991. On the syntax of the verb see Rijksbaron 2002. On nominal formation see Chantraine 1933.

REFERENCES

Ahrens, H.L. 1843, De Graecae Linguae Dialectis, vol 2., Gottingen
Andersen, Ø. & Haug, D. 2012, Relative Chronology in Early Greek epic Poetry, Cambridge
Bakker, E.J. 2010, A Companion to the Ancient Greek Language, Oxford
Brixhe, C. 1976, Le dialecte grec de Pamphylie: Documents et grammaire, Paris
Buck, C.D. 1955a, Comparative grammar of Greek and Latin
Chadwick, J. 1958, The decipherment of Linear B, Cambridge
Chantraine, P. 1933, La formation des noms en grec ancien, Paris
Colvin, S. 2007, A Historical Greek Reader: Mycenaean to the Koinê, Oxford
Colvin, S. 2014, A Brief History of Ancient Greek, Chichester
Dik, H. 1995, Word Order in Ancient Greek: A Pragmatic Account of Word Order Variation in Herodotus, Universiteit van Amsterdam, Amsterdam [PhD dissertation]
Dover, K.J. 1960, Greek Word Order, Cambridge
Duhoux, Y. & Morpurgo Davies, A. (eds.) 2014, A Companion to Linear B. Mycenaean Texts and their World, vol. 3. BCILL 133, Louvain-la-Neuve,
Egetmeyer, M. 2009, Le dialecte grec ancien de chypre, 2 vols, Berlin
García Ramón, J.L. 1975, Les Origines postmycéniennes du groupe dialectal éolien. Étude linguistique, Salamanca
Lejeune, M. 1972, Phonétique historique du mycénien et du grec ancien, Paris
Parry, M. 1928a, Les formules et la métrique d’Homère, Paris
Parry, M. 1928b, L’épithète traditionnelle dans Homère : essai sur un problème de style homérique, Paris
Probert, P. 2003, A New Short Guide to the Accentuation of Ancient Greek, Bristol
Ruppel, A. 2013, Absolute Constructions in Early Indo-European, Cambridge
Smyth, H.W. & Messing, G.M. 1956, Greek Grammar, Revised edn, Cambridge, MA
Steele, P.M. 2013, A Linguistic History of Ancient Cyprus: The Non-Greek Languages, and their Relations with Greek, c. 1600–300 BC, Cambridge
Sturtevant, E.H. 1940, The pronunciation of Greek and Latin, 2d edn, Philadelphia
Ventris, M.G.F. & Chadwick, J. 1956, Documents in Mycenaean Greek, 1st edn, Cambridge
Ventris, M.G.F. & Chadwick, J. 1972, Documents in Mycenaean Greek, 2d edn, Cambridge
INTRODUCTION

As a linguistic term, “Italic” refers most commonly to a group of closely related Indo-European languages spoken throughout the Italian peninsula in the 1st millennium BCE (Map 6.1). The major language in this group, that is to say, the one for which there is a significant documentary corpus, is Latin. It is also the only Italic language – in fact the only language of ancient Italy, apart from Greek – that did not become extinct. The Romance languages, spoken today throughout Western Europe and the Americas, are its modern descendants.

Given the prominence of Latin both linguistically and culturally, and given its importance for Indo-European studies, it is the focus of this chapter. However, data from other members of the Italic branch will be discussed whenever appropriate.

The languages of ancient Italy

At the beginning of the 1st millennium, Latin was but one of many languages spoken in ancient Italy (see Map 6.2). Celtic-speaking tribes settled in the north, in the region of Lake Maggiore, Lake Como, and the Canton of Ticino. The Veneti inhabited Venetia, from the mouth of the Po River as far as the territory of Istria. The Raeti, who spoke one of the two major non-Indo-European languages in ancient Italy, lived in the sub-Alpine regions around Lake Garda and the Brenner Pass. Speakers of the other major non-Indo-European language, Etruscan, occupied Etruria, but pockets of Etruscan speakers could be found in Latium, Campania, and Aemilia. The Falisci inhabited a small slice of land on the west side of the Tiber River known as the Ager Faliscus. Their major center was Falerii Veteres (modern Civita Castellana). The Sabellic languages were spoken in an area that extended from Umbria along the spine of the Apennines as far south as Bruttium and Lucania. Messapic-speaking peoples settled Apulia. Dialects of ancient Greek – Ionic, Doric, and Attic – were spoken at numerous colonial outposts in southern Italy.

Italic within Indo-European

Within the Italic branch, Latin was most closely related to Faliscan. The Sabellic languages (once referred to by scholars as Osco-Umbrian) formed the other branch of Italic (Rix 1994). The most important among the Sabellic languages were Oscan, the language of the inhabitants of Samnium and Campania; Umbrian, the language of the inhabitants of ancient Umbria; and South Picene, the language of the people who inhabited the southernmost parts of Picenum along the Adriatic coast. Other members of this branch are known, but only from a handful of inscriptions.
Venetic may have been Italic as well, perhaps having its own branch. The amount of evidence that can be used to determine the position of Venetic is limited and difficult to evaluate. Phonological developments, such as the change of Proto-Indo-European (PIE) aspirates to fricatives in word-initial position and to voiced fricatives or stops in medial position, point to an Italic connection, but the morphological evidence, such as it is, does not contribute to a decision one way or the other. The best approach is to leave the question open and await the acquisition of additional evidence.
Italo-Celtic

Correspondences, both phonological and morphological, are shared by members of the Celtic and Italic branches: the thematic genitive singular in -ī (Ogham Irish MAQQI ‘son’, Latin uīrī ‘man’, Faliscan tīti/titi/ ‘Titus’ [personal name]); the ā-subjunctive (Old Irish bera, Latin ferat ‘carry’, Oscan putiad ‘be able’); the superlative suffix *(i)sนม̥ (Old Irish tressam ‘strongest’, Latin maximus ‘greatest’); and the development of *CR̥HC to
CrāC (Old Irish grān, Latin grānum ‘grain’ < *ǵr̥Hnom). The probative value of some correspondences, e.g., the genitive in -ī, which is found also in Messapic, is not easy to assess (Clackson & Horrocks 2007: 31–34, Weiss 2009: 465–466, Fortson 2010: 276–277). As a result, scholars’ opinion on the question of an Italo-Celtic unity remains mixed.

**Origins of Latin**

At the beginning of the historical period Latin was spoken by the inhabitants of Latium (see Maps 6.1 and 6.2). This region was less extensive than the modern province of Lazio. It was bounded to the north by the Tiber River, to the east by the Sacco and Liri river valleys, to the south by the Garigliano River, and to the west by the Tyrrenian Sea.

Archaeological evidence points to the development of a regionally distinct material culture, the so-called Latial culture, in Latium during the late Bronze Age, ca. the 13th–11th centuries BCE (Holloway 1994: 13–14). Evidence for habitation at Rome in the earliest stages of the Iron Age, ca. the 10th and 9th centuries BCE, is found on the Palatine and Capitoline Hills, and in the Forum area. The evidence for habitation is slightly later at other sites in Latium, for example, at Ardea, Satricum, Gabii, Tibur, and Praeneste. Although it cannot be proved, it is likely that the people who produced the artifacts attributed to “Latial” culture in the late Bronze and early Iron Ages were speakers of Latin.

Speakers of the Italic languages probably entered the Italian peninsula from the northeast by crossing over the Alps. When this happened cannot be determined, but the idea that Italic-speaking peoples had begun to settle in Italy before the middle of the 2nd millennium BCE, if not earlier, is not likely to be wrong. The linguistic geography of pre-Roman Italy leads us to surmise that Italic speakers spread southward from northeastern Italy along the spine of the Apennines and fanned out into the more hospitable valleys and coastal plains of central and southern Italy.

**FIGURE 6.1** *FIBULA PRAENESTINA* (CIL I.2.3). Reproduced by permission of the Center for Epigraphical and Palaeographical Studies, the Ohio State University
The spread of Latin

Apart from Greek, Latin was the only language of ancient Italy that did not become extinct. Speakers of other languages succumbed to the military, political, and cultural domination of Latin. The Romans captured the Faliscan capital of Falerii Veteres in 241 BCE and forcibly removed all of its inhabitants to a less defensible position. Faliscan speakers switched to Latin during the 2nd century BCE. Etruscan and the Sabellic languages, Oscan and Umbrian, were still spoken at the beginning of the imperial period, but it is unlikely that native speakers of these languages survived beyond the final decades of the 1st century CE. Even the languages – both Indo-European and non-Indo-European – spoken at the geographic extremes of the peninsula disappeared soon after Roman legions and Roman administration gained a foothold in their territories. Venetic, Raetic, and Celtic, languages spoken in the Cisalpine territories of northern Italy, did not survive much beyond the reign of Augustus. Messapic inscriptions are not attested after the 1st century BCE. Ancient Greek was the only language spoken on the peninsula in antiquity that was not supplanted by Latin. It survived primarily because of its prestige value for Romans and because its speakers maintained a vibrant, though often contentious, relationship with the homeland.

In the course of a few centuries, then, Latin went from being the language of Latium to the language of a vast empire that included Europe and parts of Africa and Asia. The paths of diffusion of the language coincided with Roman military conquests. By the end of the war against Hannibal and the Carthaginians, Rome had annexed the islands of Sicilia, Sardinia, and Corsica, and set up outposts in southern Spain. Annexation of Illyricum (which was situated along the Dalmatian coast), of northern Africa, and of Greece followed shortly thereafter. The final pieces of the Roman imperial conquest, Britain and Dacia, were in place by the end of the 1st century CE.

Although the Romans never developed an official language policy, conquered peoples eventually abandoned their native languages for Latin. The Roman ruling classes, who were responsible for civil administration, finances, and military matters in the colonies and conquered territories, left most institutions and religious practices in the hands of the natives. But the fact that Latin was perceived as the language of prestige, and thus the language of economic, political, and military advancement, eventually made it the language of choice for most speakers. The adoption of Latin took place via periods of bilingualism during which the natives spoke their own languages at home in private with family and friends, and Latin in the public arena. Ultimately, great numbers of speakers, within Italy and outside of Italy, gave up their native languages for Latin. Pre-existing languages generally disappeared without a trace, although some scholars have argued that it is possible to detect features of the substratum languages by means of changes appearing in the Romance languages.

Ironically, prestige is the reason why Latin did not succeed in replacing ancient Greek as the language of everyday use in the eastern part of the empire. For the Roman elite, the Greek language enjoyed an especially elevated status. Members of the Roman aristocracy, when they could afford to do it, sent sons to Athens for study as part of a rigorous program of education.

Latin and the Romance languages

Latin is the linguistic parent of the Romance language group and as such is the progenitor of the modern Romance languages. French, Italian, Portuguese, Rumanian, Spanish, and
the remaining Romance varieties are the modern continuants of regional Latin varieties that were spoken by traders, commercial entrepreneurs, soldiers, administrators, and their families at the colonial settlements in foreign territories incorporated into the Roman Empire.

**Medieval Latin and later Latin**

Latin did not cease to be written even as regional varieties of the spoken language diverged and ultimately emerged as Romance languages, nor did it cease to be spoken in the academic arena. Latin was adopted as the *lingua franca* of scholarly discourse during the medieval period, and it survived as such well into the formative period of the Renaissance, finally giving way to treatises and tracts written in the native tongues of their authors. With the rise of linguistic nationalism, Latin was restricted more and more to the sphere of religious discourse and learned publications. Indeed, the former is the primary venue in which Latin survives today. The Vatican continues to publish its encyclicals in Latin.

**Varieties of Latin**

Although it is impossible to say when Latin and the other Italic languages began to diverge, we can pinpoint the date of the earliest inscriptions. They go back to the middle of the 7th century BCE. And, although we cannot say precisely when Latin ceased to be Latin and the Romance languages became recognizably such, we can point to the earliest text attested in a Romance language, e.g., the Strasbourg Oath in Old French, which dates to 842 CE, and assume that the “transition” from Latin to Romance happened somewhere between the 7th and 9th centuries CE. If we accept this as the transition period between Latin and the Romance languages, then the recorded history of the Latin language ranges over some 1,250 years.

Because the history of Latin covers a vast expanse of time, it is possible to recognize changes in the language at all levels of linguistic structure over the course of its development from the language of the earliest inhabitants of Latium to the language of the inhabitants of the military outpost at Vindolanda in Great Britain. Indeed, since the chronological period for Latin is so great, it is convenient to recognize stages in the historical development of the language. Even though these chronological divisions are arbitrary, they serve as guideposts that facilitate discussion. Most historians of the Latin language accept some version of the following schema:

- Very Old Latin (VOLat.), ca. 650–400 BCE
- Old Latin (OLat.), ca. 400–100 BCE
- Classical Latin (Class. Lat.), ca. 100 BCE–200 CE
- Late Latin (Late Lat.), ca. 200–600 CE

Looking across the chronological divisions of the language, it is possible to identify differences in pronunciation, in the formation of words, and in sentence construction. For example, the dative singular of *o*-stem nouns and adjectives ended in a long diphthong in Very Old Latin, e.g., *duenoi* /dwɛnoːj/ ‘good (man)’, m. dat. sg. By the Old Latin period, however, this long diphthong had changed to a long vowel; other changes transformed the initial syllable of *duenoi* from *dwe-* to *bono-*, yielding Classical Latin *bono* /bɔnoː/. In Old Latin the syntax of *cum*-clauses, regardless of their function, called for a verb in the
indicative mood. By the Classical Latin period, however, the mood of the verb in clauses with causal and concessive function was the subjunctive. In Late Latin the preposition de ‘from’ takes on the functions of the genitive case; that is to say, it can be used to indicate possession, part for whole, and the “objective genitive”.

While it is important to recognize chronological differences within the history of Latin, it is equally important to recognize differences based on geography, social class, and style or register. As an example of regional variation we point to the dative singular of ā-stem nouns. In the Latin of the 3rd century BCE, speakers of some Latin dialects outside of Rome pronounced the dative singular ending with a long ā, rather than with a diphthong, which was the standard in Rome, e.g., fortuna /fortuːnaː/ ‘luck’ (Praeneste), but Roman Latin mēnsae /meːnsae̯/ ‘house’. In the Latin of Pompeii – but only in graffiti and thus perhaps only in the speech of sub-elite social orders – syllable-final short i was syncopated when standing between /w/ and /t/, e.g., aberrāuit.

This development is not found in elite Latin texts of the 1st century CE, which suggests that it was restricted, at least at its inception, to sub-elite Latin dialects. The language variety employed for literary composition, which is commonly referred to as Classical Latin, was a *Kunstsprache*. It drew on features from a number of other varieties of Latin, for example, Old Latin, and the language of law and religion. The writers of this variety also appropriated or elaborated on linguistic and stylistic features borrowed from ancient Greek authors (Clackson & Horrocks 2007: 183–228).

The Latin language, then, as we would expect of any language, covered a spectrum of varieties, written and spoken, geographic and social, formal and informal. Some scholars adopt a more severe approach, viewing the differences between elite and sub-elite varieties of Latin in terms of *diglossia*, in which two co-existing linguistic systems are recognized, one for the language of literature and official communication, the other for the language of everyday speech. The idea is that these two systems were already divergent by the end of the Roman Republic, and that they continued to diverge over the course of the history of the empire and beyond. The evidence does not corroborate this position.

**Documentary evidence**

Latin has come down to us through the medium of written texts. There are two primary documentary sources. Arguably, the most important source comes in the form of manuscripts of literary texts. Unfortunately, few Latin manuscripts have survived from antiquity. Most are late, dating as they do from the 10th to the 15th centuries CE. Thus, the texts of Roman authors are attested at least a thousand years after they were originally composed. For this reason the orthography of the manuscripts, particularly the manuscripts of the Old Latin poets, may not be as reliable as one would wish it to be. Editorial changes made by later copyists, who sometimes altered Old Latin spellings to conform to Later Latin models, have made their way into the manuscript tradition.

Roman literary compositions are the nucleus of this form of documentation. The literary productions of the most distinguished Roman poets and prose writers, e.g., Vergil, Catullus, Ovid, and Horace for poetry, and Caesar, Cicero, Livy, and Tacitus for prose, are known to us with few exceptions from manuscripts. But so also are the works of authors such as Columella and Vitruvius, both of whom composed important technical treatises, the former on agriculture, the latter on architecture.

The second important source of documentation is epigraphic. Epigraphic documentation comes in the form of inscriptions, graffiti, and dipinti (painted texts) that have been discovered over the length and breadth of Roman territory. For the most part, the
inscriptions that have survived were incised or chiseled on non-perishable material — ceramic, stone, and metal.

Some inscriptions were produced in order to stand the test of time: epitaphs preserving the memory of the deceased, texts of laws and decrees incised on bronze and earmarked for public display, texts commemorating generous contributions by patrons to their communities, dedications intended to accompany an offering to a deity, and the “signatures” of ceramic makers or their owners. Other texts survived on account of favorable circumstances. The writing on the wooden tablets of the Pompeian banker Lucius Caecilius Iucundus survived because of historical accident, namely, the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in 79 CE. Lead tablets incised with curses against competitors or against rivals in love survived because, in order to be efficacious, they had to be devoted to underworld demons and were therefore hidden away in tombs, buried underground, or tossed into wells. The leaf-tablets from Vindolanda survived because they were abandoned in drainage ditches that were subsequently covered with clay, which deprived the bacteria that would have destroyed them of the oxygen necessary to multiply.

ALPHABET, ORTHOGRAPHY, AND PHONOLOGY

The Latin alphabet was borrowed from the Etruscans, probably from the inhabitants of Caere, a settlement located across the Tiber River a short distance from Rome. The Latin abecedarium cited in (1) is the result of several alphabetic reforms that took place between the 7th and 3rd centuries BCE.

(1) A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X

The letter <g> was added to the alphabet Latin speakers inherited from the Etruscans. It first appears in the 2nd half of the 3rd century BCE and, oddly enough, occupied the position once held by <c>, which seems never to have been used to write Latin. The letter <f>, which originally had the value /w/, is the result of the simplification of the digraph <fh>, an older spelling for the sound /ʃ/. In the early imperial period the Greek letters <γ> and <ζ> were added to the script to spell sounds found in Greek loan words. They were placed at the end of the abecedarium. An attempt to add additional consonantal signs to the alphabet was made by the emperor Claudius, and though two of his signs were used in inscriptions, they disappeared from the writing system soon after his death.

For the most part, the consonantal letters stood in a one-to-one relationship to the consonantal phonemes in the sound system, but in a few instances the spelling of sounds was less optimal. The letters <c> and <k> stood for the voiceless velar /k/, e.g., capiō ‘seize’ and kalendae ‘Kalends’. Occasionally, <q> spelled /k/, especially if the following vowel sign was <u>, e.g., peœnia ‘money’. This three-way spelling of /k/ is the remains of an orthographic rule inherited from the Etruscans. The digraph <qu> spelled a voiceless labiovelar; <gu> probably spelled the voiced counterpart of <qu> (on which see below). Finally, the letter <x> stood for the cluster /ks/, e.g., arx ‘citadel’ /arks/.

Vowel length was rarely represented orthographically. A few attempts at indicating vowel length, for example, writing vowels double (paastores ‘shepherds’), marking length with a diacritic (mūrum ‘wall’), and employing etymological spellings such as ei for /i:/ ([l]eium ‘living’), were used sporadically, but they were not adopted as the standard. Thus, in most instances, a single vowel sign stood for both a long vowel and its short counterpart, e.g., <a> = /a:/ and /a/. The glides /j/ and /w/ were also spelled with vowel signs, e.g., iam ‘now’ = /jam/ and uir ‘man’ = /uir/. In the Classical Latin spelling system, the signs <i> and <u> represented three phonemes.
Metrical evidence indicates that words like peior ‘worse’, maior ‘more’, and aiō ‘say’ had a heavy first syllable. When standing between vowels, the letter spelled a double or long consonant /major/.

In the oldest Latin inscriptions the direction of writing was variable. Some inscriptions were written in left-to-right direction, others in right-to-left direction. A few inscriptions were incised in the boustrophedon style. By the 4th century BCE, however, left-to-right direction was the standard. Punctuation in texts was minimal. Very Old Latin inscriptions were often written scriptio continua. Later, punctuation points regularly separated words, but sentence-signs and paragraph-signs were rare, even in long inscriptions.

Phonology

The phoneme inventory of Latin is displayed in Table 6.1.

The voiced labiovelar, which was restricted to the environment after nasals (ninguit ‘it’s snowing’), is the only phoneme whose status is controversial. It is listed as part of the phonological inventory based on phonotactic and morphophonemic evidence. The treatment of qu and gu as clusters /kw/ and /gw/ does not fit with the metrical evidence, which points to a unitary phoneme, at least as far as qu is concerned. Interestingly, the metrical evidence also suggests that the cluster /kw/, as in equus ‘horse’ < *ek ˊwos, fell together with the original labiovelar.

The velar nasal [ŋ] is sometimes considered a separate phoneme based on the evidence of minimal triplets: amnī ‘river’, annī ‘year’, and agnī ‘lamb’ [aŋniː]. However, it is possible to treat [ŋ] as an allophone of the phonemes /n/ and /g/. Following this analysis, the velar nasal in longus [lɔŋgʊs] is the result of the assimilation of /n/, a dental nasal, to the velar position of the following stop. The velar stops /k/ and /g/ were pronounced as the corresponding nasal when standing before a dental nasal. Thus, ignis ‘fire’ was pronounced [ŋnís] and dignus ‘worthy’ as [dɪŋnos].

The glottal fricative /h/ was restricted in large part to word-initial position, and it was a feature of elite Latin. But even in the elite variety of the language, word-initial h behaved as an outlier. It did not “make position” in metrical texts, and members of the educated classes, as is clear from poem 84 of Catullus, could be guilty of hypercorrect pronunciations. Although h was written in medial position in some words, it is doubtful that it was pronounced. h did not prevent vowel contraction, e.g., mī for mihi ‘to me’, and it did not block rhotacism of -s, e.g., diribeō for *dishabeō.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.1</th>
<th>THE PHONEMES OF CLASSICAL LATIN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consonants</strong></td>
<td><strong>Vowels</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stops</td>
<td>p b t d k g kʷ gʷ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricatives</td>
<td>f s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasals</td>
<td>m n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateral</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trill</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glides</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The vowels in the system were distinguished by length. The short members were lax and more central than their long counterparts. The number of diphthongs in the system was for all intents and purposes restricted to /æ̯/ and /aw/. /oe̯/ was present in a handful of words, e.g., *poena/*poena/ ‘punishment’, perhaps under Greek influence, cf. ποινή. The diphthongs /ej/, /uj/, etc., were the result of contractions and were restricted to a small number of words, e.g., *deinde* ‘then’, *cui* ‘to whom’.

In Classical Latin, epigraphic and metrical evidence suggest that word-final -Vm surfaced as a long nasalized vowel. In Old Latin inscriptions of the 3rd century BCE, final -m was often omitted in writing, e.g., OL *optumo* ‘best’ = CL *optimum*, a spelling that makes sense if the nasal was lost and the preceding vowel was nasalized. The etymologically appropriate spelling was restored in the 2nd century BCE and became standard in literary Latin and bureaucratic prose. In poetry, words ending in -Vm were subject to elision if the following word began with a vowel just as if they ended in a long vowel. And words ending in -Vm “made position”, that is to say were metrically heavy, if followed by a word beginning with a consonant. Nasalized vowels were also found before -ns, both primary and secondary, and -nf- (nasal + fricative), e.g., *ínfāns* ‘child’, *mēnsa* ‘table’, *cōnsul* ‘consul’. Note the common abbreviation *cos.* for *cōnsul*.

### Diachronic developments

From a diachronic perspective the most distinctive phonological development, and one that setItalic apart from its sisters, was the treatment of the PIE voiced aspirates (Stuart-Smith 2004).

In word-initial position, the aspirates changed to voiceless fricatives. The labial and dental aspirates merged as /f/; the velar aspirate, reflecting an earlier merger of PIE *ǵʰ* and *gʰ*, became /h/, presumably via an intermediate stage as *x*. Comparative data are assembled in (2).

(2) **PIE aspirates in initial position**

*bʰ*: Latin *frāter* ‘brother’, m. nom. sg., Oscan *fratrúm*, m. gen. pl., Umbrian *frater* ‘brothers’ (in a religious fraternity), m. nom. pl. < *bʰreh₂ter-; Latin *ferō* ‘I carry’, 1 sg. pres. act., Marrucinian *ferenter* ‘they are carried’, 3 pl. pres. pass., Umbrian *ferti* ‘he should bring’, 3 sg. imp. act. < *bʰer-; Latin *far* ‘grain’, n. nom. sg., Faliscan *far*, Oscan *far*, Umbrian *far* < *bʰars*


*ǵʰ/gʰ*: Latin *hortus* ‘garden’, m. nom. sg., Oscan *húrz* ‘grove’ (as sacred area), m. nom. sg. < *ǵʰortos* ‘enclosed area’; Latin *horitum* ‘incites’ 3 sg. deponent < *ǵʰr-y/e/o-, Oscan *heriiaid* ‘he should wish’, 3 sg. subj. act., Umbrian *heriest* ‘he will wish’, 3 sg. fut. act. < *ǵʰer-y/e/o-


In medial position the lines of development were more complex, and they served to distinguish Latin from the rest of the Italic group. The labial and dental aspirates developed
into voiced fricatives [β] and [ð], which may be the stage attested by Venetic, if lo.uzerqo.s. ‘children’, dat. pl., is phonetically [lowðerðos]. Medial [β] and [ð] merged as [β] in Faliscan and in the Sabellic languages. In Rome and environs, [β] and [ð] survived and eventually became the corresponding voiced stops /b/ and /d/. The velars (PIE palatals and velars), on the other hand, developed to /h/ in all Italic varieties, perhaps via a voiced velar fricative. The aspirated labiovelar moved along a different trajectory in Latin and the Sabellic languages: *gʷh became u /w/ in Latin but f /β/ in Sabellic. Examples of the development of aspirates in medial position are in (3).

(3) PIE aspirates in medial position


*d*: Latin medius ‘middle’, m. nom. sg., South Picene mefiin loc. sg. + postposition -en, Oscan mefiai, f. loc. sg. < *medʰyo-; Latin ruber ‘red’, m. nom. sg., Umbrian rufru < *h₁rudʰro-


*gʷh*: Latin foueō ‘I heat up’, 1 sg. pres. act. < *dʰogʰwey/o-; Umbrian vufru ‘votive’, m. acc. sg. < *h₁wogʰw-robe-

The development of the PIE labiovelars, *kʷ* and *gʷ*, is another change that distinguished the Sabellic languages from Latin and Faliscan (and from Venetic too). *kʷ* survived in Latin and Faliscan in most environments, e.g., Latin -que ‘and’, Faliscan -cue, cf. Venetic -kve < *-kʷe. *gʷ* survived too, but only when it followed a nasal, e.g., Latin unguen ‘salve’, n. nom. sg. < *h₁engʷ- ‘anoint’; in other environments, it changed to u /w/, e.g., Latin uenio ‘come’, 1 sg. pres. act. < *gʷm-ye/o- ‘sets out’. In contrast, *kʷ* and *gʷ* merged with the labial stops in Sabellic, e.g., Oscan pis ‘who’, m. nom. sg. < *kʷis; Oscan benusth ‘will have come’, 3 sg. fut. perf. < *gʷem- (the dental nasal by analogy with the present). For the development of the aspirated labiovelar, see above.

In Latin intervocalic *s changed to r, e.g., Latin generis ‘family’, n. gen. sg. < *gene-ses. This change, generally referred to as rhotacism, took place also in Umbrian, in final as well as medial position, e.g., Umbrian farariur ‘of the grain’, m. nom. pl. < *-āsiyōs. Oscan seems to have preserved the intermediate stage of development. Medial *s was voiced but not rhotacized, e.g., egmazum ‘property’, f. gen. pl.

The liquids and nasals developed for the most part unchanged. Syllabic liquids developed to oR, e.g., mors ‘death’, f. nom. sg. < *mṛtis; syllabic nasals developed to eN, e.g., Latin decem ‘ten’ < *dekm, cf. Umbrian desen-duf ‘twelve’ (‘ten-two’). In Sabellic, syllabic nasals in word-initial syllables appear as aN, e.g., tanganuđ ‘decision’, f. abl. sg. This may be a secondary development, perhaps under accent.

The PIE laryngeals were lost in pre- and post-consonantal positions in Italic. If a laryngeal followed a syllabic resonant, the result was Rā, e.g., Latin grāta-, Oscan bratas ‘favor’, f. gen. sg. < *gʷH-teh₁; Latin nātus ‘son’, m. nom. sg., Paelignian cnatois, m. dat. pl. < *gₙh₁-to-. Laryngeals standing between consonants were vocalized to a, e.g., Latin datus ‘given’, nom. m. sg. < *dh₁-to-, animus ‘spirit’, nom. m. sg. < *h₂enh₁-mo- (medial
EX WALLACE

-i- here by “vowel weakening”, on which see below, under “Accent”), cf. Oscan anams ‘breath’. Original *VHC sequences yielded long vowels via loss of the laryngeal and compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel, e.g., Latin fériae ‘holidays’, f. nom. pl., Oscan fisnám ‘sanctuary’, f. acc. sg. Both nouns were derived from the root *d*eh₁s- ‘divinity’.

In word-initial syllables, PIE short and long vowels survived in Latin in most environments. Long vowels, regardless of source, were shortened in word-final syllables closed by any consonant but -s, e.g., portāt ‘he carries’ > portat, portōr ‘I’m carried’ > portor, etc., but portās ‘you carry’. These changes led to morphophonemic alternations in Latin verb paradigms (see Table 6.10).

Apart from *ay and *aw, the PIE diphthongs developed into long vowels in all positions in Latin, e.g., *ey > ī (*deyk ˊō > dīcō ‘say’); *oy > ū (*oynos > ūnus ‘one’); *ew, *ow > ū (*dewk ˊō > dūcō ‘lead’).

**Accent**

At some point in the prehistory of Latin, the pitch-accent system of PIE was replaced by a system in which the vowel in the initial syllable of a word carried a stress accent.

The effects of this stress accent are abundantly evident in Latin. Short vowels were subject to phonetic processes known collectively as “vowel weakening”. Quality distinctions were eliminated in non-initial syllables. In open syllables short vowels changed to i, e.g., fāciō ‘make’ beside efficīō ‘construct’. In closed syllables, original a changed to e, and original o to u; original e and i remained, e.g., factus ‘made’ beside effectus ‘constructed’, euntis ‘going’, m. gen. sg. < *eyontes. Diphthongs in non-initial syllables, which did not otherwise become long vowels (see above, “Phonology”), were also affected by “weakening”. *ay and *aw ultimately changed to ī and ū, e.g., caedō ‘I cut’ beside incīdō ‘I cut into’, and claudō ‘I shut’ beside conclūdō ‘I confine’.

Over the course of the history of Latin, unstressed vowels in open medial syllables, usually, but not exclusively, in the environment of sonorants or fricatives, were subject to syncopating processes. Examples follow: *dekṣitěs ‘right’ > dexter; *uirotūts ‘manliness’ > uirtūs; and *kedate ‘give here’ > cête.

By the 3rd century BCE, the Latin “law of the penult” had replaced the word-initial accent. Penultimate syllables, if heavy, were accented. If the penultimate syllable was light, then the accent shifted to the antepenultimate syllable, if there was one, e.g., affėc-tus, portā́mus, dū́kimus, but dū́cit, ánimum, fāciō, etc.

The Sabellic languages also show the effects of a word-initial accent. Several rounds of syncope eliminated short vowels in medial and final syllables. In Proto-Sabellic, short vowels in word-final syllables were lost before -s, e.g., Oscan hurz ‘grove’, m. nom. sg. < *ǵortos, Oscan Pakis ‘Pacius’, m. nom. sg. < *pakiyos, Oscan humuns ‘men’, m. nom. pl. < *homones. Subsequently, short vowels in medial syllables were syncopated, e.g., Oscan actud ‘let him do’, 3 sg. act. imp. < *agetōd, Oscan factud ‘let him make’, 3 sg. act. imp. < *fakitōd.

In the Sabellic languages the accent may have remained on the initial syllable of words. The double spelling of vowels in Oscan is found with few exceptions in word-initial syllables, and this points to the continuation of vowel length in this position, presumably under accent.

Whether or not the change from a pitch accent to a stress accent is to be assigned to the Proto-Italic period cannot be determined. Some scholars prefer to see it as a later development that originated among languages spoken in central Italy, which then spread
out from the innovative language via contact. There is something to be said for this view. In the non-Indo-European language Etruscan, vowels in medial syllables were syncope-pated, which suggests that the vowel in the initial syllable was stressed, e.g., Old Etruscan túruce ‘dedicated’ > New Etruscan túrce.

**NOMINAL AND PRONOMINAL MORPHOLOGY**

Nominal forms were inflected for the categories of gender (m., f., and n.), number (sg. and pl.), and case (nom., voc., acc., gen., dat., and abl.).

The PIE case system was reduced from eight to seven in Proto-Italic; the ablative and instrumental merged as the ablative. The number of cases was further reduced in Latin by the merger of the locative and the ablative, although the locative singular endings -ae and -ī are attested in a few nouns and in the names of towns and cities, e.g., humī ‘on the ground’, domī ‘at home’, Romae ‘in Rome’, etc. In Oscan, Umbrian, and the other Sabellic languages, the locative case remained a more vibrant part of the system, e.g., Oscan iseī terei ‘in this land’. The locative appears to have survived in Venetic too, to judge from the noun phrase dekomei diei ‘on the 10th day’, cf. Latin diē septumī ‘on the 7th day’.

The dual was lost as a morphological category in Italic, but a few forms, e.g., Latin amīo ‘both’ and duo ‘two’, preserve the dual nominative/accusative ending. Remnants of the PIE collective survived in Latin o-stem plurals, such as loca ‘places’ beside the plural locī, and perhaps indirectly in nouns such as pīla ‘ball (of hair)’ beside pīlus ‘a hair’.

Nominal stems had the grammatical feature of gender. Certain stem formations were associated with certain genders. For example, ā-stems (*-eh₂-stems) were overwhelmingly feminine; o-stems were masculine and neuter; -men-stems were neuter, and so forth. Sometimes nouns of the same formation could be either masculine or feminine, depending on the gender of the referent, e.g., pater ‘father’, frāter ‘brother’, and māter ‘mother’.

The case endings

In some noun classes, perhaps within late PIE, contraction of the stem-final vowel and the vowel of the inflectional ending led to forms where it was not easy to distract stem and ending. Consider the dative singular of o-stems in which the ending -ō (VOL -oi) was the result of the contraction of */-o-ey > */-ēy/ and then the loss of diphthong-final y, e.g., VOL DUENOI ‘good [man]’, CL bonō ‘good’. The same is true also for many cases in the ā-stem (< */-eh₂) declension. The situation was further complicated by cross-paradigmatic borrowings of endings and, in particular, by the borrowing of endings from pronominal inflection. The genitive plural of ā-stem and o-stem nouns and adjectives is a case in point. The inherited genitive plural ending -um survived in a few o-stem nouns, e.g., deum ‘gods’, m. gen. pl., but most o-stems inflected with -rum (with lengthening of the stem vowel), an ending that was modeled on the genitive plural of ā-stem nouns, e.g., casārum ⟷ deōrum. But the ending -rum, from earlier */-som, was not part of the original ā-stem paradigm; it was borrowed from pronominal inflection.

The endings for Classical Latin consonant-stem nouns are given in Table 6.2. The inherited athematic endings, although altered by sound change in many cases, survived in the singular; the Latin ablative was formally the locative ending */-i. In the plural the nominative ending -ēs was borrowed from the i-stems, where the full-grade stem and the ending fused together to produce a long vowel */-ey-es > -ēs). The Latin accusative plural
ending -ēs developed regularly from *-ṇs. The dative/ablative ending -ibus had its initial -i from the i-stems.

**TABLE 6.2 CLASSICAL LATIN CONSONANT-STEM ENDINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>m./f. n. m./f. n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>-s -o -ēs -o</td>
<td>-ēs -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>-s -o -ēs -o</td>
<td>-ēs -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>-em -o -ēs &lt; *-ṇs</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>-is -o -ēs -a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>-ī -o -ibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>-e -o -ibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The endings of the Classical Latin o-stem declension nouns and adjectives are listed in Table 6.3.

**TABLE 6.3 CLASSICAL LATIN O-STEM ENDINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>m. n. m. n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>-s -m -ī -a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>-e -m -ī -a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>-m -m -ōs -a</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>-ī -ōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>-ō -īs</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>-ō -īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Historically, the endings of the nominative, accusative, and dative singular were the same as the athematic endings, although the dative is the result of the contraction of stem vowel and ending, as noted above. The thematic vocative singular was endingless; word-final -e is the e-grade of the thematic vowel, e.g., *puere* ‘boy’ (Plautus), cf. Umbrian *tefere* ‘Tefer’. In Very Old Latin and in Faliscan the o-stems were inflected with two genitive singular endings: -sio (VOL ualesiosio ‘Valerius [personal name]’, m. gen. sg.; Old Faliscan uoc<i>tenosio ‘Voltenos [personal name]’, m. gen. sg.) and -ī (Old Faliscan titi ‘Titus’, m. gen. sg.). The functional distinction between the two, if any, is not clear. The ending -sio does not appear to have survived much beyond the 6th century BCE in Latin, although an Old Latin form attested on an inscription from Ardea may continue -sio (tittoio/titijjio/ ‘Titus’, Ardea). The personal name Mettoeo Fufetioeo ‘Mettius Fufetius’, which appears in Ennius (Ann. 2, 139 [Warmington]), was probably modeled on the Greek epic genitive -οιο. The ending -ī is not a Latino-Faliscan innovation; it is also found in Celtic and Messapic. The PIE thematic declension had a distinct ablative singular ending *-ōd. The ending is found in Old Latin, e.g., GNAUOD ‘Gnaeus [personal name]’ and POPPLICOD ‘of the people’, and in Oscar, e.g., SAKARAKLUD ‘sanctuary’. Classical Latin -ō is the result of the loss of word-final -d following a long vowel. The expected nominative plural ending is -ōs < *-o-es. This ending is found in Sabellic languages, e.g., Oscar nūvlanus ‘inhabitants of Nola’, m. nom. pl., where it was extended to pronominal forms, e.g., Oscar iusc ‘they’, m. nom. pl. Latin o-stems, on the other hand, had the pronominal ending *-oy, which developed regularly to -ī, thus uīrī ‘men’, m. nom. pl. The dative/ablative ending -īs is, from a PIE perspective, the instrumental ending *-ōys.
Neuter 2nd declension nouns had the same ending for the nominative, vocative, and accusative. In the singular, the ending was *-m; in the plural, the ending was *-a.

Declensional classes

In Latin, nouns were organized into five classes called declensions – a practice that is followed in most descriptions of Sabellic nominal forms as well. The five Latin declensions reflect in large part the stem types attested in other ancient Indo-European languages. The ā-stems, historically *-eh₂-stems, are the 1st declension; o-stems are the 2nd declension; consonant-stems and i-stems are grouped into the 3rd declension; and u-stems are the 4th declension. The ē-stems, which are an Italic innovation, are 5th. Examples of inherited inflectional types are given in Tables 6.4 and 6.5; ē-stems are in Table 6.7.

TABLE 6.4 CLASSICAL LATIN NOUN PARADIGMS, MASCULINE AND FEMININE GENDERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>ā-stems</th>
<th>o-stems</th>
<th>C-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>mēnsae¹</td>
<td>lupus³</td>
<td>rēx⁵</td>
<td>puppis⁷</td>
<td>tribus⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>mēnsa</td>
<td>lupe</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>puppis</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>mēnsam</td>
<td>lupum</td>
<td>rēgēm</td>
<td>puppimS</td>
<td>tribum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>mēnsae</td>
<td>lupā</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>puppī</td>
<td>tribū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>mēnsā</td>
<td>lupā</td>
<td>rēge</td>
<td>puppī, -e</td>
<td>tribū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>mēnsae</td>
<td>lupī</td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>puppis</td>
<td>tribūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>Romae²</td>
<td>humī⁴</td>
<td>rūrī⁶</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural</th>
<th>ā-stems</th>
<th>o-stems</th>
<th>C-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>mēnsae</td>
<td>lupī</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>puppēs</td>
<td>tribūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>mēnsa</td>
<td>lupī</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>puppēs</td>
<td>tribūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>mēnsam</td>
<td>lupōs</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>puppīs</td>
<td>tribūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>mēnsis</td>
<td>lupīs</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>puppibus</td>
<td>tribibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>mēnsis</td>
<td>lupīs</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>puppibus</td>
<td>tribibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>mēnsārum</td>
<td>lupōrum</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>puppium</td>
<td>tribuīm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Declensions 2, 3, and 4 also included nominal forms that were neuter gender. The inflectional patterns differed from the masculine and feminine in the nominative, vocative, and accusative, singular and plural. Partial paradigms are in Table 6.5.

TABLE 6.5 CLASSICAL LATIN NOUN PARADIGMS, NEUTER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>o-stems</th>
<th>C-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./voc./acc.</td>
<td>iugum¹</td>
<td>genus²</td>
<td>mare³</td>
<td>genū⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plural</th>
<th>o-stems</th>
<th>C-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./voc./acc.</td>
<td>iuga</td>
<td>genera</td>
<td>maria</td>
<td>genua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Masculine gender, 2nd declension nouns and adjectives come in a couple of subtypes. The regular type ends in *-us < *-os in the nominative singular, e.g., lupus ‘wolf’, filius ‘son’. Nouns and adjectives whose stems ended in *-ro- lost the stem vowel in the
nominative singular by regular sound change, e.g., *uir ‘man’, *puer ‘boy’, *sacer ‘sacred’, etc. Nominative case forms such as *ager ‘field’ and *sacer ‘holy’ developed in the following manner: *āgrōs > *āgrs > *agers > *ager. These changes account for the alternations in -ro-stem paradigms, e.g., *ager, m. nom. sg., but *agrī, gen. sg., etc.; *sacer, m. nom. sg., but *sacrī, gen. sg., etc.; cf. VOL sakros, m. nom. sg.

The Latin 3rd declension encompasses PIE consonant-stems and i-stems. Numerous declensional subclasses can be recognized based on the final sound of the stem; inflectional peculiarities are associated with each class.


2. s-stems. The neuter s-stems rhotacize medial -s, thus genus ‘family’, n. nom./acc. sg., but *generis, gen. sg., *generī, dat. sg. Some nouns, like genus, *generis, preserve the original -o/e ablaut in the suffix (*o > u in closed final syllables). In other nouns, ablaut was eliminated in favor of the vowel of the nominative/accusative singular, e.g., *corpus ‘body’, *corporīs. Masculine and feminine s-stems were in the process of shifting to the r-stem declension in Classical Latin thanks to the analogical introduction of the -r of the oblique stem into the nominative singular, e.g., *honōs, *honāris → honor, honōris.

3. r-stems. Nouns of familial relationship preserved remnants of ablaut, e.g., *pater, m. nom. sg., but *patris, gen. sg. Agent nouns formed by means of the suffix -tōr made up the largest constituency in this class, e.g., *uictor, uictōris ‘winner’.

4. l-stems. Latin had a few l-stem nouns, e.g., *sāl ‘salt’, *salīs, gen. sg., and *sōl ‘sun’, *sōlis, gen. sg. The word for ‘sun’ was in origin a heteroclitic l/n-stem. The noun compound cōnsul ‘consul’ also belongs to this type. The root is *sel- ‘take’.

5. n-stems. De-verbal neuter nouns ending in -men, -minis were very common in Latin, and they were productive in Classical Latin, e.g., *carmen ‘song’, *carminis, gen. sg. Animate nouns in -mō, -mōnis belong to this class as well, e.g., *sermō ‘speech’, m. nom. sg., *sermōnis, gen. sg. A small number of nouns preserved traces of ablaut, e.g., *carō ‘flesh’, f. nom. sg., *carnis, gen. sg., cf. Umbrian karu, f. nom. sg., karne, dat. sg. Nouns of the uirgō-type also have a distinct stem uirgin- outside of the nominative singular, e.g., *uirginis, f. gen. sg.

6. m-stem. Latin has a single m-stem, hiēms ‘winter’, which, unlike n-stems, has a sigmatic nominative singular, /hiēmps/. The p was epenthetic. The noun belonged to the PIE root class.

7. Heteroclitic r/n-stems. Latin preserves a few neuter r/n-stems, although the class is moribund and the nouns that do survive show various types of paradigmatic leveling, e.g., *femur ‘thigh’, *feminis, gen. sg., but also *femoris, gen. sg. (form attested in Cicero!); *iēcūr, iōcūr ‘liver’, nom. sg., *iēcorīs, iōcineris, iecinoris, all gen. sg.

8. i-stems. The number of “true” i-stems, that is to say, nouns whose paradigms preserved i-stem inflection throughout, is relatively small (see Table 6.3). Many i-stems have been attracted into consonant-stem inflection to varying degrees.

From an IE perspective, the i-stems did not inflect in the manner of consonant-stems. However, sound change and analogy moved i-stems, particularly those whose stem vowel was syncopated in the nominative singular, e.g., *mors, mortīs ‘death’, *gēns, gentīs ‘clan’, etc., in the direction of consonant-stem inflection, which in turn moved consonant-stem nouns in the direction of i-stems, e.g., cīuitātium ‘states’, f. gen. pl., cīuitātīs ‘states’,
acc. pl. The result is a class of 3rd declension nouns in Classical Latin whose inflection lies between that of “pure” consonant-stems and “pure” i-stems, and which is sometimes referred to, though somewhat infelicitously, as “mixed-stem” inflection. Nouns of this class typically had variant forms of the accusative singular, -em and -im; ablative singular, -e and -ī; accusative plural, -ēs and -īs; and, less frequently, the genitive plural, -um and -ium. Examples of this inflection are cited in Table 6.6.

**TABLE 6.6 CLASSICAL LATIN ‘MIXED’ DECLENSION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>vocative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>ablative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>vocative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>ablative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>gēns ‘family’</td>
<td>fōns ‘spring’</td>
<td>mors ‘death’</td>
<td>pars ‘portion’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentem</td>
<td>fontem</td>
<td>mortem</td>
<td>partem, -im</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentī</td>
<td>fōntī</td>
<td>mortī</td>
<td>parteī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentē</td>
<td>fōntīs</td>
<td>mortīs</td>
<td>partīs, -ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentis</td>
<td>fontis</td>
<td>mortis</td>
<td>partis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>gentēs</td>
<td>fontēs</td>
<td>mortēs</td>
<td>partēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentēs, -ēs</td>
<td>fontēs</td>
<td>mortēs</td>
<td>partēs, -ēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentibus</td>
<td>fontibus</td>
<td>mortibus</td>
<td>partibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentibus</td>
<td>fontibus</td>
<td>mortibus</td>
<td>partibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gentium</td>
<td>fontium, -um</td>
<td>mortium</td>
<td>partium, -um</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oscan maintained the distinction between i-stems and consonant-stems in most case forms, including the nominative plural, e.g., trīs ‘three’ < *tréyes, but meddiss ‘magistrate’, m. nom. pl. < *meddikes, with syncope of short *-e in the final syllable. Even so, these stem classes do exhibit cross-paradigmatic borrowings. For example, the i-stem genitive singular ending -ēs was adopted in consonant-stem inflection in all Sabellic languages.

The 5th declension is an Italic development, though few forms, apart from Umbrian ri ‘matter’, dat. sg., are attested for this class in Sabellic. In Latin, the 5th declension nouns diēs ‘day, rēs ‘property’, spēs ‘hope’, and fidēs ‘trust’ come historically from different PIE nominal classes, but sound change and analogical change have led to fully elaborated paradigms. Examples in are Table 6.7.

**TABLE 6.7 CLASSICAL LATIN Ė-STEMS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Ė-stems</th>
<th>Ŗēs ‘property’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
<td>rēs ‘property’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rēī, reī</td>
<td>rē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēi</td>
<td>rēi, reī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diē, diē, diī</td>
<td>rēi, reī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēs, dīs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Diachronic developments

The Italic languages shared one major innovation in the nominal system, and that was the development of ablative singular forms ending in a long vowel + -d. The ending was modeled on the o-stem ablative -ōd, and it was imported into the ā-stems, i-stems, and u-stems, which yielded ablatives distinct from their genitive forms. The 5th declension nouns adopted this ending as well. A few consonant-stem ablatives were generated following this model, e.g., OL consoled ‘consul’, m. abl. sg., leged ‘law’, f. abl. sg.; in other cases consonant-stems opted for the ablative of the i-stem inflection, e.g., OL opid ‘resources’, f. abl. sg., bovid ‘cow’, m./f. abl. sg.

Adjectives

The most common type of adjective declension paired masculine and neuter forms of the 2nd declension with feminine forms of the 1st, e.g., bonus, -a, -um ‘good’. In consonant-stem declension, distinctions in gender were not formally expressed in the nominative singular, e.g., ferēns ‘carrying’, ferōx ‘fierce’, duplex ‘double’, ingēns ‘huge’ (ingentis, gen. sg.), utēs ‘old’ (ueteris, gen. sg.), etc. For most i-stems, masculine and feminine nominatives were distinct from the neuter, e.g., facilis ‘easy’, m./f., facile n. In paradigms such as ācer, ācris, ācre ‘sharp’, a three-way distinction in gender was created in the nominative singular. *ākris developed regularly to ācer in Old Latin; ācris was reintroduced, based perhaps on the model of facilis, etc. Interestingly enough, in Old Latin ācris is found as a masculine form and ācer as a feminine form. The match-up of gender and form found in Classical Latin is the result of standardization on the part of elite Latin writers.

Latin did not have u-stem adjectives; they were transferred to the i-stem inflection, e.g., suāuis, suāue ‘sweet’ ← PIE *swādu-, cf. Greek ἡδύς. Present active participles in -nt-, originally consonant-stems in their inflectional pattern, were attracted into the orbit of the i-stem inflectional type. The ablative singular ends in -ī unless the participle is used as a substantive, e.g., portantī ‘carrying’, m. dat. sg. The genitive plural is -ium, e.g., portantium ‘carrying’, m. gen. pl.

Gradable adjectives formed the comparative by means of the suffixes -iōr < *-yōs (m./f.) and -ius < *-yos (n.), e.g., melior, meliōris, ‘better’, m./f., melius, meliōris, n. As was the case for s-stem masculine and feminine nouns, so in the comparative the oblique stem suffix, whose medial -r was the result of rhotacism, was introduced into the nominative singular. The superlative suffix was -issimus, -a, -um with 1st and 2nd declension inflection. The superlative of a few i-stems, whose stem vowel was syncopated, ended in -limus due to assimilation of -l to -ll, e.g., *fakilisomos > *fakilsomos > facillimus ‘most easy’.

Pronouns

Pronominal declension includes personal pronouns, which were not inflected for gender; anaphoric/demonstrative pronouns, which were inflected for gender; and interrogative and relative pronouns, which were also inflected for gender.

The personal pronouns were idiosyncratic in their inflection, and this is reflected in the paradigms in Table 6.8. Case forms of the 1st and 2nd person personal pronouns were built on multiple stems, e.g., egō, me-/mē, nos-/nōs. Some case endings, for example, the dative singular endings -hi and -bi, and the dative/ablative plural -bīs, were unique to
these paradigms. The genitive singular and plural forms were drawn from the possessive adjective paradigms. The Old Latin genitives *mēs ‘of me’ and *tīs ‘of you’ are the inherited enclitic forms *mey and *tey, extended by the -s of the genitive. The reflexive pronoun had the same forms in the singular and plural.

**TABLE 6.8 LATIN PERSONAL PRONOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>Reflexive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>ego (OL egō)</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>mē (OL mēd)</td>
<td>tē (OL tēd)</td>
<td>sē (OL sēd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>mihi (OL mihī)</td>
<td>tibi (OL tibī)</td>
<td>sibi (OL sibī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>mē (OL mēd)</td>
<td>tē (OL tēd)</td>
<td>sē (OL sēd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>meī (mīs)</td>
<td>tuī (tīs)</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The personal pronouns attested in Sabellic languages match up tolerably well with those in Latin, e.g., South Picene ekū /ēgō/, nom. sg., Umbrian mehe, dat. sg., Umbrian miom /mēom/, acc. sg.; Oscan tium, nom. sg., tif[ei], t(i)fei, dat. sg.; South Picene tefei, dat. sg.; Umbrian tefe, dat. sg.; Paelignian uus, nom. pl.; Oscan sífei; Paelignian sefei, dat. sg. Paelignian uus ‘to you’, dat. pl., points to a prehistoric *uōfos. If this was the Proto-Italic form of the dative/ablative, then the endings of Latin nōbīs and uōbīs were reformed to *nōbei̯s and *u̯ōbei̯s based the dative singular. In Very Old Latin and Old Faliscan, accusative and ablative singulars ended in -d, e.g., VOL med ‘me’, acc. sg. Why the accusative forms ended up with word-final -d is not easily explained. In contrast to Latin and Faliscan, the particle -om was added to the accusative singular forms in Sabellic, e.g., Umbrian miom ‘me’, tiom ‘you’. The 1st person accusative singular was remade in Venetic by contamination with the nominative, *egō : *mē → ego : mego.

Gender-bearing pronouns represent a variety of distinct stem types. The stems *e, *ey, and *i united to form the paradigm of anaphoric pronouns is, ea, id ‘he, she, it’, in Latin, and izic ‘he’, iūk ‘she’, idik ‘it’ in Oscan. The Latin demonstrative hic, haec, hoc ‘this’ (close to speaker) is not attested as such in any other language, though it is often thought to be from the same etymological source as the Sanskrit particle gha “certainly”. iste, ista, istud ‘this’ (close to addressee) was formed from a particle *es- + demonstrative *to-/ tā-. Umbrian este, ‘this’, n. acc. sg., South Picene estas, f. nom. pl. (?), and Presamnite estam, f. acc. sg., are cognate. The i-vocalism in Latin is due to the influence of is. ille, illa, illud ‘that’ (distant from speaker) is the Classical Latin form that replaced OLat. olle/ollus, cf. Oscan úllis, ‘that’, m. gen. sg. The i-vocalism here may be attributed once again to is and perhaps to iste as well. These paradigms shared an inflectional peculiarity by which the genitive and dative singular forms were the same regardless of gender, e.g., huius, huic; illius, illi; istius, isti.

The deictic particle -c(e) was often added to inflected pronominal forms in Latin and Sabellic. In Latin, demonstrative pronouns to which the particle had been added were incorporated into the paradigms in some case forms, e.g., hic, haec, hoc ‘this, these’,
The paradigm of the Latin relative pronoun is cited in Table 6.9. Some forms (quem, m. sg. acc.) go back to the PIE interrogative/indefinite stem *kʷi-, others (quod, n. sg. nom./acc.) to the interrogative stem *kʷo-. The PIE relative pronoun *yo- was lost in Italic, and the relative paradigm was composed of the stem *kʷo- and the stem *kʷi-. The use of the interrogative/indefinite pronouns with relative function is to be attributed to Proto-Italic; the paradigms in Oscan and Umbrian are similarly formed. In Classical Latin the relative pronoun was distinct from the interrogative and indefinite only in the nominative singular. The masculine and feminine relative pronouns were augmented by the deictic particle -ī, e.g., Latin quī ‘who’, m. nom. sg., < *kʷo-ī, cf. Oscan pui.

**TABLE 6.9 CLASSICAL LATIN RELATIVE PRONOUN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>relative</th>
<th>masculine</th>
<th>feminine</th>
<th>neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quām</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>cuīus</td>
<td>cuīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>cuīus</td>
<td>cuīus</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| | plural |
| nominative | quī | quae | quod |
| accusative | quōs | quās | quae |
| dative | quībus | quibus | quibus |
| ablative | quibus (quās) | quibus | quibus |
| genitive | quorum | quārum | quīrum |

**VERB MORPHOLOGY**

Verbs were inflected for tense (pres., impf., fut., perf., pluperf., fut. perf.), mood (ind., subj., imp.), voice (act., pass.), person (1st, 2nd, 3rd), and number (sg., pl.).

The Italic languages, excluding Venetic, for which there is too little evidence, reorganized the verb system inherited from PIE. In Italic, the primary division was into two basic stems, generally referred to as the imperfective and the perfective. Three tense formations were constructed to each stem: to the imperfective, there was a present, an imperfect, and a future; to the perfective, a perfect, a pluperfect, and a future perfect. This organizational schema is set out for Latin and Oscan in Table 6.10.

**TABLE 6.10 ORGANIZATION OF VERB SYSTEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>damus ‘we give’</td>
<td>perfectimus ‘we gave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfect</td>
<td>dabāmus ‘we were giving’</td>
<td>pluperfectimus ‘we had given’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>dabimus ‘we will give’</td>
<td>future perfectimus ‘we will have given’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oscan</td>
<td>imperf</td>
<td>perf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>dider ‘he gives’ (Vestinian)</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfect</td>
<td>fusans ‘they were’</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>didest ‘he will give’</td>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Oscan: deded ‘he gave’ (unattested)
Tribrakattust ‘he will have built’
In the imperfective, verbs were organized into four present-tense paradigmatic classes, commonly referred to as conjugations: conjugation 1, ā-stems; conjugation 2, ē-stems; conjugation 3, i-stems; and conjugation 4, ī-stems. Conjugation 3 had two subtypes: a regular 3rd conjugation, in which the stem vowel -i did not appear before endings of the 1st singular and 3rd plural (see below, regō ‘guide’); and the 3iō conjugation, in which the stem vowel -i appeared in all forms of the present (see below, faciō ‘make’). The Latin conjugational classes, present tense, are displayed in Table 6.11. Verbs like fērō ‘I carry’, uolō ‘I wish’, sum ‘I am’, eō ‘I go’, etc., which do not fit neatly into one of the five patterns, are described as “irregular”.

## Table 6.11 Latin Conjugation Classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ā-stems</th>
<th>ē-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>i-stems (-iō)</th>
<th>ī-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>portō</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>regō</td>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>sentiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>portās</td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>regis</td>
<td>facis</td>
<td>sentīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>portat</td>
<td>monet</td>
<td>regit</td>
<td>facit</td>
<td>sentit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect and future tenses were formed on the imperfective stem. The imperfect tense suffix was -bā for all conjugations, e.g., 1st conjugation portābās ‘you were carrying’, 2nd conjugation monēbās ‘you were warning’. Third and 4th conjugation verbs add the imperfect tense suffix to a stem augmented by -ē, e.g., 3rd conjugation regēbās ‘you were guiding’, 3iō conjugation faciēbās ‘you were making’, 4th conjugation sentiēbās ‘you were feeling’. The future tense had two formants: (1) -b/bi-, which was added to the present stems of conjugations 1 and 2, e.g., portābō ‘I will carry’, monēbis ‘you will warn’; and (2) -ā (1st sg. only)/-ē, which was added to the present stems of conjugations 3 and 4, e.g., dūcam ‘I will lead’, faciēs ‘you will make’, sentīēmus ‘we will feel’. In Old Latin, imperfects of 4th conjugation verbs could be formed from the stem un-augmented by -ē, e.g., exactūbat ‘he was listening’, seriūbās ‘you were preserving’. -b/bi-futures could also be formed to verbs of the 4th conjugation, e.g., dormībō ‘I will sleep’. These formations are rare in Classical Latin literature. The future attested in Faliscan corresponds to the -b/bi-formation in Latin, e.g., 2nd conjugation carefo ‘I will be lacking’.

The stem of the perfective active was formed in a number of ways from a synchronic point of view: (1) by suffixation of -u/w/, e.g., portāuit ‘he carried’, monuit/moduiwu/ ‘he warned’ < *monewed, sēntiuit ‘he felt’; (2) by reduplication, dedit ‘he gave’, beside present tense dat, cf. Faliscan pepparai ‘I produced’, fīniked ‘he fashioned’, fīfī fqod ‘they fashioned’; (3) by lengthening of the stem vowel, uēnit ‘he came’, ūōpurīt ‘he burst’, beside present tense uenit, rupit; (4) by altering the quality of the stem vowel, accompanied by lengthening, e.g., fēcīt ‘he made’, to facit ‘he makes’; (5) by suffixation of -s, e.g., dīxit/dī:kst/ ‘he said’, beside dicīt ‘he says’. In some cases, the imperfective and perfective stems were distinguished only by the personal endings, e.g., present tense uertō ‘I turn’, but perfect tense uertī ‘I turned’.

Perfactive active stems with the suffix -u were generally built from the imperfective stem of secondary verbs, most of which were denominatives ending in a long vowel, e.g, cūrā- ‘to take care to’ → cūrā-u-. Other perfactive formations were built to verbal roots
or to verbal stems distinct from the stem of the imperfective, so that the morphologi-
cal relationship between the imperfective stem and the perfective stem was not always
predictable, particularly outside of the 1st and 4th conjugations, e.g., monē- ‘warn’, but
monu- /monuw- built from the stem *mone-.

Alongside the regular ā-conjugation perfects, e.g., portāuistī ‘you carried’, there were
also “syncopated” or “contracted” perfect forms, e.g., portāstī. Such forms were com-
mon in Republican Latin literature, particularly in poetry, where they provided metrically
convenient alternatives to longer forms. But despite the labels, these forms were not the
result of syncope or contraction. Rather, they originated as sigmatic (aorist) forms to
denominatives, and they were eventually incorporated into the paradigms of the u-per-
fec ts, e.g., portāstī = portā-s-stī; portārunt < *portā-s-ont.

The pluperfect suffix for active voice was -erā-; the future perfect suffix was -er/-eri.-
Both suffixes were added to the perfective stem, e.g., portāu-erā-s ‘you had carried’, dīx-
erā-s ‘you had said’; portāu-er-ō ‘I will have carried’, monu-eri-s ‘you will have warned’.

Mood

In addition to the indicative mood, Italic languages had subjunctive mood forms corre-
sp onding to all tenses in the system with the exception of the future and future perfect.
Forms for each conjugational class are listed in Table 6.12.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.12</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (2 SG. ACT.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>á-stems</td>
<td>ë-stems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>portēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfect</td>
<td>portārēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect</td>
<td>portauerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperfect</td>
<td>portauissēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The suffixes marking subjunctive mood are the following: present tense -ā for conjugations 2, 3, and 4, and present tense -ë for conjugation 1; imperfect tense -rē; perfect tense -erē-; and pluperfect tense -issē-. As the forms in Table 6.11 shows, for conjugation 1 the
subjunctive suffix -ë replaces the stem vowel -ā characteristic of the present indicative.
The final vowel of the perfect tense suffix, to judge from the variation found in Classical
Latin poetry, could be either long or short.

The imperative, which was formed on the imperfective stem, was signaled by distinct
endings rather than by a special mood suffix. Latin had two sets of imperative endings,
one for the “regular” imperative and one for the so-called future imperative. Active voice
formations are 2 sg. age vs. 2/3 sg. agiō; 2 pl. agite vs. 2/3 pl. agiōte. Functionally, the
so-called future imperative was restricted primarily to legal and juridical contexts.

Voice and personal endings

In Latin, verbs were inflected for active and passive voice. Middle voice as a grammatical
category had for the most part disappeared, although a small number of verbs permitted
middle voice readings, e.g., lauātur ‘washes herself, bathes’. The so-called deponents con-
tinued PIE media tantum verbs, e.g., sequitur ‘he follows’, cf. Greek ἑπεται, Sanskrit sacate.

There were three sets of personal endings for verbs (see Table 6.13). One set was for
active voice, and another set was for passive voice and for deponents. The active voice
had two endings for the 1st singular active: -ō for present, future, and future perfect, and
-m for imperfect, pluperfect, and all tenses of the subjunctive. First singular -m in the
present tense of the verb ‘be’, sum, ESOM ‘I am’ is a remnant of the primary athematic
ending *-mi, which has otherwise been lost in Italic. The perfect tense had its own special
set of forms in the active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.13 PERSONAL ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passives were periphrastic formations made
up of the perfect passive participle and a finite form of the verb ‘be’. The participle
was inflected for gender, number, and case; the inflectional features were determined
by agreement with the subject of the verb. Person and number of the subject were also
marked on the verb ‘be’. Examples are cited in Table 6.14.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.14 PERFECT PASSIVES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The paradigms listed in Table 6.11 are evidence for a regular alternation in the length
of the stem-final vowel typical of all Latin verbal paradigms. The morphophonemic alter-
nations were the result of sound changes that took place in Old Latin. The first change
shortened long vowels when they stood before word-final obstruents, except for -s, e.g.,
portāt > portat, faciām > faciam, but portās, portāmus, etc. The second change shortened
long vowels when they stood before another vowel (so-called vocalis ante vocalem cor-
riptitur), e.g., *monēō > moneō, *monēās > moneās, *sentīēs > sentiēs. From a synchronic
point of the view, the stem-final vowels in conjugations 1, 2, and 4 are to be treated as
long in underlying forms. In conjugations 3 and 3iō the morphophonemic alternation
between stem-final -i and stem-final -e is best viewed synchronically as a change of -i to
-e before -r. This morphophonemic change explains the short -e rather than the short -i
in forms such as caperēs, 2 sg. impf. subj. In the underlying representation this verb was
/kapirēs/. From a diachronic perspective, caperēs goes back to *kapesēs.

Diachronic developments

The present-tense conjugation classes are the result of the convergence of different PIE
formations resulting from sound changes and analogical restructurings.

The 3rd conjugation verbs continue PIE or post-PIE thematic formations of various
sorts, e.g., Latin agit ‘leads’ < *aǵeti, dīcit ‘says’ < *deyketi, bibit ‘drinks’ < *pibeti,
poscit ‘demands’ < *pṛksketi. In Old Latin, the thematic vowels *e and *o changed to i
and u, e.g., *dewketi > *dowket > dūcit, *dewkonti > *dowkont > dūcunt. Athematic formations, such as nasal infix verbs (e.g., iungit ‘joins’), reduplicated presents (e.g., gignit ‘gives birth to’), and a few presents to roots ending in a laryngeal (e.g., soniit ‘sounds’ < *swenatii < *swenh2ti) were added to the thematic conjugation too, though by diverse prehistoric routes.

The 3rd conjugation verbs of the capiō-type and 4th conjugation verbs of the sentiō-type were *-ye/yo- formations built directly to verb roots. The assignment of a verb to either the 3rd or 4th conjugation was determined by the prosodic structure of the root. Prosodically heavy roots and roots ending in a sonorant developed an epenthetic -i between the final consonant of the root and the *-ye/yo- suffix. Sound changes then split the verbs into distinct paradigmatic classes, e.g., conjugation 3iō, *kapes > capis ‘you seize’, but 4th conjugation, *wenyesi > weniyesi > uenīx ‘you come’.

A majority of 2nd conjugation verbs were in origin either iterative/causative formations with o-grade of the root and a suffix *-eye/o-, or stative formations in *-eh2, e.g., nocēs ‘you cause harm to’ < *nokeyesi, sedēs ‘you are sitting’ < *sedeh2si.

The 1st conjugation verbs included denominatives to ā-stems, e.g., curā- ‘make sure of’ < *kosos-y2e/o-; factitives to thematic stems, e.g., nouā- ‘makes new’ < *neweh2-ye/o-; and *-ye/yo- formations to roots ending in a laryngeal, e.g., *swenh2-ye/o- > swe- na-ye/o- > sonā- ‘sounds’.

The Italic perfect tense indicatives are the result of the merger, both formally and functionally, of the PIE aorist and the PIE perfect. For most verbs, either an aorist or a perfect was selected as the representative of the Italic perfect, although in earlier periods of Latin both aorist and perfect formations are attested for a few verbs. So, for example, in Old Latin the verb parcō ‘I refrain from’ had multiple perfect tense forms: pepercī, parcuī, parsī ‘I refrained from’. The verb faciō made a reduplicated perfect and a root aorist in Very Old Latin: vhe:vhaked ‘he made’ and feced. Latin, Oscan, and Umbrian sometimes selected the same perfective form, e.g., Latin dedit ‘gave’, beside Umbrian dede. But more often the perfective formation in Latin does not match that of Oscan or Umbrian, e.g., Latin dīxit ‘said’, sigmatic aorist, beside Umbrian dīxicust ‘will have struck’, root aorist.

Although the overall structure of the tense system is the same in Italic, the exponents of some “tense” suffixes differed between Latino-Faliscan and Sabellic. For example, the Latin and Faliscan future tense for conjugations 1 and 2 was based on the suffix *-bha/o-, whereas Sabellic continued an s-future, in all likelihood, the PIE desiderative, e.g., Oscan deiuast ‘he will swear’. The Latin future perfect was a thematic formation added to the perfective formant -is, -eri- < *-is-e/o-, whereas the Sabellic formation is athematic -us-, e.g., Oscan tribarakattust ‘he will have built’. The Latin pluperfect suffix was -er-ā- < *-is-ā-, which was built with the same ā-suffix found in the imperfect of the verb ‘be’, erās ‘you were’ < *es-ā-s, and in the imperfect suffix -bā-. The pluperfect is not attested in Sabellic.

The Latin imperfect formations, both indicative *-bā- and subjunctive *-sē-, have exact correspondences in the Sabellic languages, e.g., Oscan fufans ‘they were’, 3 pl. impf. act., Oscan patensins ‘should open’, 3 pl. impf. subj. This present subjunctives of the 1st conjugation have their ē-vowel from the full-grade athematic optative suffix, e.g., *noweh2-ye1h- > *nowā- > nouē-, a stem that was generalized to plural forms in the paradigm. This subjunctive formant then spread from 1st conjugation athematics to the large class of denominatives in this conjugation, e.g., cūrē-, cf. Oscan deiuait ‘he shall swear’ 3 pl. pres. subj. < *deywā-ē-. The origin of the ā-subjunctive of conjugations 2,
3, and 4 remains a mystery, but the formation is Italo-Celtic in origin and is found in all branches of Italic, e.g., Faliscan douiad ‘let him give’, 3 sg. pres. subj.; Oscan pūtiad ‘be able’, 3 sg. pres. subj.; Oscan deicans ‘let them say’, 3 pl. pres. subj.; Oscan fakiad ‘let them make’, 3 sg. pres. subj.; and Umbrian tursiandu ‘let them be frightened away’, 3 pl. pres. subj.

The distinction between PIE primary and secondary personal endings was, for the most part, eliminated in Latin thanks to the loss of -i in the primary endings. In Latin, a distinction remained in the 1st person singular active, where, as noted above, the ending -m appeared in past tense formations and the subjunctive, and the ending -ō appeared in the present, future, and future perfect. The 3rd person singular active secondary ending -d < *-t survived in Very Old Latin and Old Latin, e.g., VOL gēæhaked, OL fecid, but was replaced by primary -t < *-ti before the beginning of the Classical period. The perfect active endings continued the PIE endings for the most part, though they were extended by addition of *-i, the hie et nunc particle, in the singular (-i < *-ay, -stī < *-stay, -it < -ī(t) < *-ey(t)) and 3rd person plural (-ēre < *-ēri). Third singular -ei was re-characterized by the addition of -t, which developed to -ī in Old Latin (OL fueit) and then to -it in Classical Latin. In addition to -ēre, two additional 3rd plural endings are attested: (1) -ērunt, which is a blending of -ēre and thematic aorist -unt ← *-ond; and (2) -erunt, which is from earlier *-is-ont, the thematic aorist ending added to the perfect formant -is-. The endings of the Faliscan perfect paradigm appear to be a fusion of thematic aorist and perfect endings, e.g., 1 sg. perfect pepēpari ‘I have produced’; 3 sg. aorist fīfikēd ‘he has fashioned’; 3 pl. aorist f[i]fijiqd ‘they have fashioned’. In the Sabellic languages, the primary and secondary endings of the active did not merge, apart from the 2nd person, and perhaps the 1st person plural. Thus, in Oscan and Umbrian the endings are 1 sg. -u (Umbrian stahu ‘I stand’, 1 sg. pres. act.) vs. -um (Oscan manafum ‘I entrusted’, 1 sg. perf. act.). -t (Oscan stāt ‘it stands’, 3 sg. pres. act.) vs. -d (Oscan dedēd, 3 pl. perf. act.); -nt (Oscan sent 3 pl. perf. act.) vs. -ens (Oscan dedēns 3 pl. perf. act.). In the 3rd plural, South Picene and Presamnite continued the thematic aorist ending *-ond < *-ont. These languages did not share the change of *-nd to -ns, which is found in Oscan and Umbrian, e.g., South Picene adstūh ‘they set up’, 3 pl. perf. < *-ond, Presamnite fufpōd ‘they were’, 3 pl. perf. < *-ond.

The endings of the passive voice were built on the active by addition of -(o)r or, in the case of the 1st plural, the replacement of -s by -r, e.g., -mur < *-mor. The 2nd singular ending -re goes back to the PIE secondary middle ending *-so. The alternative 2nd singular ending -ris is a later formation; final -s is the active singular ending. The 2nd plural -mīnī is sometimes taken to be the nominative masculine plural participle; another explanation points to PIE -dwe, which received a nasal extension in the manner of Sanskrit 2nd plural active -thana, that is to say, -dwe-ney > *-beney > *-bney > *-mney > -mīnī. Neither possibility is convincing.

The middle endings in the Sabellic languages did not correspond in all particulars to those in Latin. In Oscan the 3rd singular and 3rd plural suffixes were -ter and -nter. In Umbrian the -ter and -nter are used in primary inflection; -tur was used in secondary inflection.

Non-finite formations

The verb system also traditionally includes, in addition to the forms inflected for person and number, a number of non-finite forms. These include participles (portāns, portantis ‘carrying’), infinitives (portāre ‘to carry’, portāuisse/portāsse ‘to have carried’), supines
(perditum ‘to lose’), gerundives (uītandae ‘worthy of living’), and gerunds (faciendō ‘act of making’).

The present active participle was formed by addition of the suffix -nt- to the imperfective stem for conjugations 1 and 2, e.g., portāns < *portants, portantis, and by addition of -ent- for conjugations 3 and 4, e.g., faciēns, facientis. Gender distinctions were in large part eliminated. The masculine and feminine forms were the same throughout, and the neuter was distinct only in the accusative singular and the nominative/accusative plural, e.g., faciēntem, m./f., vs. faciēns, n.; faciēntēs, m./f., vs. facientia, n. The neuter form facientia shows another innovation of the present participle declension in Latin: i-stem inflection in the ablative singular and genitive plural.

Present middle participles in -minus < *-mh, no- are preserved in a few words, e.g., fēmina ‘woman’ < *dēh₁(i)- ‘give suck’, alumnus ‘nursling’ < *al- ‘nourish’, but these stand outside of the verb system.

The PIE verbal adjective suffix *-to- is the source of the Latin perfect participle, e.g., dictus ‘said’, ductus ‘led’. Roots and stems ending in dentals show the regular change of *-d-t- and *-t-t- to -ss-, e.g., passus from the root pat-, patiōr ‘to suffer’, with subsequent simplification to -s if the syllable before the suffix was heavy, *kayd-to- > *kayso- > caesus ‘cut’. Oscan, Umbrian, and other Sabellic languages attest numerous examples of this formation, e.g., Oscan screhto ‘written’, Oscan scriftas ‘written’ < *skreybh₁; cf. Latin scriptus.

The future active participle was a Latin development. In most cases, the suffix -ūrus, -a, -um was added to the stem of past participle, e.g., dictūrus ‘about to say’.

The PIE perfect active participle is not attested in Latin, but it may have survived in a few Sabellic formations, e.g., Oscan sipus ‘knowing’ < *sēpwōs, Volscian sepu < *sēpwōd, though other explanations of these forms are possible.

The gerundive is an Italic innovation, but its origins remain uncertain. The suffix -ndo-/-endo- was added to the present stem in Latin, e.g., Latin portandum ‘to be carried’, faciendum ‘to be done’. In Oscan and Umbrian -nd- assimilated to -nn, e.g., Oscan úpsannúm ‘to be done’, m. acc. sg., and Umbrian pelsans ‘to be buried’, m. nom. sg.

The supine in -tum is the accusative singular of a tu-stem verbal noun. It was found predominantly in construction with verbs of motion, e.g., Umbrian avef anzeriatu etu ‘go to observe the birds’, Old Latin abiit ambulātum ‘she went away to take a walk’. In Latin the supine in -tū is found after adjectives such as facilis ‘easy’, e.g., facilis dictū ‘easy to say’.

The present infinitives in Italic have roots in PIE nominal formations. The present infinitive in Latin, which ends in -re, is in origin an s-stem locative *-si. The present passive infinitives of verbs belonging to conjugation 3 derive from root nouns inflected for the dative case, e.g., capi ‘to be seized’ < *kapey. Present passive infinitives of conjugations 1, 2, and 4 are modeled on the active infinitive, e.g., portāre ‘to carry’ vs. portārī ‘to be carried’. An alternative passive ending -ier, which must go back to an instrumental case form augmented by the passive suffix -r, is attested in Old Latin and occasionally later, e.g., OL fīgier ‘to be fashioned’. The present infinitive in Sabellic languages was an o-stem accusative, e.g., Oscan ezum ‘to be’, moltaum ‘to fine’. The present passive infinitive ends in -fi in Umbrian, e.g., pihafi ‘to be purified, which probably comes from an instrumental *-d’yeḥ₁, Oscan had the same suffix, but it was outfitted with the characteristic sign of the passive, e.g., sakarafīr ‘to be consecrated’.

The Latin perfect active infinitive was modeled on the present. The ending -se was added to the perfect stem that ended in the formant -is-, e.g., dixisse (diks-is-se). The corresponding passive is a periphrastic form, e.g., dictum esse. The system of infinitives
in Latin was filled out by future active and passive forms, e.g., active *dicturum esse* ‘to be going to say’ and passive *dictum īrī* ‘to be going to say’. Corresponding forms are not attested in the Sabellic languages.

**SYNTAX**

Nuclear sentences consist of a verb and its dependents. As in older IE languages, Latin and the other Italic languages marked the relationships between dependents and verbs by case endings. Grammatical subjects were inflected in the nominative, direct objects in the accusative, unless the lexical properties of the verb specified a different case, and indirect objects in the dative. Non-obligatory constituents, typically adverbal in nature, were expressed by a particular case or by a prepositional phrase, e.g., *noctū* ‘at night’, *decem diēs* ‘for ten days’, *cum exercitū suō* ‘with his own army’. The subject of the verb could be omitted if it was recoverable from context. Direct objects could be omitted as well, if context permitted. Agreement was found in two areas of the syntax: (1) verbs were inflected for the person and number of the subject; and (2) adjectival modifiers were inflected for the gender, number, and case of their head nouns. The inflection of dependents, omission of subjects, and agreement phenomena are at play in the following passage from Caesar’s *De Bello Gallico* (6.13.1–8). In (10c) the verb *concurrit* agrees in number, 3rd singular, with the subject *numerus*. In (10e) the adjective *summam* agrees in gender, number, and case with its head noun, *auctōritātem*. And again in (10e) the subject of *cōnstituunt* is recoverable from the second clause in (10d).

(10) (a) *In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre gen-*
- *era sunt duo.* (b) *dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.* (c) *Illī rēbus diuīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac priuata procūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur:* (d) *ad hōs magnus adulescentium numerus disciplīnae causā con-*
- *currit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre.* (e) *nam fere de omnibus contrōuersīs publicīs priuātīs cōnstituunt.* (f) *hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem.*

(a) ‘In all of Gaul, there are two classes of men who are of some rank and honor. (b) Of these two classes, one is Druid, the other knight. (c) The former are concerned with religious matters; they take care of public and private sacrifices; they explain religious phenomena. (d) A number of young men come to them [Druids] for training, and these [Druids] stand in great honor among them. (e) For they [Druids] make decisions about almost all public and private disputes. (f) One man stands at the head of all of these Druids, who has the greatest authority among them.’

**Constituent order**

The unmarked arrangement of the major constituents in a sentence in Classical Latin is subject-object-verb (SOV), but that order it is not obligatory. SOV order is even more frequent in subordinate clauses where textual or pragmatic factors are less likely to have resulted in the movement of a constituent to the front or the end of the clause. In (10c), (10d), and (10e), the underlined verbs, apart from the copular verb *sunt*, occupy the final position in their clauses. In (10f) the verb *habet* (underlined) has been displaced from final position by the direct object *auctōritātem*, which has been moved to the end of the clause for emphasis, so-called right dislocation.
Classical Latin prose permits the distraction of constituents, usually resulting from the movement of elements to be emphasized either to the front or to the end of the sentence. In (10f) the noun *auctōritātem* has been moved out of the object-noun phrase (*summan auctōritātem*) and placed at the end of the sentence. In (10d) the constituents of the noun phrase *magnō honōre* were distracted and placed at the beginning and end of the clause.

Classical Latin poets did not adhere to the SOV standard as rigorously as prose writers for reasons that have to do in part with metrical necessity and in part with stylistics. The poets employ distraction more aggressively, and constituents at all levels of structure may be pulled apart for emphasis, focus, or artistic effect such as alliteration and assonance. In some instances the parts of constituents were “scrambled” with one another so that the continuity of every constituent in the sentence is interrupted. The following is from a poem by Horace. Distracted constituents are indexed by superscripts.

(11) *mē tabulā*<sup>b</sup> *bacer</sup><sup>a</sup> | *uōtīuā*<sup>b</sup> *pariēs*<sup>a</sup> indicat *uuida*<sup>c</sup> | *suspendisse potentī*<sup>d</sup> | *uestimenta*<sup>c</sup> *maris deō*<sup>d</sup> (Hor. *Carm.* 1.5.13–16) ‘the sacred wall with (my) votive tablet proclaims that I have hung my soaked garments to the powerful god of the sea’.

The SOV arrangement favored by Latin prose authors is often thought to have preserved a stage of the language that was changing from “head final” to “head first”. This idea is supported by the fact that heads occur before modifiers in other constituents; that is to say, the unmarked order is Noun–Adjective (but not for “subjective” adjectives of the *bonus* type), Preposition–Noun Phrase, and Antecedent–Relative Clause. Furthermore, in the plays of Plautus, in main clauses, the order VO is statistically about as common as that of OV (Adams 1976). This view also accords well with the fact that in sub-literary texts of the first few centuries CE, VO order was the default. It is noteworthy that the variable order of constituents attested in Plautus contrasts with the order found in bureaucratic prose of roughly the same time period, which is predominantly SOV (Clackson & Horrocks 2007: 27–29). In the decree of the Roman Senate regarding participation in Bacchic cults, which was issued in 186 BCE, the order of the major constituents is consistently SOV. This suggests that SOV order was becoming, if it had not already become, one of the defining characteristics of elite Latin prose, thus distinguishing it from sub-elite varieties of the language.

The PIE word-order rule known as Wackernagel’s Law, by which enclitic elements were positioned after the first word or constituent of a sentence, is attested to some degree in Latin. Sentential particles, e.g., *enim*, *uērō*, *igitur*, and *autem*, as in (10f) above, regularly occupy the 2nd position in a Latin sentence. But it was more common in Latin for words and constituents that were highlighted or emphasized to serve as the hosts for enclitic elements such as 1st and 2nd person pronominal forms or the verb *esse* ‘be’. Since these highlighted constituents were often moved into the 1st position in their clause (or phrase), unaccented pronominal forms and unaccented forms of the verb ‘be’ generally came to occupy the 2nd position (Adams 1994a and 1994b).

The unmarked order of constituents in the Sabellic languages was probably also SOV, although one must point out that many of the inscriptions are short and formulaic, and modeled on epigraphic types inherited from Greek and Latin.

**Subordinate clauses**

Latin poetry and prose, and Latin administrative prose, were home to a rich array of complex clause structures, some of which were elaborated throughout the Classical period.
under the influence of comparable structures in Greek literature (Clackson & Horrocks 2007: 184–198). A short survey of these structures follows.

Complementation

Sentential complements, that is to say, clauses that functioned as one of the arguments of a verb, had two main structures in Latin. The structure of the complement depended to a significant extent on the meaning of the verb. Some verbs governed a finite clause, others a non-finite clause containing an infinitive and an accusative subject.

1. The Accusative + Infinitive construction was the rule after verbs of saying (dīcere), thinking (putāre, arbitrārī), knowing (scīre, cognōscere), understanding (intellegere), and perceiving (audīre ‘hear’, uidīre ‘see’, sentīre ‘perceive’). The accusative was the subject of the infinitive and was rarely omitted from surface structure, even when it was co-referential with the subject of the main clause, as it is in (12).

   (12) dīcēbās quondam [solum tē nōsse Catullum] | Lesbia (Catul. 72.1–2)
   ‘You used to say [that you knew only Catullus], Lesbia.’

   In the passive counterpart of this construction, cited in (13), the underlying subject of the infinitive Epamīnōndās has been moved out of the Accusative + Infinitive clause to be the subject of the main clause and for this reason is inflected in the nominative. In such sentences modifiers of the subject were also inflected in the nominative.

   (13) Epamīnōndās [fidibus praeclarē cecinisse] dīcitur (Cic. Tusc. 1.4)
   ‘Epaminondas is said [to have played brilliantly on the lyre].’

2. After verbs and verb phrases of “emotion”, e.g., gaudeō ‘rejoice’, indoleō ‘regret’, or molestē ferō ‘find annoying’, two structures were permitted: Accusative + Infinitive and quod ‘that’ + indicative.

3. Interrogative particles (num ‘whether’, -ne ‘if’), adverbs (ubi ‘where’), and pronominal forms (quis, quid ‘who, what’) introduced indirect questions. The verb was in the subjunctive mood.

   (14) senex dīcitur quaesisse num illud carmen dēsipientis uidērētur (Cic. Sen. 22)
   ‘The old fellow is said to have asked whether this seemed the poem of a man out of his mind.’

4. Indirect commands were introduced by verbs of ordering (iubēre, imperāre), forbidding (uetāre), permitting (sinere), exhorting (hortārī), requesting (rogāre), resolving (dēcernere), and warning (monēre). Most verbs took subordinate clauses of the finite type. Such clauses were introduced by ut(ī)/nē, and the verb was in the subjunctive mood. The verbs iubēre ‘order’ and uetāre ‘forbid’, however, took the Accusative + Infinitive construction. Compare sentences (15) and (16).

   (15) hortātur eōs [nē animō deficiant] (Caes. Civ. 1.19)
   ‘He encourages them [not to lose heart].’

   (16) [Labiēnum iugum montis ascendere] iubet (Caes. Gal. 1.21)
   ‘He orders [Labienus to ascend the ridge of the hill].’
5. Complement clauses after verbs of fearing have a structure similar to indirect commands, as do complements following verbs of hindering, though the conjunctions that introduced them were distinct. The conjunctions nē / nē nōn introduced complement clauses after verbs of fearing (timēre, uerērī), and quīn introduced complement clauses after verbs of hindering (impedēre ‘impede, obstruct’, prohibēre ‘prevent, forbid’).

The range of complement clause types was more limited in sub-elite Latin of the imperial period. The number of verbs that took the Accusative + Infinitive construction decreased; complements introduced by quod or quia extended the contexts in which they appeared and eventually became the norm. The Accusative + Infinitive construction survives only after verbs of perception in Romance languages.

Adverbial clauses

Other subordinate clause types functioned as adverbial modifiers. These clause types covered a range of functions, including time, cause, purpose, concession, comparison, and result. Adverbial clauses in Latin were, with one exception to be discussed below, finite clauses.

1. Purpose clauses were introduced by the conjunction ut ‘so that’. The verb was in the subjunctive mood. If the clause was negated, the conjunction was nē. Result clauses were similar in structure to purpose clauses, but if the clause was negated, it was introduced by ut nōn. Even if the result clause referred to an actual event, the mood of the verb was subjunctive.

2. Temporal clauses were introduced by the following conjunctions: cum, ut, ubi ‘when’; dum ‘while’; dum, dōnec, quoad ‘as long as’; dum, dōnec, quoad ‘until’; postquam ‘after’; and antequam, priusquam ‘before’. The mood of the verb was indicative in most cases, but in clauses that referred to events that were anticipated or generic, the subjunctive was making inroads in Classical Latin.

3. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, ‘because, since’ generally took a verb in the indicative mood, but the conjunction cum required a subjunctive.

4. Conditional clauses were introduced by sī ‘if’. If the relationship between the verbs in the sī-clause and the main clause was real, the verbs were in the indicative mood. If the relationship between the verbs in the clauses was considered possible or was counterfactual, the verbs were in the subjunctive mood.

5. The ablative absolute construction consisted of a noun phrase as subject and a participle as predicate, and both were inflected in the ablative case. Nominal structures were also possible, in which case the subject phrase was followed by a predicative adjective or noun. The absolute was in origin a circumstantial clause that stood in a variety of adverbial relationships to the main verb. Ablative absolutes were rarely introduced by conjunctions, so the subordinate relationship was determined by the meaning of the predicate and the sentential context. The participle expressed relative time.

Prototypical absolute constructions were short, consisting of a noun and a participle (17). In Old Latin this was almost always the case, but during the Classical period, at the hands of authors who were influenced by comparable structures in Greek, this clause
type became longer and more complex in its structure. Imperial prose writers such as the historian Tacitus sometimes specified the subordinate role of the absolute by adding a subordinating conjunction (18).

(17) *Caesar [acceptīs litterīs] nuntium mittit* (Caes. Gal. 5.46)

‘[After the letters were received], Caesar sends a messenger.’

(18) *aliī [quamūs effugiō patente] interiēre* (Tac. Ann. 15.38.7)

‘Some died, although an escape route was open.’

Relative clauses

In Classical Latin relative clauses typically followed the antecedent noun phrase, particularly when they were restrictive, but other arrangements were possible. Relative clauses were sometimes placed inside the phrase containing the antecedent, as in (19), or placed in initial position for reasons having to do with style, as in 20, which reflects an order common in legal texts. Antecedent phrases and relative pronouns are marked in bold.

(19) *ab iīs [quōs mīserat] explōrātōribus Ø et ab Rēmīs cognouit . . .* (Caes. Gal. 2.5.4)

‘he learned from those scouts that he had sent and from the Remi . . .’

(20) *[quibus ita est interdictum] hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur* (Caes. Gal. 6.13.7)

‘[to whom it has been banished in this manner], these (folks) are considered in the number of the impious and the wicked.’

Other relative clause structures are found in Classical Latin. The correlative type, exemplified in (21) and (22), has comparable structures within Italic and more widely within Indo-European. In this type the relative clause occupied the 1st position in the sentence, and the antecedent was incorporated into the relative clause. The antecedent was then referenced in the main clause by a pronominal form, as in (21), or by the antecedent and its pronominal modifier, as in (22).

(21) *[quae pars cūtītās calamitātem populō Rômānō intulerat] ea prīnceps poenās persoluit* (Caes. Gal. 1.12)

‘[Which part of the state had brought disaster on the Roman people], that (part) first paid the price.’

(22) *[quem agrum eos uendere hereademque sequi licet] is a Gerard neī siet* (CIL I.2.584.5)

‘Which property it is permitted for them to sell and to follow an heir, that property shall not be subject to taxation.’

Relative pronouns were sometimes subject to a syntactic process known as “attraction”. Relative pronouns could be attracted into the case of their antecedents, as in (23), where the accusative object of cōnsuēstī is attracted to the genitive case of eōrum. In (24) the antecedent urbem was attracted into the case of relative pronoun quam (attractio inuersa
'inverse attraction'). Inverse attraction is well attested in Old Latin, but is rare in Classical Latin. As a result, Classical Latin practice could well be an archaism.

(23) sì aliquid agās eōrum [quōrum cōnsuēstī] (Cic. Fam. 5.14)

‘If you should do any of the things that you were accustomed to do.’

(24) urbm [quam statuō] uestra est (Virg. Aen. 1.573)

‘The city [that I am founding] is yours.’

Sequence of tenses

In indirect questions and indirect commands the tense of the verbs in the subordinate clauses was governed by the tense of the main verb. Verbs that were present or future governed a subordinate verb that was present or perfect; verbs that were past tense (imperfect, perfect, pluperfect) governed a subordinate verb that was imperfect or pluperfect, as in (25). Note that the tense of the verb in the original question in (25) was perfect tense (‘Why did you all come to my house?’). This syntactic rule, which is also known as back shifting, is attested in the Sabellic languages.

(25) (Lentulus) quaesīuit ā Gallīs quam ob rem domum suam uēnissent (Cic. Cat. 3.11)

‘He (Lentulus) asked the Gauls why they had come to his house.’

Other subordinating structures

Subordinate ideas could also be conveyed by non-finite structures, including participles, gerundives, and supines. A selection of the possibilities is discussed below.

Purpose could be indicated by a supine when in construction with verbs meaning ‘come’ and ‘go’ (26). After the preposition ad, purpose could be indicated by a gerundive phrase that agreed with its head noun in gender, number, and case (27). Gerundives indicating subordinate ideas were the rule after verbs such as cūrāre ‘to take care (that such and such happens)’ (28).

(26) legātōs ad Caesarum mittunt [roġātum auxilium] (Caes. Gal. 1.11.3)

‘They send legates to Caesar to ask for assistance.’

(27) [ad bella suscipienda] Gallōrum alacer est animus (Caes. Gal. 3.19.6)

‘The character of the Gauls is keen to undertake wars.’

(28) [pontem in Ararī faciendum] cūrat (Caes. Gal. 1.13.1)

‘He takes care to build a bridge over the Arar.’

Participles serving as attributes of noun phrases conveyed a wide range of subordinate ideas. In (29) the phrase agrum Gallicum dīuidentī had the function of a temporal clause introduced by ‘while’. In (30) the bracketed phrase, which is an attribute of Dionysius, had a causal function.

(29) C. Flaminiō restitit [agrum Gallicum dīuidentī] (Cic. Sen. 11)

‘He resisted Gaius Flaminius [while he [Flaminius] was apportioning Gallic territory].’
(30) Dionysius [cultrōs metuēns tōnsōrēs] candente carbōne sibi adūrēbat capillum (Cic. Off. 2.25)

‘Dionysius, because he was afraid of the barber’s shears, used to singe his hair with a piece of white-hot coal.’

LEXICON AND WORD FORMATION

From a historical perspective the Latin lexicon is made up of strata of vocabulary, the deepest of which can be traced back to the parent language. Latin preserved IE vocabulary in a wide range of semantic spheres, e.g., kinship terms (pater ‘father’, māter ‘mother’, frāter ‘brother’, soror ‘sister’), basic numbers (duo ‘two’, trēs ‘three’, quattuor ‘four’, quīngue ‘five’, etc.), body parts (pēs, pedis ‘foot’, manus ‘hand’), domesticated animals (sus ‘pig’, ovis ‘sheep’), weather terms (nīx, nius ‘snow’, pluit ‘it’s raining’), and so forth.

A few words, primarily of a religious nature, can be assigned to the Proto-Italic period, e.g., Latin sacer ‘sacred’, nom. sg. m., Umbrian sacru ‘sacred’, nom. sg. n.; Latin sacrem ‘sacrificial victim’, acc. sg., Umbrian sakre, acc. sg., Oscan sakrim, acc. sg.; Latin sanctum ‘inviolate’, Oscan saahtum; and Latin pius ‘devout’, Oscan piibiüi, dat. sg. A smaller number of words belong to the secular sphere, e.g., Latin ātī ‘to use’, Oscan ūittūf ‘usage’, nom. sg.; Latin cēna ‘meal, banquet’, Oscan kersnu ‘banquet’, Umbrian cesna ‘meal’. In addition, a few words that are IE in origin underwent semantic developments peculiar to Italic. PIE *deyk- ‘to point out, show’, for example, acquired the meaning ‘say’ in Latin and Oscan.

Divergences existed in the Italic lexicon as well. In Latin the words fīlius ‘son’ and fīlia ‘daughter’ replaced the PIE words for ‘son’ and ‘daughter’, but they were preserved in the Sabellian languages, e.g., Oscan puklui ‘son’, m. dat. sg., South Picene puqlo̱h, m. dat. sg. < *putlo-; Oscan futir ‘daughter’, f. nom. sg., futreī, f. dat. sg. < *dhughitēr.

Borrowings in Latin cut across the chronological periods of the language. A few words have come from a Sabellian language of central Italy, e.g., bōs ‘cow’, rufus ‘red’, and popina ‘cook shop’. Further afield, Celtic incursions into the peninsula beginning in the 6th century BCE provided a small number of words, e.g., carrus ‘wagon’. In the 3rd century BCE, as contact with Greek speakers intensified, Greek loans began to enter the language in greater numbers. The plays of the Roman comedian Plautus are filled with Greek loans in semantic spheres ranging from business and finance to medicine and education. Among the Roman elite who took up the study of philosophy, oratory, literature, and philology, Greek was the source of many technical terms. The words were borrowed with varying degrees of accommodation to the Latin phonological and morphological systems, depending on the date of the borrowing, on the education of the borrower, and on the reason for the borrowing. For some Greek technical terms, new Latin words were coined rather than borrowed, e.g., essentia ‘substance’ for Greek οὐσία; for others, existing Latin words were semantically extended to cover Greek concepts, e.g., cāsus ‘accident’ for Greek πτῶσις.

Throughout the history of Latin, productive morphological processes augmented the lexical inventory. Abstract nouns and result nouns were derived from verb roots and verb stems by suffixation of -men (fragmen, fragminis ‘fragment’), -mentum (fragmentum, fragmenī ‘fragment’), -iōn- (occīdiō, occīdiōnis ‘slaughter’), and -tiōn- (aedificātiō, aedificātiōnis ‘construction’). The suffixes -(i)tāt- (bonitās, bonitātis ‘goodness’) and -(i)tūt- (uirtūs, uirtūtis ‘manliness’) also formed abstractions from adjective stems. Agent nouns were made with the suffix -tōr, which was added to verb roots and verb stems, e.g., amātor, amātōris ‘lover’, scriptor, scriptōris ‘writer’. The adjective suffix -ānus,
which originated as a re-segmentation of adjectives derived from 1st declension nouns, was very productive, e.g., 3rd declension urbānus ‘of the city’, 2nd declension mundānus ‘of the world’, on the model of 1st declension Romānus ‘of Rome’. The verb suffix -ā was extracted from 1st conjugation verbs and was used to form denominatives from consonant-stems, e.g., nomināre ‘to call by name’, built on the stem nomin- ‘name’. The suffix -(i)tā, which originally formed iterative/intensives, eventually replaced the corresponding simple formations, e.g., cantāre ‘to sing’ to canere, tactāre ‘to throw’ to iacere, dictāre ‘to say’ to dīcere. Compound verbs were formed by addition of prefixes to verb stems, e.g., dūcere ‘to lead’, ēdūcere ‘to lead out’. Compound noun formations were not as productive in Latin as they were in IE languages like Greek, but compounds such as agricola ‘farmer’, auceps ‘bird catcher’, aurifex ‘goldsmith’, and iūdex ‘judge’ may point back to a more productive period. In classical literature, compounds began to reappear in greater numbers, but they were created on models from Greek literature, e.g., armiger ‘bearing arms’.

FURTHER READING


Fortson 2010, chapter 13, is a concise and informative introduction to Italic and the Italic languages (Venetic is discussed in Chapter 20, “Fragmentary Languages”). Wallace 2007 is an overview of the Sabellic languages.

REFERENCES


*Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum*, Berlin, 1862–2004


Ernout, Alfred & Meillet, Antoine 1985, *Dictionnaire étymologique de la langue latine*, Klincksieck, Paris


Meiser, Gerhard 2003, *Veni, vidi, vici: Die Vorgeschichte des lateinischen Perfektsystems*, Beck, Munich


Vine, Brent 1993, *Studies in Archaic Latin Inscriptions*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck

Wachter, Rudolf 1987, *Altlateinische Inschriften*, Peter Lang, Bern

Wallace, Rex 2007, *The Sabellic Languages*, Lincom Europa, Munich

INTRODUCTION

The surviving Celtic languages fall into two groups: (a) the Brythonic (or Brittonic or British) group (Ternes 2011); and (b) the Gaelic (or Goidelic or Irish) group. The two are very distinct and have been mutually unintelligible for well over a millennium. To the Brythonic group belong Welsh, spoken widely in Wales, and Breton, spoken in the west of Brittany. Cornish, the language of Cornwall, which was very similar to Breton, died out as a natural language in the eighteenth century. To the Gaelic group belong Irish (or Irish Gaelic), spoken mainly in the west of Ireland, and Scottish Gaelic, spoken mainly in the west of Scotland. Manx, the Gaelic language of the Isle of Man, died out as a natural language in the twentieth century. Celtic languages are also spoken in the Americas, as a result of the modern diaspora of Celtic-speaking peoples, so that, for example, there are Welsh/English bilinguals in Patagonia in Argentina, and Scottish Gaelic/English bilinguals in Nova Scotia in Canada.

All these surviving Celtic languages (including Breton!) are known collectively as Insular Celtic languages, as opposed to the ancient Continental Celtic languages, e.g. Gaulish, Galatian, Celtiberian, etc., which were all dead by AD 500 and mostly much earlier. The term “Insular” refers to the two islands of Ireland and Britain. From these the Gaelic and Brythonic languages spread: in about the fifth century AD Scotland was settled by emigrants from Ireland (the Scotti), while Armorica was settled by emigrants from southern Britain, becoming known as Brittany (Breton Breiz < *Brittia). The theory that the Breton language includes a substratum of indigenous Armorican Celtic is unproven but not impossible.

The Brythonic dialects began to diverge into West British (> Welsh) and South-West British (> Cornish and Breton) in about the fifth century AD, but probably remained mutually intelligible for several centuries. The Gaelic dialects began to diverge in about the tenth century AD, but there was a common literary language to the end of the Middle Ages, and even today Irish and Scottish Gaelic are much more similar than are Breton and Welsh, which have long been mutually unintelligible. The geographical reason is obvious: there has always been easy travel between Scotland and northern Ireland. Another factor is that Welsh has been in contact with English, whereas Breton has been in contact with French. These contacts have influenced the syntax, morphology and phonology of the languages; for example, there are nasalized vowels in Breton and French, but not in Welsh and English.

Within most individual surviving languages there are marked dialectal differences, so that Breton speakers from north and south may find it easier to communicate in French, while Gaelic speakers from north and south may prefer to talk English together. Nearly all adult Celtic speakers are bilingual.

A general impression of the divergence of the Celtic languages may be gained from comparing the ordinal numerals in Gaulish (McCone 1994: 208 = 2005: 300, Lambert 2002: 105–109, Hamp 2012) with those in Old Irish and Middle Welsh; see Table 7.1.
TABLE 7.1 COMPARISON OF THE ORDINAL NUMERALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gaulish (first century AD)</th>
<th>Old Irish (eighth century)</th>
<th>Middle Welsh (thirteenth century)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>cintux(?)mos</td>
<td>cént(a)e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>all(los)</td>
<td>tán(a)ise, aile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>trito(s), tr(titos)</td>
<td>tris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>petuarios</td>
<td>cethramad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pinpetos</td>
<td>cóiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>suexos</td>
<td>se(i)ssed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>sextametos</td>
<td>sechtmad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>oxtumetos</td>
<td>ochtmad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>namet(os)</td>
<td>nómad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>decametos</td>
<td>dechmad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Celtic

The term “Celtic”, as applied to the Insular Celtic-speaking peoples and their languages, is a modern one. These peoples did not refer to themselves and their languages as “Celtic” until recently. For example, the medieval Irishmen were Goidil (an opprobrious name derived from Brythonic, cf. W gwýdd ‘wild’), and their language was Goidelach, and medieval Welshmen regarded themselves as Brython (< Lat. Brittones) or Cymry (< *kom-brogī ‘co-countrymen’) and their language was Cymraeg. (The Welsh themselves do not use the English name Welsh < OEng. w(e)alh ‘foreigner, or slave, mostly speaking a Romance or Gallo-Brythonic language’. This may derive ultimately from the Continental ethnic name Völcae.) There is no evidence that medieval Brythonic and Gaelic speakers recognized their special linguistic kinship; this was discovered by early comparative philologists such as the Scot George Buchanan (in his Rerum Scoticarum Historia, 1582) and the Welshman Edward Lhuyd (in his Archaeologia Britannica, 1707). The modern Romantic idea of a pan-Celtic ethnic unity and “Celtic national character” has had some influence even in the Celtic-speaking countries, but really derives from foreign works such as Ernest Renan’s La Poésie des races celtiques (1854) and Matthew Arnold’s The Study of Celtic Literature (1866).

The linguistic term “Celtic” derives from the usage of ancient and early medieval Greek and Latin writers, who only use it of Continental Celtic languages; for example, as late as the ninth century, Heiric of Auxerre, Vita S. Germani I.353, explains the place-name Augustidunum as meaning ‘Augusti mons’ in Celtica lingua. Celtica lingua, in fact, seems to have been equivalent to Gallica lingua, the term used, for example, in the sixth century by Venantius Fortunatus, who explained the old Gaulish place-name Vernemetis as “fanum ingens” (‘great temple’) (Carmina I.ix.9–10). Because close ethnic and linguistic similarities between Gaul and Britain had been noted by writers from Tacitus (Agricola, 11) down to the Renaissance, it seemed reasonable to early modern scholars to apply the term “Celtic” to Brythonic as well. Thence it was extended to the languages of Ireland and Scotland, on comparative philological grounds, even though the Insular Celtic languages may never have been called “Celtic” in Antiquity (Sims-Williams 1998; cf. Blom 2009).

Despite its dubious origin, the term “Celtic” remains a useful label for a distinct family of IE languages. The phonological and lexical similarities between Gaulish, Brythonic and Gaelic are illustrated by the above forms Augustidunum (i.e. Gaul. *-dūnon) and Vernemetis (i.e. Gaul. *Wer-nemeton). With the first compare OIr. dún ‘fort’, OBret. din gl. ‘arx’, Corn. dyn, OW din (note /uː/ > /u/ > /i/ in Brythonic). These Celtic cognates are distinct from the Germanic cognates such as OEng. tūn (> Eng. town) in not showing the effect of Grimm’s Law (/d/ > /t/; see p. 20, 392–393). With the intensive prefix Ver- ‘ingens’ compare OIr. for < *wor- < *wer- and OWCB guor- < *wor-
< *wer- (Subdivision, p. 358). These cognate forms differ from IE cognates such as Gr. ὑπερ in showing the well-known Common Celtic loss of IE /p/, i.e. *uper > *wer-.
Lastly, Gaul. nemeton ‘fanum’ is probably related to Lat. nemus, Gr. νέμων ‘grove’, but the dental formation is only paralleled within Celtic, for example, OIr. nemed [nemer] (where μ represents a nasal bilabial fricative and cf. p. 367) glossing sacellum ‘sanctuary’ < *neμeþan < *nemeton, and Old Breton personal names in -nemet [nemed] and Old Welsh ones in -nymet [nemæd], both < British nemeton. This formation is already seen in the Celtic name *Nemetios in an Etruscan inscription of the fifth century BC at Genoa: MI NEMETIEŚ ‘I am [the tomb] of Nemetios’ (de Simone 1980).

Origins

The original “homeland” of the Celtic speakers is unknown – but in any case the simplistic concept of a “homeland” is of limited validity, both in terms of ethnogenesis and in terms of language origins: a people may comprise diverse ethnic elements, and a language may derive from various sources (e.g. the English are ethnically both Celtic and Germanic, and the IE element in English comes via Latin and French as well as from Germanic). There are three main approaches to the problem.

Archaeological approaches have failed to locate the first speakers of Celtic. Archaeologists used to associate Celtic speech with either the early, so-called Hallstatt Iron Age culture or the later, so-called La Tène, Iron Age culture, or with both (see the maps in Powell 1980: 48, 115; cf. Mallory 1989: 96–107). While it is likely that Celtic speakers were found in these Hallstatt/La Tène areas, as in later centuries, we can rarely equate language with material remains: a correlation between La Tène finds and Celtic speech may work quite well in eastern Europe (Falileyev 2014), but it does not work in Spain or northern Italy, where Celtic inscriptions fail to correlate with La Tène material. More recent archaeologists, dissociating Celtic from the above Iron Age cultures, have speculated that a form of IE was already spoken in north-western Europe by 4000 BC and gradually developed into Celtic in situ (this phase began with Renfrew 1987: 249; cf. Meid 1989, Mallory 1989: 274). This extreme view is possible only provided that (it is a massive proviso) we can believe that communications over the four millennia BC would have allowed many parallel developments to take place in the Late IE and Early Celtic dialects. The fact is that we can only speculate about when Indo-European and then Celtic were first spoken on the Atlantic seaboard, including Britain and Ireland. The latest possible date for Celtic reaching Ireland is the first century AD (just before the Celtic names attested in Ptolemy’s Geography), and this has indeed been proposed as near the actual date (Schrijver 2014: 81). Archaeology can neither disprove nor confirm this proposal, and so far no light has been cast on these problems by ancient (or modern) DNA (Sims-Williams 2012a).

A second approach to the problem is to examine the references to Keltoi, Celtae, Galatae, etc. by Greek and Latin writers. There are several problems here: (a) These ethnic labels, which are of uncertain etymology (Sims-Williams 2011), may not always correspond to our modern linguistic use of the term Celtic (see p. 353 above). (b) Mediterranean observers may not have distinguished clearly between barbarian peoples such as Celtae and Germani, and probably simplified the true situation, especially at first (just as even today the French tend apply the term Anglais to all the inhabitants of Britain). (c) There are very few references to “Celts” before 400 BC, the period when their violent expansion into Italy, the Balkans, Greece and Turkey began to bring them to the serious attention of Mediterranean writers. Earlier Greek writers associate them variously with Spain (the Marseilles periplus in the sixth century BC, if correctly reported in Avienus’ Ora maritima), with the hinterland of Marseilles (Massilia) (Hecataeus of Miletus, c. 500), and with the far west of Europe,
including the source of the Danube (!) in Pyrene = (?) Pyrenees (Herodotus, c. 450). (See Powell 1980: 11–15, Schmidt 1986a: 15, Tovar 1986: 79–80, Sims-Williams 2016.) Obviously these Greek writers were chiefly familiar with the Celts nearest to them, but there may well have been peoples calling themselves “Celts”, or who were called “Celts” by others, in northern Europe too. As we cannot prove this, however, the early ethnographical testimonies are of limited help in defining the “Celtic” area of Europe before 400 BC. It used to be thought significant that Avienus’ names for the inhabitants of Ireland (Hierini, see Consonantism, p. 353) and Britain (Albiones cf. MW elvyd ‘world’ < *albyo-, cognate with Lat. albus ‘white’, etc.) had specifically Celtic etymologies. We cannot be sure that these names originated in the British Isles, however, and anyway their linguistic Celticity is uncertain (Sims-Williams 1998: 20–21, Schrijver 2014: 78).

The third approach to the problem is to examine the distribution of apparently Celtic personal, place- and ethnic names (Sims-Williams 2007a, Raybould & Sims-Williams 2009, Falileyev et al. 2010) and the distribution of Celtic-language inscriptions, coin legends, graffiti and so on. Here, too, there are serious obstacles: (a) such data are of course chiefly recorded in the vicinity of Mediterranean cultures, where writing systems developed (on the orthographies of the Celtic languages see Russell 1995: 197–230 and de Hoz 2007); and (b) they mostly belong to the period shortly before the Christian era or still later, too late, that is, to shed light on the areas in which Celtic speech originated.
Position within IE

The position of Celtic among the IE languages was approached in various ways during the twentieth century (cf. Schmidt 1979: 197). (1) Pokorny, Wagner and others emphasized Celtic’s divergence from the IE model and explored the possibilities of substratum or “areal” influences from non-IE languages, for example, Semitic and Hamitic, mostly on the vague basis of typology (see Greene 1966, Eska 2010b, Broderick 2013). Regrettably, too little is known about the early history of the non-IE languages with which Celtic-speakers were in contact, for example, the language of the non-Celtic Pictish inscriptions in Scotland (Jackson 1980) or Aquitanian/Basque in France and Spain. (2) In reacting to this trend, Dillon, Watkins, Meid and others stressed the degree to which Celtic could be explained by “forward reconstruction” from IE (Watkins 1962: 7); but at the same time they regarded Celtic as particularly archaic, preserving hypothetical IE features lost in other less “marginal” IE dialects (e.g. the original distribution of primary and secondary verbal endings, Personal Endings, p. 372). (3) Reacting in turn to this, scholars such as Rix and Cowgill argued that the peculiarities of Celtic could mostly be explained as internal developments and did not require significant modification of the traditional IE model reconstructed on the basis of Indo-Iranian and Greek (see McCone 1986: 222–223). (4) Other linguists still insisted “on the high importance of Old Irish and other genetically western branches for the reconstruction of proto-Indo-European” (Hamp 1987). Probably there is truth in all these approaches.
Celtic cannot be grouped with any other branch in an IE subdialect, unless arguably with Italic. The long-held theory of “Italo-Celtic” has had periods out of favour (see Watkins 1966, Schmidt 1991) but remains resilient (see Eska 2010a: 22, Weiss 2012, Schrijver 2015). Some of the similarities, such as the retention of the mediopassive in -r (shared with Hittite and Tocharian), can be regarded as shared archaisms. Others, such as the apparent equivalence of the Latin future in -bo and the Old Irish f-future, may be illusory (Future Stem, p. 375). Others, such as the o-stem genitive singular in -i (also in Messapic, but not found in Celtiberian (p. 360) or Osco-Umbrian), and superlatives of the type Osc. nessimas ‘proximae’: Gaul. neðdamon (gen. pl.), OIr. nessam, OBret. nesham ‘nearest’, may be due to diffusion over the long period during which Italic and Celtic speakers lived side by side (cf. Eska 2010b: 546). (In fact, the Italic influence on Celtic has never ceased, owing to continual borrowings from Latin, which have had a fundamental influence on Celtic word formation, as well as supplying many loan words.)

The shortage of striking Italo-Celtic phonological developments (e.g. Watkins 1966, Zair 2012: 271) has been seen as a strong argument against the Italo-Celtic theory.

There is much less evidence for any deep connection between early Celtic and Germanic, despite the fact that they were spoken in close proximity by the time of Julius Caesar and Tacitus. There are no shared innovations in phonology and morphology, and the number of significant lexical correspondences was formerly exaggerated (see Campanile 1970, Evans 1981, Polomé 1983, Schmidt 1984, 1986b: 205–206, Schumacher 2009). According to the minimal approach of Evans (1981: 248), only about a dozen early Germanic words are certainly borrowed from Celtic, for example, Goth. reiks ‘ruler’: Gaul. -rīx < IE *rēgs (cf. Chapter 1); Goth. eisarn ‘iron’: Gaul. Isarnus (personal name), OIr. iarnn, W haearn (< *h)ar(h)arn-) < *isarno-; OHG ledar ‘leather’: OIr. lethar, W lledr < Celt. *lētro- < IE *pl(e)-tro- (cf. Lat. pellis, etc.). The Insular Celtic languages were, of course, influenced by Germanic through English at a later stage, and there is also a slight Old Norse element.

The fact is that Celtic shares some isoglosses with almost all other IE languages, and these can be selected to support many different theories (cf. Schmidt 1985, 1986b: 202–206, Stalmaszczyk & Witzczak 1995). Similarly, scholars wishing to stress the peripheral and/or archaic nature of Celtic can and have noticed certain remarkable retentions, for example, masculine and feminine forms of the numerals ‘three’ and ‘four’ in Modern Welsh: tri chi ‘three dogs’, tair cath ‘three cats’; pedwar ci ‘four dogs’, pedair cath ‘four cats’. Generalizations about the affiliations of Celtic and about its archaic or innovative tendencies are usually subjective, lacking a statistical basis. Statistical attempts to compare the IE languages on the basis of “core vocabulary” (Elsie 1990: 318) or of occurrences under Pokorny’s roots (Bird 1982: 119–120) are open to objections, but do agree on Celtic’s closeness to Germanic and (to a lesser extent) to Latin/Italic, and a phonological link between the three, attributed to some version of Dybo’s Law, has been seen in the pre-tonic vowel shortening exemplified by OIr. fer, OEng. wer, Lat. uir ‘man’ versus Skr. vīrá- (e.g. Matasović 2012). Some form of the hypothesis of “Late Western Indo-European” (Meid 1968: 53) could explain such convergence. A more selective and rigorous comparison favours an especial closeness to Italic (see Eska 2010a: 22).

**Subdivision**

The internal subdivision of the Celtic languages has not yet been agreed by scholars; either the data are inadequate, or the reality is more complex than a simple genetic model would allow.

A traditional division distinguishes “P Celtic”, in which IE *k* > *p, and “Q Celtic”, in which *k* remained: Gaelic and Celtiberian are Q Celtic, whereas Brythonic, Lepontic
and most (but perhaps not all) Gaulish material is P Celtic. In view of the originally allophonic nature of the *kw/*p alternation in Celtic (Consonantism, p. 363), most linguists would now agree that “the ‘isogloss’ between P-Celtic and Q-Celtic is structurally trivial” (Watkins 1966: 32 n. 7, following Hamp 1958: 211). Nevertheless, the P/Q division has had a great influence on archaeological speculation, and “P” and “Q” remain useful labels for the important and valid distinction between Brythonic (or possibly “Gallo-Brythonic”) and Gaelic.

Some linguists use the term “Insular Celtic” (see Introduction, p. 352) in a more than geographical sense, emphasizing a special relationship between Gaelic and Brythonic (Greene 1966, McCone 1986: 262; cf. Evans 1988: 219). It is true that these groups share certain important developments – such as the development of morphophonemic mutations of initial consonants (Consonantism, p. 364), the system of absolute and conjunct verbal endings (Personal Endings, p. 372) and periphrastic constructions with preposition + verbal noun such as OIr. *oc precept, W *yn pregethu ‘preaching’ (Sims-Williams 2015) – but it could be argued that these developments might also have occurred in Gaulish if this were attested after AD 500 (Sims-Williams 1984: 147–148). Logically, it is impossible to establish a genetic relationship between two dialects on the basis of a shared innovation occurring after all other dialects have died out. An opposing approach, which still leads to the same negative conclusion, is to argue that a feature like the absolute/conjunct system occurs in Insular Celtic but not (apparently) in Continental Celtic because the Continental dialects were less archaic, having drifted towards Greek and Latin, or even Late IE innovations (Meid 1986: 120–121). The fundamental problem, however, is the chronological disjuncture between our evidence of Insular and Continental Celtic. A single example illustrates this. We noted above (Introduction, p. 353) that *wer (< *uper) became *wor in Brythonic and Gaelic, whereas Fer- is attested in Gaulish. Is this innovation an Insular Celtic isogloss (Schrijver 1995: 129, 464)? The change *wer > *wor (due to influence of *wo < *upo ‘under’ or simply to rounding after /w/, cf. Evans 1967: 279) must in fact be late in Brythonic, since in AD 725 Bede, Chronica maiora 434, records the name of a fifth-century Briton as Uertigernus (> later Uortigern, Gwrtheyrn). As the change *wer > *wor did not occur before the fifth century AD in Brythonic, it is possible that it would also have occurred in fifth-century Gaulish as well, if this was attested – for there is evidence of shared phonetic developments between British and Late Gaulish (Fleuriot 1978). Moreover, /wer/ > /wor/ might occur quite independently; for example, there is evidence for it in Spain (Tovar 1986: 89).

The term “Gallo-Brythonic” emphasizes the similarities in language (e.g. name formations) between Gaulish and British, which were already noted by ancient writers (Introduction, p. 353). It is debatable whether these similarities are due to the many ethnic movements across the English Channel (already mentioned by Julius Caesar) or go back to a genuine “Gallo-Brythonic” dialect of Celtic, genetically distinct from Gaelic, Celtiberian, Lepontic and so on (cf. Evans 1988: 220, Fleuriot 1988, Lambert 1994: 17–19, Schrijver 1995: 463–465). The evidence for both the “Gallo-Brythonic” and the “Insular Celtic” hypotheses can be undermined by postulating “areal” developments (Sims-Williams 2007b: 1–42, Stifter 2008, Eska 2010a: 24–25, Lambert 2010).

An ambitious attempt at a Celtic family tree by Schmidt (1988: 235), combining the ideas of “P Celtic” and “Gallo-Brythonic” with a distinction between an “em/en- language” (i.e. Gaelic), which diverged very early, and the “am/an- languages” (i.e. Celtiberian and most or all the P Celtic languages), failed to convince (cf. Tovar 1986: 84 n. 3, Evans 1983: 29–31, McCone 1991: 22, 48–50, 161). It was based on the treatment of IE /m̥/ and /n̥/ in initial position and before plosives, e.g. IE *m̥bʰi ‘about’ > Clb. *mPʰᵊ,
Gaul., ambi-, W am versus OIr. imb (see further de Bernardo Stempel 1987: 38, 51, 121). A secondary Gaelic development of */-an/ > */-en/* was suggested by Cowgill (1975: 49), and some scholars postulated a Proto-Celtic allophone [æ] before nasals (e.g. Hamp 1965: 225, Joseph 1990: 126 n. 10). Mecone (1996: 67–79) argued convincingly that /m̥/ and /n̥/ gave CC /am, an/ and that raising of the /a/ to /e/ or /i/ occurred in Primitive Irish (cf. Schrijver 1993).

The earliest connected written material in Celtic languages comes, as would be expected, from the Mediterranean world – Italy, France and Spain – in the second half of the first millennium BC (slightly earlier in the case of some northern Italian inscriptions: Uhlich 2007: 379). For other areas at this period there are only place-, personal and ethnic names (e.g. Sims-Williams 2007a, 2012b), but even these are of some value. For example, judging by the onomastic evidence, the language of the Galatians in Asia Minor was similar to Gaulish (Eska 2013a). Again, there is obvious Gaulish material in the “Thracian” and other eastern onomastic corpora (Falileyev 2009, 2013, 2014). Here, however, I shall concentrate on the Celtic languages from which more than names and odd words are known (see also Eska & Evans 2010).

Lepontic is the name given to the language of inscriptions first found within a 50 km radius of Lugano, in north-western Italy and Switzerland, and arguably distinct from Cisalpine Gaulish (Lejeune 1970, Karl & Stifter 2007: 45–73, Uhlich 2007, Stifter 2008: 285–286, Eska 2010a: 24, Eska & Evans 2010: 35). They date from the sixth to the first century BC and are written in the Lugano alphabet. This alphabet does not distinguish between /p t k/ and /b d g/ and avoids double letters; for example, the Lepontic personal name ANOKOPOKIOS corresponds to Gaul. Andocombogios. Here /nd/ > /nn/ is a Lepontic peculiarity, but the suppression of the nasal in KO (m)P may be purely graphic. Like Gaulish (Consonantism, p. 364), Lepontic distinguishes between two sibilants, both seen in IŚOS [?isos] < *istos ‘that (man)’ in an inscription from Vergiate, now in the archaeological museum in Milan (Lejeune 1970: 444–452, Eska & Mercado 2005): PELKUI PRUIAM TEU KARITE IŚOS KALITE PALAM = ? Belgūi brawyam Dēwū garite, īsos kalite palam = ?‘Dēwū enclosed the construction for Belgos; he erected the stone.’ The word for ‘construction’, the accusative of *bruyā, recalls Gaul. brīvā ‘bridge’ < *brēwā, but the closest cognates are in Germanic, for example, OS bruggia ‘bridge’ < *brūw-yo.

The word possibly meaning ‘stone’, palā, which is common in Lepontic inscriptions, is of unknown etymology. The verbal stem *gar- may derive < *gr:- IE *gwr- ‘to enclose’, as in OIr. gort ‘field’, W garth ‘enclosure’ (but cf. Hamp 1991); and *kal- may derive < *kl:- IE *kellH- ‘to raise, rise’, cf. Gaul. celicnon ‘building’, Lat. collis, OEng. hyl ‘hill’ and possibly Celtī ‘?exalted ones’. The dental preterites are obscure, but seem to be confirmed by the Gaulish verbs KARNITUS (3 sg.), KARNITUS (3 pl.) found farther south in Gaulish inscriptions in Lugano script at Todi and at San Bernadino di Briona (Eska 2007/8). In the Todi inscription, which is bilingual, KARNITUS corresponds to LOCALIT ET STATVIT.

Celtiberian is the only Hispano-Celtic language known from inscriptions as well as proper names. (The Celtiberity of the Lusitianian and “Tartesian” inscriptions is generally rejected.) The “Celtiberian” inscriptions come from north-eastern Spain, in exactly the same region that the Celtiberi are located by ancient writers (de Hoz 2007, 2010–). The earlier inscriptions, such as the most famous one from Botorríta 20 km south of Zaragoza (c. 100 BC), are written in the native Iberian script (Eska 1989, Eichner 1989: 23–55 (= Karl & Stifter 2007: 9–44), Meid 1994a, Prósper 2008, de Bernardo Stempel 2010). This did not distinguish voiced and voiceless stops, like the Lugano alphabet, and it had the added ambiguity of using syllabic characters for these sounds (Pa, Ca, Ta, Pe, Ce, Te, etc.); e.g. the Ti symbol could denote /tu/, /di/, /u/ or /d/. Its s = /s/, but
s = /z/ or /ð/ by lenition of *s and *d according to Villar (1995); for further theories see Stifter 2008: 271–273. Inevitably, then, interpretations of Celtiberian writings are disputed. Later inscriptions are in the Roman alphabet, which should be less ambiguous; however, opinions still diverge. For example, Ködderitzsch (1985) offered the following reading and interpretation of the first- or second-century AD inscription from Peñalba de Villastar (cf. Villar 1991): ENIOROSEI VTA TIGNO TIATVNEI [-MEI?] ERECAIAS TO LVGVEI ARAIANOM COMEINV ENIOROSEI EQVEISVQVE OGRIS OLOGAS TOGIAS SISTAT LVGVEI TIASO TOGIAS ‘To Enior(o)sis and to Tiatiū of Tiginos we bestow furrows, and to Lugus a field; to Enior(o)sis and to Equaesos, Ogris submits the protections of the fertile-land, to Lugus the protections of the scorched-land.’ Meid (1994a and 1994b) and others, however, offer completely different interpretations (see Jordán Colera 2004: 375–390; de Bernardo Stempel 2008). Thus, Meid (1994a: 36–37) translates: ‘To the mountain-dweller as well as to . . . , to Lugus of the Araians, we have gone on a field-procession (reading TRECAIAS); for the mountain-dweller and horse-god, for Lugus, the head of the community has put up a covering (i.e., a house or a hall), (also) for the thiasus a covering’. And Prósper (2002) has ‘In Orosis and as far as the Tigino reaches, to Lugu we consecrate the fields. In Orosis and in Equeiso, the hills as well as the ploughed fields and the houses are consecrated to Lugu, that is, the houses of the bounded area’. Notable phonological points here include:

1. The loss of /p/ (if Ködderitzsch’s etymologies are correct) in (a) er(e)cai(a) ‘furrow’ < IE *perk- (cf. W rych, Lat. porca, Eng. furrow); (b) ol(o)ga- ‘fertile-land’ < IE *polg(h)ā, *polkā (cf. Gallo-Latin olca > Fr. ouche, Eng. fallow < Gmc *falga); and (c) tiaso ‘burnt land’ < *teposo- (cf. OIr. tīse ‘hot’ < *tepe-, Lat. tepēō);
2. The retention of IE /kʷ/ in -que ‘and’ (Lep. -pe, arch. OIr. -ch) – this is used here alongside the connective uta, cognate with Skr. uta and OBr. ut (Eska 1990, Sims-Williams 2007b: 234–235);
3. The apparent (orthographical?) retention of IE /ey/ in com-(m)ei-mu, ‘we bestow’ < IE *mey- according to Ködderitzsch (cf. Skr. mayate ‘exchanges’, Lat. mūnus < *moy-nes-, OIr. moín ‘treasure’ < *moy-ni-, MW mwyn ‘value’ < *mey-no-) or < IE *h₁ey- ‘go’ according to Meid, Prósper and de Bernardo Stempel;
4. The retention of final /m/ (not > /n/) in the acc. sg. ar(a)ianom (‘field’, according to Ködderitzsch, cf. OIr. airim, MW arduaf ‘I plough’ < *ary-, or, according to de Bernardo Stempel, a neuter adjective related to W iawn ‘just’) – Meid’s gen. pl. ethnonym in -om (not -um!) is unlikely;
5. In sistat ‘puts’ < *sistāt (or 3 pl. *sistanti according to Prósper) the apocopate of primary *-i, as in Lat. sistit (Personal Endings, p. 372–373) – although some analyse sistat as if = *sistaz < old secondary *sistat;
6. Epenthesis in er(e)cai(a), ol(o)ga, ar(a)ianom, and Enior(o)sei (Eska 1996).


Gaulish inscriptions begin in about the third century BC, but the bulk of material comes from the first century BC to the second century AD (Stifter 2012). The earlier material is mostly written in Greek script, with a few texts in the Lugano script from Cisalpine Gaul. The later material is mostly in Roman letters. To the inscriptions on stone which have long been known can now be added important long texts on metal plates, notably from Chamalières, Larzac and Chartres (Lambert 2002, Viret et al. 2013); these are
transforming, and confusing, our understanding of the Gaulish language(s). The following example of Gaulish is a stone inscription from Alise-Sainte-Reine (first century AD):

\texttt{MARTIALIS DANNOTALI IEVRV VCYETE SOSIN CELICNON ETIC GOBEDBI DVGIIONTIIO VCYETIN IN ALISIIA}


Apart from two curse-tablets from Roman Bath (Mullen 2007), \textit{British} and its successors, Primitive Welsh, Primitive Cornish and Primitive Breton, are known only from proper names in inscriptions and Latin texts, which provide, nevertheless, detailed information about phonological developments (Jackson 1953, Sims-Williams 1990, 1991, 2003). From c. AD 800 onwards we have manuscript glosses, memoranda and so on in Old Welsh, Old Cornish and Old Breton (Ternes 2011). (In addition, some Welsh poetry may be as early as the sixth century, although transmitted in late manuscripts.) The orthography of Old Welsh, Old Cornish and Old Breton (OWCB) is based on a pronunciation of Latin found in Britain, the main feature of which was that medially Latin consonants underwent “lenition” (\textit{Consonantism}, p. 364), so that Latin words like \textit{medicus, decimatus} were pronounced [meðiŋəh], [degiμaːdəh]. Consequently, similar values were assigned to letters in writing OWCB; for example, [degμed] (‘tenth’ < *dekatemotos (see Table 7.1 on p. 353)) would be written \textit{decmet}.

\textit{Primitive Irish} (McCone 1994, 1996, 2005) is known from proper names in inscriptions and Latin texts, and its phonological development is clear in outline (McCone 1996, Sims-Williams 2003: 296–301). Most Irish inscriptions of the fifth, sixth and seventh centuries AD are in the Ogham alphabet (McManus 1991, Ziegler 1994, Sims-Williams 2007b). This is well suited to carving on wood and stone, since only straight strokes are used, e.g. //\(/ = /k^\epsilon/, /// = /k/. The phonology of the earliest Ogham inscriptions is archaic, for example, distinguishing between /k/ and /k^\epsilon/ and (probably) between /g/ and /g^\epsilon/, and showing the old case endings. The earliest extant manuscripts containing \textit{Old Irish} (glosses and short texts) are eighth century, but it is probable that some texts extant in late manuscripts were written down towards the end of the sixth century. Most Old Irish material is written in an orthography based on the British pronunciation of Latin described above (for exceptions see Harvey 1989, Russell 1995: 224); hence, medial and final [b d g] are written \textit{p t c}, and medial and final [β δ γ μ] are written \textit{b d g m}. Medially and finally double consonants may be used to avoid ambiguity; e.g. [b] may be written \textit{bb}, and [k] may be written \textit{cc}. Palatalized consonants are indicated by flanking vowels, e.g. \textit{macc} [mak], \textit{maicc} [mak], \textit{beirid} [bεriδ̃], \textit{feraib} [fεrəβ]. In modern edited texts, diphthongs are generally distinguished by placing the length mark on the \textit{i}; e.g. \textit{ai} and \textit{ui} are diphthongs (the former also written \textit{ae/oi/œ}), but \textit{ái} and \textit{úi} denote [a.] and [u.] followed by palatalized consonants (in the phonetic transcription ³ marks a palatalized consonant, as in OIr. \textit{nemed} [nεn³], \textit{Introduction}, p. 354).

\textbf{THE PHONOLOGY OF COMMON CELTIC}

The following features would generally be accepted as defining “Celtic”. For ease in consulting handbooks (e.g. Lewis & Pedersen 1961), I give IE sounds in their traditional reconstructions without prejudice to the actual phonetic reality of /b/, etc. Also, not much

**Vocalism**


| TABLE 7.2 THE COMMON CELTIC VOWEL SYSTEM |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| i: i                            | u u: u                        |
| e                               | o                             |
| a                               |                               |
| a:                              |                               |

was filled by the development /ei/ > /eː/ (cf. Gr. *steikhein* ‘to walk’: Early OIr. *-tēgot* [t̚j̚eːgɔd] ‘they go’ = Later OIr. *-tīagat* [t̚j̚i交代d]), but /ei/ > /eː/ may not have been completed in Common Celtic. (See p. 362 for Clb. *ei*, and note dat. *-ei* in Lepontic as well.) The other gap was filled in Gaelic by /eu au ou/ > /oː/ (later alternating with /uː/) and in Brythonic by /eu ou/ > /oː/ (later >/uː/), but in Common Celtic /eu ou au/ remained diphthongs, as did /ai/ and /oi/. There was, however, an early tendency, seen already in Lepontic and Gaulish, for /eu/ > /ou/, e.g. *teutā* ‘people’ > *toua* (> OIr. *túath* [tuaθ], MW *tut* [tuːd]).

The semi-vowels /w/ and /y/ remained in Common Celtic, and indeed survive to this day in Welsh. Vocalic /m, n, r, l/ developed as vowel + consonant (/am, em, an, en, ar, al/) or consonant + vowel (/ri, li, li/), depending on context (see de Bernando Stempel 1987, McConne 1996: 67–79); there is often apparent divergence between /em en/ in Gaelic and /am, an/ elsewhere (Subdivision, p. 358). The so-called long resonants, that is, vocalic /m, n, r, l/ + laryngeal /H/, developed mostly as /maː, naː, raː, laː/, e.g. IE *ǵr̥H-no- > OIr. *grán*, W *grawn* ‘grain’ (: Lat. *grānum*). The derivation of reflexes with short /a/ is debated: for example, does OIr. *tarathar*, W *taradr* ‘auger’ < *tara-tro-n come from *t̚raH-*, or is tara- due to vowel harmony in *tera-tro-n coming from *terH-? The latter is probable. (See Joseph 1982, de Bernardo Stempel 1987: 43–45, Lindeman 1988, Schrijver 1995: 87.)

**Consonantism**

/m, n, r, 1, s/ remained basically unchanged (on s see Stifter 2012). Final -m became -n in most Celtic languages, but not in Lepontic, Celtibarian (p. 359–360) and some
Gaulish. As in other IE languages, /s/ had an allophone [z]; this is not differentiated from S in Continental Celtic writings, but in Insular Celtic [z] > [ʃ], e.g. Gaul. TASGO: OIr. Tadg (personal name). As in Armenian, IE /p/ was completely lost, apparently via /f/ (Eska 2013b); it had already been reduced to /h/ or /zero/ when classical writers borrowed the name of the Hercynia silva in central Germany (: IE *perkw*us ‘oak’, cf. Evans 1979: 531–532). Another commonly cited example is the classical name for Ireland/the Irish, *Ierne/Hierni*, but it is doubtful whether this name is Celtic and cognate with Skr. *pīvarī*, Gr. πίειρα ‘fat, rich’ (Schrijver 2014: 77–78). Among the plosives there is no trace of an original palatal series (Gaelic palatalization arose much later, p. 367), and the only trace of the aspirate/unaspirate distinction is between the labiovelars /gʷ/ > CC /b/ and /gʷh/ > CC /gʷ/ (Cowgill 1980, Sims-Williams 1981, 1995). For IE /gʷ/ note OIr. béo, W byw ‘living’: Lat. uūus; OIr. imb ‘butter’: Lat. unguen; the only certain exception is before /y/, which delabialized /gʷ/; e.g. OIr. níg [nìγǝδǝ] ‘washes’ < *nigʷ*-ye-ti and W gíau ‘sinews’: Ved. j(i)yā- ‘bowstring’, Av. jiiā- ‘bowstring, sinew’, Gr. βίος ‘bow’. For IE /gʷh/ note OIr. gonaíd ‘wounds’, W gwanaf ‘I wound’: Gr. φόνος ‘murder’, ἕξειν ‘I strike’, Hitt. kuenzi, Skr. hanti ‘kills’. By the time of Old Irish, /gʷ/ was delabialized, but there is probably an old symbol for /gʷ/ in the Ogham alphabet (p. 361). In Brythonic, initial /gʷ-/ > /gw-/, probably directly and not via /w-/ in view of the early Welsh inscription GVANI, which predates the general change of IE /w-/ > W /gw-/ (Sims-Williams 1995). In Gaulish /gʷ-/ > /gw-/ is possible, if the first-person singular verb uediumi (?) uedii mi in the Chamalières inscription is cognate with W gweddi ‘prayer’, OIr. guide ‘prayer’ < ?*gʷedǝy, Gr. ποϑέω ‘I wish’, Av. jaiδiia- etc. (Cowgill 1980). The fate of non-initial /gʷ/ < /gʷh/ is debated. In Welsh it appears to have had the same result intervocically as /g/, i.e. loss (e.g. MW de ‘burns’ < IE *dʰegʷh-). The words nyf ‘snow’ and deifio ‘to burn’ (f= [v]) are probably wrongly cited in the handbooks as reflexes of IE intervocalic /gʷh/; nyf probably shows a special treatment of gʷh after /n/ (cf. Lat. ninguis), while deifio is not from IE *dʰegʷh- at all (Sims-Williams 1995).

The above data are best explained by the following chronology (cf. Sims-Williams 1981: 227), starting from the system

| TABLE 7.3 PRE-CELTIC STOPS |
| (p) t k kʷ |
| b d g gʷ |
| bʰ dʰ gʰ gʰ |

Common Celtic merged /gʷ/ and /b/ as /b/. Then de-aspiration, occurring throughout the system (bʰ/ > /b/, /dʰ/ > /d/, etc.), created a new /gʷʰ/ < /gʰ/. The relative chronology of /p/ > /zero/ is uncertain, but it was the gap in the system resulting from the loss of /p/, which made possible the allophonic alternation between “Q Celtic” with [kʷ] and “P Celtic” with [p₂] < [kʷ] (Subdivision, p. 357):

| TABLE 7.4 COMMON CELTIC STOPS |
| [p₂] t k [kʷ] |
| b d g gʰ |

(p. 361)
The most interesting combinatory change among the consonants was the development of a new dental phoneme, written \( \delta \delta \), \( ss \) and so on, in Gaulish (and apparently with special symbols in Lepontic, p. 359), from /d/ + /t/, /t/ + /t/, /t/ + /s/, etc. (Evans 1967: 410–420). Note also a general development of /xt/ < /pt, kt/. Structurally, a more important development was the widespread rise – as in Germanic – of intervocalic geminate consonants contrasting with single consonants in the same position (Kuryłowicz 1960: 259–273, de Bernardo Stempel 1989). Such geminates are often shown in Gaulish, but are excluded by the scripts used for Lepontic and Celtiberian. In Insular Celtic geminates developed differently from single consonants, for example, OIr. maicc [mak] ‘of a son’ < Ogham MAQQI = *mak* say, but MW meib ‘sons’ < *mapi < *mak* say; the single /p/ is “lenited” (i.e. voiced), but the geminate /k* kw/ is simplified. In addition to the phonemic distinction between /VCV/ and /VCCV/, there arose, probably already in Common Celtic, an allophonic distribution of [C] and [CC] in other environments (Harvey 1984). The evidence for this comes partly from the phonemicization of reflexes of these allophones in Insular Celtic (Consonantism, p. 365, 367), partly from the analogy of Romance, which may reflect Celtic substratum influence here (Martinet 1952; cf. Villar 1995). Ultimately, this was of great importance in external sandhi, giving rise to the Insular Celtic system of initial mutations (Russell 1995: 231–257, Sims-Williams 2007b: 43–58). For example, *esyo kattos ‘his cat’ > OIr. a chatt [ə xat] (lenition), MW y gath [i ga:þ] (lenition), but *esyās kkatus ‘her battle’ > OIr. a cath [ə kaþ] (no mutation), MW y chat [i xa:d] (spirant mutation). A further set of mutations was produced after old nasals (Consonantism, p. 366), e.g. OIr. a catt [ə gat] ‘their cat’, MW vyg cath [və ŋha:þ] ‘my cat’. These initial mutations, which began as sandhi phenomena, were grammaticalized in Insular Celtic, for example, as markers of relative clauses (Ó hUiginn 1986).

The accent in later British fell on the penultimate syllable, which became the ultimate syllable after the loss of final syllables c. 500. A full range of vowels was therefore preserved in the final syllables of OWCB words, whereas pre-tonic vowels tended to have been shortened, reduced or syncopated. (Much later, by c. 900, at least in Welsh (Sims-Williams 2003: 289), the accent shifted from the ultimate to its present position on the penult, except in the Vannetais dialect of Breton.) Schrijver 1995 and Ternes 2011 are the most up-to-date handbooks.

**Vocalism**

IE vowel quantity was at first retained, but by the sixth century AD a new quantity system applied automatically even in stressed syllables; according to this, Primitive Welsh, Cornish and Breton vowels were short in [VCC] syllables and long in [V(C)] syllables (Sims-Williams 1990: 250–260). In stressed syllables, the Common Celtic vowels and diphthongs developed mainly as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
/i/ & > \text{Pr. W } /i(\cdot)/ \text{ (written } \langle y \rangle \text{ in later W), Pr. Corn., Pr. Bret. } /i(\cdot)/ \\
/e/ & > \text{Pr. W/Corn./Bret. } /e(\cdot)/ \\
/a/ & > \text{Pr. W/Corn./Bret. } /a(\cdot)/ \\
/o/ & > \text{Pr. W/Corn./Bret. } /o(\cdot)/ \\
/u/ & > \text{Pr. W/Corn./Bret. } /u(\cdot)/, \text{ also Pr. Corn./Bret. } /o(\cdot)/ \text{ (note: } /u(\cdot)/ \text{ is written } \langle w \rangle \text{ in Welsh, } \langle ou \rangle \text{ in Breton)}
\end{align*}
\]
/iː/ (< IE /eː/ and /iː/) > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /i(ː)/
/eː/ (< CC /ei/) > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /ui/
/aː/ (< IE /aː/ and /oː/) > British /ɔː/ > Pr. W /au/, Pr. Corn./Bret. /o(ː)/
/uː/ (< IE /uː/ and /-oː/) > British /ʊː/ > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /i(ː)/
/au/ > British /ɔː/ > Pr. W /au/, Pr. Corn./Bret. /o(ː)/ (see Schrijver 1995: 195)
/ou/ (< CC /ou/ and /eu/) > British /ɔː/ > /ʊː/ > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /u(ː)/
/ai/ > British /ɛː/ > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /oi/
/oi/ > British /uː/ > Pr. W/Corn./Bret. /u(ː)/

The semi-vowel /w/ had become /gw/ in absolute anlaut by the time of the earliest OWCB (c. 800). Medial /y/ sometimes developed to /ð/.

Consonantism

/s/ tended to become /h/ or /y/ or to disappear. [z] became /ð/, and [x] was vocalized as /y/. (On /gʷ/ see p. 363 above.) Most other consonants suffered the change known as “lenition” in positions where their weaker allophones occurred (cf. p. 364), and there was later a tendency for unlenited voiceless consonants to be spirantized (except in absolute anlaut):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 7.5 BRYTHONIC CONSONANTAL DEVELOPMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[pp]  &gt;  [p]  &gt;  [f]  (Spirantization)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[p]  &gt;  [b]  &gt;  [β]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tt]  &gt;  [t]  &gt;  [h]  (Spirantization)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[t]  &gt;  [d]  &gt;  [δ]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kk]  &gt;  [k]  &gt;  [x]  (Spirantization)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[k]  &gt;  [g]  &gt;  [γ]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bb]  &gt;  [b]  &gt;  [β]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[b]  &gt;  [β]  &gt;  [v]  ([β] later &gt; [v])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dd]  &gt;  [d]  &gt;  [δ]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[d]  &gt;  [g]  &gt;  [γ]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[g]  &gt;  [γ]  &gt;  [y]  ([γ] later lost, or &gt; [y] or [w])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[mm]  &gt;  [m]  &gt;  [ν]  (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[m]  &gt;  [ν]  &gt;  [v]  ([ν] later &gt; [v])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These changes probably took place in three stages: (a) spirantization of /b, d, g, gʷ, m/ (before c. AD 400?); (b) voicing of /p, t, k/ (fifth century?); and (c) spirantization of /p², t², k²/ (sixth century?) (see Sims-Williams 2007b: 14–16, 26, 43–58). Since they occurred in external sandhi, they led to “lenition” (e.g. /k ~ g/) and “spirantization” (e.g. /k ~ x/) as initial mutations (p. 364). The above simplifications of double consonants (except [mm], which followed the pattern of [nn]) were completed before the advent of the new quantity system (Vocalism, p. 364), hence, for example, W cre̩d ‘belief’ < *krēdd- (versus màm(m) ‘mother’ < *màmm-).

THE PHONOLOGY OF GAELIC

The accent in Gaelic fell on the initial syllable of stressed words. A full range of vowels was therefore preserved in this syllable, whereas post-tonic vowels tended to be shortened, reduced or syncopated. For example, in Old Irish there were only two short vowels
in closed unstressed syllables, [ə] and [u] (although the spelling system seems to disguise this). Because Brythonic stress developed very differently (p. 364), the evidence of the two branches is of complementary importance in reconstruction. The best handbook is McCone 1996; cf. Sims-Williams 2003: 296–301.

Vocalism

IE vowel quantity was retained in stressed syllables; in unstressed syllables long vowels were shortened in Primitive Irish, except in final syllables before final /h/ < /ð x s/, and even in these syllables the vowel was eventually shortened, e.g. Celt. *teutās ‘tribes’ > Pr. Ir. *tōþāh > OIr. tūatha [tuaþă]. In stressed syllables, the Common Celtic vowels and diphthongs developed mainly as follows:

- /i/ > OIr. /i/ (if not lowered to /e/ by following low vowel)
- /e/ > OIr. /e/ (if not raised to /i/ by following high vowel)
- /a/ > OIr. /a/
- /o/ > OIr. /o/ (if not raised to /u/ by following high vowel)
- /u/ > OIr. /u/ (if not lowered to /o/ by following low vowel)
- /iː/ (< IE /iː/ and /iː/ > OIr. /iː/)
- /eː/ (< CC /ei/) > OIr. /eː/ alternating with /iː/
- /aː/ (< IE /aː/ and /iː/ > OIr. /aː/)
- /oː/ (< CC /ou/ and /eu/) > OIr. /oː/ alternating with /ua/ and /oi/, though still distinct in most Ogham inscriptions, merged in Old Irish as a diphthong of uncertain value (/oi/?), written áe, ái, óe, oí.

The semi-vowel /w/ became /f/ in absolute anlaut and /v/ after nasals, for example, *wiros > fer ‘man’, *banwos > banb [banv] ‘pig’ (: Gaul. Banuus, W banw); in other positions /w/ was lost, as was /y/, e.g. *yowankos (: W ieuanc) > *(y)o(w)εgah > OIr. oac [oəg] ‘young’.

Consonantism

/s/ tended to become /h/ or to disappear. [z] became /ð/, but [x], written ch, remained in Old Irish. In the Ogham inscriptions /kʷ/ and (probably) /gʷ/ were still distinct from /k/ and /g/, but they had been delabialized by the Old Irish period. Even before the Ogham inscriptions the combinations /nt, nk, nkʷ, ns/ had become /dd, gg, gʷgʷ, ss/, with compensatory lengthening of a preceding /a/ or /e/ to /æː/, e.g. *sentus (: Bret. hent, OHG sind ‘road’) > *seːddus/ > OIr. sét [sːːd] ‘road’ (cf. Ogham personal name SEDANI > OIr. Sétn(a)i; *kʷenkʷe (: Lat. quinque) > /kʷeːɡʷe/ > /koːgʲːe/ > cóic [koːgʲː] ‘five’ (the rounding was due to the labiovelars); *Brigantī (: Skr. brhatī f. ‘exalted one’) > /brigεːddiː/ > /briγεdi/ > Brigit [briγʲːadʲː] (personal name). These changes after nasals also took place in external sandhi, giving rise to the initial nasal mutation, e.g. gen. pl. *wiran tramman > *wira ddrumman > OIr. fer tromm [fʲer drom] ‘of heavy men’. (This mutation was not usually shown in writing.) As in Brythonic, most consonants underwent “lenition” in positions where their weaker allophones occurred (cf. p. 364), but lenition of /t/ and /k/ took a different form in Gaelic:
TABLE 7.6 GAELIC CONSONANTAL DEVELOPMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant</th>
<th>Development</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[tt]</td>
<td>&gt; [t] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>&gt; [b]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kk]</td>
<td>&gt; [k]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>&gt; [x] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[bb]</td>
<td>&gt; [b]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>&gt; [β] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dd]</td>
<td>&gt; [d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>&gt; [ð] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gg]</td>
<td>&gt; [g]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[g]</td>
<td>&gt; [y] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[mm]</td>
<td>&gt; [m]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>&gt; [μ] (Lenition)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gaelic lenition probably took place in two stages: (a) spirantization of /b d g(ʷ)m/; (b) spirantization of /t k(ʷ)/; they cannot be dated precisely, but (b) occurred later than the (fifth-century?) voicing of /p t k/ in British (see Sims-Williams 1990: 233, McCone 1994: 74 = 2005: 42). In external sandhi, lenition resulted in an initial mutation (Consonantism, p. 364). Internally, lenited consonants were often lost with compensatory lengthening, for example, Ogham SAGRAGNI (gen. sg.) > OIr. Sáráin [saːraːn]; Pr. Ir. *eþn- (: W edn < *petnos) > OIr. én ‘bird’. Note that this gave rise to new long vowels in unstressed syllables. Phonemically, the most important other change was the growth of palatalized consonants before front vowels in certain environments (Greene 1973), e.g. *alæys (: Lat. alius, MW eil) > Pr. Ir. *alæiyah > *alæeyah > OIr. aile [alæ] ‘other’. Contrast *kaletos (: W caled ‘hard’) > Pr. Ir. *kaletah > OIr. calad [kalæd] ‘hard’, and note that palatalization had become phonemic at the point when [alæyah] was opposed to [kaletah]. All consonants could be palatalized. On the spelling of palatalized consonants see Old Irish, p. 361.

The typical development of consonants in Insular Celtic can be exemplified by IE *t (and the older handbooks’ *th) as follows: IE *t (and *tʰ) > Celtic /t/; Celtic /t/ allophonically = [tt] and [t]; in Brythonic [tt] > /t/ (absolute anlaut) and /p/ (elsewhere), but [t] > /d/; in Gaelic [tt] > /t/ and /p/, but [t] > /þ/ and /þ/>. Thurneysen (1946: 97) maintained that Old Irish also had u-quality consonants (/tʰ/ etc.), and some favour re-instating his three-way system (Anderson 2014, McCone 2015, versus Jaskuła 2014).

THE MORPHOLOGY OF COMMON CELTIC

In nominal morphology the threefold distinctions in gender (masculine, feminine, neuter) and number (singular, plural, dual) survived from late Indo-European. The neuter was lost in Middle Irish, and only traces remain in Brythonic. The dual is always reinforced by the numeral dā́ ‘two’ in Old Irish and is merely residual in Brythonic, where it is formally identical with the singular or plural, for example, W y gafl ‘the fork’ (< *sindos gablos), y geifl ‘the forks’, Yr Eifl (mountain-name) ‘the (two) forks’: the last two forms imply *sindī gablī (not du. **sindō gablō), but whereas the masculine plural has dropped lenition by analogy with non-lenition after the feminine plural article y < *sindās, the lenition remains in the dual. This is an illustration of “the eviction or replacement of a morph by a new morph only in the former’s primary or secondary function” (Kuryłowicz 1964: 14).

The number of cases is reduced to five in Old Irish, with a “dative” case subsuming the functions of the dative, ablative, locative and instrumental. (Some of these distinctions remain in Celtiberian and Gaulish.) Owing to syncretism, the endings of the “dative” may derive not only from the IE dative, but also from the IE ablative, locative or instrumental.
In Insular Celtic, inflected forms began to be “hypercharacterized” (Schmidt 1974), owing to the functions of the case endings being increasingly subsumed by fixed syntactic structures such as preposition + noun, VSO word order (Syntax, p. 377), noun + dependent genitive (in prose texts) or noun + qualifying adjectival. It is not surprising, then, that case endings were often allowed to remain ambiguous in Old Irish and disappeared altogether in Brythonic, apart from a few fossils, for example, the dative of penn ‘head’ (o-stem) in MW erbyn ‘against, to meet’ < *are pennū = OIr. ar chium ( + gen.) ‘id.’ < *are k*ennū. In Brythonic, nouns (and some adjectives) have only singular and plural. Some plurals are historical, for example, MW mab ‘son’, pl. meib (form used after numerals) < *mapos, -i (cf. OIr. macc, pl. maicc), but many are analogical, e.g. meib(i)on ‘sons’, with -i(on from the old n-stem pl. *-ones. Ahistorical plurals were inevitable in Brythonic wherever there would have been no distinction of number; for example, *donyos, pl. *donyī ‘man’ (< *gdonyos: Gr. χϑόνιος, ‘man’). The Old Irish palatalization in the dative plural points to -ī by *-i(iy, and from instrumental *-ōy, and from instrumental *-ō or ablative *-ōd. The old nominative/vocative plural *-ōs > *-ūs has been replaced by *-i (< pronominal *-oy) in the nominative but survives in its secondary function as vocative. The Old Irish palatalization in the dative plural points to *-īs, an instrumental ending; cf. Gaul. gobedbi (p. 361). The genitive plural feri points to *-om, not *-ūm < *-ōm; probably all long vowels before final nasal were shortened very early in Celtic, before the five long vowels were reduced to three (Cowgill 1975: 49, Jasanoff 1989: 139), although Clb. -um (if = /uːm/ < /oːm/, which is uncertain) may arguably tell against this (cf. Sims-Williams 2007b: 7–14, Eska 2010a: 23, Eska & Evans 2010: 33, 37, 40); the quantities of vowels in these scripts are sometimes guesswork.


### Table 7.7 Nominal Stems in -O-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>voc. fiur</td>
<td>[-r]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen. fiur</td>
<td>[-r]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dative singular -ū(i) may derive from the IE dative *-ōy, and from instrumental *-ō or ablative *-ōd. The old nominative/vocative plural *-ōs > *-ūs has been replaced by *-i (< pronominal *-oy) in the nominative but survives in its secondary function as vocative. The Old Irish palatalization in the dative plural points to *-īs, an instrumental ending; cf. Gaul. gobedbi (p. 361). The genitive plural feri points to *-ōm, not *-ūm < *-ōm; probably all long vowels before final nasal were shortened very early in Celtic, before the five long vowels were reduced to three (Cowgill 1975: 49, Jasanoff 1989: 139), although Clb. -um (if = /uːm/ < /oːm/, which is uncertain) may arguably tell against this (cf. Sims-Williams 2007b: 7–14, Eska 2010a: 23, Eska & Evans 2010: 33).

The Old Irish a-stem declension is also quite well paralleled in Continental Celtic (see Table 7.8). The most controversial Old Irish ending has been the accusative singular with

---

1. = +lenition, N = +nasal mutation.
palatalized -th, but probably the development was *-ām > *-ām (cf. above) > *-en causing palatalization (cf. Subdivision, p. 359). Late Gaulish borrowed -im from the i-stems. There is clear syncretism in the genitive singular, where both Irish and Late Gaulish have replaced *-ās with *-(i)yās, the pronominal and yā-stem ending (cf. Lat. pater familiās), which developed via Ogham -EAS to OIr. -e. The original *-ās was retained in the irregular paradigm of OIr. ben ‘woman’. This also preserved an old ablaut pattern, for example, nominative/vocative/accusative plural mnā (= Gaul. mnās < *bnās) and genitive plural banN (< *banom, cf. Gaul. bnanom, de Bernardo Stempel 1987: 83, Delamarre 2003: 73). The singular is given in Table 7.8.

### TABLE 7.8 NOMINAL STEMS IN -Ā-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>tūathl</td>
<td>&lt; *teutā</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>tūathN</td>
<td>&lt; *teuten</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -an, -im, Lep. -a(-)m, Clb. -a(-)m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>tūathl</td>
<td>&lt; *teut(i)yās</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ās, -iās, Clb. -ās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom./voc.</td>
<td>tūatha</td>
<td>&lt; *teutās</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ās (?), Clb. -ās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>tūatha</td>
<td>&lt; *teutā(n)s</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ās, Clb. -ās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>tuathN</td>
<td>&lt; *teutōn</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ānom, Clb. -ām</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>tuathaib</td>
<td>&lt; *teutōbis</td>
<td>cf. Gaul. -ābo, -ābi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| nom.         | benl | < *benā | < *benā | ← *gēnh2 |
| acc.         | beinn | < *benēn? | < *benam | ← *gēnh,ś |
| gen.         | mnā | < *mnās | < *bnās | ← *gēh,ś |
| dat.         | mnaí | < *mnāi | < *bnāi | ← *gēh2(e)i |

In Old Irish there is also béN ‘woman’, and it has been suggested that this derives < *ben < *gēn < *gēn < *gēh, whereas ben < *benā (or *benā) is analogical (Jasanoff 1989). This depends on the doctrines that IE /-VRH/ > IE /-VːR/, and that CC /Vː/ before /-m/ and /-n/ (p. 368).

The only other Old Irish paradigm which may preserve ablaut in the oblique cases is the n-stem cú (= Brythonic ki < *kū), in which oblique con- may partly continue *kwon- and may partly represent the weak grade *kun- with regular lowering of /u/ before following /o/ (see Joseph 1990, Stüber 1998: 85–89, de Bernardo Stempel 1999: 27–28, and Table 7.9).

### TABLE 7.9 NOMINAL STEM IN -N-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>cúN</td>
<td>&lt; *kū</td>
<td>&lt; *k(u)wō</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śvā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>coinN</td>
<td>&lt; *konen</td>
<td>&lt; *kwenm</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śvānām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>con</td>
<td>&lt; *kunos</td>
<td>&lt; *kunos</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śānas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>coinN</td>
<td>(from acc.) *kuney, -i</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śānā (instr.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>coin</td>
<td>&lt; *kones</td>
<td>&lt; *kwones</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śvānas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>cona</td>
<td>&lt; *kunās</td>
<td>&lt; *kunās</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śānas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>conN</td>
<td>&lt; *kunōn</td>
<td>&lt; *kunōm</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śānān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>conaib</td>
<td>&lt; *kunobis</td>
<td>&lt; *kwēb'is</td>
<td>cf. Skr.</td>
<td>śvābhīs (instr.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Most other IE declensional classes, for example, i-stems, u-stems, various consonantal stems and even heteroclitic r-/n- stems (Stüber 1998: 84, de Bernardo Stempel 1999: 130–139), are represented in Insular Celtic, but much less completely on the Continent; for reasons of space they are omitted here. Adjectives belong to a more restricted range of declensions, mostly vocalic stems. Celtic retained the IE degrees of comparison—the comparative, mostly in -(i)u in Old Irish < *-yōs, e.g. *sinīu ‘older’ (: Lat. senior), also residually in Brythonic, e.g. W hŷn ‘older’ < *senyōs (de Bernardo Stempel 1989, Schrijver 2007), and the superlative, in -em, -am in Old Irish, -ham in Old Welsh, < *-isamo/ā (Gaul. Marti Rigisamo, cf. Position within IE, p. 357). Celtic also added the equivate, in -i-thir, -idir in Old Irish, but -i-het in Brythonic; its etymology is uncertain (cf. Watkins 1966: 37, McCone 1994: 125 = 2005: 141–142).

Pronouns

Pronouns are not well attested in Continental Celtic, and in Insular Celtic they have evolved through analogical levelling, through interaction with verbal endings and through phonetic attrition, especially when unstressed (see Schrijver 1997, Katz 1998).

The demonstratives mostly derive from IE *so + clitic pronouns, e.g. Gaul. sosin celic-non (acc.), sosio < *sosyod ‘this’ (p. 361; Syntax, p. 377), OIr. suide < *so-de-so(s) according to Schrijver (1997: 33), not < *sodyo-. Demonstratives recalling Lat. iste occur in Lep. išos (p. 359) and in Clb. išTe, šTena (n. pl.) (Eska 1989: 165, Schrijver 1997: 63). In Insular Celtic the definite article comes from *sindos, *sindā, *sen; cf. Gaul. indas mnas = OIr. inna mná ‘the women’ (acc. pl.). Demonstrative *so or *son may mark the relative in the Old Irish third-person singular relative beires ‘who carries, which he carries’ < *beret-so-, while (s)a-s < *sen appears as antecedent in, for example, OIr. for(s)a-s ‘on which’; but the usual relative marker was uninflected *yo (: Hitt. ya ‘and’): for example, *esti-yo ‘who is’ > OIr. as(a), MW yssyd; *welesi-yo ‘*whom thou seest’ (Sims-Williams 1984: 153–154) > OIr. file ‘who is’; *beronti-yo ‘who carry, which they carry’ > OIr. berte; cf. Gaul. dugiontio (p. 361). In compound verbs *yo was infixed, causing lenition, e.g. do-ceil ‘hides’, relative do-cheil < *di-yo-kelet(i) (McCone 1980, Ō hUiginn 1986). The interrogative stem *k*e-y- (OIr. cú, OW pui ‘who?’) is rarely used to express the relative. The connective particles *k*e (: Lat. -que, Clb. -Cue) > OIr. -ch (‘and’) and *de (: Gr. ðê) > OIr. -d- may serve as relative markers in Old Irish, by a secondary development (Vendryes 1911, Watkins 1963).

In the personal pronouns the distinction between nominative and accusative in the first and second person seems to have been lost in Celtic, and in Insular Celtic “dative” pronouns occur, in greatly reduced form, only in combination with other words, for example, *tī < *toy in OIr. duít ‘to you’. First-person singular OIr. mé and OBret. me suggest *mē, whereas OW mi, if not influenced by second-person singular tī, may derive from *mī < *mē (cf. mi in Gaulish, below). OIr. gen. mo1 ‘my’, stressed muí ‘mine’, imply *mewe < *mwe, whereas MW vy>n ‘my’ implies *men < *mēn (cf. Av. mana, Slav. mene), so the Old Irish forms (and MW stressed meú ‘mine’) may be analogical to the second-person singular *tewe. The Old Irish second-person singular tū and OW ti together imply CC *tū. Its genitive forms, OIr. do1, stressed tuí, taí, and MW dy1, stressed teu, imply Celt. *tewe (: Skr. táva). The first-person plural forms, OIr. sní, MW ní, Gaul. sni, suggest *snī(s) < *(s)ne(h):(s), and the second-person plural forms, OIr. sī, MW chiw, suggest *swī(s) < *(s)w(e):(s); the *s- may be due to the first-person plural verbal ending: *-mos nī(s) > *mos snī(s) (cf. Katz 1998). The Old Irish genitive forms nathar, nár ‘ours’ (unstressed arn, MW an), sethar, sár ‘yours’ (unstressed farn), can be compared with Lat. noster, vester, Goth. unsara-, izwara- etc. (Schrijver 1995: 454).
The third-person pronouns are problematic. The Old Irish subject pronouns, singular é (m.), si (f.) (W hi), ed (n.), plural é (W wy), may derive from *es, *sī, *edā, *ey. W ey*he* may come from accusative *emem, while an unreduplicated accusative *em lies behind the masculine infixed object pronouns OIr. -a<-i, Bret. -en-. Old Irish accusative feminine -s<,-e<-i, may imply *(s)i(y)am or *sām, and the neuter accusative singular -a< implies e < *ed. (In Gaulish id may occur, but OIr. beirthi *carries it* implies *bereti-e(d), not **bereti-id.) The accusative plural -s- (also -s<-) comes from *sūs < *sō(n)s (cf. Gaul. sos *them*). Most of the above forms cannot be traced directly back to IE. By contrast, the unstressed genitive forms OIr. ai (m. n.) (MW y), a (f.) (MW y), aN (pl.) (W eu h-) can be derived regularly from IE *esyo, *esyās, *eysōm; the /y/ survives as /δ/ in the stem of the Middle Welsh stressed forms eidaw (m.), eidi (f.).

Subject pronouns seem to occur after verbs in Gaulish (uediu mi Consonantism, p. 363, unless -mi is an added athematic ending as in Skr. bhārāmi), and they perhaps lie behind OIr. 1 sg. -mm in, for example, benaimm ‘I strike’ < ?*binam-me. Some Old Irish “emphasizing pronouns” are personal pronouns, for example, laimir-sni ‘we dare’ and also (but see Griffith 2010) ni-bir-siu ‘you do not carry’ < *niš-beres-tū (cf. MW kereist *you loved* with -t < *it); most of them, however, are demonstratives in origin, for example, beirid-som ‘he carries’ (: Goth. sama *the same*), Gr. ὁμός), earlier -sa < ?*se. Old Irish object pronouns are suffixed to simple verbs, for example, beirithi *carries it* < *bereti-e (above), but infixed within compound verbs and after particles, for example, da-chéilt *hides it* < *di-e-kelet(i), ra-ngáid ‘has beseeched him’ < *pro-em-g*-ōdē. They are often combined with the particle *de, for example, fordorn-cháin ‘he teaches me’ < *wer-de-me-kanet(i). The Old Irish stress (here indicated by ’) regularly follows infixes, and the latter cause sandhi mutations. Deuterotonic compound verbs without visible infixes or sandhi, for example, do-chéilt ‘hides it’ < *di-e-kelet(i), ra-ngáid ‘has beseeched him’ < *pro-em-g*-ōdē. The sentence-initial position of such deuterotonic verbs in Old Irish (Syntax, p. 377) implies the former presence of infixes, standing in second position according to Wackernagel’s Law (Vendryes 1911; Chapter 2, p. 377). The deleted particles may have been mainly proleptic/redundant neuter pronouns (e<, d(e)-e<), whose deletion would have avoided confusion with relative verbs of the type do-chéilt (p. 370) (Sims-Williams 1984; for other theories see Karl & Stifter 2007: 301–402). For analogical creation by “infix deletion”, for example, *di-e-kelet(i) > *di(i)-e-xèle(b) → *di-kèle(b) > do-chéilt (McCone 1985 – the -c- is not lenited because it arose after the period of lenition, p. 367, pace Russell 1995: 54). The sentence-initial position of such deuterotonic verbs in Old Irish (Syntax, p. 377) implies the former presence of infixes, standing in second position according to Wackernagel’s Law (Vendryes 1911; Chapter 2, p. 377). The deleted particles may have been mainly proleptic/redundant neuter pronouns (e<, d(e)-e<), whose deletion would have avoided confusion with relative verbs of the type do-chéilt (p. 370) (Sims-Williams 1984; for other theories see Karl & Stifter 2007: 301–402). For prototonic verbs (e.g. dichil < *di-kelet(i)) see Syntax, p. 377; such forms occur when a proclitic particle precedes, with or without an infix, e.g. ni-dichil *does not hide*, nim-dichil ‘does not hide me’.

The Celtic verbal system

This simplified semantic distinctions carried by inflections in Indo-European. For example, the IE aorist and perfect merged in a single “preterite” tense, and the subjunctive and optative moods merged as a single “subjunctive” mood; instead, aspected differences were expressed syntactically by the use of preverbs and particles, for example, OIr. ro, MW ry < *pro (Schmidt 1990). The inflectional system survives most fully in Old Irish. In Old Irish, verbs express the active voice either with active inflection or deponent inflection, and for the passive/impersonal voice a passive inflection obtained which was similar to but distinct from the deponent inflection; e.g. suidigdir ‘places’ differs from suidigthir ‘is placed’ only in lacking syncope. According to one theory,
both resulted from a late split in the IE mediopassive: syncope patterns would vary according to the syllable-count of the base, and this variation could have been exploited in order to differentiate deponent and passive (McCone 1986: 240; 2006: 137–138; see differently Jasanoff 1997, Griffith 2009). Already in Gaulish, deponent verbs (i.e. verbs with active meaning and mediopassive inflection) are apparent, e.g. marcosior ‘I shall (or may I) ride’ (Lejeune 1985a: 138, Lambert 1994: 125, Delamarre 2003: 217–218). For a detailed lexicon of Celtic verbs see Schumacher 2004, supplemented for Middle Welsh by Rodway 2013.

Personal endings

The personal endings of the Celtic verb derive mainly from:

(a) the primary endings of the IE present/aorist system (*-ō/*-mi, *-si, *-ti, etc.), which probably fell together with the secondary endings (*-m, *-s, *-t, etc., Chapter 4, p. xx), partly through loss of *-i as in Italic (Cowgill 1975, 1985, Lambert 1994: 63, Villar 1995, McCone 2006: 106, Sims-Williams 2007b: 29 and 34) and possibly through a still earlier expansion of the domain of primary endings;

(b) IE imperative endings;

(c) IE mediopassive endings in -r (as in Hittite, Italic, Tocharian: cf. Chapter 2, p. 99);

(d) IE perfect endings (see Chapter 2, p. 98–99).

In Insular Celtic there are also obscure “imperfect” endings in the imperfect indicative, conditional and past subjunctive. They are identical in both active and deponent verbs and are apparently of mediopassive origin (cf. Schrijver 1992, Ahlqvist 1993).

Like other IE languages, Celtic came to prefer “thematic” inflection, with a thematic vowel alternating between e and o before the personal endings, to “athematic” inflection, without e/o but often with ablaut variation in the root in the present (full grade in the singular, weak grade in the plural). A survivor of the athematic type is the “copula” (the form of the verb ‘to be’ expressing equivalence rather than existence): third-person singular OIr. is, MW ys < *es-ti, third-person plural OIr. it, MW ynt < *s-énti. Celtic tended to thematicize athematic verbs and to generalize a single grade of ablaut, usually the zero grade of the plural: thus IE *mél-g-ti, *ml̥g-énti ‘milk(s)’ → CC *mlig-e-ti, *mlig-o-nti > OIr. mligid, mlegait (Watkins 1962: 141–142, McCone 1986: 228, 1991: 29). The *e/o spread wherever it helped to avoid awkward consonant clusters; hence, it was not inserted after roots with a final laryngeal, which gave Celtic /a/ and remained athematic, e.g. *skérH-ti, *skr̥ H-énti > *skarati, *skaranti > OIr. scaraid, scarait ‘separate(s)’ (cf. Watkins 1962: 189).

(a) Primary endings occur in Old Irish active verbs in the present indicative, present subjunctive and future indicative, and in such preterite indicatives as derive from the IE aorist (i.e. not those which derive from the IE perfect). In Insular Celtic this type of ending has two forms: (a) “absolute”, in simple verbs in absolute initial position without a preceding particle; and (b) “conjunct”, in all compound verbs and in simple verbs in non-initial position: e.g. (a) OIr. beirid ‘carries’, MW trenghit ‘dies’; (b) ní-beir ‘does not carry’, ny threingk ‘does not die’. It is now agreed that “absolute” and “conjunct” endings have a single origin, and do not derive from the
IE primary and secondary endings respectively (see Sims-Williams 1984, Cowgill 1985, Mccone 1985, 2006; cf. Watkins 1963). Accepting an early apocope of *-i (p. 372, cf. sistat p. 360), the conjunct forms of beirid ‘carries’ can be derived from primary forms as follows:

**TABLE 7.10 A POSSIBLE ORIGIN OF OLD IRISH CONJUNCT ENDINGS**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>-biur [b'jir]</td>
<td>&lt; *birū</td>
<td>&lt; *b'erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>-bīr [b'ir]</td>
<td>&lt; *biris</td>
<td>&lt; *b'eresi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>-bēir [b'er]</td>
<td>&lt; *beret</td>
<td>&lt; *b'ere ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>-beram [b'eraμ]</td>
<td>&lt; *beromos</td>
<td>&lt; *b'eromosi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>-beirid [b'erid]</td>
<td>&lt; *bereti</td>
<td>&lt; *b'ere ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>-berat [b'erat]</td>
<td>&lt; *beront</td>
<td>&lt; *b'eronti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Old Irish absolute forms are longer than the conjunct forms, and it appears that they originally included some additional element which protected final *-i from apocope. Since absolute verbs always occur at the head of clauses, the position of the additional element must be due to Wackernagel’s Law (cf. p. 371). Various particles have been proposed (cf. p. 371), but one candidate (Sims-Williams 1984) is a redundant or proleptic neuter object pronoun *e(d):

**TABLE 7.11 A POSSIBLE ORIGIN OF OLD IRISH ABSOLUTE ENDINGS**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>biru [b'iru]</td>
<td>&lt; *birū-e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>bīrī [b'irī]</td>
<td>&lt; *birisi-e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>beirid [b'erid]</td>
<td>&lt; *bereti-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>bermai [b'ermi]</td>
<td>&lt; *beromosi-e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>beirthe [b'erp'e]</td>
<td>&lt; *berete-e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>berait [b'erat]</td>
<td>&lt; *beronti-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the third persons – or all persons, according to Mccone (1994: 141, 2006: 118, 120, 124), who posits 2 pl. *-tesi and analogical developments in the first-person singular – the additional element was dropped before the general apocope by a process of “suffix deletion” presumably contemporary with “infix deletion” in compound verbs (p. 371).

(b) The imperative endings were mostly similar to the conjunct of the present indicative, except the second-person singular, e.g. OIr. gaib ‘get!’, Gaul. gabi, and the third-person singular, e.g. OIr. gaibed < *g'abhyetow? (cf. Goth. -dau); the need to differentiate the indicative from the imperative in absolute initial position may have encouraged the generalization in that position of the absolute (rather than conjunct) indicative endings of simple verbs (Sims-Williams 1984: 171, Eska 1991). Similarly, the imperative of compound verbs was distinguished from the (deuterotonic) indicative by its protonic stress (cf. p. 371).

(c) The passive/impersonal inflection has third-person singular and third-person plural endings only. (The absolute forms, with palatalized final consonant, are arguably based on the analogy of active absolute forms like third-person plural berait.) In the present tense there are two inflections in the singular, with or without a dental
consonant (cf. Umbr. pres. subj. ferar vs Lat. feratur?), as seen in the following conjunct forms:

**TABLE 7.12 OLD IRISH PASSIVE FORMS (PRESENT TENSE)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>-berar</td>
<td>&lt; *beror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-marbthar</td>
<td>&lt; *marwa(ː)tor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>-bertar</td>
<td>&lt; *berontor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-marbthar</td>
<td>&lt; *marwa(ː)ntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(absolute berair) ‘is carried’
(absolute marbthair) ‘is killed’
(absolute bertair)
(absolute marbhair)

Infixed pronouns indicate the first and second persons, e.g. nom-berar ‘I am carried’.

The passive preterite paradigm, however, was built up on the basis of the IE verbal adjective (Sims-Williams 1984: 183), e.g. MW llas ‘he was slain’ < *slad-tos, OIr. nom-breth ‘I was carried’ < *nu-me-britos (< *b⁶tos).

The deponent conjunct endings may be illustrated with OIr. -fograigedar ‘sounds’.

The irregular syncope outside the third-person singular and third-person plural of this five-syllable base arguably follows the pattern of four-syllable bases (p. 372). (Jasanoff (1997), however, hypothesizes 3 sg. *-tro, 3 pl. *-ntro.)

**TABLE 7.13 OLD IRISH DEPONENT FORMS (PRESENT TENSE)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>-fograigiur</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-ōr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>-fograigther</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-ter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>-fograigethar</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-tor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>-fograigmer</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-mor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>-fograigid</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-dwe (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>-fograigetar</td>
<td>&lt; *wogaro-sagī-ntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(absolute fograigim)
(absolute fograigther)
(absolute fograigidir)
(absolute fograigmir)
(absolute fograigthe)
(absolute fograigitir)

The first-person singular and second-person plural absolute endings are borrowed from the athematic active, and the palatalized consonants in the absolute third-person singular, first-person plural and third-person plural are by analogy with passive absolute forms like gaibthir, gaibtír.

(d) Some IE perfect endings survived in the OIr. “suffixless preterite”, e.g. 1 sg. -gád ‘I prayed’ < *gʷáda, 3 sg. -gáid < *gʷāde, 3 pl. -gádatar < *gʷādontVr – the last a blend of the IE r-ending (cf. Skr. vid-ūr) and the nt-ending of the present/aorist (cf. Lat. uidē-r-unt).

**Present stem**

The present stem (used to form the present and imperfect indicative and the imperative) was formed with various suffixes, which merged to give the following Old Irish conjugations according to the numeration of Thurneysen 1946:

AI: *-ā- (cf. Lat. -are) and *-ā- < root-final *-H, e.g. scaraid (Personal Endings, p. 372);
AII: *-eye/eyo- (denominative and causative), also *-ī- (partly < stative *-ē-, e.g. -ruidi ‘blushes’ cf. Lat. rubēre ‘to be red, blush’);
AIII: miscellaneous verbs with hiatus, e.g. baïd ‘dies’ < *ba-eti (McConne 1986: 228);
BI: *-e/o- (e.g. beirid, Personal Endings, p. 372);
BII: *-ye/y-o- (3 sg. -gaïb, not **-gaibi < *gâb'yet(i), is arguably on the analogy of BI, although a *y/o- suffix or *ye > *i have been suggested, cf. Sims-Williams 1981: 211–216, Weiss 2012);
BIV: *-nă-, e.g. crenaid, pl. crenait 'buys' < *kwri-nă-ti, *kwri-nă-nti (? ultimately from *kwri-né-h2-ti, *kwri-né-h2-énti, with nasal infixed in the root *kwri(e)ih2, seen without infix in the Old Irish subjunctive stem cria-) (McConne 1986: 225; cf. 1991: 11–54);

AI and AII are the only productive formations in Old Irish, and broadly resemble the Brythonic regular verbs, e.g. MW caraf ‘I love’ < *karâmi, kenif ‘I sing’ < *kañiimi (unless the latter is < *kañü-mi).

Subjunctive stem

The subjunctive stem (used for the present and past subjunctive) is divided into two classes: (a) the unproductive s-subjunctive, e.g. Olr. geiss, -gé ‘may pray’ < *gweed-s-t(i), MW gwnech ‘may do’ < *(g)wrex < *wrek-s-et(i); and (b) the productive so-called ă-subjunctive, e.g. beraid, -bera ‘may carry’, traditionally derived from *ber-ă-t(i). It is semantically difficult to derive (a) from the IE s-aorist indicative (with Watkins 1962), and derivation from the s-aorist subjunctive is difficult unless *gweed-s-t(i) replaced the expected *gweed-s-et(i) under the influence of the s-preterite inflection (McConne 1986: 245–246), which is against the normal Celtic athematic → thematic tendency (cf. Hamp 1987, McConne 1991: 57, 73, 79–80, Schumacher 2004: 53). Subjunctives in -se-Ti may occur in Celtiberian (Eska 1989: 170). (b) The ă-subjunctive, traditionally derived, with that of Latin, from an innovative Italo-Celtic optative suffix *-ă- (cf. OLat. aduenat, subj. of aduenio), is now often analysed as *-ă-se/o- or *-ă-se/o-, with *ă, *ā originally from roots in *H, *RH (McConne 1986: 260, 1991: 85–113, Schumacher 2004: 50); other linguists retain the Italo-Celtic explanation (cf. Schmidt 1991: 17–19; Jasanoff 1994).

Future stem

There are three main types of Old Irish future stem (used for the indicative future and conditional): (a) the f-future, e.g. rannfa, -rannub ‘I shall divide’; (b) the reduplicated s-future, e.g. gigis, -gig ‘will pray’ < *gwe(i)gweed-s-t(i); and (c) the reduplicated so-called ă-future, e.g. cechnaid, -cechna ‘will sing’ < *ki-kana(ː)-se-t(i), and its subtype, the ē-future, e.g. célaid, -cēla ‘will hide’ < ?*kikl(ː)-se-t(i) (with *kikl- > *kexl- > cēl-). (a), the f-future, is traditionally compared with the Latin future in -bo. This is phonetically controversial – normally /f/ is < *sw but because the f-future occurs only in Old Irish, where it is very productive, it is tempting to see it as a late, parallel innovation, based on a periphrasis involving the root *b(e)w- ‘to be’ (but on /bw/ cf. McManus 1991: 122). However, McConne (1991: 176–182) suggested that it spread from a verb in which reduplicated *si-sw- > *si-f-; Jasanoff (1994: 216) and Russell (1995: 20 and 49) rejected this. (b–c), the two reduplicated futures, run parallel to the corresponding subjunctives, and
their suffixes must be explained similarly. They are originally desideratives (semantically cf. English ‘he will pray’) and are comparable with Sanskrit desideratives, e.g. *ti-rpsati < *ti-trp-se-ti (root *terp- ‘enjoy’) (Thurneysen 1946: 414–415; McCone 1986: 248–255). Unreduplicated futures in *-sy-e-o/ have been identified in Continental Celtic, Indo-Iranian and elsewhere (e.g. Schmidt 1988: 241, Lambert 1994: 63, Schumacher 2004: 58).

**Active preterite stem**

The Old Irish active preterite stem (to which “deponent” as well as “active” inflections could be added) derived, for most verbs, from the IE aorist, but for others from the IE perfect.

With few exceptions the aorists were originally athematic and sigmatic. According to Watkins (1962) third-person singular forms, e.g. *skerH-s-t, *ber-s-t developed regularly via *skarass(i), *bert(i) to -scar ‘separated’, *bert ‘carried’ (cf. OIr. tart < *ṭrstu- ‘thirst’), and these third-person singular forms formed the basis for the whole paradigms, e.g. first-person singular *skarass-ū > -scarus (the s-pret.), *bert-ū > -biurt (the t-pret.). Cf. MW 1 sg. *kerēis ‘loved’ < *karassū, 3 sg. (*karas) < *karassit(i); other stem vowels before *ss were partly influenced by present stems (McConE 1986: 232, Rodway 2013: 69–80, 128–165). A variant on Watkins’ s-aorist theory derives -bert < *birt < *bīr(s)t(i) < *bērst(i), with lengthened grade; this vocalism is supported by the *byrth underlying the MW compound kymyrth ‘took’ (McCone 1991: 67–69; Schumacher 2004: 61–64). It is phonologically more difficult to apply Watkins’ s-aorist theory to a Middle Welsh t-preterite such as MW 1 sg. keint ‘sang’ < *kantū, 3 sg. cant < *kant(i), and similarly 3 sg. gwant ‘pierced’. Isaac (2001) explained the latter as an IE athematic imperfect, and Jasanoff (2012), accepting this, has explained MW kymyrth, OIr. -bert and other t-preterites as IE imperfects with lengthened grade *ē.

The third-person singular Brythonic termination of Middle Welsh absolute keresyt < *karass-iiti, conjunct (*caras < *karass-it, is an innovation paralleled in Gaul. legasit < ?*legast + *-iti versus more archaic *prinas < *prinasst (Sims-Williams 1984: 188; cf. Lambert 1994: 64, 68, Eska & Evans 2010: 41). For other Continental Celtic preterites see p. 359.

Some of the Old Irish “suffixless preterites” employ reduplication and derive from old perfects (cf. Lat. tango, te-tigi), e.g. OIr. ecehan ‘he sang’ < *ke-kan-e; a rare MW example is kigleu ‘he heard’. Others replaced *ē in the root with Celtic ā (probably < *ō), e.g. OIr. do-feid < *-wedet ‘leads’, do-fāid < *-wāde ‘led’, MW godiawd < *-wāde ‘overtook’. It is unclear whether this ā-preterite is attested in Continental Celtic: a possible precursor, perhaps with /ō/ as in the IE perfect, has been seen in Gaul. AVVOT(E) ‘FECIT’ = */aw-wo(ː)d(e)/ < *a(p)o-wōð(b)-e ‘led away, carried out, produced’ (Lambert 1987, 1994: 122; cf. Hamp 1973). In general, the Celtic ā-preterite resembles long-vowel preterites in other languages (cf. German comparison in McCone 1986: 235–238, 1994: 168 = 2005: 224) and like them is of obscure origin. Jasanoff (2012) derives them from IE imperfects.

**WORD FORMATION**

Despite much work on Celtic name formation (e.g. Uhlich 1993, Garcia Alonso 2013, Falileyev 2014), the vast subject of Celtic word formation has only recently been studied in detail, for example, Joseph 1987 on denominative verbs in *-sag- ‘seek’ (e.g. fograige-dar: fogur ‘sound’, Personal Endings, p. 374), Russell 1990 on velar suffixes (such as the productive *-ako-), Irslinger 2002 and Repanšek 2013 on dental suffixes, de Bernardo
Stempel 1999 and Zimmer 2000 on Old Irish and Welsh noun formation, Stüber 1998 on n-stems, and Schumacher 2000 on Welsh verbal nouns. Most IE types of composition survive in Celtic, at least residually (cf. McCone 1994: 126–132 = 2005: 146–155), including dvandva-compounds such as OIr. gaisced ‘weapons’ < *gaiso-skétem ‘spear-and-shield’ or TEVO-XTONION (gen. pl.) = DEIS ET HOMINIBUS in a bilingual Gaulish inscription at Vercelli (Delamarre 2003: 141–142, 176, cf. p. 368). Composition vowels are discussed by Sims-Williams (2013). Like other IE languages, Celtic developed the use of preverbs to modify verbal bases aspectually (The Celtic Verbal System, p. 371) or semantically, e.g. OIr. fo-reith ‘helps’ < *runs under’ < reithid ‘runs’ (: MW gwaret ‘helps’; Lat. subcurro, succurro < curro). Large numbers may be strung together (e.g. OIr. intururas ‘incursion’ < *ind-to-are-uks-ret-), and they tend to appear in a particular hierarchy (McCone 1987: 94) which has parallels elsewhere, e.g. ro < *pro tends to occur close to the root, as did Ved. prá, Hom. pró (Sims-Williams 1984: 190). Despite similarities, the system of preverbs and prepositions in Celtic and Italic cannot be reduced to a unity (Watkins 1966: 36). As in other IE languages, e.g. OLat. ob uos sacro (→ obsecro uos), preverbs may be divided by tmesis (see Syntax below; McCone 1985: 267).

SYNTAX

The most important development in Celtic is in the position of the verb. Whereas the normal order is SOV in Celtiberian (e.g. p. 360) and in some Gaulish (e.g. Buscilla sosio legasit in Alixie Magalu ‘B. chose this in Alisia for Magalos’), Insular Celtic favours VSO (p. 368), with most apparent exceptions, such as SVO (Lewis 1989), being explicable either as nominativus pendens or as cleft sentences with [copula] + S + relative verb (Russell 1995: 292–300, Willis 1998: 97–101). The most important exception is the arguably archaic Old Irish construction known as Bergin’s Law (Binchy 1979), by which the verb, instead of appearing initially in absolute (Personal Endings, p. 372–374) or deuterotonic (p. 371) form (e.g. *Loiscis Lugaid trebthu ‘Lugaid burnt dwellings’, *Ad-rími maicni nAilb ‘You reckon the sons of Alb’), appears finally/medially in conjunct or prototonic form, e.g. Lugaid loísc trebthu, Maicni nAilb úírmi. This construction is attributed by some to preservation of the SOV/SVO syntax seen in Continental Celtic but by others to mere poetic licence (McCone 2006: 61–65, Eska 2007). The key to the development of VSO was identified by Vendryes (1911; cf. Watkins 1963, Eska 1994, Russell 1995: 13, 303, McCone 2006) in the phenomenon that certain clitics were closely tied to verbs in Celtic and therefore drew either the verb or its first preverb to the head of the clause by Wackernagel’s Law (p. 371; Personal Endings, p. 372–373), e.g. verb + relative *yo in Gaul. dugiónttio Ucuetin ‘who honour Ucuetis’ (p. 361), preverb imm + -a < *yo in archaic/poetic OIr. imma- lanna -lig ‘which lies about lands’ (with tmesis (Word Formation, p. 377), → later/prosaic *imma-lig lanna). This phenomenon (labelled “Vendryes’ Restriction” in Sims-Williams 1984: 167) must surely be linked with the fact that absolute and deuterotonic verbal forms, which are required in VSO order, seem originally to have included clitic elements subject to Wackernagel’s Law (see Pronouns, p. 370–371, Personal Endings, p. 372–374; for theories about the identity of these clitics cf. McCone 2006 and Karl & Stifter 2007: 301–402).1

FURTHER READING

More detailed surveys are provided by MacAulay 1992 and Ball and Müller 2010, the former concentrating on the modern languages. The only comparative grammar is still...
Lewis and Pedersen 1961. Being a revision of a work published in 1909–13, this does not reflect the vast amount of work on Celtic over the past hundred years. Its old-fashioned IE notation has been followed to some extent in this chapter for the convenience of readers. There is no handbook of Continental Celtic as a whole, but Lambert 1994 is a good introduction to Gaulish while Delamarre 2003 is an etymological dictionary. The classic grammar of Old Irish by Thurneysen (1946) still holds the field, but can be supplemented by McConc 1994 (Italian version 2005). Etymology is not covered in the Dictionary of the Irish Language (http://edil.qub.ac.uk/dictionary/search.php), and the Old Irish etymological dictionary by Vendryes (1959–) still lacks the letters E–L. The standard grammars for early Welsh, Cornish and Breton by Evans 1964, Lewis 1990 and Hemon 1975 can be supplemented by Ternes 2011. Etymology is not the most up-to-date aspect of Geiriadur Prifysgol Cymru: A Dictionary of the Welsh Language (http://www.welsh-dictionary.ac.uk), which closely follows Pokorny 1959, but it is a convenient starting point, as are Pokorny 1959 and Matasović 2009 for the Celtic languages as a whole.

FURTHER READING

In revising this chapter I am grateful to the editor and to J.F. Eska and P. Schrijver for helpful criticism.

REFERENCES


Ball, Martin J., & Müller, Nicole (eds.) 2010, The Celtic Languages, 2nd ed, Routledge, London

Bammesberger, Alfred (ed.) 1988, Die Laryngaltheorie und die Rekonstruktion des indogermanischen Laut- und Formensystems, C. Winter, Heidelberg

Binchy, D. A. 1979, “‘Bergin’s Law’,” Studia Celtica 14–15: 34–53

Bird, Norman 1982, The Distribution of Indo-European Root Morphemes, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden


de Bernardo Stempel, Patrizia 1987, *Die Vertretung der indogermanischen liquiden und nasalen Sonanten im Keltischen*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität Innsbruck, Innsbruck


de Hoz, Javier 2010–, *Historia lingüística de la península ibérica en la antigüedad*, Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Madrid


Eska, Joseph F. 1989, *Towards an Interpretation of the Hispano-Celtic Inscription of Botorrita*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität, Innsbruck


Evans, D. Ellis 1967, Gaulish Personal Names, Clarendon Press, Oxford


Evans, D. Simon 1964, A Grammar of Middle Welsh, Dublin Institute for Advanced Studies, Dublin

Falileyev, Alexander 2009, Celtic Dacia: Personal Names, Place-Names and Ethnic Names of Celtic Origin in Dacia and Scythia Minor, 2nd ed, CMCS Publications, Aberystwyth


Falileyev, Alexander 2014, In Search of the Eastern Celts: Studies in Geographical Names, their Distribution and Morphology, Archaeolingua, Budapest


Garcia Alonso, Juan Luis (ed.) 2013, Continental Celtic Word Formation: The Onomastic Data, Ediciones Universidad de Salamanca, Salamanca


Hemon, Roparz 1975, A Historical Morphology and Syntax of Breton, Dublin Institute for Advanced Studies, Dublin
Irslinger, Britta Sofie 2002, Abstrakta mit Dentalsuffixen im Altirischen, C. Winter, Heidelberg
Jackson, Kenneth Hurlstone 1953, Language and History in Early Britain, Edinburgh University Press, Edinburgh
Jordán Cólera, Carlos 2004, Celtibérico, Universidad de Zaragoza, Zaragoza


Kuryłowicz, Jerzy 1964, *The Inflectional Categories of Indo-European*, C. Winter, Heidelberg


Lewis, Henry 1989, *Die kymrische Sprache*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität, Innsbruck


McCone, Kim 1987, The Early Irish Verb, An Sagart, Maynooth
McCone, Kim 1996, Towards a Relative Chronology of Ancient and Medieval Celtic Sound Change, Department of Old and Middle Irish, National University of Ireland, Maynooth
McCone, Kim 2005, L’irlandese antico e la sua preistoria (transl. Elisa Roma), Edizioni dell’Orso, Alessandria
McCone, Kim 2006, The Origins and Development of the Insular Celtic Verbal Complex, Department of Old Irish, National University of Ireland, Maynooth
Meid, Wolfgang 1989, Archäologie und Sprachwissenschaft, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität, Innsbruck
Meid, Wolfgang 1994a, Celtiberian Inscriptions, Archaeolingua, Budapest
Mullen, Alex 2007, “Evidence for written Celtic from Roman Britain: a linguistic analysis of Tabella Sulis 14 and 18,” Studia Celtica 41: 31–45
Pokorny, Julius 1959, Indogermanisches etymologisches Wörterbuch, Francke, Bern
Prósper, Blanca María 2008, El Bronce celtibérico de Botorrita, Fabrizio Serra, Pisa–Rome
Raybould, Marilynne E. & Sims-Williams, Patrick 2009, Introduction and Supplement to the Corpus of Latin Inscriptions of the Roman Empire Containing Celtic Personal Names, CMCS Publications, Aberystwyth
Russell, Paul 1990, Celtic Word-Formation: The Velar Suffixes, Dublin Institute for Advanced Studies, Dublin
Russell, Paul 1995, An Introduction to the Celtic Languages, Longman, Harlow
Schmidt, Karl Horst (ed.) 1986a, Geschichte und Kultur der Kelten, C. Winter, Heidelberg
Schrijver, Peter 1995, Studies in British Celtic Historical Phonology, Rodopi, Amsterdam
Schrijver, Peter 1997, Studies in the History of Celtic Pronouns and Particles, Department of Old Irish, National University of Ireland, Maynooth
Schumacher, Stefan 2000, The Historical Morphology of the Welsh Verbal Noun, Department of Old Irish, National University of Ireland, Maynooth
Schumacher, Stefan 2004, Die keltischen Primärverben, Innsbrucker Beiträge zur Sprachwissenschaft, Innsbruck
Sims-Williams, Patrick 2007a, Ancient Celtic Place-Names in Europe and Asia Minor, Blackwell, Oxford
Sims-Williams, Patrick 2007b, Studies on Celtic Languages before the Year 1000, Aberystwyth, CMCS Publications
Sims-Williams, Patrick 2015, “The four types of Welsh yn,” Transactions of the Philological Society 113: 286–304
Sims-Williams, Patrick 2016, “The location of the Celts according to Hecataeus, Herodotus, and other Greek writers,” Étude celtiques 42 (in press)
Stüber, Karin 1998, The Historical Morphology of n-Stems in Celtic, Department of Old Irish, National University of Ireland, Maynooth


Villar, Francisco 1995, *A New Interpretation of Celtiberian Grammar*, Institut für Sprachwissenschaft der Universität, Innsbruck


Zair, Nicholas 2012, *The Reflexes of the Proto-Indo-European Laryngeals in Celtic*, Brill, Leiden


PART 8

GERMANIC

Joshua Bousquette and Joseph Salmons

We survey Germanic as a distinct branch of Indo-European, tracing developments that differentiate Germanic from IE up to attested Germanic varieties. We cover structural patterns shared across parts of the family and those that distinguish the sisters from one another. Beyond familiar examples (umlaut, case loss, verb second), we treat areas of recent progress, such as laryngeal phonetics and phonology, foot structure, definiteness and complementizers. We stress how these patterns cut across grammatical modules, connecting phonology, morphology and syntax. That discussion is embedded in the available social and cultural context, e.g. language contact.

INTRODUCTION

Our earliest evidence for Germanic languages is from names and words recorded in classical-language sources, including Tacitus, Caesar and Pliny. Most discussed are tribal, personal and place names, but they also include cultural vocabulary, some borrowed into Latin, e.g. *framea ‘spear’, *glēsum ‘amber’ (cf. glass) and possibly cognates of *soap ‘red hair dye’ (Green 1998: 185–188, Kluge 2011).

Germanic languages are also attested in runic inscriptions written by speakers in the first centuries of the Common Era (Krause 1971, Antonsen 1975, Schulte 2006). These are not limited to Scandinavia (as with the Negau helmet, an early inscription, found in present-day Slovenia) and are identified with various Germanic languages, based on where they were found (problematic for inscriptions on portable objects like spearheads and brooches), orthography and structure. Page (2001) illustrates these difficulties for Frisian runic inscriptions, where arguments for identifying inscriptions as Frisian are tentative and limited to a few items; e.g. the evidence for Frisian provenance of the apparent personal name *skanomodu assumes a connection to Gmc *skaun- ‘beautiful’, showing distinctively Frisian monophthongization.

The first longer text preserved in a Germanic language is part of a Bible translation, attributed to Wulfila (Ulfilas) in the late 4th century, written in his Greek-based script. This is our major source for Gothic, in a 6th century Italian manuscript. Texts in the Latin alphabet begin after 500 CE, summarized here, with rough dates for composition and surviving manuscripts:

(1) Early longer texts in selected Germanic languages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gothic</td>
<td>late 4th c., manuscript from the 6th c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old English</td>
<td>mid–late 7th c., manuscript from the 8th c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old High German</td>
<td>mid 8th c., manuscript from the late 8th c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Saxon</td>
<td>ca. 830, major manuscript from the mid 11th c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Norse</td>
<td>mid 11th c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Frisian</td>
<td>late 11th c., manuscript from the late 13th c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The family is traditionally divided into three branches:

- East Germanic: Gothic and fragments from other languages. The last known survivor was “Criman Gothic”, recorded in 1562 (Stearns 1978).
- North Germanic: Runic and then Old Norse, represented by the modern Nordic languages.
- West Germanic, including English, German, Dutch, Yiddish, Frisian, etc.

These branches show their characteristics in the earliest attestations; see Robinson (1992: ch. 10). He eschews sub-branching within this tree, yielding the picture on the left; another view is that on the right (Salmons 2012: 84), a three-way division where North and West Germanic are closer to each other than to East Germanic.

![Figure 8.1 Two Models of Germanic Subgrouping](image)

Sociohistorical evidence supports the model on the right, with the relatively early departure of East Germanic from southern Scandinavia (Heather 2010), leaving a dialect continuum across North and West Germanic.

One gauge for subgrouping is shared innovations that are unlikely to be independent innovations, but these prove problematic. In sound change, glide hardening – the development of stops from glides (Verschärfung, Holtzmann’s Law), shared between Gothic and North Germanic – has long seemed exotic. In both languages, reconstructed geminate glides (*jj, *ww) appear as geminate stops, so that OHG *triuwa (cf. troth) corresponds to ONor. *tryggva and Goth. *triggwa. Yet, while similar reflexes do appear, the outcomes do not always match up: OHG *zweiio ‘of two’ corresponds to coronals in Goth. *twad-dje and velars in Norse tveggia. And Faroese (but not its cousin Icelandic) underwent a later sharpening (skerping), where apparently geminate -jj- and -ww- hardened eventually into fortis geminates, palatal and velar respectively (data and analysis following Árnasón 2011: 31–33, who uses Old Icelandic as a starting point):

(2) Faroese skerping (adapted from Árnasón 2011: 31)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Icelandic</th>
<th>Intermediate stage</th>
<th>Modern Faroese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eyjar [øyjar]</td>
<td>[dʒː]</td>
<td>oyggjar [oːtʃːa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>róa [row.wa]?</td>
<td>[gː]</td>
<td>réogva [iɛkːːa]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Worse, hardening is hardly foreign to West Germanic, though in different environments. Schirmunski (2010: 429) shows southern Swabian hardening of labiovelar glides to b, cf. aibar ‘your (pl.)’, MHG iuwer. In Low German, palatal glides can harden to a spirant, e.g. Soest [ɛɣɑ] eier ‘eggs’ < OS eiero < PGmc *ajj- (Hall 2014). Modern North Germanic, moreover, seems to show similar tendencies. Riad (2014: 21, 29) discusses the rise of “damped” or “buzzing” realizations of [iː] and [yː] as [iːz] and [yːz] and of a [β] off-glides.
after long high back vowels: [fiːˈn] for fin ‘fine’ and [buːˈk] for buk ‘book’. Here, we have glide hardening without motivation from syllable structure, since these are additional coda material rather than new onsets. High vowels and glides harden into stops around the world; e.g. earlier Inscriptional Burmese -iy and -uw correspond to -it and -uk in Maru (Mortensen 2012).

To take another example, rhotacism, the development of /r/ sounds from earlier *z, is shared by North and West Germanic: Gmc *deuza ‘animal’, Goth. dius, OHG tior and ONor. dýr. Here, too, the change is far from unique, as in Lat. flōs ~ flōrem plus later, independent occurrences of rhotacism in Romance, Germanic and other IE languages (Catford 2001), undercutting its value as a diagnostic.

In morphology, innovations are often built from inherited material in ways that could be independent, like class iv weak verbs (-nan) in Goth. gadaþnan ‘die’ and Norse vakna ‘awaken’, absent in West Germanic. Conversely, the innovative -st 2 sg. verbal inflection is characteristic of West Germanic only, attested first in Old High German in high-frequency verbs in main clauses, and later spreading to other tenses, moods and syntactic positions (Somers 2011). Independent developments in single branches may further cloud relationships. Gothic exhibits a synthetic middle passive, e.g. (ik) haitada ‘I am called’, where -da may be reflexive, consistent with reconstructed IE (p. 162). This is already in competition with reflexive verbal constructions using sik, sis, or seina ‘self’, a process that occurred in Greek (Ferraresi 2005: 106–109); synthetic passives are absent in later Germanic. (The Scandinavian middle is a later development, a reanalysis of the reflexive pronoun sik as verbal -sk; Faarlund 2004: 126–127, also Emonds & Faarlund 2014.)

If a unified Germanic once existed, it was perhaps ca. 500 BCE. Early Runic shows surprising uniformity over time and space, possibly due to conservative writing traditions and a limited early corpus. The evidence shows differentiation across branches from the beginning; some West Germanic varieties show nasal loss before coda fricatives (/f, θ, x/) with compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel, while others do not: Eng. five, mouth vs. Germ. fünf, Mund, from Gmc *femfā, *munθa; a number of forms show variable reflexes, cf. MHG sunt ~ süd.

While a tree-like split into three distinct branches is well supported (Nielsen 2000, Heather 2010), intra-Germanic contact was nevertheless pervasive. “North Sea Germanic” (Ingvaeconic) areas still form dialect continua, crossing the Dutch-German linguistic border. And rich patchwork distributions of features occur across mainland Scandinavia. This has blurred the lines of a Stammbaum with chronic wave-like diffusion.

More dramatically, English was initially formed by a mixture of Germanic varieties during the invasion of the British Isles, shaped by the shift of Celtic (“British”) speakers to English, then the North Germanic invasions during the Danelaw and eventually the Normans. What we now call English came into existence thanks to sociohistorical settings involving high numbers of bilingual and bidialectal speakers and second language and second dialect speakers, dialect contact (koinization or “new dialect formation”; Kerswill 2002) plus language contact (Trudgill 2010). This has led to the proposal that it has become North Germanic (Faarlund 2012) or a “fourth branch of Germanic” (Forster et al. 2006). These claims have garnered press attention, but the mainstream view remains that English is West Germanic with complex effects of historical contact (McWhorter 2002, Trudgill 2010).

Some characteristics of Germanic are often tied to the sociohistorical scenarios just sketched. Consider two examples. Substrate effects are likely in lexical material from pre-IE-speaking populations, and many terms reflect domains where vocabulary survivals
from earlier languages seem particularly plausible (flora, fauna, cultural vocabulary); Polomé (1989) and Hamp (1990) argue for substrate status when words show aberrant phonological and/or morphological patterns vis-à-vis inherited vocabulary. Hamp lays out, for instance, the difficulties of the ‘apple’ word, showing reflexes of the extremely rare *b phoneme (also Salmons 2004, 2015). Let us turn to the more secure lexical connections with attested languages, Finnic and other IE groups.

Germanic loans in Baltic Finnic show great antiquity and have been explored for what they show about Proto-Germanic (Kylstra 1991–, Koivulehto 2001, both in some respects controversial). Finnish forms like kuningas ‘king’ (Germ. König) and ringas ‘ring’ retain nominal stem vowels plus endings lost in Germanic. Some words suggest pre-Germanic forms, like Finn. kana ‘hen’ with an unshifted *k, rather than Gmc *h.

Borrowings from Germanic into Romance similarly allow us to date borrowings and identify the nature of contact. For example, early borrowings with word-initial labial glides from Germanic into Romance predate glides hardening: Old Frankish *wrako ‘exile’ (OHG reccheo) becomes Old French garçon ‘servant’; Gmc *were ‘war’ (Goth. warjan ‘defend’, cf. Eng. warrior, warden) becomes Old French guerrer (cf. Eng. guerrilla, guard). These cognates in English (post 1066) attest to borrowing from Germanic into Romance, then back into Germanic.

Germanic-Celtic contact predated the Germanic breakup, as all branches share some of the same cognates with Celtic. Borrowed from Celtic are some legal terms, including ancestors of words like oath (Lehmann 1986). Goth. andbahts ‘service, office’ (Germ. Amt) is distinguishable as a borrowing by the /a/ for IE syllabic *m (IE *m̥bhí), which has anaptyctic /u/ in Germanic (OHG umbi ‘around’, but Gr. ἀμφί). Another likely early borrowing is OIr. dún ‘fort, walled hillock’ (W dinas, ‘city’): OHG zün ‘fence’ (Germ. Zaun ‘fence’), OEng./OS/ONor. tūn ‘village’ (Dutch tuin ‘garden, yard’). Zaun reflects the second sound shift, so predates that. While some accept such terms as Celtic loans (Orel 2003, Kroonen 2013), others are skeptical, e.g. Kluge 2011, where Zaun is of “uncertain origin” but presumably connected to Celtic. A third is more complex, Goth. eisarn- ‘iron’, OEng. isarn/isern, OHG isarn, MDutch iser ‘iron’ (OIr. iarn). (The iron age came relatively late to Northern Europe, perhaps 400 BCE, and some connection to Celtic is likely; Kluge (2011) suggests that Celtic and Germanic borrowed the term from a third language, while Lehmann (1986) notes possible multiple borrowings from Celtic.)

Contact often also correlates with morphological reductions, e.g. case loss (O’Neil 1978). A standard narrative about Germanic is framed around such “simplifications”. As argued below, that view must be balanced against increasing complexity, including in the segmental inventory (larger vowel systems) and new inflection. Simplification is a frequent result of contact, but hardly inevitable (see below).

Germanic’s position within IE has been more controversial (see Polomé 1972). Some (e.g. Ringe 2006: 5–6) assign Germanic to a “central” group including Balto-Slavic, Indo-Iranian, Armenian and Greek. Vocabulary is shared in complex ways with north-western neighbors (Meillet 1967), perhaps reflecting later contacts rather than earlier genetic unity. Contact took place with pre-IE languages, other IE branches and non-IE languages, especially Finnic (Roberge 2010, Mailhammer & Vennemann 2015), muddying the waters between tree- and wave-like patterns. Like other IE languages, Germanic was likely forged from contact between Indo-Europeans and indigenous populations. Jutland (Denmark), southernmost Norway and Sweden, and the Baltic and North Sea coasts are likely the earliest area where Germanic was spoken, with ongoing contact with other (post-)IE groups and non-IE groups.
**PHONOLOGY**

**Consonants**

Germanic stops and fricatives differ systematically from IE, other segments less so. The IE laryngeals, on mainstream views, were lost early and have little relevance to Germanic (but see Müller 2007). Traces of laryngeal phonology are visible in the ablaut system (Ringe 2006: 80):

(3) PIE root-ablaut alternations  pre-PGmc root-ablaut alternations

\[
\begin{align*}
    a & \sim \emptyset & > & a \sim \emptyset \\
    e & \sim \emptyset \sim o & > & e \sim \emptyset \sim o \\
    h_1 e & \sim h_1 \sim h_1 o & > & e \sim \emptyset \sim o \\
    h_2 e & \sim h_2 \sim h_2 o & > & o \sim \emptyset \sim o \\
    h_3 e & \sim h_3 \sim h_3 o & > & e \sim \emptyset \sim o \\
    e h_1 & \sim h_1 \sim o h_1 & > & \ddot{e} \sim a \sim \ddot{o} \\
    e h_2 & \sim h_2 \sim o h_2 & > & a \sim a \sim \ddot{o} \\
    e h_3 & \sim h_3 \sim o h_3 & > & \ddot{o} \sim a \sim \ddot{o}
\end{align*}
\]

Similarly, whatever the status of IE palatal versus velar stops, both surface in Germanic as velars (Sihler 1995: 151–168):

(4) IE English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IE</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*yugom-</td>
<td>yoke ‘yoke’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ğenh₁-</td>
<td>kin ‘beget’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ğneh₃-</td>
<td>know ‘know’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IE syllabic resonants – liquids and nasals – resolve into *u plus resonant (Kluge 2011):

(5) pre-Germanic Germanic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IE</th>
<th>Germanic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*wr̥m-</td>
<td>*wurma- ‘worm’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>wl̥k</em>ō-</td>
<td>*wulfa- ‘wolf’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*pdher-</td>
<td>*under- ‘under’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*sᵐH-</td>
<td>*sumera ‘summer’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This leaves this pre-Germanic system:

**TABLE 8.1 PRE-GERMANIC CONSONANTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Labial</th>
<th>Coronal</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
<th>Labiovelar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stops</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>k*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>g*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murmured</td>
<td>bʰ</td>
<td>dʰ</td>
<td>gʰ</td>
<td>gʰ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricative</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonorants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liquid</td>
<td>l, r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glide</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>j</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Traditional IE obstruents differ from, yet correspond systematically to, Germanic:

### TABLE 8.2 IE AND GERMANIC STOPS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IE</th>
<th>Germanic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>voiceless</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
<td>*p</td>
<td>*f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coronal</td>
<td>*t</td>
<td>*θ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velar</td>
<td>*k</td>
<td>*κ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labiovelar</td>
<td>*k̂</td>
<td>*x̂ &gt; *ĥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>voiced</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
<td>*b</td>
<td>*p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coronal</td>
<td>*d</td>
<td>*t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velar</td>
<td>*g</td>
<td>*k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labiovelar</td>
<td>*ĝ</td>
<td>*κ̂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>voiced aspirate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
<td>*b̄</td>
<td>*b / *β</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coronal</td>
<td>*d̄</td>
<td>*d / *ð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velar</td>
<td>*ḡ</td>
<td>*g / *ɣ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labiovelar</td>
<td>*ḡ̄</td>
<td>*ḡ / *ɣ̄</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these changes (“Grimm’s Law”, Germanic Consonant Shift, First Sound Shift), one change, *p > *f, reflects a change in manner of articulation, from stop to fricative, while others involve laryngeal phonology (meaning “states of the glottis”, i.e. phenomena like voicing and aspiration, not IE laryngeals).

While the shift represents perhaps the most discussed sound change, discussion is often unclear about the precise laryngeal characterization of IE and Germanic stops and fricatives, especially with regard to the division of labor between phonology and phonetics. Crosslinguistically, laryngeal contrasts can be captured with three features, [voice], [spread glottis] and [constricted glottis], plus laryngeally unmarked or unspecified consonants (Iverson & Salmons 1995, Avery & Idsardi 2001). In many languages, these contrasts are enhanced by additional phonetic cues, particularly for phonation (Henton et al. 1992). The traditional IE obstruent system would have had unmarked stops (*p, *t, *k, etc.), voiced stops (*b, *d, *g, etc.) and stops marked by both [voice] and [spread glottis] (*b̄, *d̄, *ḡ, etc.). Earlier voiceless stops become voiceless fricatives (“spirantization”), perhaps triggered by aspiration, as an enhancement. (A shift to a [spread glottis] system may have preceded these changes.) IE voiced stops devoice, a process found in many languages, perhaps motivated by the challenge of maintaining voicing – which requires considerable air flow across the glottis, while air flow is blocked in stops. The third are traditional “voiced aspirates”; modern descriptions of Indic treat them as “murmured” or “breathy”, with a slightly open glottis with high air flow; these deaspirate in Germanic. Controversy surrounds whether these become voiced stops or fricatives. For instance, a form like *b̄hendh- becomes Gmc *bind-‘word’ from *wr̥dh-o-. We assume underspecification for [continuant], similar to contextual stop-fricative alternations in Spanish.

These changes – spirantization, devoicing, deaspiration – appear to be connected by encroachment of new sounds into the space of old ones or the filling of gaps created by earlier changes, “push” or “pull” chains respectively. On the former, if *d̄̄ deaspirated first, *d̄̄er- would have risked merger with *der-, triggering devoicing of *der- to *ter-. On the
latter, if *pel- become *fel-, the lack of voiceless stops might allow devoicing to fill this gap. This pull is sometimes motivated in terms of voiceless stops as “unmarked”, lacking laryngeal specification. (Wrinkles include labiovelars; see Salmons & Smith 2005.)

Germanic contrasts [spread glottis] or “aspirated” *p, *t, *k, etc. and unmarked *b, *d, *g, etc., rather than “voiceless” vs. “voiced”, making Germanic phonologically more different from IE than traditional views, with implications for later obstruent changes.¹ (Dutch and Yiddish are [voice] languages, in both languages likely due to contact with Romance and Slavic, respectively.)

A set of Germanic forms shows irregular voicing in fricatives, which once constituted a challenge to claims about the regularity of sound change:

(6) Verner’s Law

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Indo-European</th>
<th>Germanic</th>
<th>Modern Germanic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*bhrā́t- (Sanskrit)</td>
<td>*brōθer (Germanic)</td>
<td>*bruder (German)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mā́t- (Sanskrit)</td>
<td>*mōðer (Germanic)</td>
<td>*mutter (German)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verner (1875) famously established that this voicing was actually regular, conditioned by position of the IE “mobile” accent (§2.3), so that (expected) voiceless fricatives appeared where Sanskrit has a preceding accent and voiced when the accent did not precede. Germanic provides evidence for the position of the IE accent in verbal paradigms, reflected in a few modern alternations like Eng. *was ~ were (*/r/ from *z). Unmarked stops (Germ., Eng., Dan. <b, d, g>) are, as noted, treated as unspecified. They often lack phonetic voicing in initial and final position (systematically in Icelandic), but in a voice-friendly environment like between vowels, they are phonetically voiced. A similar kind of “passive voicing” (Iverson & Salmons 2003, among others) may have been at work in Verner’s Law: IE accent was likely realized with stiff vocal folds, so that a preceding accent would inhibit fricative voicing.

Another “exception” is equally important, but never played the pivotal role that Verner patterns did concerning regularity: IE voiceless stops did not shift after *s: *sper- retains its stop in modern Eng. *spear, Germ. *Speer. The modern absence of aspiration – or phonological specification for [spread glottis] – supports connecting spirantization to aspiration.

These developments illustrate continuity and change within Germanic. Complex consonantal “chain shifts” like Grimm’s Law are uncommon in the world’s languages, but occur again within later Germanic. High German is defined traditionally by a set of changes known often as the Second Consonant Shift (“High German Consonant Shift”). Like in Grimm, stops become spirants, though variably by environment and place of articulation, and in certain varieties and context showing a partial shift to affricate rather than fricative. Intervocalic stops are prone to shift but initial or post-consonantally less so, and coronals preferably over velars, as in English (unshifted) and German (shifted):

(7) The Second Consonant Shift

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>German</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>path</td>
<td>Pfad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>helfen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>Zaun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>essen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cool</td>
<td>kühle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>melken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>Buch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Modern parallels include affrication of initial /t/ in some varieties of Danish and affrication/spirantization in Liverpool English (e.g. Honeybone 2002).

The Second Sound Shift has a broader chain-like character. The lenis (in traditional terms “voiced”) *d becomes /t/ except in the north: Eng. drink is cognate with Germ. trinken. Farther south, *g becomes /k/, and *b becomes /p/: Old Bavarian perec ‘mountain’, cf. Berg. Possibly related is the “stopping” of interdental *θ across most of Germanic. Excepting variation based on dialect and the environment, the basic progressions of the sound shifts are illustrated in (8).

(8)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indo-European</th>
<th>Germanic</th>
<th>Old High German</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bʰ dʰ gʰ</td>
<td>b d g</td>
<td>b d g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p t k</td>
<td>p t k</td>
<td>p t k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f þ x&gt;h</td>
<td>pf ts kh</td>
<td>f d h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp st sk</td>
<td>sp st sk</td>
<td>sp st sk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other widespread patterns include final laryngeal neutralization, “final devoicing” (Iverson & Salmons 2011). Some patterns of variability, like a wide range of realizations of rhotics across languages and dialects, continue ancient variation (Howell 1991).

Overall, attested changes often parallel those posited for prehistory and early history, with occasional twists on claims about innovation: while English is often tagged as an ill-behaved member of the family, its obstruent system remains surprisingly close to West Germanic.

Vowels

Early Germanic maintains a vowel system close to that of IE after the emergence of distinct long vowels, with a five-vowel system with a length contrast. Prehistoric low-back vowels merged, in different directions by length:

(9) (late) Indo-European > Germanic

*ɡʰans → *gans ‘goose’
*orbʰ- → *arb- ‘heir, inheritance’
*bʰrāter → *brōθer ‘brother’
*plō(w)- → *flo- ‘flow’

Such changes have parallels in IE and are reenacted with the contemporary North American merger of the low-back vowels /a/ and /ɔ/.

A further early change is the emergence of a new long vowel, ę. In West Germanic, old *ę (“*ǣ”, occasionally written *ǣ) had lowered, and the new vowel, attested in Old High German as ia, appears in cognates of here and as the stem vowel in class VII strong verbs of the let type, etc.
The Proto-Germanic vowel system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short vowels</th>
<th>Long vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*widuw- ‘widow’</td>
<td>*wīd- ‘wide, broad’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*fīmf ‘five’</td>
<td>*sīm- ‘string’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*et- ‘eat’</td>
<td>*dēd- ‘deed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nas- ‘nose’</td>
<td>*brōθer ‘brother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wull- ‘wool’</td>
<td>*mūs ‘mouse’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Earlier *ey monophthongizes to *ī. Aside from that, Germanic also included three “diphthongs”; that the *a in these participates in the low-back merger may suggest that these may have been vowel-glide sequences rather than single units.

Proto-Germanic “diphthongs”

aj  
ew  
aw  

*ajh-/ajg- ‘have’  
*skajd- ‘separate’  
*dewp- ‘deep’  
*kews- ‘choose’  
*rawd- ‘red’  
*hawzij- ‘hear’

From there, things become steadily more complicated, driven by patterns of vowel to vowel assimilation. Umlaut can be understood only in the context of height harmony and consonantal conditioning. In Germanic, vowels assimilated partially to the height of following vowels, e.g. /e, o/ > /i, u/ before high vowels, as well as before coda nasals (with parallels in some modern dialects), and Gothic shows a general raising of /e/, though /e/ still appears before /h, hʷ, r/. A parallel lowering before /a/ is also illustrated below:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*geban</td>
<td>OHG geban ~ gibis ‘give ~ you give’, but Goth. giban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*helspan</td>
<td>OHG helsan ~ hilfs ‘help ~ you help’, but Goth. itan ‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ed-</td>
<td>ONor. eta, OHG eýjan, but Goth. itan ‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bendan</td>
<td>OHG bindan ‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wiraz</td>
<td>OHG wer ‘man’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*juka</td>
<td>OHG joh ‘yoke’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Within Continental West Germanic “primary” umlaut of /a/ to /e/ before i/j shows raising but with additional fronting. That process was blocked dialectally by coda /h, r, l/.
It preceded the general fronting of all back vowels since these are different structural patterns. Moreover, failure of umlaut is attested in southern German dialects (particularly with geminate velars) and in western Netherlandic (blocking environments or ā) (Bucchi 1995, Iverson & Salmons 1996, Howell & Salmons 1997). In other daughters, chronological differentiation is not demonstrable, e.g. Old English. Conditioning also differs across the family: North Germanic umlauts heavy stems (gestr ‘guest’ < *gastiz) but not light ones (stadr ‘place’ < *staðir) of the relevant morphological classes (Iverson & Salmons 2012). See §3.2 on the morphologization of umlaut.

Above we discussed chain-like consonant shifts, e.g. with fortis or voiceless stops repeatedly becoming affricates and/or fricatives. Similar changes are pervasive in the vowel system. “Chain shifts” have been extensively described for North and West Germanic (Sievers 1876, Küspert 1988, Wiesinger 1970), and related shifts are underway across North America (Labov 1994, among many others). Consistent trends emerge across these independent changes: raising of long or tense vowels, lowering of short or lax vowels and fronting of back vowels.

Prosody

IE “accent” was marked by pitch and was mobile in that it could fall on different syllables within the paradigm, like in modern Russian (§2.1). The Germanic “Accent Shift” fixes the accent on the initial syllable, obviously after Verner’s Law. Germanic stress correlates broadly with vowel duration and intensity. Kiparsky & Halle (1977) and Halle (1997) provide phonological accounts of the change, while Salmons (1992) argues that language contact played a role, alongside such language-internal motivations.

The effects of this shift are far-reaching, including ties to innovations in verbal and pronominal agreement. For example, Gothic first and second person dual subject pronouns wit and jut seem to derive from the stems of plural weis and jus and an enclitic variant of ‘two’, twái/twa/twōs. Clitics were arguably present in earliest Old Norse (Faarlund 2004: 35, though see Biberauer & Roberts 2008: 105) but disappeared with the development of the Scandinavian lexical accent, ca. 800 (Oftedal 1952, Kristoffersen 2011). This accent counteracted the clause-based prosody of other Germanic languages; Scandinavian lexical items determined prosody, independent of clausal position.

West Germanic reduction of final unstressed syllables introduces paradigmatic ambiguity, since Germanic typically marked information on suffixes. Consider the three weak verb classes well attested in West Germanic and distinguished by final vowels (§3.1, §4).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.3 OLD HIGH GERMAN WEAK VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verb class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As unstressed vowels reduced to schwa, these distinctions were lost. Such increased ambiguity within inflectional paradigms, often presumed to be driven by reduction and subsequent loss of morphological marking, correlates with an increase in periphrastic forms, e.g. higher frequency of pronominal subjects (Axel & Weiß 2011) and development of obligatory definite articles in Old High German (§5.5).

Other processes create new affixes and inflectional categories. Typically unstressed elements like pronouns cliticize onto a preceding word, creating preferred foot structures,
and pronominal enclitics can be reinterpreted as inflectional affixes or pronouns (De Vogelaer 2010). The OHG 1 pl. verbal -emes/-emēs, as in habemēs, alternates with a short form, habēn, both meaning ‘we have’. The longer inflection is likely from an enclitic uuis ‘we’, with assimilation of the coda nasal /n/ or /m/ to the bilabial glide in the onset of the pronoun, yielding /m/. Axel (2007: 305) and Axel & Weiβ (2011) show that the long ending regularly appears without a co-occurring subject pronoun, arguing that the long ending is in fact a reanalyzed pronominal form; subject pronouns are obligatory with the “short” ending (see also Early Modern Nuremberg -ma (1 pl.); Fertig 2000: 47). Rhotacized forms regularly appear in all Germanic languages other than Gothic, so the innovative inflection with OHG s reflects a prehistoric process.

Similar are innovative 1 pl. pronouns, including Flemish, Zeelandic and Brabantic 1 pl. me, derived from enclitic wij/we and the preceding nasal /n/ of the verbal inflection, which can appear not only phonetically conditioned but also in topic position (De Vogelaer 2010: 15); and Bavarian 1 pl. mir/ma from wir (Fuß 2004, 2005), which may similarly appear in topic position. Analogous pronominal innovations in North Germanic similarly derived Old Norwegian 1 pl. mit/mēr from wit/wēr, prevalent between 1200–1400 CE; and Sw. 2 pl. ni from i during the 17th century (Haugen 1976: 302, 375). Innovative dir also appears in numerous dialects of German (Weise 1907: 201ff.), from reinterpretation of 2 pl. inflectional -t as part of pronominal ihr.

A final prosodically-driven change is complementizer agreement (C-agr), from the reanalysis of pronominal elements as inflectional affixes. C-agr is possible on a number of different lexical categories heading a subordinate clause (Reis 1985, Kathol 2001). C-agr is attested across multiple non-standard West Germanic varieties as early as the mid 13th century (Goeman 1997). An oft-cited example is from Bavarian (Bayer 1984: 233), where the complementizer wenn ‘if’ inflects for person and number, here 2 sg.

(14) Wennst   kummst
   if-2SG. PRO come-2SG.
   ‘If you come’

Similar to innovative inflectional affixes and pronouns, the encliticization of unstressed pronouns to a stressed lexeme is argued to be a historical prerequisite for complementizer agreement (Weiß 2005, forthcoming). Together with innovations in the verbal and pronominal paradigm, C-agr illustrates prosodically based complexification and is relatively stable in non-standard varieties and language islands (Bousquette 2014).

In another area of prosody, syllable and foot structure, the classic insight into Germanic syllable structure is “Prokosch’s Law” (the “Weight Law”), that stressed syllables must contain two moras. Murray & Vennemann (1983) show a conspiratorial pattern of sound changes in all three branches of Germanic consistent with one syllabification of medial consonants: (1) West Germanic gemination, (2) North Germanic vowel lengthening and (3) Gothic glide strengthening.

These effects all fall out, they argue, from the conflict between Prokosch’s Law (which they call the “Stressed Syllable Law”) and the Syllable Contact Law, namely (1983: 520, cf. Vennemann 1988, $ = syllable boundary):

(15) Syllable Contact Law. The preference for a syllable structure $A$SB, where $A$ and $B$ are marginal segments and $a$ and $b$ are the Consonantal Strength values of $A$ and $B$ respectively, increases with the value of $a$ minus $b$.

For example, Icelandic and Faroese show slightly different patterns of syllabification in CVCCV- words, according to consonantal “strength”. Icelandic allows more word-internal
onset clusters, \( p, t, k, s + j, v, r \), so \( \text{vis}\$na \) ‘wither’ but \( \text{vö}\$k\text{va} \) ‘to water’; Faroese only tolerates \( p, t, k + r, l \), except \( tl \), so \( \text{sjög}\$v\text{ur} \) ‘sea’ but \( \text{sü}\$\text{kri} \) ‘sugar’ (1983: 522–523).

Similarly, Dresher & Lahiri (1991) propose that a wide range of early Germanic sound patterns can be captured in terms of foot structure. They define the “Germanic foot” as “maximally binary, left-headed, where the head must dominate at least two moras” (1991: 251). The head could include one or two syllables, and the non-head element may contain only one mora. That is, a foot required a head of two moras, which could come from one heavy syllable or from two light ones. In their analysis of Old English High Vowel Deletion (simplifying), high vowels delete only in the weak branch of a foot, but those in the head are maintained: \( CV:C \) or \( CVCCV \), in OEng. \( \text{go}\$$du < *\text{go}\$d\text{u} \) ‘good’ or \( \text{wor}\text{d} < *\text{wordu} \) ‘word’, for example) versus \( CV\text{CV} \), in OEng. \( \text{lofu} \) ‘praises’.

In prosody, Germanic and its daughter languages historically also show patterns where prosodically weak, phonetically reduced elements affix to adjacent syllables (as in the cliticization examples above). They thereafter could be incorporated into a “prosodic word” (pword), allowing processes otherwise confined to word boundaries, as noted in Somers Wicka’s (2009: 8) treatment of the Otfrid’s OHG Evangelienbuch. Hanna (2009) revisits Jespersen’s Cycle, also in the Evangelienbuch, as well as in the MHG Nibelungenlied, arguing that “secondary stress [as] the outcome of an interaction between phonology and syntax . . . is sensitive to rhythmic context, to syllable structure, and to vowel height” (2009: 201). Characteristic of Germanic even from early attestations is the phonology’s sensitivity not only to foot structure but also to syntactic environment.

Smith (2004) and Smith & Ussishkin (2014) frame foot and other prosodic structures in terms of templates, allowing us to capture conspiracy-like effects here, just as Murray and Vennemann do for the syllable level.

The traditional view of Germanic prosody is that the accent shift triggered weakening of final syllables leading to the dramatic reductions, “simplifications”, in inflectional morphology, discussed just below. We have also illustrated how reduction can have the opposite effect, increased complexity via cliticization and grammaticalization. More broadly, a simple “phonology first” view of such changes has been questioned within Germanic and beyond recently by Enger (2013) and Menz (2010). Enger (2013: 18) concludes that sound change alone cannot account for reductions in the history of Norwegian, arguing for a driving role for an autonomous morphology.

**MORPHOLOGY**

**Inflectional morphology**

Germanic strong verbs exploit ablaut for tense. Traditionally divided into 7 classes, the first 5 are inherited from IE and involve a present tense \( e\)-grade, which alternates with an \( a\)-grade in the preterit singular, and zero-grade in the preterit plural and past participle.

| Table 8.4 Germanic Strong Verbs, Classes I–V |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Template | Present \( e\)-grade | Preterit singular \( a\)-grade | Preterit plural \( \text{Ø}\)-grade | Past participle \( \text{Ø}\)-grade | Meaning |
| I | CejC | dreiban | draib | dribum | dribans | ‘drive’ |
| | | reidan | raid | ridum | ridans | ‘ride’ |
| II | CewC | leugan | lang | lugum | lugans | ‘lie’ |
| | | sleupan | slaup | stupum | stupans | ‘slip’ |
This so-called e-group is built around the CV templates shown in Table 8.4 (second column). In the absence of a preterit plural root vowel, glides in class I and II develop respectively into a short /i/ and short /u/; in class III the liquids and nasals epenthesize /u/ (§1). The long /e/ in the zero-grade of class V and in the preterit plural of class IV are innovations on analogy to other strong classes (see below).

Class VI and VII are often characterized by an /a/ rather than /e/ root vowel, and utilize two different strategies for differentiating between the principal parts (van Coetsem 1994: ch. 8). Class VI verbs show /oː/ in the preterit singular and plural, and the same, short a-grade form for the participle as in the present. Class VII verbs show the same syncrasy between the present and participle forms, but mark the preterit singular and plural by partial reduplication. Except for s+stop clusters, Gothic reduplicates only the initial consonant(s) and a fixed short /e/, as in *flōkan ‘bewail’ ~ <faiflok> containing reduplicated [fe-], ‘they bewailed’, with fixed vowel and simplified onset cluster. With s+stop clusters, we find reduplication of st- and sk-, as in gastaldan ‘to receive’ ~ gastaistald (Nehemiah 5:16) and afskaidan ‘to part ways’ ~ afskaiskaidun (Luke 9:33). Class VII verbs are not attested as a productive tense-marking strategy in North or West Germanic (Bammesberger 1986: 64, Ringe 2006: 248–250). Still, while the e-grade and a-grade strong verbs mark the principal parts differently, a-grade class VII verbs look strikingly like class I–III verbs of the e-grade in their consonants, and class VI verbs are built similarly to class IV and V (van Coetsem 1994: 127).

Returning to the origin of /ē/ in the preterit class IV and V, the structural similarity to class IV verbs suggests analogous use of a long vowel to distinguish tense. The reconstructed zero-grade from geban ‘give’ would be *gbum in the preterit plural, not a licit consonant cluster in Germanic; a lengthened root vowel on analogy to the class VI verbs repairs an otherwise unpronounceable consonant sequence. Beyond repair strategies, analogy must also account for the presence of /ē/ in IV verbs like stelan ~ stēlum ‘steal ~ stole.p.l. and kʷeman ~ kʷēnum ‘come ~ came.p.l.’, the expected forms of which would have been stelan ~ *stulum and kʷeman ~ *kʷumum, since zero-grade liquids and nasals develop epenthetic /u/ in Germanic, preserved in the preterit presents. This is also the case with class III verbs helpan ~ hulpum and drinkan ~ drunkum. Analogy does not occur since class III verbs are structurally similar to class VII, which does not use vowel length alternations to distinguish principal parts.

In addition to the 7 strong classes, weak verbs – see §4 – formed their preterits with a /d/ or /t/ suffix, as in Modern Eng. -ed or Modern Germ. -te. This “dental preterit” was organized into four classes, which often correspond to particular functional distinctions: (i) causatives/denominatives, (ii) iteratives, (iii) duratives and (iv) inchoatives.

The trend is a steady expansion of weak verbs at the expense of the strong (cf. Lieberman et al. 2007, Carroll et al. 2012). The process has left many residues and much variation at any given stage. Historically strong class III OEng. meltan ‘melt’ has become weak (e.g. melted) but preserves a frozen adjectival form, molten, derived from the strong paradigm. Ongoing change is visible in Modern Germ. backen ‘bake’, which has an archaic strong preterit buk alongside the more common, innovative backte in the 1/3 sg., but the strong past participle gebacken. Movement in the other direction is rarer,
e.g. American English *dive*, historically weak, has developed a strong preterit *dove*, likely on analogy to verbs such as *drive ~ drove*.

A last category is the so-called preterit presents, verbs with a preterit form but present meaning. This category includes what have become our modern modal verbs, e.g. OHG *mugan* ‘may’, *skulan* ‘shall’, *wellen* ‘want’; others like *muozan* ‘must’, *kunnan* ‘can’, *durfan* ‘be allowed to’ (ONor. *purfa* ‘require, need’, Modern Dutch *durven* ‘dare’). Early on, these arguably acted more like full verbs. These maintain archaisms from the strong paradigms, including the syncretism of the first and third person singular. Additionally, since the preterit presents already have a strong preterit form in the present, the past is formed by adding the weak dental suffix.

**Nominal system**

The IE system of case, number and gender is complex relative to most attested languages, including Germanic. IE had 8 cases: nominative, accusative, dative, genitive, ablative, locative, instrumental and vocative. Germanic is reconstructed as having six, based on attestations in the earliest texts. The early daughters retain four robustly: Nominative, Accusative, Dative and Genitive, and two more in limited fashion: Vocative is attested only in Gothic, and Instrumental is attested in West Germanic. The receding of the Vocative and Instrumental are early examples of case loss. Vocative was absorbed into other classes; even in Gothic it was already identical in form to the Nominative in the plural, a pattern inherited from PIE. Vocative differed in form from the nominative singular only when the nominative singular ended in *-s*, which includes only Gothic masculine *a*-stems (IE short *a*-stems) and their subclasses. In that event, the vocative was identical in form to the accusative singular (*wulfs* ‘wolf’ NOM.SG.; *wulf* ‘wolf’ ACC./VOC.SG. An exceptional case is the *u*-stem *sunus* ‘son’ NOM.SG.; *sumu* ‘son’ ACC./VOC.SG.

The instrumental was attested in Old High German but restricted to a subset of nominal classes even early, specifically the masculine and neuter *a*-stems, the masculine *u*-stems and the masculine and feminine *i*-stems. Some of the nouns belonging to these classes are particularly well suited to instrumental use, as in *swërt* ‘sword’ (neuter *a*-stem), *scaft* ‘spear’ (feminine *i*-stem) and *witu* ‘wood’ (masculine *u*-stem, OEng. *wudu*), as in (16) from the Hildebrandslied, l. 40. Such an example is provided below, in (17), from the Hildebrandslied l. 37, as Haðubrant expresses his distrust of his opponent (his father, Hildebrand).

(16) *wili mih dinu speru werpan*

want.2SG.PRET.OPT. me.ACC.SG. your.INSTR. spear.INSTR.SG. throw

‘You would want to kill (lit. ‘throw’) me with your spear’

Haðubrant’s utterance three lines earlier shows an instrumental – doubly marked morphologically and by a preposition, *mit* ‘with’ – as he suggests how the untrusted Hildebrand should hand over an armband as a gift.

(17) *mit geru scal man geba infahan*

with spear(point).INSTR.SG. should one gifts receive

‘One should receive gifts with the point of the spear.’

Eventually the dative incorporates the function of the instrumental, most often also marked with a preposition. This is likely accelerated by the propensity for heavy *a*-stems in particular to appear without inflectional morphology, due to both their syllable structure and analogy to uninflected nominative and accusative forms in the paradigm (Braune & Eggers 1987: 182–183).
Number is similar to IE, with singular, plural and dual. The dual was restricted in the earliest attestations. While dual pronouns exist in Old Norse, Old English, Old Saxon and Gothic, only Gothic retains a verbal paradigm specific to the dual; in other languages, dual pronouns inflect as plural (Howe 1996).

Gender largely echoes what is reconstructed for (late) IE. Germanic retains three genders – masculine, feminine and neuter – but daughters tend to lose this distinction in the plural. While many early languages maintained gender-specific inflections in the nominal paradigm (e.g. for a group of men), variation increases when the plural involves nouns of more than one gender. For example, Luke 8:1–4 (Codex Argenteus) describes a gathering of both men and women who listen to Jesus preach. Following a dative plural (which is ambiguous for all genders in the pronoun and strong adjectives), the relative pronoun for the gathering of men and women is masculine plural þaiei: gaqumanaim þan hiunam managaim jah þaim þaiei us baurgim gaiddjedun du imma, qap þairh gajukon: (‘And when many people were gathered together, and were come to him out of every city, he spake by a parable:’, Luke 8:4, www.wulfila.be). Masculine is sometimes the default for indefinites (cf. Codex Argenteus, Luke 8:13), but also appears as a masculine plural relative pronoun þaiei, even anaphorically to a feminine singular noun so managei ‘the multitude’, alja so managei, þaiei ni kunmun witop, fraqipanai sind ‘but this multitude who do not know the law are cursed’ (Codex Argenteus, John 7:49). Over time, the trend is to retain gender distinctions in the singular but to collapse gender into a unified plural in the nominal and pronominal paradigms (except Modern Icelandic; Einarsson 1945).

The nominal system remains based on inherited classes, organized primarily around thematic vowels and secondarily around gender. Key Germanic noun classes include the a-stems (masculine and neuter, IE o-stems), o-stems (feminine, IE a-stems), u-stems (masculine and feminine), i-stems and subclasses of these. Consonant stems include the r-stems (a small class, familial relations), n-stems (the basis for new weak adjective endings) and nd-stems (based on participles). Additionally, there are smaller classes like the -iz/az stems (originally comprising names for baby animals; this class over time comes to play a major role in German plural formation, along with i-stems).

Masculine a-stems, illustrated with ‘day’ in Table 8.5, are one of the largest and most stable noun classes. Still, changes are visible even early in the textual evidence of the collapse of some parts of the paradigm, due to a combination of sound change and (subsequent) morphological changes.

### TABLE 8.5 A-STEM MASCULINE NOUNS

(adapted from Prokosch 1939: 241–242; Braune & Eggers 1987: 182)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Germanic</th>
<th>Gothic</th>
<th>Old Norse</th>
<th>Old High German</th>
<th>Old Saxon</th>
<th>Old English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*dagaz</td>
<td>dags</td>
<td>dagr</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>dag</td>
<td>dæg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*daga(n)</td>
<td>dag</td>
<td>dag</td>
<td>tag</td>
<td>dag</td>
<td>dæg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*dagas(a)</td>
<td>dagis</td>
<td>dags</td>
<td>tages (-as)</td>
<td>dage(-as)</td>
<td>deges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*dagai</td>
<td>daga</td>
<td>degi</td>
<td>tage (-a)</td>
<td>dage(-a)</td>
<td>dege</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*dagō</td>
<td>dagu</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>dagon</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>*dag</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*dagōzez</td>
<td>dagōs</td>
<td>dagar</td>
<td>taga (-ā)</td>
<td>dagos, -as, -a</td>
<td>dagas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>*daganz</td>
<td>dagans</td>
<td>daga</td>
<td>taga (-ā)</td>
<td>dagos, -as, -a</td>
<td>dagas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*dagō(n)</td>
<td>dagē</td>
<td>daga</td>
<td>tago</td>
<td>dago</td>
<td>daga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*dagamaz</td>
<td>dagam</td>
<td>dogum</td>
<td>tagum, -om; -un, -on</td>
<td>dagon, -un</td>
<td>dagum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*dagamiz?</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>?*dagōzez</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gothic maintains a comparatively unambiguous paradigm (except the vocative), while later daughters exhibit changes that introduce ambiguity or reduce uniformity across the paradigm. For example, West Germanic languages collapse the nominative and accusative singular, either through the extension of the accusative to the nominative, or due to the loss of the nominal inflection -s (in Gothic) or -r (in Old Norse). A similar collapse is visible in the nominative and accusative plural, though Old English and Old Saxon extend the nominative into the accusative, while Old High German extends the accusative into the nominative. In terms of sound change, Old Norse shows i-umlaut in dative singular, and u-umlaut in the dative plural, resulting in three different vowels across the paradigm. Old English, on the other hand, experienced Anglo-Frisian fronting of /a/ to /æ/ (“brightening”), visible in the singular but reversed in the plural, by height harmony with the suffixal /a/; the dative plural change was the same process. This split introduces an alternation correlated with the singular/plural distinction.

The increasing tendency to mark singular/plural within the existing nominal class was widespread across Germanic. Similarly, nouns realign from one noun class to another or adopt new inflections based on formal similarities to other classes. Consider the Old High German comparison below, between masculine i-stem gast ‘guest’, neuter -iz/-az stem lamb ‘lamb’ and neuter a-stem wort ‘word’.

| TABLE 8.6 EXAMPLES OF OTHER NOUN CLASSES (adapted from Sonderegger 2003; Prokosch 1939: 245; Braune & Eggers 1987: 182–198) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | oldest OHG | late OHG | OHG | oldest OHG | late OHG |
| **singular** | | | | | |
| nom. | gast | gast | lamb | wort | wort |
| acc. | gast | gast | lamb | wort | wort |
| gen. | gastes | gastes | lambes | wortes | wortes |
| dat. | gaste | gaste | lambe | worte | worte |
| instr. | gastu/gastiu | — | lambu,-o | wortu | — |
| **plural** | | | | | |
| nom. | gasti | geste | lembir | wort | wort |
| acc. | gasti | geste | lembir | wort | wort |
| gen. | gasteo,-io | gesto | lembiro | worto | worto |
| dat. | gastim | gesten | lembirum,-un,-on | wortum | worten |

Through sound changes, especially the rise of umlaut in plurals, the clearest difference in the paradigm is between singular and plural, marked by a vowel alternation originally conditioned by suffixal -i (gast, oldest OHG); this remains as a morphologically conditioned vowel alternation after the conditioning high vowel has reduced to a schwa and disappeared. The same alternation arises for lamb. The neuter a-stems, like wort, have more paradigmatic ambiguity, with uninflected forms for nominative and accusative, in both the singular and plural. At the same time, the inflectional endings in the singular are identical to those of the masculine i-stems and of the -iz/-az stems. In late Old High German and especially in Middle High German, some former a-stems mark plurality with umlaut, on analogy to unrelated noun classes, in order to repair a deficient paradigm. Crucially, this involves the spread of a portmanteau affix from one class as a plural marker in another. Some of these include MHG rat ~ reder ‘wheels’, blad ~ bleter ‘leaves, pages’
and hūs ~ hiuser ‘houses’. This is indicative of the tendency toward marking of number to expand at the expense of noun classes (Pluralprofilierung; Luiten 2011, Luiten et al. 2013, and many others), and reflects the weakening of the inherited noun class system.

One additional noun class deserves mention, n-stems, from which the so-called weak adjectival endings were derived. Not inherited from IE, weak adjectival endings were employed in Germanic to mark definiteness (Behaghel 1923: 197); the use of inherited, strong adjectival endings marked indefinites. In short, definiteness marking in Germanic arose with an innovative system of complementary adjectival paradigms before the development of definite or indefinite articles (Harbert 2007: 130ff.). For pronouns, the fullest available historical treatment is Howe 1996.

**WORD FORMATION**

Trips (2014: 385), focusing on Germanic and noting some exceptions, writes this about diachronic derivational morphology:

Much has been written about derivation, and more generally about word formation, from a theoretical and synchronic perspective describing and analyzing instances of derivation in many different contemporary languages. Much less attention has been paid to historical aspects of derivation (or word formation), especially to the rise of affixes and systematic descriptions and analyses of affixal inventories available in diachronic stages of languages.

We briefly survey some key developments in nominal and verbal derivation diachronically. Reflecting syntactic patterns, compounding is restricted by the relative ordering of constituents. Modern West Germanic dialects and languages exhibit both left-headed and right-headed structures, meaning that various grammatical elements either precede or follow their complements. For example, prepositions precede the nouns they modify; in English, verbs precede their complement – often a noun – but the opposite is true for German and Dutch. Reflecting the underlying typology of the respective systems as either left- or right-headed, English and German may have more or less free combinations of adjectives, nouns and verbs in the formation of nominal compounds. However, a preposition must uniformly precede its complement, even in word formation, since postpositional prepositions are a mere subset of prepositions as a whole (e.g. underworld, German Unterseeboot ‘submarine’; lit. ‘undersea boat’ (König & Gast 2012: 260ff.). Additionally, verb-object compounds – even in Modern English – are no longer productive. Compounds such as turncoat, cutthroat and spendthrift sound archaic. Object-verb constructions like barnburner and fishfry are acceptable for most speakers, and the strategy is productive for new compounds.

Germanic compounding is more rigid, being exclusively right-headed, reflecting the syntax of the early Germanic period (Harbert 2007: 30ff.). Runic and Gothic compounds of two nouns reflect older “stem-based” compounds, in which the first element is not a stand-alone noun, marked only with a root and thematic noun class marker; case is assigned only to the rightmost element in the compound (Lass 1994: 194). Possible remnants of these earlier stages include such examples as Schafskopf (a card game, literally ‘sheep’s head’), which shows an archaic word-internal genitive inflection on the first element of the compound, a paradigmatic Fugenelement ‘linking element’. A non-paradigmatic -s is obligatory in some noun-noun compounds where not historically present, such as when the first element is feminine, e.g. Schönheitsideal ‘ideal of beauty’ (cf. die Schönheit). Duden
(2006: 721–723) suggests all linking elements are at least homonyms of original (genitive) inflectional endings; linking elements generally no longer serve an inflectional purpose but rather are primarily phonologically conditioned and characterized by considerable regional variation. Evidence of earlier stages is also reflected when the first element is a weak noun (from the earlier n-stem class): *Wangenbein* ‘cheekbone’, cf. *die Wange*; *Zungenspitze* ‘tip of the tongue’, cf. *die Zunge*; *nach Herzenslied* ‘to your heart’s content’, cf. *das Herz*.

In the verb system, word formation through the affixation of prefixes and suffixes affected both the syntax and morphology of Germanic. Kuroda’s (2007) study of verbal prefixes in Otfrid’s *Evangelienbuch* shows the development of productive verbal prefixes by Old High German, which were built on basic verb forms: though the basic verb form may only have taken a prepositional phrase as complement, verbal prefixes *bi-*, *fir-*, *int-*, *ir-*, *missi-*, *ver-*, and *zir-*, supplement the valence of the basic form to allow for accusative objects; this is also possible even when the basic verb is intransitive (2007: 31). Perhaps more striking are instances where verbal prefixes modify the meaning of the verb, and “[d]er Bedeutungsunterschied, der zwischen dem Basisverb und dem Kompositum besteht, ist jedoch so drastisch, dass dazwischen ein Ableitungsverhältnis kaum ange- nommen werden kann” (the difference in meaning which exists between the base verb and the compound is, however, so drastic that a derivational relationship between them can hardly be assumed; 2007: 41). This trend toward greater verbal prefixation is attested in Old High German and increases in frequency toward the modern period.

A well-known Germanic derivational pattern is the already-noted rise of weak verbs, marking the past tense by a dental suffix (Hill 2004, 2010, Ringe 2006). Four classes, based at least originally on the semantic properties or grammatical origin of the weak verb, are often labeled *i*–*iv* (Prokosch 1939: 154–159). Class *i* is “causatives" formed by adding a *-jan* suffix to an existing lexical item. They are often derived from the preterit singular (a-grade) forms of strong verbs, or from existing nouns, i.e. Gothic *mats* ‘meat, food’ > *matjan* ‘to eat’. This yields a variety of minimal pairs that have persisted into the modern languages, e.g. Modern Germ. *trinken* ‘drink’ > *tränken* ‘water [a horse]’ (Modern Eng. *drink ~ drench*), *sitzen/setzen, liegen/legen, essen/ätzen*, etc. Class *i* verbs were also built from adjectives, as in Goth. *daups* ‘dead’ yielding *daubjan* ‘kill’; or OHG *frewide* ‘happiness’ yielding *frewen* (from *frawjan*) ‘make happy’.

Class *ii* verbs are often denominatives, often iterative. An example is OHG *salbōn*, ‘anoint, apply salve’. This class is also exemplified by such OHG verbs as *dionōn* ‘serve’ and *samanōn* ‘gather’. Class *iii* is typically durative, e.g. OHG *habēn* ‘have’, *lebēn* ‘live’ and *wonēn* ‘reside’, all denoting events occurring over stretches of time. Still, some variability is possible between class *ii* and *iii* verbs, especially when the verb is ambiguously iterative or durative, as in OHG *hazzōn/hazzēn* ‘hate’, *klagōn/klagēn* ‘complain’, *fastōn/fastēn* ‘fast (i.e. to abstain from eating)’ and *wīsōn/wīsēn* ‘search for something; visit’ (Braune & Eggers 1987: 299). On the one hand, that some verbs jump between class *ii* and *iii* implies that these classes were semantically transparent to some degree still in Old High German; on the other hand, confusion regarding class assignment may also suggest that distinctions between classes were disappearing. This was surely further complicated by the reduction of the unstressed vowels that distinguished verb classes (see above).

The fourth class has a *-nan* suffix and inchoative meaning (Prokosch 1939: 156–157). It was a small class, not productive in West Germanic. Goth. *gadaupnan* ‘die’, *fraquistnan* ‘perish’ and Old Norse *vakna* ‘awaken’ convey a change of state, while Goth. *fullnan* ‘become full’ and *usmērnan* ‘be proclaimed’ express the beginning of a process. Already disappearing as a morphologically marked verbal class from many of the daughter languages in the earliest texts – including notably West Germanic – the syntactic function of this class is later subsumed by the periphrastic passive.
The weak preterit’s origin is debated, possibly deriving from an IE past participle suffix *-to- or a grammaticalized form of IE *dëh₁/-dëh₂- ‘put’. One view reconstructs its origin in reduplicated plural forms attested in Gothic, which look like a grammaticalized form of an IE strong preterit; the lack of reduplicating forms in later-attested North and West Germanic – excepting OEng. dyde > Modern Eng. did – results from haplology (Ringe 2006). Arguing that the North and West Germanic non-reduplicated suffixes are more indicative of the proto-form, Hill (2004, 2010) reconstructs the origins of the dental preterit using an IE imperfect, which “secondarily adopted the optative inflections of the corresponding reduplicated perfect”; the differences between North and West Germanic, on the one hand, and Gothic, on the other, result from divergent leveling of the Germanic paradigm (2010: 448–451).

SYNTAX

We now turn to interactions across syntax, morphology and phonology (interfaces) with attention to grammaticalization and ongoing changes: word order and verb second, complementizers, definiteness and changes in tense-mood-aspect.

Word order

Syntactic reconstruction is one of the most contested areas of linguistic prehistory (Ferraresi & Goldbach 2008 and now Walkden 2014). Still, the predominant view is that Germanic maintained inherited IE verb-final word order, and German and Dutch maintain some verb-final constructions throughout history (e.g. subordinate clauses, impersonal imperatives). However, from the earliest attestations in Runic and Gothic, fronting/raising of finite verbs occurs, pragmatically and syntactically conditioned. Arguably under way before attested texts (Wackernagel 1892), changes in the position of the finite verb are interwoven with related developments in phonology and morphology. Going along with these broad and gradual changes are numerous decidedly Germanic innovations in finite verb position: the inherited IE clause-final position of the verb gradually yields to competing word orders, first in conditioned environments, and later obligatorily. Variable, pragmatically conditioned word order is gradually replaced by increasingly restrictive word orders. Stockwell (1977) proposes a unified model, including the earliest, verb-final word order inherited from IE, through the V2 constraint (verb second; the obligatory appearance of the finite verb as the second syntactic constituent) observable in German and Dutch, to the SVO word order of English and Scandinavian (in most contexts). Stockwell’s account largely represents the mainline thinking regarding the impetus and descriptive typology for the change in position of the finite verb in Germanic.

Inherited SOV is found in Runic, though verb fronting was possible. Variation occurs even within inscriptions, even though the corpus is tiny: only 34 early inscriptions contain a verb and another element that would allow us to determine word order patterns (Antonsen 1975: 24). The Rö Runestone shows both the inherited clause-final position of the verb, along with the innovative earlier verb placement (Antonsen 2002).

(18) ek hrazaz/hrąþaz satido [s]tain[a] . . . swabaharjaz sairawidaz
I Hrazaz/Hraþaz set stone.ACC.DEF. . . Swabaharjaz with wide wounds . . .

. . . stainawarijaz fahido
. . . Stainawarijaz painted


Inherited SOV is found in Runic, though verb fronting was possible. Variation occurs even within inscriptions, even though the corpus is tiny: only 34 early inscriptions contain a verb and another element that would allow us to determine word order patterns (Antonsen 1975: 24). The Rö Runestone shows both the inherited clause-final position of the verb, along with the innovative earlier verb placement (Antonsen 2002).
Clauses in which the finite verb appears earlier than the expected clause-final position arguably show a degree of emphasis and suggest a degree of flexibility in verb position based on pragmatics. The verb can also appear earlier in the clause based on syntactic context, e.g., in the presence of negation or a wh-element, or in commands (Thiersch 1978, Eythórsson 1995, 1996). Eythórsson (1995: 26, 249–257) notes that fronting of the finite verb of this specific type (“V-to-C” movement – movement of the verb from a lower syntactic position to a higher verbal/clausal position in the clause) occurs in these contexts in all old Germanic languages. “CP operants” – e.g., wh-elements and negation, which activate the highest syntactic phrase not otherwise present in the earliest-attested Germanic languages – provide a syntactic environment that triggers a non-clause-final word order, showing that innovative positions of the finite verb in Germanic may be conditioned grammatically, as well as pragmatically. For all old Germanic languages except Gothic and Old English, raising of the finite verb is also obligatory when nominal complements are topicalized (Eythórsson 1995: 3, 22–28), providing supporting evidence that obligatory fronting later supplanted the optional fronting of the finite verb. Despite positive evidence of variable word order in Runic, however, the small corpus prevents broader generalizations about the frequency of orders in early Germanic. Still, variation suggests that change was under way from at least the earliest written evidence (200–500 CE). Given that IE is reconstructed as having the finite verb in a clause-final position, it is likely that the older SOV order appears alongside a newer V2 (verb second) or SVO (subject, verb, object) order attested in subsequent varieties.

**Rise of V2**

The V2 constraint is present in main clauses in German and Dutch, and attested also for other historical periods of other Germanic languages, including Old English and Old Norse (Faarlund 2004). That V2 developed from an earlier SOV (verb-final) order in Germanic is generally accepted, though the process is much more nuanced. In fact, this change remains incomplete in some modern daughter languages, with German and Dutch employing SOV in subordinate clauses.

**V2 over time**

Despite evidence of verb fronting, the position of the finite verb is not fixed in early Germanic. West Norse (Old Icelandic, Old Norwegian) and East Norse (Old Swedish, Old Danish, Old Gutnish) exhibit V2 in both main and subordinate clauses, though “[d]eviations from this [in the Edda] are shown to be due to the poetic character of the text (although it is possible that certain patterns reflect a more archaic stage at which verb-second was not obligatory)” (Eythórsson 1995: 190–191). In West Germanic, V2 is by no means obligatory in all contexts, with Old High German texts also exhibiting verb-initial and V3 word orders. In the Isidor, Axel identifies a number of instances where the verb raises to a medial position, even above a complementizer in subordinate clauses (2007: 79–81). Robinson (1994: 356) notes, also in the Isidor, that the position of the finite verb is also often not consistent with the Latin Vorlage. Multiple verb-raising strategies were indigenous to Old High German, with V2 the most common: “the translator of the Old High German Isidor imposed an apparently native verb-second word order . . . despite the example of the Latin original, and also of apparent exceptions to this principle where the verb appears later in the clause” (Robinson 1994: 356). In declarative and main clauses, the Old High German translation agrees with the Latin Vorlage on 135
occasions, though the Old High German position of the verb differs from the Latin text in 255 clauses, including 205 V2 clauses imposed by the Old High German translator (Lippert 1974). One account for this is variation in the landing site of the finite verb, that is, where the verb appears in the clause, if not in clause-final position. Axel (2007) argues that V3 may result from the raising of the verb to a medial position higher than the clause-final position of IE but lower than the ultimate V2 position attested in Modern German (see Weerman 1989 for a similar argument for Old English). Commonly argued for Old English is that a poverty of OV structures relative to VO structures in the input resulted in an unraveling of the inherited, underlying OV word order (Stockwell 1977 and others). A corresponding lack of SVOV structures in Old English concurrently destabilized the transition from OV to V2 predicted by Stockwell’s (1977) typology, resulting ultimately in an (S)V0 order (Fuß & Trips 2002). Differences in the position of the finite verb in Old Norse, Old High German and Old English provide evidence that the position of the finite verb was highly variable, both across the earliest attested Germanic languages and within the grammars of the individual varieties. The subsequent adoption of V2 structures was a parallel development, occurring in West Germanic centuries after the split from North Germanic.

Another account for word order variation relates to the structure of the IE clause and subsequent changes in Germanic. As Kiparsky (1995: 140) notes, Germanic maintained the structure of the IE complementizer phrase (CP), which had both a topic and a focus position above C, the highest syntactic position to which a finite verb could raise. Even assuming a fixed position for the finite verb, at C, variation in the position of any number of constituents would then result in V1, V2 or V3 word order, depending on whether there were zero, one or two elements preceding the finite verb. Remnants of this earlier clausal structure are illustrated by Eythórsson (1995: 101–102), who provides one example from the Old Norse Völundarkviða and three from Gothic where wh-elements appear to the left of C, as well as additional rare instances in Old Norse and Gothic of an indefinite negative quantifier appearing to the left of a negated verb (1995: 145–149). In view of the rarity of these examples, the poetic nature of the Old Norse texts, and the possible influence of the Greek Vorlage on Gothic, Eythórsson notes – and we concur – that these exceptional clausal structures are likely archaisms reflecting earlier stages that allowed for greater flexibility of word order. The later collapse of these two clausal positions through their generalization as a single topic position reduced the number of possible word orders, eliminating the possibility of V3 constructions and increasing the propensity toward V1 or V2 structures characteristic of German and Dutch, respectively in imperative and conditional clauses and in V2 main clauses. This collapse of topic and focus positions was a prerequisite for obligatory V2, primarily in Continental West Germanic.

Clausal syntax

As noted, Runic and Gothic exhibit syntactically conditioned verb raising in the presence of a CP-operant – a wh-element, negative particle – or in imperative constructions. Verb raising is possible but not obligatory elsewhere pragmatically – an asymmetry suggesting ongoing change toward the development of subordinating constructions in Germanic not present in (P)IE. As noted in Matasović (p. 166), (P)IE did not have subordinating conjunctions but rather relied on subordinating strategies using participles. However, all branches of Germanic use neuter demonstratives as complementizers (Goth. þat, OHG dass/dazs, OEng. þet, ONor. að, at, att) (Harbert 2007: 417). Likely derived from IE uninflected deictic particles, Germanic complementizers independently develop toward
innovative subordinating structures. As in the example below (Otfrid’s Evangelienbuch),
the neuter demonstrative *thasz* may have been parsed as the direct object of the first
clause but later reanalyzed as the head of the subordinate clause.

(19) Otfrids Evangelienbuch: Ev. 2, 2, 8
[CP Joh gizalta in sār *thasz*] [CP thiū sālida untar in uuas].

‘And he told them immediately that good fortune was among them’

The potential ambiguity is yet greater, given that both V2 and verb-final constructions
are possible in main clauses in (early) Old High German; the maintenance of verb-final
constructions in subordinate clauses in Modern German and Modern Dutch is an archaic
remnant of an earlier stage in the language.

Related to this class of neuter demonstratives as complementizers are relative pronouns,
which similarly build subordinating structures not present in IE. The differences between
bare relatives and relative particles in Goth. *ei*, Old Norse *es*, *er* and OEng. *be*, *bé*, *ðe*
attest to an innovative rather than inherited characteristic. Moreover, these differences across the
branches hint at a parallel post-Ausgliederung development or, more likely, at earlier dia-
lectal variation within common Germanic. Subsequent developments in all the Germanic
languages transitioned from the use of relativizing particles to use of demonstrative pro-
nouns as relative pronouns (Lehmann 2005–2007). Demonstrative and relative pronouns
in Germanic derive predominantly from IE deictic elements, *t*, *h* and *s*, a marked difference
from Romance and other languages that derive relative pronouns from *wh*- elements (IE
*kwo-*). Gothic shows a possible intermediate stage, where relativizing pronouns co-occur
as clitics on demonstrative pronouns. In the example below *ei* serves as a stand-alone
relativizing particle; as a relativizing enclitic particle attached to a demonstrative pronoun,
as in *þatei*; and also as a relativizing enclitic particle attached to a demonstrative pronoun
marked for case, number and gender, i.e. serving as a relative pronoun.

(20) Codex Argenteus, John 12:9

*fanþ þan manageins filu Iudaie þatei Iesus jainar ist, jah qemun, ni in Iesuis ainis,*
found then multitude many Jews,gen.pl. REL Jesus there is and came.3pl. not for Jesus only

*ak ei jah Lazaru seheina, þanei urraisida us dauþaim,*
but REL also Lazarus see,pret.opt.3pl. REL,ACC,SG. raised from death

‘Then a great multitude of Jews found that Jesus was there, and they came, not only
for Jesus, but also that they might see Lazarus, whom he raised from the dead.’
(Our translation)

Marking for case, number and gender on subordinating elements was apparently typo-
logically rare in IE daughters and crosslinguistically (p. 166–167, this volume), but here
it appears to have arisen independently many times across the family.

Definites

Reconstructions of Germanic do not posit definite articles, but definiteness – with case,
number and gender – was encoded with suffixes based on noun class. However, by the
earliest attestations, demonstratives derived from deictic elements \( \ddot{p} \), \( h \) and \( s \) appear. Though \( \ddot{p} \) occurs across the family, variation in the pronominal paradigm once again points to either dialectal differences in Germanic or parallel developments across branches. One oft-mentioned similarity between Old Norse and Gothic is that, despite a majority of pronouns and demonstratives with \( \ddot{p} \), archaic Gothic \( sa \) (nom.sg.m.dem.) and \( sō \) (nom.sg.f.dem.) correspond to Old Norse \( sá \) (nom.sg.m.dem.) and \( sú \) (nom.sg.f.dem.). Second, pronouns and demonstratives with \( h \) are attested mostly in North Sea Germanic. The use of demonstratives, however, is similar across the family, and early texts employ demonstratives not only in emphatic or contrastive contexts but also anaphorically, as in the OHG gospel harmony Tatian:

(21) Tatian, chapter 1, sentence 1

\[
\text{In anagin\text{\textemdash}ne uuas uuort inti thaz uuort} \\
\text{in beginning.DEF was word.DEF.SG.M.A-STEM and that (same) word.DEF.SG.M.A-STEM} \\
\text{uuas mit gote inti got selbo uuas thaz uuort.} \\
\text{was with God and God self was that (same) word.DEF.SG.M.A-STEM.}
\]

‘In the beginning was the word, and that same word was with God, and God (him) self was that word.’

The first use of \( uuort \) ‘word’ employs the older definiteness marking, with an unpreceded noun characteristic of the Latin Vorlage. However, in the second and third uses, it is preceded by the demonstrative \( thaz \), where the Latin Vorlage lacks a demonstrative: In principio erat verbum et verbum erat apud deum et deus erat verbum. Old High German seems to allow unpreceded bare nouns, on the one hand, but also employs preceded nouns in anaphoric contexts; a conservative translation of \( thaz \) in this case would be ‘that same’. This provides evidence of a gradual transition from the inherited IE system, moving toward the innovative precursors of definite articles.

In terms of diachrony, definite articles are not reconstructed for Germanic, or even attested in the early daughter languages. Rather, demonstrative pronouns are reanalyzed as definite articles, through language-internal processes of grammaticalization. Formalizing the process, van Gelderen (2007, 2009, 2011) categorizes grammaticalization of demonstrative pronouns as the loss of the feature [+emphasis], with the corresponding retention of interpretable phi-features (or \([i\text{-phi}]\)) marking for person and number agreement. Arguing that “the real sources of change are internal principles that bias the learner toward certain structures” (van Gelderen 2011: 4), van Gelderen motivates this reanalysis through the Head Preference Principle (HPP) (2007: 283; 2011: 13–14). The HPP holds that specifiers (and phrases) such as demonstratives are less preferable than syntactic heads such as definite articles, and that the natural process of language change involves reanalyzing the former as the latter. Such a change in the grammar is consistent with Kuryłowicz’s (1965: 52) definition of grammaticalization as “the increase of the range of a morpheme advancing from a lexical to a grammatical or from a less grammatical to a more grammatical status”.

Indefinite articles are similarly unattested in the earliest Germanic languages. Indefinite nouns are marked by strong adjectival inflection preceding the noun. Indefinite articles developed from the numeral ‘one’, with a corresponding reanalysis from number to indefinite marker. Much like the development of definite articles, this was a process of grammaticalization, advancing to a more grammatical function. Because the numbers one through four inflected in Gothic,\(^9\) the numeral ‘one’ already inflected for case, number and gender. Grammaticalization, then, involved reanalysis of a quantifier as an article (van Gelderen 2011: 202).\(^{10}\)
Tense, aspect, mood

The Germanic systems of tense, aspect and mood (TAM) reflect a rather drastic departure from IE, with subsequent development of indigenous innovations. Relative to IE, Germanic underwent leveling followed by the rise of new tenses and aspects. The development of aspectual auxiliaries as part of a cyclical pattern – even as a small portion of ongoing change – is observable over a period of centuries in a variety of languages, including the earliest attestations of Old English and Polish through to the modern languages (van Gelderen 2011: 273–276).

Reconstructions of IE often posit a four-way system of aspect and tense, differentiating perfect and imperfect, and past and present, respectively; the present tense likely may have expressed future tense11 (p. 162, this volume). Germanic collapses these two systems, using the perfect of strong verbs to mark past, while the present tense forms continued to mark both present and future tense. Perfective aspect may be expressed through use of verbal prefixes, most commonly ga- (derived from IE *kom, ‘together, with, collective, intensive’). Inherently perfective verbs often carry this prefix, as in *gadaðman ‘die’ or *gatairan ‘destroy’ (Modern Germ. zerreissen ‘to rip, to tear (apart)’), both only attested with the perfective prefix ga-. Still, that the perfective prefix was productive is apparent in common verbs such as Goth. waurkjan ‘to prepare, bring about’, saihwan ‘to see’, hausjan ‘to hear’ and gaggan ‘to go’, which have perfective variants gawaurkjan, gasaihwan, gahausjan and gagaggan. This perfective prefix may also serve in some cases as a kind of aspectual perfect marker, as in the opening line of the 9th century Hildebrandslied (22).

(22) Ik gihorta dat seggen
    ‘I have heard it told . . . ’

The narrator addresses the listener/reader directly, using a first person pronoun. The perfective gihorta establishes the narrator’s authority, having heard the tale prior to the present narrative; indeed, the story may have been well known, with analogues across Germanic languages, as well as in Persian, Russian and Old Irish (Baesecke 1940). Without a dedicated pluperfect, however, ordering of events in the past tense is often accomplished using participles.

(23) Codex Argenteus, Mark 5:39
    jah innataggands qap du im: hua auhjob jah gretip hata barn
    and enter, pres. ptcp. said.3sg. pro to them why fuss.2pl. and cry.2pl. pro that child
    ni gadaðnoda ak slepið
    not died.3sg. pret. perf but sleeps
    ‘And when he had come in, he said to them: why do you fuss and weep? The girl
    is not dead, but sleeps.’ (Our translation)

While a literal translation of jah innataggands qap might be ‘and entering (he) said’ or ‘and as he entered, he said’, we draw from context – and from frequent attestation of present participles elsewhere in the Gothic Bible – that these events are sequential rather than simultaneous; coordinated structures employ jah ‘and’.

A similar example shows the use of a present participle to order events at the beginning of the verse, with the act of exiting (usaggands) preceding subsequent events.
Additionally, the perfective prefix *ga-* is used to convey something that had already happened prior to the moment of speaking, in *gasahυ*.


\textit{usgaggands pan ni mahta du im rodjan jah froþun ŕammei siun exit.PRES.PTCP. then not might PRO to them speak and perceived.2PL. that.REL vision gasahυ in al;}

\textit{3SG.SEE.N.PERF. in temple}

‘When he came out, he could not speak to them, and they perceived that he had seen a vision in the temple.’ (Our translation)

The second half of the verse exemplifies an emerging periphrastic construction, combining a past form of *wisann* ‘be’ and participial *bandwjands* ‘signaling’.


\textit{jah silba was bandwjands im jah <ga> was dumb.}

and same was signaling them.DAT.PL. and was.1SG. speechless.

‘. . . and the same one [Zacharias] was signaling to them, and [he] was speechless.’

The English translation may be most colloquial with a present progressive, but the Gothic participle is not unambiguously verbal: the inflectional -s could also be a nominative suffix (masculine nd-stem), that is, a copular construction between the grammatical subject and an inflected nominal or adjectival form meaning, here, ‘one who signals; a signaling one’. This interpretation of otherwise ambiguous Gothic data is consistent with the later development of the periphrastic perfect, in which verbs meaning ‘have’ and ‘be’ become auxiliaries and co-occur with participles. Crucially, these participles frequently appear with inflectional suffixes, supporting the argument that they were originally nominal (or adjectival) rather than verbal. Perfective prefixes *ga-*-, *gi-* and *ge-* (IE *kom-*) regularly co-occur with nominal suffixes but are notably absent from reflexes of double modal constructions and more grammatical uses of OHG *läzzan* ‘let, allow’, *heizzan* ‘command’ and *werdan* ‘become’.

The reanalysis of these as past participles corresponds with the loss of inflectional affixes. Germanic also reduced other parts of the TAM system. IE is reconstructed with – in addition to the indicative – an optative and subjunctive that collapse into a single “optative” in Germanic (Matasović 2012). Marked in Old High German by verbal affixes – ē in the present and ī in the preterit – the optative begins to collapse with unstressed syllable reduction. In the present indicative, the distinction between present indicative and present optative is lost, first in the first person plural, e.g. *faremēs* ‘we go’. Later, it is lost throughout the paradigm as full vowels reduced and centralized, and unstressed long syllables shortened, i.e. OHG *faru* ‘I go.1SG.PRES.IND.’ and OHG *fare* ‘I go.1SG.PRES.OPT.’ both collapse to MHG *fare*. The distinction is maintained only in verb classes where other sound changes caused vowel mutations, e.g. MHG *nime* ‘take.1SG.PRES.IND.’ but *neme* ‘take.1SG.PRES.OPT.’ The preterit optative is identical to the preterit indicative for weak verbs in Old High German, and the OHG -i suffix for strong verbs causes umlaut before reducing; umlaut demarcating the optative (German Subjunctive I) is thereafter morphologically conditioned. Ultimately, as in other parts of the grammar, morphological marking of aspect yielded to periphrastic constructions.

The other component of the innovative Germanic periphrastic perfect is the development of auxiliaries from the verbs ‘have’ and ‘be’. OHG *habēn* (or *eigan*) was originally
a lexical verb, e.g. ‘to own’. To ‘have’ something that is in a current (perfective) state implies that it was previously not in that state; thus, the current state is interpreted as a present tense, albeit one derived from an earlier completed action. For example, the oft-cited OHG sentence *phigboum habeta sum giflanzotan* (Tatian) is arguably to be interpreted as ‘someone had planted a fig tree’ (Lockwood 1968: 115). Some skepticism would be warranted, though, since the inflected participle looks more like an adjectival form than a perfective verbal form. Still, while somewhat ambiguous in its contemporary reading, such an argument is a plausible example of change under way.

**CONCLUSION**

Across the phenomena that separate Germanic from IE and separate the daughters from one another, we see surprising cohesion and perseverance in the kinds of change and patterns found today:

- vocalic and obstruent chain shifts,
- case loss,
- strong verbs becoming weak,
- independent development of typologically rare subordinating strategies.

From IE to the first textual evidence, Germanic languages include phonetic/phonological reductions and various drastic reorganizations:

- shift away from nominal classes toward a coherent singular/plural distinction,
- expansion of periphrastic verbal forms to create marking for tense, aspect and mood,
- development of non-inherited inflectional affixes and inflectional categories that increase the complexity of the inflectional system.

Questions remain about the sociolinguistic contexts in which these changes took place. Extended contact would be consistent with the sorts of morphological reduction found: increasingly fixed word order and collapse of inherited TAM marking. Some innovations may reflect prehistoric variation:

- the development of three innovative strategies for marking preterit (classes VI and VII, weak classes),
- differences in the weak preterit plural ending, separating Gothic from other languages,
- wide variation in the pronominal inventories,
- a tripartite division in subordinating conjunctions and relative particles (Gothic *ei*, ONor. *es, er* and OEng. *be, þē, þe*),
- divergent chronologies of nasal loss and compensatory lengthening, cf. *mouth ~ Mund*.

Still, the Germanic family portrait shows profound familial similarities, not only in inherited forms and structures, but also in parallel developments among sometimes distant daughters; and shared developments and borrowings during extended, repeated periods of contact.

Progress today is rapid thanks to developments in general, Germanic and IE linguistics, including better understanding of crosslinguistic patterns of language change (e.g. how common glide hardening turns out to be), new models of how change works (e.g. in prosody) and newer issues (the rise of complementizers).
FURTHER READING


Detailed treatments of derivation and inflection of early Germanic nouns and verbs.


Yiddish is underdiscussed in the context of early Germanic but provides unique perspectives in terms of language contact and dialectal relationships.


Edited collection of seminal texts in IE linguistics, with commentary on historical context within the field.

Nielsen, Hans Frede 2000, The Early Runic Language of Scandinavia, Winter, Heidelberg

Delivers the best survey of the Ausgliederung and internal structure of the Germanic family, contextualized in external evidence.

Prokosch, Eduard 1939, A Comparative Germanic Grammar (William Dwight Whitney Linguistic Series), Linguistic Society of America–University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia

Classic older work on Germanic in the IE context.

Ringe, Don 2006, From Proto-Indo-European to Proto-Germanic, Oxford University Press, Oxford

The clearest statement of Germanic sound and word form patterns and developments from an IEist perspective, with a few pages on derivational morphology and mention of syntax and lexicon.


The most reliable and accessible introduction to the family.

NOTES

1 Many glottalic proposals posit implosives rather than voiced stops, and implosion is a form of “hypervoicing”, phonetically enhancing a [voice] contrast.

2 Dresher and Lahiri (1991: 263) suggest that this restriction may in fact have been limited to word-initial feet. If so, similar patterns might be shared across dialects.

3 Possible remnants of reduplication in West Germanic are controversial, such as OEng. heht from Gmc *haihait, or Modern Eng. do ~ did, possibly related to *tōn (Braune & Eggers 1987: §381–382).

4 While fahido is related to the term for ‘to paint’, it is also used broadly as ‘to fashion runes’, which may also include carving.
5 The development of V2 is parallel but not independent: verb fronting strategies show that change was under way when the branches diverged.
6 Gothic makes extensive use of participles, though this relates more directly to the tense/aspect system than to subordinating structures (§5.6).
7 Some modern languages use wh-elements as relative pronouns in restricted contexts, most notably Eng. who/whom and which, in competition with null complementizers and that. Germ. was and Dutch wat serve as relative pronouns for indefinite or inanimate nouns; Germ. wo occurs dialectally as a relative pronoun for animate nouns, and Dutch wie or welke may also be used, in formal or archaic contexts.
8 Since many demonstrative pronouns already mark number and gender, this is a clear case of grammaticalization, cf. Gothic demonstratives sah (m. sg.), þatuh (n. sg.), sōh (f. sg.) and þáih (m. pl.; other genders not attested); OEng. se (m. sg.), þæt (n. sg.), sceo (f. sg.), þá (pl. all genders), etc.
9 Some other IE daughters – including Slavic languages – also decline numbers.
10 The nature of this reanalysis “depends on one’s assumptions about what numerals are and where indefinite articles are in the DP” (van Gelderen 2011: 202); we are concerned here only with the broader picture.
11 Alternatively, the IE subjunctive may fulfill this function.

REFERENCES
Árnason, Kristján 2011, *The Phonology of Icelandic and Faroese*, Oxford University Press, Oxford
Bammesberger, Alfred 1986, *Der Aufbau des germanischen Verbalsystems*, Winter, Heidelberg
Behaghel, Otto 1923, *Deutsche Syntax: Eine geschichtliche Darstellung*, Winter, Heidelberg


Einarsson, Stefán 1945, *Icelandic*, The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore


Ferraresi, Gisella & Goldbach, Maria (eds.) 2008, *Principles of Syntactic Reconstruction*, Benjamins, Amsterdam

Fertig, David 2000, *Morphological Change up Close: Two and a Half Centuries of Verbal Inflection in Nuremberg*, Niemeyer, Tübingen


Haugen, Einar 1976, *The Scandinavian Languages: An Introduction to their History*, Faber and Faber, London


Honeybone, Patrick 2002, *Germanic Obstruent Lenition: Some Mutual Implications of Theoretical and Historical Phonology*, University of Newcastle upon Tyne [PhD dissertation]

Howe, Steven 1996, *The Personal Pronouns in the Germanic Languages*, de Gruyter, Berlin


König, Ekkehard & Gast, Volker 2012, *Understanding English-German Contrasts*, 3rd edn, Erich Schmidt Verlag, Berlin


Lippert, Jörg 1974, *Beiträge zu Technik und Syntax althochdeutscher Übersetzungen*, Fink, Munich


Luiten, Tyler 2011, *Old High German Nominal Morphology Revisited: Fresh Look at Old Paradigms*, University of Wisconsin – Madison [PhD dissertation]

Luiten, Tyler, Menz, Andrea, Bagwell, Angela, Frey, Benjamin, Lindner, John, Olson, Mike, Speth, Kristin & Salmons, Joseph 2013, “Beyond the handbooks: A quantitative approach to analysis of Old High German phonology and morphology,” *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur* 135: 1–18

Matasović, Ranko 2012, “Areal typology of PIE: The case for Caucasian connections,”
Transactions of the Philological Society 110: 283–310
University of Alabama Press, Tuscaloosa
Menz, Andrea 2010, Accent Type and Language Change in Germanic and Baltic-Finnic,
University of Wisconsin – Madison [PhD dissertation]
Mortensen, David 2012, “The emergence of obstruents after high vowels,” Diachronica
29: 434–470
Müller, Stefan 2007, Zum Germanischen aus laryngaltheoretischer Sicht, de Gruyter, Berlin
Nielsen, Hans Frede 2000, The Early Runic Language of Scandinavia, Winter, Heidelberg
Orel, Vladimir 2003, A Handbook of Germanic Etymology, Brill, Leiden
Riad, Tomas 2014, The Phonology of Swedish, Oxford University Press, Oxford
Ringe, Don 2006, From Proto-Indo-European to Proto-Germanic, Oxford University Press, Oxford
Salmons, Joe 1992, Accentual Change and Language Contact, Stanford University Press, Stanford


Smith, Laura Catharine 2004, *Cross-Level Interactions in West Germanic Phonology and Morphology*, University of Wisconsin – Madison [PhD dissertation]


Stearns, Jr., McDonald 1978, *Crimean Gothic: Analysis and Etymology of the Corpus*, Anima Libri, Saratoga


Weerman, Fred 1989, The V2 Conspiracy: A Synchronic and a Diachronic Analysis of Verbal Positions in Germanic Languages (Publications in Language Sciences 31), Foris, Dordrecht
Wiesinger, Peter 1970, Phonetisch-phonologische Untersuchungen zur Vokalentwicklung in den deutschen Dialekten, de Gruyter, Berlin
INTRODUCTION

In modern times Armenian is found in two varieties, Eastern Armenian, the official language of the Armenian Republic, also spoken in Nagorno Karabagh and in north-western Iran, and Western Armenian, originally mostly found in what is now the north-eastern part of Turkey, but now mainly scattered around the Armenian diaspora with considerable bilingual populations in Lebanon, Syria, Israel, France, Canada and the USA.

The first records of Armenian go back to the Old Persian Behistūn (Bisutūn) inscription by Darius the Great (about 520 BC), where we hear of the province Armina- and the people Arminiya-. Somewhat later, Ἀρμινίη and Ἀρμένιοι are mentioned by Herodotus, while the indigenous literary tradition only goes back to the 5th century AD, the “golden age”, with the standardized Classical Armenian, also known as grabar, the written language. This will be the subject of the following pages. The creation of a written language was a side effect of the introduction of Christianity, which became a state religion as early as 301. According to tradition, the monk and missionary Mesrop Maštoc’invented the Armenian alphabet, consisting of 36 letters (cf. Table 9.1), with the purpose of translating the Holy Scripture into the vernacular, and around 410 the translation of the Bible was completed, the first attempts based on a Syriac original, while the final version was founded on the Greek. During the following centuries Greek influence continues with translations of theological and philosophical literature. Important original works from the golden age include Eznik’s Ełc alandoc’e, “Refutation of Sects”, Koriwn’s “Life of Maštoc’” and the historical accounts by Agathangelos and P’awstos Buzandac’i. The later historian Movsēs Xorenac’i, probably from around the 9th century, is important for his descriptions of pre-Christian traditions as famously illustrated by the poem of the birth of Vahagn (Iranian Vorāχyana-, Vedic Vṛtraḥān-). Apart from early stone inscriptions, the actual attestation is of a much later date than the 5th century, the earliest manuscript being the Moscow Gospel from 887. As a literary and learned language, the grabar survived well into the 19th century, and for religious purposes it is still in use.

Middle Armenian, which already shows dialectal differentiation, is mainly transmitted in the western dialect of the Cilician kingdom (1080–1375; cf. the meticulous treatment by Karst (1901)). From around the 17th century, it gradually developed into the numerous modern dialects and the two standardized literary languages of Eastern and Western Armenian.

During the first millennium BC, the Armenians settled in the region around Lake Van in eastern Turkey, which was then dominated by the non-Indo-European Urartians. This is approximately the region known by the Hittites as ḫayaša-, which has often been compared with Arm. hay ‘an Armenian’, Hayastan ‘Armenia’. As a separate Indo-European language, Armenian is not as obviously connected to any of the other branches as Indian is to Iranian, or Baltic to Slavic. According to Herodotus, the Armenians are identified with
the Phrygians, and while this is hardly an exact description, the language does share a num-
ber of linguistic features with Phrygian, Albanian and especially Greek, which has induced
some scholars, such as Klingenschmitt (1994: 244f.), Matzinger (1998: 118 and later) and
Holst (2009), to connect these languages under the common heading of “Balkanindoger-
manisch”. Clackson, on the other hand, in a monograph dedicated to this particular question
(1994), fails to recognize a significant relation even between Greek and Armenian.

The recognition of Armenian as an independent branch of the Indo-European family
came only in the late 19th century. Until then it had been considered an Iranian language,
and, indeed, the Iranian elements of vocabulary, word formation and composition, not to
mention loan translations and syntactic features, are so abundant that this early misconcep-
tion is quite understandable. The largest part consists of Parthian loans, introduced during
the Arsacid dynasty (247 BC–224 AD) and exhibiting particular north-western dialectal
features such as *δ > Arm. r, e.g. aroyr ‘brass’ < *rauδa vs. South-West Iran. y, cf. MParth.
lwd vs. ManMPers. rwy ‘copper, brass’; preservation of -rd-, e.g. vard ‘rose’ as opposed to
MPers. gul; and *θr > (r)h, e.g. pah ‘watch, ward’ < *pāϑra- vs. s in ManMPers. p’s. Occasion-
ally a single word or stem is found in several dialectal variants. A striking example is
IE *werɡom > Iran. *warj, borrowed from Middle Parthian as warz ‘study’; from Middle
Persian as vard in vardapet ‘master’; from a third Iranian dialect, possibly by Parthian
mediation, as varj ‘reward, hire’; and finally (with analogical o-grade in the root) preserved
in the indigenous noun gorc ‘work’. A systematic survey of phonetic distinctions between
the Middle Parthian and the later Middle Persian loans is found in Bolognesi’s classical
study (1960), followed by the useful updating by Schmitt (1983).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ա</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>Օ</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>čě</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Բ</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>Պ</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Գ</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>Տ</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>yi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Դ</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>Ն</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>nu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ե</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>Ն</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>ša</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Զ</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>(remote)</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>և</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>Թ</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>č'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ծ</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>Ս</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>pē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Տ</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>Մ</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>jē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ժ</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>Լ</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>ğa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ի</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>ini</td>
<td>Վ</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>sē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Դ</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>liwn</td>
<td>Ս</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>vew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Շ</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>Տ</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>tiwn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Զ</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>ca</td>
<td>Ս</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>rē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Խ</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>Ս</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>c'o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ղ</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>Տ</td>
<td>7000</td>
<td>hiwn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ճ</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>Գ</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>p'iwr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ռ</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>lat</td>
<td>Պ</td>
<td>9000</td>
<td>k-č'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other important sources of borrowings into Armenian are Greek and Syriac, both intimately connected with the introduction of Christianity, but apart from such easily recognizable elements, the Armenian vocabulary abounds in more or less obscure lexical items. As observed by Solta (1990: 13), Acha‘yan’s monumental etymological dictionary (1926–35) contains 10,722 head words, of which 4016 are recognized loanwords, while 5572 are registered as being of unknown origin, and only 713 are considered inherited. These bare numbers would give some idea of the challenges connected with Armenian etymology.

**Note on the transcription**

Aspiration of a consonant is indicated by a raised ʰ, e.g. ʰɾ = [θ]; ʰc, ʰj and ʰc’ stand for the affricates [ts], [dz] and [tʃ]; ʰc, ʰj, and ʰc’ for the “shibilants” [ts], [dz] and [tʃ]; ʰy equals [i], ʰr is a geminate r, and ʰl perhaps a retroflex lateral (cf. Schmitt 1981: 29). ʰE derives from a former i-diphthong, *ey or *oy, and must originally have been a long vowel; however, in the classical language, where quantitative distinctions had been eliminated, the pronunciation was probably a closed ɛ as opposed to the more open e from the old short vowel *e. Finally, the digraph ʰow is pronounced and transcribed as u.

**PHONOLOGY**

The phonology of Armenian is characterized by a series of fundamental changes, and since the inherited vocabulary is relatively limited the etymological interpretation of a given word or morpheme often depends on the precise formulation of a specific conditioned sound law. Thus, many details are still awaiting their final clarification.

**Vowels**

A characteristic feature of Armenian vocalism is the loss of the quantitative oppositions before the earliest attestation of the language. While long ā, ī and ū simply merged with
their short counterparts, and short ě and ď maintained an open quality, the long vowels ě and ď underwent narrowing, finally merging with ĭ and ĭū respectively.

We thus arrive at the following unconditioned developments in post-laryngealistic terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IE</th>
<th>ā</th>
<th>āĕ</th>
<th>ĕ</th>
<th>ď</th>
<th>ĭ</th>
<th>ĭē</th>
<th>ŭ</th>
<th>ŭū</th>
<th>ŏ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arm.</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ĭ</td>
<td>ĭē</td>
<td>ŭ</td>
<td>ŭū</td>
<td>ŏ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

*ā* acem ‘I carry, bring, conduct’, Lat. agō, Gr. ἀγω
*ā* mayr ‘mother’, Lat. māter, Dor. μάτηρ
*ĕ* berem ‘I carry’, Lat. ferō, Gr. φέρω
*ĕ* mit ‘mind’, Gr. μῆδος
*ō* ost ‘branch’, Gr. ὁδος, Goth. asts
*ō* tur ‘gift’, Gr. δῶρον
*ī* egir ‘(s)he found’, Ved. āvidat
*ī* c’īn ‘vulture’, Gr. ικτίνος
*ū* nu ‘daughter-in-law’, Lat. nurus, Gr. νοῦς
*ū* mukn ‘mouse’, Lat. mūs, Gr. μῦς

Further raising of e to i and o to u occurred before the nasals n and m, cf. e.g. hin ‘old’ < *senos (Lith. sēnas, Lat. senex, senior) and cunr ‘knee’ < *gōnu (Gr. γόνυ).

Other vocalic changes include umlaut and epenthesis. As already observed by Meillet (1903: 501), we sometimes find -e- for expected -i- when the following syllable includes u, e.g. lezu ‘tongue’ beside Ved. jihvā, but apparently the rule, or at least the tendency, may be extended to cover all sequences of high vowels in consecutive syllables exhibiting a sort of ‘dissimilatory umlaut’, beside i-u > e-u also i-i > e-i, u-i > o-i and u-u > o-u, e.g. korust ‘destruction’ beside Lith. gūrti ‘fall to pieces’ (Olsen 1999: 801–804). The rule also applies to secondary i and u from older *ē and *ō, e.g. tēr ‘master’ vs. terūt’īwn ‘domination’ rather than tirūt’īwn (*ē > i) in unstressed position.

In certain cases the vowels i and u as well as the semivowel y are observed to cause epenthesis, e.g. ayl ‘other, different’, Lat. alius, or artawsr ‘tear’ < *drakū, Gr. δάκρυν. The conditioning of i/y-epenthesis clearly differs from that of u-epenthesis, and while the exact formulation of the rules may still be debated, the preceding vowel always seems to be -a- or -o-. Apparently, other decisive factors have been syllable length and stress, which are further connected with the loss of final syllables, e.g. artawsr vs. pl. artasuk.

The status of other suggested conditioned changes affecting the vowels, such as e > a in tasn ‘ten’ vs. Lat. decem, or o > a in ateam ‘hate’ vs. Lat. odium, remains more uncertain.

**Diphthongs**

After the separation of Anatolian, the protolanguage or “core Indo-European” possessed six short diphthongs, *ay, *ey and *oy, *aw, *ew and *ow. As is also the case in, e.g., Italic, the diphthongs whose first part was an a-vowel remained intact in Armenian as ay and aw, while the remaining i-diphthongs merged in ē, and the u-diphthongs in oy, presumably via an intermediate stage *ow.
A similar development is found in older Iranian loanwords where i-diphthongs are reflected as ē, u-diphthongs as oy, e.g. kēn ‘hatred, animosity’, Av. kaēnā- ‘punishment, revenge’; goyn ‘colour’, Av. gaona-.

**Apocope, syncope and vowel weakening**

The early fixation of the stress on the penultimate in Proto-Armenian had severe consequences for the further phonetic development of vowels and diphthongs: the vowels of final syllables underwent apocope so that the synchronic accent regularly came to fall on the final syllable, e.g. *eb’eret ‘(s)he carried’ > ebér. Moreover, the unstressed high vowels i and u, whatever their origin, were weakened to a mostly unwritten prop vowel, a, a phenomenon generally described as “syncope”, e.g. nom. *senos > hin ‘old’ vs. gen. *senosyo > hnoy, nom./acc. *dōrom > tur ‘gift’ vs. gen. *dōrosyo > troy, or *penk*e > hing ‘five’ with apocope beside hnge-tasan ‘fifteen’ with syncope.

Similarly, the old diphthongs (*ey/oy >) ē and (*ew/ow >) oy in unstressed position were continued as i and u, e.g. sēr ‘love’, gen. siroy, p’oyt ‘care; haste’, gen. p’ut’oy, and the sequence ea (< e/i + a after the loss of an intervocalic consonant) as e, e.g. ptcp. bereal ‘having carried’, gen. bereloy.

**Vowel contractions**

After the elimination of intervocalic *y, *s and partly *w and the lenition of intervocalic stops, the subsequent hiatus sequences were generally followed by vocalic contractions (cf. Schmitt 1981: 73f.). By contraction of homorganic vowels the result is the corresponding short vowel, while e is deleted in contact with a following or preceding a or o:

\[
\begin{align*}
e - e & \rightarrow e & *treyes & \rightarrow eres & \text{‘three’} \\
o - o & \rightarrow o & *b’oso-g’o & \rightarrow bok & \text{‘barefoot’} \\
a - a & \rightarrow a & *pə tweaked & \rightarrow hab & \text{‘father’ (instr. sg.)} \\
e - a & \rightarrow a & *wesr & \rightarrow groar & \text{‘spring’} \\
a - e & \rightarrow a & *pəteres & \rightarrow hare & \text{‘fathers’ (nom. pl.)} \\
e - o & \rightarrow o & *swores & \rightarrow k’orkes & \text{‘sisters’ (nom. pl.)}
\end{align*}
\]
Syllabic sonants

In general, the syllabic sonants developed a preceding supporting vowel a, i.e. *r̥, *l̥, *n̥, *m̥ > ar (/ar/), al (/al/), an, am:

* r̥ bard ‘pile’, Ved. bhṛt- ‘carrying, support’
* l̥ mali ‘gall’, Av. mərzāna- ‘belly’
* n̥ an- ‘un-’, Ved. a-, Gr. ἀ-, Lat. in-, Goth. un-
* m̥ təmb ‘ham’, Lith. timpa ‘sinew’, ONor. þomb ‘paunch; bowstring’

The same development is found in prevocalic position, i.e. mainly before an original prevocalic laryngeal, as, e.g., am ‘year’ < *sṃhah₂-, cf. Ved. sámā- ‘season’.

Consonants

While the most striking feature of the consonant system seen in a historical perspective is certainly the Armenian sound shift, other recurrent features such as palatalizations, lenitions, metatheses and the development of consonant clusters have resulted in profound transformations of the inherited pattern.

Stops

By the Armenian sound shift, tenues are, in traditional terms, continued as voiceless aspirates, mediae as tenues, and voiced aspirates as mediae. However, the development of *p usually goes a step further to h or zero (cf. also Klingenschmitt 1982: 165–168 for a discussion of initial p̥- in cases like p̥lanim ‘fall’, Lith. pūlti). This view has been challenged by adherents of the so-called glottalic theory, according to whom the Indo-European “mediae” were in reality glottalized stops, faithfully continued as such into modern Armenian dialects, e.g. Gamkrelidze 1985. As Armenian belongs to the “satəm” group of the Indo-European languages, the velars and labiovelars merge, at least before non-palatal vowels, while the palatals are subject to further palatalization, *k ˊ > s, *g̥h > c and *g̥h > j. Thus we arrive at the following table of unconditioned developments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IE</th>
<th>Armenian</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*p</td>
<td>&gt; h/Ø</td>
<td>*pod-m &gt; otn ‘foot’, Gr. acc. πόδα; *pedom &gt; het ‘footstep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*t</td>
<td>&gt; t¹</td>
<td>t’ur ‘sword’, Gr. τόρος ‘piercing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k(w)</td>
<td>&gt; k²⁶</td>
<td>k’erem ‘scratch’, Gr. κείρω ‘cut’; k’an ‘than’, Lat. quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
<td>&gt; s</td>
<td>sirt ‘heart’, Lith. širdis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*b</td>
<td>&gt; p</td>
<td>stipem ‘press’, Gr. στείβω ‘step on’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*d</td>
<td>&gt; t</td>
<td>tur ‘gift’, Gr. δόρον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*g(w)</td>
<td>&gt; k</td>
<td>khunk ‘crane’, Lat. grūs, Gr. γέρανος; *g̥ow- &gt; kov ‘cow’, Gr. βους</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gh</td>
<td>&gt; c</td>
<td>*gonu &gt; cunr ‘knee’, Skr. jānu, Gr. γόνυ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bh</td>
<td>&gt; b</td>
<td>berem ‘carry’, Skr. bhārati, Gr. φέρω</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dh</td>
<td>&gt; d</td>
<td>durk ‘door’, Gr. θύρα, Lat. forēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*g(w)h</td>
<td>&gt; g</td>
<td>geljēk ‘glands’, Lith. gėležuones; *g̥hv- in goneay ‘above all’, Gr. εὐθενῆς ‘abundantly’, Lith. ganā ‘enough’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ghh</td>
<td>&gt; j</td>
<td>jmeim ‘winter’, OCS zima, Skr. heman ‘in winter’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After u, including old u-diphthongs, the contrast between (labio)velars and palatals is neutralized in favor of the palatal, thus *lewkos > loys ‘light’, Ved. -rocas-, Av. raocah-; *

*dugh,tër > dusur ‘daughter’, Av. dugədar-, Lith. duktė.

A fourth, sporadically attested series of voiceless aspirates *pʰ, *tʰ and *kʰ, whatever its origin, seems to have yielded Arm. pʰ, tʰ, x, e.g. tupr ‘bush’, Gr. τοφη ‘a plant used for stuffing’, ortc ‘calf’, Skr. prthuka-, ċax ‘twig’, Skr. śākhā ‘branch’, xaxank ‘laughter’, Gr. καζάζω ‘laugh’.

In intervocalic position, at least some of the original tenues and voiced aspirates are subject to lenition. Here the development of the labials *p, *bʰ > -w- is secured by clear evidence, cf. *(h₁)epi > ew ‘and’, Skr. āpi ‘also’, *-V-bʰoros > -(a)wor, lit. ‘-bearer, -carrier’ (adjective and agent noun suffix), and the same goes for the palatal *gʰ > z, cf. *dʰeygʰos (or *dʰoygʰos) > dēz ‘heap’, Gr. τεῖχος ‘wall’, Av. pairi-daēza- ‘enclosure’. The regular continuation of intervocalic *-t- is *-w- before back vowels, as in *genden, to > cnaw ‘(s)he was born’, Gr. ἔγενετο, vs. *-y- before front vowels, as in *pətʰér > hayr ‘father’, Gr. πατήρ. However, this only seems to be the case in the position immediately after the synchronically stressed syllable. Thus, the *-t- (dissimilated from *-tw-) of *kʷetores ċorkc ‘four’, Ved. catvāraḥ, is completely lost after the palatalization of *kʰ before -e-.

The expected reflex of *-dʰ- remains a matter of controversy: according to some, the outcome is -z- (e.g. *h₁lewdh > eluzanem, aor. eluzi ‘extract, produce’, Ved. ῥόδhați ‘grows’), Gr. fut. ἔλιπον ‘will come’), while others assume a development to -r-, similar to that of *-δ- in loanwords of Parthian origin (Jasanoff (1979: 145) points to the verb ayrem ‘burn’: Gr. αἴϑω, which may, however, be an Iranian loanword). Apparently the velars and labiovelars were resistant to lenition, cf. aor. *e-likwet > elikc ‘(s)he left’, Gr. ἔλιπε (cf. an alternative scenario in Kortlandt 1980a).

As in other satem languages, original velars and labiovelars are prone to secondary palatalization before front vowels and *y in Armenian, though the exact conditioning is somewhat doubtful. According to an old idea by Holger Pedersen, later elaborated by Pisani (1950), Armenian and Albanian agree on a diverse treatment of simple velars and labiovelars: the labiovelar tenuis and voiced aspirate *kʷ and *gʷh and the velar media *g would undergo palatalization to ċ, j and ğ respectively, while the labiovelar media *gʷ (somewhat like the situation in Greek) and the plain velar tenuis and voiced aspirate *k and *gʰ would remain unaffected.

**Velars and labiovelars before front vowels and y:**

\[
\begin{align*}
*k & > k^{c} \\
*g & > ċ \\
*gʰ & > g \\
*kw & > č^{c} \\
*gʷ & > k \\
*gʰw & > j
\end{align*}
\]

Cf. *kʷ > č in *kʷetores > čorkc vs. *k > k in k’erem ‘scratch’, Gr. κείρω; *gʰw > j in *gʰwemno- > jerm ‘warm’, Gr. θερμός vs. *gʰ > g- in geljk ‘glands’, Lith. gėlžūones; and *g > ċ in ėmēn (< *čim-) ‘squeeze’, OCS žmoro vs. *gʰen₂ > kin ‘woman’, Gr. γυνή, OIr. ben. The attempt to consider palatalization the regular development with all velars and labiovelars alike (Kortlandt 1975, Martirosyan 2010: 711) is bought at the cost of excessive analogy.

**Sibilants**

Word-initially the sibilant *s is continued as either h- or zero without any clear conditioning, e.g. *senos > hin ‘old’, Lith. sēnas vs. *septm > ewart ‘seven’, Lat. septem, and
deleted intervocally, e.g. *swesōr > *kʰeuropean *kʰoyn ‘sister’. Two remaining problems are the word-final development, which may be either zero or -kʰ as in the plural marker, or most likely both (cf. the discussion of the nom. pl. ending) and the possibility of a special RUKI development that would connect Armenian with other satem languages such as Indo-Iranian and Balto-Slavic. At least we find both r and r̥ from *-rs-, perhaps as an indication of early dialectal variation, in the verb təramin vs. təɾəsamim ‘wither, dry out’, Gr. tɛrɔtɔma (cf. also Martirosyan (2010: 709), who hypothesizes an original accent distinction between the two variants), but it is an object of debate whether the high vowels *i and *u had a similar effect on a following *s. If this is the case, as already suggested by Pedersen (1905: 228) and later argued by Winter (1975: 115ff.) and Olsen (1989a: 5–15), the result is -r, probably with an intermediate stage -z, as, e.g., found in the aorist imperatives *deh₁-s > dir ‘put’ and *deh₂-s > tur ‘give’ from original intransitives, and i-stem verbal nouns like dir ‘position’ and lir ‘fullness’, which could represent the old ti-stems *deh₁-tis (Av. -dātī-, Goth. dēds, Lith. dė́tis, OCS -dētb) and *pleh₂-tis (Ved. prātī-, Lat. com-plētī) respectively.

Liquids

The usual outcome of Indo-European *r is r, with the variant r̥ occurring before nasals and as a reflex of *sr, cf. berem ‘carry’, Gr. φέρω vs. bēm ‘burden’, Gr. φερνή ‘dowry’, and aro ‘stream’ < *sruti- (Gr. ῥύσις ‘stream’, Ved. sruti- ‘road’). As is also the case in Greek and Anatolian, Armenian has a synchronic phonotactic constraint against initial r-, but it is a controversial issue whether this state of affairs should be projected back into the protolanguage. If this is the case we have to reconstruct the protoform of Ved. rājas-, Goth. riqiz ‘darkness’, Gr. ἐρέβος ‘the dark of the underworld’, Arm. erēk ‘evening’ with an initial laryngeal, *h₁reg-wos, and we would get a laryngeal-based “prothetic vowel” *h₁ > e- in Greek and Armenian. If, on the other hand, initial *r- is accepted, we may reconstruct *reg-wos, which would automatically yield the same result (cf. also the section “Laryngeals”). The development of prothetic vowels where no laryngeal is involved is also found before *r- in metathesized sequences (cf. “Consonant Clusters”) and in many Iranian loanwords with original initial r-, e.g. aroyr ‘brass’ from a North-West Iranian *rauδa-, originally ‘the red (material)’, arag, erag ‘quick’ vs. MParth. rag ‘quick’, Av. rayu.

The distribution between plain l and velarized ł is partly predictable: the general rule stipulates l initially (e.g. lizem ‘lick’, Gr. λείχω) and intervocally (e.g. gelum ‘roll, turn’, Lat. wolūd̪) vs. l before consonants (e.g. eln ‘deer, hind’, Lith. élīnis ‘deer’), but the original distribution is often blurred by analogy. In final position both variants are found, with a tendency toward -l in the oldest manuscripts (Meillet 1936: 47), thus e.g. gayl beside gayl ‘wolf’.

Nasals

The nasals *m and *n are among the most stable phonemes in Armenian as well as in most other Indo-European languages. Nevertheless, the development in final position is open for discussion. The nasal is apparently lost in the acc. sg. of o- and a-stems as opposed to a merger of *m and *n into final -n in cases like *gʰyōm > jiwn ‘snow’, Gr. χών, or *dōm > tun ‘house’. Similarly, a final vocalic *-n is continued as *-n, e.g. acc. *pod-ŋ > ont ‘foot’, Gr. ποδά. The original distribution can hardly be determined without a certain amount of analogy: Kortlandt (1984: 97) assumes that “original postvocalic *-n
had apparently become a feature of the preceding vowel and subsequently been lost”; i.e. we have to posit an intermediate stage of nasalized vowels, and jiwn and tun must be analogical. Alternatively, one might suggest that nasalization only occurred with the open vowels *o and *a, in which case jiwn and tun would be regular while, on the other hand, the endingless accusatives of animate i- and u-stems would have to be analogical.

**Semivowels**

The fate of the semivowels *y and *w is still open for interpretation in several respects. While intervocalic *-y- is lost at an early stage, e.g. *treyes > erek ‘three’, the development in word-initial position remains unclear due to the scarcity of diagnostic examples. Most likely, the regular development is *-j- as in jur ‘water’, which should probably be compared with Lith. jūrės ‘sea’. The initial l- of leard ‘liver’ and luc ‘yoke’ should not necessarily be considered counterevidence insofar as leard may constitute a contamination between *yēkʷrt (Ved. yākṛt etc.) and the stem of either ŌEng. līfer etc. < *liparo- ‘fat’ or Hitt. lissī- ‘liver’, while luc, rather than being a direct continuation of *(H)yugom (Ved. yugām, Gr. ἄγω, Lat. iugum), may have been influenced by the verb lucanem ‘dissolve’. There are two reliable examples of initial j- as jur ‘egg’, Scr. jaje, and jez ‘you’ (acc./dat./loc. pl.), Ved. yūyām, but in both cases the protoform may have had two subsequent syllables in *yV- as a disturbing factor. According to Martirosyan (2010: 706), who derives the interrogative/indefinite stem *o- from the relative stem *yo-, the regular continuation is zero. However, o- is preferably connected with the more appropriate stem *kʷo-, as *kʷ- and *p- seem to merge before *-o-, cf. also *kʷolso- > oln ‘spine, backbone’, Lat. collus, collum.

In initial position *w- is reflected as g-, no doubt via an intermediate stage *gw- as also suggested by the early Georgian loanword γwino ‘wine’, Arm. gini < *wɔynio- (Gr. οἶνος, Lat. uīnum), but the intervocalic development is more complicated (cf. the treatments by Eichner (1978), Olsen (1986) and Matzinger (1992)) with the reflexes -g-, -w- (-v-) and zero. Possibly -g- is the regular continuation before back vowels apart from -u-; -w-/v- before front vowels and -u-; and zero between homorganic vowels: cf. e.g. oroganem/aroganem ‘sprinkle’ from the root *srew-, Ved. sravati ‘streams, flows’; hoviw ‘shepherd’ < *h₁ow-pa₂; gen./dat./loc. aler < *-ewer- from alewr ‘flour’, Gr. ἀλείαρ < *h₁lēh₁wr. An important detail has been added by Schindler (apud Matzinger 1992), who stipulated a regular development *-wi- > -wə- whereby the otherwise puzzling transfer of original i-stems like haw ‘bird’, Lat. auis, to the u-declension has found an elegant solution.

**Laryngeals**

The fate of the IE laryngeals is one of the most hotly debated issues of Armenian phonology, and while certain details seem relatively clear, there is hardly a single phonological conditioning where it has been possible to achieve full consensus. The following contexts are particularly noteworthy:

**Initial position before consonants (*HC-):** As is also the case of Greek and Phrygian, Armenian is characterized by so-called prothetic vowels deriving from laryngeals, with prominent examples like astl ‘star’, Gr. ἀστήρ, Hitt. h(a)šterz vs. Goth. staírnos, Lat. stella < *h₂ster/l-; and ayr ‘man’, Gr. ἄνήρ, Phryg. αὐρ vs. Ved. nār-, Umbr. acc. pl. nerf < *h₂ner. There is, however, no general agreement as to whether the prothetic vowel is always a-, irrespective of the quality of the laryngeal (thus, e.g., Klingenschmitt 1982:
105 and Olsen 1985), or Armenian shares the feature of “triple representation” with Greek as argued by, e.g., Winter (1965), Kortlandt (1987) and Beekes (1988), so that *h₁C- > *eC-, *h₂C- > *aC-, *h₃C- > *oC-. Since the adherents of “triple representation” at the same time favor a conditioned development of *o > a in such cases as anicanem ‘mock’ < *h₁neyd- (Gr. ὀνειδίζω, Goth. ga-naitjan), the evaluation depends on the correct interpretation of examples with *h₁-. This is further connected with the status of *r- in Indo-European: if *r- did occur in initial position in the protolanguage, erēk ‘evening’, Gr. ἑβεβός may go back to *reg-, and examples such as atāmn ‘tooth’, Aeol. pl. ἔδοντες, and anum ‘name’ with the possibly cognate Laconian names Ἐνυμακρατίδας, Ἐνυμαντιάδας may be reconstructed with an initial *h₁-. If not, the correct reconstruction of erēk is *h₂reg-ωs, which would then favor the idea of “triple representation”. This is, however, not what we find in other contexts. Prothetic vowels do not occur before 'fleece, wool' < *h₁gełmn, ancorač 'shame' and ἔδοντες, and examples such as atāmn ‘tooth’, Aeol. pl. ἔδοντες, and anum ‘name’ with the possibly cognate Laconian names Ἐνυμακρατίδας, Ἐνυμαντιάδας may be reconstructed with an initial *h₁-, if not, the correct reconstruction of erēk is *h₂reg-ωs, which would then favor the idea of “triple representation”. This is, however, not what we find in other contexts. Prothetic vowels do not occur before *w-, cf. gelmn ‘fleece, wool’ < *h₁wela,mn-, Hit. hulana-, and goy ‘(s)he is’ < *h₂wos-, Gr. ἄσσα νόκτα ‘spent the night’.

Interconsonantal position (*CHC): When a laryngeal is “vocalized”, or more correctly develops a prop vowel interconsonantally, this vowel is always a, so at least in this position a “triple representation” matching the situation in Greek is excluded: thus cnaw ‘engendered’ < *genden, Gr. ἐγένετο with *-a-, ἔδοντες, Gr. θάνατος with *(a)ro-; arawr ‘plow’ < *h₁a,a,rom, Gr. ἀρῶρον with *(a)ro-. However, as is also the case in, e.g., Iranian, interconsonantal laryngeals are sometimes lost, as in armn ‘root’ < *h₁m,na,o-, Gr. ὁρμένος or dustr ‘daughter’ < *d,ug,ar, Gr. ἀγαθήρ. The conditioning of this diversity is not quite clear (cf. the discussion in Olsen 1999: 768f.), but at least vocalization seems to be regular in initial and final syllables.

Position between vocalic sonant and stop/s (*RHC): Sequences of sonant + laryngeal in the position between consonants are reflected as either aRa or aRaw with a prop vowel on both sides of the sonant. Thus, čanač’em ‘know’ (for *canač’em) < *g,na,-skе/o-, Gr. γνῶσκω, as opposed to the corresponding derivative canawt‘known; knowing’ < *g,na,to-i-, where the development to aRaw may be restricted to peak position as originally suggested by Winter (1965: 110), cf. also amac’em ‘am ashamed’ beside amawt‘shame’ and alač’em ‘pray’ beside alawt‘k’ ‘prayer’.

Initial position before vowels (*HV-): Apparently an initial consonantal laryngeal is sometimes reflected as h- in Armenian, while in other cases it simply seems to be lost. An attempt to account for this bewildering state of affairs has been made by Kortlandt (1980b) (followed by Beekes 1988: 76), Martirosyan (2010: 712f.) and Kloekhorst (2008: 75)), who further seeks to corroborate the theory with Anatolian evidence. According to Kortlandt’s analysis, the laryngeals *h₁ and *h₂ would be preserved in the protolanguage before an original e-vowel, while they would be lost before *o, i.e. *h₁,e- > ha-, *h₂,e- > ho- vs. *h₁,o and *h₂,o > o. This distinction would still be reflected in Armenian, where an initial h- (if not from *s- or *p-) is assumed to indicate an e-grade in the protoform. However attractive the idea of such a clear-cut regularity may be, the actual material is difficult to reconcile with the suggested distribution, as when, e.g., the word for ‘plow’, arawr, on account of the missing initial h- has to be analyzed as a zero-grade formation *h₁r, trom as opposed to the evidence for full grade in the other languages, or when the verb ace’m ‘bring, lead, conduct’ is considered a match of Lat. gerō < *h₁gesе/o- rather than, as traditionally assumed, identical with Ved. ájati, Gr. ἔγει, Lat. agō.

Position after ître before a consonant (i/uHC): Traditionally a laryngeal following the high vowels i and u is assumed to be lost with a compensatory lengthening that would leave no trace in Armenian, e.g. jil ‘sinew’ < *gwiHslah-, cf. Lith. gýsla, Lat. sēlum, or čuk ‘roof’ < *skuHto-, cf. Gr. σκόπτος. However, as also seems to be the case in Greek

Consonant clusters

A comparison between the syllable structure of the Indo-European protolanguage and that of Armenian makes it clear that very few original consonant clusters have survived in a historically transparent form. The treatment of several clusters remains unsettled, and at this place only a selection of the more well-established rules will be presented. A rich collection of potential examples may be found in Džaukjan 1982. Cf. also Godel 1975: 78–85.

Clusters of two stops

The evidence for such clusters is rather scarce, but at least the word-internal development *-pt- > -*wtc- is secured by ewtcn ‘seven’ < *septm̥, analogically followed by utc ‘eight’ < *optō (for *okw̥tô), while the regular outcome of a palatal stop (after u) + t is illustrated by dustr ‘daughter’ < *dug̥tēr. Most likely, word-initial *pt- is continued as ěr-, cf. ěrli ‘elm’: Gr. πτέλεα, tcer ‘side’ < *pter-, Gr. πτέρον ‘wing’.

Clusters of resonant + stop

Voiceless stops are generally assumed to be voiced after resonants, e.g. bard (i-st.) ‘pile’ < *b̥ṛt̥i-, Ved. bhṛti- ‘burden’; hing ‘five’, Ved. pāṅca, Gr. πέντε. However, the cluster *nt apparently has a double reflex, nd as in anderk ‘entrails’, Gr. ἐντέρα, dr-and ‘doorposts’, Lat. antae, vs. n in, e.g., the 3 pl. ending -(V)n < *(V)nti, or decadic numbers in -sun, e.g. eresun ‘30’, Gr. τριὰκοντα. The conditioning is differently interpreted: Olsen (1989b: 227) stipulates voicing after a stressed vowel, while Clackson (1994: 56) assumes -nd- in internal position vs. -n word-finally after the loss of end-syllables. Somewhat similarly, the intervocalic clusters *mp and *mbh appear to have two outcomes, mb and m, e.g. *mp > mb in tčamb ‘(pack) saddle, ham’, ONor. þǫmb ‘paunch; bowstring’, Lith. tìmpa ‘sinew’ vs. *mp > m in amokc cem ‘soften; mix; cook, boil together’, Skr. sam-pacati (cf. Dumézil 1938 and Olsen 2005 on a possible regular distribution).

Clusters of resonant + s/s + resonant

For resonant + s/s + resonant we observe the following rules:

*Ns > s e.g. *mēmso- > mīs ‘flesh, meat’, Ved. māṁsā-, Goth. mimz
*ls > l e.g. al ‘salt’, Gr. ἅλς
*rs > ῥ or ῦ e.g. ōt̥arāmim/tčar̥səmim ‘withier dry out’, Gr. τέρσομαι (cf. “Sibilants”)
*sN > N e.g. gin ‘prize’, Ved. vasnā-, Lat. uēnum; nu ‘daughter-in-law’ < *snu-sos, Gr. νοῦς
*sr > ῥ e.g. kər < *swesros, gen. of k’oyny < *swesōr ‘daughter’; aru ‘stream’ < *sruto-, Ved. srutā-
Clusters of stop + resonant

In initial position a voiceless stop is lost at least before a liquid with further development of a prothetic vowel before what would otherwise be initial r-, thus *pleh₁tos > *li ‘full’, Lat. -plētus; *kʰlutos > *lu ‘heard’, Gr. κλοτός, Ved. śrutā-, Lat. -clutus; *treys > erēc ‘three’, Ved. trāyah, Gr. τρεῖς; *preysgʷus > *erēc (u-st.) ‘elder’, Cret. πρεισγος.

Word-internally, we generally find a lenited version of the stop:

* -tr- > -wr(-),
e.g. arawr ‘plow’, Gr. ἄροτρον, Lat. arātrum; hawr < *pətrós, gen. of hayr ‘father’
* -kr- or * -kr- > -wr(-)
e.g. mawruk ‘beard’, Ved. śmāśru- ‘beard’, Lith. smākros ‘chin’
* -tl- > -wl(-)/wl(-)
e.g. ul (for *uwul; o-st.) ‘kid’ < *putlos, Osc. pucloro- ‘son’;
agent noun suffix -awł, e.g. cnawł ‘parent’ < *-VtlV- (cf. “Nominal Word Formation”)
* -pn- > -wn(-)
e.g. tawn (i-st.) < *dapni- ‘feast’, Lat. daps ‘sacrificial meal’, ONor. tafn ‘victim’

Metathesis

Metathesis regularly occurs in clusters of media or voiced aspirate + liquid, triggering the development of a prothetic vowel word-initially, cf. the following examples:

* -dr > rt
* -gʷr- > Vrk-
* -bʰr > rb
* -gʰr > rj
* -gʰwʳ- > Vrg-

In case of the structure *Vr – r there is regular dissimilation to (V)ł – r, thus, e.g., * -bʰrātēr > elbayr ‘brother’, *bʰrēwr̥ > albewr ‘fountain’, Gr. φρέαρ.

A small group of exceptions includes srunk ‘leg, shank’ < *krūsni- or the like (Lat. crūs ‘shank’, Lith. šlaunis ‘hip, thigh’), not *Vrunk; krunk ‘crane’, Lat. grūs, not *Vrkunk; and possibly glux ‘head’, Lith. galvā, etc., if this is from *ghluH- rather than the morphologically unlikely *gʰolū-. These examples share the features of an initial velar or palatal and u-vocalism, so perhaps a sequence *Krų would develop a prop vowel to *KuRu-whence, with loss of the unaccented -u-, Krų-.

Clusters of two resonants

In a few cases we have evidence for a development * -ln- > -l-, e.g. *fōlum ‘let’ < *tol-nu-, Lat. tollō (cf. Klingenschmitt 1982: 243f.), while it is more difficult to determine the conditioned distribution of wn beside mn from the sequence *mn (cf. the discussion in Olsen 1999: 792f.).

Clusters of s + stop/stop + s

The cluster *st is preserved initially as well as in original intervocalic position, thus stipem ‘press’, Gr. στείβω; sterǰ ‘barren’, Gr. στεῖρα; similarly zd in ost ‘branch’ < *(H)o-zdo-,
Gr. ὀξος. The regular reflex of *sp- is more uncertain: sp- as in sparnam ‘threaten’, Lat. spernō, or p- as in prayt ‘zeal’, Gr. σπυδή. An even more complicated matter is the fate of sK/ks-clusters. According to Godel (1975: 80), k and *k are neutralized in connection with *s, and, indeed, we find quite a number of sound etymologies including such a cluster with a common reflex c*, e.g. *-ks in vec<’six’ < *suweks, *-sg- in erēc<’elder’ < *preysg*us, Cret. πρειάγγος, *sk- in c’urt ‘cold’, OCS севёр ‘north’, and *sk- in c’ayt em and c’aytem ‘bubble, sparkle’, Lat. scatei0, Lith. skaideriis; similarly, the original three-consonant clusters *-s-sk- in aye<’visit, search’ < *hjays-sk- and *-k-sk- in harc’amen ‘ask’ < *přk-sk-, Ved. přečáti. Another potential development is -č-., which may be found in *-sk-verbs of the type čanač’em ‘know’ < *(ģi-)ęńh-,ške-, Gr. γνωσσκο, alac’em ‘pray’ < *(si-)h2-ske-, Gr. ὕλακσκαθα, but here it is a matter of dispute whether the Armenian verbs represent a faithful continuation of the Indo-European pattern (thus, e.g., Klingenschmitt 1982: 84) or an extended suffix *-sky-. Finally, there exists a small group where an initial š- apparently goes back to *sk- (or *skh-, cf. Martirosyan 2010: 516): šel ‘oblique’ < *skel-no-, Gr. σκέλλος ‘bandy-legged’, Alb. čalē ‘lame’, Lith. κulnas ‘heel’; șil ‘cockeyed’, OHG skēlah; šert ‘splinter’, Lith. skedervā; šertem ‘scratch’ < *skerd-, Lith. skėrdziu. In all these cases, the clusters occur at the same time initially and before front vowels.

Y-clusters

The correct interpretation of the fate of y-clusters is severely hampered by the scarcity of reliable examples. Thus, the regular continuation of *ty and *dy is assumed to be either the “shibilants” č- and ć or the affricates c- and c, while the development of *d’y > j is quite uncontroversial, cf. měj ‘middle’ < *med’yō- (with *e > ě before a palatal, cf. also *(h)ekwoś > cś ‘donkey’), Ved. mádhya-, Lat. medius. Truly, the assumed continuations č and ć would mean a neat parallelism between the three series, but the best example of *ty > č is the verb koč’em ‘call’, allegedly < *g*otye- and thus a cognate of Goth. qipan ‘say, speak’, and this may have been influenced by the almost synonymous goč’em < *wok*ye- ‘shout, cry, call out’. For *dy > ě the phonetic details of the alleged connection between oročam, -em ‘chew, ruminate’ and Lat. rōdā, Ved. rádati ‘gnaw’ (Greppin 1993: 19) are unclear. According to an alternative theory (Olsen 1993), *ty is continued as the affricate c* in, e.g., k’ec<’isolated’ < *swetyo-, Lith. svečiúas ‘stranger, guest’ (from the reflexive stem *swé-) and the verb aneč’anem ‘pass, cross’, Gr. ἀνείδουμα ‘stand opposite’, ἀνέκου ‘come toward’ (cf. also under “Verbs” on the subjunctive). The existence of parallel examples of *dy > c (cf. Godel 1975: 82) largely depends on the interpretation of verbs such as hecanim ‘ride’, Gr. ξομά ‘sit’, anicanem ‘mock’, Gr. ὁνείδιζο, Goth. ganaitjan as the continuations of y-presentes rather than s-aorists. The development of *k(w)y > č is safely attested in aćk* ‘eyes’, Gr. ὀξος, OCS ocě, while *ky most likely yields c*, cf. luc’anem ‘lighten’ < *lökwke-(*k > *k after u-;iphthong: Klingenschmitt 1982: 194). Intervocalic *-sy- is continued as -y-, thus the o-stem gen. sg. ending *-osyo > -oy, and in the position after a sonant, *-y- is reflected as -j(-), e.g. anurj ‘dream’, Gr. ὀνειρος.

W-clusters

Some of the most bizarre phonetic developments in Armenian are found with w-clusters, though the end results are less surprising when we consider both the strengthening of *w > g and the general tendency toward metatheses. Thus, *sw and *tw are reflected as k* in, e.g., *swesör > k’oyr ‘sister’, Ved. svasar- and *two- > k’o ‘your’, Ved. tva-. As famously discovered by Meillet (1924) *dw is continued as (V)rk in examples such as erku ‘two’,
Lat. *duo* and *erkar* ‘long’, Gr. δηρός. This remarkable sound law can hardly be dismissed, though it has often been doubted and its implications widely debated, cf. Klingenschmitt 1982: 225 and 238f., Vennemann 1986, Kortlandt 1989 and Viredaz 2003. On this background one might expect a parallel development *dʰw > rg*, and in fact this is what Klingenschmitt (1982: 238f.) assumes for the verb *argelum* ‘hinder, keep back’, which he compares with the synonymous ONor. *duelia*, OHG *twellen*. The regular continuation of the cluster *kˊw* is ʃ, cf. ʂun ‘dog’, Ved. śvā́; əš ‘donkey’, Ved. àśva-.

**MORPHOLOGY**

The characteristic features of the Indo-European morphological system are only partly preserved in Armenian, with a number of restructurings, simplifications and losses in both the noun and the verb. Several endings and morphological markers have been rendered opaque by regular sound change, including the loss of final syllables, and to the extent the corresponding categories are maintained, we observe a series of countermoves against the regular phonetic development such as the construction of suffix clusters and the addition of clarifying postpositions or adverbs. However, except for the numerous Iranian noun suffixes, the morphological elements as such generally seem to have belonged to the protolanguage.

**Nouns**

The system of noun inflection in Classical Armenian has undergone significant changes: the category of grammatical gender has been given up altogether, the dual is lost, and the case system, while preserving a distinction between seven cases in the pronouns (the inherited eight minus a separate vocative), has been subject to several syncretisms, so that a paradigm will usually only distinguish between four different forms in the singular and four in the plural. On the other hand, an archaic ablaut pattern has been preserved to some extent, particularly in the inflection of the *n*-stems and a few inherited kinship terms.

**Vocalic stem classes**

The inflection of the four vocalic stem classes, *o*-, *a*-, *i*- and *u*-stems, is almost identical. However, the *a*– and *i*-stems merge in the gen./dat./loc. sg., and the *o*-stems exhibit some aberrations in the oblique cases of the singular.

**Vocalic stem classes:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg. nom./acc.</th>
<th>o-stems</th>
<th>a-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ēš ‘donkey’</td>
<td>ēš</td>
<td>am ‘year’</td>
<td>ban ‘word’</td>
<td>zard ‘ornament’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat.</td>
<td>iš-oy</td>
<td>am-i</td>
<td>ban-i</td>
<td>zard-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>iš-oy</td>
<td>am-ē</td>
<td>ban-ē</td>
<td>zard-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>iš-ov</td>
<td>am-aw</td>
<td>ban- iw</td>
<td>zard-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>ēš</td>
<td>am-i</td>
<td>ban-i</td>
<td>zard-u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. nom.</td>
<td>ēš-’k’</td>
<td>am-’k’</td>
<td>ban-’k’</td>
<td>zard-’k’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat./abl.</td>
<td>iš-’oc’</td>
<td>am-’ac’</td>
<td>ban-’ic’</td>
<td>zard-’uc’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc./loc.</td>
<td>ēš-s</td>
<td>am-s</td>
<td>ban-s</td>
<td>zard-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>iš-’ovk’</td>
<td>am-’awk’</td>
<td>ban-’iwk’</td>
<td>zard-’uk’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A subtype of the a-stems with gen./dat./loc. sg. -ay is practically restricted to proper names, e.g. Vardan, -ay (Weitenberg 1989).

The numerous case syncretisms are naturally explained by the fact that final syllables would generally be lost. Thus, the endingless forms of the nom./acc. sg. are probably the regular continuations of *-os, *-om (o-st.), *-ah₂, *-ah₃m (a-st.), *-is, *-i (i-st.) and *-us, *-u (u-st.); the missing ending of the old animate accusative of i- and u-stems, *-im and *-um, may be either regular or analogical. In the o-stems the disyllabic ending of the gen. sg. *-osyo > -oy (cf. Skr. -asya) was extended to the dative and the ablative, where the inherited ending *-ōd or *-ād would undergo apocope, and the endings of the instr. sg. are unproblematically derived from the stem vowel + *-bʰi (-u representing *-uw), but otherwise most of the inherited endings would have been lost by apocope. Therefore, the loc. sg. of the o-stems is generally endingless (IE *-oy > -Ø), and the gen./dat. of the a- and i-stems in -i and that of the u-stems in -u must go back to disyllabic forms *-i-os, *-u-os, etc. The locative in -i, also occasionally found with the o-stems, most likely has its origin in a postposition *-h₂en. Similarly, the ablative in *-ē may be explained as an original postposition *-eti, cf. Ved. āti ‘over, beyond’. If intervocalic *-t- is continued as *-w- before a back vowel, as seems to be the case, the traditional derivation from *-etos corresponding to Ved. mukhatāh ‘from the mouth’ etc. (Meillet 1936: 73) is phonetically impossible.

In the plural the most troublesome ending is the nominative in -kʷ where one expects a final *-s. Klingenschmitt (1982: 23f.) explains -kʷ in the nom. pl. beside the zero ending in the nom. sg. as sandhi variants: when in the a-stems the singular *-ah₂ > -Ø was opposed to the plural *-ah₂(e)s > *-Ø/-kʷ, -kʷ was perceived as the characteristic plural marker, and in the course of time -kʷ was generalized in all plural forms, nominal as well as verbal, thus also instr. pl. -ovkʷ etc., 1 pl. verbal ending -emkʷ etc., pronouns such as mek ‘we’, duk ‘you’, and, perhaps most significantly,erek ‘three’ < *treyes and ērkʷ ‘four’ < *kʷet(w)ores, the only numerals ending in *-s. Alternatively, Kortlandt (1984: 89f.) assumes that -kʷ is the only regular reflex of postvocalic *-s. In that case, however, the nominative must have been analogically replaced by the accusative, and it would be difficult to understand the general merger of masculine o-stems and neuter s-stems.

The -s of the acc./pl. is the regular outcome of the m./f. ending -Vns in the vocalic classes, while the same ending in the loc. pl. may have been extended from the n-stems, i.e. *-(V)n-su > -s with analogical restitution of the n in the n-stems themselves, e.g. harsuṇ ‘bride’, acc./loc. pl. harsuns for regular *harsus. Another possible source is the s-stems, where a geminate *-s-su would probably yield -s as in *h₁es-si > es ‘you are’, while *-s- of the vocalic stems would be lost in intervocalic position without a trace. The origin of the plural oblique ending -(V)ć remained a bone of contention. An attractive solution has been offered by Seldeslachts (1991: 261), who suggests a derivation from the original adjective suffix *-isko- > -icć, later analogically adapted to the other stem classes as -ocć, -acć etc. Finally, the instr. pl. is formed by adding the plural marker -kʷ to the instr. sg. Cf. also Matzinger 2005 for a more detailed discussion of the case endings.

In some cases the vocalic stems are direct continuations of the inherited patterns, thus čs (a) ‘donkey’ < *(h₁)ekwo- ‘horse’, Lat. equus etc.; am (a) ‘year’ < *sm(h) ah₂-, Ved. sāmā- ‘season’; ban (i) ‘word’ < *bʰah₂-ni-, ONor. bán; z-ard ‘ornament’ (u) < *-h₂rtu-, Ved. rtu- ‘rule, order’, Lat. artus ‘limb’, but they have also been fed by moribund categories and by loanwords. Thus, e.g., neuter s-stems like jet ‘tail’, Av. -zadah-, have been included in the o-stems, and root nouns like ayc ‘goat’, Gr. αὐγς in the i-stems, presumably under the influence of the oblique plural *-isko- > -icć. Compare also the old root noun otn ‘foot’ where the acc. sg. *pod-吲 explains the singular inflection as an n-stem, while the plural, otkʰ, otičʰ, is treated as an i-stem. A number of
u-stems such as *haw* ‘bird’, Lat. *auis*, go back to older i-stems as a consequence of the regular development of *-wu-* > -wi-.

The oldest layer of Iranian loanwords seems to have preserved the inflectional class they had in Old Iranian, as originally assumed by Meillet (differently, Schmitt 1983: 100), e.g. the i-stem *uxt* ‘oath’, Av. *uxti-* ‘word, speech’; the u-stem *xrat* ‘advice’, Av. *xratu*; or, not least, the numerous a-stem loanwords and loan suffixes going back to Indo-European thematic stems.

Alternating stem classes

Except for the regular syncope and vowel reduction in unaccented syllables, the vocalic classes display no stem alternation. With the consonantal subtypes, i.e. the n-, r- and l-stems, on the other hand, a distinction is made between at least the stem of the nom./acc. sg. and that of the oblique forms.

N-stems

From a historical point of view, the Armenian n-stems have several sources: some, like *ga‘in* ‘lamb’, Gr. ἀρήν, go back to various types of Indo-European n-stems, including -men-stems, Hoffmann formations and -nt-stems; others have been adapted from original root nouns, e.g. *otn* ‘foot’ from acc. sg. *podn*, and still others derive from stems in *-no-/-na-* such as *t‘orn* ‘grandchild’ < *torn-, Lith. ta‘nas ‘servant, farm boy’ and *be‘rn* ‘burden’ < *b‘ernah₂-, Gr. φερνή ‘dowry’. As an archaic feature of the n-stems the paradigms display three or even four stem alternants: n/in/an, n/un/an and n/in/an/un, where -in-, -un- and -an- in principle represent the e-, o- and zero grade of the suffix *-en-, *-on-, *-n-, so that it is still possible to distinguish between various inherited ablaut types. Thus, e.g., *anjn* ‘person; self’, gen. *anjin*, nom. pl. *anjink*, continues a hysterodynamic paradigm corresponding to ONor. *angi* ‘smell’, while the compound *mi-anjn* ‘one-person’, i.e. ‘monk’ with gen. *mi-anjun*, nom. pl. *mi-anjunk*, points to a compositional o-grade in the suffix with a similar allomorphy as Gr. *patēr*, acc. *patērō* ‘father’ vs. *eupatērō*, acc. *eupatērō*. An example of an alternating (proterodynamic) paradigm is *harsn* ‘bride’ < *prkōn* (root *prek-* ‘ask’; cf. Hamp 1988).

The n-stem *harsn* ‘bride’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg. nom./acc.</th>
<th><em>harsn</em></th>
<th><em>-ōn</em></th>
<th>pl. nom.</th>
<th><em>harsunk</em></th>
<th><em>-on-</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat./loc.</td>
<td><em>harsin</em></td>
<td><em>-en-</em></td>
<td>acc./loc.</td>
<td><em>harsuns</em></td>
<td><em>-on-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td><em>harsnē</em></td>
<td>*-en-</td>
<td>gen./dat./abl.</td>
<td><em>harsanc</em></td>
<td><em>-n-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td><em>harsamb</em></td>
<td><em>-n-</em></td>
<td>instr.</td>
<td><em>harsambk</em></td>
<td><em>-n-</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An extremely widespread subtype consists of nouns in -iwn, in particular abstract nouns in -ut'iwn, gen. -u-te'an, e.g. *cerut'iwn* ‘old age’ from cer ‘old’. Finally, the monosyllabic tun ‘house’, Gr. δῶ, and šun ‘dog’, Ved. śvā́, Gr. κύων, have the oblique forms tan and šan.

N-stem plurals are also found in some nouns denoting persons or animals, e.g. *nu* (gen. *nuoy*) = *snu-‘daughter-in-law’ with the plural *mukan*, *erēc* ‘elder’ = *preysg*’us with the plural *ericunk*. Here the n-extension probably corresponds to the individualizing n-stem suffix of Germanic.
On the whole, the _r_-inflection is a relatively rare type, but, still, it contains some of the most essential elements of the vocabulary, the basic kinship terms. We may distinguish between three subtypes:

1) “regular” _r_-stems in nom./acc. sg. -_r_, gen./dat./loc. -_er_, e.g. _distr_ ‘daughter’ < nom. *dugǝtēr, with generalized suffix -_ter_ in the rest of the paradigm; similarly loanwords such as _kaysr_, _kayser_ ‘emperor’.

2) a small number of *-_wer/-_wen-heteroclitics, e.g. _alewr_ (later _aliwr_) ‘flour’ < *h₂ [_lēh,wr_, Gr. úlētapp, gen./dat./loc. _aler_ (Eichner 1978).

3) the kinship terms _hayr_ ‘father’, _mayr_ ‘mother’ and _elbayr_ ‘brother’ with preservation of the inherited ablaut pattern, here exemplified by the paradigm of _hayr_.

**Paradigm of _hayr_ ‘father’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sg. nom./acc.</th>
<th>hayr</th>
<th>&lt; *p₂-ṭēr</th>
<th>pl. nom.</th>
<th>hark</th>
<th>&lt; *p₂-ṭér-es</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat./loc.</td>
<td>hawr</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-tr-ós etc.</td>
<td>acc./loc.</td>
<td>hars</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-ṭér- + -s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>havrē</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-tr- + -ē</td>
<td>gen./dat./abl.</td>
<td>harc</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-tr-skō-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>harb</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-tr-bʰi</td>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>harbk</td>
<td>&lt; *p₂-tr-bʰis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The paradigm of _k'oyr_ ‘sister’ is quite isolated and highly archaic: nom./acc. sg. _k'oyr_ < *swesōr; gen./dat./loc. _k'ēr_ < *swesros etc.; instr. _k'erb_ < *swesbʰi, analogical for *k'earb < *k'earb; nom. pl. _k'ork_ < *swesores.

** Ł-stems**

Besides a few secondarily adapted loanwords like _skutl_, gen. _sktel_ ‘plate’, Lat. _scutella_, the only member of this stem class is _astl_, gen. _astel_ ‘star’. The reason why this word is an Ł-stem rather than an _r_-stem like, e.g., Gr. úlētapp is unclear: perhaps analogical influence from the word for ‘Sun’, *sah₂wōl, which is, however, not transmitted in Armenian, or perhaps even a trace of an old _r/l_-alternation as suggested by Olsen (2010: 81).

**Heteroclitics and irregular paradigms**

A number of _u_-stem adjectives exhibit a peculiar heteroclitic pattern with -_r_ in the nom./acc. sg. and _n_-stem inflection in the plural, e.g. _barjr_ ‘high’, gen./dat./loc. _barju_, nom. pl. _barjunk_ from the root *bʰerǵʰ-, where the _u_-stem has a parallel in Hitt. _parkuš_ and the _n_-stem may go back to the same _nt_-stem as Ved. _bhānt-_ , Av. _barzant_. The origin of the -_r_ of the nom./acc. is more doubtful. It hardly reflects the competing adjective suffix *-_ro_- as in Toch. A. pārkār, B. pārkare since _u_-adjectives in general seem to be replaced by _ro_-adjectives in Tocharian. Moreover, a nom./acc. in -_r_ also occurs in a few original _u_-stem neuters, _artawsr_, pl. _artasuk_ ‘tear’ < *draku, cf. Gr. ὀδὴρ ‘knee’, Gr. γόνυ; and _mehr_ ‘honey’, which is usually considered a contamination between *melit ‘honey’ (Hitt. _melit_ etc.) and the _u_-stem *medʰu, Ved. _médhu_ ‘honey, mead’, while it is missing in masculine _u_-stems such as _z-gest_ ‘clothing, garment’ < *westu-. On the whole, the best option may well be an idea by Alexis Manaster Ramer (p.c.), who stipulates a regular sound change of final -_u_ > -_r_, which would imply that the neuter gender was generalized in the adjectives.
A modest number of nouns cannot be fitted into the regular inflectional types, thus, e.g., akn ‘eye’, gen. akan, pl. ačk; cf. Gr. ὀσσε; unkn ‘ear’ with the plural akanjk; ayr ‘man’ < *h₂nēr, Gr. ἀνήρ, gen. ain, metathesized from *h₂grós, Gr. ἀνδρός; kin ‘woman’ < *g₂wēn, with the enigmatic oblique form knoj and the plural kanayk with a remarkable similarity to Gr. γυναικεῖς.

Gradation

The Armenian adjective has no obligatory gradation (cf. Jensen 1959: 68f.). For the expression of the comparative, the positive is generally used either alone or with kcan (= Lat. quam) or k’an z-, cf. e.g. Matt. 18.6: law ē nma ‘it is better for him’ or Mark 14.5: pōkūr ē k’an zamanayn sermanis ‘it is smaller than all seeds’. However, the original intensive in -agoyn, an Iranian loan suffix, also serves as a comparative. For the expression of the superlative function there are several possibilities: the simple positive, e.g. Matt. 5.19: pōkūr kočcesci ‘he shall be called the smallest’; reduplication, e.g. mecamec ‘the largest’ (or more commonly ‘very large’); or compounds with amenasurb ‘the holiest’ (also ‘very holy’).

Pronouns

The pronominal system of Armenian consists of the following categories: the personal pronoun; the reflexive, reciprocal and possessive pronouns; the interrogative, indefinite and relative pronouns; and the demonstrative pronouns. Only the pronouns have a distinction between the nominative and accusative and between the genitive and dative of the singular.

The personal pronouns


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>First person</th>
<th>Second person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>du</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc./loc.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>k‘ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>im</td>
<td>k‘o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>inj</td>
<td>k‘ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>inēn, injēn</td>
<td>k‘ēn, k‘ezēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>inew</td>
<td>k‘ew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>mek‘</td>
<td>duk‘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>mez</td>
<td>jez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>mer</td>
<td>jer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat./loc.</td>
<td>mez</td>
<td>jez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>mēnj</td>
<td>jēnj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>mewk‘</td>
<td>jewk‘</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 sg.: the nominative es seems to be a sandhi variant for *ec < *(h₁)gō, while the gen. im, from an original possessive pronoun *(h₁)emo-, with assimilation to in- from the acc./loc. is < *im-s, dat. inj, apparently provided the stem of the remaining case forms. The dative contains the same element *-gē as Lat. mēhī.

2 sg.: nom. sg. du for expected *tu < *tū has the same (enclitic) development of *t- as the demonstrative d.- < *tu-. Here again, gen. k‘o < *two- (/-twe-) is the old
possessive pronoun whose stem has spread to the rest of the paradigm. The dat. k'ez < *twe-ǵi must be a substitution for *b-hi, cf. Lat. tībī, under the influence of the 1 sg.

1 pl. mek' goes back to either *mes like Lith. mēs in analogy with the verbal ending or *meyes for *weyes with initial *w-, cf. Skr. vayám, Lat. uōs etc. The acc./dat./loc. mez has probably taken over the element *-ǵi from the singular, and the gen. mer contains the suffix *(t)ero-, cf. Gr. ἡμέτερος.

2 pl. duk' for *yūs > *ǰuk' (?) is influenced by the singular du.

The reflexive, reciprocal and possessive pronouns

The reflexive pronoun iwr is common for the genitive, dative and locative; there also exists an abl. iwrmē, an instr. iwreaw and a plural acc./loc. iwreans, gen./dat./abl. -eanc'. Traditionally the stem iwr(-) is derived from *sewero-, but this is formally problematic as *-ewe- would be expected to yield *-e- (cf. gen./dat./abl. aler 'flour' < *-eweros etc.), and it is difficult to provide a functional justification for a vrddhi derivative *sēwero-. According to an alternative explanation by de Lamberterie (2014), iwr rather derives from *setro- (reflexive stem *se- beside *sw-), which, in the corresponding paradigm of the possessive pronoun, would be continued as ewr, gen. iwroy with the same change of ew > iw in unaccented syllables as the loanword ewl (later iwł), iwłoy 'oil', and hewr (later hiwr), hiwroy 'stranger, guest', allegedly a lexicalized variant of iwr. Another reflexive stem is inkcn 'self'.

The function of reciprocal pronouns is fulfilled by the apparently reduplicated stems mimeans and irears (acc.) 'each other', the former presumably from *smi-smia(h)2, cf. Lat. alter . . . alterum 'one . . . the other'.

As in other Indo-European languages the possessive pronouns are o-stem adjectives: im 'my', k'o 'your', mer 'our', jer 'your'. The forms are identical with the genitive of the personal pronouns.

The interrogative, indefinite and relative pronouns

In the protolanguage the interrogative and indefinite pronoun were derived from an alternating stem *k'w/e-o- : *k'si-; cf. Ved. *kwás > kāḥ 'who?' vs. the indefinite particle -cit < *k'sid; Lat. neuter adjectival quod vs. substantival quid, both interrogative and indefinite; or Av. gen. sg. kahiīā < *k'osyo beside cahiīā < *k'esyo. The original distribution between *k'e/o- and *k'si- is not entirely clear, but at least it seems likely that *k'e- is an archaism as opposed to *k'w- with the generalized o-vocalism of the thematic vowel known from the noun inflection. Despite the general loss of gender distinctions in Armenian the interrogative and indefinite pronouns distinguish between an animate 'who?', nom./acc. o(ıy), gen. ory, dat./loc. um, abl. umē, instr. orov and a neuter 'what?', nom./acc. zi, gen. ēr, dat./loc. (h)im, abl. imē, instr. iw. If *k'e merges with *p before *o (cf. also ohn 'spine, backbone' < *k'ołso-, Lat. collus, collum, Goth. hals; apparently no counterparts), we are dealing with the stem *k'o- in the animate forms with gen. oyr < *k'osyo- + -r (Ved. kāśya, Av. kahiīā) and dat./loc. um < *k'o-sm- (Ved. dat. kāsmai, loc. kāsmīn). The neuter z-i, on the other hand, cannot go back to *k'sid (> *(*)c(i), cf. the equation oć 'not' = Gr. οὐκί < *h2oyu-kw id for *ne h2oyu-kw id 'not in a lifetime', cf. Cowgill 1960), so here we have to assume analogical absence of palatalization in analogy with the animate ov; the gen. ēr seems to continue *k'esyo- + -r, again with missing palatalization, but otherwise corresponding to Av. cahiīā. An adjectival variant or may go
back to *kʷotero- = Ved. katará-, Gr. πότερος (Schmitt 1981: 123). The same forms are also used in the function of relative pronouns, as, e.g., in the Italic languages.

The indefinite okʷ ‘someone’ and -kʷ in the phrase e-ci-kʷ ‘there is not’ are constructed by the addition of -kʷ < *-kʷe to the stems o- and i- of the interrogative pronoun, cf. Ved. kás-ca ‘someone’, Lat. quísque ‘everyone’. Another indefinite pronoun is omn ‘someone’.

**Demonstrative pronouns**

A striking feature of Armenian morphology is the consistent distinction between three demonstrative markers with first, second and third person deixis, s ‘hic’, d ‘iste’ and n ‘ille’ from *ko-:, *to- and *no- respectively. These stems are the basis of the enclitic postponed articles -s, -d, -n; the anaphoric sa, da, na (probably from *so-ay, *do-ay, *no-ay); the demonstrative ays, ayd, ayn; the pronouns expressing identity soyn, doyn, noyn ‘this, that same’; various adverbs such as aysr, aydr, andr ‘here, hither; there, thither’, asti, ayti, antii ‘from here, from there’, ayspēs, aydpēs, aynpēs ‘in this, that way’; the corresponding adjectives ayspsi, aydpsi, aynpsi ‘of this, that kind’; and the interjections a(ha)wasik, a(ha)wadik, a(ha)wanik ‘look here/there’.

The anaphoric pronouns, here exemplified by sa (similarly da and na), are inflected as follows:

**The anaphoric pronoun sa**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>nom./acc.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>nom.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s-a</td>
<td></td>
<td>sok-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>sor-a</td>
<td></td>
<td>sos-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat./loc.</td>
<td>sm-a</td>
<td></td>
<td>sm-anē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>sov-aw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The basic stems are so-, do-, no- with “internal inflection” where the genitives sora, dora, nora may be analyzed as *-otero- + the enclitic particle -ay, and the dat./loc. and abl. sg. as *so-sm-.

**Numerals**

The cardinal numbers from one to ten can all be derived from their Indo-European protoforms with a few minor adjustments: mi ‘one’ < *smih₂, the old feminine, cf. Gr. μία; erku ‘two’ < *dwō, Lat. duo etc.; erek ‘three’ < *treyes, Lat. três, Ved. tvāḥḥ; čork ‘four’ < *kʷetores, dissimilated from *kʷetowares, Ved. catvāraḥ; ḥing ‘five’ < *penkʷe, Gr. πέντε, Ved. pāṇca; vec ‘six’, perhaps from a Lindeman variant *suwek ˊs (Klingenschmitt 1982: 61), cf. W čwech; ewt’n (with the variant eawt’n) ‘seven’ < *septm, Lat. septem etc.; ut ‘eight’, probably from *optō rather than *okō under the influence of ‘seven’; the somewhat enigmatic inn ‘nine’, Gr. ἑννέα vs. Lat. novem etc., whether from a metathesized *enun as assumed by Eichner (1978: 152) or actually exhibiting a laryngeal-based prothetic vowel; and, finally, tasn ‘ten’ < *dekʷm with unclear vocalism. The singular mi, which may also have the function of an indefinite article, has an aberrant inflection with gen. mioj beside mioj (cf. kin, knoj ‘woman’, also a stem originally ending in *-h₂). Apart from k’san ‘20’, Lat. uǐginti etc., the decimal numerals are characterized by the
element -sun < *(d)k̥mtə, Gr. -κοντα, in some cases with compensatory lengthening of the preceding element: èresun (< *eria-) ‘30’; k’arasun ‘40’ as if < *kʷtwthresh, cf. Lat. quadrāginta; the formally remarkable yisun ‘50’ beside hing ‘five’; vatsun ‘60’ beside vec ‘six’; efranesun ‘70’; uťsun ‘80’; and innsun ‘90’. However, the inherited word for ‘100’, *k̥mtóm, has been replaced by the etymologically unclear hariwr, and the Iranian loanwords hazar and biwr have been introduced for the larger numbers ‘1000’ and ‘10,000’.

Ordinals, apart from arajin ‘first’< *pr̥h3wo- + -ino- (cf. Ved. adv. pūrvyām ‘first’) are derived with the suffixes -(i)r, -ord, or the combination -(e)-ord: erkir and erkrord ‘second’, erir and errord ‘third’, čorir and čorrord ‘fourth’, ĥngerord ‘fifth’, with preservation of the final -e- of *penke and hence vec’erord ‘sixth’. Erkir and erir also have the function of numeral adverbs ‘in the second place, zweitens’, ‘in the third place, drittens’, perhaps from the adverbial *dwis, *tris ‘twice, three times’ with RUKI development of *-s rather than the otherwise isolated protoforms *dwiro-, *triro-, cf. Ved. dvih, trih; Gr. δίς, τρίς, Lat. bis, ter. The semantic development would be ‘two, three times’ → ‘the second, third time’ → ‘second, third’, cf. also the partly competing erkic’s ‘twice, the second time’ and eric’s ‘three times, the third time’. As for the productive suffix -ord, the most reasonable reconstruction may be *k̥wertos, cf. Lith. kaũtas, OCS krat’ ‘time’ (Winter 1992) or even *k̥r as in Ved. sakṭ, Av. hakərə ‘once’ (with special development of the sonant after labial/labiovelar), in particular in consideration of the alternative function of -ord as an agent noun suffix, e.g. ors-ord, ‘hunting-maker’, i.e. ‘hunter, fisher’: Ved. mantra-kət ‘mantra-maker’ (Olsen 1999: 527–529).

Verbs

The Armenian verb has two aspect stems (imperfective and aorist), two verbal voices (active and mediopassive), two verbal tenses (present and preterite), three modes (indicative, optative and imperative), three persons (1, 2 and 3) and two numbers (singular and plural). Thus, the perfect, the distinction between optative and subjunctive, the injunctive as a specific category, and the dual have been lost.

With a distinction between four vocalic stem types, e-, i-, a- and u-stems (the single o-stem gom ‘be, exist’, is based on an old perfect *-h2wos-), the synchronic formation of the present indicative is entirely regular, even including the verb em ‘be’, which is identical with the endings of an e-verb:

The present indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>e-stems</th>
<th>i-stems</th>
<th>a-stems</th>
<th>u-stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>berem</td>
<td>berim</td>
<td>lam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I am’</td>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I weep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>pl. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>em</td>
<td>berem</td>
<td>berem</td>
<td>berem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I am’</td>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>2ēk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beres</td>
<td>beris</td>
<td>berik</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>3ēk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berē</td>
<td>beri</td>
<td>berik</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. 1</td>
<td>emk</td>
<td>beremk</td>
<td>beremk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ēk</td>
<td>ēk</td>
<td>2ēk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>berēk</td>
<td>berik</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>en</td>
<td>en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beren</td>
<td>berin</td>
<td>berik</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I carry’</td>
<td>‘I am carried’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
<td>‘I pour’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The paradigm seems to have arisen through a compromise between the athematic verb *em* and the thematic inflection with generalization of the thematic vowel *-e-, thus:

1 sg. \[ *h₁es-mi \rightarrow \text{em} (\text{for } *im) \Rightarrow \text{berem} \]
2 sg. \[ *h₁es-si > es \Rightarrow \text{beres} (\text{for } *\text{berē}) \]
3 sg. \[ *bʰere-ti > \text{berē} \Rightarrow ē (\text{for } *\text{est?}) \]
1 pl. \[ *bʰeromes \rightarrow \text{beremk} (\text{analogical stem vowel}) \Rightarrow \text{emk} \]
2 pl. \[ *bʰeretes > \text{berēk} \Rightarrow \text{ēk} \]
3 pl. \[ *h₁senti (> *in) \rightarrow en; *bʰeronti \rightarrow \text{beren} (\text{analogical stem vowel}) \]

Similarly the a- and u-stems. In the mediopassive i-inflection the stem vowel goes back to the stative marker *-eh₁-.

**The imperfect**

In the imperfect there is no distinction between active and mediopassive, thus berei ‘I was carrying’, ‘I was being carried’:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>berei</td>
<td>bereak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bereir</td>
<td>bereik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>berēr</td>
<td>berein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly, ei ‘I was’ etc., from a-verbs layi ‘I was weeping’, from u-verbs helui ‘I was pouring’ etc. Here the endings are much less transparent than in the present, and their historical background is a matter of debate. The -i- endings of the singular are variously derived from either the imperfect *e-h₁es- (Jasanoff 1979; Klingenschmitt 1982) or the athematic optative (Winter 1975) with reference to English constructions like ‘he would carry’. In particular, the 2 sg. ending (-)ir may be a direct continuation of *e-h₁es-s under the assumption of a regular RUKI development (Olsen 1989a: 9).

**The imperfective (“present”) imperative**

The imperative based on the imperfective stem is only used in the 2 sg. and pl. with the particle *mi* (cf. Ved. mā, Gr. μή) in the function of a prohibitive. Formally, the 2 sg. is characterized by the ending -r, while the 2 pl. is identical with the indicative, e.g. 2 sg. berer, 2 pl. berērk. If the enigmatic r-ending does not go back to the athematic *-dʰi as suggested by Jasanoff (1979: 146), it may have been transferred from aorist imperatives of the type dir ‘put’, tur ‘give’ from the old aorist injunctives *dʰeh₁-s, *deh₁-s with RUKI development of the final *s (Olsen 1989a: 9).

**The aorist indicative**

The Armenian aorist stems are found in two variants, the so-called root and weak aorist. While the root aorist is based on the synchronic root and may thus go back to either an old imperfect or an aorist stem, e.g. 3 sg. e-ber ‘(s)he carried’ < impf. pret. *e-bʰer-e-t, Ved. 
á-bhar-a-t vs. e-t ‘she gave’ < aor. *e-deh-t, Ved. á-dāt, the weak aorist is characterized by a morpheme -c+-, in e-verbs -ec-., 3 sg. -eac-. In the aorist the mediopassive is distinguished from the active by a separate set of verbal endings, e.g. beri ‘I carried’, sirec'i ‘I loved’ vs. beray ‘I was carried’, sirecay ‘I was loved’:

The aorist indicative

Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Mediopassive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>beri</td>
<td>sirec'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>berer</td>
<td>sirec'er</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>e-ber</td>
<td>sireac'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. 1</td>
<td>berak'</td>
<td>sirec'ak'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>berēk', -ik'</td>
<td>sirec'ēk', -ik'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>berin</td>
<td>sirec'in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apart from the endingless 3 sg. going back to *-et and supplied with the augment in what would otherwise be a monosyllabic form, the active endings are similar to those of the imperfect. The mediopassive is characterized by the vowel -a-, which would be regular in the 3 pl. *-n̥o > -an and the 3 sg. of set roots *-eto > -aw, e.g. cnaw (< *cinaw) ‘begot, gave birth’, Gr. ἐγένετο.

While neither the consonantal element -c+- nor the segment -ea- (>-e-) of the weak aorist is fully understood, there exists a more archaic-looking type where -c+- directly follows the root vowel, thus le'i ‘I filled’, 3 sg. e-lic' (root *pleh1-), bac'i ‘I opened’ (root *bheh2-). Traditionally -c+- is derived from *-skˊ-, but a connection with the s-aorist may be more likely, cf. le'i : Gr. ἔπλησα or the type in -acci compared to Greek denominative s-aorists like ἐτίμησα ‘I honored’. According to Klingenschmitt (1982: 286ff.), we are dealing with a “strengthened” *-ss- > -c+- despite the apparent counterevidence of *h₁essi > es ‘you are’. At any rate it is remarkable that the source of the -c+-aorist seems to be roots and stems ending in a postvocalic laryngeal, so as a variant of Klingenschmitt’s theory one might perhaps suggest a development *-Hs- > -c+-, similar to *-Ks- > -c+- under the assumption of “laryngeal hardening”.

The aorist imperative

As opposed to the prohibitive imperfective/“present” imperative, the aorist imperative is only used in positive orders. When the aorist is of the “root” type, the corresponding imperative active 2 sg. is identical to the naked root (diachronic stem), e.g. ber ‘carry’ < *bʰere (aor. beri, 3 sg. e-ber), while the 2 pl. vacillates between the endings -ēk' (< -*etes) and -ik'. The 2 sg. imperative of the weak aorist equals the aorist stem without the aorist marker -c(-), thus 3 sg. aor. ind. sireac': 2 sg. aor. imp. sirea beside the 2 pl. sirec'ēk', sirec'ik'.
the mediopassive the forms of the root aorist are 2 sg. ber/berir, 2 pl. beraruk’, and those of the weak aorist are 2 sg. sireac’, 2 pl. sirec’aruk’, where (-a)-ruk’ possibly derives from *(a)-dhuwe + plural marker -k’ (cf. Skr. mid. imp. bharadhvan), as suggested by Jasanoff (1979: 144f.), if -r- is a (conditioned) continuation of *-dʰ-., possibly before -u-.

The subjunctives

Armenian has two subjunctives, one derived from the imperfective (“present”) stem, the other from the aorist stem with the primary function of future. In both cases the subjunctive marker is -icc- (unaccented -cc-).

The primary type is the aorist subjunctive with the following inflection:

### The aorist subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>active</th>
<th>mediopassive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. 1</td>
<td>beric’</td>
<td>berayc’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>berc’es</td>
<td>berc’is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>berc’ē</td>
<td>berc’ī (&lt; *-iy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. 1</td>
<td>berc’uk’</td>
<td>berc’uk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>berjk’</td>
<td>berjk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>berc’en</td>
<td>berc’in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the subjunctive marker is added to a weak aorist stem, *-c’c’c’c’c’- is dissimilated to -s-c’- and *-c’c’-j- to -s-j-, e.g. from sirem ‘love’: sirec’ic’, siresc’es, siresc’ē, siresc’uk’, siresjik’, siresc’en. The ending -uk’ of the 1 pl. may derive from *-omes, the only case apart from the participial -un (< *-ont/-omə-no-) where the o-alternant of the thematic vowel is preserved, while -jik’ probably represents an old optative *-yeh₁-tes as suggested by Klingenschmitt (1982: 40).

In the imperfective (“present”) subjunctive, -ic’- is simply added to the stem vowel and followed by the present endings, thus berem: *bere-ic’-em > *berēc’em > beric’em etc.; berim: beric’im; lam: lāyc’em; and helum: heluc’um with secondary adaptation to the u-stem inflection.

Traditionally the element -c’- is derived from the Indo-European suffix *-sk’e/o- (e.g. Schmitt 1981: 143) with various explanations of the preceding -i-, whether as a match of Gr. -ίσκω in verbs like εὑρίσκω ‘find’ or a combination of the optative morpheme + *-sk-. Alternatively, Lühr (1994) assumes a reinterpretation of the indicative hayc’em ‘ask (for)’ as a subjunctive. A different scenario is proposed by Olsen (1988): if the 3 sg. thematic subjunctive *-č’-ti, the unmarked form of the paradigm, was reinterpreted as a stem and supplied with a new set of personal endings we would end up with the attested paradigm of the aorist subjunctive: *b’erēt’-ō > beric’, *b’erēt’-essi > berc’es, *b’erēt’-eti > berc’ē, etc. The pattern would be similar to that of, e.g., Modern Pers. hast ‘he is’ ⇒ hastam ‘I am’ etc.

Verbal stem formation

To some extent the vocalic stem classes reflect inherited types:

- e-verbs with corresponding mediopassives in -i- < stative *-eh₁-, e.g.:
  - simple thematic verbs: berem ‘carry’, Ved. bhārați
  - denominatives in *-eye-: srbem ‘cleanse’ from surb ‘pure’
Non-finite verb forms

The Armenian system of infinitives and participles (monographically treated by Stempel 1983) consists of an o-stem past participle in -eal, mostly based on the aorist stem, e.g. bereal ‘having carried’, cf. OCS nesl̥ejas ‘I have carried’, a voice-indifferent o-stem infinitive in -l < *-Vlo-, e.g. berel ‘carry/be carried’ (from berem/berim), lał ‘weep’, helul ‘pour’, which is the basis of an indeclinable future participle in -eloc̣, e.g. bereloc̣ ‘to be carried’ and an ea-stem gerund in -eli, e.g. sireli ‘lovable, beloved’, formally and functionally matching Tocharian constructions like Toch. B mā yokalle ‘there is not to be drunk, one should not drink’. To these one may add the mostly substantivized verbal adjectives in -un, e.g. sirun ‘beloved’ and ‘loving’, probably a merger of the active *-ont-and the mediopassive *-oməno-, and the agent nouns/active participles in -oł/-awł, e.g. cnawł ‘parent’ (see under “Nominal Word Formation”). As the suffix of the old passive participle in *-to- lost its phonetic transparency and was thus unsuitable as a marker of a whole morphological category, it left only isolated traces in lexicalizations such as mard (o-st.) ‘man’ < *mr̥to- (isolated from the privative *ŋmr̥to- ’immortal’), li ‘full’ < *pleh₁-to- and lu ‘heard (of)’, i.e. ‘well-known’ < *klu-to-.

Nominal Word Formation

Due to the dramatic phonetic changes, including loss of the vowels in final syllables, many inherited noun suffixes are rendered opaque. Thus, e.g., the Indo-European suffix *-ti-, used for the formation of verbal abstracts, is reflected as -tc(i)- after u-diphthongs, e.g. aławt(č)-k̪ (i-st.) ‘prayer’ < *śl̥h₂-ti-, and as -d(i)- after sonants, e.g. bard (i-st.) ‘pilé’, Ved. bhṛti- ‘support’, Av. barati-, and is lost intervocally in, e.g., lir (i-st.) ‘fullness’ < *pleh₁-ti-s, Ved. prāti-. As a countermeasure against this development, several suffixes are occasionally linked together to create more characteristic and easily recognizable suffixal chains, e.g. the extremely productive abstract suffix -utivən < *e(h),u-ti-h₁,o(h₁)- (cf. Lat. -tiō, -tiōnis), which may be derived from verbal, adjectival and nominal stems
alike, e.g. spananem ‘kill’ → spanut’iwn ‘killing’, cer ‘old’ → cerut’iwn ‘oldness’, elbayr ‘brother’ → elbayrut’iwn ‘brotherhood’.

Examples of inherited suffixes and suffix clusters based on inherited elements are:

-ac‘i: adjectives denoting descent or appurtenance, e.g. galileac‘i ‘Galilean’, k’alak-‘ac‘i ‘citizen’ < *-skyo/ah-, cf. Goth. judawisks ‘Jewish’
-awl (and -ol): agent nouns/active participles, e.g. cnawl ‘parent’, probably < *-gənə-­tlo-, cf. Gr. γενέτορ, Lat. genitor; the connecting vowel -a- may originate in set roots like *-gənə-, or in derivatives based on denominative a-verbs, cf. Lat. imperāri ⇒ imperātor, or simply derive from Iranian bases such as nmanawl ‘similar’ from *nimāna-
-ean: adjective suffix, typically used in patronymics of the type Abrahamean; according to Olsen (1992 and 1999: 385–391) from IE *-i-h, no- = Lat. -inus etc.
-i: adjective and noun suffix, e.g. asui ‘woollen’ from asu ‘wool’, kogi ‘butter’ = Ved. gāvya-, Av. gaoia-, Gr. -ψους ‘cow’-, Toch. B kewiye ‘butter’; IE *(i)yə/ah-­-
-ic‘i: agent nouns, e.g. ergi‘c‘ ‘singer’; IE *(i)kyah-­, cf. Slavic derivatives in -ačь and -ičь such as OCS kovačь ‘blacksmith’, kotoričь ‘quarrelsome’
-oitc‘: abstract nouns derived from verbal or nominal stems, e.g. erewoyt‘ ‘appearance’ from erewiım ‘appear’ (Gr. πρέπω); identical with the Greek suffix -ευσις and the basis of the suffix conglomerate -utco
-umn: action nouns, e.g. gelumn ‘rolling’, cf. Gr. εὔλωμα, Lat. uolūmen
-un: verbal adjectives, originally participial, but mostly substantivized, e.g. zerun ‘creeping’, i.e. ‘snake’; anasun ‘not talking’, i.e. ‘animal’. Since Meillet (1928: 2), traditionally interpreted as the middle participle corresponding to Gr. -μενος, but, as pointed out by Stempel (1983: 81–83), the function is often active, and the active participle in *-ont- would give the same result. Most likely, we are dealing with a merger of the two forms.

Numerous other common suffixes or original final members of compounds are borrowed from Iranian (cf. Greppin 1973, Jahowkyan 1993 and Olsen 1999). Examples of Iranian loan suffixes and suffix clusters are:

-agoyyn: adjectives denoting manner and appearance; intensive and comparative suffix, from MIran. -gανα-, e.g. vardagoyyn ‘rosy’, Sogd. wrōyyn
-ak: diminutives, e.g. naw-ak ‘small ship’
-akan: adjective suffix, e.g. gišer-akan ‘nightly’
-apet: nouns with the meaning ‘master of . . .’, from Iran. -pati-, e.g. k’alakapet ‘ruler of a city’
-astan: local nouns, e.g. herastan ‘a place far away’ from heri ‘distant’
-aran: nouns denoting holders or containers, from Iran. *-δāna/i-, e.g. ganjaran ‘treasury’
-ik: adjectives of appurtenance and diminutives, e.g. hayrik ‘little, dear father’
-pēs: adverbs of manner, e.g. ayspēs ‘in this way’, cf. Av. -paēsa(h)-

**Nominal compounds**

Most categories of compounds as known from other Indo-European languages such as Indo-Iranian, Greek and Germanic are maintained as living, productive types in Armenian,
where only prepositional compounds and compound verbs are rarely found. In many cases we are dealing with simple loans from an Iranian source or calques/semi-calques from either Iranian or Greek, e.g. Gr. μητρόπολις → mayrak’alak ‘mother city’, but there is ample evidence for indigenous creations such as tn-ank ‘poor’ (‘(whose) house (tun) (has) fallen’). The following examples will serve to illustrate the most common subtypes:


Verbal governing compounds, active or passive meaning: dimadarj ‘opponent’, lit. ‘face-turning’; amawt’alic ‘shameful’.

SYNTAX

In general, Classical Armenian syntax is similar to that of other ancient Indo-European languages with preservation of a rich case system. The word order is relatively free, with SVO as the unmarked pattern. In translations from Greek originals it has to a large extent been possible to maintain the Greek word order. A few characteristic points deserve to be mentioned:

- the concordance between adjectives and substantives in case and number is not always observed. Most often a preceding adjective is left uninflected, e.g. bazum awurk’ but awurk’ bazumk’ ‘many days’ (Meillet 1936: 137).
- the definite object is marked by a preceding z-, reminiscent of the Middle Parthian use of ə < *h₂mbʰi in connection with both the indirect and the direct object.
- a peculiar construction, the “transitive perfect” is found in connection with the participle in -eal, where the agent is in the genitive and the object in the accusative, including the marker z-, e.g. nora gorceal ə z-gore ‘he has done the work’.

FURTHER READING

The literature on Armenian historical grammar in English is rather scarce, but for a general introduction one may refer to Godel’s sketch (1970) and his concise monograph (1975). A good historical introduction to the classical language in German, including text samples, is Schmitt 1981, and for a contemporary French introduction de Lamberterie 1988–89 is recommended. Otherwise, the brief, but wonderfully clear classic grammar by Meillet (1936) remains an unsurpassed treasure trove of information.

A comprehensive etymological dictionary is still a desideratum. Evidently Hübschmann’s pioneering work (1897) is severely outdated, and Ačaryan’s four-volume dictionary in Armenian is practically inaccessible to the beginner. To some extent the need has been satisfied by Martirosyan’s recent and in many ways excellent work (2010), but unfortunately only part of the inherited vocabulary is covered. As a supplement one may consult the lexical study by Solta (1960).

Monographic studies on specific subjects include Klingenschmitt 1982 on the verb, Olsen 1999 on the noun and Matzinger 2005 on nominal inflection. Holst 2009 is a highly idiosyncratic treatment of selected phonological and morphological problems.
The important early articles on Armenian by Pedersen (1982) and Meillet (1977) have now been made more easily accessible in collected volumes, and the same goes for Kortlandt’s very original work on the subject (2003).

REFERENCES

Ačaṙyan, Hr. 1926–35 (1971–79), Hayeren Armatakan Bararan I-IV, Erevan
Bolognesi, Giancarlo 1960, Le fonti dialettale degli imprestiti iranici in armeno, Milano, Società edivice(?), vita e peusiero
Džaukjan, G. B. 1982, Sravitel’naja grammatika armjanskogo jazyka, Erevan, Academy Press
Francis, Eric D. 1970, Greek disyllabic roots: The aorist formations [PhD Dissertation, Yale]
Godel, Robert 1975, An Introduction to the Study of Classical Armenian, Reichert, Wiesbaden
Holst, Jan Henrik 2009, Armenische Studien, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
Jensen, Hans 1959, Altarmenische Grammatik, Carl Winter, Heidelberg
Karst, Josef 1901, Historische Grammatik des Kilikisch-Armenischen, Strassburg
Klingenschmitt, Gert 1982, Das altarmenische Verbhum, Reichert, Wiesbaden
Kortlandt, Frederik 1980b, “H₂O and oH₂,” Lingua Posnaniensis XXIII: 127f
Kortlandt, Frederik 2003 (ed. R.S.P. Beekes), Armeniaca – Comparative Notes, Caravan Books, Delmar (New York)
Matzinger, Joachim 1992, Der Armenische Reflex von idg. *-u-, Vienna
Matzinger, Joachim 2005, Untersuchungen zum altarmenischen Nomen: Die Flexion des Substantivs, J.H. Röll, Dettelbach
Meillet, Antoine 1924, “Remarques éymologiques,” Revue des Études Arméniennes IV: 1–6
Meillet, Antoine 1936, Esquisse d’une grammaire comparée de l’arménien classique, Imprimerie des pp. mékhitarianes, Vienne
Meillet, Antoine 1977, Études de linguistique et de philologie arméniennes, Imprimerie Orientaliste, Louvain
Olsen, Birgit Anette 2010, *Derivation and Composition – Two Studies in Indo-European Word Formation*, Innsbrucker Beiträge zur Sprachwissenschaft (Band 136), Innsbruck
PART 10

TOCHARIAN

Douglas Q. Adams

INTRODUCTION

The speakers of the Tocharian languages enter history in the first century BC, when the Han Empire sent military expeditions into the Tarim Basin (what is now the southern half of the Chinese province of Xinjiang). Our linguistic records date only to the late fourth century AD in the case of Tocharian B and to the seventh century AD in the case of Tocharian A. The latest documents in the two languages are probably no later than the ninth century AD (the last dated Tocharian B texts are from the final decade of the eighth century AD). The age of our texts, somewhat older than has often been thought in the past, is confirmed by both paleography and radio-carbon dating. It is also significant, with respect at least to Tocharian B, that our texts cover a half millennium of time, time sufficient for us to see significant change. When it was thought that all the attested texts from Tocharian B were more or less contemporary, within a century or so of one another, the linguistic differences among the texts were reasonably enough taken as the result of there being regional dialects (Winter 1955). However, now it is quite certain that at least most of the differences are the result of the documents’ different ages (Peyrot 2008).

Tocharian B was the native language of the Kingdom of Kucha (Tocharian B Kuši, Uyghur Kuča, Sanskrit Kuñ, Chinese Qiuci), and Tocharian A that of the Kingdom of Agni (Uyghur Qarashehr, Sanskrit Agni, Chinese Yanqi) to the east of Kucha. Both languages were also used, at least as liturgical languages and languages of learning, in the Turpan Basin to the northeast. Almost all of the Tocharian A texts and the majority of those written in Tocharian B are of Buddhist content. But there are non-religious texts as well: medical texts, economic texts of one sort or another (inventories, bills of sale, etc.), travel documents/passports, and graffiti. Rare are original literary works (though by far the longest text in Tocharian A is a dramatic narrative, the Maitreyasamiti, based on Indian Buddhist models but composed in Tocharian A). Missing entirely in both languages are historical, mythological, or legal texts.

The languages were called “Tocharian” by early investigators because of the presumed connection of the people who spoke them and the classical Tokharoi who lived in what is now Uzbekistan but were known to have been driven there by the Huns from Gansu in China (east of Xinjiang, between Tibet to the southwest and Mongolia to the northeast). Though often doubted, the connection is probably correct; we may note, for instance, that their Turkish-speaking neighbors referred to the speakers of Tocharian A as the Tiyrī. If the connection is true, we can see that, at the very outset of their entering into Central Asian history, the Tocharian and Tokharoi would have extended from the western part of the Tarim Basin to the outer marches of the then Chinese Empire (see Adams 2000). We are not certain what the native speakers called the two languages, hence the neutral, but banal, designations “Tocharian A” and “Tocharian B.”
To the west of Kucha, in the vassal Kingdom of Gumo (this is the Chinese name; in Sanskrit records it is Bharuka), was spoken a language but little different from that of Kucha according to early Chinese observers. And to the southeast of the Tarim Basin, in the Kingdom of Kroraina (Chinese Loulan), was apparently spoken a related language (“Tocharian C” if you will) known only through some loanwords and loan morphemes (e.g., Kroraina Prakrit -ṃci, an adjective suffix with the meaning ‘pertaining to whatever noun it’s derived from’ and Tocharian A -ñci ‘id.’) from it into the official Indian language (“Kroraina Prakrit”) of the state (Mallory & Mair 2000: 278–279). To the south and southwest (beyond Gumo) in the Tarim Basin were Iranian languages, specifically two Saka Iranian languages, Tumshuqese and Khotanese. Tumshuqese was well within the cultural and political sphere of Kucha (Tumshuq’s “saka-rāja” was a vassal of the Kuchean king), while Khotanese was the language of a powerful state in the southern part of the Tarim Basin. The linguistic situation of the Tarim Basin appears to have been quite stable during the first Christian millennium until the last century or so thereof when all of these languages were replaced by the Turkish Uyghur, originally spoken northeastward of the Tarim Basin in what is now western Mongolia.

**Characteristics of the Tocharian languages and Indo-European languages**

Though quite “advanced” phonologically when compared to contemporary Indo-European languages (and Tocharian A is more “advanced” than Tocharian B), the
Tocharian languages are otherwise very much “age-appropriate” Indo-European languages. They preserve both nominal and verbal dual forms, and thus, for the middle of the first Christian millennium, are in this matched in conservatism only by Slavic and Baltic (admittedly we have no idea about pre-Albanian in this time period). They have a large array of nominal cases (again matched during the period of Tocharian attestation only by Slavic and Baltic), though in several cases the exponents of particular case functions are clearly innovative (i.e., the “secondary” cases, on which see below). Among nominal categories, only the effacement of the neuter (so that it is identical with the masculine in the singular and with the feminine in the plural) is a clear structural innovation, and its “retreat” is a development matched by contemporary Romance and Celtic languages.

The verbal system is also “old-fashioned,” though of the Proto-Indo-European triad of present, aorist, and perfect, it has lost the finite forms of the perfect, preserving only its participle (combined with remnants of the aorist participle into a general “preterit” participle”). Of contemporary Indo-European verbal systems, it reminds one most of the Greek system and, to a somewhat smaller degree, the Romance system. Its core vocabulary is pretty much composed of straightforward inheritances from Proto-Indo-European (cf. the words for ‘father’, ‘mother’, ‘brother’, sister’, which are (in Tocharian B/Tocharian A order) pācer/pācar, mācer/mācar, procer/pracer, ser/ser, which reflect pretty regularly PIE *ph₂tēr, *meh₂tēr, b₂reḥ,ter, *swesōr). However, that core vocabulary is supplemented by a large number of borrowings from Sanskrit for Buddhist concepts and ideas.

What makes the Tocharian languages seem so far from the Indo-European mainstream is their pronunciation, their “innovative phonology.” Between the breakup of Proto-Indo-European and our first attestation of Tocharian, there were some major sound shifts. The PIE plain velars, (e.g., *k) had fallen together with the palatal velars (*ḱ); Tocharian shares this development with all the Indo-European groups of the west (Germanic, Italic, Celtic, Greek). Particular to Tocharian was the merger of the three series of PIE stops: voiceless, voiced, and voiced aspirate. Thus, for instance, the bilabials, *p, *b, *bʰ, had all merged into a single Proto-Tocharian voiceless stop (e.g., *p). By these two changes the fifteen PIE stops had become only four (*p, *t, *k, *kʷ) in Proto-Tocharian. On the other hand, pre- or Proto-Tocharian underwent a very thorough-going shift from unpalatalized consonants before front vowels to palatalized, so that *t, *k, and *kʷ appeared in Proto-Tocharian as *c, *č, and (also) *č in that environment (in attested Tocharian, both A and B, Proto-Tocharian *č had become ś). Similarly, *s, *n, and *l were palatalized to *š, *ñ, and *ʎ (written as <ly>). Exceptionally, dentals had become *ṭs when before *y and PIE /d/ had disappeared (via ḍ?) or become affricated (ultimately to become <ts>) under certain circumstances difficult to specify. The PIE vowels also underwent major changes that are perhaps most easily grasped in list form; see Table 10.1 (the closing apostrophe, ‘, indicates that the preceding consonant had been palatalized).

Taken together, these changes, to consonants and vowels, may make the PIE antecedents of a Tocharian form momentarily (or not so momentarily) opaque, e.g., PIE *dʰew- ‘hide’ > Toch. AB cuk-, PIE *h₁ekwos ‘horse’ > Toch. B yakwe [A yak], PIE *widwo- ‘wise’ > Toch. B uwe, PIE *pode ‘(two) feet’ > Toch. B pai(ne) [A pe(m)]. The merger of the three orders of PIE stops (voiceless, voiced, and voiced aspirated) makes Tocharian etymologies more difficult to do and feel certain about than those in other major Indo-European groups because, say, a Tocharian verbal root tāk- might reflect a PIE initial *t-, *d-, or *dʰ- and a final *-k-, *-kʷ-, *-g-, *-gʰ-, or *-gʷʰ-.
It is universally assumed that the pre-Anatolians were the first Indo-European subgroup to separate themselves from the rest, and it is widely assumed that the pre-Tocharians were the second subgroup to separate themselves. Both assumptions are probably correct. But the gap between the time of the pre-Anatolians’ separation and that of the pre-Tocharians’ going their own way and the time of the more general breakup of the remaining PIE speech group. Just one example of the difference in the relationship of Anatolian and Tocharian with the rest of the Indo-European speech community is the complete lack of both subjunctive and optative in Anatolian but the presence of both in Tocharian, albeit in a clearly less developed form (cf. verbs infra) than shown by other Indo-European groups.

While the Proto-Indo-European that pre-Tocharian separated from cannot have been completely uniform, Tocharian does not show a close resemblance to any other Indo-European branch. Thus, the exact location where, dialectologically speaking, that separation took place is not easy to determine. However, the thoroughness with which Tocharian nouns and adjectives of whatever declension have become mixed with n-stem forms strongly suggests that at some point Tocharian had developed productive n-stem by-forms to other declensional types and that these n-stem forms had a definitizing value that contrasted with a non-definite value of the other kind of declensions. This development is seen in an even fuller form in Germanic (so also apparently in the history of Albanian – Matzinger 2006: 200). So also do some very specific lexical comparisons point in the direction of “northeastern Indo-European” (i.e., Germanic and Balto-Slavic) such as Germanic *deug- ‘hide’ (cf. Old English deogol ‘secret, hidden’) and Toch. tuk- ‘hide’, both from a latish PIE *d̥ewk-, a metathesized variant of the more widely distributed

---

**TABLE 10.1 THE DEVELOPMENT OF PIE VOWELS IN TOCHARIAN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Toch. B/Toch. A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*i</td>
<td>'ä/ā (but ā in the neighborhood of PIE *s or *w; ‘i/’i when part of a living ablaut series)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ɪ</td>
<td>'i/i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e</td>
<td>ā/ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ɛ</td>
<td>ā/ā (automatic “reduced” vowel inserted to break up difficult consonant clusters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*œ</td>
<td>ā/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a</td>
<td>ā/ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*H̥</td>
<td>ā/ā (*H̥ indicates any vocalized laryngeal, vocalized only when between two obstruents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ā</td>
<td>ā/ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*o</td>
<td>e/a (but ā when unstressed before word-final *m, *n, *y, *w, and *r)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ō</td>
<td>ā/ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*u</td>
<td>ā/ā (later than the change of *i/e to ‘ā; u/u when part of a living ablaut series)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ū</td>
<td>o/u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ey</td>
<td>‘i/i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*oy</td>
<td>ei (later ai)/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ow</td>
<td>eu (later au)/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ay</td>
<td>ai/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*aw</td>
<td>au/o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
*kewd*- (cf. Germanic *hūd- ‘hide’, Greek κεύϑε/o- ‘hide’, and Iranian cognates), or Toch. B proksa (pl.) ‘millet’ beside Slavic proso (sg.) ‘millet’ (< PIE *prokso/eh₂-). The Toch. B ablative ending -məṃ, immediately from PIE *-mons, points in the same direction, in that it shows an affinity with the plural oblique cases in -m- in Germanic and Balto-Slavic (compare particularly Old Prussian -mans; note that the *-ns of Proto-Tocharian and Old Prussian are independent innovations on a more original *-s) as opposed to the *-bʰ- that characterizes these cases in other Indo-European languages (such as Italic, Celtic, Greek, Indo-Iranian, and perhaps Albanian). Even more specific is the preservation of the reduplicating syllable, PIE *Ce- (where C = the reduplicated word-initial consonant), that is the mark of the PIE perfect as such, with a morphologically restricted retention of Ce- in both Gothic and Tocharian and not as **Ci- (in Germanic) and **C’ā- (in Tocharian) as the sound-laws of Germanic and Tocharian would otherwise require.

The dating of the breakup of that Proto-Indo-European unity that remained after the pre-Anatolians had departed is very much a matter of discussion. However, a date of 4,000 BC (± 500 years or so) is likely. As stated above, the pre-Tocharians probably left relatively early in the dissolution of the Proto-Indo-European speech community. How they got from the northern rim of the Proto-Indo-European-speaking world, adjacent to the pre-Slavs and pre-Germans, and presumably somewhere on the Russo-Ukrainian steppe, to the Tarim Basin remains archeologically opaque. They are often thought to have been members of the Afanasevo culture of south central Siberia (so, for instance, Mallory & Mair 2000). That is not impossible. But any archeological traces of an extension of Afanasevo southward towards the Tarim Basin are faint. The timing would be problematic as well. The Afanasevo culture begins about 3,500 BC (lasting until about 2,500 BC), and if the pre-Tocharians were its bearers, there would have been precious little time for any interaction with early Indo-Iranian as described in the next paragraph. More importantly, perhaps, there are no traces of cereal agriculture associated with the Afanasevo culture, and cereal agriculture clearly had a continuous history among Tocharian speakers, from attested Tocharian back to the Proto-Indo-European homeland (witness proksa [pl.] ‘millet’, Proto-Slavic *proso ‘millet’). Another possibility is that they were somehow participants in the Andronovo culture (or cultures) of northern Kazakhstan and adjacent southern Siberia (in various forms dating from 2,000–900 BC). Among the Andronovos some agriculture was always present. The graves of the earliest culture found in the Tarim Basin, the Qäwrighul culture (beginning about 1,800 BC; presumably the culture of the pre- or Proto-Tocharians), unhelpfully show some similarities with both their Afanasevo and Andronovo counterparts (Mallory & Adams 1997, s.vv. Afanasevo, Andronovo, Qäwrighul; Mallory & Mair 2000).

The pre-Tocharians and the pre-Indo-Iranians were all on the eastern frontier of the Proto-Indo-European world at one time or another. They would certainly have run into one another if the pre-Tocharians had spent an appreciable amount of time as members of the Andronovo culture. It is worth noting that there is no particular evidence for any early, i.e., PIE-era, association of Tocharian with the other eastern Indo-European languages, the Indo-Iranian languages. Certainly, as mentioned already above, Tocharian is a clear centum-language (i.e., the PIE palatal velars, *k, *g, and *gʰ, remain unpalatalized and fall together with PIE dorsovelars *k, *g, and *gʰ), just as Indo-Iranian languages are clearly satem-languages (where PIE *k, *g, and *gʰ did undergo palatalization and remain distinct from the dorsovelars *k, *g, and *gʰ). There is only one lexical item clearly and certainly shared by just Tocharian, Iranian, and Indic: B maśce ‘fist’, Avestan mušti- ‘id.’, Sanskrit muṣṭi- ‘id.’ All go back unproblematically to PIE *muṣṭy-. A second example is far less certain (because of the inexactness of the semantics): B welke (part of a plant),
Avestan varoka- ‘leaf’, Sanskrit valká- ‘bark’. Any random Indo-European threesome might, quite accidentally as it were, share exclusive ownership of two words.

Interestingly enough, however, given the lack of shared items of certain Proto-Indo-European age, there is a small set of really quite ancient borrowings from Iranian to Tocharian and, in one case, from Indic to Tocharian. Examples (all from Tocharian B) are tšain (pl. tšainwa) ‘arrow’ (< *Proto-Iranian *dzai-, cf. Avestan zaēna- armor, weapon’, Armenian zēn (a u-stem) ‘id.’, also borrowed from Iranian), tšainñe ‘ornament’ (< *Proto-Iranian *dzai- ‘to ornament’), waipecce ‘possession’ (< Proto-Iranian *hwapata-, cf. Avestan hvaēpaθya- ‘ones’ own’), ʃem ‘axle’ (< Proto-Iranian *axšām, cf. Gothic Avestan aša-), išcem ‘brick, tile’ (i.e., ‘fired clay’) (< *Proto-Iranian *ištyām, cf. Late Avestan ištīia- [n.]), ekšinek ‘dove’ (< Proto-Iranian *akšinaka-, cf. Ossetic æxšinæg), and *wāstare ‘camel’, unattested but cf. wāstasye ‘pertaining to a camel’ (< *Proto-Iranian *uštrā- ‘camel’, cf. Avestan uštra-). These borrowings are significant because they show an early stage of Iranian phonological development: preservation of the affricate *-dz- (in attested Iranian always *-z-), and of the cluster *-ty- (rather than later *-θy-); word-final stress; or even, once, a form that had not undergone the RUKI rule, i.e., *uštrā- not *uštá-. The Iranian we see through the window of these early Tocharian borrowings noticeably antedates the Avestan of Zarathuštra. Since Zarathuštra is commonly, though not universally, dated to about 1,000 BC, that puts these early Iranian-Tocharian contacts well into the second millennium BC. Whether these contacts took place inside the Tarim Basin or outside cannot be said.

The singular example of a demonstrably early borrowing from Indic is kercapo ‘ass’ (= Sanskrit gardabhā- ‘id.’ < pre-Indo-Aryan *gordebhō-). It is particularly significant, however, because that borrowing must have taken place before the merger of PIE *e, *a, and *o in Indo-Aryan and so even earlier than the early borrowings from Iranian where that merger had already taken place. This merger had already been accomplished by 1500 BC as seen in Indo-Aryan loanwords borrowed into Mitanni in eastern Asia Minor. In this case we can be certain the borrowing must have occurred before the pre-Tocharians entered into the Tarim Basin or the pre-Indo-Aryans left Central Asia for India (the latter event being, on most accounts, sometime between 2,000 BC and 1,500 BC).

Out of all these considerations a picture, both fuzzy and speculative, begins to emerge of the pre-Tocharians leaving the northern frontier of the Proto-Indo-European world and moving east about 4,500 BC or so to the southern Urals-North Kazakhstan steppes. There they had limited contact with both Proto-Indo-Aryans (first) and Proto-Iranians (second), already dialectally distinguished from one another, in the period, say, 2,500–2,000 BC. After that contact the Proto-Tocharians moved further east, into the Tarim Basin, while the Proto-Indo-Aryans and Proto-Iranians, in that chronological order, moved further and further south (with one arm of the Proto-Iranians, the Khotanese and Tumshuqese, also eventually entering the Tarim Basin and settling the southwestern portion of it). Such a scenario would allow the pre-Tocharians to be in the Tarim Basin as the bearers of the Qäwrighul culture of the eastern Tarim Basin (beginning about 1,800 BC), a culture known almost exclusively from its burial sites and spectacular mummies. The area occupied by the Qäwrighul culture was later the nucleus of the historical Kingdom of Kroraina (Chinese Loulan), where we find the remnants of “Tocharian C.”

Contact with Iranian was maintained, or renewed (and now clearly with the Tocharians in the Tarim Basin), in the middle of the first millennium BC or thereafter. We find such borrowings with later Iranian phonology as newiya ‘(a kind of) canal’ (< *Proto-Iranian *nawiya- ‘navigable’), murye ‘(a kind of) canal’, ārtte ‘(feeder) canal’, peri ‘debt’ (< *Proto-Iranian *parya-), śāte ‘rich’ (< *Proto-Iranian *čyāta-), which suggest a very different
cultural level of inter-language contact. Somewhat later, the advent of Buddhism in the Tarim Basin brought with it a host of religious/cultural terminology, either as borrowings or as calques, from Sanskrit and, to a lesser extent, from Iranian.

**PHONOLOGY**

The two Tocharian languages have exactly the same phonemic inventories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 10.2 TOCHARIAN CONSONANTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bilabial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stops, affricates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laterals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 10.3 TOCHARIAN VOWELS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$i$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ā$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The symbol $<ā>$ represents something like IPA [i] and $<ā>$ something like IPA [a].

**Stress:** It is possible that both Tocharian languages have contrastive stress, but only Tocharian B shows it in ways visible to us, as described below (under the heading “Morphophonology”). This contrastive stress may result in minimal pairs, e.g., $tākam$ ‘we will be’ (< /tā́kām/) and $takām$ ‘we were’ (< /tākā́m/)).

**Writing System:** Though neither Tocharian language has been spoken for a thousand years or so, we can be quite confident that our knowledge of the phonology of both languages is accurate and substantially complete. That is so because they are written in a form of Brahmi, the Indian alphabet whose variants have been used to write various Indian and Indo-Chinese languages since the last centuries before the Christian era. The phonetic values of the signs of the alphabet are well known. Unique to the Tocharian variant of this writing system are that so-called Fremdzeichen (‘foreign signs’) created by those who adapted Brahmi to Tocharian to signal the vowel /ä/, unknown to Sanskrit and other Indic languages.

**Morphophonology:** In Tocharian there are three major, productive, morphophonological processes, which shape many Tocharian paradigms: palatalization, umlaut, and ablaut. In addition, there are widespread, purely phonological, processes that account for the distribution of [ā], [a], and [ā] in Tocharian A and Tocharian B. We will take up these latter processes first.

**Distribution of [ā], [a], and [ā] in Tocharian B:** In Classical and later Tocharian B the central vowel /ā/ is strengthened in stressed syllables to [a]. In unstressed closed
syllables it remains as [ä], while in unstressed open syllables it disappeared completely (e.g., /stämô-/ ‘having stood’ > stmô-). Similarly, in stressed syllables /i/ and /u/ may be reflected in the spelling as <ö> and <û> respectively (i.e., the long vowel signs are used to show stressed syllables). On the other hand, in stressed position /ä/ remains unchanged, but, conversely, in an unstressed syllable /ä/ appears as [a]. Both the strengthening of /ä/ (and /i/ and /u/) and the “destrengthening” of /ä/ are shown orthographically in Classical and Late Tocharian B. To give but one example: in Archaic Tocharian B the third person singular of ‘(s)he released’ would have been carka, but in Classical and Late Tocharian B it was carka. It is from the strengthening of /ä/, the destrengthening of /ä/, and the loss of unstressed /ä/ in open syllables that we derive the majority of our information about Tocharian B stress, since stress itself is never marked orthographically.

Distribution of [ä], [ã], and [ã] in Tocharian A: Superficially resembling in some ways the interchange of [ä], [ã], and [ã] in Tocharian B is a similar interchange of the surface representatives of /ä/ in Tocharian A. Though considerably disturbed by analogical restorations of one sort or another, the basic historical pattern is like this: if, in a word of two syllables or more, the first syllable contained /ä/, /e/, or /o/ and the second syllable contained /ä/, then the second syllable’s /ä/ shows up on the surface (1) as [a] if the second syllable is word final and closed, (2) as [ã] if the second syllable is not the final syllable of the word but is a closed syllable, and (3) as zero if the second syllable is not the final syllable of the word and is an open syllable.

**Condition 1:**

kotnas ‘(s)he cuts off’ from /kotnās/ (cf. Toch. B kautanam < PToch. *kautnā-, or, within Tocharian A when the first syllable of the word is “light,” A kārsnās ‘(s)he knows’)

kropat ‘(s)he gathered’ (cf. Toch. B kraupāte < PToch. *krāupāte or, within Tocharian A, kālpāt ‘(s)he achieved’)

śāman ‘monk’ (B šamāne < PToch. *šamāne)

āknats ‘foolish’ (B aknātsa < PToch. *āknātsā)

**Condition 2:**

tāpākyān ‘mirrors’ (cf. tāpaki [< *tāpaky] ‘mirror’)

kākārpu ‘having descended’ (B kakārpau < PToch. *kākārpā-)

**Condition 3:**

kropte ‘thou has gathered’ (cf. B kraupātai < PToch. *krāupātāi, or, with Tocharian A, kālpāte ‘thou hast achieved’)

kropline ‘gathering’ (cf. B kraupālne or, within Tocharian A, kālpālune ‘achievement’)

kākmu ‘having brought’ (cf. B kakāmau < PToch. *kākāmā-)

In addition, as in Tocharian B, /ä/ disappears in open syllables, even from those syllables that, on the basis of Tocharian B evidence, were stressed.

**Palatalization:** Palatalization (as already outlined above) developed when a susceptible root-initial consonant or consonant cluster preceded a PIE *-e- or *-i-, whether short or long (short *-i- does not palatalize if it is further in the environment of *-w- or *-s-).
Thus, we have \( k > \hat{s} \) (via *č), \( t > c \), \( ts > \hat{s} \) (Tocharian A only), \( n > \hat{n}, l > \hat{y}, w > y \) (Tocharian B only), \( s > \hat{s}, sk > \hat{s}s, st > \hat{s}c, sp > \hat{s}p, p, m, r \) are not palatalizable in either language, and neither are any of the consonants that can be the result of palatalization (\( c, \hat{n}, y, \) etc.). However, in Tocharian B certain preterits to marked causative roots exceptionally allow “palatalization” of most of the non-palatalizable consonants. Thus, we find the “special” or “secondary” palatalization: \( k > ky, \hat{n} > \hat{ny}, p > \hat{ym}, ts > \hat{tsy} \). Non-causative preterits show only “primary” palatalization, e.g., Toch. B łyaka ‘he saw’ and Toch. A (imperfect) łyāk ‘he was seeing’.

Root-initial palatalization is strongly favored by causativity. Almost all preterits to morphological causatives in Tocharian B are preterits that uniformly show palatalization, regular and “special,” where possible. Causative presents or subjunctive forms with the suffix -āsk- sometimes, but not commonly, also show palatalization: B šarsāsk’ā/e- [A šārsās ‘ā/a-] ‘teach’, causative to kārs- ‘know’ (non-causative present kārsnā- in both languages), B šatkāsk- (beside katkāsk-) ‘send over’ to kātk- ‘cross over’ (both with preterit šātkā), B salāsk’ā/e- ‘to throw’ (but A sālās ‘ā/a-) to sāl- ‘fly’, B spāntāsk’ā/e- ‘con- vince’ to spānt- ‘trust’, B spārkāsk’ā/e- ‘destroy’ to spārk- ‘perish’, and spāttāsk’ā/e- (~ spāttask’ā/e- ~ spārttāsk’ā/e-) ‘turn (trans.)’ to spārtt- ‘turn (intr.)’. Note, with “secondary” palatalization we have B pyutkāsk’ā/e- [A pyutkās ‘ā/a-] ‘come into existence’. But palatalization may also mark the present as opposed to the subjunctive, e.g., cešām/cekem ‘touch(es)’ but tekām/takām* ‘will touch’ (A present cāk ‘ā/a-, subjunctive tākā-) or B cęp’y(e)- ‘step forth, appear’ but tāpā- ‘will appear’.

**UMLAUT:** Both Tocharian languages have undergone a change whereby an *-ā- in a following syllable has changed a preceding *-(')e- to *-(')ā-, a phonological process we can call “ā-umlaut.” The change works somewhat differently in Tocharian A and B, and that difference suggests the change was only in process at the time, whenever that was, that the two varieties of Proto-Tocharian that were to become Tocharian A and Tocharian B were losing contact with one another. In Tocharian B any *-(')e- became *-(')ā- when another *-ā- followed in the next syllable. In Tocharian A the change occurred only when the *-(')e- was, on the basis of the Tocharian B evidence, unstressed. There is a common subjunctive formation that has the root-vowel *-e- (< PIE *-o-) in the active singular and *-ā- elsewhere. When the thematic vowel, the morpheme joining root and person-number endings, is *-ā-, the root-vowels remain unchanged, thus B tekām/takām (< *tēkān/tākān) ‘(s)he will touch/they will touch’. By normal change Proto-Tocharian *-e- becomes Tocharian A -a-, but otherwise there is no change in the latter language either. When the thematic vowel is *-ā-, however, Tocharian B shows the effect of ā-umlaut, e.g., tārkām/tarkām (< *tērkān/tārkān) ‘(s)he will release/they will release’. In Tocharian A the result is tarkas/tārkēnc with the regular change of *-e- to -a- but with no ā-umlaut to **tārkaš. However, PToch. *Iyēkā- ‘saw’ gives łyākā- in both languages (3 sg. B łyāka, A łyāk). The effect of ā-umlaut is analogically effaced in some situations. Thus, the plural of B pīle ‘wound’ is pilenta, with preserved -e-, and not the **pilānta required by ā-umlaut. But in verbal morphology ā-umlaut is quite regular. Similar to ā-umlaut, but much rarer, is o-umlaut, e.g., /sesoyu/- ‘satisfied’ > B sosoyu-.

There is another kind of vowel affection that is to be seen in Tocharian B: in many situations in the Tocharian B verb where we expect ā . . . e or e . . . ā what we find is o . . . o instead. Thus, the imperative of āks- ‘speak, announce’ should be /pe-ākse/ underlyingly but appears in the surface structure as pokse instead. Likewise, Class IV presents, parallel in every way to Class III presents save that Class IV’s have the root-vowel -ā- instead of
Class III’s -ä-, have the shape, for example, B kloytär ‘(s)he falls’ rather than **kläyêtär (compare the Class III B pälkétär ‘burns’ (intr)).

Ablaut: Both Tocharian languages show abundant remains of PIE ablaut, particularly in verbal paradigms. Ablaut is not found paradigm-internally in present formations but is relatively common in both the subjunctive and preterit. As described above, many show a pattern of ablaut wherein the active singular is distinguished by one vowel (-e- [A -a-] or -ä-, while the rest of the paradigm has -ä-). In the preterit there are two loci for inter-paradigmatic ablaut: (1) in certain ā-preterits (“Class I”) and (2) in sigmatic preterits (“Class III”).

For Class I preterits with ablaut, the usual ablaut situation is an -ä- in the active with preceding palatalization and -ä- with no palatalization in the medio-passive and preterit participle, e.g., B cárka ‘(s)he released’, B cärkäre ‘they released’ vs. B tärkā(n)te ‘(s)he was/they were released’ (and preterit participle tärkāu). In A the situation is different, and demonstrably older. In the active singular there is an -ā- (as in B), cárk ‘(s)he released’, but the preterit (dual and plural) have -a-, e.g., tarkar ‘(s)he released’. The medio-passive (tärkā(n)it) and participle (tärko) have non-palatalizing -ä-, as in Tocharian B. Tocharian B has one example of the older, Tocharian A, situation, where we find underlying -ā- with preceding palatalization in the active singular, -ā- (< underlying (Toch. B) -e- by ā-umlaut) in the non-singular active, and -ä- with no palatalization elsewhere: ścāma [3 act. sg.], stāmas [3 act. dual], and (once) stamāre [3 act. pl.] from stām ‘stand’. The active singular, then, represents an old PIE *e-grade and the medio-passive an old PIE zero-grade. In Indo-European terms the more archaic type would appear to reflect an (active singular) *e-grade, (active plural) *o-grade, and (medio-passive) zero-grade. A generally accepted explanation for this ablaut system remains to be found.

Class III or sigmatic preterits offer two ablaut (or rather palatalization) patterns. In the first we have Tocharian B -e- in the active, usually in the medio-passive, and the preterit participle – all with no palatalization. In some verbs of this group the medio-passive (MP) and preterit participle (PP) have Tocharian B -ä-. An example with constant e- is täm- ‘be born’ (temtsamage [1 MP sg.], temtsate [3 MP sg.], temtsamte [1 MP pl.], temtsante [3 MP pl.]; PP tetemu). Examples with an interchange of -e- and ā- are pärk- ‘ask a question’ (preksa [3 act. sg.], párksante [3 MP pl.]; PP pāpāru). A prakās [3 act. sg.], prāksār [3 MP sg.], PP papāru) and rāk- ‘extend [one’s hand]’ (rekā [3 act. sg.; cf. Latin rēxis], raksamāte [1 MP sg.], raksate [3 MP sg.]; PP rēkā*; A rakās [3 act. Sg.], PP rāku). In the second subgroup we find the active with palatalization + -e- and the medio-passive and preterit participle with -ä-. A good example is the causative paradigm of pälk- ‘burn, torture’ (pelykwa [1 act. sg.], pelyksa [3 act. sg.], palyksatā [2 MP sg.]; PP pelykusk*). In Indo-European terms the first, non-palatalizing, subtype would appear to reflect the (active) *o-grade and (medio-passive) zero-grade, while the second, palatalizing, subtype would appear to reflect the (active) *ē-grade and (medio-passive) *e-grade. Tocharian A shows the same two patterns (with -ā- of course rather than -e-) but differs greatly from Tocharian B in the lexical distribution of the two types.

MORPHOLOGY
The Tocharian languages are typically Indo-European in their complex morphology, using a rich set of inflections in both nouns and verbs.
Nouns: A Tocharian noun belongs to one of three gender classes, masculine, feminine, and neuter. The last class is also referred to as alternating, as nouns in this class look identical to masculine ones in the singular and feminine ones in the plural. Nouns inflect for number: singular, dual, and plural, and case. (For a discussion of the Tocharian dual and the supposed “paral” (for natural pairs), see Winter 1962.) The various cases mark the nouns’ syntactic role in a sentence. In Tocharian B there are nine cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, vocative (only distinct from the nominative in the singular), ablative, causal (only in the singular), comitative, locative, and perative. The first four are the so-called primary cases, and the last five are secondary cases.

The primary cases are developments of PIE case endings; have different forms for singular, dual, and plural; are always marked on the noun; and, in many nouns, cause a shift in stress. For example, the nominative and accusative of yákwé ‘horse’ have stress on the first syllable, but the genitive is yákwéntse with stress on the second. (Evidence for accent-shifting can only come from Tocharian B.) This mobility of accent does not in general reflect anything of PIE age. By a variety of regular phonological and analogical changes, not always well understood, nominal stress came usually to be on the first (leftmost) “strong” vowel (-e-, -o-, -ā- and diphthongs) and not on a “light” vowel (-i-, -u-, -ā-). Thus, an original PIE *h₁ékwos ‘horse’ became PToch. *yákwé-. Complicating the surface structure of end-stressed nouns, like *yákwé-, at least in Tocharian B, is a later phonological development, Marggraf’s Law, that retracted stress from absolute final syllables, and thus the nominative-accusative singular *yákwé > *yákwé, but the genitive, *yákwén(ā)se, remained unaffected.

Adjectives agree in case with their head nouns when the head nouns are in the primary cases. Secondary cases, on the other hand, are thought to derive from PIE postpositions that have become fused with the noun, have the same shape whatever the number of the noun they is attached to, occur only once on a series of nouns in the same case, and do not cause any accent shift. Adjectives do not agree with their head nouns when the head nouns are in any of the secondary cases. When modifying nouns in secondary cases, adjectives are uniformly in their accusative shapes. However, the distinction between primary and secondary cases is not absolutely sharp. In particular, the Toch. B ablative in -mem often causes accent shift, giving rise to the possibility that it was once a primary case ending that has become “secondarily a secondary case” if you will and the same is true of the Toch. A ablative ending -ṣ (< PIE *-ti, represented also by Hittite -(a)z < *-(o)ti).

A rather typical nominal paradigm would be yákwé ‘horse’ from PIE *h₁ékwos (the Toch. A equivalent yuk, is given in italics in square brackets); see Table 10.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. yákwé [yuk]</td>
<td>yákwene [yukām]</td>
<td>yákwí [yukañ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. yákwé [yuk]</td>
<td>yákwene [yukām]</td>
<td>yákwem [yukas]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. yákwá [yuk]</td>
<td>yákwene [yukām]</td>
<td>yákwí [yukañ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. yákwéntse [yukes]</td>
<td>yákwéniśān [yukinis]</td>
<td>yákwéntse [yukaśši]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. yákwémemēm~</td>
<td>yákwémemēm [yuknas]</td>
<td>yákwémemēm [yukasās]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yákwémemēm [yukas]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All. yákwése [yukac]</td>
<td>yákwése [yuknac]</td>
<td>yákwése [yukasac]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This paradigm is directly descended from PIE masculine o-stems. However, like virtually every nominal or adjectival paradigm in Tocharian, it shows some importations from PIE n-stems. Thus, the genitive singular and genitive plural are from *-o-neso and *-o-nesom respectively, and the entire dual shows an -n- from the same source.

The fusion of accusative plus following postposition that created the secondary cases was apparently only beginning in the last stages of Proto-Tocharian because the two languages show different results. For instance, the allative postposition must have been PToch. *-cä (= Greek -de?), and the perlatve postposition must have been *.ä. When added to the singular accusative we would have had *yäkwe-cä for the allative; when added to the plural, *yäkwens-cä. For the perlatve it would have been singular *yäkw(e)-ä and plural *yäkwens-ä. At some point in the history of Tocharian A the accusative plural ending was reduced from *-ns to *-s. The allative would then have been singular *yäkwa-cä and plural *yäkwas-cä. The latter form was rebuilt, by analogy to the singular as *yäkwas-açä, whence the actual forms yukac and yukasac. The perlatve followed the same process, and *yäkwa-a and *yäkwas-ä gave actual yukä and yukasä. In pre-Tocharian B, however, word-final *-ns gave *-n (written -ṃ in attested Tocharian). Original *yäkwe-cä and *yäkwens-cä would have given **yäkwec and yäkwenśc respectively. Original *yäkwe-a and *yäkwens-ä would have given **yäkwē and yäkwensä respectively (with a morphological division *yäkwen-sä because now the accusative plural was *yäkwen). In both cases the plural form was generalized in Tocharian B, thus singular *yäkweścä and *yäkwesä. Also generalized from the plural was the Toch. B ablative ending -meṃ. In Tocharian A it was the singular ablative ending, in -ṣ, that was generalized to the dual and plural.

**ADJECTIVES:** Tocharian adjectives are morphologically much simpler than nouns. They have at most four case forms (nominative, accusative, genitive, and vocative). When they modify nouns in other cases (e.g., ablative, instrumental) the accusative form is used, and, more often than not, nouns in the genitive are also modified by adjectives in the accusative. In form the most common kinds of adjectives are medleys of PIE o-stem, yo-stem, and n-stem adjectives. As in the case of nouns, the many n-stem forms that show up in many places in the Tocharian adjective reflect the pre-Tocharian situation whereby nouns and adjectives had productive n-stem derivatives that were individualizing and definite when compared to the non-n-stems that underlay them. With regard to adjectives, the situation must have been very similar to that of Proto-Germanic with the latter’s distinction of definite and indefinite adjectives, the former being built on n-stem antecedents and the latter not. In Tocharian the two types of adjectives were fused. The fusion seems to have been largely post-Proto-Tocharian because the mechanics of that fusion are often quite different in the two languages. In Table 10.5 we give examples of an inherited (PIE) o-stem (*ñuwe ‘new’ [Toch. B only; Toch. attests only ūnu (m. sg.) and īwam (f. pl.)]), yo-stem (*ñäkciye [ñäkc] ‘divine’), and two inherited n-stems (krośce [kəs] ‘cold’ and klyomo [klyom] ‘noble’).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yäkwempa [yukaśśäl]</td>
<td>yäkwene [yukam]</td>
<td>yäkwesa [yukā]</td>
<td>[yukyo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yäkwempena [yuknaśśäl]</td>
<td>yäkwenenena [yuknāṃ]</td>
<td>yäkwenesa [yuknā]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yäkwemmpa [yukasäsäl]</td>
<td>yäkwempen [yukasam]</td>
<td>yäkwemns [yukasa]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

TOCHARIAN 463
TABLE 10.5 SOME EXAMPLES OF TOCHARIAN ADJECTIVAL DECLENSION

|--------|-------------|------|-------------|------|-------------|------|-------------|------|------------|

Similar in declension are the various productive adjectives in -ṣṣe [-ṣi] ‘pertaining to X’, -ññe [-ñi] ‘ibid.’, -tse [-ts] ‘having X’, and -lle [-l] ‘X-able’. Adjectives in -lle [-l], in both languages, and -tse, in Tocharian B only, show palatalization in the masculine singular (except the masculine singular nominative), masculine plural, and feminine singular (e.g., Toch. B (m. sg.) -lle, -lye, -lyepi, m. pl. -lyi, -lyem, f. sg. -lya, -lyai, f. pl. -llana, -llana). The palatalization is ultimately from the -n- stems (in the masculine) and -yā- stems (in the feminine). Tocharian has, in addition, abundant traces of participles in *-nt- or *-us- (both of which have been worked into the Toch. A paradigm for klyom) and the denominative *-went- ‘having X’.

Deictics and Third Person Pronouns: The different Tocharian deictics (i.e., the equivalents of ‘the’, ‘this’, and ‘that’), used also as third person pronouns, are based on a single basic paradigm to which different particles are attached. In Tocharian B the basic deictic/pronoun, usually used as a simple anaphoric, is masculine se (nom. sg.), ce (acc. sg.), cey (nom. pl.), cem (acc. pl.), feminine så (nom. sg.), tā (acc. sg.), toy (nom./acc. pl.), neuter te (nom./acc. sg.). Only here in Tocharian is there a neuter, used predificatively in reference to whole clauses, or concepts. Except for the word-initial palatalization in some forms, the Tocharian B forms of the first deictic match very well with their counterparts in Greek (se, ce, cey, så, tā, te = Greek ὁ, τό, [Doric] τοι, σή, τήν, τό).

The second deictic, more or less equivalent to the English definite article, though used more sparingly, adds -w in Tocharian B and -m in Tocharian A. The third deictic, ‘this
one here’, adds -n (written <ṃ>) in both languages. The fourth deictic, ‘that there’ (only in Tocharian B), adds -m(p). As is commonly the case, the basic system is shared by both Tocharian A and B, but the details, and the inter-paradigmatic analogies, are the province of each language separately. The Tocharian B paradigms are underdifferentiated in the genitive and masculine plural, while Tocharian A has generally created unique forms for each “slot.”

TABLE 10.6 DEICTIC PRONOUNS IN TOCHARIAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>first</th>
<th></th>
<th>second</th>
<th></th>
<th>third</th>
<th></th>
<th>fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m. sg. nom.</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. sg. gen.</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>säs</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>säm</td>
<td>seṃ</td>
<td>sam</td>
<td>samp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. pl. nom.</td>
<td>ce</td>
<td>caṣ</td>
<td>cew</td>
<td>cam</td>
<td>ceṃ</td>
<td>cam</td>
<td>camp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. pl. gen.</td>
<td>cwi</td>
<td>cași</td>
<td>cwi</td>
<td>cămi</td>
<td>cwi</td>
<td>cani</td>
<td>cwimp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. pl. acc.</td>
<td>ceṃ</td>
<td>cesāṣ</td>
<td>ceṃts</td>
<td>cesāṃ</td>
<td>ceyna</td>
<td>cesāṃ</td>
<td>*caimpa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. pl. gen.</td>
<td>ceṃts</td>
<td>cessi</td>
<td>ceṃts</td>
<td>cesmi</td>
<td>ceynaṃṣts</td>
<td>cesni</td>
<td>cempanṣts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. sg. nom.</td>
<td>sā</td>
<td>sāṣ</td>
<td>sāu</td>
<td>sām</td>
<td>sāṃ</td>
<td>sāṃ</td>
<td>somp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. sg. acc.</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>tāṣ</td>
<td>tāu</td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>tom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. gen.</td>
<td>täy</td>
<td>täy</td>
<td>täy</td>
<td>temi</td>
<td>temi</td>
<td>temi</td>
<td>temi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. pl. nom.</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>toṣ</td>
<td>toṃ</td>
<td>tom</td>
<td>toyna</td>
<td>*tom</td>
<td>toym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. pl. acc.</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>toṣāṣ</td>
<td>toṃts</td>
<td>tosāṃ</td>
<td>toyna</td>
<td>tosāṃ</td>
<td>toym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. pl. gen</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>toṃts</td>
<td>toṃts</td>
<td>tosmāssi</td>
<td>toynaṃts</td>
<td>toym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. sg.</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tāṣ</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>tem</td>
<td>taṃ</td>
<td>tamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. sg. gen.</td>
<td>tuntse</td>
<td>tmis</td>
<td>tuntse</td>
<td>tmis</td>
<td>tuntse</td>
<td>tmis</td>
<td>tuntse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du.</td>
<td>tai</td>
<td>tim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du. gen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Relative and Interrogative Pronouns: The commonest relative and interrogative pronoun, one that does not distinguish gender (in both languages) nor number (in Tocharian B), but that does distinguish case (in both), is a combination of the first deictic with a preceding kw- to give B nom. kwe (A kus), acc. ke (A kuc). The genitive forms are both irregular and not reducible to a single Proto-Tocharian preform; we have B ket(e) and A ke. In Tocharian A, but not in B, the relative pronoun is distinguished from the interrogative by the addition of the particle ne to the former but not the latter (thus kusne and kucne). In Tocharian A a nominative plural of the relative pronoun is also known, kucene (no accusative plural is known, perhaps simply because of a lack of attestation). Both languages have a relative or interrogative adjective derived from a deictic prefixed by in- (in B) and än- (in A). In Tocharian B it is the second deictic that is so used; in Tocharian A, the third. Thus, we have B intsu (nom.), itscau (acc.), etc. ‘which’ [A ântsâṃ, âńcaṃ]. More commonly, in this function in Tocharian B we have the second deictic prefixed by mäk-, i.e., mäksu (nom.), mäkscau (acc.), etc.

First and Second Person Pronouns: The array of personal pronouns in the two Tocharian languages is given in Table 10.7.
**TABLE 10.7 FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PRONOUNS IN TOCHARIAN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nääś</td>
<td>nāś</td>
<td>ſuk</td>
<td>wes</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>nääś</td>
<td>nāś</td>
<td>ſuk</td>
<td>wes</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>ſi</td>
<td>ſi</td>
<td>nāñi</td>
<td>wesāñ</td>
<td>wasām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>tuwe</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>ci</td>
<td>cu</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>tāñ</td>
<td>tūi</td>
<td>yesāñ</td>
<td>yasāṃ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition there is a reflexive genitive B ſañ [A ññi] and, attested only in Tocharian B, dual nominative-accusative wene ‘we too’ and yene ‘you too’.

All of the second person forms, and the dual and plural of the first, have direct PIE etymologies (tuwe < *tuHóm [cf. Sanskrit tvām], wes < *wos [cf. Latin uos]) or are easily explained analogical developments of known PIE forms. Not so the first person singular. The initial ſ- may reflect a PIE oblique case stem *mne-, but essentially everything else is unclear or downright weird. The -ś of Tocharian B and the -ṣ of Tocharian A are not reducible to a common denominator, and the origin of the typologically very unusual distinction in gender in Tocharian A is without any accepted explanation.

**NUMBERs**: Cardinal numbers are inflected for gender (‘one’, ‘two’, ‘three’, and ‘four’ in Tocharian A; ‘one’, ‘three’, and ‘four’ only in Tocharian B), number (‘one’ only), and case (a full panoply only for ‘one’, a single nominative-accusative form and a rarely attested genitive for the other numerals through ‘ten’).

**TABLE 10.8 TOCHARIAN NUMBERS FROM ‘ONE’ TO ‘TEN’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘one’ m.</td>
<td>še</td>
<td>šeme</td>
<td>sas</td>
<td>šom</td>
<td>(see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘one’ f.</td>
<td>sana ~ somo</td>
<td>sanai ~ somo</td>
<td>sām</td>
<td>šom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘two’ m.</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wu</td>
<td>wu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘two’ f.</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘three’ m.</td>
<td>trai</td>
<td>trai</td>
<td>tre</td>
<td>tre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘three’ f.</td>
<td>tarya</td>
<td>tarya</td>
<td>tri</td>
<td>tri</td>
<td>täryāṃts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘four’ m.</td>
<td>štwer</td>
<td>štwer</td>
<td>štwar</td>
<td>štwar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘four’ f.</td>
<td>štwāra</td>
<td>štwāra</td>
<td>štwāra</td>
<td>štwāra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘five’</td>
<td>piś</td>
<td>piś</td>
<td>pāñ</td>
<td>pāñ</td>
<td>pišaṃts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘six’</td>
<td>škas</td>
<td>škas</td>
<td>šāk</td>
<td>šāk</td>
<td>škāssaṃts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘seven’</td>
<td>šukt</td>
<td>šukt</td>
<td>spāt</td>
<td>spāt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘eight’</td>
<td>okt</td>
<td>okt</td>
<td>okāt</td>
<td>okāt</td>
<td>oktaṃts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘nine’</td>
<td>ſu</td>
<td>ſu</td>
<td>ſu</td>
<td>ſu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ten’</td>
<td>šak</td>
<td>šak-</td>
<td>šāk</td>
<td>šāk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is interesting to look closely at the paradigm for ‘one’ in both languages to see how the two languages have innovated with the material common to them so as to come up with quite different paradigms. The more usual forms of ‘one’ in the feminine singular, sana/sanai/sām, start from the PIE neuter singular *śm after final *-m had become *-n.
The non-nominative forms are generally from PIE *somos (cf. English ‘same’). The palatalization of the word-initial *s- presumably began in the masculine singular and plural, where it was analogically introduced for the same reason it was in the pronouns. In Tocharian A it has spread to the feminine as well. The rounding of PToch. *-e- (< PIE *-o-) before the bilabial -m- is regular in Tocharian A.

### TABLE 10.9 THE DECLENSION OF ‘ONE’ IN THE TOCHARIAN LANGUAGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sg. nom.</td>
<td>ṣe</td>
<td>sas</td>
<td>sanai ~ somo</td>
<td>sāṃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>śeme</td>
<td>šom</td>
<td>sanai ~ somo</td>
<td>šom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>śemepi</td>
<td>šomāp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl. nom.</td>
<td>ṣemi</td>
<td>some</td>
<td>somona</td>
<td>šomāṃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>šemenm</td>
<td>somes</td>
<td>somona</td>
<td>šomāṃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>šememnts</td>
<td>somešsi</td>
<td>somonan tats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The meaning of the plural of ‘one’ is ‘some’ (cf. the identical phenomenon in the Romance languages). Other numbers may also show a plural under the right conditions; A šäptänt ‘sevens’, i.e., ‘weeks’; or B škanma ‘tens’, i.e., ‘decades’; B känntenma ‘hundreds’.

In Tocharian B the second decade is composed of the numbers ‘one’ through ‘nine’ compounded with ‘ten’: šak-še ‘eleven’, šak-wi ‘twelve’, šak-trai, šak-štwer, šak-piš, šak-škas, šak-šukt, šak-ṇu. The structure is essentially the same in Tocharian A, save for the addition of a conjunction -pi; thus šak-wepi ‘twelve’ (f.), sak-nupi ‘nineteen’, etc. The decade numbers, ‘twenty’ through ‘ninety’, show (partly opaque) derivatives of the numbers ‘two’ through ‘nine’: B ikāṃ [A wiki] ‘twenty’, tāryāk [taryāk] ‘thirty’, štwarāk [piṇāk], škaska [sāksāk], šuktānka [sāptuk], oktānka [oktuk], ŋumka [nmuk]. As can easily be seen a lively analogy has been at work in both languages, but in quite different ways. The suffix reflects a PIE *-(d)komt, which, at an early point in its history became pre-Tocharian *-kom. The *-om part was identical with the usual neuter singular noun suffix, whose singularity was felt to be inappropriate for these numbers and changed to the neuter plural *-ā. Thus PToch. *-kā and thence, regularly, Toch. B -ka, A -k. The word for ‘hundred’ is inherited: kante [känt] (< PIE *kñtóm), as is probably the word for ‘thousand’: yaltse [wälts], but higher numbers are borrowed: tmāne [tmāṃ] ‘ten thousand’ and kor [kor] ‘ten million’.

The ordinal numbers from ‘second’ to ‘tenth’ are extremely transparent derivatives of the corresponding cardinal number and the suffix -te (Toch. A -t): wate [wät] ‘second’, trite [trit] ‘third’, štarte [štärt], piṅkte [pänt], škaste [škäst], šuktante [šāptänt], oktante [oktänt], ŋunte [ṅunt], škante [škänt] ‘tenth’. In Tocharian B the process continues with ikante, but no higher ordinal numbers are attested. In Tocharian A we do not have ‘twentieth’, but there are taryākinići ‘thirtieth’, štwarākinići ‘fortieth’, and sākskinići ‘sixtieth’ with the suffix -inci. The word for ‘first’ is Toch. B parwe/pārwešse (cf. Sanskrit pūrvā), Toch. A mallowinu (but compare A pārvati ‘first-born son’).

**Verbs:** The Tocharian verb is the most complex part of Tocharian morphology. A given verb can distinguish two **voices:** active and medio-passive (intransitive,
reflexive, or passive); two aspects: imperfective and perfective (but only in the past, in
the distinction of imperfect [imperf.] and preterit [pret.]); three moods: indicative (present
and past), subjunctive (mostly with future meaning in main clauses, while signaling
uncertainty or possibility in subordinate clauses), and imperative; number: singular,
dual, and plural; and three persons: first, second, and third. In these distinctions it is
fully as complex as the "classical" Indo-European languages such as Sanskrit, Greek,
or Latin. In addition, there is an infinitive (made from the subjunctive stem in Tocharian
B, from the present stem in Tocharian A); two verbal adjectives, one from the present
stem, signaling necessity, and the other from the subjunctive stem, signaling possibility;
a preterit participle; and an agent noun. The verbal adjectives can be combined with
'to be' to create modal-like forms ('one is to do X', 'one could do X'), and the preterit
participle can also be combined with 'to be' to form a (rare) perfect ('one has done X').
Most intransitive verbs, and many transitive ones, allow the derivation of a causative
("the window broke" > "John broke the window", "John knows the rules" > "Tom
showed/taught John the rules"). A small number of verbs, transitive or intransitive, have
derived intensives, e.g., kālāvē- 'resound' > kālnāsk'ā/e-'howl [of the wind]', oksiō-
'awaken' [intr.] > ākskāsk'ā/e- 'lie awake'.

The complexity of Tocharian verbal morphology is wholly consistent with that
of its Proto-Indo-European ancestor. Not only is the system clearly Proto-Indo-
European, but its expression is largely inherited as well. Among present stems, for
instance, we find descendants of PIE *e/o-present, also ye/o-, šē/o-, se/o-, eh₂-,
neh₂-, nh₂ye/o-, and nasal-infix presents, as well as old denominatives reflecting PIE
*-n-ye/o- and *-eh₂-ye/o-. Thus, we have, using Tocharian B examples, pārāē (<
b̥er-e/o-) 'bear', ceppiye- (< *topye/-o- [with innovative word-initial palatalization])
'step forth', pāsk'āē (< *pēh₂-ske/o-) 'guard', luks'āē- (< *luk-se/o-) 'illuminate',
lākā- (< *l₁g-eh₂-) 'see', tārkānā- (< *Tr̥K-ne-h₂-) 'release', māntānāe- (<
*mnt-ṇh₂-ye/o-) 'harm', pīnkā- (< *pi-n-k-) 'paint, write', kwipeñnāe- (denominate
to kwipe 'shame') (as if pre-Tocharian < *kwipen-ye/o-) 'be ashamed', klautko-
(denominative to klautke) (as if < *kloutk'ēh₂-ye/o-) 'change'. The Tocharian sub-
jective shows many of the same formations, and, indeed, there are many instances
where the present stem and subjunctive stems are identical. The most common sub-
jective, however, is a formation with suffixal -ā- (of unclear and perhaps multiple
origins). The present stems in the previous list are accompanied by the following
subjunctives: pārāē- (suppletive subj. kāmā-), ceppiyē- (subj. tāppā-, pret.
*tāppā-), pāsk'āē- (subj. pāsk'ē/e- ('identical to present'), pret. pāṣṣā-), luks'āē-
(subj. lük'ā/e-, pret. lyāuk(sā)- ~ lāuksā-), lākā- (subj. lākā-, pret. lyākā-), tārkānā-
(subj. tārkā−tārkā-, pret. tārkā−tārkā-), māntānāe- (subj. māntā−māntā-, pret.
māntā-), pīnkā- (subj. pīkā-, pret. pīkā-), kwipeñnāe- (subj. kwipeñnā/e-, pret.
kwipeñnā-), klautkō- (subj. klautkā-, pret. klautkā-). Unlike the other non-Anatolian
branches of Indo-European, Tocharian shows no traces of "long vowel" subjunctives and thematic optatives in *
*-i-, thus pāsk'ā/e-, both present and subjunctive < *pēh₂sk-e/o- and optative pāsk'ī-
(< *pēh₂sk-ih₁/). The absence of "long vowel" subjunctives and thematic optatives in *
*-o-/ is clearly an archaic trait.
### TABLE 10.10 CONSPECTUS OF THE TOCHARIAN VERB (Tocharian A forms in italics)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>non-causative</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>medio-passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>tense</strong></td>
<td><strong>active</strong></td>
<td><strong>medio</strong></td>
<td><strong>active</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>kärsanaṃ</td>
<td>kärsaṃ [subj.]</td>
<td>kärsanatār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[kärsnās]</td>
<td>[krasas]</td>
<td>[kärsnātār*]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-present</td>
<td>kärsanoy [Impf.]</td>
<td>karsoy [Opt]</td>
<td>kärsanoytār [impf.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[śārs]</td>
<td>[kārsi]</td>
<td>[śārsitār*]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preterit</td>
<td>kärsa</td>
<td>[kārsi]</td>
<td>kärsate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kärsau</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participle</td>
<td>kärsō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>non-finites</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>[kārsnāts]</td>
<td>karsatsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerundive</td>
<td>kärsanalle</td>
<td>karsalle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>[kārsnl]</td>
<td>karsalē</td>
<td>[kārsāl]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m-participle</td>
<td>kärsanamane*</td>
<td>kārsauca</td>
<td>[kārsnānt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nt-participle</td>
<td>kärsauca</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><strong>causative</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>causative</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>tense</strong></td>
<td><strong>active</strong></td>
<td><strong>medio</strong></td>
<td><strong>active</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>šārsäṣṣāṃ</td>
<td>šārsäṣṣāṃ [subj.]</td>
<td>šārsäṣtār*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[śārsās]</td>
<td>[śārsās*]</td>
<td>[śārsāṣtār*]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-present</td>
<td>šārsāṣsi [Impf.]</td>
<td>šārsāṣsi [Opt.]</td>
<td>šārsāṣṣitār* [impf.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[śārsśī]</td>
<td>[śārsśī*]</td>
<td>[śārsśiṭār]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preterit</td>
<td>šārsa</td>
<td>šārsate</td>
<td>[śārsāṣt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>šešśarsu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participle</td>
<td>šeššarsu</td>
<td>[šaśārsu]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>non-finites</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>[šārsāssi]</td>
<td>[šārsāsī*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerundive</td>
<td>šārsāṣṣālle</td>
<td>šārsāṣṣālle*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
<td>[šārsāṣali]</td>
<td>[šārsāṣali*]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m-participle</td>
<td>šārsāskemane*</td>
<td>šārsāskemane*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nt-participle</td>
<td>šārsāskemane*</td>
<td>šārsāskemane*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[šārsāsmā]</td>
<td>[šārsāsmānt]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NB: The finite forms are all third person singulars; the asterisk signifies a non-attested form/category (in all such cases, however, the reconstruction is certain). Here and elsewhere ‘ā’ is an -ā-, which causes obligatory palatalization of a preceding palatalizable consonant. Thus, in this case, we get alternation between pāṣṣā- and pāske- (e.g., third person singular pāṣṣāṃ and third person plural pāskeṃ, ultimately representing PIE *peh₂sketi and *peh₂skonti respectively).
Denominative Verbs: There are two ways by which denominative verbs may be created, by suffixation or by compounding with the verb yām- [A ypa-] ‘do, make’. The process of suffixation is inherited but probably no longer productive in either language. With just enough examples to assure us of its existence, there was a process by which a (PIE) o-grade noun might take the verbal suffix -ā- to form a new verb. Thus, the 'Toch. B noun klenke 'vehicle' gave klānkā- ‘travel by vehicle’ or B klautke [A lotāk] ‘change’ gave B klautkā- [A lotkā- (new analogical present lotānkā-)] ‘change’ (vb.). A bit more commonly, we have the suffix -āññe [A -iññe/a-] (historically a denominative to n-stem nouns, i.e., PIE *-n-ye/o-); thus, B tankw [A tunk] ‘love’ gives B tānkwāññe[le-] [A tunikinyā/n/a-] ‘love’ (vb.). Far, far more common than either of these “suffix solutions” is to combine a noun with the verb yām-[ypa-], e.g., B apākärtsse yām- ‘be visible, be manifest’, B saim yām- [A sem ypa-] ‘take refuge’. Of the approximately 625 verbs known in Tocharian B, 54 are denominatives made with yām-; the numbers in Tocharian A would appear to yield a similar ratio.

Adnominal and Possessive Adjectives: Adnominal adjectives are those that mean something like ‘pertaining to X’ or ‘consisting of X’, while possessive adjectives are those that mean something like ‘having X’. In each case the ‘X’ is a noun. Thus, B kokale [A kukäl] is ‘chariot/wagon’, and the adnominal B kokaleṣṣe is ‘pertaining to a chariot/wagon’, while the possessive adjective B kokaletstse is ‘having a chariot/wagon’ (nominalized as ‘charioteer, carter’) or B stām [A ṣtām] ‘tree’, where the adnominal B stamaṣṣe [A ṣtāmaṣi] is ‘pertaining to a tree’ and B stanātstste (built to the plural stāna) is ‘possessing trees’. Adnominal adjectives are essentially universally productive in both languages and play an interesting syntactic role (cf. infra); the possessive adjectives are common in Tocharian B but quite rare in Tocharian A.

Abstract Nouns: Both Tocharian languages have fully productive means by which to create abstract nouns from adjectives and nouns. In Tocharian B there is -āññe (less commonly -uññe or -auñe), and in Tocharian A there is -ūne (less commonly -one). (The Tocharian B and A suffixes are presumably ultimately related, but the relationship is not well explained.) Thus, in Tocharian B we have astare ‘pure’ > astarñe ‘purity’ [A āṣṭār > āstrone], B parkār ‘long’ > pārkarñe ‘length’ [A pārkār > pākrone ‘length’], or B lānt ‘king’ (acc.) > lantuññe ‘kingship’ [A lānt > lāntune]. The creation of abstract nouns from adjectives includes creation from the productive deverbal adjectives in -lle [A -l]. Usually it is the verbal adjective built on the subjunctive stem (potential gerundive) that forms the basis of the verbal abstract noun, but sometimes one also finds abstracts built to the verbal adjective derived from the present stem (the gerundive of necessity): B tsrāñe ‘separation’ based on the subjunctive stem tsärā- but also tsrēñe ‘id.’ based on the present stem tsārē- or A kālpālune (from the subjunctive) and kālpālune (from the present), both ‘achievement’.

Compounds: The Tocharian languages are rich in nominal compounds. Essentially all types of compounds that are familiar in other Indo-European languages can be found. There are copulative compounds (the dvandas of Sanskrit grammatical tradition), e.g., B niem-kālywe ‘fame’ [A nem-klyu] (‘name-fame’), B pācer-mācer [A pācar-mācar] ‘parents’ (‘father-mother’), B śwātsi-yoktsi [A (pl.) śwātisyoktsintu] ‘food and drink’. There are also numerous examples of determinative compounds acting as adjectives (the

SYNTAX

The Tocharian languages are typical Indo-European languages in that they have a relatively “free” word order because the rich morphology will often tell the relationship of a noun, say, to other nouns or to the verb in a sentence. The result of this morphological robustness is that rarely is it the case that, unlike the situation in English, some particular constituent of a sentence (e.g., subject, verb, or adjective) has to be in a particular syntactic position in a sentence. Still, the order of elements in a Tocharian B sentence is not altogether random. It is true, far more often than not, that in independent clauses the semantically neutral, or unmarked, word order in Tocharian prose is subject-object-verb. A Tocharian B example, from a letter with no literary pretensions, is Śilarikite [sic] Āryawarmeṃ tsamo yṣuwarsa prekṣāṃ ‘Śīlarkṣita inquires with great friendship of Āryavarman’. In copular (or “nominal” sentences) the order is subject-predicate-(BE), where the BE, at least in the present tense, is often not present (e.g., from another letter, sāñkantse ayāto nesaññe ste ‘the situation of the community is satisfactory’ with BE present, and, in a literary text, [cm(e)]laṣṣai yatāri yātsi tumemen (pre)[k]e : ‘therefore [it is] time to go the way of births’ with BE absent).

Particularly in poetry different orders appear metri causa or for literary effect. But even in non-literary texts, emphasis or focus or new information may be shown by fronting the syntactic constituent involved. It is almost certainly the case that any element of a clause may be fronted. Because of both emphasis and focus criteria, imperative verbs are commonly, though not universally, fronted, e.g., pluwas wesi šak meñatse-ne wai parāce komne ploriyaceṃ ‘send us, on the tenth of the month and the day of recitation, musicians’. Also normally fronted are interrogative and relative pronouns. With interrogative pronouns: k,ce klauskese ašalyi ‘by what behavior [are they] to be recognized?’, k,cesa akalkantats yatalye māsketrā : ‘by which is the taming of desires?’; with relative
pronouns: *ket ait yoktsi sāṃtk=onwañe pelaiyknēsse lyaitkem teki mantanta śāp srukentār caif* • ‘to whom thou givest the righteous, immortal medicine to drink, they will avoid sickness and never die’, *kce te mant wñāwa, tu nke weñau anaiśai* ‘what I have so said, that will I now speak clearly’.

Constituents can be shifted rightward as well. Right-detachment is a process whereby appositional phrases or other adjuncts are moved to the end of a grammatical sentence, e.g., *ysāre lac piś cakanma wi tauwā śwer; wāsokāś āka laś cāk piś tom* ‘Wheat went out, five cāks, two tom; for the [making of] wāsok [= beer?] barley went out, one cāk, five tom’. In both clauses we have intransitive sentences (‘wheat went out’, ‘barley for beer went out’) where the subject has been expanded by the addition of measurements, but those measurements come after the verb.

The usual place for an adjective or genitive is before the noun it modifies. Non-literary monastic records provide abundant examples, e.g., *olyīṣkāṣṣe Śīṅkeñe verwiyesa* ‘for Śīṅke’s olyīška-garden’, *wace krai* ‘in the second market/on the second market-day’, *ptamaṣṣe verwiyesa* ‘for the stupa’s garden’ (for the adjective), or *stere Ŋānatewetse sotri* ‘the sign of the elder Jñānadeva’, *kapyařes śwasīṣe* ‘food-provisions for the monastic workers’ (for the genitive). Other kinds of modifiers, e.g., prepositional phrases, also tend to proceed, e.g., *ysiñe cokiś ṣalywe* ‘oil for the night lamp’. But even in documents such as these we find the reverse order, e.g., *ceynas pito koromñe* ‘the price of their [transportation] by mules’. In more literary documents, the orders N–A and N–G occur freely. Particularly in more literary texts the modifier and noun may be separated from one another (“distracted” element underlined), e.g., *se wcepi āke ślokanstse* ‘the end of the second stanza’, *sāṅkantse ayāto nesaññe*ste*’the situation of the community is satisfactory’.

There are three kinds of dependent clauses in Tocharian B: (1) those that modify a particular noun or pronoun, (2) those that function as part of the verb phrase as an adverb of some sort, and (3) those that function as a subject, direct object, or predicative nominative. The first group is composed of relative clauses; the second of temporal, local, manner, causal, and result clauses; and the third group of noun clauses. Dependent clauses almost invariably precede the main clause. Relative clauses are a partial exception in that we finds both orders without apparent difference in meaning; some follow (relative pronoun bolded): *cauwak yakne ēnkaskemttār* {māckaup rocri ēñäsate} ‘we take that very way that [our] brother has taken’, *pepärkormeṃ yamor krentā* {mākci procri} ‘having asked after the good deed whose fruits he enjoyed’, but some precede: *{ku cai makci enkoṣṣeṃ}* pilkonta ‘these insights which they themselves [have had]’. Most commonly, however, relative clauses are “correlative,” e.g., *{kce te mant wñāwa}, tu nke weñau anaiśai* ‘what I have so said, that will I now speak clearly’.

Dependent clauses are marked by a clause-initial subordinator (relative clauses are again an exception in that the subordinator, the relative pronoun, is not always clause initial). The main clause, too, may be marked by a clause-initial particle, e.g., *{ente palko tsāṅkam-ne}* ot śāwści yoktsi kālpāsām*’whenever the spirit arises in him, then he finds
food and drink’. Comparative clauses and correlative relative clauses are (almost) always so marked; other types show a main clause particle 20% or 30% of the time.

As in other Indo-European languages with morphological verbal moods, the Tocharian subjunctive is commonly found in dependent clauses. Where both subjunctive and indicative can be found, the subjunctive reflects an indefinite or unspecified subject/condition or is future-oriented, or both. The optative in these dependent clauses is used either as the past equivalent of the subjunctive (by a Tocharian version of the sequence of tenses rule) or when the dependent clause is offered as unreal, e.g., in contrary-to-fact conditional clauses (“if I were rich . . .’) or in relative clauses where the antecedent is denied (“there is no one who . . .’, e.g., B mā sū nesāṃ {k,še onwaññe tākoy} ‘there is no one who is [lit. may/might be] immortal’).

One of the characteristic syntactic phenomena of Tocharian is the widespread presence of adnominal adjectives. To a much greater degree than is the case for most Indo-European languages, Tocharian has a productive grammatical rule whereby a modifying genitive noun may be converted into an adnominal adjective that, then, will agree in gender, number, and case with its head noun. Thus, one can say either B slentse [gen.] trönkne lyam=ompalskoññe ‘he sat [pret.] in meditation in a hollow of the mountain’ or sleve [lege śliye] [adj.] gune cau šamy ompolskoññe ‘he sat [impf.] in meditation in that mountain cave’, rūm=éñwente [gen.] ‘in the shape of a man’, but secçakāññe [adj.] rupsa ‘in the shape of a lion’, or further B skrenanste [gen.] paruwa ‘crow-feathers’, but skrense [adj.] pāiyë ‘crow-foot’. These adnominal adjectives may take one of three possible shapes: (1) -iye (inherited directly from PIE *-iyo- and restricted to long-established inherited nouns, e.g., ypiye ‘barley’ [from yap ‘barley’], wāsturse ‘camel’ [underlying noun unattested], kewiye ‘bovine’ (as a noun, ‘butter’) [ke, ‘cow’], patarye ‘paternal’ [pācer ‘father’], etc.); (2) -ññe, common only in Tocharian B, from PIE *-n-yo- and largely restricted to animate nouns (e.g., yākweññe ‘equine’ [yakwe ‘horse’]); and (3) -ṣṣe, largely restricted to inanimates and dual or plural nouns of all degrees of animacy (e.g., klautsaiṣṣe ‘pertaining to the ear’, klautsaneṣṣe [A klośnāṣi] ‘pertaining to the two ears’). However, the distinction is not rigid, and there are nouns that give rise to more than one denominal adjective, e.g., yākweññe and yākweṣṣe [A yukaṣi], both ‘pertaining to a horse’.

Unlike the situation in other Indo-European languages in which this formation exists, where it can be used only when the modifier is singular and itself otherwise unmodified, Tocharian allows the modifying noun to be of any number (as also in Luvian among the Anatolian languages), and it, in turn, may be modified (thus, we have the two adjectives klautsaiṣsse ‘of the ear’ and klautsaneṣsse ‘of the two ears’, läkleṣsse ‘pertaining to suffering’ (from lakle ‘suffering’) and läklentaṣsse ‘pertaining to sufferings’ [Toch. A klopa/klopaŋt ‘suffering(s), whence both klopaṣi and klopaŋtwāṣi]). In many cases the genitive and adnominal adjective are semantically identical, or substantially so. In other cases the use of the genitive may signal a specified noun, while the adjective may be more generic, e.g., lānte warkṣal ‘the king’s power’, but lantuññe warkṣal ‘royal power’. Animacy is also a factor: the more animate the modifying noun, the more likely that it will remain in the genitive and vice versa.

Even more astonishing is the behavior of this phenomenon when it occurs in noun phrases with more than one level of modifier-embedding. A noun phrase (NP) can consist of a noun (N₁) and a modifying noun phrase (NP₂), which, in turn, can consist of a noun (N₂) and noun phrase (NP₃), and so on. In the diagram below, either or both of N₂ and N₃ can be a noun in the genitive or a derived adnominal adjective.
If N_C is a derived adnominal adjective, the adjective agrees in gender with the noun N_B, even if the noun has itself been changed into an adnominal adjective (agreeing with the head noun, N_A). Let’s look at an example, this one from a list of medicinal recipes: läksañai [adj., f. acc. sg.] klautsaiṣṣe [adj., m. nom. sg.] spel [noun, m. nom. sg.] ‘poultice of fish ears/gills’. The N_B slot is occupied by the adjective klautsaiṣṣe, which is regularly derived from the feminine noun klautso ‘ear/gill’. It is in the masculine nominative singular form because it agrees with N_A, spel ‘poultice’, a masculine nominative singular noun. The N_C slot is also occupied by an adjective, laksañai, which is regularly derived from laks ‘fish’. However, it is in the feminine singular genitive/accusative form because it agrees with the feminine genitive singular of klautso, namely, klautsaintse, which underlies the surface-structure klautsaiṣṣe. Particularly interesting is the double example such as mākce_ykeṣṣa kektseñe tā, kenasṣe satāšlñe ‘whatever place the body [has], exhalation [has] that [place on] earth’. Here we have mākce, which is masculine, agreeing with the underlying ike ‘place’ (m.), even though ike has become ykeṣṣa, a feminine adjective, to agree with the feminine noun kektseñe ‘body’. Conversely, tā is feminine to agree with the feminine noun kem ‘earth’, which has been replaced by the adjective kenasṣe (masculine to agree with satāšlñe ‘exhalation’).

FURTHER READING

Supporting the notion that “Tocharian” is a correct name for those languages so-called is Adams 2000. It is a review of the data and analysis that probably justify grouping the classical Tōkharoi, the Uyghurs’ Tuyrī, and the Tocharians into a single historical “ethnic complex.” It is certain that not all investigators will agree at every point. Balanced reviews of the prehistory of the Tarim Basin are Barber’s (1999) The Mummies of Ürümchi and J. P. Mallory and Victor M. Mair’s (2000) The Tarim Mummies. Both books are readable and very informative accounts of the prehistory of the Tarim Basin, its peopling, and its culture.

Overwhelmingly the best place to go for the Tocharian texts themselves is CEToM 2011–, A Comprehensive Edition of Tocharian Manuscripts. The database is as yet incomplete but is designed to give digital access to very nearly all Tocharian manuscripts, accompanied, where possible, by (tentative) transcriptions and commentary; this will be a resource for Tocharianists that is unlike that of any other Indo-European group. Accessible now are the texts housed in London, those housed in Berlin, and many of those housed in Paris.

Krause and Thomas 1960–1964 is a two-volume work containing a serviceable if brief grammatical sketch (phonology and morphology) of both languages, along with selected texts and glossaries from both. Sieg et al. 1931 is an early work that provides what is still in some respects the best and fullest grammar of the two languages, but clearly focused on Tocharian A. It is dated but still very serviceable, particularly with regard to morphology.
Like Krause and Thomas 1960–1964, Pinault’s chrestomathy (2008) contains readings and grammatical analysis, along with considerable discussion of the development of Tocharian from Proto-Indo-European. Peyrot (2008) provides the primary discussion and analysis of the internal, half-millennium-long history of Tocharian B. Malzahn 2010 and Peyrot 2013 together form an exceptionally thorough morphological description of the Tocharian verb. Thomas 1957 is a thorough examination of Tocharian aspect. None of these is for the neophyte. A full-fledged syntax of either or both languages is clearly a desideratum. (But see now Adams 2015.)

The Tocharian A glossary of Krause and Thomas (1960–64) remains the best overall dictionary for that language, though it is supplemented by the incomplete dictionary of Carling et al. (2009). Adams 2013 is the most complete dictionary, synchronic or diachronic (it is both), of either Tocharian language, though by no means the “final word.”

REFERENCES

Adams, Douglas Q. 2013, A Dictionary of Tocharian B, 2nd revised and enlarged edition, Rodopi, Amsterdam–Atlanta
CEToM (2011–), A Comprehensive Edition of Tocharian Manuscripts www.univie.ac.at/tocharian/Krause,
Krause, Wolfgang & Thomas, Werner 1960–64, Tocharische Elementarbuch, Bände I, II, Carl Winter, Heidelberg
Malzahn, Melanie 2010, The Tocharian Verbal System, Brill, Leiden
Matzinger, Joachim 2006, Der Albanische Text “Mbsuame e Krështerë”(Dottrina Cristiana) des Lekë Matrënga von 1592: Eine Einführung in die albansche Sprachwissenschaft, (Jenaer Indogermanische Textbearbeitung. 3.), J. H. Röll, Dettelbach
Peyrot, Michaël 2013, The Tocharian Subjunctive: A Study in Syntax and Verbal Stem Formation, Brill, Leiden
Sieg, Emil; Siegling, Wilhelm & Schulze, Wilhelm 1931, Tocharische Grammatik, Preussische Akademie der Wissenschaften, Göttingen
Thomas, Werner 1957, Der Gebrauch der Vergangenheitstempora im Tocharisch, Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
PART 11

BALTO-SLAVIC
CHAPTER 1

BALTO-SLAVIC

Steven Young

The similarities in structure and lexicon, some quite striking, between the Baltic and Slavic branches of the Indo-European language family have long drawn scholarly attention. But the precise nature of the relationship between the two branches has been a source of debate for nearly as long. The prevailing view up to the early nineteenth century was that the Baltic languages were a kind of Slavic. It was through the work of the comparatists Franz Bopp and August Pott that Baltic was finally recognized as a language family in its own right (Petit 2004: 17–19). The classic presentation of Balto-Slavic as an intermediate branch of the Indo-European language family, with Baltic and Slavic as parallel sub-branches, is reflected in August Schleicher’s Stammbaum, or family-tree, approach, in which “slawolitauisch” (Balto-Slavic) develops from an earlier “slawodeutsch” (Petit 2004: 19–20). Comparative evidence for a Balto-Slavic grouping was later supplied by Karl Brugmann (1904: 18) in the form of eight shared innovations in phonology and morphology, among them the development of syllabic sonorants such as -iR-, the use of pronominal *-yo- to form definite adjectives, and the replacement of the inherited genitive singular form of o-stem nouns by the ablative.

The first to offer a principled challenge to the neogrammarian tenet of a post-Indo-European period of Balto-Slavic common development was Antoine Meillet in 1908 (cf. 1967: 59–67). In Meillet’s view, the various agreements between the two language families reflect either inherited Indo-European archaisms (with both Baltic and Slavic developing from nearly identical Indo-European dialects) or later parallel developments in each of the branches, rather than shared innovations that would demonstrate a stage of linguistic unity.

Jan Endzelin’s 1911 study of the agreements and differences between Baltic and Slavic represents an attempt to reconcile Meillet’s approach with that of the neogrammarians. While Endzelin agrees with a number of Brugmann’s shared innovations, adding to these syntactic comparisons (predicate instrumental and genitive direct object in a negated sentence) and a substantial number of exclusive lexical agreements, he accounts for these by positing a period of prolonged language contact between neighboring Baltic and Slavic communities, leading to a degree of linguistic convergence, particularly in the lexicon. According to Endzelin, while we can justifiably speak of a common Balto-Slavic period (“эпоха совместной жизни”: 202), this does not imply a Balto-Slavic protolanguage, reflecting a stage of complete linguistic identity.

Additional arguments, both in support of and against a period of Balto-Slavic linguistic unity, were put forward over the course of the twentieth century. Among the notable attempts in support of a “Sprachgemeinschaft” is Reinhold Trautmann’s 1923 Baltisch-Slavisches Wörterbuch, in which Baltic and Slavic lexical correspondences are systematized. A shortcoming of this work is the frequent inclusion of external cognates, and etyma that are represented in either Baltic or Slavic, but not in both (Petit 2004: 26).

A review of the accumulated evidence in support of the notion of Balto-Slavic can be found in Stang 1966 (17–21). Shared phonological innovations include the development of acute and circumflex tone on non-short syllables (\(\hat{V}, \tilde{V}/u, VR\)): Lith. kárve ‘cow’: SCr. krâva (reflex of acute tone), Lith. saûsas ‘dry’: SCr. sûh (reflex of circumflex tone); and the development of the syllabic sonorants *t̥, *l̥, *m̥, *n̥ into the sequences ir, il, im,
in: Lith. viršūs ‘top’: ORuss. vyršъ, vilкas ‘wolf’: OCS vilъkъ (*-yll-), Lith. dešiūtas ‘tenth’: OCS desėtъ (*-yn-), OPruss. insūvis ‘tongue’: OCS jezykъ (*-yn-), and (more controversially) after labiovelar stops into ur, ul, um, un (Vaillant 1950: 171): CS *girdlo ‘throat’, Lith. gurkšis ‘crop’ reflect a reduced grade *gur- to the *ge-rrh- of CS žežri (OCS požrėti ‘to swallow, devour’), Lith. gėrėti ‘to drink’. Compare also the set OCS gręnaži (reduced grade) ‘to chase’: ženą (full grade) ‘(I) chase’ and OPruss. guntwei ‘to chase, drive’, gurniam ‘(we) chase’ and Lith. genū, Latv. dzēnu ‘(I) drive (cattle).’

To Stang’s examples of Balto-Slavic phonological innovations we can add the change of e to o before u when followed by a back vowel: Lith. tāvas ‘your’, Latv. tavs, compare Gr. τέος; OCS novъ ‘new’, compare Gr. νέος (Endzelin 1911: 84); the change of -eu- to -iau- (-au-) before a consonant: Lith. liāudis ‘people, nation’, Latv. lāudis (nom. pl.) ‘people, folk’: OCS ljudьje ‘people’ (*lewdʰ-); Lith. liaupsė̃ ‘folk’: OCS ljudьje ‘people’ (*lewdʰ-); Lith. liaupsė̃ ‘praise’: OCS ljuby ‘love’.


This list can be supplemented by nominal adjectives in -in-: Lith. krūvinas ‘bloody’: OSC krъvъnъ (Endzelin 1952: 38); diminutives in -uk-o-: Latv. dēluks ‘son (dim.),’ OCS sъmbъ; masculine derivations in -in- such as Lith. ėvinas ‘ram’ (compare avis ‘sheep’), Latv. dial. avins, OPruss. awins: OCS evъns; and oblique cases of the first-person singular personal pronoun based on a stem *me(on-), generalized from the genitive stem: Lith. gen. manę̃, dat. mān, acc. manę̃; Latv. gen. manis, dat. man, acc. mani; OPruss. dat. menei: OCS gen. mene, ORuss. dat./loc. mъnē; the reduced grade of the latter is matched by the dialectal (High) Latvian and žemaicaitian dative mun.

Innovations in the inflectional and derivational morphology of the verb (Stang 1966: 18–19) include the -ā formant marking a preterit/aorist stem, often accompanied by the reduced grade of the root: Lith. piūko (pres. perkā) ‘bought’: OCS žuda (pres. židetъ) ‘waited, expected;’ the Baltic preterit in -ē: Lith. vēdē ‘led’, compared with the Slavic imperfect of the type vedėašъ ‘(I) led’; the verbal suffix Lith. -āyV- compared with Slavic *-iV-, preterit Lith. -āvo and Slavic -ova; and the distinctive formation of the present tense stem of ‘give’: OLith. duosti ‘gives’: OCS dąstъ (*dō-d(ə)-ti).

In addition, Baltic and Slavic share a large number of apparently exclusive lexical correspondences, which are not concentrated in any single semantic field. Wojciech Smoczyński (2001: 65–170) among them: Lith. rankа ‘hand’, Latv. růoka: OCS roka; Lith. rágas ‘horn’, Latv. rāgs: OCS rоgъ, Lith. liepa ‘linden’, Latv. liedēpa: OCS lipa; Lith. lēdas ‘ice’: OCS ledds; Lith. papartyš ‘fern’: CS *paportsъ. These can be supplemented by the following comparisons from Endzelin 1952 (42ff.): Lith. piršys (nom. pl.) ‘chest (of a horse)’: OCS pṛśi (*sr-*) ‘chest, bosom’; Lith. sietas ‘sieve’, Latv. siēts: SCR. sītс; Lith. mielas ‘nice, sweet, dear’, Latv. mīlš ‘sweet, dear’: CS *mĕlъ; Lith. slānка ‘woodcock’, Latv. slīoka (with anomalous tone): Russ. cilъka; and the precise correspondence sets Lith. vārna ‘crow’, Latv. vārна, OPruss. warne: CS *vörna (whatever the interpretation of acute in this form may be) and Lith. vãrns ‘raven’, OPruss. warnís: CS *vörnъ.

Finally, there are a number of prepositions and preverbs with close or identical correspondences in the two language families: Lith. už ‘at, within, instead of, in return for’, Latv. uz ‘on, to’: CS *vъz- ‘in return for, (preverb) up, back’; Lith. priė ‘at, with, to’, OPruss. prei ‘at,
with, to’: CS *pri ‘at, with, by’; Lith. nuò, Latv. nūo ‘from’, OPruss. no, na ‘onto, against, over’: CS *na ‘on(to), in(to)’; Lith. dial. and OLith. iē (standard iē), Latv. iz ‘out of’: CS *jē.z ‘from, out of’, with unexplained but matching initial *i-. A refinement of Balto-Slavic lexical comparisons, drawing on progress in dialectal data, can be found in Otkuspendik 1988.

Perhaps the most compelling argument for a Balto-Slavic protolanguage, demonstrated on the basis of shared innovations, is to be found in the highly complex prosodic structures of both language families, which typically agree in accentual paradigms and lexical membership in these paradigms, stress placement (including the reflexes of Hirt’s Law), and phenomena associated with the rise of syllable tone (including the reflexes of Winter’s Law).

The classic statement of tonal correspondences between Baltic and Slavic is reflected in Stang 1966 (125). In this traditional view, the correspondence set conventionally labeled acute, continuing Indo-European length (including length from loss of a laryngeal), shows a rising pitch in Slavic, Old Prussian and (together with “broken” tone) Latvian, but a falling pitch in (standard) Lithuanian. On the other hand, circumflex tone has a falling pitch in the former, but a rising pitch in Lithuanian. Stang (1966: 125) assumes a shift in tonal contours (“eine Umlegung von Tonverlauf”) for Lithuanian. An attempt at resolving this anomaly is found in the work of Frederik Kortlandt (for example, 1985: 122ff.), who has argued that the various tonal contours are later developments in the individual languages, and that the broken-tone (glottalic) acute of Latvian and the Žemaitic dialects of Lithuanian is in fact the prosodic continuation of an earlier laryngeal. (Baltic) circumflex tone is simply the continuation of a non-laryngeal length (lengthened grade or vowel contraction).

An apparent lack of tonal correspondences between Baltic and Slavic can be found in stems belonging to the mobile accent paradigm (see below). Here the opposition of acute and (Balto-Slavic) circumflex was neutralized in Slavic; all such roots show “Slavic circumflex,” which continues in Serbo-Croatian as long falling tone: SCr. *glāva ‘head’, acc. sg. *glāvu ≠ Lith. galvė, galvą, Latv. galva, with acute; SCr. *nāg. nāga ‘naked’ ≠ Lith. nūogas, Latv. nuogas, with acute; SCr. *žīv. žīva ‘alive’ ≠ Lith. gūvas, Latv. dzīvs, with acute. This development, first described by Antoine Meillet (1902), is known as Meillet’s Law.

The set of Balto-Slavic acute stems of laryngeal origin is supplemented by the reflexes of Winter’s Law, which likewise serves as an important argument for a Balto-Slavic linguistic unity (Derksen 2004: 82). Werner Winter (1976) showed that there is a relationship between instances of Balto-Slavic lengthened vowels and the distribution of stem-final Indo-European aspirated and unaspirated voiced stops; an original short vowel followed by an aspirated stop remains short in Balto-Slavic, while an original short vowel followed by an Indo-European voiced stop shows a lengthened (acute) vowel:

BSI. *med- ‘honey’ < *medh, but *ēd- ‘to eat’ < *ed-. Winter’s Law accounts for a number of cases that Stang had termed “theoretical metatony” (1970: 216), where the acute, rather than the expected circumflex (or short), occurs in a non-laryngeal base. The most comprehensive list of Balto-Slavic data supporting Winter’s Law is undoubtedly Dybo 2002.


This set of correspondences was first noted by Hermann Hirt (1892: 39), who characterized it (originally for Lithuanian) as “eine Akzentverschiebung bei den Worten mit gestossenem Vokal in der Stammsilbe...” ‘a stress shift in words with a broken (glottalic) vowel in the stem syllable’. This statement, known as Hirt’s Law, was revised in connection with laryngeal theory by V. M. Iljič-Svitčy (1963: 78–81); in Derksen’s updated formulation (2004: 84), “stress was retracted to an immediately preceding syllable containing a vocalic element
followed by a laryngeal.” Note that this formulation excludes the sequence *-VRH-: CS *golva ‘head’ and Lith. galvà preserve the final stress of *golHàH.

Baltic and Slavic also show agreement in accentual paradigms, the identity of which was established for nouns by Illič-Svityč (1963), who derived the tripartite system established by Stang (1957) for Slavic from its simpler Baltic counterpart (fixed-stress and mobile-stress paradigms). Illič-Svityč showed that Slavic accent paradigms (a) and (b) are in fact in complementary distribution and can be reduced to a single non-mobile paradigm, comparable to Baltic fixed stress. According to Illič-Svityč, stress is retained on an acute syllable (a.p. a), but advances from a non-acute (short or Balto-Slavic circumflex) syllable onto an immediately following syllable, resulting in a.p. b. Thus, while the root stress of the acute base Lith. āðmai ‘smoke’ corresponds to that of Scr. dim (a.p. a), the root stress of the short base Lith. blûsq ‘flea, acc. sg.’, is matched by end stress in Russ. ãsvojax (a.p. b). Aside from the Slavic metatony associated with Meillet’s Law, Baltic and Slavic mobile bases retain their correspondence: Lith. galvà ~ gálvq ‘head, nom. sg. ~ acc. sg.’ (mobile a.p.): Russ. golovà ~ zótoxe ‘head, nom. sg. ~ acc. sg.’ (a.p. c).

The Baltic bipartite paradigmatic accentual system (fixed and mobile) thus represents an earlier state from which the Slavic system can be derived. The assignment of a particular word to either the fixed or mobile class is, in Balto-Slavic terms, unmotivated. According to Vladimir Dybo (especially 1980: 147–150), the two accent classes result from a phonologization of earlier sequences of morphemes of either “dominant” or “recessive” valencies, making up a word form or phonetic word, with a “contour rule” according to which word stress falls on the first morpheme of dominant valency. If a word form (or phonetic word) consists only of recessive morphemes, the initial morpheme is automatically stressed. The valencies in this approach are seen as continuing a tonal opposition (high and low tone) inherited from Indo-European.

The derivation of the Slavic accentual model from an earlier Baltic model, noted above, suggests a lack of equivalence between the notions of Baltic and Slavic. Developing a point originally made by Endzelin (1911: 201–202), Stang (1966: 10ff.) notes that while Common Slavic presents a relatively monolithic system, Baltic is divided by a number of significant isoglosses, complicating the notion of Proto-Baltic. Certain of these isoglosses connect East Baltic (Lithuanian and Latvian) with a uniform Slavic, while others connect West Baltic (Old Prussian) with Slavic. The former include the Indo-European genitive singular *ς(y)xo of o-stem nouns, apparently preserved in Old Prussian (deivas ‘God, gen. sg.’, and the pronominal stesse ‘that, gen. sg.’; cf. Slavic česo ‘what, gen. sg.’), but replaced in East Baltic and in Slavic by a form that has ablautic function outside of Balto-Slavic: Lith. râgo ‘horn, gen. sg.’, Latv. raga = OCS roga (East Baltic has extended this to the pronominal system as well: Lith. – kò ‘who, what, gen. sg.’, tō ‘that, gen. sg.’); a present passive participle in -m- shared by East Baltic and Slavic (Lith. vêdams ‘being led’, Latv. vêdams: OCS vedomû), while Old Prussian continues an inherited -manas (in the hapax poklausimanas ‘being heard’); East Baltic and Slavic pronouns have -m- in the dative and locative singular, while Old Prussian continues inherited -sm- (Lith. tâm(u) ‘that, dat. sg.’, Slav. tomu; OPruss. stesmu); Lith. devyñ ‘nine’, Latv. deviņ, Slav. devêò, with an innovative ð-; while OPruss. newûnts ‘ninth’ preserves inherited n-. Finally, the word for ‘third’ reflects a stem *tret- in Lith. trèçias, Latv. treûs, OCS tretûs, while OPruss. ùrûs agrees with Skr. tṛ́tāyàh.

Isoglosses that link Old Prussian with Slavic include the possessive pronouns OPruss. mais, twais, swais ‘my, your, one’s own’, which agree with OCS mojì, tvojì, svojì, as opposed to Lith. (manas), tavas, savas and Latvian (mans), tavs, savs; the dative singular of the second person and reflexive pronouns preserves *-b- in Old Prussian (tebbei, sebbei) and Slavic (tebè, sebè) (Stang 1966: 248; Lithuanian and Latvian have rebuilt these forms: Lith. tâu, sâu, Latv. tev, sev); the Old Prussian preterit of ‘to be’, bêi, be agrees with Slav. bêxt, bê, as opposed to the preterit stem *bi- found in Latv. dial. biju ‘(I) was’
and OLith. bit(i); and the nasal-infixed Old Prussian participial forms sindats and syndens ‘sitting’ (Catechisms I and II) can be compared with the infixed CS *sęd- ‘sit’.

These isoglosses suggest a greater time depth for Common Baltic, “if indeed such a unified protolanguage ever was a reality” (Birnbaum 1970: 70–71). The resulting lack of equivalence between the notions of Baltic and Slavic (and the associated limitations of the family-tree model) is particularly emphasized by V. V. Ivanov and V. N. Toporov (1961). In reviewing the methodological preconditions for discussing the Balto-Slavic relationship, they argue that a relatively homogeneous Proto-Slavic can be derived from a considerably more archaic and heterogeneous Proto-Baltic linguistic model, in effect redefining the notion of Balto-Slavic by treating Slavic as a local development within a Baltic dialectal continuum.

Among more distant post-Indo-European linguistic affinities proposed for Balto-Slavic, correspondences with Germanic have been noted since Schleicher’s time (recall his “slawo-deutsch”). These include the marking of middle-intransitive voice through nasal infixation (a process that enjoyed particular productivity in Baltic) or nasal suffixation; the spread of the adjectival suffix *-isko- in a common function: Goth. -isk-, OCS -ьскъ, Lith. -iškas (Stang 1942: 275–278); and case forms in -m- that correspond to *-bʰ- elsewhere (for example, OLith. dat. pl. -mus (modern -ms), OCS -мъ, Goth. -м, as opposed to Skr. -bhyāḥ, Lat. -bus; Meillet 1967: 148–152). Also characteristic are exclusive lexical agreements (Stang 1972: 79–82) across a number of semantic fields, including social relations: Lith. dra̱g̱as ‘friend’, Latv. drāugs, OCS drugъ, Goth. drygan ‘to perform military service’; Lith. liūdys ‘people, nation’, OCS ljudje ‘people’, OHG liut; Lith. valdýti ‘to govern, rule’ (3 pres. valdó), OCS vláděti ‘rule’, Goth. waldan || technical culture (simple tools, materials, handicrafts, objects of daily life): Lith. aldijā ‘dugout canoe’, OCS aldii, ladii ‘boat’, Norw. dial. olda ‘large trough, often from a carved-out tree trunk’; OPruss. dalptan ‘punch (tool)’, RussCS diato ‘chisel’, Russ. дольным ‘to chisel’, OEng. delfan ‘to dig, delve’; Lith. strėlė, strėla ‘arrow, shaft’, Latv. strēļa ‘stripe, streak; jib, crane’, OCS strēla ‘arrow’, OHG strāla, OEng. strēl ‘arrow’ || products: Lith. vāškas ‘wax’, OCS voskъ, OEng. weax; Lith. alūs ‘beer’, ORuss., RussCS oḥb ‘an intoxicating drink’, Sln. ǭl ‘beer’, ONor. ǭl ‘beer’ || agricultural terms: Lith. rugiaĩ ‘rye’, OCS rъžь, ONor. rugr (i-stem) || certain adjectives: Lith. sūr ‘salty’, OCS syrъ ‘damp, moist’, ONor. sūrъ ‘sour’; Lith. tingis ‘lazy, sluggish’, OCS težkъ ‘heavy, difficult’, ONor. þungr ‘heavy’ || numbers: OPruss. tāsimtons ‘thousand’, Lith. tākstantis, OCS tysęšti, tys overtime, Goth. þusundi (which do not fully agree in formation). Stang (1942: 278) suggests that these equivalences reflect a common preservation of inherited (perhaps northwest Indo-European) features, or represent convergent developments, and thus belong rather to the realm of Sprachbund phenomena.

FURTHER READING
Henrik Birnbaum (1970) offers a balanced summary of various approaches to Balto-Slavic. Daniel Petit (2004) presents a historically oriented account of the Balto-Slavic question, from the Renaissance to the present day; he includes the findings of archaeology and provides an extensive list of references. Accentological issues are addressed by Rick Derksen (2004) in the same volume; an up-to-date overview of Balto-Slavic accentology can be found in the introduction to Derksen 2015. For a detailed presentation and evaluation of the data relating to Balto-Slavic, the careful and cautious studies of Christian S. Stang found in the references have not lost their relevance.

NOTES
1 Baudouin de Courtenay (1903: 330–331) had earlier rejected a Balto-Slavic unity, calling it a “scholarly fiction” (учёная фикция), but without providing argumentation.
There are disagreements regarding the -uR- reflex of syllabic sonorants after labiovelars as a regular phonological change; see the discussion in Stang 1966 (77–82). Still, the fact of specific Baltic and Slavic agreements in the roots for ‘chase, drive’ and ‘drink, swallow’ is revealing. The -i- (rather than -u-) of Lith. giertas ‘drunk’, and the infinitives Lith. gištį ‘to drive (cattle)’, Latv. dzīt, is due to an extension of the productive ablaut pattern.

Derksen (2010) notes that this change was not shared by Old Prussian. But this argument depends on one’s interpretation of the orthographic evidence of the Old Prussian texts; see, for example, Schmalstieg 1976: 120.

Baltic characteristically preserves the original verbal root here, lacking in Slavic: Lith. riňkį ‘gather’ (3 pres. reňkà), OPruss. senrīnka.

The role of accentology in the Balto-Slavic question was anticipated by Endzelin as early as 1911 (202): “дальнѣйшая разработка ударенiя . . . , вѣроятно, еще болѣе освѣтитъ этотъ вопросъ” (further developments in stress . . . will undoubtedly shed more light on the issue).

There are a number of interpretations of Winter’s Law and its conditions of operation; for a review and critique of the literature, see Derksen 2002. Kortlandt (1988: 387) amends “lengthened vowels” in Winter’s original statement to “acute vowels,” since he rejects a connection between (non-laryngeal) length and acute tone. In Kortlandt’s view, Winter’s Law represents “the merger of the glottal element of the preglottalized voiced stop with the reflex of the Indo-European laryngeals, which had become a glottal stop in Balto-Slavic” (Derksen 2004: 83).

This progressive stress shift was demonstrated for Slavic verbs at approximately the same time by V. A. Dybo (1962), and is therefore referred to as either the Law of Illič-Svityč or Dybo’s Law.

Accentual paradigm (a.p.) a is characterized by columnar barytonic stress; a.p. b by columnar oxytonic stress; and a.p. c by final-initial mobile stress, which is compared with the oxytona of Greek and Vedic in thematic stems.

REFERENCES


Brugmann, Karl 1904, Kurze vergleichende Grammatik der indogermanischen Sprachen, Karl J. Trübner, Strassburg


Derksen, Rick 2015, Etymological Dictionary of the Baltic Inherited Lexicon, Brill, Leiden-Boston


Endzelin, Jan 1911, Slavjano-baltijskie etudy, M. Zil’berberg, Khar’kov
Meillet, Antoine 1967, The Indo-European Dialects, translated by Samuel N. Rosenberg, University of Alabama Press, University, Alabama
Smoczyński, Wojciech 2001, Język litewski w perspektywie porównawczej, Wydawnictwo Uniwersytetu Jagiellońskiego, Kraków
Stang, Christian S. 1942, Das Slavische und Baltische Verbum, Skrifter utgitt av Det Norske Videnskaps-Akademi i Oslo. II. Hist.-Filos. Klasse, no. 1, J. Dybwad, Oslo
Stang, Christian S. 1957, Slavonic Accentuation, W. Nygaard, Oslo
Stang, Christian S. 1966, Vergleichende Grammatik der Baltischen Sprachen, Universitetsforlaget, Oslo
Stang, Christian S. 1972, Lexikalische Sonderubereinstimmungen zwischen dem Slavischen, Baltischen und Germanischen, Skrifter utgitt av det Norske Videnskaps-Akademii i Oslo, II. Hist.-filos. klasse, n. s., no. 11, Universitetsforlaget, Oslo
Trautmann, Reinhold 1923, Baltisch-Slavisches Wörterbuch, Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, Göttingen
Vaillant, André 1950, Grammaire comparée des langues slaves, vol. 1, Phonétique, IAC, Lyon
INTRODUCTION

The Baltic language family is represented by Lithuanian and Latvian; a third major Baltic language, Old Prussian, became extinct by the beginning of the eighteenth century. Lithuanian and Latvian are traditionally grouped together as East Baltic, in contrast to Old Prussian (West Baltic); from a historical perspective, Lithuanian and Latvian may be viewed as representing core dialects within a Baltic (or Balto-Slavic) dialectal continuum, with Old Prussian as peripheral (Toporov 2006: 20–21). The original Baltic-speaking territory was once much larger, extending eastward into the upper Dniepr river basin and beyond.¹ These Baltic populations, among them the Goljadь (Balt. *Galindь) of the eleventh- and twelfth-century Russian chronicles, were eventually assimilated by the eastern Slavs, a process continuing into modern times as former Lithuanian-speaking communities in what is now Belarus have become Slavicized. The paucity of surviving Baltic languages is somewhat compensated by the rich dialectal diversity within these languages; a number of dialectal features are undoubtedly due to the substratum influence of now-extinct Baltic languages—Curonian, Zemgalian, Jatvingian, and Selonian—about which little is known linguistically. An additional source of Baltic linguistic data are the many early (Bronze Age) Baltic borrowings into Baltic Finnic (see especially Kallio 2008) and Volga Finnic.

No common ethnonym for the ancestral Balts survives in the Baltic languages. The terms “Balt” and “Baltic” are secondary, after the name of the Baltic Sea (mare Balticum first appears in the eleventh century). The use of Baltic for the language family was first proposed in 1845 by Königsberg professor Georg H. F. Nesselmann in the introduction to his Die Sprache der alten Preussen (p. xxix). The lack of a common ethnographic designation is suggestive of the greater time depth and diffuse nature of the Baltic languages in comparison with the closely related (and more monolithic) Slavic language family; the reality of a Baltic protolanguage has even been questioned (Birnbaum 1970: 70–71). Lexical differences among the Baltic languages, and even between East Baltic Lithuanian and Latvian, can be quite striking. For example, Latvian and Lithuanian (together with Old Prussian) preserve different Indo-European words for ‘son’: Lith. sūnus, OPruss. soūns (cf. OCS synъ, Olnd. sūnūḥ), but Latv. dēls, related to Lat. filius; Lith. kraūjas ‘blood’, OPruss. krauyo, krawia (cf. OCS krъvь), but Latv. asins, an Indo-European r/n heteroclite cognate with Olnd. ūsk, gen. sg. asnāḥ; Lith. kārvė ‘cow’ (cf. Russ. koróva), OPruss. curwis ‘ox’, but Latv. gūovs ‘cow’, continuing PIE *gʷehus.

Nevertheless, the notion of Common Baltic is justified by a number of characteristic innovations among the Baltic languages. These include a refashioned verb system, with the loss of a number distinction in the third person and the generalization of an -a (PIE *-o) theme vowel in the present tense; a widespread nominal stem type in -ē; a number of common diminutive formations; an -st- formant in the present tense marking middle/intransitive meaning; and many characteristic lexical items, among them Lith. lābas
Early texts and the emergence of standard languages

The oldest known text in a Baltic language is the Basel Epigram, two rhymed lines in Old Prussian from the mid-fourteenth century (see McCluskey, Schmalstieg, & Zeps 1975). The oldest more substantial text is the Elbing Vocabulary, a German–Old Prussian word list of 802 thematically arranged nouns and adjectives, making up the final seventeen pages of the Codex Neumannianus, which dates from about 1400 and is itself a copy of an original from the early fourteenth century (Schmalstieg 1976: 68). Another, rather inferior list of some one hundred German items with Old Prussian equivalents is found in Simon Grunau’s early sixteenth-century Preussische Chronik. A sense of the morphology
ORTHOGRAPHICAL NOTES

of Old Prussian is revealed in three sixteenth-century translations of Lutheran catechisms from German into Old Prussian; all suffer from a rather slavish translation from the German, and therefore shed little light on Old Prussian syntax. The first two, published in 1545 (the second is a “corrected” version of the first), each consist of sixteen pages, only about a third of which is actual Old Prussian text. The third catechism, published in 1561, includes German and Old Prussian versions of Martin Luther’s Enchiridion, or small catechism. The Old Prussian text makes up about 54 pages of the 134-page publication (Kabelka 1982: 54). The third catechism is our only source of Old Prussian word stress (and syllable tone).

The earliest monuments of Latvian and Lithuanian date only from the sixteenth century, when these languages already have a modern appearance. The earliest-known Lithuanian text is a handwritten set of prayers dating from the early 1500s. Book publication in Lithuanian began in East Prussia (which had a substantial Lithuanian population at the time), in connection with the spread of the Reformation. The first book published in Lithuanian is a 1547 translation of a Lutheran catechism by Martynas Mažvydas (Martinus Masvidius). The foreword begins with a personal appeal to the reader: “Bralei seseris imkiet mani ir skaitikiet” ‘Brothers, sisters, take me and read’. The language reflects Mažvydas’s native South Žemaitic dialect, with Aukštaitic elements. Subsequent East Prussian Lithuanian publications are written in an increasingly normalized variety of the local West Aukštaitic dialect, codified in Daniel Klein’s 1653 Grammatica Litvanica, the first grammar of Lithuanian. In the Catholic Grand Duchy of Lithuania, two writing traditions emerged, one based on the East Aukštaitic dialect of Vilnius, and the other representing the Central Aukštaitic dialect of the Kėdainiai region. The latter is reflected in Mykalojus Daukša’s 1595 translation of Jacobus Ledisma’s popular Catholic catechism, and his lengthy 1599 translation from the Polish of Jakub Wujek’s collection of sermons, the Postilla Catholicka. Daukša’s works are the first accented texts in Lithuanian, making them a valuable source for the study of Lithuanian historical prosody. The present-day standard language has its roots in the late nineteenth century and is based on the dialect of the southern West Aukštaitic region. Among the factors in the establishment of this variety as the national standard are the prior literary tradition of the virtually identical Aukštaitic dialect of neighboring East Prussia and the authority of the Lithuanian grammars of the Indo-Europeanist August Schleicher and Friedrich Kurschat, which described the same East Prussian Lithuanian speech.

The beginnings of a Latvian literary tradition also date from the Reformation. The first book published in Latvian is a 1585 translation of a Catholic catechism; this was soon followed by other religious texts, chiefly translations. The language of these early texts is to varying degrees influenced by the German speech of the authors, especially in syntax. Efforts to establish a national standard language were begun in the mid-nineteenth century; the Latvian traditional folksongs (daĩņas), which preserve a number of archaic features, served as an important source for norms. A milestone in the codification and description of modern Latvian was the appearance in 1922 of Jan Endzelin’s Lettische Grammatik and the four-volume Latviešu 谡olas v ārdn īca (Dictionary of Latvian) (1923–32), begun by Karl Mühlenbach (Kārlis Mīlenbahs) and completed and edited by Jan Endzelin.

East Baltic dialects

There are two major dialects of Lithuanian, the more conservative (at least in its southwestern subtype) Aukštaitic (aukštaĩčių tarmė), and Žemaicīt (žemaĩčių tarmė; Samogitian), spoken in the northwestern quarter of Lithuania. Žemaicīt presents a number of
structural and lexical similarities with Latvian, which may reflect the substratum influence of Curonian, an extinct Baltic language that was absorbed in the north by Latvian and in the south by Lithuanian.

The Latvian standard language is based on the central Latvian dialect (vidus dialekts), which is further divided (from west to east) into Curonian, Zemgalian, and Vidzeme varieties. The central dialect, together with Tamian in northwestern Curonia and along the northeastern coast of the Gulf of Riga, is known as Low Latvian. High Latvian (Selsonian and Latgalian, the latter with an independent literary tradition; see Nau 2011), is found in the eastern third of the country. Latvian is traditionally viewed as representing a synthesis of the language of the early Latgalians (Letthigalli, Lētьgola, Løtygola of medieval chronicles), also known simply as Letts (Letthi, Letti), and neighboring closely related Baltic languages, now extinct, among them Zemgalian (along the Lielupe river), Curonian (in southwestern Latvia; a subtype of this dialect was spoken until the mid-twentieth century by the kursenieki of the Curonian Spit), and Selonian (along the middle Daugava river, extending into Lithuania).

**PHONOLOGY**

**Baltic vowels**

The vowel system of Common Baltic

The vowels of the Baltic languages can be derived from a Common Baltic system that, except for the merger of short *a and *o (shared by Germanic, Slavic, and Albanian) as *a (or perhaps *ɔ), reflects the vowels traditionally established for late Proto-Indo-European (for an alternative view, see the Kortlandt 1977 and 1985):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>*i, *ī</th>
<th>*u, *ū</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*e, *ē</td>
<td>*ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a, *ā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The long vowels of Common Baltic ultimately reflect sequences of vowel plus laryngeal, the effects of Winter’s Law (see below), and also (in the case of *ē and *ō) lengthened grade. In addition, we can establish a set of Common Baltic diphthongs consisting of *e, *a and a high vowel *i, *u (with a Balto-Slavic change of *eu > *jau, see p. 480), and a set of so-called mixed diphthongs, consisting of a vowel plus sonorant (*r, *l, *m, *n). The high-vowel mixed diphthongs continue Proto-Indo-European syllabic sonorants (see p. 479f.). The long vowels and diphthongs of Common Baltic were further distinguished (as they are in Common Slavic) by a prosodic opposition conventionally referred to as acute and circumflex; these structure points were subsequently realized, for the most part, as rising and falling contour tones in the daughter languages.

The Common Baltic vowel system is fairly well reflected in the Old Prussian of the Elbing Vocabulary (EV); a notable change is the raising and rounding of the low back vowels *a (mainly after labials and velars) to *ɔ (spelled <o>) and *ā to *ɔ̄ (spelled <o> or <oa>; Mažiulis 2004: 17). The Old Prussian catechisms, especially the third, reflect a number of innovations in the long vowels (to the extent that one can trust the orthography, which, after all, is the representation of a non-native speaker): the raising and rounding of
*ā (and some instances of *ō) to *ū after velars and labials (māti ‘mother’ < *mātē : EV mothe; mergu ‘girl’ : EV mergeo, Lith. merga), the raising of *ē to *ī (įst ‘to eat’ : Lith. ėsti, Latv. ėst < *ēd-; Mažiulis 2004: 16) and the (inconsistent) diphthongization of acute high vowels: geīwan ‘life, acc. sg.’, alongside gīwan, gijwan; boūton, baūton ‘to be’ alongside būton. Distinctive length was lost in unstressed syllables (Mažiulis 2004: 14).

The vowel system of East Baltic

The somewhat skewed vowel system of Common Baltic, in which *ō (with a close articulation: *ō̇) lacks a short counterpart, emerges as a more balanced system in East Baltic. Here, the apparently quite open inherited pair *e, *ē was reinterpreted as the front counterpart of *a, *ā; the resulting gap in the system was filled by a new long front mid-vowel with a close articulation, *ē (parallel to *ō̇), which developed under uncertain conditions from the diphthongs -e̯i- and -a̯i-, preserved in Old Prussian (for a detailed discussion, see Karaliūnas 1987: 152–179); compare Lith. snięgas ‘snow’, Latv. sniegs and OPruss. snaygis; Lith. diēvas ‘God’, Latv. dievs and OPruss. deivas, as well as the Baltic Finnic borrowings Finn. taivas ‘sky, heaven’, Est. taevas; Finn. heinā ‘hay’ < CBalt. *šēna-, Lith. šienas. The new *ē, together with its back counterpart *ō, gave rise to the East Baltic “gliding” diphthongs, ie, uo (approximately [ɪə], [ʊə]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.2 THE VOWEL SYSTEM OF EAST BALTIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*i, *ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ē (&gt; ie)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e, *ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*u, *ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ō (&gt; uo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*a, *ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This realignment of the East Baltic system of long vowels was reflected in ablaut alternations, which were still productive at this period. Rather than the inherited alternation of an ē-grade opposing ō-grade, the productive pattern now becomes ē ~ ā, parallel to the e ~ a that continues Indo-European e ~ a; cf. Lith. sodinti ‘to plant’ (*sād-), the causative to *sēd- ‘to sit’. Lith. sūodys ‘soot’, Latv. suōdrēji, with old ō-grade *sōd- to *sēd- ‘to sit’, and Lith. ūodas ‘gnat, mosquito’, Latv. ūōds, with old ō-grade *ōd- to *ēd- ‘to eat’, are isolated relic forms.

The vowel system of Lithuanian

The above vowel system underlies later individual developments in Lithuanian and Latvian and their dialects. In both Lithuanian and Latvian, the high vowels and the short vowels have remained fairly faithful to the Common East Baltic system. Characteristic of the development of the Lithuanian vowel system was the repeated raising of long low vowels, with new low vowels emerging to take their place. The inherited long low *ē and *ā acquired a more close articulation and rose to fill the mid-vowel gaps created by the diphthongization of earlier *ē and *ō: ėjo ‘went’ < *ējā (the new, close mid-vowel ē is spelled <ė>). The vacated slots were in turn filled by new long low vowels (the e, ē are quite open and can be represented as e, æ), resulting from the denasalization of nasalized vowels; the latter arose from sequences of a short vowel plus tautosyllabic n before a continuant or in final position. Since this development post-dates the appearance of printed texts, the orthography reflects nasализation, denoted by a hook under the corresponding vowel character: žāsįs [-ɑː]- ‘goose’, tēstį [-æː]- ‘to continue’, sūstį [-ʊː]- ‘to send’, ĭ
[ˈiː]- ‘into’. The functional load of the new ė and its ĭ counterpart was augmented by the results of a lengthening under stress (with concomitant circumflex tone) of most non-final short *ē and *a; vowel length here is not indicated orthographically: ledas [*lẽːdas] ‘ice’, vakaras [*vāːkaras] ‘evening’ (compare Latv. lexportus, vakars, which preserve short ē and a). There are exceptions to this general lengthening: infinitive roots (and derived forms) with a short low vowel remain short: vēsti ‘to lead’, rāsti ‘to find’, vēsk! ‘lead!’, rāsk! ‘find!’, vēsiu ‘(I) will lead’, rāsi ‘(you) will find’, as do the possessive pronouns māno ‘my’, tāvo ‘your’, sāvo ‘his/her/its/one’s’, leading to the possibility of minimal pairs such as māno ‘thinks’: māno ‘my’.

After palatalized consonants and j, -a- and -ā- merge with -e-, -ē-, respectively: giliās ‘deep, acc. pl. f.’, and gilēs ‘acorn, acc. pl.’, are homophonous: [gʲɪˈlʲæːs], as are gilē ‘acorn, acc. sg.’, and giliq ‘deep, acc. sg. f.’: [gʲɪlʲæː] (Girdenis 2003: 194).

The above changes result in the following vowel system for the Lithuanian standard language, represented in a broad phonetic transcription (corresponding graphemes are given in brackets):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.3 THE VOWEL SYSTEM OF LITHUANIAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i &lt;ɨ&gt;, i: &lt;j; ɨ&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e: &lt;ē&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e &lt;e, ia&gt;, æ: &lt;e, ia (under stress); ɨ, iː&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o &lt;ʊ&gt;, u: &lt;u, y&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q: &lt;o&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u &lt;a, a (under stress); q&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This system has been rounded out by new short mid-vowel counterparts of ē and ō, but these (in particular ē) may be considered marginal phonemes, characteristic of borrowed words.

This inventory of Lithuanian vowels is supplemented by the “gliding” (sutaptinai) diphthongs ie and uo (iə, oə), which arose from East Baltic *ě̄ (< *ei) and *ȫ (< *ō) and function as long monophthongs, and by the pure diphthongs au, ai, ei, ui, and the mixed diphthongs, composed of a short vowel plus tautosyllabic sonorant: i, u, e, a + r, l, m, n.

The vowel system of Latvian

The Latvian vowel system generally reflects that of Common East Baltic, apart from a split in the quality of the low front vowels, originally conditioned by the nature of a following vowel: e, ē acquired a more close articulation before front vowels and palatal consonants; otherwise, they retained a more open articulation. Subsequent phonological and morphological processes rendered this split phonemic: nesu [ˈnæsu] ‘(I) carry’: nesu [ˈnɛsu] ‘(I) carried’. The distinction between open and close e, ē is not reflected in Latvian orthography, although in linguistic texts the open e, ē is often denoted by ē, ė: the above “nesu” would thus be disambiguated as nesu [ˈnæsu] : nesu [ˈnɛsu]. Long vowels are denoted in standard orthography with a macron. In linguistic works that include information on tone, the macron is replaced by one of the diacritics for tone; thus, the standard spelling rīt is a homograph for rĩt ‘to swallow’ and rît ‘tomorrow’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.4 THE VOWEL SYSTEM OF LATVIAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i, i:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e, ɛ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ, æ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u, u:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a, ɑː</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The functional load of the long high vowels ĭ and ĭū and the gliding diphthongs ie, uo (*ē < *ei̯, *aj̯; *ọ̄) has been augmented by the results of a denasalization of the tautosyllabic sequences *in, *un; *en, *an, respectively: mit ‘to tread’ : Lith. mënti; jûtu ‘(I) feel’ : Lith. junûtì; pieci ‘five’ : Lith. penkì; rûoka ‘hand, arm’ : Lith. rankà. Occasional exceptions to this process are generally assumed to reflect substratum borrowings from the now-extinct Curonian, which did not undergo the change: meńca ‘cod’, dzëíntars (alongside dzëityars) ‘amber’, rûnda ‘row, line’.

The inventory of Latvian syllabics includes the pure diphthongs, among them ei, ai, au; the gliding diphthongs ie and uo, which function (as they do in Lithuanian) as long monophthongs (uo is spelled <o> in standard orthography but retained in linguistics texts, especially when syllable tones are marked), a practice adopted in this chapter: rûoka ‘hand, arm’, otherwise spelled roka); and the mixed diphthongs, composed of a short vowel plus tautosyllabic sonorant, although most instances involving tautosyllabic -n- will have become high vowels or gliding diphthongs (see above).

Characteristic of Latvian is the tendency to shorten final syllables in disyllabic and polysyllabic words. Word-finally, all short vowels, with the exception of -u-, disappear: vilks ‘wolf’ : Lith. vílkas; ass ‘axle’ : Lith. ašis; met ‘throws’ : Lith. mëta; but (with -u-) mëdus ‘honey’ : Lith. mëdus. Long vowels and diphthongs are shortened, with ai, ei, ie reduced to i, and au, uo to u: rûokas ‘hands, arms’ : Lith. rañkos (*-ās); lûcis ‘bear’ : Lith. lokûs (*-ûs); saki ‘(you) say’ : Lith. sakaiû; saku ‘(I) say’ : Lith. sakaû; mëdus ‘honey, gen. sg.’ (thus homonymous with nom. sg. mëdus) : Lith. mëdaûs. Long vowels and diphthongs are preserved in monosyllabic forms: tû ‘that, gen. sg. m.’ : Lith. tô, tûi ‘that, dat. sg. f.’ : Lith. taû; tûi ‘that, nom. sg. m.’ : Lith. tûē.

Prothetic structure

The prosodic evidence of the Baltic languages (together with that of Slavic) provides crucial information for reconstructing aspects of the phonological and accentual systems of Proto-Indo-European. In Common Baltic, as noted above, all long syllabics (long vowels or diphthongs, including sequences of vowel plus tautosyllabic sonorant) were characterized by a prosodic opposition of acute and circumflex, which have varied reflexes in the daughter languages.

Tonal oppositions in Lithuanian

In standard Lithuanian, acute and circumflex are distinguished on stressed long vowels and diphthongs. Acute is realized as a falling tonal contour (in a mora analysis, the first mora is stressed), while circumflex is level or slightly rising (stress on the second mora of a long syllable). The tonal opposition is perceptually clearest on pure diphthongs: (acute) šáuk! ‘shoot!’ : (circumflex) šaûk! ‘shout!’ The tones are indicated in reference works by diacritics: acute by ´ (placed over the first element of a diphthong) and circumflex by ˜ (placed over the second element of a diphthong). Short stressed vowels, which do not distinguish tone, are marked in reference works with a grave accent (´); the grave is also used (in place of an acute diacritic) over a high vowel in an acute mixed diphthong: -ir-, -iû-.

The tonal contours of the standard language may be viewed as representing a point in a continuum of dialectal tonal variation. In most of Žemaitija, particularly the northwest, acute is a broken tone (laûûtìnë priegaidë [‘]), a rising-falling contour interrupted at its
peak by a glottal stop; in eastern Žemaitija and neighboring western Aukštaitic areas it weakens to the so-called Stosston (stumtinė priegaidė), which has a sudden rise followed by a falling contour. Further east, the acute loses its characteristic “Stoss” to become a simple falling tone. This is the variant of acute that has entered the linguistic literature (through the work of Friedrich Kurschat, who was the first to provide a description of the Lithuanian tones, based on his own East Prussian Lithuanian dialect) and is considered normative. Circumflex has a weak rising-falling contour in Žemaitija and western Aukščiai, which, in moving east, “flattens out” on long monophthongs to simple length (protracted tone, tėstìnė priegaidė).

Unlike the Žemaitic dialects, where the peak of intensity for both acute and circumflex diphthongs occurs in the initial part of a syllable, Aukštaitic acute has its peak of intensity on the first element of a diphthong (which, if a low vowel, is lengthened: kėlti ‘to raise’ [ˈkʲǽˑlʲtʲi]), while the circumflex reaches its peak on the second element of a diphthong, resulting in contour tones that are more stress- (or mora-) based than pitch-based; this is reflected in the Lithuanian terms for the tones: tvirtaprãdė (príegaidė) “strong-initial (tone)” for acute and tvirtagãlė (príegaidė) “strong-final (tone)” for circumflex.

Saussure’s Law and Leskien’s Law

While the acute and circumflex tonal opposition in modern Lithuanian is distinguished only on stressed syllables, tones (or their prosodic antecedents) must once have characterized all long syllables, stressed and unstressed. This is shown by an earlier advancement of the ictus from a short or circumflex syllable to an adjacent acute syllable that had previously been unstressed: (nominal inflection) acc. sg. rańką ‘hand, arm’, but nom. sg. rankà (*-â); (nominal derivation) kiaulė ‘pig’ + -ien-a ‘meat of x’ > kiauliena ‘pork’; (verbal inflection) lõšia ‘plays’ : lošiù (*-úo) ‘(I) play’; (verbal derivation) laĩko ‘holds, keeps’ + -ý-ti (verb class marker, infinitive suffix) > laikýti ‘to hold, keep’. This progressive shift in ictus onto a following acute syllable was first recognized and described by Ferdinand de Saussure (Saussure 1896: 157) and is therefore known as Saussure’s Law.4 In final syllables, the results of the operation of Saussure’s Law were obscured by a late post-dialectal process known as Leskien’s Law, according to which (for disyllabic and polysyllabic words) word-final acute syllables (including ie and uo) were shortened, forfeiting tone: *rankà > rankâ. The gliding diphthongs ie and uo were replaced by i and u; compare the long-form (definite) adjectives nom. pl. m. gerieji ‘good’, instr. sg. m. gerioju, with the short forms geri, gerù, which show the effects of Leskien’s Law. Diphthongs did not shorten but underwent metatony (change of tone) from acute to circumflex: *matâu > mataũ ‘(I) see’ *matâi > mataĩ ‘(you) see’. The third-person future forms are exceptional in that non-high long monophthongs in both monosyllabic and polysyllabic words retain length, with circumflex metatony: duôs ‘give, 3 sg. fut.’ : inf. dûoti; dễs ‘put, 3 sg. fut.’ : inf. dễtį; žinôs ‘know, 3 sg. fut.’ : inf. žinotį. Monosyllabic third-person future forms with acute high vowels were shortened: bûs ‘be, 3 sg. fut.’ : inf. bû̃tį; lìs ‘rain, 3 sg. fut.’ : inf. lý̃tį.

As a result of Saussure’s Law, the fixed and mobile nominal accent paradigms inherited from Common Baltic each underwent a split into two paradigms, resulting in the four accent paradigms of modern Lithuanian: a.p. 1: fixed stress (non-stem-final ictus, or stem-final acute), a.p. 2: fixed stress with an overlay of Saussure’s Law (stem-final short or circumflex), a.p. 3: mobile stress (non-stem-final ictus, or stem-final acute), and a.p. 4: mobile stress plus an overlay of Saussure’s Law (stem-final short or circumflex).
### Table 11.5 Lithuanian Accent Paradigms for a-Stem Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a.p. 1</th>
<th>a.p. 2</th>
<th>a.p. 3</th>
<th>a.p. 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>výras ‘man’</td>
<td>piēstas ‘finger’</td>
<td>lāngas ‘window’</td>
<td>vīlkaš ‘wolf’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>výro</td>
<td>piēsto</td>
<td>lāngo</td>
<td>vīko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>výrui</td>
<td>piēstui</td>
<td>lāngui</td>
<td>vīlkai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>výr̃qa</td>
<td>piēsta</td>
<td>lāng̃q</td>
<td>vīk̃q</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>výr̃u</td>
<td>piēstu</td>
<td>lāngu</td>
<td>vīk̃u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>výr̃e</td>
<td>piēstē</td>
<td>lang̃e</td>
<td>vīk̃e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>výr̃e</td>
<td>piēstē</td>
<td>lang̃e</td>
<td>vīk̃e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>výrai</td>
<td>piēstai</td>
<td>langaĩ</td>
<td>vīlkaĩ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>výr̃y</td>
<td>piēstų</td>
<td>lāng̃ų</td>
<td>vīlk̃ų</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>výrams</td>
<td>piēstams</td>
<td>langāms</td>
<td>vīlkâms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>výr̃us</td>
<td>piēstūs</td>
<td>lāngus</td>
<td>vīkâs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>výraĩs</td>
<td>piēstai̇s</td>
<td>langaĩs</td>
<td>vīlkâĩs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>výruose</td>
<td>piēstuose</td>
<td>languošě</td>
<td>vīkluošě</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tonal oppositions in Latvian**

In Latvian, tonal oppositions are found on (long) initial syllables, since initial stress has been generalized under the influence of neighboring Baltic Finnic languages (Stang 1966: 46). As in Lithuanian practice, the tones are indicated with diacritics in linguistic reference works; otherwise, they are not represented. Three phonemic tones are distinguished in the prosodically more conservative dialect of central Vidzeme: sustained (or weakly rising) tone (stiepta intonācija, denoted by ˘, which in diphthongs is placed over the second element): māte ‘mother’ (Lith. mótė), saule ‘sun’ (Lith. sāulė), tilts ‘bridge’ (Lith. tīltas); broken tone (laūztā intonācija, denoted by ˆ, which in diphthongs is placed over the second element): rīts ‘morning’ (Lith. rūtas), galva ‘head’ (Lith. gālva, acc. sg.), būt ‘to be’ (Lith. būtī); and falling tone (kritošā intonācija, denoted by `, which is placed over the first element of a diphthong): rūoka ‘hand, arm’ (Lith. raūka, acc. sg.), draugus ‘friend’ (Lith. draugas), pirk ‘to buy’ (Lith. pirktī). Tonal minimal pairs (or triplets) include āust ‘to dawn’: aūst ‘to weave’; rūt ‘to swallow’: rūt ‘tomorrow’: tā ‘that, nom. sg. f.’: tā ‘that, gen. sg. m.’: tā ‘thus’; mīt ‘to tread’ (Lith. mūti), mīt ‘to change, exchange (arch., poetic)’, mīt (inf. mist) ‘lives, dwells’ (Lith. miūta ‘feeds on, nourishes oneself’).

Most Latvian dialect areas distinguish only two of these three tones. High Latvian has lost the distinction between falling and sustained tone in favor of falling; outside of High Latvian, broken and falling tone merge as either broken (in Kurzeme and Zemgale) or falling (Vidzeme), opposing sustained tone. The classic dictionary of Latvian, Mülenbachs-Endzelins (Mülenbachs 1923–32), uses a superscript 2 to indicate forms taken from dialect areas in which only two tones are distinguished.

**Endzelin’s Law**

It follows from the above comparisons that Latvian sustained and broken tone both correspond to Lithuanian falling tone. In what has since become known as Endzelin’s Law, Jan Endzelin (1899: 267–268; 1922: 22) demonstrated that Latvian sustained tone corresponds to Lithuanian falling tone in a fixed-stress paradigm (a.p. 1): Latv. brālis ‘brother’; Lith. brūlias; Latv. beŗs ‘birch’; Lith. bērzas, while Latvian broken tone corresponds to Lithuanian falling tone in a mobile paradigm (a.p. 3; that is, where there is an alternation between final and initial stress throughout the forms of a paradigm): Latv. dzīvs ‘alive’:...
Lith. gūvas, gvy̱n (nom. sg. m./f.); Latv. siṛds ‘heart’: Lith. širdis, širdi (nom./acc. sg.). The remaining Latvian tone, falling, corresponds to Lithuanian rising tone (circumflex) in both fixed (a.p. 2) and mobile (a.p. 4) paradigms: Latv. rūoka ‘hand, arm’: Lith. rankā, raņķa (nom. sg., acc. sg.; a.p. 2); Latv. žīvoss ‘goose’: Lith. žąsis, žą̃sį (nom. sg., acc. sg.; a.p. 4); Latv. draņgs ‘friend’: Lith. draugas (a.p. 4); Latv. dzimt ‘to be born’: Lith. gimtī.

A phonetic motivation for the twofold reflex of Baltic acute in Latvian was first proposed by Richard Ekblom (1933: 69), who connected the development of Latvian broken tone with stress retraction onto an initial syllable. If this syllable was acute (which he assumed to be rising tone), it underwent an abrupt rise in pitch under new stress, leading to a “break” (“Umbruch”) in the syllable, represented by glottal closure and release. But an association between retracted stress and broken tone presents a number of difficulties and contradictions, which are avoided if broken tone, rather than sustained (or rising) tone, is taken to be primary; see Young 1994.

As a result of the distribution associated with Endzelin’s Law, Latvian occasionally preserves more information about the original fixed or mobile accent paradigm of an acute base than Lithuanian does. For example, the evidence of Latvian is needed in order to establish the original accentual class of disyllabic adjectives, since Lithuanian has generalized the mobile accent paradigm here: Latv. balts ‘white’, ilgs ‘long’, pilns ‘full’ indicate original fixed stress, while Lith. báltas, -à; īlgs, -à; pilns, -à are secondarily mobile (a.p. 3). Latvian also continues an original fixed or mobile accent paradigm in infinitive forms, where Lithuanian provides no direct information: aûgt (Lith. áugti) ‘to grow’, bêgt (Lith. bėgti) ‘to run’, duôt (Lith. dúoti) ‘to give’ point to original mobile stems, while drãzt (Lith. dróžti) ‘to carve’, sõt (Lith. sēti) ‘to sow’, šaût (Lith. šautéi) ‘to shoot’ reflect original fixed stress.

Tonal oppositions in Old Prussian

The Old Prussian Enchiridion also points to a tonal distinction between acute and circumflex. Assuming the traditional view that the macron that appears on vowel graphemes indirectly reflects stress (the macron marks long vowels, which were preserved only under stress), the representation of diphthongs with either the first or second element marked by a macron would suggest a falling or rising tonal contour (Fortunatov 1880: 153ff.; for a discussion of tones and tonal marking in Old Prussian, see Derksen 1998). Old Prussian examples reflecting Baltic circumflex include ěit ‘goes’: Lith. ėiti ‘to go’; lāiku ‘(they) hold to, keep’: Lith. laikū; āusins ‘ear, acc. pl.’: Latv. āuss. Lith. aûṣį (acc. sg.). Among examples of Baltic acute are kaûlins ‘bone, acc. pl.’: Lith. kûlins (acc. pl.); pogaût ‘to receive, get’: Lith. pagûuti ‘to catch’; aûnan ‘one, acc. sg. f.’: Lith. viênų (acc. sg.). Moreover, acute (but not circumflex) ė and ū often diphthongize to ei, ou (au), allowing for placement of the macron on the second element of the diphthong (eī, oû): boût ‘to be’: Latv. bût, Lith. bûti; soûns ‘son’: Lith. sûny (acc. sg.); geûwans ‘alive, acc. sg.’: Lith. gûvas. In the Elbing Vocabulary, a number of forms containing a diphthong that have circumflex counterparts in East Baltic show apparent lengthening of the first element, suggesting falling tone for circumflex: doûgûs < *dûgûs < *dûgis ‘scythe’: Lith. dûgûs; moasis ‘bellows’ < *mâ(m)iûs < *mà(m)iûs: Lith. maûšas ‘bag’ (Mažiulis 2004: 14).

Interpretation of Baltic tonal correspondences

We arrive at the following sets of tonal correspondences for the Baltic languages (the diphthong au here represents all long syllabics): Latv. āu (falling tone) = OPru. āu
(falling tone) = Lith. aũ (rising tone) for Baltic circumflex; and Latv. aũ/aũ (rising or broken tone) = OPruss. aũ (rising tone) = Lith. āu (falling tone) for Baltic acute. These equations, supported by the evidence of Slavic (as traditionally presented), led to the assumption of a falling pitch contour for circumflex and a rising pitch contour for acute in Proto-Baltic (and Balto-Slavic). Lithuanian was assumed to have undergone an inversion of tonal contours (see p. 481).

This statement of tonal correspondences has served as a traditional point of departure in discussions of Balto-Slavic tonogenesis. But acoustic studies by Aleksas Girdenis and Antanas Pakerys have shown that the Lithuanian tones (on diphthongs) differ more in the nature of the first component of the diphthong than in a prosodic contrast between the first and second components (Girdenis 2003: 288). Listening experiments using reverse recordings have shown that speakers of both Žemaitic and West Aukštaitic dialects of Lithuanian distinguish tones reproduced in the reversed direction just as well as original tones (Girdenis 2003: 273), which would not be expected if the primary exponent of tone was a rising or falling pitch contour. An acoustic characterization of the tones of prosodically conservative (North) Žemaitic Lithuanian is instructive here: for acute, acoustic energy is concentrated at a single point in the syllable nucleus and changes abruptly; circumflex is characterized by a lack of concentrated energy. A pitch contour in acute syllables can be explained as a side effect of the glottalization associated with broken tone (Vaillant 1936: 114–115, 1950: 244–245; Girdenis 2003: 272). This suggests that it is the broken (glottalized) tone of the Žemaitic Lithuanian dialects and Latvian that is the original reflex of Proto-Baltic (Balto-Slavic) acute.

**Baltic consonants**

*The Proto-Baltic consonant system*

The Proto-Baltic consonant system, which is essentially identical to that of Balto-Slavic (except perhaps for the Balto-Slavic reflex of the PIE palatovelars as š and ž), may be represented as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.6 THE PROTO-BALTIC CONSONANT SYSTEM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liquids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glides</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although the reflexes of Indo-European aspirated and plain voiced stops have merged as plain voiced segments, the original distribution is maintained in an adjacent syllabic: those preceding an original plain voiced stop are lengthened (if short monophthongs) and acquire acute tone. This process, known as Winter’s Law, is illustrated by the following sets of correspondences.
PBalt. *b < PIE *bʰ, with circumflex base: Lith. žemšti ‘to cut, hew’, 3 sg. pres. žemšia: PIE *gembʰ- ‘to snatch, bite’, LIV² 162;

PBalt. *b < PIE *b, with acute base: Lith. obuolys ‘apple’, acc. sg. obuoli; Latv. ābuolī: PIE *bēbōl;

PBalt. *d < PIE *dʰ, with short base: Lith. vėsti ‘to lead’, 3 sg. pres. vēda; Latv. vēd: PIE *wedʰ- ‘to lead’, LIV² 659;


PBalt. *g < PIE *gʰ and *gʷʰ, with circumflex base: Lith. algà ‘wages, pay’, acc. sg. alga; Latv. ālga; OPruss. gen. sg. ālgas: PIE *h₂elgʷʰ- ‘to earn, yield (revenue)’, LIV² 263;

PBalt. *g < PIE *g and *gʰ, with acute base: Latv. raũgs ‘pupil (eye)’, raudzū ‘to see’: Gr. (Hesychius) ῥουγός : πρόσωπον;

PBalt. *g < PIE *gʰ, with circumflex base: Lith. liěžti ‘to lick’, 3 sg. pres. liēžia; Latv. (with o-grade) lāžūt: PIE *leygʰ- ‘to lick’, LIV² 404;

PBalt. *g < PIE *g, with acute base: Lith. mėžti ‘to milk’, 3 sg. pres. mėžia: PIE *h₃melg- ‘to milk’, LIV² 279.

Centum/satəm in Baltic

While the Baltic reflexes of PIE *k, *g, *gʰ are generally alveopalatal fricatives (a satəm development: Lith. šimtas ‘hundred’ < PIE *kʰm̥tóm), there are occasional examples in which they continue as pure velars (a centum treatment). There are interesting correlations with Slavic, in which one language family or the other shows the exceptional centum development: Lith. šeivá, Latv. saiva ‘bobbin’: CS *koiυ̯a in Russ. ёвка; Lith. šertē ‘to feed’: CS *kormb ‘fodder’; Lith. žvaigždē (standard žvaigždē) ‘star’: CS *gveds; but with the opposite development in Lith. klaũsytī ‘to listen’, 3 sg. pres. klaũso: OCS slyšatī ‘to hear’ (PIE *klews- ‘to hear, listen’, LIV² 336). Phonetic motivations have been sought for such exceptions, but these would still not account for lexical doublings such as Lith. akmūò ‘stone’: ašmuò (standard ašmenys, pl.) ‘blade’, Lith. kiémas (< *keīmas) ‘yard’: šeimā ‘family’, Lith. kaũktī ‘to howl’: šauktī ‘to shout’.

The RUKI rule in Baltic

Another source for Proto-Baltic *š is the historical process known as Pedersen’s Law or the ruki rule: the change of *s-< s- after k, r, or the high vowels ī, ū, operating in Baltic (unlike Slavic) before consonants as well as vowels. In Baltic, the change is regular after -r-: Lith. viršūs ‘top’ (cf. ORuss. ντρπъ), Lith. pištas ‘finger’ (cf. ORuss. пырътъ, without the change). Reliable examples with -k- are difficult to find, although the frequent appearance of secondary -kš- makes it likely that the process took place here as well (Stang 1966: 96). Lithuanian generally preserves -s- after the high vowels: saũšas ‘dry’: OCS sved; ausis ‘ear’: OCS ašo; misos ‘moss’: OCS mabra; visas ‘all’: WSlav. vš-, ORuss. (Novgorod) ντρъ; viẹusla ‘whirlwind’: RussCS vičъвъ, Lith. dial. trišu ‘three, loc.’: OCS trišvъ, Ofnl. trišū. But there are a few examples that in fact reflect the rule: ausrā ‘dawn’ (but dial. austrā < *ausrā), vetušas ‘old (arch.)’: OCS vetъvъ, maũšas ‘bag’: OCS měłużъ, jūšē ‘fish soup’: Russ. укъа. This lack of consistency may result from Baltic being on the periphery for the diffusion of this areal feature (Stang 1966: 99).
Later Baltic reflexes of the palatovelars

Lithuanian alone among the Baltic languages preserves the reflexes š and ž of the Indo-European palatovelars and, for š, the output of the RUKI rule. In Latvian and Old Prussian (as in Slavic), these have become s (merging with inherited s) and z: Lith. šuò (PIE *kwó-) ‘dog’; Latv. suns (PIE *kn̥-); Lith. šimės (PIE *kŋt̥-) ‘hundred’; Latv. simts; Lith. žemė (PIE *d̥g̥em-) ‘earth’; Latv. zeme, OPruss. semn̥ė (*zemė). But the alveopalatal fricatives must once have been more widespread, since early Baltic borrowings into Finnish (and other Baltic Finnic languages) show the reflex of *šs and *ž, continuing in Finnish as h: Finn. hammas ‘tooth’: Lith. žam̃bas ‘sharp edge; sharp object’, Latv. zūobs ‘tooth’ (PIE *göm̥b-o-); Finn. herne ‘pea’: Lith. žirnis, Latv. zi̯nis (PIE *g̥Hnō-grain’); Finn. lohi ‘salmon’: Lith. lāsis, lašišā, Latv. lasis (PIE *lok̥s-os-).

Sequences of consonant + *i

Proto-Baltic sequences of consonant plus *i before a back vowel result in various types of palatal or dental assimilations in the Baltic languages, which in turn give rise to morphotophonemic alternations at stem boundaries. Where there is no assimilation, Lithuanian preserves the original -j- in the sequence, spelled ⟨j⟩: gulbja ‘swan, gen. sg.’, while Lithuanian develops a palatalized consonant (orthographically, ⟨Ci⟩-, with secondary fronting of a low back vowel: siūtė [ˈsiːʊt̥ɛ] ‘to sew’, lūkia [ˈluːk̥iː] ‘waits’, labiai [laˈbʲeũ] ‘more’, siūtėr̥ [ˈʃiːʊt̥eːr̥] ‘north’ (⟨Si̯j̥ur-⟩-⟨*šeur-or-⟩*-kē, w(e)-), cf. CS ⟨*še̯ver⟩-.

The j in sequences with a labial stop is preserved in word-initial position in Lithuanian: pjauti [ˈpj̥au̯ti] ‘to cut, mow’, bjauras [bjuˈr̥as] ‘ugly’. Lithuanian, like Slavic, introduces an epenthetic palatal l (spelled ⟨l⟩): pļaut, bļaũrs ‘angry, evil’.

Sequences of dental stop plus j, preserved in Old Prussian, perhaps as palatalized stops (cf. median ‘woods’: Lith. mėdžias ‘tree’, Latv. mežs ‘woods’), develop in Lithuanian into the alveopalatal affricates [ʃj, d̥j], orthographically ⟨Cj⟩-, ⟨dj⟩-; čià (⟨*t̥j̥a⟩ ‘here’, mėdžias (⟨*medj̥as⟩ ‘woods’); džiūti (⟨*d̥j̥-⟩ ‘to dry’). The corresponding reflexes in Lithuanian are the alveopalatal fricatives š and ž: latvieša [ˈlɑ̯vʲe̯ʃ̥a] ‘Latvian, gen. sg.’; mežs (⟨*medj̥as⟩ ‘woods’): Lith. mėdžias; sūtė (⟨*d̥j̥-⟩ ‘to dry’): Lith. džiūti. The sequence *ṣj before a back vowel yielded š in Lithuanian: šūtė (⟨*s̥j̥-⟩-⟨*šew⟩- ‘sew’: Lith. siūtė, as it apparently did in Old Prussian: schuwikis ‘shoemaker’, cf. Lith. siuvikis ‘tailor’. Alveopalatal fricatives also result from ⟨*ṣ⟩j and *zj combinations in which the s, z continue the Indo-European palatovelars: eža (⟨*ez̥j̥-⟩-∗ežj̥- ‘hedgehog, gen. sg.’ (nom. sg. ezis) : Lith. čéjo (nom. sg. ežys).

Proto-Baltic sequences of velar stop plus j before a back vowel, as well as velar stop before a front vowel, resulted in frontal (palatalized) velars in Lithuanian, but assimilated to dental affricates (orthographically, ⟨<⟩-, ⟨<d⟩z⟩) in Latvian. Sequences of velar stop plus j: Latv. caũne : Lith. kiāune ‘marten’, acu ‘eye, gen. pl.’ : Lith. akį; rudzi ‘eye, nom. pl.’ : Lith. rugiaũ; velar stop before a front vowel: Latv. acs ‘eye’ : Lith. akis, Latv. lācis ‘bear’: Lith. lōkys, Latv. dzīmę ‘to be born’: Lith. giņūti. A secondary palatalization of the new dental affricates can be found in masculine -ja-stems, where a stem-final -e- or -dz-merged with a restored -j- to produce a new č, dž: lāča (< *lācjā) ‘bear, gen. sg.’ (nom. sg. lācs) : Lith. lōkio (nom. sg. lōkys). Note also Latv. cāula ‘hull, husk; shell’ compared to Lith. kėvalas ‘shell’; its historical development serves as a recapitulation of some of the sound changes presented here: *kēvala > *cēvala (assibilation of a velar stop before a front vowel) > *čēula (vowel syncopeation and concomitant formation of a falling-tone diphthong) > *čjaũla (*eu > *jau as a persistent rule in East Baltic, dating from the Balto-Slavic period) > càula (palatalization of ci to ci).
Dissimilation in clusters of dental stops

Sequences of dental stops continue in Baltic (as in Slavic) as fricative plus stop clusters: Lith. mės-ti (3 sg. pres. mėt-a), past pass. ptcp. mės-tas (*met-t-) ‘to throw’ = Latv. mes-t (3 sg. pres. met), past pass. ptcp. mes-ts; Lith. vės-ti (3 sg. pres. vėd-a), past pass. ptcp. vės-tas (*ved-t-) ‘to lead’ = Latv. ves-t (3 sg. pres. vēd), past pass. ptcp. ves-ts = OPruss. wes-t.

Dissimilation in clusters of dental stop + l

A dissimilation of the dental in the clusters -tl-, -dl- to a velar (-kl-, -gl-) is found in East Baltic and, in part, in Old Prussian: Lith. žénklas ‘sign’ (with -kla- < *-tla-), but OPruss. esentlüns (*-zen-tl-) ‘designated’; Lith. ėglė ‘spruce, fir’, Latv. egle, but OPruss. (Elbing Vocabulary) addle, where the dental is preserved. The Old Prussian of the Elbing Vocabulary is inconsistent here; despite addle ‘spruce, fir’, the dissimilatory change appears in clockis ‘bear’ (Lith. lokūs, Latv. lácis, CBalt. *tūk-). The unchanged sequence is preserved in the Old Prussian place name Tlokun=pelk ‘bear swamp’, the first element of which is the genitive plural of ‘bear’.

MORPHOLOGY

The noun

Nominal inflection: case, number, gender

The Baltic languages inherited from late Indo-European a system of cases for marking the syntactic and semantic role of a noun phrase in a sentence: nominative, genitive (continuing, as in Slavic, both genitive and ablative function), dative, accusative, and instrumental, together with a vocative form of address. A locative case was also inherited (PIE *-oy, cf. adverbialized o-stems Lith. namiē ‘at home’, OPruss. bītai ‘in the evening’; ā-stem raūkoje < *rank-oi-en ‘in the hand’), but was rebuilt in East Baltic as part of a system of secondary local cases formed with postpositions added to existing case forms. In addition to the inessive (old locative + *en; Stang 1966: 182), this system included an illative (accusative + *n(a)), adessive (old locative + *p(i)), and allative (genitive + *p(i)). Besides the standard inessive (simple locative), certain of these, particularly the illative, are still found dialectally in Lithuanian, or continue as adverbs: laukañ ‘outside (directional)’. It is difficult to establish in a reliable way the case system of Old Prussian, due to possible morphological interference from German in the texts; it undoubtedly agreed with East Baltic in marking at least a nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and vocative, and possibly a locative (and, among personal pronouns, an instrumental).

In the modern Baltic languages, the various cases are distinguished in two numbers, the singular and plural; a dual is attested for certain case forms in Lithuanian dialects and in older Lithuanian and Latvian texts. The noun has inherent masculine or feminine gender; the Balto-Slavic neuter merged in East Baltic with the masculine: Lith. šiēnas ‘hay’ (m.), Latv. siens (m.) : OCS sēno (n.). The neuter, with a nominative-accusative a-stem ending -an, is attested in the Old Prussian of the Elbing Vocabulary, for example, assaran (*azaran) ‘lake’ (East Baltic masculine Lith. ēžeras, Latv. ēžers) and the phrase ructan dadan (spelled as a single word) ‘sour milk’, cf. Latv. rūgts ‘bitter’; the u-stem alu ‘mead’ (: Lith. aliūs, Latv. alus ‘beer’) shows a zero ending. By the time of the catechisms, the Old Prussian neuter was in the process of disappearing (Petit 2010: 153).
Nominal stem types

The endings marking the grammatical categories of case, number, and gender follow several inherited declensional patterns, based on stem type; these are most clearly preserved in Lithuanian and give the Lithuanian noun its characteristic archaic appearance. The following stem types are represented in Lithuanian; Latvian has a somewhat reduced and simplified system:

- **(i)ja-stems**, which continue Indo-European (thetic) o-stems and include masculines and neuters (which merged in East Baltic with masculines): (masculine) Lith. vilkas ‘wolf’, Latv. vilks < PIE *wlk-os; OPruss. deivs ~ deivas (1x) ~ deivis (EV) ‘God’; (original neuter) Lith. káulas ‘bone’, cf. OPruss. (EV) caulun < PIE *keh₂ulo-, Lith. bútas ‘lodgings’ : OPruss. buttan; ja-stem: Lith. svěčias ‘guest’, Latv. svešs ‘guest; strange, unknown’ < EBalt. *svĕtjas; the Latvian consonantal stem zvērs ‘beast’ has joined the a-stems, apparently on the basis of the genitive plural zvēru (Gr. ὁντός);

- **i-stems**, which develop from the sequence -i-ja-: Lith. brólis ‘brother’, Latv. brālis (EBalt. *brālīs, PBalt. *brāļijas); Lith. dagys ‘thistle’, Latv. dadzis ‘thistle, burdock’ (*dagijas; the original -i-ja- sequence is seen in the Estonian borrowing takijas ‘thistle, burdock’); the -ys of Lithuanian represents a contraction of *-ijās. This type also includes some masculine consonantal stems: Lith. mėnus, gen. sg. mėnesio, nom. pl. mėnesiai ‘moon, month’, Latv. mēnesis, gen. sg. mēnēša, nom. pl. mēneši ‘moon, month’ < PIE *meh₂nis(s); Latv. suns, gen. sg. suna, nom. pl. suņi ‘dog’; Latv. īdens, gen. sg. ūdens, acc. sg. ūdeni, nom. pl. ūdenī ‘water’; Latv. akmens, gen. sg. akmens, acc. sg. akmeni, nom. pl. akmenī ‘stone’;

- **(i)â-stems**, continuing PIE *eh₂-stems: Lith. rasâ ‘dew’, Latv. rasa < PIE *roseh₂; jā-stem: Lith. žiniâ ‘piece of’ news’, Latv. ziņa. This class also includes the Lithuanian relic forms maròtis, acc. sg. mārīćq ‘daughter-in-law’ and pati, acc. sg. pācīq ‘wife’, and the feminine forms of the present active participles: dirbantī ‘working’, acc. sg. dirbancīq, which continue the type represented by Skr. devī ‘goddess’;

- **ē-stems**, most of which represent a development from *-iā (Stang 1966: 201–204): sauliē ‘sun’, Latv. saule < CBalt. *sauliā, in Indo-European terms *seh₂ulijeh₂; žemē ‘earth’, Latv. zeme, OPruss. semmē < CBalt. *zemējâ, comparable to Slav. *zemâjâ. The development of *-iā to -ē must have been early, since the latter is already reflected in borrowings into Finnish: kantele ‘a kind of stringed instrument’ : Lith. kańklēs (*kańtilēs);

- **i-stems**, continuing Indo-European i-stems, most of which are feminine (Lith. avis ‘sheep’, Latv. (arch.) avs < PIE *h₁ewis; Lith. ugnis (OLith., ELith. ugnis) ‘fire’, Latv. uguns, now feminine, is attested as masculine in Old Lithuanian (cf. OCS ogъnъ, m.; secondarily jo-stem ogъnъ). The inherited i-stem declension has absorbed various consonantal stem types; the entry point for the consonantal stems was undoubtedly the accusative, in which the Balto-Slavic reflex of the syllabic nasal case marker in consonant stems (e.g., PIE *h₂d̯ont- m ‘tooth, acc. sg.’ > CBalt. *dant-in, Lith. daitį) merged with the ending of an i-stem, for example, *āvi-n ‘sheep’. Old inherited feminine consonantal stems include Lith. naktis, acc. sg. naktį ‘night’, Latv. naktis < PIE *nok₂ts; Lith. žgis, acc. sg. žāgį ‘goose’, Latv. zūs < PIE *g₂h₁̯ens; Lith. širdis, acc. sg. širdį ‘heart’ < PIE *šr̥ ḗ; Lith. žūvis, acc. sg. žūvį ‘fish’ < CBalt. *zû (PIE *g₂h₁̯u₁), acc. sg. žuvį; Lith. ausis, acc. sg. aūsį, Latv. āuss < PIE *h₁̯ewъs; and Lith. duktĕ, acc. sg. dúktėrį ‘daughter’ < PIE *d̯ugh₁̯tér. Examples of masculine

- **u-stems**, continuing Indo-European u-stems (Lith. šūnūs ‘son’ < PIE *suHnus; Lith. ledūs ‘ice’, Latv. ledus, compare OCS led). Most are masculine, but they include a few old neuters: Lith. dial. pēkūs ‘livestock’, OPruss. peku; Lith. alūs ‘beer’, Latv. alus, OPruss. alu. Lithuanian preserves, as pluralia tantum, a few old *ū- (*uH-) stem feminines, such as dzūrus (also dzūrnavas) ‘millstone’ ( PIE *gʷr₂nuHs; compare Slav. (OCS) žrěmy).

The more productive stem types have become strongly associated with a particular gender: (ja- and ė- (iē-) stems, together with u-stems, are masculine; (j)ā- and ė- (iē-) stems, together with i-stems, are feminine. There is a strong tendency in the Lithuanian dialects for the few masculine ī-stems, such as žvėris, to be treated as feminine. As we have seen, in Latvian the old masculine ī-stem zvērs has joined the ī-stem masculines.

**Sample o-stem case endings**

What follows is a brief sketch of individual case endings for o-stem (Baltic a-stem) nouns. PIE nom. sg. *-s, associated in Baltic with masculine gender, was extended in East Baltic to neuters, as these merged with the masculines: Lith. ėčeras ‘lake’: OPruss. assaran (azaran), with -n < PIE *-m. In East Baltic, as in Slavic, nouns in the genitive assumed the original ablative ending *-o-Hei, resulting in a circumflex *-ā: Lith. vilko ‘wolf’, Latv. vilka. The Old Prussian genitive apparently preserves an original -s- formant: deiwas ‘of God’. Lithuanian dative -ui (circumflex) continues PIE *-o-Hei, through *-ou < CBalt. *-ū. The accusative singular (and plural) are formed with the addition of -n ( PIE *-m) to the theme vowel: Lith. vilkt. The instrumental adds a laryngeal to the theme vowel, resulting in an acute CBalt. *-ū: Lith. vilktū. The Old Prussian adverbial būtai ‘in the evening’ preserves an old locative ending -ai ( PIE *-o-y), also found as a fossilized form in the Lithuanian adverb namiē ‘at home’. The regular ending
seen in Lith. vilkè ‘in the wolf’ (Latvian has generalized the ā-stem ending) seems to reflect an inessive -en added to the old locative form, with an unmotivated acute. The Baltic languages preserve, in the singular, an inherited vocative with the bare theme vowel -e: OPruss. O Deiwe ‘O God!’, Tāwa (~ Tawe) Noōson ‘Our Father’; Latv. tēv < *tēve (modern tēvs) ‘father!’; Lith. Diève ‘God!’, Tēve māsu ‘Our Father’, vilke ‘O wolf!’; for personal names, this formation has been replaced in Lithuanian by the particle -ai: Jōnai! (nom. Jōnas ‘John’).

The nominative-accusative dual ending in (du) vilkù continues an Indo-European laryngeal added to the thematic stem, while the dative dual vilkām and instrumental vilkaĩ go back to *-a-ma-. Nominative plural -ai (Lith. vilkaĩ), also found in Old Prussian (wijrai ‘men’), is undoubtedly borrowed from the pronominal stems. A neuter nominative plural in -ā is attested in the Old Prussian Elbing Vocabulary: warto ‘door’ (cf. OCS vrata ‘gate, nom./acc. pl.’). The genitive plural ending of Lith. vilkų̃, and the Old Prussian place name Tlokunpelk ‘bear swamp’, represents a Proto-Baltic circumflex *-ōn (> EBalt. *-un > -u), continuing PIE *-o-om; the Catechism texts often show -an, which would reflect a short *-on. The earlier Lithuanian dative ending -mus, shortened to -ms (vilkâms), does not fully agree with OPruss. -mans (waikammans ‘servant, dat. pl.’), but see Mažiulis 2004: 43. The East Baltic accusative plural (Lith. vilkûs) apparently represents *-ōns, with inorganic length and acute tone; Old Prussian has an expected -ans: deiwans ‘gods’. The instrumental plural of Lith. vilkaĩs represents a PIE *-o-Heys. The locative (inessive) plural seen in vilkuosè is secondary; according to Stang 1966: 186, the original ending is preserved in adverbial numerals such as keturîese ‘four (together)’, dial. keturîesu (Zinkevičius 1966: 324), continuing BSl. *-oysu; cf. Slav. (OCS) vlьcěxъ ‘wolf, loc. pl.’ Sample declensions of Baltic a-stem nouns in the three Baltic languages are given in table 11.4.

### TABLE 11.7 DECENSION OF A-STEM NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Lithuanian</th>
<th>Latvian</th>
<th>Old Prussian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>vilkas ‘wolf’ (a.p. 4)</td>
<td>vilks ‘wolf’</td>
<td>*grīks ‘sin’, cf. waix (*vaiks) ‘servant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>vilko</td>
<td>vilka</td>
<td>grīkas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>vilkui</td>
<td>vilkam</td>
<td>grīku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>vilkâ</td>
<td>vilku</td>
<td>grīkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>vilkû</td>
<td>= acc.</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>vilkê</td>
<td>vilkã</td>
<td>*grīkai, (cf. adverbial) bitai ‘in the evening’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vilke</td>
<td>vilks(s)</td>
<td>*grīke, cf. deiwe ‘God’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>vilkû</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>vilkâm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>vilkâm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>vilkaĩ</td>
<td>vilki</td>
<td>grīkai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>vilkỳ</td>
<td>vilku</td>
<td>grīkan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>vilkâms</td>
<td>vilkièm</td>
<td>*grīkamans, cf. waikammans ‘servant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>vilkâs</td>
<td>vilkus</td>
<td>grīkans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>vilkaĩs</td>
<td>= dat.</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>vilkuosè</td>
<td>vilkuós (sp.: vilkos)</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nominal derivation

Among the older derivational formations are deverbal agent nouns with an *-āja- suffix added to the infinitive stem: Lith. giedėtojas ‘choir-boy’ (inf. giedėti ‘to sing, chant’, Latv. dziedātājs ‘singer’ (inf. dziedāt ‘to sing’), with traces in Slavic: OCS ratajь ‘plowman’: OPruss. artōys, Lith. artōjas (inf. ārti ‘to plow’). Verbal noun formations differ across Baltic: Lithuanian uses -imas, added to the preterit stem: pėsiimas ‘drawing’ (piëštį ‘to draw’); the latter has a direct cognate in CS *pišьmo ‘writing’ (Pol. pismo, Cz. pismo). In Latvian, verbal nouns are generally formed with the suffix -šana (Mathiassen 1997: 158): raksišana : raksišī ‘to write’, while in Lithuanian this suffix refers to the manner in which something is done: rašysena ‘handwriting’ (i.e., how one writes). The corresponding suffix in Old Prussian is -sna: rickaūsnan ‘government’. A widespread suffix, varying somewhat in form, denotes persons according to their occupation, place of residence, or some characteristic: Lith. darbininkas ‘worker’ (dārbs ‘work’), Latv. darbinieks ‘employee, office-worker’ (dārbs ‘work’), OPruss. balgnix ‘saddler’ (balgnan ‘saddle’); the Slavic cognate -ьникъ again demonstrates the closeness of the Baltic and Slavic language families.

The adjective

The grammatical categories of case, number, and gender (masculine or feminine), inherent in the noun, are reflected in an associated adjective. Thematic neuter adjectives are numbered in the noun, are reflected in an associated adjective. Thematic neuter adjectives are

The grammatical categories of case, number, and gender (masculine or feminine), inherent in the noun, are reflected in an associated adjective. Thematic neuter adjectives are

Declension types for simple adjectives

The declensional paradigms of the adjective reflect those of the noun, with the substitution in Lithuanian of pronominal endings in the dative singular and plural masculine (-ām, -āems), the locative singular masculine (-amē), and, for (i)ja-stems, the nominative plural masculine (-i). The Latvian adjective follows the corresponding noun declension, which already incorporates pronominal endings in the dative singular and plural for masculines (-am, -iēm). The Baltic adjectival declensions are paired for gender on the basis of vowel height, yielding two major types for Lithuanian, a low-vowel type, in which a-stem masculines are paired with ā-stem feminines (gēras : gerā ‘good’) and ja-stem masculines with jā-stem feminines (žālias : žaliā ‘green’); and a high-vowel type, in which u-stem masculines are paired with i-stem feminines (saldu : saldi ‘sweet’). The high-vowel type is distinctive only in certain case forms; otherwise, it merges with the ja/jā-type. It is quite productive in modern Lithuanian and includes borrowed words: abstraktūs, ī ‘abstract’. Lithuanian has only the low-vowel declensional type: a-stem mazs ‘small, m.’ (Lith. māžas) paired with ā-stem maza ‘small, f.’ (Lith. maža), and ja-stem zāls ‘green’ (Lith. žālias) paired with jā-stem zaļa (Lith. žaliā). The u/i-stem type of Lithuanian (where it has already merged with the ja/jā-type in most case forms) has been replaced in Latvian by the ja/jā-stem type: Lith. gilūs, gili ‘deep’, but Latv. dzīls (*dzīļas), dzīļa; Lith. platus, plati ‘wide’, but Latv. plašs (*plašas), plaša; Lith. saldūs, saldi ‘sweet’, but Latv. salds, salda (with generalized hard stem).
TABLE 11.8 DECLENSION OF A/Ā-STEM AND U/I-STEM SIMPLE ADJECTIVES IN LITHUANIAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>māžas</td>
<td>mažā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>māžo</td>
<td>mažōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>mažām, OLith. mažamuĩ</td>
<td>māžai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>māžq</td>
<td>māžq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>māžū</td>
<td>mažā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>mažamė</td>
<td>mažojė</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>saldūs</td>
<td>saldi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>saldaũs</td>
<td>saldžiũs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>saldžiâm</td>
<td>saldžiaï</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>saldûy</td>
<td>saldžiaq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>saldžiu</td>
<td>saldžia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>saldžiamė</td>
<td>saldžiojė</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension types for compound (definite) adjectives

The category of definiteness is marked in adjectives by the historical affixation of the third-person personal pronoun (in the appropriate case) to the simple (indefinite) form: Lith. indefinite naujās, naujà ‘new’: definite naujâsîs (*nuajâs+jis), naujâji (*naujâ+jî); indefinite saldûs, saldi ‘sweet’: definite saldûsîs (*saldûs+jis), saldžiâjî (*saldûjâ+jî). The tendency to merge the Lithuanian u/i-declension with the ja/jâ-type, noted above, is extended still further in the definite adjective: thus nom. sg. f. saldžiâjî has replaced the reflex of *saldûjî found in OLith. saldii (read saldýjî). The corresponding Latvian forms are less transparent: mazãs ‘small’, mazā. Old Prussian may show a comparable formation in pirmoi̯s (m.), pirmoi̯ (f.) ‘first’. Old Lithuanian shows a peculiar adjectival formation in which pronominal -jis is added to a case form of a noun: dangui̯-jis ukinikas ‘the heavenly farmer’, where dangui̯ (dangujê) is the locative (inessive) of dangiûs ‘heaven, sky’ (Schmalstieg 1988: 303).

Lithuanian has generalized the mobile accentual paradigm for disyllabic adjectives; remnants of old initial stress are found in the nominative singular of a number of u-stem adjectives with an acute base: aîškus, aîški ‘clear’, lýgus, lýgi ‘flat, even’, but the definite forms aîškûsîs, aîškiâjî; lýgûsîs, lýgiâjî follow the productive (mobile) pattern. Latvian did not generalize mobility in adjectives, and therefore preserves the original accentual distribution of acute bases.
### TABLE 11.9 DECLENSION OF A/Ā-STEM AND U/I-STEM DEFINITE ADJECTIVES IN LITHUANIAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a/ā-stem: māžas, à ‘small’ (a.p. 4)</th>
<th>u/i-stem: saldūs, -i ‘sweet’ (a.p. 3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>māžāsis</td>
<td>mažōji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>māžōjo</td>
<td>mažōsios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>māžājam</td>
<td>māžaja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>māžąjį</td>
<td>māžąją</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>mažūoju</td>
<td>mažūja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>māžąjamme</td>
<td>māžąjoje</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Numerals

#### Cardinal and ordinal numbers

Also agreeing in gender, number, and case with a nominal head, and therefore functioning as adjectives, are the numbers from one to nine and their compounds. Lith. vienas, -ā ‘one’ and Latv. viens, -a continue an East Baltic base *veîn-, with an unexplained v- in comparison with SCr. in ‘someone, other’ (which also confirms the East Baltic acute); OPruss. ains, ainā, ainan apparently continues an o-grade *oyn-, which may also underlie the East Baltic forms. The corresponding ordinal is Lith. pirmas, à, Latv. pirmais (dial. pīmais), OPruss. pirmois. Lith. dū (m.), dvi (f.) ‘two’ continues a dual form (m.) *d(w)o-h₁, (f.) *d(w)o-ih₁; Latv. divi (m., from *duvi by regular sound change), divas (f.) adopts the masculine/feminine plural endings found in ‘four’ through ‘nine’; OPruss. dwai ‘two’ is also a plural form. The ordinal is Lith. antrias, à, Latv. ūotrais, OPruss. antars, antrā, continuing an Indo-European form for ‘other’. Lith. trys, Latv. trīs ‘three’ represent an i-stem plural formation *trijes < *trejes, which does not distinguish gender.

For the ordinal, East Baltic agrees with Slav. (OCS) tretii in having refashioned the stem as *tret-: Lith. trečias (*trečias), trečià, Latv. trešais, treša; the distinct OPruss. ūrīs, ūrīs, nom. sg. f. tirti may represent an earlier *tŗtyo-, or a remaking of a BSl. *tŗti̯o-. Regular plural declensions on an adjectival pattern begin with Lith. keturi, kėturios ‘four’, Latv. četri, četras (in Indo-European terms, *kʷetur-) ‘four’; Latv. četri is
a replacement for earlier cetri (cf. the ordinal cętuřiais) under Slavic influence. Like Slav. (OCS) četvórty, the Lithuanian and Old Prussian ordinals show a different syllabification of the -ur- sequence: Lith. ketvyr̃as, OPruss. kettwirts: PIE *keṭw-rt-. Lith. penki, peńkias 'five', Latv. pieci, piecas have as their base PIE *penk-e; Lith. šeši, šešios 'six', Latv. seši, sešas continue EBalt. *seš- (Lithuanian through *ses-.). A reduced-grade is found in the OPruss. ordinal węszts, f. uschtai, Lith. dial. usios 'six-week lying-in period (after birth)'. These point to an unusual pre-Baltic alternation *swek̆s- ~ *uk̆s-. Lith. septyni, septynios 'seven', Latv. septiņi, seiptiņas represent a Baltic *septin < PIE *septm̥ (the long -ĩ- in the Lithuanian forms is secondary). The ordinals OPruss. septmas, OLith. sekmas (*sep(t)mas; modern septiņas) are continuations of PIE *septmo-. The acuted -ô- of Lith. aštuoni, aštuonios 'eight', Latv. astuogi, astuonas reflects the final laryngeal of PIE *hąek̆teh̆; the related ordinal, OLith. ašmas, OPruss. asmas (Modern Lith. aštuotas, Latv. astuōtais), rebuilt on the pattern of 'seventh', directly corresponds to Slav. (OCS) osmъ. Lith. devyini, devyños 'nine', Latv. deviņi, deviņas (EBalt. *devin, after *septin 'seven') agree in their initial d- with Slav. (OCS) devêts; the Old Prussian ordinal nowënts ‘ninth’ preserves the original nasal of PIE *h₁nêwn.

Unlike ‘one’ through ‘nine’, Baltic ‘ten’ and its multiples, including the teens, function as nouns, governing (in general) the genitive case (unless the entire noun phrase is governed by another case). Lith. dešimtis and indeclinable dēšimt ‘ten’, Latv. desmūt (dialectal *desimtis), and OPruss. desimpts continue a Proto-Baltic consonant stem *dešimt (the base of which is PIE *dekm̥), which, like the majority of such stems, joined the i-stems; the Lith. gen. pl. dešimtų̃ and OLith. (Daukša) gen. sg. dezimtes are vestiges of the consonantal declension. Lith. šimtas ‘hundred’ and Latv. simts are direct continuations (except for the loss of neuter gender) of PIE *dek̆tm̥. Lith. tūkstantis (m. ja-stem, dialect and Old Lith. i-stem) ‘thousand’, Latv. tūkstošis (m. ja-stem) are related in an unclear way to OPruss. (acc. pl.) tūsimtons, Slav. (OCS) tysëšty, tysëšti and Gmc (Goth.) þūsundi; the -kšt- of the East Baltic forms is secondary.

‘Eleven’ through ‘nineteen’, which (like ‘ten’, etc.) have noun syntax, are formed according to different models in Lithuanian and Latvian. Latvian follows a Slavic-like model of ‘one-after-ten’, ‘two-after-ten’ (-pa-(e)smit, cf. OCS (dverbs) na desète): viēnpadsmit ‘eleven’ (‘one-after-ten’), divpadsmit ‘twelve’ (‘two-after-ten’), trispadsmit ‘thirteen’ (‘three-after-ten’). Lithuanian reflects, with its formant -ika, a “Germanic” model of “one left,” “two left,” seen in Goth. ainlif ‘eleven’, twalif ‘twelve’: Lith. vienilǐka ‘eleven’ (‘one-left’), dvyl̃ka ‘twelve’ (‘two-left’), tryl̃ka ‘thirteen’ (‘three-left’), keturǐlǐka ‘fourteen’ (‘four left’), etc. Lith. divdešimt ‘twenty’ replaces an old dual phrase dni dēšimti. The remaining multiples of ten, through ‘ninety’, are formed with the accusative plural feminine of the number together with an indeclinable dešimt: trisdešimt ‘thirty’, kêturiásdešimt ‘forty’, peńkiasdešimt ‘fifty’, and so on.

The pronoun

Personal pronouns

(Standard) Lithuanian and Latvian differ in the initial vowel of the first-person singular pronoun: Lith. aš, dial. and OLith. es ‘I’, Latv. es; Old Prussian agrees with Lithuanian in showing mainly as, with a few instances of es. The final consonant of the Balto-Slavic etymon *ez̄ must have devoiced in Baltic before the operation of Winter’s Law, since the Baltic forms show a short vowel; compare Slav. (OCS) azb, with the reflex of lengthening. The oblique cases are formed on the stem *man-,
OPruss. *men- (with variants). The second-person singular, Lith. tū (shortened by Leskien’s Law), Latv. tu, Old Prussian tū, toū, points to an acuted *tū (PIE *tuH). In the first-person plural, there is a length difference between OPruss. mes, matching Lith. mēs (with secondary lengthening) and Latv. mēs, which shows a long acute vowel. The oblique cases retain an initial n- in Old Prussian: gen. pl. noūsmons, dat. pl. noūmans (comparable to Slav. (OCS) nasъ, namъ), as opposed to Lith. mūsų, mūs, Latv. mūsu, mums. The second-person plural shows agreement across Baltic: Lith. jūs, Latv. jūs, OPruss. ioūs, pointing to CBalt. *iūs. Lithuanian preserves an old dual form in mūdu, mūdvi (dialectally also vēdu, vēdvi) ‘we two’, jūdu, jūdvi ‘you two’. The third-person pronouns differ across the Baltic languages. Lith. (m.) jis, (f.) ji, with correlates in High Latvian, continues an Indo-European deictic stem *i- (*is, *ih) with initial j- generalized from a thematized oblique stem jā-. In a number of Lithuanian dialects, änas ~ anas, -ā, ‘yon’ serves as the third-person pronoun, matching in origin and function Slav. (OCS) onъ, ona. The Latvian pair viņš, viņa is of uncertain origin; OPruss. tāns, tannā ~ tennā undoubtedly reflects a conflation of the demonstrative *ta- and *anas (cf. also Pol., Cz. ten ‘that’). Alone among the Baltic languages, Old Prussian shows an enclitic di-: prowela-din ‘betrayed him’. An attributive (emphatic) pronoun is represented in Lith. pāts (< patis), pati, Latv. pats, paša (pati) ‘oneself’; the Old Prussian equivalent is subs, not found in East Baltic.

### TABLE 11.10 DECISION OF THE LITHUANIAN THIRD-PERSON PERSONAL PRONOUN JIS, JI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>masculine</th>
<th>feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>jis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>jō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>jám</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>jī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>juō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>jame̱</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Clitic pronouns

A reflexive clitic particle, Lith. -s(i), Latv. -s, is joined to a verb to express middle voice: Lith. kelčios(i) ‘(I) get up’, Latv. cēluos ‘(I) rise, get up’. In verb forms with a preverb or other prefix (ne-, te-, be-), the particle follows Wackernagel’s rule in Lithuanian (see below): atsikeliu ‘(I) get up’, inf. atsikėlti; nesikeliu ‘(I) do not get up’, while in Latvian the particle behaves as in simplex forms: pieceluos ‘(I) get up’, inf. piecelties ‘to get up’. In origin, the reflexive particle is a clitic form of the third-person dative pronoun, found in Old Lithuanian texts in both dative and accusative functions. The old texts also preserve the pronominal clitics 1 sg. mi and 2 sg. ti, which often appear in second position: Pa-mi-rōdik ‘show me’ (Modern Lith. parōdyk mán), pa-ti-rōdisiuv ‘(I) will show you’ (modern Lith. parōdysiu tāu). An example of a reflexive enclitic in Old Prussian is maitātun-sin ‘to nourish oneself’.

Demonstrative pronouns

The Baltic demonstrative pronouns reflect a system of person deixis: ‘this’ (near the speaker), ‘that’ (near the hearer), and ‘yon’ (beyond speaker and hearer). Lith. šis, ši
(PBalt. *šī) ‘this’, Latv. šis, šī, and OPruss. (m.) schis, like Slav. (OCS) sb, sì, continue an Indo-European deictic stem *ki-; the š- of the Latvian and Old Prussian forms represents a spread of *sia- from the oblique cases. Lith. tās, tâ (PBalt. *tâ) ‘that’ and Latv. tas, tâ, like Slav. (OCS) tv, ta, represent generalizations of the oblique stem *to- of the Indo-European demonstrative pronoun *so, *seh₂, *tod. The Old Prussian set (m.) stas, (f.) sta, sta (*stā?), (n.) sta ‘this,’ the ‘apparently represents *sitā-*, analogous to Lith. šitas ‘this’, a conflation of šis and tas; compare Lith. štai, abbreviated from šitaĩ ‘here’. Lith. anâs, -â ‘yon’, cognate with Slav. (OCS) onɔ, ona, serves dialectally (eastern Lithuanian and Žemaitic) as the third-person pronoun.

**Interrogative pronouns**

The interrogative pronouns in Baltic continue an Indo-European stem *kʷo-: OPruss. (m., f.) kas, (n.) ka. The East Baltic forms do not distinguish ±human or ±animate: Lith. kâs ‘who, what’, Latv. kas. The interrogative/relative Lith. kuris, kuri ‘which, that’, Latv. kuŗš, kuŗa, apparently represents the addition of a pronominal jis to Lith. kur, Latv. kûr ‘where’, used (as it is in dialects) as a relative pronoun. Lith. kat(a)râs, -â, Latv. katrâs, katra ‘which of two’ continues a PIE *kʷotero-. The correlative series t- (demonstrative) : k- (interrogative) : j- (relative), found in many Indo-European languages, is represented in Baltic by such forms as Lith. tóks (tõks), toki ‘such a’ : kóks (kõks), koki ‘what (sort of)’ : jóks (jõks), joki ‘no, not a single (originally, ‘any (sort of)’), parallel to Slav. (OCS) takb, kakb, jakb. Latvian presents a somewhat different formation in tâds, tâda ‘such a’ ; kâds, kâda ‘what (sort of)’.

**The verb**

**Verbal inflection**

While the Baltic noun presents an archaic appearance, the verb has been radically refashioned and reduced to three tenses: present, past, and future. The present continues the Indo-European present, with the following basic stem types: an athematic type (see below), a thematic type (Lith. 1 pres. sg. lipù, 3 sg. īpa : līpti ‘to climb’), and “semi-thematic” types (Lith. i-stem 1 pres. sg. sė́džiu, 3 sg. sė́di : sėdė́ti ‘to sit’ and Lith. *ā-stem 1 pres. sg. prašaũ, 3 sg. prašo : prašyti ‘to ask’). The future, formed on the infinitive stem with a suffixed -si̯/s- (Lith. kėltu, kėls, kėl ‘(I, you, he/she/they) will raise’, Latv. cēļu, cēls, cēls; OPruss. postāsei ‘(you) will become’), continues an Indo-European desiderative. The various Indo-European preterit formations have been replaced in Baltic by a simple innovative past. The function and forms of the Indo-European middle voice have been replaced by both an ablaut form (reduced grade) of a verbal root, and a reflexive construction: Lith. (trans.) kėlti ‘to lift, raise’, (intr./mid.) kilti ‘to raise’, (reflexive) kėltis ‘to get up (raise oneself)’ (the base here is PIE *kelH- ‘to rise (up), tower (over)’, LIV² 349). Non-finite verb forms include the infinitive (the dative/locative of a pre-Baltic verbal noun in -t̩i-): Lith. -tī, Latv. -t, OPruss. -t̩, -t̩e̯; cf. CS -t̩i), vestiges of a supine (the accusative of a pre-Baltic verbal noun in -tu-): Lith. -tu̯, Latv. dial. -tu, OPruss. -tun, -ton (serving as infinitive), cf. CS -tv; and various participles, which combine with forms of ‘to be’ to build a system of relative tenses. In addition to the indicative, a number of moods are distinguished, including an imperative, conditional, and optative (permissive); these are presented below.
Athematic presents

Although the only productive stem type in East Baltic is now the thematic (continuing an Indo-European stem with -e/-o-formant), athematic verbs experienced a period of late productivity in Lithuanian, expanding beyond their original scope. Athematic presents are well attested in texts from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries (see Petit 2010: 211–212) and as relic forms in dialects. Old Lithuanian ‘to be’ and ‘to give’ (with regularized spellings) serve as examples: ‘to be’ 1 sg. *es-míe, 2 sg. *es-síe, 3 sg. *est(i); 1 pl. esme, 2 pl. este; 1 du. esva, 2 du. esta; ‘to give’ 1 sg. duomi, 2 sg. duosi, 3 sg. duost(i) (= OPruss. dāst); 1 pl. duome, 2 pl. duoste; 1 du. duová, 2 du. duosta. A trace of the original athematic ending can be found in Latv. 1 sg. ėsmu, Lith. dial. esmù (standard Lith. thematic esù) ‘(I) am’. Best represented among the Old Prussian athematic verbs is ‘to be’: 1 sg. *asmai (also *asmu), 2 sg. *asei (with variant spellings), 3 sg. *ast; 1 pl. *asmai, 2 pl. *astai. The Lithuanian first- and second-person endings -mi and -si are Leskien’s Law shortenings of *-míe, *síe (cf. OLith. essíegu, with emphatic particle -gu), corresponding to the -mai, -sai of Old Prussian. These may represent a conflation of Indo-European *-mi, *-si and the (originally middle-voice) *-ai of the 1 sg. perf. (OCS vědě), as inherited perfects were absorbed by the athematics in Baltic.

The thematic verb type

Thematic verbs use the same set of person markers for all three tenses. The first-person singular marker in, for example, Lith. keliū ‘(I) lift, raise’, (refl.) keliūs(i) ‘(I) get up’, Latv. ceļu, (refl.) ceļuôs ‘(I) rise, get up’ directly reflects a PIE *-OH. The marker of the second-person singular (Lith. keli ‘lift, raise’, kelies(i) ‘get up’; Latv. cel (*celi), celîês ‘rise, get up’) is an EBalt. *-êi of uncertain origin. The Old Prussian material, due to the circumstances of its transmission, is not clear; Stang (1966: 408) suggests that forms such as giwassi, gîwasi ‘(you) live’ are comparable to Slav. (OCS) živeši and represent a conflation of the athematic second-person singular ending -si with the *-êi of East Baltic. The endings of the first and second persons plural, Lith. kēîame, kēîate, (refl.) kēîamêš, kēîatiês; Latv. cēlam, cēlat; (refl.) cēlamiês, cēlatiês, reflect EBalt. *-mê, *- tô, the acuted length of which is perhaps by analogy to the singular forms. A distinctively Baltic innovation is the loss of a number distinction (singular/dual/plural) in the third person; here thematic verbs show a bare stem in -a for all persons: Lith. kēîa ‘lift, raise’, kēîias(i) ‘get up’, Latv. cel, celâs ‘rise, get up’; past tense: Lith. kēîë, kēîës(i); Latv. cēla, cēlâs. Old Prussian occasionally distinguishes a singular for both thematic and athematic verbs, present and past, by means of a suffix -ts (cf. tas ‘that’): astitsu (*esti-ts) ‘is’.

The “semi-thematic” verb type

In addition to the athematic and thematic stem types (the latter with a number of subtypes), Baltic also preserves stem types (termed “halbthematisch” by Stang (1966: 319)) in which an unsuffixed present tense stem is associated with an extended infinitive stem. In the first, a present stem with an -i- theme vowel (an analogous type in Slavic has a long -i-) is paired with an infinitive containing an -ê- formant. These often have stative meaning: Lith. 1 sg. sédžiu (inf. sédëti ‘to sit’), 2 sg. sêdì, 3 sg. sêdì; 1 pl. sédime, 2 pl. sédite; compare OCS sêdö, sêdîš : sêdëti. This type is also characterized by reduced-grade root vocalism: Lith. 3 pres. mini, inf. minëti ‘to mention, remember’, compare
OCS тъніть, тънёти ‘to think’. In another “semi-thematic” type, an o-grade present tense with an -ā- stem formant is paired with an infinitive in -ī̂; these have iterative meaning: Lith. га̀но : ganíti ‘to pasture (cattle)’ (originally ‘to drive (cattle)’), Latv. гана, ганіт; Lith. пра̀шо : prašýti ‘to ask’, Latv. prasa : prosíti, and correspond to a Slavic formation preserving a present tense marker -ī̂ : OCS гонитъ : goniti ‘to chase, persecute’, проситъ : prositi ‘to ask’.

The Baltic preterit

The Baltic preterit is marked by the addition of an *-ē̃ or *-ā̃ suffix to a verb stem, which generally agrees in ablaut grade with the infinitive stem; the thematic endings were added directly to this preterit formant. Since the third person has no ending, it can be considered the unmarked form. An example of a preterit with the *-ā̃ formant is Lith. лі́пти ‘to climb’: Lith. 3 lîpo (*lip-ā); 1 sg. ліпа́i represents *lipā + *-ûo; 2 sg. ліпа́, *lipā + *-ie; 1 pl. ліпоме, *lipā + *-mē; and 2 pl. ліпопе, *lipā + *-tē. The *-ē̃ formant is found in Lith. ке́лти ‘to lift, raise’: Lith. 3 ке́лі (*kē̂lē); 1 sg. ке́лі йа́у is then *kē̂lē + *-ûo (with -ēu to -jau); 2 sg. ке́лій, *келē + *-ie; 1 pl. келéме, *келē + *-mē; and 2 pl. келéте, *келē + *-tē. Latvian has generalized the *-ā̃ formant, but *-ē̃ is still found dialectally and in texts from the sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries. The earlier *-ē̃ is reflected in the timbre of an e/ē root vowel, which preserves a higher articulation before former ē̃: corresponding to Lith. келё ‘lifted, raised’, ведё ‘led’, не́ше ‘brought’, Latvian has цела (*cēlē), веда, неса, with /e/ rather than /æ/; compare седа ‘sat’, with /æ/, representing *сēd-ā, Lith. сḗдо. The limited Old Prussian material suggests that the *-ē̃ and *-ā̃ formants were found here as well: *-ē̃: ymmi[tst] (*imē-ts) ‘took’, *-ā̃: prowela[din] ‘betrayed (him)’.

Baltic diathesis and ablaut

The distribution of *-ā̃ and *-ē̃ in Lithuanian depends for the most part on stem type and root vocalism, but is ultimately connected with a system of diathesis that characterized an earlier stage of Baltic: *-ā̃ is associated with intransitive verbs and *-ē̃ with transitive. One of the striking features of the Baltic verbal system is the use of ablaut to mark the relation of transitive/intransitive. In a once highly productive type of diathetic marking, a verbal base with transitive meaning came to be characterized by a ja-present (a subtype of the thematic present) with e-grade in the root and an -ē formant for the preterit; the e-grade was extended by analogy to the infinitive. A correlated base with intransitive (often inchoative) meaning was characterized by reduced grade of the root, with a nasal-infixed a-present and an ā-preterite. The infixed present tense stem is always characterized by circumflex tone, regardless of the tone of the infinitive. Thus, the e-grade transitive Lith. ке́лтi ‘to lift, raise’ is correlated with a reduced grade intransitive ке́лти (*kl̥-) ‘to rise’. The present tense of the latter is marked by a nasal infix, and the tone becomes circumflex: ке́лa (i.e., кē̂l̥a < *ki-ñ-l-a); the preterit shows the ā-formant: kilo. In an environment where a nasal infix is not possible, such as an obstruent stem with long root vocalism, an -st- suffix is added to the present tense stem: Lith. тол̥тi ‘to move away’: тол̥ста, тол̥о.

Mood

The Old Prussian imperative 2 sg. иммайс ‘take’, 2 pl. имайтi (: įmt ‘to take’) continues an Indo-European optative in -oi-, also reflected in the Lithuanian permissive, formed with
the proclitic particle te-: tesākai ‘may he/she/they say’, tedarbiē (< *-ai) ‘may he/she/they work’. A more common formation in Modern Lithuanian is te- plus the third-person present: tesāko, tedirba. Old Prussian is unique in forming a permissive with the particle -sei (paresey ‘may X come’), which may be connected with the sigmatic future (Stang 1966: 442). The imperative is formed in Lithuanian by adding the particle -k(ite) to the infinitive stem: eik, eikite ‘go!’ (inf. eiti ‘to go’). The Latvian imperative is identical to the second-person present; the plural is formed by adding -iet to the singular: sakiet ‘say!’, sakt (inf. sacit ‘to say’). The conditional mood of East Baltic derives from a -bi- (‘be’) element added to the supine, most clearly seen in forms such as Lith. 1 pl. būtumbine ‘we would be’, 2 pl. būtumbite ‘you would be’. Most of the present-day forms are analyzable (e.g., Lith. 1 sg. būčiau ‘(I) would be’, būt ‘he/she/they would be’). In Latvian, a single form identical with the old supine has been generalized for all persons and numbers: cēlu ‘X would raise’. Characteristic of both Lithuanian and Latvian is the use of a participial form – in Lithuanian an active participle in the nominative case, in Latvian an indeclinable form derived from the present active participle – to mark reported speech or indirectly perceived action (evidential mood): Latv. Viņš dzīvojot (sp.: dzīvojot) Rigā ‘He is said to live in Riga’, Lith. Jis gyvena Viniuje ‘He is said to live in Vilnius’. Peculiar to Latvian is the use of the debitive (expressing obligation), formed with the particle ja- and the third-person present, with the logical subject in the dative: man jābrauc (‘to-me must-go’) ‘I must go’; the debitive of ‘to be’ is formed with the infinitive: man jābūt ‘I have to be’.

Participles

Lithuanian and Latvian present an elaborate system of participles and gerunds. Among the more frequent participles (which decline like adjectives) are the present active, continuing a PIE -nt- participle: Lith. rašęs, stem rašant-, inf. rašyti ‘to write’; OLith. (nom. sg. f. def.) sauntii ‘being’; Latv. rakstuošs : rakstīt; OPruss. dīlants ‘working’; past active, reflecting a PIE perfect participle in -ues-, CBalt. *-ens ~ *-us-: Lith. (pa)rašęs, stem (pa)rašius-; Latv. (uz)rakstījis, stem (uz)rakstījuš-; OPruss. dāuns ‘having given’; present passive: Lith. rāšomas; Latv. rakstāms; OPruss. poklausānas ‘being heard’; and past passive, reflecting a Lithuanian verbal adjective in -eto-14 Lith. (pa)rašytas, Latv. (uz)rakstītas; OPruss. dāts ‘given’. The past active participle is used, together with a finite form of the verb ‘to be’, to form a system of perfect tenses: Lith. aš esu (pa)rašęs (m.), (pa)rašus (f.) ‘I have written’, aš buva (pa)rašęs (m.), (pa)rašius (f.) ‘I had written’; Latv. es esmu (uz)rakstījis (m.), (uz)rakstījušī (f.), es biju (uz)rakstījis (m.), (uz)rakstījušī (f.). Passive constructions are formed with the copula and the corresponding passive participle: Lith. knyga buvo rūšoma ‘the book was being written’, knyga buvo parašyta ‘the book was/had been written’. Old Prussian has a passive construction using wīrst ‘becomes’: laikūt wīrst ‘is held’.

Both Lithuanian and Latvian preserve the reflex of an earlier dative absolute in gerund constructions, which serve as a dependent clause when the subject differs from that of the main clause. The subject of the gerund appears in the dative; the gerund itself is a frozen form of an active participle in the dative (still found in the oldest Lithuanian texts): Lith. sāulei (dat. sg.) tēkant (pres. gerund) ‘as the sun is/was rising’ (‘to-the-sun rising’), gimus (past gerund) vaikui (dat. sg.) ‘when the child had been born’; Latv. sāulēi (dat. sg.) lecuot (pres. gerund) ‘at sunrise’, ziemai (dat. sg.) tuvujojo (pres. gerund, refl.) ‘as winter is/was approaching’. When the subjects of the main clause and dependent clause are identical (and the verbal action is simultaneous), a special active participle,
formed in Lithuanian with -damas, in Latvian with -dams, is used: Lith. skaitýdamas, Latv. lasīdam 'while reading'.

Aspect

Aspect in Baltic is not as fully grammaticalized as it is in Slavic. While imperfective simplex verbs may be perfectivized through the addition of a lexically empty prefix (Lith. rašyti ‘to write, imperf.’ : parašyti (perfect.), Latv. rakstīt (imperf.) : uzrakstīt (perfect.)), the aspectual meaning of verbs formed with a lexical prefix, for example, Lith. aprašyti ‘to describe’, Latv. aprakstīt, is typically contextual. In Latvian, certain verbs with spatial prefixes and perfective meaning have acquired corresponding phrasal imperfectives consisting of the simplex verb and a spatial adverb: iziet (perfect.) / iēt ârā (imperf.) ‘to go out’, nūoņemt (perfect.) / neņst nuôst (imperf.) ‘to take off’. Perfective verbs used in the present tense have non-progressive meaning (like the simple aspect in English): Lith. Šaulē pārēka (perfect.) rytuose ir nusilēidžia (perfect.) vakaruose, Latv. Saules paceļas àustrumu un nòorièt riètumu ‘The sun rises in the east and sets in the west’.

Verbal derivation

Among the more widespread verb types with a derivational suffix in both present tense and infinitive/preterit forms is *-ē̂-i̯a (inf. *-ē̂-ti), forming deadjectival verbs: Lith. sēnas ‘old’: senetè ‘to grow old’, 3 pres. senèja; Latv. vecs : vecèt, 3 pres. vecè; cf. Slav. (OCS) starb : starèti, 3 pres. starèjeto; this suffix is also used to form causatives in Latvian: aûdzèt ‘to cultivate, grow (trans.)’, 3 pres. aûdzè : aûgt ‘to grow (intr.)’. Another causative type is found in -in-a/-ä: Lith. auginti, 3 pres. augina ‘to raise (children)’: ãugti ‘to grow’; Latv. aûdzinät ‘to bring up, nurture’, 3 pres. aûdzina : aûgt ‘to grow’, OPruss. auginmons ‘brought up, raised’, (po)augints ‘brought up’. A third widespread type consists of denominal verbs in -âui̯a (inf. -âuti), cognate with Slav. -űjǫ: -ova-: Lith. keliáuti ‘to travel’, 3 pres. keliáuja, 3 past keliãvo: kõlia ‘road’, OPruss. grikaut ‘to confess’ (‘acknowledge one’s sins’): grik- ‘sin’.

SYNTAX

On case usage

The nominative case, in addition to its basic functions as a marker of the grammatical subject and predicate noun, also marks the second argument in Latvian debitive constructions, where the logical subject is in the dative: Man (dat. sg.) jàpērk màize (nom. sg.) ‘I have to buy bread’. The nominative may mark the direct object of an infinitive in Baltic impersonal constructions: Lith. Langaĩ (nom. pl.) reiķia uždarýti (‘to close’) ‘The windows need to be closed’ (Schmalstieg 1988: 145–147), Latv. (from older texts) zir̃gs (nom. sg.) vajadzēs mazgât ‘the horse will need to be bathed’ (Endzelin 1922: 409).

Characteristic of East Baltic is the use of a preposed adnominal genitive, often in place of a relational adjective: lietiņių (gen. sg.) kalbà ‘Lithuanian language’ (‘of-Lithuanians language’), latviešu valoda ‘Latvian language’; Lith. àukso (gen. sg.) Žiedas, Latv. zèlta (gen. sg.) grèdziņs ‘a gold ring’ (àuksas/zèlts ‘gold’), a usage that already appears in early translations of Polish texts into Lithuanian: dangaiùs (heaven, gen. sg.) karalûstè ‘heavenly kingdom’ (Pol. królewstwo niebieskie). The genitive also marks agent or cause
in passive voice, a function inherited from Proto-Indo-European (Schmalstieg 1988: 180): Lith. vėjo (gen. sg. agent) nulaužta bėžo (adnominal gen. sg.) šaką ‘a birch-tree branch broken off by the wind’, Latv. vēja nūolaizts bēža zars. In Lithuanian, a partitive genitive may be found in the role of subject or object: Miškė yra vilkų (gen. pl.) ‘There are wolves in the woods’, Atvažiavo svečių (gen. pl.) ‘(Some) guests arrived’, Radau klaidų (gen. pl.) ‘(I) found (some) mistakes’. Arguments in negative existential constructions are in the genitive: Lith. Nėra žuvių (gen. pl.) ‘There is no fish’, Latv. Nav zīves, as are direct objects in negative sentences: Aš neturiu nei brūlio (gen. sg.), nei seserīs (gen. sg.) ‘I have neither a brother nor a sister’, OLith. Ne turek kitu Dievā (gen. pl.) priez manes ‘Do not have other gods before me’ (Schmalstieg 1988: 173); Latvian uses the accusative here: Es neêdu māzi (acc. sg.) ‘I do not eat bread’. The object of the now-rare supine is in the genitive: Lith. Sėnės parėjo pietų (gen. pl.) vālgytų ‘The old man returned to eat dinner’ (piëtūs ‘dinner, nom. pl.’), a usage that has been extended to infinitive constructions replacing the supine: Sėnės parėjo pietų vālgyti. The dative, alongside its basic function denoting indirect object, is found in impersonal constructions: Lith. Māns (dat. 1 sg.) reikia pagalbos (gen. sg.), Latv. Man (dat. 1 sg.) vajag palīdzību (acc. sg.) ‘I need help’; Lith. Māns (dat. 1 sg.) šalta ‘I am cold’ (with a historically neuter adjective), Latv. Man salst (inf. salī ‘to freeze’). For ‘have’, Lithuanian uses a “mihi est” construction with the dative, while Lithuanian has “havebo” with accusative: Latv. Man (dat. 1 sg.) ir grāmatas (nom. sg.) ‘I have a book’ (negated: man nav grāmatas (gen. sg.) ‘I do not have a book’); Lith. Aš (nom. 1 sg.) turīu knīgā (acc. sg.). The dative is also used for the logical subject in Lithuanian debitive constructions: Man (dat. 1 sg.) jāpērk grāmatu (nom. sg.) ‘I have to buy a book’. The basic function of the accusative is to mark the direct object of a verb (Lithuanian switches to a genitive object in a negative sentence). The accusative often marks temporal and spatial expressions; the Lithuanian and Latvian words for ‘today’ are adverbs derived from the accusative for ‘this day’: Lith. šiaidian, Latv. šodien. In Lithuanian, the instrumental, in addition to denoting ‘by means of’ (Lith. rašyti pieštuká ‘to write with a pencil’), marks a predicate complement with verbs denoting a change of state: Jis tapiro žurnālo (gen. sg.) mētū (gen. pl.) žmogumī (instr. sg.) ‘He became the magazine’s man of the year’; modern Latvian uses the nominative here. In Lithuanian, the role of instrumental has been assumed by the preposition ar ‘with’, used with the accusative form in the singular (raksti ar zīmuli ‘to write with a pencil’) and the dative form in the plural. The locative (indefinite) is used without a preposition in both Lithuanian (Vilniuje ‘in Vilnius’) and Latvian (Rīgā ‘in Riga’); the Latvian locative has also assumed illative meaning, represented in modern Lithuanian by j + accusative: Viņš ienāca istabā (Lith. Jis įējo į kaţbarį) ‘He entered the room’.

Basic word order

The relative order of the major syntactic constituents of a sentence in the modern Baltic languages is determined by information structure – whether the constituents function as theme or rhyme. In a neutral declarative sentence consisting of S and V, S is typically the theme and V the rhyme, with resultant SV word order: Lith. Káimas tebemiegójo ‘The village was still sleeping’, Latv. Jānis laca ‘John is reading’; the V may be a nominal predicate, with the copula not overtly expressed in the present tense: Lith. Jis studentas, Latv. Viņš students ‘He is a student’. In a themeless sentence, in which both constituents function as rhyme, the unmarked word order is VS: Lith. Išaušo rytąs ‘Morning dawned’, Gyveno senelis ir senelė ‘There (once) lived an old man and old woman’, Latv. Dzīvoja...
tēvs ‘There lived a father’. In sentences consisting of three basic constituents, the pragmatically neutral and statistically most prevalent word order is SVO: Lith. *Jis myli savo motiną*, Latv. *Viņš mil savu māti* ‘He loves his mother’. In Lithuanian, although the object may be highlighted by inversion (thus SOV), SVO and SOV are often in free variation (Ambrazas et al. 1985: 676), with SOV more characteristic of dialects, folklore, and formulaic speech: *Pirmi gaidžiai vėluņi* [O] baido [V] ‘The first roosters scare away the devil’. SOV is also typical for sentences with object pronouns: *Aš jį* [O] pamačiai ‘I saw him’, and is the unmarked order, alongside SVO, if the object is the theme: *Dėdė ląpe* [O] nušovė [V] ‘Uncle shot a fox’. Other word order permutations are possible, accompanied by expressive intonation. For non-context-bound sentences, in which all three major constituents function as the rheme, S and V are commonly inverted (cf. VS for corresponding two-component sentences), thus both VSO: *Pàkvietė [V] žvirlis [S] visis paukštelius* [O] ‘A sparrow invited all the birds’, and OVS: *Premius [O] skyrė [V] ūpe* [S] ‘A river separated the foes’.

Phrasal word order

Adpositions in the modern Baltic languages precede the governed noun (prepositions), in harmony with a now-neutral SVO basic word order. Lithuanian preserves a few postpositions (Ambrazas et al. 1985: 685): *jò dèka* ‘thanks to him’, as does Latvian: *viņa dē[!]l* ‘because of him’. A vestige of head-final position is found in the East Baltic local cases, formed with postpositions (see above). Other dependents generally precede the head: the neutral position of an adjective is before the noun it modifies, and an adnominal genitive also precedes its head noun, in harmony with an earlier SOV basic sentence structure assumed for Indo-European, but at odds with the prevailing SVO structure of the modern Baltic languages: Lith. *tëvo* (gen. sg.) *žōdžiai*, Latv. *tēva* (gen. sg.) *vārdi* ‘father’s words’ (*tëvas/tēvs* ‘father’). Partitive genitives, on the other hand, are postpositional: Lith. *būtelis alaũs* ‘a bottle of beer’, Latv. *pudele alus* (contrast *alaũs būtelis, alus pudele* ‘beer bottle’).

Wackernagel’s Law in Baltic

Vestiges of Wackernagel’s Law of clitic placement can be found in several formations in East Baltic (see especially Petit 2010: 260–307). These include *tmēsin* with a reflexive particle between a preverb and verbal root: Lith. *at-si-kėlti* ‘to get up’, the Latvian of traditional folk songs (*daĩņas*): *Iz-sa gauži raudājuo-s* (with reflexive doubly marked; the corresponding form in modern Latvian would be *iz-raudājuo-s*) ‘I wept bitterly’ and dialectally (Endzelin 1922: 703–708), and in Old Lithuanian with clitic pronouns or expressive particles: *pa-mi-sakyk* ‘tell me’, *pa-gu-žįstat* ‘you know (emphatic)’. In Old Lithuanian, we find as a relic the placement of the inherited relative pronoun *yo-* between a prefix and root in definite adjectives and participles: *pa-io-prasta*, modern *pà-prasto-jo* ‘ordinary, gen. sg.’, *pra-iis-pûles*, modern *pra-puolęs-is* ‘having perished’, compare the Slavic superlative formant *na-jь-, Russ. *nau-*.* In Lithuanian, the emphatic particle *-gi-* occurs as an enclitic with adverbs and conjunctions: *kuõgĩ* ‘where (emphatic)’, *taĩgĩ* ‘so, therefore’, *arĩgĩ* ‘emphatic question particle’, *iõgĩ* (*iõr* ‘and’ + *gi*, lexicalized as ‘also’), and between a preposition and following noun, yielding extended forms such as *nûõg* (*nuõ* ‘from’ + *gi*), *iõg* (*iõn* [modern *iõn*] ‘onto’, *to’ + *gi*), *iõg* (*iõ* ‘out of, from’ + *gi*), *priõg* (*priõ* ‘at’ + *gi*), which were particularly widespread in Old Lithuanian texts.
FURTHER READING

Two traditional handbooks of the historical and comparative phonology and morphology of the Baltic languages are Endzelīns 1971, useful for derivational suffixes, and Stang 1966, with a section on the historical prosody of the Baltic languages. The lengthy introduction to Arkadiev 2015 (1–109) presents an up-to-date overview of the field of Baltic linguistics. For a synchronic and diachronic sketch of Lithuanian accentuation, see Lehfeldt 2001: 103–129. A number of individual topics, such as the Baltic neuter, are treated in depth in Petit 2010. Kabelka 1982, Dīnī 2000, and Sabaliauskas 2002 emphasize cultural and historical issues connected with the development of the Baltic languages. The first etymological dictionary of Baltic, Derksen 2015, includes in its introduction an overview of the Baltic languages and their dialects, with special attention to Baltic prosodic phenomena in comparison with Slavic. The classic etymological dictionary of Lithuanian, with information on other Baltic languages, is Fraenkel 1962–65. Smoczyński 2016 emphasizes Baltic ablaut relations, with corresponding Slavic material. An etymological dictionary of Old Lithuanian (through 1700) is now available (Hock 2015). Karulis 1992 is a traditional etymological dictionary of Latvian; etymological and dialectal data can also be found in the classic dictionary of Latvian, Mūlenbachs-Endzelīns (Mūlenbachs 1923–32), available online. Mažiulis 1981 is an annotated edition of all the Old Prussian texts. Etymological dictionaries of Old Prussian include Mažiulis 1988–97 and (for verb forms) Smoczyński 2005. Schmalstieg 1974 offers a grammar of Old Prussian, and Schmalstieg 1976 a review of literature on Old Prussian language, history, and culture. Endzelin 1922 is an exhaustive descriptive and historical grammar of Latvian and its dialects. For an overview of the phonology and morphology of the Latvian dialects in comparison with the standard language, see Gāters 1977. Mathiassen 1996 and 1997 are concise introductory grammars of Latvian and Lithuanian. For a more extensive presentation of Latvian grammar, see Fennell and Gelsen 1980 and, with diachronic notes, Forssman 2001.

NOTES

1 The classic study, based on the evidence of hydronyms, is Toporov and Trubačëv 1962.
2 The *ē, *ō stage is apparently preserved in western Žemaicītis: pēns ‘milk’, dōna ‘bread’, compared with the ie, wo of standard Lithuanian pienas (Latv. piēns), düona.
3 For certain stem classes of the Latvian verb, final shortening of long vowels and diphthongs and apocope of short vowels leads to homonymy between the first-person singular present and past tense forms on the one hand, and the second-person singular and third person in the present tense on the other hand. Thus, the Lithuanian distinction áugu ‘(I) grow’ : áugau ‘(I) grew’ (áugti ‘to grow’), rišu ‘(I) bind, tie’: riša ‘(I) bound, tied’ (rišti ‘to bind’) is lost in Latv. aūgu, risu, and the forms distinguished in Lith. riši ‘(you) bind, tie’: riša ‘(he/she/they) bind, tie’ merge in Latvian as ris.
4 Saussure’s Law originally functioned as an automatic phonetic rule, operating on any instance of stressed short or circumflex followed by acute. However, with the loss of the conditioning environment (phonemic tone on unstressed syllables), together with the effects of Leskien’s Law, the process has become a morphologically conditioned rule. This is most obvious in derivation, where the effects of analogical leveling are already apparent in the earliest texts.
5 Latvian broken tone is described by Lehiste (1972: 313) as “a change in the mode of phonation approximately in the middle of the syllable nucleus [ . . . ] realized as laryngealization or as a glottal stop.”
The choice of *š, *ž for Proto-Baltic is motivated by their subsequent development as h in early Baltic borrowings into Baltic Finnic: Finn. heinä ‘hay’ < CBalt. *šeĩna-, cf. Lith. šiẽnas.

According to Kortlandt (1977: 325–326), the original glottalic feature of the plain voiced stops, together with the inherited laryngeal (merging the PIE laryngeals), was reinterpreted as a prosodic feature of the syllable, continuing to the present in Latvian and Žemaitic (Lithuanian) broken tone acute.

For a phonetic account of this change, see Hamp 2006.


Note that the latter type is not distinguished formally from an *-ā preterit: 1 sg. prašāi, 3 sg. prāšo (prašytı ‘to ask’) is present tense; radaĩ, rādo (rasti ‘to find’) is past. A present in *-ā will typically have a preterit in *-ē: 1 sg. prašiaĩ, 3 sg. prāšė, and thus the distinction between present and preterit is maintained within the same verb.

1. The first-person future forms Lith. dūosiu, Latv. duōšu ‘(I) will give’ are essentially the thematic equivalents of OInd. dāsyámi ‘(I) will give’. A Slavic vestige of this formation is found in the RussCS future participle of byti ‘to be’, byšěsteje, byšoštěje (= Lith. fut. act. ptp. būšiant-: būti ‘to be’) and OČz. probyšučný ‘useful’.


13. This morphological mechanism accounts for a number of apparent exceptions to Winter’s Law in Baltic, as an expected acute syllable is replaced by a non-acute (circumflex or short). For example, the short root vowel of Lith. dubiũs ‘deep, hollow’, repeatedly presented in the literature as an exception to Winter’s Law, is in fact associated with the vocalism of intransitive dūbti (dūmba, dūbo) ‘to become hollow, sunken’, an ablaut-based refashioning of the Winter’s Law acute found in the Latvian cognate duōbjš ‘deep’ and the Lithuanian transitive dūobti (3 pres. dūobia) ‘to hollow out’ (see Young 2011).

14. Baltic lacks the - (e)no- formant found for the past passive participle in Slavic and Germanic, although Endzelīns (1971: 97) notes that Latv. dial. vedenie ‘daughter-in-law’ (to vesti, 3 pres. ved ‘to lead; take a wife’) and the like may contain a vestige of this formant; cf. OCS vedenъ, past pass. ptp. to vesti ‘to lead’.

15. The following account of Lithuanian word order, together with examples, is based on Ambrazas et al. 1985: 672–691.

REFERENCES


Arkadiev, Peter; Holvoet, Axel & Wiemer, Björn (eds.) 2015, Contemporary Approaches to Baltic Linguistics, De Gruyter Mouton, Berlin–Boston


Derksen, Rick 2011, Review of Untersuchungen zu den baltischen Sprachen by Daniel Petit, Baltic Linguistics 2: 203–210

Derksen, Rick 2015, Etymological Dictionary of the Baltic Inherited Lexicon, Brill, Leiden–Boston


Ekblom, Richard 1933, Die lettischen Akzentarten, Almqvist & Wiksell, Uppsala


Endzelin, Jan 1922, Lettische Grammatik, A. Gulbis, Riga


Forssman, Berthold 2001, Lettische Grammatik, J. H. Röll, Dettelbach


Hock, Wolfgang (ed.), 2015, Altlitauisches etymologisches Wörterbuch (3 vols.), Baar, Hamburg

Kabelka, Jonas 1982, Baltų filologijos įvadas, Mokslas, Vilnius


Karaliūnas, Simas 1987, Baltų kalbų struktūrų bendrybės ir jų kilmė, Mokslas, Vilnius

Karulis, Konstantīns 1992, Latviešu etimologiās vārdnīca (2 vols.), Avots, Riga


Lehfeldt, Werner 2001, Einführung in die morphologische Konzeption der slavischen Akzentologie, 2nd ed., Verlag Otto Sagner, Munich

LIV² = *Lexikon der Indogermanischen Verben*, Rix, Helmut (ed.), Dr. Ludwig Reichert Verlag, Wiesbaden 2001

Mathiassen, Terje 1996, *A Short Grammar of Lithuanian*, Slavica, Columbus, Ohio

Mathiassen, Terje 1997, *A Short Grammar of Latvian*, Slavica, Columbus, Ohio


gram: A new minor text in Old Prussian,” *General Linguistics* 15/3: 159–165

Mūlenbachs, Kārlis 1923–32, *Mūlenbacha Latviešu valodas vārdnīca*, ed. by Jānis End-
zelīns, Izglītības ministrija, Riga [electronic version: http://tezaurs.lv/mev/]

Nau, Nicole 2011, *A Short Grammar of Latgalian*, Lincom Europa, Munich


Petit, Daniel 2010, *Untersuchungen zu den baltischen Sprachen*, Brill, Leiden


Saussure, Ferdinand de 1896, “Accentuation lituanienne,” *Indogermanische Forschun-
gen* 6 (Anzeiger): 157–166

Schmalstieg, William R. 1974, *An Old Prussian Grammar: The Phonology and Mor-

phology of the Three Catechisms*, The Pennsylvania State University Press, University

Park, Pennsylvania


Schmalstieg, William R. 1988, *A Lithuanian Historical Syntax*, Slavica, Columbus, Ohio


Stang, Christian S. 1966, *Vergleichende Grammatik der Baltischen Sprachen*, Univer-


Toporov, V.N. & Trubačëv, O.N. 1962, *Lingvističeskij analiz gidronimov verxnego Pod-
neprov’ja*, Akademija Nauk SSSR, Institut slavjanovedenija, Moscow


Zinkevičius, Zigmantas 2005, *Lietuvių tautos kilmė*, Mokslo ir enciklopedijų leidybos insti-
tutas, Vilnius
INTRODUCTION

The Slavic language family constitutes a widely distributed genetic grouping of languages spoken today from Central Europe to the Pacific, represented by standard languages that are traditionally divided into three branches: West – Czech, Slovak; Polish; Upper and Lower Sorbian; South – Slovene; Croatian, Bosnian, Serbian, Montenegrin; Macedonian, Bulgarian; and East – Belarusian, Ukrainian, Russian. The standard languages reflect ethnic and cultural distinctions that largely crystallized in the 19th century and as such are not ideal reflections of the genetic development of Slavic linguistic variation from the proto-language. For example, standard Croatian, Bosnian, Serbian, and Montenegrin are based on a single genetic dialect, Štokavian, but now are stylized in their officially valorized forms to fit the national identity projects of four post-Yugoslav states. Russian has a considerable lexical component of South Slavic origin, owing to its diglossic origins in the medieval period. Other Slavic language varieties – sometimes referred to as Slavic micro-languages – that have to a greater or lesser extent become codified but lack robust (or any) institutional support, exemplify further variegation, e.g., Kashubian (a West Slavic language spoken in the environs of Gdańsk), Rusyn (Carpathian variety of East Slavic with some West Slavic features), Silesian (transitional variety of West Slavic between the Czecho-Slovak sub-branch and Polish), Prekmurje Slovene (divergent variety of Slovene), and Kajkavian Croatian (non-standardized variety of Croatian with affinity to Slovene). Attested but extinct Slavic language varieties, for which descriptive information is available, include Polabian († mid-18 c.; westernmost Slavic language, along the Elbe/Laba river in today’s Germany), Pomeranian († medieval period; along the Baltic at the mouths of the Oder and Vistula rivers), and Slovincian († early 20 c.; northwestern Poland, where it was perhaps a variety of Kashubian). Another variety (or varieties) of Slavic existed in today’s Austria and Hungary, which, although unattested, is “Pannonian” Slavic.

Textual attestation of Slavic begins in the early second millennium A.D. with the Freising Folia (ca. 1000, written in Carolingian [Latin] script in a language with close affinity to what would later become Slovene) and the texts of the Cyrillo-Methodian tradition proceeding from the mid 19th c., though with extant manuscripts surviving from the 11th–12th cc. (Canonical “Old Church Slav[on]jic”). The latter are written in the Glagolitic alphabet, which was designed, based in part on existing alphabets, to reflect the sound structure of Slavic as it was spoken in the 9th c. around Thessaloniki; or its successor, the Cyrillic alphabet, which was based on contemporary Greek uncial script, mapping closely the (roughly) letter-to-phoneme correspondences of Glagolitic. An important and still growing body of texts are the Novgorod Birchbark Letters, which attest to the vernacular language (i.e., not influenced by the language of the church) of northern Russia.
in the 12th–15th cc. and, by virtue of the dialect’s peripheral position, illuminate archaic features of medieval Slavic. The language variation found in contemporary standard languages and dialects along with OCS serve as material for the comparative reconstruction of prehistoric stages of Slavic. In the exposition, focus will be on OCS forms, supplemented by material from living languages and dialects, where relevant.
Periodization

Slavic is a satem language (cf. OCS вься 'village', Olnd. віш- 'dwelling', Alb. вис ‘locality’ || Lat. vicus, Gr. οἶκος, Goth. weihs) and its closest congener the Baltic branch of Indo-European (see the chapter on Balto-Slavic). Periodization of Slavic is necessarily schematic before the period of the earliest attestations, which coincide with the beginning of disintegration into distinct dialect groups that can be more or less mapped onto the contemporary standard (“daughter”) languages. In this chapter we will operate with the following terminological designations:

Proto-Balto-Slavic – The emergent dialects whose innovations are distinct from Indo-European but are shared with dialects that were to become Baltic and Slavic.

Proto-Slavic – The emergent dialects whose innovations are distinct from Baltic but are shared with dialects that were to become Slavic. The reconstructions of PBSl. and PSl. are schematic and may be in some instances anachronistic because the time depth precludes precise dating. The representations in these system are given in small caps to make them visually distinct from CSL., which is the system underlying attested forms in living Slavic languages. Mutatis mutandis, Proto-Baltic refers to the Baltic forms paralleling PSl.

The term Common Slavic will be used in this chapter to refer to forms that underlie the earliest attested and contemporary Slavic languages as well as to the representations of these forms that are most familiar to scholars of Slavic, representing the vowel qualities presumed to be reflected in OCS (i.e., i, y, u, è, a; ĝ, q; e, o, b, h; see chart below).¹

The Proto-Balto-Slavic period is contested in the literature with regard to the relationship between the two parts, i.e., whether Baltic and Slavic constituted a unified speech community, underwent common and parallel innovations because of proximity and/or bilingualism, or converged anew after a period of divergence. The facts cannot be interpreted unequivocally in favor of any one of these scenarios, so perhaps the most prudent, if unsatisfyingly equivocal, view is to consider the Proto-Balto-Slavic period one of a closer-knit interaction than with any other dialects emerging from Indo-European.

Emergence of Slavic as a historical speech community, migrations

The Late Common Slavic period (ca. 500–1000 A.D.) coincides with the moment when a Slavic speech community appears relatively clearly in the historical record (mentioned by the Byzantines in 527; see Schenker 1995: 15ff.) as it expands from its core area and comes into contact with other speech communities. How the expansion proceeded has engendered considerable debate, ranging from a traditional view that sees the westward spread as owing to migration (e.g., Andersen 1996, 1999, 2003, Doluxanov 2000, Greenberg 2010) to a diffusion model that, in its fully articulated version, views the speech community as having developed a homogenized lingua franca used by both Avar elites and confederates, including the Slavs, in the Avar Khaganate (Lunt 1984–1985). For further discussion see Nichols 1993, Curta 2004, Snoj and Greenberg 2012.

On a micro-level the settlement pattern of Slavic communities centered on the župa (< *gewpeh; Snoj 2003: s.v.) ‘a traditional district organized around a tribe’, which Pleterski describes as the building block of a “fractal society” of independent or loosely connected tribal units (2013: 10). These units were also the units of migration, which is reflected in the geographical dislocation and distal association of dialect features (see, for example, Andersen 1996, 1999, Schallert & Greenberg 2007).
In turn, the issue of whence the migrations originate has been the subject of controversy, though the clusters of Slavic hydronyms, in proximity with Baltic ones, found in the Dniester and Dnepr river systems of today’s Ukraine provide a good anchoring point (Trubačev 1968), after which the Slavic speakers most likely spread by way of and across the Danube into central and southern Europe.

Disintegration of Common Slavic and language contact

The second millennium A.D., often referred to as the time of “disintegration” of Common Slavic (Pol. rozpad, Russ. raspad), was a time of significant divergence among the Slavic languages owing to increasing geographical spread, linguistic drift, contact with Slavic and non-Slavic languages, and the rise and fall of local, confessional, and national identities. Structural effects that might be mentioned are the preservation of case marking in East Slavic and enrichment with additional case distinctions in Russian, brought about by contact with Finnic, viz. the partitive genitive and secondary (“concrete”) locative cases in standard Russian, which may be seen as just the tip of the iceberg with regard to convergent developments that have taken place among Baltic, Finnic, and northern Russian dialects. Central European Slavic languages, including the living West Slavic languages and the western South Slavic languages (especially Slovene and Croatian), have convergence features in morphosyntactic and lexical domains that are due to centuries-long contact with German, e.g., the use of prefixed imperfective verbs in narrated sequences of events (see Dickey 2011), or the development of a definite article, parallel to German die/der/das and Hungarian a(z), in Czech (Doudleby dialect) ti tahouni se používali po posekání obilí ... a gdiš se strniště špatňe posekalo, to tam bili ti kozi ‘the draft horses were used after harvesting the crops ... and when the stubble was poorly cut, then came the goats’ (Holub 2014: 183). The eastern South Slavic languages, Macedonian and Bulgarian, have undergone significant grammatical change as part of the Balkan convergence area. The dramatic nature of the structural change is heightened by the fact that in the earliest texts, OCS (in focus in this chapter) reflects the language state not long after it was relatively unified (“Common Slavic”), and the epicenter of Balkan features is in today’s Macedonia, the home territory of the first Slavic language planners, Constantine and Methodius.

PHONOLOGY

Vowels

| TABLE 11.11 PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN TO LATE COMMON SLAVIC VOWELS |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| PIE               | PSI               | LCSl              |
| long vowels and diphthongs | /tense/ [long] vowels |
| *ī     | *ī* | i |
| *ey    | *YE |  |
| *oy    | *AY |  |
| *ay    |     |  |
| *ū     | *U  | y  |
| *ow    | *AW | u  |
| *aw    |     |  |
| *ew    | *EW | ‘u |
Monophthongization of diphthongs

The transition from the PSI. to the CSl. stage, which underlies the attested and living systems of Slavic languages, is marked by the reshaping of syllables on the principle of “rising sonority” (see also below with regard to consonantal changes). In this set of developments, diphthongs monophthongized, and the functional load was transferred from quantitative to qualitative vowel contrasts. The equivalences are given in the chart above. The Late Common Slavic vowel system, which is close to that underlying OCS, was structured thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 11.12 Late Common Slavic Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high-mid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>central</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The monophthongization being a syllable-level phenomenon, diphthongs were treated differently in closed (tautosyllabic position) vs. open syllables (heterosyllabic), which gave rise to new alternations, e.g., *plew-/plow- > PSl. *PLAW-TÉY, *PLA[=E-XI] > OCS pluti, plošni ‘flow, swim’ inf., 2 sg.; PIE *sve-krų, *SVEKR[U]W-E-S > OCS svekry, svekrě ‘husband’s mother’ nom. sg., gen. sg. (cf. Sln. kri, krvi); PIE *ken-/kın- > PSl. *ZA-K(E)N-TÉI, ZA-KI[N-E-XI] > OCS začěti, začněši ‘begin’ inf., 2 sg. With regard to relative chronology, the monophthongization followed the first palatalization of velars and preceded the second and third palatalizations. Moreover, the change of PIE *ew > CSl. *(j)u antedates deiotation following consonants, e.g., PIE *lewðyeyes > PSl. *LYAWD-IY-E > OCS Ijudije; PIE *kewmo- > PSl. *SYAWM-A-S > OCS šumi, (also spelled šjumъ) (see also below). Note, however, that heterosyllabic *ew merges with *aw, e.g., PIE *newo- > OCS novъ ‘new’.

Syllabic synharmony and palatalization

The opposition of back-front was fundamental to the system, as is evident from the fact that (at first) consonants followed by front vowels were sub-phonemically palatalized. Palatalizations of velars and changes in clusters of Čj into palatal consonants (“deiotation”) introduced a systematic opposition between plain and palatal consonants (see further below). On the one hand, there was a tendency to adjust the tonality of vowels so that palatal consonants were followed by front vowels (“intrasyllabic harmony”), e.g., PEs moryo- > PSl. *MAR-Y-A-(N) > OCS morje. The beginning of phonemic palatalization is perhaps attributable to the reinterpretation of PSl *ē (CSI. *ē) as *a after palatal consonants, which disrupted the pattern of intrasyllabic harmony, e.g., PIE *gʷʰēr- > PSl. *GER-A-S > CSI. *žarъ (Russ., Sln., BCMS žar). This points to the view that CSl. was sub-phonemically diphthongized [ˈæ], and subsequently raised to a high-mid diphthong throughout most of the Slavic territory, as is also indirectly recoverable from later reflexes of *č, cf. OCS rěka, Slk. rieka, Croat. rijeka. The onglide portion of the diphthong was evidently reinterpreted as a feature of the preceding consonant. Palatalization remained a fundamental element of the phonological system of Russian and Belarusian, whereas in Ukrainian and the West Slavic languages palatalization has been positionally eliminated and, in South Slavic in all but Bulg., eliminated altogether, save for the contrasts that arose with the loss of post-consonantal j (see below).

Elimination of diphthongs with r, l

Sequences of vowel + r, l were eliminated in the LCSl. period and can be dated to the second half of the first millennium A.D., as evidenced by borrowings of toponyms assimilated during the migrations, e.g., Finn. Alvatti → Russ. Lovat’ (river name), Finn. *aal-dokas → Russ. Ladoga (lake name), Lat. Albōna → Croat. Labin (toponym), Lat. Arba → Croat. Rab (island name). The process ended by the 9th c., as borrowings related to Slavic Christianization show up without metathesis, e.g., Lat. altāre → OCS olśtař ‘altar’. Word-internal developments show dialect differentiation, where the open-syllable principle is realized differently for West and South Slavic, which show metathesis and lengthening of the vowel, and East Slavic, where the vowel is duplicated on either side of the consonant. The development was not carried through fully in Polabian. Examples: PIE *(h₂)wolk-o- → PSl. WALS-A-S > Plb. vlās, Pol., ULśorb. vlòs, Cz., Slk. vlás, Sln. las, Mac., Bulg. vlås, OCS vlásъ || BRuss. volas, Ukr., Russ. volo; PIE *gʰordʰo- > PSl.

**Contraction, jer fall**

Among the final processes that marked the restructuring of Slavic are the loss of intervocalic *j* (“contraction”) and the “fall of the jers” (or “Havlík’s Law”), the alternating loss of the short lax vowels, *ъ, ъ*. These processes began ca. the 10th c. A.D. in West and South Slavic and progressed eastward, where contraction was limited in East Slavic and jer fall progressed well into the 12th c. Contraction resulted in increased frequency of long vowels in those areas where quantity distinctions remained phonemic, cf. CSI. *moldaja ‘young’ f. sg. def. > Cz., Slk. mladá || Sln., BCMS mladā || Russ., Ukr. molodaja; CSl. *dělaješi ‘you make, do’ > Cz. děláš || Russ. delaeš [d’elajiš].


**Suprasegmentals**

The development of Slavic word prosody persists as one of the most dynamic areas of inquiry, and considerable debate surrounds its details. A basic account recognizes that PSl. developed a paradigmatic accent system with three patterns, which since Štang 1957 are referred to as accent paradigms (a.p.) A, B, and C. A.p. A is characterized by stable stem stress throughout the paradigm and is characterized by the “old acute” accent, which developed on long syllables typically of laryngeal origin. A.p. B has consistent stress on the ending alternating with “neo-acute” accent in the first syllable before the ending. The mobile a.p. C displays alternations between ending-final stress (or stress on the endings in acute-marked grammatical morphemes) in some forms and a falling tone (“circumflex”) on absolute initial syllables. In PSl. (and PBalt.) each syllable possessed a suprasegmental marking (or lacked it), which by LCSl. had resolved to a single stress for each phonological word.

A.p. A and B originate in PIE stem-stressed (barytone) paradigms and were differentiated by laryngeal (non-apophonic) length in stems of type A. After the application of Hirt’s Law, (“old acute”) stress was retracted or, in the case of two consecutive laryngealized syllables, assigned to the first of them, e.g., PIE *korh₂w-eh₂ > PSI. *KARW-A
> CSL. *koɾv-a > Sln. kráva, Russ., Ukr. koróva ‘cow’, cf. PIE *gʷén-eh₁ > PSl. *gʷe₁nā > CSL. *ţen-ă > Russ. žená ‘wife, woman’. Non-acute stems underwent a forward shift of stress (Dybo’s Law), which was subsequently retracted in internal syllables (Stang’s Law), which in turn gave rise to the “neo-acute” rising-stress profile of a.p. C. The Slavic mobile type arose in PIE end-stressed and mobile paradigms (Meillet’s Law) with analogical loss of the laryngeal (“old-acute”) marking where applicable. The Slavic paradigms correspond to Lithuanian accent paradigms 1 (= A), 2 (= B), 3, 4 (= C) as in the following chart. Different scholars have treated the origin of the mobile pattern in Baltic and Slavic differently, with the two major schools – the Moscow School, led by Vladimir A. Dybo, and the Leiden School, led by Frederik Kortlandt – viewing the pattern as archaic (Moscow) vs. innovative (Leiden) with respect to Vedic and Greek. The exposition here cannot do justice to the complexities of the developments, for which reason the interested reader is referred to the critique in the appendix to Lehfeldt 2001 and to Kapović 2015 (esp. 195ff.) for the current state of the art, as well as the literature cited therein.

### TABLE 11.13 PIE, BALTIc, AND SLAVIC ACCENT PARADIGM CORRESPONDENCES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vedic, Greek, Germanic</th>
<th>Baltic</th>
<th>Slavic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>barytone</td>
<td>1 – Lith. stem-stressed with acute tone; glottalized (“broken”) tone in Lith. Lowland (Ţemaitian) dials. and Latvian</td>
<td>A – stem-stressed with “old-acute” stress; secondary traces of glottal stop or glottalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 – Lith. stem-stressed non-acute tone with end stress on endings</td>
<td>B – ending-stressed alternating with neo-acute on stem-final syllable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oxytone</td>
<td>3 – Lith. mobile-stressed with “acute” tone in stem-stressed forms; glottalized tone in Lith. Lowland dials. and Latvian</td>
<td>C – mobile stressed, alternating between word-final stress and initial (recessive) “circumflex” stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 – Lith. mobile-stressed with “circumflex” tone in stem-stressed forms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Old acute” stress is often marked with a double acute (ă) to distinguish it from the “neo-acute” (long: ā, short: ē) in order to avoid specifying the nature of the specific suprasegmental properties in question. The cover terms may be read as empty labels for suprasegmental contrasts. However, in this author’s view the laryngeal origin of the old-acute stress type can be read as “glottalized”; indirect evidence of its persistence in Slavic as either a glottalized (creaky-voiced) vowel or a glottal stop up through LCSl. is found in South Slavic pitch-accent systems: In Slovene in non-final stressed syllables, the tone contour is low in a phonetically long syllable (Sln. bráta ‘brother’ gen. sg.), while in final or monosyllabic words the tone is high in contrastively short syllables (Sln. brát ‘brother’ nom. sg., vs. long falling in “circumflex” brȃt ‘to go read’ sup.). In BCMS the reflex is short falling stress, e.g., brát, brȃta. To wit, creaky-voiced syllables are correlated with low pitch and vowel lengthening, while glottal stops are correlated with high pitch and vowel shortening. In other words, on this view, which builds on Kortlandt’s view of the persistence of laryngeals in Baltic and Slavic (see Kortlandt 1985) creaky voice developed from the “old-acute”-marked syllables in non-final syllables in Sln., into
glottal stops in final or monosyllables and, in BCMS, in any old-acute-stressed syllable, and were subsequently reinterpreted upon the loss of the glottal feature as either long rising tone or short falling stressed syllables, respectively (Greenberg 2007, Holub & Greenberg 2013). In accord with tradition the sign for the long neo-acute (á) is used here, where it means a long rising tone, as is found, for example, in Kajkavian and Čakavian Croat. sǔša ‘drought’ (< LCSl. sǔša < PSl. *sáux-y-ā). The grave accent (è) signifies the neo-acute in short syllables, e.g., LCSl. kòlъ ‘stake’ (< PSl. *kal-às), *vòl’a ‘will’ (noun) (< PSl. *val-y-ā), as well as stress in endings that is not of laryngeal origin, e.g., *kolà ‘stake’ gen. sg. In the latter case, the signification recognizes that in examples where length has been preserved or extended to the stressed syllable, the surface forms in tonal dialects display rising pitch, e.g., Čakavian Croat. nògu ‘of a foot’ gen. sg. In the case of the “circumflex,” the signs borrowed from Serbo-Croatian dialectology for the falling tone are typically used (long: ā, short: ē). Here, instead, for reconstructed Slavic forms the ictus mark (‘CV) is used to emphasize the default (phonemically unstressed) nature of the inherited Proto-Slavic circumflex, which is a fixed (falling-contour) stress in the first syllable of the phonological word, e.g., CSl. *nogǫ ‘foot’ acc. sg., *na nogǫ ‘onto (the) foot’. This configuration is preserved as such in, e.g., BCMS nȍgu, nȁ nogu (see Jakobson 1963: 71–72).

### Table 11.14 Accentual Paradigms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slavic a.p.</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>Baltic</th>
<th>Slavic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gr. φράτρη ‘brother’</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSl. *dýmn, *dýma &gt; Sln. dīm, dīma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*dũh,m dú- &gt; Ved. dhūmā-</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSl. *sējati, sē;o, Croat. sijati, sijem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gr. θύμος ‘smoke’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*seh,-ye/o- ‘sow’</td>
<td>Lith. séti, séju</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>*d’worom &gt; Ved. dvāram</td>
<td>Lith. dvāras (a. p. 2)</td>
<td>CSl. *dvòrъ, gen. sg. *dvora &gt; Sln. dvör, dvòra; Croat. Čak. dial. dvör, dvòra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘courtyard’</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSl. *(v)osą, *(v)osö &gt; Sln. ósa, óso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*wobšeh2 &gt; OHG waspa</td>
<td>Lith. vapsa (a. p. 2 &gt; 4)</td>
<td>CSl. *g̃näti, *ženò, *ženętę &gt; Sln. gnäti, ženem, žene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘wasp’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*g̃e’en- &gt; Ved. hánti, Gr. θένον ‘hit, drive (trans.’)</td>
<td>Lith. giñti, genu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>*suHnús, Ved. sūmś ‘son’</td>
<td>Lith. sūmś (a. p. 3)</td>
<td>CSl. *sym, Sln. sīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*ōh,yūm, Gr. ōuvov ‘egg’</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSl. *aje, Croat. dial. jaje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*g̃eym-eh2, Ved. himá</td>
<td>Lith. žièmą (a. p. 4)</td>
<td>CSl. *zimä, *žimq, Russ. zimä, zimu, Sln. zimə nom. sg., na zimo ‘in winter’ (acc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘dies’</td>
<td></td>
<td>CSl. *merti, *mərə, *muretę &gt; ORuss. imru, umrětb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Winter’s Law

In Baltic and Slavic an additional suprasegmental peculiarity, noted relatively recently (Winter 1978), is the appearance of acute-marked length in otherwise short-vowel syllables preceding a PIE voiced unaspirated stop, e.g., PIE *sed- ‘sit’ > PBalt., PSl. SÉD-E-TÉY ‘sit’ inf. > Lith. sèdëti, OCS sèdëti (vs. Lat. sedère). Kortlandt (1978) has claimed that this feature corroborates Gamkrelidze and Ivanov’s reconstruction of the PIE consonant
system as consisting in plain : glottalized : aspirated rather than the traditional plain : voiced : voiced aspirated (Gamkrelidze & Ivanov 1973; see also Vermeer 1984: 335, Kortlandt 1985), in which it is assumed that the glottalic feature for the consonant is transferred to the preceding vowel. Winter’s Law is also correlated with the appearance of acute stress in the relevant syllable, suggesting that, if the glottalized interpretation of the old plain voiced series is correct, then the glottalization was transferred to the preceding vowel in Baltic and Slavic. In the chart below, the LCSl. reflexes include later changes marked “cond.” for conditioned changes, explained forthwith.

Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.15 PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN TO LATE COMMON SLAVIC CONSONANTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kʷ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʷ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʷʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ǵ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ǵʰ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*r, *l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*y, *w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Elimination of geminates, dissimilation *t/d > *s before *t

Inherited geminate fricative clusters were eliminated, e.g., PIE *skʰy- → PSI. *SÁI-NI > OCS sěmb ‘shadow’, PIE *tu₃s-(d)kmt- > PSI. *TUSINT-Y-I > OCS tysešti ‘thousand’. Clusters of two dentals stops become fricative + stop. This change is late PIE, as it is shared by Baltic as well as Indo-Aryan, Germanic, Celtic, Latin, and Albanian, e.g., PIE *h₁ed- → PSI. *YÉS-TEY > OCS jasti ‘to eat’; PIE *kʰiṭṭ- > PSI. *KIST-I > OCS čbstb ‘honor’. A small number of examples point to the Slavic merger of PIE *pt > PSI. *TT > st, e.g., ORuss./OCS stryť ‘father’s brother’, ORuss. Stribogъ ‘Slavic pagan god name’ (both derived from PIE *ph₃tṛ- ‘father’); similarly ORuss. nesterā ‘niece’ (< PIE *nept-), though PSI. *TT > t is also observed, e.g., OCS netĭ ‘nephew’.

RUKI change

PIE *s changes to x in PSI. following the segments r, u, k, l, a change that pre-dates the merger of the fricative reflex of PIE *k in Slavic with PSI. *s, e.g., PIE *w³ts- > PSI.
\*wirx- \> ORuss. \*virxъ, but PIE \*pork- \> PSI. \*parSen(t)- \> OCS \*prasę ‘pig’. The change parallels a similar development in Indo-Iranian (\*š) and Baltic (\*š), as well as, possibly, Armenian (p. 206, 495, 438). Further examples: PIE \*snus-eh₂ \> PSI. \*snuxā \> OCS snsxa ‘daughter-in-law’ (cf. OInd. snusā); PIE \*ksewbʰ \> PSl. xūbā \> Cz. chyba ‘mistake’, Ukr. xybutory ‘to wobble’ (cf. OInd. kṣūbhyaṇi ‘to shake, vacillate’); PIE \*maysa- \> PSI. \*māx- \> OCS mēć ‘bladder, bellows’ (cf. Lith. mañus ‘bag’). The change fails to occur before an obstruent, giving rise to alternations as in OCS rēcъ ‘I said’ aor. vs. rēsta ‘they both said’ aor. \< PSI. \*rek-s-AM, \*rek-s-TĀ. Word-initial \(x\)- developed from the generalization of the \(x\)-reflex from prefixed forms (as well as initial \*sk- \> \*ks-), e.g., OCS (\*při)xoditi ‘to walk’ (‘to approach’) \< PSI. \*préy-s-ad-i-TĖY (derived from PIE \*sed-/sod-/sd- ‘sit’).

**Loss of final consonants**

Slavic underwent a series of changes often referred to as the “law of rising sonority” or the “law of open syllables,” which eliminated syllables culminating in a segment other than a vowel. The changes developed from the elimination of consonants in word-final position, likely in the first centuries A.D., to the elimination of liquid diphthongs in the last centuries of the first millennium (the type PSI. \*gارد-as \> OCS grads || ORuss. gorodъ ‘fortification, city’). These changes included the monophthongization of diphthongs and the development of prothetic consonants, as well as entailing structural changes in grammatical endings. These issues will be discussed below in the appropriate sections. Here we will focus on some of the early changes in Slavic. The earliest change is loss of final \*r, which is shared with Baltic, e.g., PIE \*meh₂tēr \> PSI. \*māti, \> OCS mati ‘mother’, PBalt. \*mātē \> Lith. mōtē ‘wife’.

**Cluster simplification**

In addition to the adjustments in clusters mentioned above, remaining clusters and those arising in word formation were simplified, the result of which is the elimination of all clusters aside from fricative + stop, cf. PIE \*yeh₂- ‘travel’ + \*sd- ‘sit’ (Ø-grade) \> PSI. \*yēzd-i-TĖY ‘to ride’ \> OCS jazdit’ ‘travel’, BCMS jēzditi ‘to ride a horse’ [Greenberg and Dickey 2006]), though syllable onsets could also end in a sonorant, e.g., PIE \*h₂eyskreh₂ \> PSI. \*yiskr-Ā \> OCS iskra ‘spark’. Examples: CC \> ĆĆ – PIE \*wobʰhseh₂ \> \*PSI. \*as-Ā \> OCS oṣa ‘wasp’; PIE \*h₁rouwdʰso- \> PSI. \*raws- \> OCS rōsъ ‘red’; \*h₁dspt-snì- \> PSI. \*děsn-Ì- \> OCS děšný ‘gums’; PIE \*lowksneh₂ \> PSI. \*lawn-Ā \> OCS luna ‘moon’; \*dʰgēmi ‘earth’ loc. sg. \> \*zem-\*-Ā \> OCS zemlja ‘earth’; PIE \*dʰolbʰ- \> PSI. \*dal-tà \> OCS diļeto, Croat. dlijetо ‘chisel’; CC \> ĆĆ – PIE \*ob-+ \*h₁welk-/ h₁welk- ‘drāg’ \> PSI. \*ab-alk- \> OCS oblakъ ‘cloud’; PIE \*nok’tâs \> \*nak트-Ì- \> OCS noštъ ‘night’; PIE \*wronk-eh₂ \> PSI. \*rank-Ā \> OCS rōka ‘hand’.

The cluster \*sr developed excrescent \(t\)- in conformity with the cluster constraint adduced above, an innovation also found in Baltic, Albanian, Germanic, and Celtic, e.g., PIE \*strew-/srov- ‘flow’ \> PSI. \*straw-g-Ā, \*straw-m-Ū, -em- \> OCS strugъ ‘flow’, Strumień ‘hydronym in Poland’, cf. Eng. stream. The constraint remained productive into the historical period, e.g., OCS Izdraitъ ‘Israel’; \*v느drydatъ ‘to break out crying’ perfect., cf. rydatъ ‘to cry’.

A particular case is -gt-/-kt- before ūi (and later PSI. \*γ), which merged with reflexes of CSL. \*t, \*dʰug₂tēr- \> PSI. \*duk₂t- \> OCS dbšiti ‘daughter’, Russ. doč’, Ocz. dci, for which reason \*kt/ was likely realized as \*[t] (see Vermeer 2014: 217 and below).
First palatalization of velars

Among the first Slavic innovations exclusive of Baltic is the palatalization of velars *k, g, x before front vowels, which occurred after the RUKI change and before the monophthongization of diphthongs. This places the change in the first half of the first millennium A.D. Borrowings from Slavic into Greek show that it was completed by the 7th c. A.D. (e.g., Črnica > Κτέρνιστι ‘toponym in Messenia’, *Stružija > Строузя ‘toponym in Phoeis’, *Vršić > Βερσίς ‘toponym in Achaia’). The reflexes are uniform in Slavic: PSl. *k, g, x > CSI. *č, ž, š. It is generally considered that *ž had originally paralleled the development of *č by having an (allophonic) affricate stage *dž, which is observed only indirectly in clusters of *zg before a front vowel, e.g., PSl. *drozg-iy-ā > CSl. *droždźja > OCS droždija (with other vocalic affixes) Ukr. droždźi, Prekmurje Sln. droždže ‘yeast’. Accordingly, *sk also resulted in a combination of fricative + affricate, e.g., PIE *h₂eskโร-ske- > PSl. *AYSK-E-MAS > Sln. iščemo ‘seek’ 1 pl.

Prothesis

Prothetic consonants in initial syllables where the inherited onset was vocalic were inserted, though differing results occur in the daughter languages owing to later developments. Examples: PIE *h₁ŋh₂men- > PSl. *INMEN- > CSI. *jmę > OCS imę, OCz. jmě ‘name’; PIE *h₂eskreh₂ > PSl. *AIŠKR- > CSI. *jiskra > OCS iskra, Cz. jiskra ‘spark’; PIE *ŋh₂uh₁- > PSl. *ENZK- > OCS jezykъ ‘tongue, language; heathen’; PIE *ŋ ‘in’ > PSl. UN > CSI. *vъ > OCS vъ ‘in’; PIE * Alpsko- > PSl. *OSK- > CSI. *vysoł > OCS vysokъ ‘high, tall’ nom. sg. m. indef.

Second and third palatalization of velars

If the monophthongization of diphthongs marks the beginning of Common Slavic, the second and third palatalization of velars and “deiotation” give rise to isoglosses cutting across the Slavic speech areas, marking the disintegration of Common Slavic. Traditionally, the development has been broken into two, presumably chronologically distinct, changes. However, the second and third palatalizations were likely a single process with
two sets of conditioning environments: the “second” palatalization is triggered by the rise of new front vowels arising after the monophthongization of diphthongs (see above) and the “third” by a preceding front vowel.

**TABLE 11.18 SECOND AND THIRD VELAR PALATALIZATIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>PSI</th>
<th>Attestations</th>
<th>Conditioning environment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*kʷoyt-eh₂</td>
<td>*KAYN-Á</td>
<td>OCS cěna ‘price’</td>
<td>*K before front V (“2 pal.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*kʷoyto-</td>
<td>*KWAYT-A-S</td>
<td>OCS cvětn ‘flower’, ‘color’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wîkʷo-</td>
<td>*WILK-AYXU</td>
<td>ORuss. volecêx ‘wolves’ loc. pl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʷoylo-</td>
<td>*GAYL-Á</td>
<td>OCS tkelo ‘very’, Sln. zelo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*gʷwowy-sd-²</td>
<td>*GWAYZD-Á</td>
<td>OCS dvěžda ‘star’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ksōy-ro-</td>
<td>*XAYR-Á</td>
<td>OCS xěř ‘blue-gray’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*sɣwokʷ-</td>
<td>*GRAYX-AY</td>
<td>OCS grěsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mēh₁s-</td>
<td>*MES(E)NK-A-</td>
<td>OCS měseč ‘moon’</td>
<td>*K after front V (“3 pal.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*stigʰo-</td>
<td>*STIG-Á</td>
<td>OCS stěška ‘path’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*wiso-</td>
<td>*WIX-A</td>
<td>OCS visň ‘all’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The diatopic variation found in the palatalization reflexes reveals a dynamic period of change, where the differing rates of expansion of the innovations result in varying relative chronologies (see esp. Andersen 1969, Vermeer 2014). Alongside the second and third palatalizations, the lenition of CSl. *g > γ was under way in much of central Slavic, ultimately affecting Cz., USorb., Slovak, NW Sln., part of Čakavian Croat., BRuss., Ukr. and southern Russ. These are classic examples of center-periphery phenomena. For example, in the Novgorod-Pskov area (peripheral), as attested in the Birchbark Letters, e.g., kěle ‘whole’ nom. sg. m., xěri ‘of a gray cloth’ gen. sg. f. (cf. modern Russ. celyj, seryj), indicates that the second palatalization failed to reach this area. In West Slavic (central) the results of the palatalization of *k, g are identical to the results of the deiotation of *t, d (see below). If it is assumed that the second and third palatalizations resulted in [ť, ď] (palatal stops) in WSl., then the change of *x in the second and third palatalization to š follows the systemic phonemicization of the series as palatals (rather than alveo-palatals, as elsewhere) (Vermeer 2014: 189). This scenario is confirmed by the fact that in West Slavic only the reflexes of the second palatalization before v have been phonologized as k, g (Pol. kwiat ‘flower’, gwiazda ‘star’). Had they been affricated, as elsewhere, depalatalization as stops would have been unexpected.

**Loss of post-consonantal j (“deiotation”)**

The last major CSl. change was the simplification of clusters of C + j, which in all cases resulted in the elimination of j (whence the traditional term “deiotation”). Dental stops were first palatalized and then, in another wave of innovation, assibilated. The early phase is attested in the Freising Folia, where we find the spelling imoki (2x) (< CSl. *j̞mofo̞tˇj̞b
‘having’ pres. act. ptcp. nom. m. sg.; cf. in the same text v ueki (vъ věky ‘for all time’ acc. pl.). Dental fricatives merged with palatal fricatives from the first palatalization of velars (wherever an affricated realization of *dž < *g + front vowel had not been retained). After labials, j became l, and the sonorants n, l, r developed palatal counterparts. Variation is significant, as can be seen in the following chart.

**TABLE 11.19 ‘DEIOATION’ REFLEXES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>CSI.</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>East</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*tj &gt; <em>ť</em></td>
<td>*kwoyt-o-</td>
<td>*svěťa ‘candle’</td>
<td>Pol. świeca, Cz. svíce, USorb. svěca</td>
<td>Sln. sveča, BCMS svijeca, Mac. sveča, Bulg. svešta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dj &gt; <em>dť</em></td>
<td><em>h,udť</em> ‘red’</td>
<td>*ryĎa ‘rust’</td>
<td>Pol. rdža, Cz. rez, Slk. hrďa, LSorb. rža</td>
<td>Sln. rža, BCMS rđa, Mac. růža, Bulg. ržeda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*sj &gt; <em>š</em></td>
<td>*h,neč-/ h,pok-</td>
<td>*noša ‘something carried, worn’</td>
<td>Pol. nosze, Cz. nůše, Slk. nos, USorb. nosja, Sln. nošа</td>
<td>Sln. noša</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zj &gt; <em>ž</em></td>
<td><em>h,ęg</em> ‘goat’</td>
<td>*koža ‘skin, leather’</td>
<td>Cz. kůže, Slk. koža, USorb. koža, Sln. koža</td>
<td>Sln. koža, BCMS koža, Mac., Bulg. koža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*stj &gt; <em>št</em></td>
<td>*polh- ‘flat’</td>
<td>*plast’ ‘flat garment’</td>
<td>Pol. plaszeć, Cz. plášť, LSorb. plášć</td>
<td>Sln. plasč, BCMS plast, Mac., Bulg. plast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zdj &gt; <em>žď</em></td>
<td>*dus-dyu- ‘bad sky’</td>
<td>*džďa ‘rain’</td>
<td>Pol. deszcz, Cz. déšť, Slk. dážď, USorb. dožďa, Sln. dež</td>
<td>Sln. dež, gen. sg. dežja, Sln. Prekmurje dial. dešč, dežča, Štok. arch. dažd, Mac. dožd, Bulg. dožd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bj &gt; <em>bľ</em></td>
<td>*bľewH- ‘overflow’</td>
<td>*bľujǫ, *bľuva- ‘vomit’ 1 sg., inf. stem</td>
<td>Pol. bluję, Cz. bliji, Slk. bl’ijem</td>
<td>Sln., BCMS bljujem, Mac. blue, Bulg. balva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mj &gt; <em>ml</em></td>
<td>*dį’emi ‘earth’ loc. sg.</td>
<td>*zemľa ‘earth’</td>
<td>ULSorb. blaju</td>
<td>Sln., BCMS zemlja, Mac. zemla, Bulg. zemja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nj &gt; *n’</td>
<td>(Gr. κυδωνια ‘quince’)</td>
<td>*dyn’a ‘melon, pumpkin’</td>
<td>Pol. dynia, Cz. dyně, ULSorb. dynja</td>
<td>Sln. dinja, BCMS dinja, Mac., Bulg. dinja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*lj &gt; <em>ľ</em></td>
<td>*welh- ‘choose’</td>
<td>*volľa ‘will’</td>
<td>Pol., ULSorb. volja</td>
<td>Sln., BCMS, Mac., Bulg. volja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*rj &gt; <em>r</em></td>
<td><em>ģer-</em>/ģor-o- ‘shine’</td>
<td>*zor’a ‘dawn, dusk’</td>
<td>Pol. zorza, Cz. zóře, Slk. zora, ULSorb. zorja</td>
<td>Sln. zorja, BCMS, Mac. zora, Bulg. zorja</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deiotation had also affected velars, with the results being identical to the first palatalization, e.g., PSl. *daļx-y-a > OCS duša ‘soul’. The lack of the reflexes of the j > l’ change after labials in West Slavic and eastern South Slavic is a result of generalization of the non-iotated forms at the morpheme boundary. Toponyms reveal that the change had taken place throughout Slavic, e.g., Pol. Grobla, Lublin, Cz. Liblin, Bulg. Koprivlen, Popovi Drъvlja.

PSl. *w became v throughout Slavic, though there is a tendency to preserve the variant [w] in syllable-final position in some areas, e.g., BRuss. low, Sln. lov [low] < CSL. *lovъ ‘hunt, catch’.

### TABLE 11.20 COMMON SLAVIC CONSONANT SYSTEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>labial</th>
<th>dental</th>
<th>palatal</th>
<th>velar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stops</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>t’</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricatives</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>š</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affricates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasals</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap/trill</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liquid</td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glides</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>j</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MORPHOLOGY

Slavic inflectional morphology continues the synthetic inflection type inherited from PIE, conserving case systems in the nominal system and the general patterns of inflection in the verbal system, albeit transformed by the syllable restructuring that affected the shape of endings. Of particular note is the development of the verbal aspect system in Slavic, whereby systematic distinctions of perfective (“completed,” “viewed as a whole”) vs. imperfective hold for most verbs, e.g., OCS kupiti ‘buy’ perfect. : kupovati ‘buy’ impf. Sub-aspectual and lexical distinctions are accomplished by means of prefixation and suffixation, e.g., (PIE *kʷ eg(h) >) OCS čeznǫti, čeznǫ ‘disappear’ inf., 1 sg., imperf. (CSl. *juž-čeznǫti) > ištezno ti ‘disappear’ perfect.; ištezati ‘idem’ imperf. Within the verbs of motion in unprefixed verbs additional aspectual distinctions hold, often subsumed under the labels determinate (“unidirectional”) vs. indeterminate (“manner of motion,” “multidirectional,” “iterative”), e.g., OCS iti, nesti ‘go’, ‘carry’ det., imperf.; xoditi, nositi ‘walk’, ‘carry’ indet., imperf.

Case marking is well preserved in all but eastern South Slavic – Mac., Bulg., and southern Serbian dialects, which were affected by contact phenomena in the Balkan convergence area. The inherited past tense systems were reduced in West and East Slavic as well as in Sln. and, to a more limited extent, BCMS, to a single construction based on the perfect (aux. of ‘be’ + l-participle). Mac. and Bulg. preserve only simple and coordinated tenses, but they also expanded to include evidentiality, “witnessed” vs. “non-witnessed,” e.g., Mac. Toj beše vo Skopje ‘he was in Skopje’ vs. Toj bil vo Skopje ‘he was supposedly/evidently in Skopje’ (Comrie & Corbett 1993: 272; though the synchronic category has been questioned, see Kempgen et al. 2009: 262–268).

### Nominal morphology

**Nouns**

As in other PIE dialects nominal morphology has become restructured. In Slavic the productive declension patterns have fused PIE theme vowels with case and number markers
to make up the characteristic endings, while those in turn have been reshaped by phonetic changes in word-final position (see above regarding sound change). Root nouns of the type Lat. *nox, noctis 'night' have generalized the non-nom. sg. case forms and reinterpreted the paradigm as an i-stem, e.g., OCS *noštъ 'night' (← PSl. *NAKT-I-M acc. sg.). As a consequence of the rising sonority developments and the fusion of the vowels with grammatical markers, Slavic nominal morphology clearly distinguishes between lexical stems, which always end in a consonant, and grammatical endings, which consist of or begin with a vowel.

Consonantal stem types have largely merged with vocalic stem types in the daughter languages, although, curiously, Sln. has innovated by creating deverbal nouns from the relic ū-stem class, e.g., osvežiti 'to refresh' → osvežitev 'refreshment', perhaps as an extension of the tendency already observable in OCS to create deverbal nouns of the type prěľuby, prěľubъve 'adultery' nom., gen. sg. ← prěľubъiti (< prě- 'trans' + lubъiti 'love'), as well as conflation with deverbatives of the -stъ class, cf. Sln., BCMS, Bulg. bitva 'battle' ← CSL. *biti 'to beat'. Of note is also the Slavic innovation of an ent-stem class denoting offspring, e.g., PIE *dʰehos- 'suckle' → OCS dětę, dětete 'child' nom., gen. sg., PIE *porkъ → OCS prase, prasežete 'piglet' nom., gen. sg.

The nominal system of Slavic conserves all PIE cases but the ablative – which is thought to have merged with the genitive in the o-stem – as well as three genders (f., m., n.) and three numbers (sg., pl., du.). OCS and most of the daughter languages, with the exception of Mac. and Bulg., preserve six syntactic cases (nom., acc., gen., dat., loc., instr.) and a voc. form. OCS, Sln., and LSorb. retain dual number. With regard to form classes OCS displays the consonantal and vocalic stem classes of PIE, though some reorganization of the classes is already evident. The daughter languages have continued to reduce the stem classes, generally with the o- (jo-), ā- (jā-) and i-stems emerging as the target paradigms, subsuming the unproductive consonantal stems. Grammatical gender predominantly aligns as follows: o- (jo-) = m., n.; ā- (jā-) = f.; i- = fem; conflation of case forms occurs (most > least): du. > pl. > sg.; instr., loc., dat. > gen. > nom., acc.

Vocalic stems

The productive o-stem masculines include older layers of inherited nouns, e.g., PIE *sth₂-lo- > OCS stolъ 'chair', PIE *mēms-o- > OCS mešo 'meat', as well as o-grade deverbatives of the type OCS vezъ 'wagon' (cf. vezо 'I convey'), plotъ 'fence' (cf. pleto 'I weave'), and numerous derivatives with suffixes with the o-stem shape, e.g., OCS ostroğъ 'palisade' ← CSL. *ostr- 'sharp'. The u-stem masculines generally merged in individual Late Common Slavic dialects with the o-stems, though in some of the daughter languages the endings have become part of the masculine declension type, sometimes with innovative functions, e.g., marking animacy in Cz. Zbyňk-ovi 'to Zbyňek' dat. sg. (vs. stolъ 'chair' dat. sg.) and partitivity in Russ. čaju 'some tea' (vs. cvět čaja 'the color of the tea'), the additional case meaning also being an effect of the Finnic substratum in northern Russian.

Innovative -jo- and -jā-stem declensions developed in Slavic, built on the o- and ā-stems, respectively. These differ mostly in the adjustment of intrasyllabic harmony, e.g., jo-stem *MAR-I-AM > *moć-e 'sea' nom., acc. sg. Inherited jo-stems are few, but the class remained productive and includes deverbatives such as OCS vozōb 'leader' (cf. voditi 'to lead'), as well as newer borrowings, e.g., OCS kralъ (from Germ. Karl 'Charlemagne'). Innovative palatal stems, such as those that arose through the second palatalization of velars, also decline as jo-stems, e.g., OCS pěňębъ 'coin' (from Germ. penning). The jā-stem type subsumed the relics of the *-ih₂ feminines, still attested by a
small number of nouns in OCS, e.g., PIE *aldih₂ > OCS ladii ‘boat’, PIE *peh₂-w- → OCS pustyn’ii ‘desert’ as well as in the f. nom. sg. form of the pres. act. ptcp., e.g., OCS nesoštì ‘carrying’ (< PSl. *nesant-y-i).

### TABLE 11.21 VOCALIC STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o-stem</td>
<td>*gʰordʰo-</td>
<td>gradɔ ‘fortified place, city’ m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*mōyth₂-to-</td>
<td>město ‘place’ n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jo-stem</td>
<td>*mangyo-</td>
<td>mōžs ‘man, husband’ m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u-stem</td>
<td>*polh₂yo-</td>
<td>polće ‘field’ n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-stem</td>
<td>*nih₂ti-</td>
<td>nīh ‘thread’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā-stem</td>
<td>*gʰeneh₂</td>
<td>žena ‘woman, wife’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jā-stem</td>
<td>*dʰǵemy-eh₂</td>
<td>zemljá ‘earth’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 11.22 CONSONANTAL STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n-stem</td>
<td>*seh,men-</td>
<td>sěmę, gen. sěmene ‘seed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r-stem</td>
<td>*dʰug₃ter-</td>
<td>ābšti, ābštëre ‘daughter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s-stem</td>
<td>*klewos-</td>
<td>slovo, slovese ‘word’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nt-stem</td>
<td>*agⁿno-</td>
<td>agńe, agnete ‘lamb’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū (uw)-stem</td>
<td>*swekruh₂-</td>
<td>svekrьve ‘husband’s mother’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nominal declension

In the following chart the presumed PIE input is compared with the attested OCS endings (CSl., where b occurs before j, which yields iji in OCS), which are presumed to be similar to those of LCSl. Wherever the arrow → is used, a non-linear development is presumed to have occurred. The trajectories of the endings, as well as the PIE input, are a subject of much debate, and the detail needed to explain them far exceeds the scope of this chapter. An emblematic issue is the origin of the -ъ ending in the nom. and acc. sg. cases of the o-stems. The expected outcome, following the regular phonetic development, loss of final consonants, would have been nom. sg. *-os > -o. (This outcome is in fact represented regionally in proper nouns, where the ending may have earlier been interpreted as vocative or hypochoristic, BCMS Branko, Vlado [← Branislav, Vladimir]; Ukr. Danylo, Petro. In the Finnic substratum areas of Pskov-Novgorod, as attested in the Birchbark letters, the vocative ending -e was generalized, on which see Vermeer 1994.) Such an outcome threatened merger with the neuter o-stems, as well as neutralizing the distinction between agent and patient roles. Among alternatives – other solutions have been considered – was to select the u-stem endings in -ъ, which did not solve the problem of agent-patient distinctions. This problem was repaired by the development of the category of animacy, whereby genitive case marking was introduced for animate referents in the accusative position, e.g., OCS vəsi bo ēko proroča imơth Ioana (Matthew 21:26, Codex Marianus) ‘all thus as a prophet-ANIM. take John-ANIM.’ The input of the instr. sg. and dat., instr. pl. and du. forms assume a PIE dialect input of *-m- (as opposed to *-bʰ-), common to Germanic, Baltic, and Slavic. The schema below shows the expected PIE input on the left and CSl. on the right (with PSl. for illustration in some instances), where > indicates a direct phonetic continuation and → indicates a post-PIE rearrangement of the material (PIE input, with some adjustments, based on Sihler 1995: 248).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.23 VOCALIC STEM ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>o-stems</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom., acc. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 11.24 CONSONANTAL STEM ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom., acc. n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dual</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom., acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen., loc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat., instr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adjectives

Adjectival declension derives from nominal declensions, where agreement in gender, number, and case follows the pattern of the o-, jo-stems for masculine and neuter and the ā-, jā-stems for feminine, PIE *new-os, *new-om, *new-eh₂ > OCS nov-b, nov-o, nov-a ‘new’ nom. sg. m., n., f.; Gmc *tewds- → PSL. *TEWĐ-Y > CSL. *t’ud’- > OCS štužd-b, štužd-e, štužd-a ‘foreign’ (with variant base forms tužd-, stužd-, perhaps as a function of dissimilation). Of particular note is the development of an articulated form of the adjectival with *j- pronouns (see below), which mark definiteness, an innovation shared with Baltic, e.g., nov-jb, novo-je, nova-ja; nova-jego gen. sg. m./n., novu-jemu dat. sg. m./n., etc. Cf. naujas ‘new’ m. sg. indef. vs. naujasis def. (< naujas + jis).

Comparative forms are produced with -jšj/-jšš- or innovative -čj-jašš- (shortened in the nom. sg. m. and n. by word-final consonant elision) and follow the j- declension types, e.g., OCS bolž, bol’e, bol’sa ‘bigger’; OCS nověi, nově(j)je, nověiša ‘newer’.


Pronouns

Personal pronouns in Slavic conserve much of the PIE pattern, distinguishing six cases as in the noun. Here the OCS examples stand (nearly) for all of Slavic. PIE *h₁ež, *h₁ežHom > Cz. já, Pol., Slk., ULSorb., BCMS, BRuss., Ukr., Russ. ja || OCS azž, Sln. jaz ‘I’, Mac. jas, Bulg. az (with prothetic j- and lengthening by Winter’s Law; on the heterogeneous inheritances see Kapović 2009); PIE *h₁më > OCS më, më ‘me’ – full and clitic forms; PIE *tuH > OCS ty ‘you’ 2 sg. nom.; in OCS tebe, ťe 2 sg. acc., the expected stem from PIE *tewe does not occur but is replaced by the stem from the dat. sg., *tebž- (OCS tebe 2 sg. dat. sg.); the nom. (and acc.) forms of the 1 and 2 pl. are evidently reshaped on the model of ty: OCS my ‘we’ nom., ny ‘us’ acc., vy ‘you’ (pl. and honorific) nom., acc. The acc., gen. forms generalized the lengthened vowel root and must have been extended by a suffix, PIE *ños, *wós → PSI. *NÁS-Á(M), *WÁS-Á(M) > OCS nasž, vasž. The homophonic loc. pl. forms OCS nasž, vasž provide the direct continuation of the loc. pl. ending in -su, which has been generalized in the noun and adjectival paradigms as -x (following the RUKI change). The reflexive pronoun follows the pattern of the 3 sg.: OCS se acc., sebe gen., sebë, si dat. full and clitic, sebë loc., sobojo instr. Third person pronouns, as well as corresponding relatives, are built from the anaphoric pronoun PIE *yo- apart from the nom. forms, e.g., OCS jo acc. sg. m., je acc. sg. n., jo acc. sg. f., jego gen. sg. m., n.; jeje gen. sg. f.; jemu dat. sg. m., n., jegë dat. sg. f. In prepositional constructions, initial j is replaced by n’ (< *nj) as a result of the reanalysis of -n in prepositions, *VUN ‘in’, *SUN ‘with’ (< PIE *h₁่น, *kon) as n-, e.g., otoh n’ego ‘from him, it’, kř n’ejž ‘toward her’, sř n’imb ‘with him’. In OCS the nom. forms from anaphoric *yo- occur only in relativizers compounded with the particle (focus marker) žé (the o-grade of which appears in the gen. sg. m. and n. pronominial and adjectival ending: jego), e.g., čtò že vidiši sočjebu žaje estu vů očešte bratra toego a brvnho čže estu vů očešte tvoer ne čuješi ‘what you-see a mote-acc.-sg.-m., that-nom.-sg.-m. is in the eye of brother yours
but the log-acc.sg.-n. that-nom.sg.-n. is in eye yours not you-feel' (Luke 6:41, Codices Zographensis, Marianus). In the daughter languages the usual 3 pers. nom. pronouns are built from CSL *on-, e.g., OCS onъ, ona, ono; oni, ony, ona m., f. n. sg., pl. (< PIE *h2-en-), though Mac. and Bulg. use forms built from PIE *to-, e.g., Bulg. toj, tja, to m., f., n. sg. nom. In other Slavic languages, pronouns built on this form usually serve a distal, switch-reference, or resumptive function.

### TABLE 11.25 OCS 3 PERS. PRONOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>sg.</th>
<th>pl.</th>
<th>du.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>jо m., jо f., jе n.</td>
<td>jе m., jо n.</td>
<td>= nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>jegо m., n.; jegе f.</td>
<td>тхь</td>
<td>jeju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>jемо m., n.; jegо f.</td>
<td>имь</td>
<td>има</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>n’емо m., n.; n’ежо f.</td>
<td>тхь</td>
<td>jeju</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>имь m., n.; jegо f.</td>
<td>им</td>
<td>има</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OCS and the Slavic daughter languages preserve other 3 pers. pronouns marked for proximity in time or space, e.g., OCS сь, сi, se ‘this here’ (< PIE *ki-); BCMS ovaj, ova, ovo ‘this’ (< PIE *h2-ew-) – contrasted with onaj, ona, ono ‘that’, cf. Sln. on ‘what- chamacallit’ < CSL. *ono + *je). The deictic s- particle also plays a role in the formation of adverbs of time, OCS дн’о, Cz., Slk. днес, BCMS данас || Russ. сегодня ‘today’ (< CSL. *дьно + sь || *sego + дьне); OCS сi ноштi, BCMS синоћ, Mac. синок ‘last night’ (< CSL. *си но̀тi).

Interrogative pronouns in Slavic display both conservative and innovative features, as is evident from the following table. The nom. forms of both the animate and inanimate have been extended with the element *to(-s, -d), though variant forms also occur, e.g., Pol. nikt, Sln. ниће ‘nobody’ < CSL. *nik’–is(-ze); the littoral (Čakavian) dialect of Croatian has the bare form of the inanimate са (< CSL. *ћь). Sln. and Croatian Kajkavian dial. kaj ‘what’ is formed from a different inherited element, PIE *kʷeh₂, extended with the anaphoric element CSL. *жо < PIE *yo- (Snoj 2003: s.v.). The same element is found as a subordinating conjunction in Bulg., Pol. dial., as well as in Prekmurje Sln. ka, where it contrasts with irrealis da (< PIE *doh₂), the (otherwise indicative) prevailing subordinating conjunction in western South Slavic (see Greenberg 2011).

### TABLE 11.26 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>OCS</th>
<th>Cz.</th>
<th>Sln.</th>
<th>Russ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>*kʷо- ‘who’</td>
<td>kъto</td>
<td>ɵто</td>
<td>kdo</td>
<td>kaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>*kʷoso</td>
<td>*kʷim</td>
<td>kого</td>
<td>чeso</td>
<td>koho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>*kʷosмоу</td>
<td>*kʷesmey</td>
<td>комо</td>
<td>єсому</td>
<td>комо</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>*kʷosми</td>
<td>*kʷesми</td>
<td>комь</td>
<td>єminster</td>
<td>ком</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr.</td>
<td>*kʷVh₁-</td>
<td>*kʷ Vh₁-</td>
<td>кумь</td>
<td>ємь</td>
<td>кым</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further pronominal bases include PIE *єynо- > OCS инь ‘other’, PIE *єysth₂о- > OCS исть ‘same’, PIE *вiк- > OCS вiба ‘all’.
Indeclinables

Adverbs of time, place, manner, and direction were created by combining pronominal elements with deictic particles.

**TABLE 11.27 OCS ADVERBS OF PLACE, TIME, MANNER, DIRECTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PSL. *-d’he ‘where’</th>
<th>PSL. *-dā, -KUDĀ ‘when’</th>
<th>PSL. *-(a)kā ‘how’</th>
<th>PSL. *-āma ‘direction’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*k- kde ‘where’</td>
<td>kda, kogda ‘when’</td>
<td>kako ‘how’</td>
<td>kamo ‘whither’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*s- sde ‘here’</td>
<td>sda ‘now’</td>
<td>sīce (&lt; *Sīkā) ‘in this way’</td>
<td>sēmo ‘hither’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*t- tōda ‘then’</td>
<td>tōgda ‘then’</td>
<td>tako ‘thus’</td>
<td>tamo ‘there’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ov- ovōde ‘there’</td>
<td>ovōgda ‘then’</td>
<td></td>
<td>ovamo ‘thither’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*on- onōde ‘over there’</td>
<td>onōda ‘at that time’</td>
<td></td>
<td>onamo ‘yonder’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*j- jude(že) ‘at that place’</td>
<td>jeda ‘at the time when’</td>
<td>jakō ‘thus’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vbs- vōsđe ‘everywhere’</td>
<td>vōsegda ‘always’</td>
<td>vsūkā ‘in all ways’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other adverbs include OCS tu ‘here’ (< PIE *tow), mьnogo ‘much’ (< PIE *mnogʰo-). Productive adverbial formants include -o, -ě, -ьsky, e.g., OCS dobro, dobrë, both ‘well’; slověnьsky ‘Slavic’.

**Verbal morphology**

The Slavic verb materially reflects a simplified picture of Indo-European verbal morphology, though, as mentioned above, Slavic has innovated in its morphologized aspectual system by means of prefixation and suffixation as well as by extending the ablaut pattern. Only one example of PIE reduplication persists in the verb, and this is in the small group of athematic verbs, i.e., OCS dădetъ ‘they give’ (PSL. *dāden-t ← PIE *deh-3, cf. Skr. dadāmi ‘I give’). The remaining athematic verbs in Slavic are (PIE *h1-es→) OCS jesмь, jesi, sōb 1 sg., 2 sg., 3 pl. (inf. byti) ‘be’; (PIE *weyd→) věмь 1 sg. (inf. věđēti) ‘know’ (an isolated relic form descended from the PIE intransitive conjugation is found in OCS, OCz., ORuss. věđė, on which see Ivanov 1981: 68); (PIE *ed→ → PSL. ĖD-MI >) OCS Ėmś/Ĵamś (inf. Ėšī, Ėsšt). The verb imēti, 1 sg. imamь ‘to have’ (< CSl. *jьmamь < PSL. *IM-Ă-MI ← PIE *m- ‘grasp, take’), also belongs here – it is related to an e/o-thermic verb Ėti, Ėsmo ‘to take’ inf., 1 sg.

The present tense endings, as in the nominal declension, have been reorganized. The 1 sg. ending of the thematic type in -o cannot have been original but was built from the inherited PIE *-oh2, and the -m marker was extended from the athematics after the loss of final consonants. The extension of the athematic 1 sg. -m made a second comeback in the historical period with the rebuilding of the present tense markers in West Slavic and western South Slavic, e.g., Slk. nesiem, Sln. nesem; Pol. gram, Cz. hráμ, Sln., BCMS Ėgram || Russ. igráμ, Ukr. hraju, Bulg. igráμ, Plb. jaigroja (< CSl. *jigráμ) ‘play’ 1 sg. (see further Janda 1996). The 3 sg. and pl. forms in OCS -ti are of secondary origin, most likely 3 sg. pronoun in -t-. East Slavic, however, preserves the original athematic ending in -ti, e.g., ORuss. jēṣtъ ‘is’, Russ. est’, BRuss. Ėsče’, albeit with considerable dialectal variation (see Miller 1988 for details). A zero 3 sg. ending (inherited from PIE) is also amply attested, e.g., Cz. nese, Slk. nesis, Sln. nese, Ukr. nese. Similarly, 1 pl. endings show variation through generalization of the ablaut variants -me/-mo, most likely in response to competition from the 1 sg. marker in -m, cf. USorb. sym – smy, Cz. jsem ‘I

TABLE 11.28 INFLECTION OF NON-PAST FINITE VERB FORMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>athematic</th>
<th>thematic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>dams (&lt; PSI. *DAD-MI)</td>
<td>nesǫ (&lt; *NES-Ă-M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>dasi (&lt; *DAD-SI)</td>
<td>neseši (&lt; *NES-E-XI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>dastu (&lt; *DAD-T-)</td>
<td>nesetb (&lt; *NES-E-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>dams (&lt; *DAD-M-)</td>
<td>nesemъ (&lt; *NES-E-M-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>đaste (&lt; *DAD-TE)</td>
<td>nesete (&lt; *NES-E-TE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>dadeţb (&lt; *DAD-EN-T-)</td>
<td>nesop ъ(&lt; *NES-A-NT-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 du.</td>
<td>dasta (&lt; *DAD-T-Ă)</td>
<td>neseta (&lt; *NES-E-T-Ă)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 du.</td>
<td>daste (&lt; *DAD-TE)</td>
<td>nesete (&lt; *NES-E-TE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 du.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Traditionally, OCS verbs are grouped into five classes, following the classification by Leskien 1969 (1871), which corresponds to layers of archaism vs. innovation, and are indexed by their characteristic theme (e/o, ne/o, etc.). Two basic stems are accounted for, represented by the infinitive, which normally contains a (semantically empty) suffix, e.g., LCSl. *bьr-а-ти ‘to take’, and a present or non-past-tense stem *ber-e- ‘takes’. Sub-types are determined by the suffix or lack of it (in which case the stem-final segment is relevant) in the infinitive stem. In the table below the OCS forms are given in the inf., 1 sg., 3 sg. pres. tense (the listing of types here is not comprehensive).

TABLE 11.29 VERB CLASSES, FOLLOWING LESKIEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>class</th>
<th>theme</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>PSI.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.A</td>
<td>е/o</td>
<td>*h_neк-</td>
<td>*NES-TĖY</td>
<td>nesti ‘carry’ det.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*NES-Ă-M</td>
<td>neso</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*NES-E-</td>
<td>nesetъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I.B</td>
<td>*bĕr-</td>
<td>*BĔ-Ă-TĖY</td>
<td>бĕrati ‘take’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*BER-Ă-M</td>
<td>bero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*BER-Ĕ-</td>
<td>beretъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>ne/o</td>
<td>*steh₂-</td>
<td>*STĂ-Ă-TĖY</td>
<td>ста’ ‘stand up’, ‘begin to’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*STĂ-NĂ-M</td>
<td>stańo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*STĂ-NE-</td>
<td>stanętъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*kos-</td>
<td>*KAS-NĔ(T)-T-ĘY</td>
<td>kosnoţ ‘touch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*KAS-NĂ-M</td>
<td>kosno</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*KAS-NE-</td>
<td>kosnetъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.1.A</td>
<td>je/o</td>
<td>*gnoh₂-</td>
<td>*ZNĂ-TĖY</td>
<td>znati ‘know’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*ZNĂ-YĂ-M</td>
<td>znaţо</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*ZNĂ- YE-</td>
<td>znajeţъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.1.B</td>
<td></td>
<td>*kes-</td>
<td>*KES-Ă-TĖY</td>
<td>česati ‘gather (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*KES-YĂ-M</td>
<td>čeşo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*KES-YE-</td>
<td>čeşetъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.2.B</td>
<td></td>
<td>*(s)newH-</td>
<td>*AB-SNAW-Ă-Ă-TĘY</td>
<td>osnovati ‘found’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*AB-SNAW-Ă-YĂ-M</td>
<td>osnjuţ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*AB-SNAW-YE-</td>
<td>osnujeţь</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.A</td>
<td>*(&lt; PIE *-eye-)</td>
<td>*h_nok-</td>
<td>*NAS-EY-TĘY</td>
<td>nositi ‘carry’ indet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*NAS-Y-Ă-M</td>
<td>nosjo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*NAS- Y(Ă)E-</td>
<td>nositъ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Form classes and compound tenses/moods of the verb, as attested in OCS, include the following:

### TABLE 11.30 SLAVIC VERB FORM CLASSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>PIE</th>
<th>PSI.</th>
<th>OCS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IV.B</td>
<td>*sed-</td>
<td>*SĖD-Ē-TEY</td>
<td>sēdēti ‘sit’ stative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*SĖD-Y-Ă-M</td>
<td>sēdē</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*SĖD-(Y)Ē-</td>
<td>sēdētę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.B</td>
<td>*bʰoyH-</td>
<td>*BAY-Ē-TEY</td>
<td>bojati sę ‘be afraid’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*BAY-Ă-M</td>
<td>bojō sę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*BAY-EY-</td>
<td>bojītę sę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>athematic</td>
<td>*bʰuh₃-</td>
<td>bytű ‘to be’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*bʰ-ES-</td>
<td>esmę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
<td>*WAYD-Ē-TEY</td>
<td>vēdēti ‘know, be aware’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*WAYD-MI</td>
<td>vēmę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*WAYD-TI</td>
<td>vēštę</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ablaut, tense, and aspect

Slavic tenses and their corresponding form classes have become simplified from what was a much more complex earlier system in late PIE, with partially differing results in Baltic and Slavic. Slavic and Baltic inherited e-grade thematic verbs (PIE *wedʰ- > OCS vedetъ ‘leads’ det., Lith. veda; *gʷeyh₃- OCS žīti, živō, Cz. žít, žíji ‘live’ inf., 1 sg.) as well as derived o-grade causatives, iteratives, and deverbal nouns (OCS voditi ‘to lead’ indet., Lith. vadytę ‘idem’, OCS voždъ ‘leader’, vojevoda ‘warlord’; PIE *gʷoyh₃- > ORuss. goiti ‘revive’, Cz. hojit ‘heal’, Sln., BCMS gojiti ‘raise [a child]’). On the other hand, Slavic possesses sets of synthetic past tense forms (“aorist” and “imperfect”) built from PIE *-s, which is lacking in Baltic, whereas Baltic possesses an s-future lacking in Slavic (with the exception of the relic pres. act. ptp. form OCS byšęšt-/ byšǫšt- [< PSI. *BŌ-S-Y-E/ANT-Y-] ‘that which is to be’, replaced by bodošt- ‘idem’, contrasting with spošt- ‘being’; see Vaillant 1966 [=1950–77]); see also Darden 1990, Andersen 2013. Lacking a separate synthetic future form, the primary Slavic future is expressed by the same form as for the present tense, which could be termed “prospective/actual” (following Andersen 2013),
where in the daughter languages perfective verbs in the non-past tend to be understood as future; in ESL. perfective verbs in the non-past forms are exclusively understood as future. Compound future tenses, in addition to the future anterior attested in OCS *bodeto
nesla ‘will have carried’, which has become the generalized future construction in Sln. and Kajkavian Croat. (Sln. *bo nesla ‘will carry’) and one of the future constructions in Pol. *będę niosla or *będę nieść (both with imperfect. verbs only), developed in the daughter languages, e.g., BCMS *pisat će ‘will write’, Bulg. *šte piša ‘will write’ (both auxiliaries from CSl. *(xo)těti ‘want’), Ukr. *budu pysati ‘I shall write’ or *pysatymu (< CSl. *pisati + *jьs) ‘idem’ (both with imperfect. only).

Slavic extended the pattern of ablaut as a means of (partially) articulating innovative aspectual morphology, in effect reinvigorating the vṛddhi grade, to produce imperfective partners for new perfective lexical items produced through prefixation, e.g., (PIE *legh- ‘lie [down]’ >) OCS *lešti, *lego ‘lie down’ inf., 1 sg. perfect., *položiti ‘place something standing’ perfect., *polagati, *polagajǫ ‘idem’ imperf. (PSl. *-LEG-/-LAG- → -LÁG-). The innovation builds also on the excrescent vowels that developed from syllabic sonorants, e.g., OCS *sъbrati ‘collect’ perfect., *sъbirati ‘idem’ imperf. (PIE *bʰr ̥- > PSl. *bir- → *bīr-). The rise of the aspectual system of Slavic as such is still being debated, with significant differences of opinion. Recent work indicates that the system of verbal aspect developed through heterogeneous developments that coalesced into a general schema opposing perfective and imperfective aspects. Among the processes were, in addition to the ablauting pattern just mentioned, (1) the merger of synthetic imperfect and aorist into a single preterite in PSl., which resulted in the attested OCS aorist, and the rise of a new agglutinative synthetic preterite, the imperfect (see above) (see Andersen 2013); (2) prefixation of simplex verbs, creating new lexical meanings, aktionsarten, as well as purely aspectual distinctions, “préverbe vide” in the perfective aspect (e.g., OCS *ubiti ‘kill’ inf. perfect. < PIE *ow- ‘ablative’ + *bʰeyH- ‘beat’; OCS *uspěti ‘succeed’ inf. perfect. < PIE *ow- + *spʰeh1- ‘flourish’) (see Dickey 2005 and forthcoming); and (3) suffixation, allowing the articulation of imperfective partners for lexicalized prefixed perfectives (OCS *ubijati, *ubivati ‘kill’ inf. imperf.; *uspěvati ‘succeed’ inf. imperf.). The general meanings of the perfect. : imperfect. opposition in the daughter languages differ geographically, with two clear-cut sub-types: “eastern” (ESl. + Bulg.) and “western” (Cz., Slk., ULsorb. + Slovene), as well as two transitional types, Pol. (trending toward “eastern”) and BCMS (trending toward “western”). In each type the perfect is marked for a general meaning, whereas the other imperfect is unmarked as such: the “eastern” type conveys “temporal definiteness” (e.g., succession of events) and the “western” type “totality” (for details, see Dickey 2000).

**WORD FORMATION**

Slavic lexis has considerably innovated new configurations of PIE material, including ‘hand’ (Lith. *ranka) < PIE *wronk-eh2) ← *wrenk- ‘grasp’; OCS *noga ‘foot, leg’ (Lith. *naga ‘hoof’). Slavic word formation makes considerable use of prefixation and suffixation, as well as, in regard to the verb, extensions of ablaut patterns, as was mentioned above in the discussion of the verb.
TABLE 11.31 DEVERBATIVES FROM CSL. *VĚDĚTI ‘TO KNOW’, DERIVATIVES OF CSL. *RYBA ‘FISH’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CSL.</th>
<th>Attestation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*věd-a</td>
<td>Cz. věda</td>
<td>‘science, knowledge’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ne-věd-a</td>
<td>OCS nevěžda</td>
<td>‘idiot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ne-věd-ь</td>
<td>OCS nevěžь</td>
<td>‘idiot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ne-věd-ьstvo</td>
<td>OCS nevěžьstvo</td>
<td>‘ignorance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ne-věd-om-ь-ь</td>
<td>Cz. nevědomь</td>
<td>‘unknown’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ne-věd-ть</td>
<td>Sln. neveden, BCMS arch. nev(f)edian</td>
<td>‘ignorant’, ‘arrogant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-ar’-ь</td>
<td>OCS rybar’ь</td>
<td>‘fisherman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-ar’-i-tь</td>
<td>Cz. rybarit, Sln. ribariti</td>
<td>‘to fish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-ic-a (&lt; PSL. *rūb-īk-ā)</td>
<td>OCS rybica</td>
<td>‘small fish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-н-n-i-ь</td>
<td>Russ. rybnoj</td>
<td>‘pertaining to fish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-н-н-к-ь</td>
<td>Cz. rybnik</td>
<td>‘pond’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ryb-н-н-ic-a</td>
<td>Pol. Rybnica, Sln. Ribnica</td>
<td>toponym</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of PIE compounding persist in relic form, e.g., OCS gospodь ‘the Lord’, ‘lord’ (< PIE *gʰost-’ + *pot-, if it is in fact cognate with Lat. hospes, hospitis – Slavic d is unexpected as a reflex of PIE *t), or the famous taboo word for ‘bear’, OCS medvěдь (< PIE *medʰu- ‘honey’ + *ed- ‘eat’), cf. o-grade USorb. sknadź, Sln. strnad, Ukr. strenadka ‘yellowhammer (Emberiza citrinella)’ (< CSL. *str̩n̩adь < PIE *k ˊrin(o)-‘grain’ + *h₁od- ‘eat(er)’) (Snoj 1992: 198–199). Slavic given names preserve further endocentric compounds that were productive in the medieval pre-Christian era, e.g., ORuss. Svätoslavь (← PIE *kwen-to- ‘sacred, strong, good’ + *k̩le/ow- ‘famed’), OCS Vladimirъ (← PIE *wel-dʰe- ‘rule, have strength’ + *meyH-ro- ‘good, pleasing’).

SYNTAX

The syntax of Slavic languages is treated less in the historical than in the synchronic spectrum of Slavic linguistics than are phonology and morphophonemics, which have received the majority of attention. In contrast, however, studies of Slavic synchronic syntax have burgeoned in the last several decades. Here we will focus on some highlights with a particular focus on developments relating the Indo-European heritage of Slavic.

Generally, Slavic simple clause structure tends to be SVO, though word order is “free,” presumably owing to case marking. Much attention in the structural literature, particularly the Prague School, has focused on the functional sentence perspective in Slavic languages. So, for example, in contemporary Bulgarian (a language that has reduced case distinctions down to three) one may produce a natural three-element sentence such as SVO Ivan nameri knigata ‘Ivan found book-the’ also as VSO, VOS, SOV, OSV, and OV, all responding to the questions Kakvo stana? ‘What happened?’ or Kakvo pravi Ivan? ‘What is Ivan doing’, where the focus of the sentence changes depending on the sentence intonation, the element in question being given emphatic intonation (examples from Kempgen et al. 2009: 656–657). A traditional Prague School analysis (without regard to sentence intonation) assumes that the focus (“new information”) is the last sentence element, a pattern that generally holds in written Slavic languages.

From an Indo-European perspective one may note the persistence of Wackernagel’s Law in OCS and modern Slavic languages, which assigns unstressed particles to the
second position in the clause following the first accented element oni že vəzložišće ročę na nu i ešę ih ‘they [focus particle] placed hands on him and took him’ (Codex Marianus, Mark 14:46), cf. Cze zdi se mnę ‘it seems to me’, Sln. zdi se mi ‘idem’. East Slavic is exceptional in that it has fused the reflexive particle sjä (< CSL. *se) to the right of the verb (e.g., Russ. kusat ‘to bite’ vs. kusatšja ‘to bite one another, be characterized by biting’), and the trend toward fusion can be seen in the chronological progression of texts in the Novgorod Birchbark corpus: a nyne sā družina po mā poručila (no. 109, late 12th c.) ‘and now [refl] retinue about me vouched’, a jazo sā klanēju (no. 344, early 14th c.) ‘and I refl. bow’ (salutation formula), a čemu sā gněvači? (no. 605, 12th c.) ‘but why refl. anger-[2 sg.] vs. a źto tobe klanājusā (no. 147, 13th c.) ‘and I to-you bow-refl.’, a to sā dijalosē sēdē vo Vēlīki dni ‘and this refl. done-refl. today on Great (Easter) day’ (no. 154, 15th c.), with the latter example reflecting a rare simultaneous instantiation of both the older and clitic placement (Zaliznjak 2004: 188–189).

Significant variation is found in compound sentences in the Slavic languages, which underwent major shifts in the historical period.Canonical OCS attests to a strategy of clause combining employing participles in the dative case for subordination (the “dative absolute”), which subsequently disappeared from most of Slavic save for southern Russian dialects (see Andersen 1970), e.g., OCS və pętoe že na desęte lēto vladyčěsta tiverja k'erasja obladajęštu pontęskumu pilatu ijudeeję, i četvortovlastvovušto galileejo irodó . . . bystr glagol' božii kiu ioanu zaxarinu synu 'in fifth-[def.] year of reign Tiberius-[GEN.] Caesar-[GEN.] ruling-[PRES. ACT. PTCP. DAT. SG. M.] Pontius-[DAT.-DAT.] and ruling-as-tetrarch-[PRES. ACT. PTCP. DAT. SG. M.] Galileic Herod-[DAT.-DAT.] . . . was-[AOR. 3 SG.] word-[NOM. SG. M.] God's to John Zacharias' son ‘In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar, Pontius Pilate being governor of Judea, and Herod being tetrarch of Galilee, . . . the Word of God came unto John the son of Zacharias’ (Luke 3:1–2, Codex Zographensis); mnogo soštu narodu i ne imoštę česo ěsti . . . išus' glagola ‘being-[PRES.ACT. PTCP.-DAT.PL] many people and [they] not having-[PRES.ACT.PTCP.-DAT.PL] what-[GEN.SG.] to-eat . . . Jesus spoke’ (Mark 8:1, Vaillant 1950–1977: 90). Variation in the material of the general (realis) subordinating conjunctions in Slavic languages reflects the degree to which subordination has been reshaped in Slavic languages, e.g., East Slavic cito (< CSL. često ‘what’ < PIE *kʷi- + *to-), West Slavic že (< CSL. *że ‘focus marker’ < PIE *kʷe), Sln., BCMS da (< PIE. *doh₂, ‘itative particle’, cf. Germ. zu, Eng. to), Prekmurje Sln., Mečimurje Kajkavian ka (< *kʷeh₂, cf. Lat. quā ‘in what manner’), Mac. deka (< PIE. *de ‘there’ + *kʷeh₂), Bulg. če (< PSL. KE < PIE. *kʷe ‘and’) and deto. A similar pattern of variation occurs with relative markers. OCS mainly employed a compound of *j-pronouns + the že marker (e.g., sjelö bo juže ažm plųt moē ešt’ juže ažm za život všesgo mira ‘bread thus rel.-ACC.-SG.-M. I give-1-sg. flesh my-f.-sg.-nom. is-2-sg. rel.-ACC.-SG.-F. I give-1-sg. for life whole-gen.-sg.-m. world’; John 6:51, Codex Zographensis). Already in the Freising an emerging phonological change ž > r, which spread throughout South Slavic, reshaped the marker, setting up the conditions by which the inherited relative adjecti ve *kʷter- (< PIE. *kʷoterno ‘which of two’) could be reanalyzed as kʷte- + r, where the last element became a generalized relativizer. The -r element subsequently became a productive formant for building a range of relativizers in Sln. and dialects of BCMS associated with the Roman rite (Kajkavian, Čakavian) (e.g., Sln. kar ‘that which’, kadar ‘when[ever]’, kodor ‘who[ever]’) and was replaced in dialects associated with the Byzantine rite (see Greenberg 1999 for details).

A further step in clause combining is the loss of the infinitive in the Balkan Slavic languages, Mac. and Bulg., an areal feature characteristic of the Balkan languages (Albanian,
Aromanian, Greek, Romanian) that has also spread to Serbian and Montenegrin. This feature, as well as others discussed in this chapter, may be observed in the following fragment from Jaroslav Hašek's *Osudy dobrého vojáka Švejka za světové války* (The adventures of the good soldier Schweik during the world war) in the original Czech and several translations. The fragment translates “‘Which Ferdinand [did they kill], Mrs. Müller?’ asked Schweik, not ceasing to massage his knees, ‘I know two Ferdinands.’”

**West Slavic**


“Kterého Ferdinanda, pani Müllerová?” otázal se Švejk, nepřestávajíc si masírovat kolena, “já znám dva Ferdinandy.” (Czech)

“Ktorého Ferdinanda, pani Müllerová?” opýtal sa Švejk, neprestávajúc si masírovať kolena. “Ja poznám dvoch Ferdinandov.” (Slovak)

**Western South Slavic**

“Katerega Ferdinanda, gospa Müllerjeva?” je vprašal Švejk, ne da bi si nehal mazati kolena, “poznam dva Ferdinanda [5].” (Slovene)

– Kojega Ferdinanda, gospoda Müllerova? – odazvao se Švejk ne prestajući misirati koljena — ja poznam dva Ferdinanda. (Croatian)

– Koga to Ferdinanda, gospođo Miler? – upita Švejk, ne prekidajući masiranje kolena. — Ja poznam dva Ferdinanda. (Serbian)

**Eastern (Balkan) South Slavic**

Koj Ferdinand, gospožo Müllerova? – zapitav Švejk, ne prestanuvajќi da si gi masira kolena. (Macedonian)


**East Slavic**

*Jakoha ce Ferdinanda, pan Jiullerova? – spytav Švejk, ne perestajuќy roztyratty kolina. – Ja znaju dvux Ferdinandaw.* (Ukrainian)

*Jakoha Ferdynanda, Pani Mjulera? – spytaw Śvejk, ne perastajujuќy masirovac’kaleni. – Ja vedaju dvux Ferdinandawav.* (Belarusian)

*Kakogo Ferdinanda, pani Mjulerova? – sprosił Śvejk, ne perestajaju masirovat’ kolenity. – Ja znaju dvux Ferdinandav.* (Russian)

**Non-Slavic Balkan**

— Pe care Ferdinand, doamnă Müllerovă? întrebă Švejk continuind să-şi maseze genunchiul. Eu cunosc doi. (Romanian)

— Cilin Ferdinand, zonja Myler? – pyeti Shvejku duke fërkuar gjunjët. – Unë njoh dy Ferdinandë. (Albanian)
With the exception of Mac., Bulg., which no longer mark cases in nouns and adjectives, the m. sg. acc. animate forms in Slavic take the marking of the genitive.

2 Past tense ‘he asked’ is rendered with the aorist (simple past) 3 sg. in Mac., Bulg., which preserve both simple and coordinated past tenses, and the relic of the perfect in the rest of the Slavic languages, which have only one past tense construction. The simple past 3 sg. is used in Romanian (întrebă) and Albanian (pyeti). Sln. preserves the full construction with clitic auxiliary je ‘be’ 3 sg. (cf. OCS jestъ) + the l-participle. Auxiliary clitics are obligatory in non-3-pers. past tense in all but the East Slavic languages, which use the unauxiliated l-participle for all persons and numbers. The 3 sg. auxiliary has been eliminated in West Slavic (though it persisted well into the historical period), while in BCMS it is normally dropped in reflexive constructions (odazvao se ‘he responded’, but would have been pitao je ‘he asked’, had the translator chosen to use this verb).

3 With the exception of Sln. and Bulg. the first verb in the subordinate clause, ‘not stopping’, is rendered with a pres. act. adv. ptcp. (PSI. *-ANT-Y-). The option would have been available to both of these languages as well but was not chosen by the translator, though in Sln. the participle is deprecated with all but a few lexical items.

Except for Mac., Bulg., the Slavic translations use the inf. form of ‘to massage’. In Mac. the equivalent construction contains da comp., si refl.-dat. (i.e., ‘one’s own’), gi them.-acc.-pl. (agreeing with an object marked for definiteness), masira ‘massage’ 3-sg.-ind. In this regard, Mac. takes the infinitival phrase as the “Wackernagel” unit, placing all of the clitics after the participle. In Bulg. the construction is similar, though the possessive marker si is moved to the right of the object kolenite si ‘knees-the refl.-dat.’ Romanian is similar to the Mac. construction, though it lacks an equivalent to the reduplicated gi definite-object marker. Albanian has developed an innovative infinitival construction duke fërkuar, though a finite verb would also have been possible, pa ndaluar së fërkuari gjunjët ‘without continuing subordinating conjunction rub-3-sg. knees’ (see chapter on Albanian).

Sln. retains a distinct dual form, which also corresponds to dual markers in nominal and verbal inflection. In East Slavic the dual has expanded to include groups of three and four (“paucals”), marked only in nominal phrases.

Mac. and Bulg. mark definiteness with the form of the inherited dem. pron. CSl. *tv (agreeing in gender and number with its head), marked to the right of the first element of the nominal phrase. Parallel constructions are found in Romanian and Albanian.

Sln., Mac., and Bulg. continue the full form of the 1 sg. pronoun (jaz, jas, az, respectively), though in PRO-drop languages (West and South Slavic) the personal pronouns are not obligatory except for discursive strategies such as reference switching and emphasis.

**FURTHER READING**

Students of Slavic languages can get a good overview of Slavic from handbooks, including the English-language reference work Comrie and Corbett 1993, which is arranged according to standard languages; a more concise Russian-language work, Moldovan 2005, is structured similarly. An English and German handbook, Kempgen et al. 2009, is arranged thematically but also includes sketches of standard languages. A single-volume overview of Slavic philology suitable for advanced undergraduate students is Schenker
1995. Several English-language grammars of Slavic languages, written by specialists and intended for general linguistic typologists and comparativists, are available freely on the Internet on the SEELRC Network (http://www.seelrc.org/projects/grammars.ptml). An annotated bibliography of the literature up to the early 1980s on the reconstruction of Common Slavic is available in Birnbaum 1979 and Birnbaum and Merrill 1983. The long-term multinational project on Slavic diatopy, the Common Slavic Linguistic Atlas, published in various places in book format, is now available in electronic format (see the Obščeslavjanskij lingvističeskij atlas). The etymology of Slavic languages as a whole is covered in the as yet unfinished series begun under the editorship of the late O. N. Trubačev (1974–); Kopečný 1973, 1980 remain an invaluable source for the etymology of pronouns, particles, and grammatical elements. Single-volume etymological dictionaries that take into account recent research include Gluhak 1993 (which traces words back to Nostratic), Snoj 2003, and Derksen 2008. Kopečný 1981 provides a single-volume listing of Slavic comparanda for the ca. 2000 words of CSL core vocabulary. Among the historical grammars of Slavic one could view as classic the works of Arumaa (1964–1985) and Vaillant (1950–1977), the latter remaining the most comprehensive treatment of Slavic comparative grammar to date. With regard to historical phonology, although dated in some respects (particularly with regard to the development of Slavic word prosody), Shevelov 1964 remains extremely valuable for the sheer amount of documentation for Slavic in a single volume. Shevelov also founded a series of (English-language) historical phonologies of Slavic languages that is still in progress, of which volumes on Belarusian, Macedonian, Polish, Slovak, Slovene, Sorbian, and Ukrainian have appeared to date. Of special note for the reconstruction of Slavic accent would be the watershed works of Stang 1957 and Ililić-Svityč 1963, the latter of which is also available in English translation (1979). These works have renewed energy in research on Baltic and Slavic accentology with particular regard to its Indo-European origins, notable monographs of which range from Kortlandt 1975, Garde 1976, Dybo 1981 and 2000 to the works of the newest generation of scholars, e.g., Olander 2009, Pronk 2012, and Kapović 2015. Numerous handbooks of OCS exist in Slavic and other European languages, most of which are to a greater or lesser extent derivative of the classic textbook by Leskien (1969 [1871]); Lunt 2001 is currently the best OCS reference in English. The authoritative OCS dictionary is the multi-volume Kurz et al. 1958–1997, while Sadnik and Aitzetmüller 1955 and Cejtlin et al. 1994 are one-volume works. Sadnik and Aitzetmüller also contains a reverse dictionary of OCS words. Outside of canonical OCS, medieval attestations of Slavic include the Novgorod Birchbark Letters, which are available mostly in Russian sources, of which Zaliznjak 2004 gives the most comprehensive overview; and the Freising Folia, which attests to a variety of Slavic spoken around 1000 A.D. and is most closely associated with Slovene (see Bernik 1993, which also contains English glosses and translation). A recently published work (Boček 2014) gives an overview of competing theories of the development of Proto-Slavic, in particular the notion of Late Common Slavic as a lingua franca, as well as a discussion of frameworks for language contact with Slavic.

NOTES

1 A similar stylization of the phonological system of the reconstructed systems is employed by Holzer, whose system corresponds to both the PSI. and CSL. systems in this chapter. The details of Holzer’s system are found in Holzer 2007, esp. pp. 15–20.

2 Possibly also from *ǵʰwoy-st-, cf. OPruss. svāigstan ‘light, shining’ (see Gluhak 1993, s.v.).
REFERENCES


Birnbaum, Henrik 1979, *Common Slavic: Progress and Problems in its Reconstruction*, Slavica, Columbus
Boček, Vit 2014, *Praslovanština a jazykový kontakt*, Lidové noviny, Prague
Doluxanov, Pavel M. 2000, *Istoki ètnosa*, Evropejskij dom, Saint Petersburg
Dybo, Vladimir Antonovič 2000, *Morfonologizovannie paradigmatischeskie akcentnye sistemy. Tipologija i genezis*, tom 1, Jazyki russkoj kul’tury, Moscow


Greenberg, Marc L. 1999, “Multiple causation in the spread and reversal of a sound change: Rhotacism in South Slavic,” *Slovenski jezik / Slovene Linguistic Studies*: 63–76


Holub, Zbyněk 2014, *Jazykové doklady prehistorické podunajské migrace slovanského etnika na český jih*, Slezská univerzita/OPTYS, Opava


Ivanov, Vjačeslav Vs. 1981, *Slavjanskij, baltijskij i ranebalkanskij glagol. Indoeuropejskie istoki*, Nauka, Moscow


Kapović, Mate 2015, *Povijest hrvatske akcentuacije. Fonetika*, Matica hrvatska, Zagreb


Kortlandt, Frederik 1975, *Slavic Accentuation*, de Ridder, Lisse


Leskien, August 1969 (1871), *Handbuch der altbulgarischen (altkirchenslavischen) Sprache*, Winter, Heidelberg


Obščeslavjanskij lingvističeskij atlas http://www.slavatlas.org/


Pleterski, Andrej 2013, *The Invisible Slavs. Župa Bled in the “prehistoric” Early Middle Ages* (*Opera Instituti Archaeologici Sloveniae* 28), Inštitut za arheologijo ZRC SAZU, Ljubljana


Snoj, Marko 1992, “K preučevanju starejših nominalnih kompozit: psl. *drozdb in *
strъnadь,“ Miklošičev zbornik (Obdobja 13), SAZU–Univerza v Ljubljani, Ljubljana: 193–200
Snoj, Marko 2003, Slovenski etimološki slovar², Modrijan, Ljubljana
Stang, Christian S. 1957, Slavonic accentuation, Nygaard, Oslo
Trubačev, Oleg Nikolaevič 1968, Nazvanija rek pravoberežnoj Ukrainy. Slovoobrazovanije. Ètimologija. Ètničeskaja interpretacija, Nauka, Moscow
Trubačev, Oleg Nikolaevič 1974–, Ètimologičeskij slovar’ slavjanskix jazykov. Praslavjanskij leksičeskij fond, 1: (A—*besědьlivъ)—, Nauka, Moscow
Zaliznjak, Andrej Anatol’evič 2004, Drevnovgorodskij dialek², Jazyki slavjanskoj kul’tury, Moscow
INTRODUCTION

Current geographic distribution. Albanian is currently spoken in Albania, Kosovo, the southern part of Montenegro, the southern part of Serbia, the western part of Macedonia and, to some extent, the northwestern part of Greece. Sizeable old Albanian diasporas exist in various regions of Greece (since the late 13th–14th centuries), in the southern Italy (since the 15th century), near Zadar in Croatia (since the 18th century), in Bulgaria and Ukraine (this population probably left Albania in the 16th century). Albanian is spoken by approximately 7.5 million speakers.

Dialects. In terms of dialectal variation, the Albanian language area is divided into two large zones – the Northern (or Gheg) and the Southern (or Tosk); the Shkumbin river, which crosses Albania from east to west, forms a border between the two zones (a narrow strip of transitional dialects is situated to the south of the Shkumbin river). The dialects of northern Albania, Kosovo, Montenegro, and Serbia; the diaspora dialect of Zadar; and the majority of the Albanian dialects of Macedonia belong to the Gheg zone, while all other dialects belong to the Tosk zone.

The main differences between the Gheg and Tosk dialects in phonetics are (1) the so-called rhotacism (the change -n- > -r- in Tosk); (2) the presence of nasal vowel series in Gheg and the absence of nasal vowels in Tosk; (3) the correspondence between Gheg stressed nasal ã and Tosk stressed ǝ; (4) the correspondence between Gheg vo- and Tosk va- in some words. Concerning all these phenomena, the Gheg dialect features a more archaic language state than the Tosk dialect. Other phonetic isoglosses are not absolute. On the basis of the distribution of these phonetic phenomena in lexical borrowings one may conclude that the division of (pre)Albanian language continuum into the Gheg and Tosk zones had to occur in the last centuries of the first millennium A.D.

The main morphological difference between the Gheg and Tosk dialects, which is also almost absolute, is the presence of the analytical infinitive form in Gheg. The Tosk dialect lacks the infinitive form strictu sensu (except some lexicalized remnants). There are some other less important morphological differences between the two dialects (e.g. lack of a possessive-reflexive pronoun in Tosk, some differences in word-formation affixes, and so on). Some other phonetic and morphological differences will be listed in the relevant sections of this chapter.

Both the Gheg and Tosk zones are divided into numerous subdialects. The main Gheg subdialects are northern Gheg (further subdividing into western and eastern subdialects), central Gheg and southern Gheg (or Gheg of Central Albania). The Tosk dialect divides into northern Tosk (further subdividing into western and eastern subdialects) and southern Tosk (Lab and Cham dialects). The main diaspora dialects, Arbresh (the Albanian dialects of Italy) and Arvanitika (the Albanian dialects of Greece), are closest to southern Tosk, although they (especially Arbresh) also demonstrate some specific dialectal traits due to the complex scenarios of their respective speakers’ migrations. Both dialects are very important for Albanian language history.
Modern Standard Albanian was consolidated after the Second World War on the basis of the Tosk dialect but including some elements (mainly, lexical and, to a lesser degree, (morpho)phonological and morphological) of the Gheg dialect. Now the standard language is used as such in all parts of the Albanian language area.
Documentation of Albanian. The first well-documented mention of Albanians as a separate ethnic entity is encountered in the “Historia” by Michael Attaleiates (1079–1080), where Albanians are mentioned with respect to the Durrës region in the year 1078 (two earlier mentions under the years 1038 and 1043 are disputable). The first known mention of Albanian as a separate language is found in a legal document from a Ragusa (Dubrovnik) archive dated 1285: *Audivi unam vocem clamantem in monte in lingua Albanesca* ‘I heard a voice on the mountain that shouted in the Albanian language’. The first Albanian language record (in the Gheg dialect) is the baptismal formula (*Unte paghesont prement Atit et birit et spertit senit* ‘I baptize you in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost’) from 1462, included in the Latin pastoral letter of Archbishop of Durrës Pal Engjëlli (Paulus Angelus), a close associate of Scanderbeg. There are some other short language records (in both Gheg and Tosk) belonging to the end of 15th and beginning of the 16th centuries (see Roques 1932, Shuteriqi 1976, Matzinger 2010).

The first important early Albanian written text is “*Meshari*” (Missal) by the Catholic priest Gjon Buzuku, printed in 1555 (most likely in Venice); only one copy is preserved, and the text comprises 188 pages. “*Meshari*” was written in the northern variety of the Gheg dialect; it remains the main source for the study of the earliest stage of Albanian. “*Meshari*” opens the North Albanian Catholic tradition in the development of Albanian writing. Overall, some ten printed texts belonging to this tradition and published before the middle of 18th century are known. All these publications use Latin script with rather similar graphic and orthographic conventions. These books are mostly devoted to spiritual and church matters (however, there was also a *Dictionarium latino-epiroticum* (Roma 1635) by Frang Bardhi (Franciscus Blanchus)). Besides Catholic literature, some other traditions in the early Albanian writing can be identified. One of these traditions is the Orthodox tradition of Central and South Albania, which is represented by the texts created between the second third of the 18th and the first third of the 19th centuries. These texts were written in southern Gheg and Tosk and used both Greek script and various original alphabets invented by educated Albanians especially for their own language needs. Along with a small number of religious texts, two multilingual dictionaries of great value belong to this tradition: Theodor Kavalioti’s “*Prôtopeiria*” (1770) and Daniel of Voskopojas’s “*Eisagôgikê didaskalia*” (1802). The Muslim tradition of Old Albanian writings covered the entire territory of Albania but was especially prosperous in the cities of Central Albania, where some poets of a high poetical level wrote their verses using Arabic script from the beginning of the 18th till the middle of the 19th century. Great significance for the study of Albanian belongs to the Italo-Albanian (Arbëresh) writing tradition, which started with “*Embsuame e krështere*” (Christian Doctrine) by Luca Matranga (published in 1592 in Rome, written in Latin script; it represents a good example of the old stage of the southern Tosk dialect; the book is very valuable for the study of both the Italo-Albanian dialect and Arvanitica; see Sasse 1991: 8–9) and flourished in the 19th century.

The period starting from the middle of the 19th century marks the beginning of the development of the Standard Albanian language.

The ethnic and language name. The old Albanian ethnic and language name has been used since the oldest Byzantine and Latin sources in the two forms of the root *arb-* and *alb-* (which form is etymologically primary remains unclear): Ἀρβανιτῶν by Attaleiates, *lingua Albanesca* in the Dubrovnik document from the 13th century and so on (cf. also *Ἀλβανοί* and *Ἀλβανόπολις* by Ptolemy; see below). Albanians themselves used this name only with the root *arb-* (see, however, the name of Albanian tribe *lab*, and of the corresponding area *Labëri*, probably from *alb-* with metathesis). The name with the root *arb-* is mentioned in old Albanian documents, but it went out of use in the main part of Albanian-speaking
area and remains in use only in diaspora dialects (It.-Alb. arbëresh, Gr.-Alb. arvanitas). In other areas, it has been replaced by the term with the root shqip-: shqip ‘Albanian (used as an adverb)’, guha shqipe ‘Albanian language’, shqiptar ‘Albanian (ethnic name)’ and so on. This name is derived from the verb shqiptoj (‘to speak clearly’, earlier ‘to understand’; see B. Demiraj 2010); it was first registered in the 16th century (at the beginning in its adverbal form) and consolidated in the 18th century. The ethnic name change was triggered most likely by the Ottoman conquest (end of the 14th century–second half of the 15th century), which led to deep changes in the structure of the Albanian nation (for the Albanian ethnic and language names see, first of all, B. Demiraj 2010).

The origin and early history of the Albanian language. The fact that written evidence concerning the Albanian language and Albanians is historically rather shallow makes it problematic to reconstruct the earlier stages of Albanian language history. From the end of the 19th century, a central place in this problem belongs to the question of the possible development of Albanian from one of the languages that were spoken in Antiquity in the northern part of the Balkans. However, this question itself resulted from speculations that were largely deductive. Two main theories consider Albanian as a descendant of either Illyrian or Thracian languages, respectively (for an overview see Matzinger 2009, 2012b). According to the former theory, Albanians were autochthonous to the area that roughly coincided with their modern territory; the latter theory assumes that the ancestors of Albanians came to the modern territory from a more eastern part of the peninsula. This aspect of the “origin problem” accounts for the political shade of the debate: the Illyrian theory became a sort of a sacred cow in Communist Albania and remains the mainstream theory among Albanian scholars nowadays. The situation is complicated by the fact that the exact extent of the idioms referred to as the Illyrian and Thracian languages, respectively, is not known. In the case of Illyrian, the issue is relevant, first of all, for Messapian; the status of this idiom is indeterminate and varies in linguistic writings from merely an Illyrian dialect to a different language. In the case of Thracian, one should mention “Daco-Misian,” which was assumed by V. Georgiev to be a separate language and a direct ancestor of Albanian. In the last decades, Dardanian is considered a separate language, also potentially important for Albanian language history.

There are some arguments in favour of either theory. From a purely historical point of view, the absence of the mentions of Albanians till the 11th century cannot be considered as an argument against (or in favour of) either the “autochthony” or “migration” hypotheses. The mentions of the tribe Ἀλβανοί and the city (?) Ἀλβανόπολις (to the East of the Dyrrachion) in Ptolemy’s Geography (2nd century A.D.; see also Αρβων, a city in Illyria with uncertain localisation by Polybius, 2nd century BC) don’t testify definitively in favour of the historical continuity of the Albanians in this territory: there are many known examples in world history where an ethnic or a language name shifted from one ethnos to another.

There are studies that show some kind of archeological continuity between Antiquity and the second half of the first millennium A.D., first of all the so-called Koman culture near Kruja. However, regardless of the particular interpretation of excavation materials from an archeological point of view, these studies cannot be decisive for the solution of the problem of ethnic and linguistic continuity.

There are also some linguistic data that can be taken as evidence in favour of the Albanian language’s descent from either the Illyrian or Thracian language, respectively. Unfortunately, most of these arguments are weakened by the insufficiency of our knowledge about the ancient Indo-European languages of the Balkan Peninsula.

There are some reliable etymological correspondences between Albanian words and both Illyrian (including Messapian) and Thracian language material (a few glosses and
numerous onomastic tokens). Among the most commonly accepted Illyrian-Albanian correspondences are Illyr. ῥινός ‘cloud, fog’ – Alb. re, rē ‘cloud’; Messap. βρέννον ‘deer’, βρέννον ‘deer’s head’ – Alb. bri, brē ‘horn’; Messap. Juppiter Menzana ‘the God to whom horses were sacrificed’ – Alb. mēz, māz ‘foal’; Tarentian βάρκα·αίδοιον – Alb. bark ‘belly’; Messap. aran ‘field’ – Alb. arē ‘field’; Messap. bilia ‘daughter’ – Alb. bijë (dial. bištë). The Thracian-Albanian (and Dacian-Albanian) correspondences include Dac. μαντεία ‘blackberry’ – Alb. man ‘mulberry’; *δράνις (Hesychius) ‘deer’ – Alb. drē ‘deer’ and some other.

Lexical data of this kind are obviously insufficient for any kind of decisive conclusions about the relations between Albanian and the two ancient Balkan languages. The same is also true of phonetic Illyrian-Albanian and Thracian-Albanian isoglosses. Given the limits of our knowledge, it is preferable to consider Illyrian, Thracian and Albanian as separate branches within the Indo-European language family.

There are, however, other pieces of linguistic evidence that may be relevant for the determination of the place of the “intermediate Balkan Urheimat” of the Albanians, regardless of whether or not the Albanian language originates from the Illyrian language.

• One piece of evidence comes from the phonetic form of some ancient geographic names localised in the modern Albanian territory, first of all on the Adriatic coast. If it is possible to trace a linguistically continuous path in the phonetic development of these names from their ancient form to their modern form in accordance with Albanian “sound laws,” it would support the hypothesis that the Albanians have been living on their modern territory from Antiquity. There are, however, some phonetic difficulties in reconstructing such a continuous development, for example, with respect to such important Albanian toponyms as Shkodër < Scodra, Σκόδρα, Durrës < Dyrrhachium, Δυρράχιον, Shkumbi(n) < Scampis, Scamphinus. There is a long discussion on the historical development of these names; the most widespread view has it that the historical development of these names does not coincide with the laws of the Albanian historical phonology (e.g. Scodra should have developed into something like *Hadër; see Matzinger 2009: 23). By contrast, in the inner Balkans there are some geographic names that show a phonetic development according to Albanian “sound laws” (see e.g. Nish < Naissus, Ναίσσος).

• Albanian has a rather modest number of old Greek borrowings (33 according to Ölberg 1972). If the ancestors of Albanians lived near the Adriatic coast and communicated with the inhabitants of Greek colonies (Dyrrhachium, Apollonia et al.), the number of Greek loans would have been higher.

• Albanian lacks almost any inherited lexemes related to seamanship. We know, though, that the Illyrians, who were inhabitants of the seacoast, were artful seamen and pirates.

All these pieces of evidence indicate, although somewhat indirectly, that in the époque of late Antiquity the ancestors of Albanians did not live on the Adriatic coast or in close proximity to it. We can say nothing, however, about where they actually did live at this time.

Another group of linguistic facts is more relevant for the solution of the Albanian homeland problem. These are the numerous Albanian-Romanian correspondences. These correspondences pertain to various linguistic levels. There are numerous correspondences in grammar, first of all a striking similarity in the architecture of the noun phrase (see the sections “Morphology” and “Syntax”). The source of the common development is, most likely, Albanian. There are also some phonological (e.g. diphthongization of e, see
the section “Phonology”) and morphonological (similar patterns of number expression in masculine nouns; see the section “Morphology”) resemblances. Numerous Albanian-Romanian lexical correspondences include early Albanian borrowings into Romanian, those words that entered both languages from some common (and unknown) sources as well as Latin words that are found exclusively in Romanian and Albanian (see Vătășescu 1997, Kaluzhskaya 2001). These phenomena point to a long period of very intensive contacts between the ancestors of Albanian and Romanian. The time of these contacts should coincide with the period of the formation of the (Daco)Romanian language, that is, the middle of the first millennium A.D. As far as localization is concerned, we may hypothesize that it was the inner part of the Balkan Peninsula (maybe the territory of ancient Dardania; see Jokl 1924; the triangle Niš–Sofia–Skopje, see Weigand 1927).

The layers of the Albanian lexicon. It is believed that Albanian belongs to languages with a high amount of lexical borrowings (in this respect Albanian is similar to Armenian; see Matzinger in print). The etymological dictionary of inherited (i.e. non-borrowed) Albanian words by Bardhyl Demiraj lists 572 tokens (without the derivatives that originated in Albanian; B. Demiraj 1997: 37). Since Albanian is a language with a relatively shallow written attestation, the importance of borrowings as data for the study of historical phonetics (and, to a lesser degree, historical morphology) is extremely high.

In terms of chronology, the earliest massive layer of borrowings in Albanian is the Latin layer (for a small number of old Greek loans, see above). The period of intensive Albanian-Latin language contacts might have begun in the early 1st century AD, after the final incorporation of the West Balkans into the Roman state (Romans’ first contacts with the West Balkan seacoast happened in the 3rd century BC) and continued until the 5th–6th century AD, eventually taking the form of Albanian-(Proto)Romanian contacts. The Latin borrowings in Albanian (see Mihăescu 1966, Haarmann 1972, Landi 1989, Vătășescu 1997, Bonnet 1998) are very numerous: according to the various lists the number of Latin etymons in Albanian is no less than 600; these borrowings cover practically all parts of the Albanian lexicon in both semantic and morphological dimensions. It should be noted that although the main part of Latin loans belongs to the cultural lexicon (see e.g. gjyq ‘trial, court’ < iūdicum; mjek ‘physician’ < medicus), there are also some basic vocabulary items that have been borrowed from Latin (see e.g. vij ‘come’ < venio; këmbë ‘leg, foot’ < *camba et al.). There are some derivational affixes borrowed from Latin (see the section “Word Formation”). Any direct influence of Latin on Albanian phonetics and morphology is rather uncertain. The Latin borrowings came into (Proto)Albanian at the time when (Proto)Albanian was experiencing great changes, and that is why these borrowings constitute the main source of our knowledge about the absolute chronology of Albanian language history.

The Albanian-Slavic language contacts (see Selishchev 1931, Jokl 1934, Desnickaja 1968, Svane 1992, Ylli 1997) began after the Slavic invasion into the Balkans and continue, in a sense, until now. Unlike Latin borrowings, which are for the most part common Albanian, a great part of Slavic loans have a clear dialect distribution (according to Ylli 1997 only a quarter of some 1000 Slavic borrowings have a more or less pan-Albanian distribution). According to historical-phonetic criteria, there is a small group (circa twenty) of Slavic borrowings that had to enter Albanian relatively early (before the 10th–11th century), whereas the chronological fixation of the most part of Slavic loans remains unclear. The main source of the Slavic loans for the southern dialects of Albanian was Macedonian-Bulgarian dialects, while the main source for the northern dialects was Serbo-Croatian dialects. Slavic borrowings belong to various semantic domains, but are mostly related to the cultural lexicon (oborr ‘yard’, cf. Bulg.-Mac. obor, SCr. obor; bujar ‘noble’ < Slav. boljar). Some Slavic derivational suffixes also entered Albanian.
The Middle and Modern Greek borrowings (prevailing in southern Greek dialects of Albanian) date back to early medieval times. Italian loans date back to the beginning of active contacts by the Italian states with this part of the Dalmatian coast (11th century); many early Italian borrowings came from the Venetian dialect.

After the Ottoman invasion (end of the 14th–15th century) a great influx of Turkish words (including Arabic and Persian borrowings in Turkish) overflowed Albanian. In this layer, there are a great number of terms related to economic, administrative and spiritual life (bajrak ‘banner, an administrative district in the Albanian mountains’ < bayrak, borxh ‘debt’ < borç, sevda ‘love’ < sevda), but also various pragmatically loaded, “gesture-like” words (kismet ‘fate (used as an interjection)’ < kismet), as well as some words that belong to basic vocabulary (jeshil ‘green’ < yeşil). Since the beginning of the Albanian national-cultural revival (the so-called National Renaissance or National Awakening) in the second half of 19th century the main trend in Albanian language policy was to eliminate Turkish loans as a symbol of national oppression and undesirable “easternization”. Many Turkisms really went out of use, and some shifted to the domain of popular, “sub-standard” language, but many Turkish words remain part of the present Albanian lexicon. Albanian also has a small amount of grammatical morphemes borrowed from Turkish (on Turkish borrowings see, first of all, Boretzky 1975–1976).

Since the end of the 19th century and, especially, in the 20th and 21st centuries, an innumerable amount of internationalisms entered Albanian. The sources of these words depended on political circumstances (Italian and French before the Second World War, Russian in the first two decades of Communist rule, and English in recent decades).

Albanian diaspora dialects have a great number of words from current and old neighboring languages: Arvanitica from Greek, Arbresh from Greek and Italian (a big part of the ancestors of present Italo-Albanians came from Greece) and so on.

Areal position of Albanian. There have been numerous attempts to determine the areal place of Albanian within the IE languages (see, for example, Porzig 1974, Pisani 1950, 1959, Jokl 1963, Hamp 1966, Orel 2000). The detailed investigation of lexical as well as, to a lesser extent, phonetic and grammatical isoglosses indicates that there are especially close connections of Albanian with North-Eastern IE languages (Baltic and Slavic), on the one hand, and with Greek, on the other hand. There are discrepant opinions with respect to the chronological assessment of these two groups of convergences.

Recently, there has been a discussion of the so-called Balkan Indo-European, which includes Greek, Albanian, Armenian and Phrygian, and which is understood as an intermediate protolanguage (see the overview in Matzinger 2012a).

Modern Albanian is considered one of the base members of the Balkan Sprachbund, which also includes Bulgaro-Macedonian, some Serbian dialects, Balkan Romance, modern Greek and Romani. Standard Albanian indeed shares the majority of the so-called Balkanisms, such as the presence of stressed /a/, the postpositive article, the merger of genitive and dative, the lack of the infinitive, the volitive future, the object clitic doubling and some others (see “Phonetics”, “Morphology” and “Syntax”; see also Schaller 1975, Asenova 2002). The Balkanisms must have been formed in the broad temporal interval between the middle of the first millennium A.D. and the first centuries of the Ottoman invasion, which covers the second half of the Proto-Albanian and the Old Albanian period. The same time span is the period of the europeanization of Albanian: Albanian shares 8 or 9 of 12 diagnostic features of Standard Average European as listed in Haspelmath 2001 (among them the presence of both definite and indefinite articles, the possessive perfect, relative clauses with relative pronouns, the participial passive etc.). Apparently, balkanization and europeanization of Albanian could have developed parallel to each other.
The Albanian alphabet. The modern Albanian alphabet, which was elaborated and accepted in 1908, is consistently phonological. It consists of 36 graphemes (including digraphs). The following graphemes should be explained:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>grapheme</th>
<th>phonemic value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>ts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ç</td>
<td>ŝ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dh</td>
<td>ð</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ë</td>
<td>ə (stressed and unstressed, sometimes it isn’t pronounced)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gj</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ll</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nj</td>
<td>n’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rr</td>
<td>r:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>ŝ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x</td>
<td>dz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xh</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Periodization of Albanian language history, reconstructed stages of Albanian

In the following sections I shall use the following nomenclature for periods in Albanian language history.

- **Pre-Proto-Albanian period**, the language of the ancestors of Albanians before the beginning of intensive contacts with Rome, i.e. before the first century AD. In the end of this period many important sound changes took place that moved (Proto)Albanian away from the (late) PIE state, e.g. the merger of PIE *o and *a as well as the merger of PIE *ā and *ē, considerable changes of the consonant system (the merger of the PIE Media and Media Aspirata, the changes in the gutturals, which, however, have preserved an opposition of the reflexes of all three series); and, probably, the stress changes (see the section “Phonology”).

- **Proto-Albanian**, the language of the first millennium AD, the time of intensive contacts with Latin and early contacts with Slavic. A new wave of important changes took place during this period, among them the reduction of the pre- and post-tonic syllables (which drastically changed the phonetic shape of Albanian word); the old quantitative vowel opposition was lost; the intervocalic voiced consonants were weakened and, partly, lost (the exact conditions of this loss are not completely clear; see the section “Phonology”); as a result of the syllable reduction a large part of PIE endings were lost, and eventually many new morphological formants were agglutinated instead; important grammatical balkanisms arose in this period (most likely due to intensive contacts between the ancestors of the Albanians and Romanians; see the sections “Morphology” and “Syntax”). At the end of this period, just before the split into the Tosc and Gheg dialects, that is, at the end of the first millennium AD, the (Proto) Albanian language took a form that is quite similar to that of the Albanian language as known to us from written sources.
• **Old Albanian**, the language from the time of the first dialect split till the end of the period of the old written texts, that is, till the 18th century. This period can be further subdivided into Early Old Albanian (from the beginning of the first millennium AD to the earliest written texts) and Late Old Albanian (16th–18th centuries). Early Old Albanian was characterized by secondary contacts between the Gheg and Tosk dialects in the territories that roughly coincide with the modern Albanian-speaking area and by the processes of forced balkanization of Albanian, especially in the south of the Albanian-speaking territory. In the Late Old Albanian period (the time after the Ottoman conquest), the modern Albanian dialectal landscape was formed.

• **Modern Albanian**, the Albanian language of the 19th–21st centuries.

This periodization presented here is almost identical to those used by B. Demiraj (1997), Matzinger (2006), Hock (2005, with an analytical overview of previous attempts at periodization), Schumacher/Matzinger (2013) and de Vaan (*in print*) and differs somewhat, mainly in terminological details, from those by Desnickaja (1984), Ölberg (2013) and Orel (2000).

In the sections considering phonetics and grammar I shall operate with reconstructed Albanian units (phonemes, fragments of the phonemes systems, forms, paradigms and so on). The following designations will be used:

• **PA** for the stage that is reconstructed based on the comparison of the Gheg and Tosk dialects as well as the language of the Old Albanian written texts. It can be assumed that this reconstructed stage corresponds more or less to the Albanian language just before the dialect split, i.e. to Albanian at the very end of the Proto-Albanian period.1 Sometimes the designation EPA, early Proto-Albanian, is used for units that belong to relatively earlier stages in the development of Albanian within the Proto-Albanian period.

• **P PA** (only when needed) for the stage of the Albanian development just before the beginning of the contacts with Rome, i.e. on the border between the Pre-Proto-Albanian and Proto-Albanian periods.

In addition, the term Standard Albanian (SA) will be used.

**PHONOLOGY**

In this section I chiefly rely on the following surveys of Albanian historical phonology: B. Demiraj 1997, Matzinger 2006, Ölberg 2013 (for vocalism); Schumacher/Matzinger 2013; and de Vaan *in print*; I also take into account Çabej 1976; Sh. Demiraj 1996, Orel 2000, Topalli 2006; see also the overviews of the development of Albanian sound system in Hock 2005 (vocalism and consonantism) and Vermeer 2008 (vocalism).

In what follows the vowel, resonant and consonant subsystems of Albanian as well as the problem of Albanian stress patterns will be described in turn. For each subsystem, a discussion of the SA system will be followed by the reconstruction of the alleged PA stage, based on the data from dialects and the earliest written texts. The history of PIE sounds in Albanian will be the topic of the next part in each paragraph. Only the main lines of the sound development will be specified; for the others the necessary references will be given. The illustrative etymological material (based, first of all, on B. Demiraj 1997, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013, Orel 1998 and Çabej 1976–2014) will be given in a very selective way.
Vowels

SA vowel system

i y u
e œ o
a

All Albanian vowels may be used in both stressed and unstressed positions. Therefore, the standard Albanian vowel system is very close to the idealized Balkan vowel system (five basic vowels + stressed ə): the only extra vowel is the labialized high front phoneme y.

Vowels: basic dialectal differences. Reconstruction of the PA system

The Standard Albanian system above is very close to the system attested in the majority of Tosk dialects. Other dialects differ, however, in this respect from the standard language to a great extent. The major differences are the following.

• In the Gheg dialects and in a small part of the Tosk dialects (namely in their southern parts, that is, the Lab and Cham dialects, as well as in some Arbresh dialects) there is an opposition between long and short vowels. This opposition is also attested in old Albanian written texts; thus, it used to be a pan-Albanian feature that was later lost in the greater part of the Tosk area.

• The Gheg dialects have a special series of nasal vowels (ã, ĩ, ū, ÿ, ě, but nasal ô is lacking), which developed in the PA period and disappeared in the Tosk dialects. It should be noted that the authors of the first written texts either do not mark vowel nasalization at all or do so in a very inconsistent way. PA ā developed into Tosk ĕ /a/: Gheg āsht ‘(s)he is’ – SA, Tosk. ēshtë id.; PA ĕ developed into ĕ or e depending on the dialect (and depending on the phonetic position in some dialects) in Tosk: Gheg vënd ‘place’ – SA, Tosk vënd, vënd id. Whether there is/was a phonological opposition between long nasal vowels and short nasal vowels in Albanian dialects and in PA remains an unsolved problem.

• SA lacks diphthongs as independent phonological units; all vowel sequences within words are treated as biphonemic combinations. During the PA period the processes of diphthongization were at work in Albanian, which led to the arising of three diphthongs, namely uo, ie and ye (on the origin of these diphthongs see below, section 1.3). These diphthongs later had different patterns of development in Albanian dialects:

  uo > ua in Tosk: gr'ua, gru'a ‘wife’ (with different stress patterns depending on the phonetic context and dialect); ue, ū more rarely ua and even uo in various Gheg dialects: grue, grū ‘id.’;

  ie > ie in Tosk (with different stress patterns depending on the phonetic context and dialect): Tosk d'iel, dj'ell ‘the Sun’; i, more rarely ie, in Gheg dialects: Gheg dill ‘id.’;

  ye > ye (with different stress patterns depending on the phonetic context and dialect), sometimes ie in Tosk: kr'ye, kry'e, krie ‘head’; ye, ū in Gheg dialects: krye, krū ‘id.’

• The number of vowel phonemes differs in various dialects. The major differences (along with the presence/absence of long/short and oral/nasal oppositions) are (see Gjinari et al. 2007):
A) absence of \( y (> \textit{i}) \) (as well as its correlates \( \text{\textbar{y}} \) and \( \text{\textbar{y}} \)) in some Albanian dialects, both Tosk (Lab and Cham dialects) and Gheg;

B) In Gheg dialects only unstressed \( \text{\textbar{e}} /\text{\textbar{a}}/ \) is present. During the last centuries a process of the reduction of unstressed \( \text{\textbar{e}} \) has been under way in Albanian. This process is especially strong in the Gheg dialects. It seems that unstressed \( \text{\textbar{e}} \) is not phonemic in the majority of Gheg dialects. By contrast, analysis of the old Gheg texts points toward the phonemic status of unstressed \( \text{\textbar{e}} \).

In Lab and Cham dialects there is an opposition between /\text{\textbar{a}}/ and /\text{\textbar{a}}:/.

C) In northern Gheg dialects, there are two additional long vowel phonemes with very restricted spheres of use (only some words for each).

a) /\text{\textbar{æ}}/, /\text{\textbar{e}}/ < ae (ae is used as such in the earliest written texts); this vowel is typical in a large part of the northern Gheg and central Gheg dialects: th/\text{\textbar{æ}}/ ‘you said (aor.)’, other dialects: the ‘id.’

b) /\text{\textbar{o}}/ < oe (oe is used as such in first written texts); this vowel is found in some western northern Gheg dialects: vi\text{\textbar{o}}/s\text{\textbar{e}} ‘dew’, other dialects: ves\text{\textbar{e}} ‘id.’

- In the central Gheg dialects, a set of diphthongization processes (as well as some other vocalic changes) took place, probably in the Late Old Albanian period: /i/ > /\text{\textbar{ej}}, /\text{\textbar{aj}}, /\text{\textbar{e}}/; /u/ > /ou/, /au/; /a/ > /o/; /i/ > /oi/, /ou/; /y/ > /\text{\textbar{j}}, /\text{\textbar{aj}}, /\text{\textbar{e}}/; the long and nasal correlates of these vowels followed parallel patterns of development. For the phonetic conditions of such changes, see Jusufi 2011; the phonemic status of the variants that emerged in this process is not entirely clear.

To sum up, the following vowel system can be reconstructed for the very end of the PA period:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\text{i} & \text{i} & \text{y} & \text{y} & \text{u} & \text{u} & \text{u} & \text{i} & \text{i} & \text{ie} & \text{ye} & \text{uo} \\
\text{e} & \text{e} & \text{e} & \text{æ} & \text{o} & \text{ø} & \text{a} & \text{A} & \text{A} \\
\end{array}
\]

Notes: /\text{\textbar{a}}/ appeared only as an unstressed vowel.

The opposition of the short and long vowels might have arisen either at the end of the PA or the very beginning of the OA period. In the latter case the opposition must have developed in the Gheg and Tosk zones independently under similar conditions, which is less plausible. It remains unclear whether there was ever an opposition between short and long vowels in unstressed syllables.

Perhaps there also existed a special series of long nasalized vowels.

The system as reconstructed above is very close to that of some conservative western northern Gheg dialects.

1.2 Vowels: the origin

The origin of PA long and nasalized vowels will not be traced in this section (see section 1.3 on their origin).
TABLE 12.2 PIE SHORT VOWELS (IN STRESSED POSITION)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*a (also *h₁e), *o (also *h₂e), *H (in the roots in zero-grade)</td>
<td>PPA, PA *a &gt; SA a</td>
<td>SA bathë ‘broad bean’ &lt; PIE *bʰaθ-; SA natë ‘night’ &lt; PIE *nok-o-t-; SA mas, mat ‘to measure’ &lt; PIE *mHt-(io)-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*e (also *h₁e)</td>
<td>a) PA, SA e after CR- and/or before-NC; b) PA, SA ja; c) PA, SA ie/*e, l; d) PA, SA je (elsewhere)</td>
<td>a) SA bredh ‘to wander’ &lt; PIE *bʰreθh-; dhemb ‘to ache’ &lt; PIE *ǵembʰ-; b) SA jam ‘I am’ &lt; PIE *h₁esmi; c) SA bie ‘to bring’ &lt; PIE *bʰer-; d) SA djeg ‘to burn’ &lt; PIE *dʰegʰ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*i (also *Hi)</td>
<td>PA, SA i</td>
<td>SA (i) lig ‘bad, ill’ &lt; PIE *h₁i-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*u (also *Hu)</td>
<td>PA, SA u</td>
<td>SA gjumë ‘sleep’ &lt; PIE *sup-no-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

1. Latin o in borrowings manifests as o in SA; Latin a, ā > Alb. a. Based on this evidence, the change from PIE *o to *a can be dated back to the PPA period.
2. Latin “wide” e (< Lat. ē, ae) experienced similar changes in roughly identical phonetic conditions also, so we may attribute them rather to the end of the PA period.
   a) The conditions are not entirely clear.
   b) Maybe the change has a later character and is parallel with the diphthongization of other PA vowels (see 1.3).
3–4. Lat. i > SA Alb. i (on the reflex Lat. i > Alb. e see below); Lat. u > SA u.

PIE long vowels

The vowels in the PIE lengthened grade, the sequences *Vh₁/₂/₃ and vowels resulting from the sequences *Vsr/l (with the following loss of the *s: SA dorë < PIE *ǵhes-r-) must have merged in the PPA period.

TABLE 12.3 PIE LONG VOWELS (IN STRESSED POSITION)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*ā (and *eh₁),*ē (and *eh₁)</td>
<td>PPA *ā &gt; PA *o (earlier *ā) &gt; SA o</td>
<td>SA moitër ‘sister’ &lt; PIE *meh₁-tr-; SA mot ‘time, weather’ &lt; PIE *meh₁-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ō (and *eh₁, *oH)</td>
<td>PPA *ō &gt; PA e (earlier *ō), SA e</td>
<td>SA derë ‘door’ &lt; PIE *dʰwör-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*i (and *iH)</td>
<td>PA, SA *i</td>
<td>SA pi ‘drink’ &lt; PIE *pʰi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ū (and *uH)</td>
<td>PA *y &gt; SA *y; later *y &gt; i/(_s)#</td>
<td>SA gjysh ‘grandfather’ &lt; PIE *suH-so-; SA më, Gheg. më ‘mouse’ &lt; PIE *mūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

1. Old Greek borrowings in Albanian show the replacement of ā by SA o. Lat. ā gives Alb. a (for another opinion, see, however, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 221), and Lat. ē > Alb. e, i. Based on this evidence, the merger of PIE vowels and their change to a vowel other than a must have taken place at the end of the PPA period.
2. Latin ǭ also changed to e, at least in the older group of Latin borrowings, which makes it possible to establish a terminus ante quem for this process. The intermediate stage of the development of this vowel should have been ǣ. Another reflex of Latin stressed ǭ in Albanian is o; most likely, this reflex is found in the later layer of borrowings – it coincides with the reflex of the Latin stressed short o. Latin short o in Albanian also has the reflex u (maybe in the older borrowings).
It can be hypothesized (see Matzinger 2012b) that at the beginning of the contacts with Latin, that is, at the beginning of the PA period, the early PA vowel system still had quantitative distinctions. Thus, the Latin long ō was replaced by early EPA *ō (later *œ > SA e), Lat. short o by PA *u (short *o was lacking in the early PA system after the change from PIE *o to PPA *a), and both Lat. a and ō by PA *a. Then, after the change *ō > *œ, both Lat. o and ō (which have lost their quantitative distinctions in Late Latin and merged in East Romania) came to be replaced by PA *ɔ (< PIE *ā, *ē).

3. Lat. i reflects as SA *i (SA mik ‘friend’ < Lat. amicus ‘friend’). Latin short i had two reflexes: SA i and SA e. The same two reflexes are also characteristic of Lat. ē. It seems that at the time of the contacts with Albanian, Lat. i and ē merged in the close *e (it was characteristic of Vulgar Latin in general), which differed from open *e (< e, ae). In the first period of the contacts (when PIE *ay, *oy hadn’t yet changed into *e > SA e; see below, and also de Vaan 2004) Lat. *e was replaced by PA i; later, when this change was already in progress, Lat. ṑ began to be reflected by *e.

4. Lat. ā has two reflexes in Albanian: SA y (older layer) and SA u.

PIE diphthongs

There is almost no reliable etymological data concerning the development of PIE long diphthongs in Albanian.

### Table 12.4 PIE Diphthongs (In Stressed Position)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. *ay, *oy</td>
<td>EPA *e &gt; PA *e &gt; SA e</td>
<td>SA edh ‘kid’ &lt; PIE *(H)ayg-; SA shteg ‘path, road’ &lt; PIE *stoyg-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. *ey</td>
<td>PA, SA i</td>
<td>SA dimër, Gheg dimën ‘winter’&lt; PIE *gēymōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. *aw, *ow</td>
<td>PA, SA a</td>
<td>SA ag ‘dawn’ &lt; *h₂ewg-; SA laj ‘to wash’ &lt; PIE *lh₂-ew-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. *ew</td>
<td>EPA *e &gt; PA *e &gt; SA e</td>
<td>SA hedh ‘to throw’ &lt; PIE *skewd-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes**

3. Lat. *au > SA a in earlier borrowings, and > *af in later borrowings.

“Inner Albanian” development of the vowels in the PA period

a) “Umlaut” (i-mutation)

EPA *a (<PIE *a, *o, *H) > PA, SA e, if the following syllable has i (or ē). This change affected inherited words and the words borrowed from Latin, but not the words of Slavic origin (a few exceptions are usually explained away as a result of analogical processes). This process had a great significance for the Albanian morphological system (see the section “Morphology”): SA net ‘nights’ < EPA *na(k)ti(h). The “umlaut” ē does not have diphthong-like reflexes. The umlaut pattern EPA *o > PA, SA e and EPA *u > PA, SA y occurs in the same conditions but is less widespread.

The conditions of the change PA *e > i in some verbal and nominal forms are not clear (i-mutation, Orel 2000: 145, de Vaan 2004: 71; change before the following consonant cluster, Hamp 1971: 224; the influence of the following palatal consonant, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 219–220). The significant role that the alternation e : i has assumed in the OA and SA verb system (see below, the section “Morphology”) could have been propelled by analogical processes.
b) Diphthongization

EPA *o (< *ɔ, also < Lat. ə, ə) > *uo/*r#, *l#, *n#; *n in this position disappeared: PA *kron (< Gr. κρήνη, Dor. κράνα) > SA krua (Gheg krue, krū). In the anlaut *o (< *ɔ) yielded Gheg vo-, Tosk, SA va- (SA vatër, Gheg votër ‘hearth, fireplace’ < *h2eh2-tr-).

EPA *œ > ye/*r#, *n#; *n# disappears obligatorily, *r disappears optionally (see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 224, SA arsyé ‘cause’ < Lat. ratiōnem).

On the development EPA *e > PA, SA ie/*r#, *l# see above.

c) Development of the unstressed vowels

One of the most important phonetic changes in the PA period was the reduction of unstressed vowels. Two remarks that concern the chronology of this process should be made: (a) this process affected most Latin loans (see gusht ‘August’ < Lat. augustus); and (b) it continued to operate after umlaut processes happened (SA dash ‘ram’ < *deš-i < *-oi). These facts indicate that the reduction of unstressed vowels was at least partially under way at the end of the PA period. These processes yielded a very complicated and hardly reconstructable picture. In the absolute anlaut unstressed vowels were lost (see gusht above), in word-internal positions (both pre-tonic and post-tonic) they were lost in some words (SA mbesë ‘niece’ < Lat. nepōtia) and got reduced to /ə/ in other words (SA këndoj ‘to sing, to read’ < Lat. cantāre), and it is impossible to establish the strict rules that governed this distribution. As for the auslaut vowels, it seems that the process of reduction was influenced by morphonological conditions (see the section “Morphology”). Generally speaking, it could be supposed that the reduction of unstressed vowels was a rather long-term process: it presumably began as early as in the Pre-Proto-Albanian period and continued at least until the end of the Old Albanian period. A more detailed analysis with examples can be found in de Vaan in print; B. Demiraj 1997: 46–47.

d) Emergence of nasalization

In the last phase of the PA period a series of nasal vowels developed out of VN sequences with possible loss of *-n in the auslaut syllables (see also 1.1). The vowel o did not undergo nasalization and changed instead into the diphthong ua before nasal consonants.

e) Emergence of the new quantitative opposition

The new quantitative opposition arose, it seems, at the end of the PA or the very beginning of the OA period. The main sources of the lengthening were various processes of contraction, which involved both inherited IE words and Latin borrowings in Albanian (see e.g. bē ‘oath’ < *bʰeydhä; mjek ‘physician’ < Lat. medicus). Lengthening was also caused by the influence of the following resonants -r and -l. Although dialectally restricted, the processes of lengthening intensively continued, however, later in the Old Albanian period; e.g. vowel lengthening could occur as a result of apocope: eastern-northern Tosk plak/ə/ ‘old woman’ – Gheg /plaːk/ ‘id.’

The development of the vowel system. Conclusion

To sum up, the main trend of the development from the PIE vowel system into the Albanian vowel system was the loss of the IE quantitative distinctions and their partial replacement...
by qualitative distinctions. This process took a long time. Some of the important changes that disrupted the symmetry of the long and short vowel subsystems had occurred already in the PPA period (the merger of PIE *a and *o, the merger of the PIE *ā and *ē). At the beginning of the PA period, the “old” quantitative opposition was still present in Albanian. Very important vocalic changes took place in the PA period. Reflexes of Latin borrowings make it possible to establish a relative chronology of these changes (see e.g. de Vaan 2004). Among the most important PA changes are the development of *ū into *y, the change *ā > *o > *o, and the development of various reflexes of PIE *e. At a certain moment the PA system possessed two e-like phonemes: the open *e (< PIE *e) and close *è (< PIE *ay, *oy, *ew). The second one did not have diphthong-like reflexes. The presence of these two phonemes was paralleled by the Balkan Latin vocal system, which also had two e-phonemes (and only one /o/ phoneme, which is also true in Albanian). Whether there was a direct Latin (Roman) influence on Albanian phonetics in this respect remains, however, unclear. Later in the PA period the processes of the diphthongization before sonorant phonemes took place (*e > ie; *o (or *o) > uo; *œ (< PIE *ō) > ye) as well as umlaut processes. The vowel e, resulting from the i-fronting of a (as well as from *œ < PIE *ō), merged, at the end of the PA period, with the identical reflexes of *e and *è. Thus, a new quantitative opposition emerged; finally, nasalized vocal allophones gave rise to a special series of phonemes.

**Sonorants**

SA sonorant system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>m</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>n’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sonorants: main dialectal differences. Reconstruction of the PA system**

- The absence of the opposition r : r: (orthographic rr) in some dialects (both Gheg and Tosk).
- The change of l into d (some Gheg and Lab varieties) and into γ (some Arbresh dialects).
- Some eastern northern Gheg dialects lack the phoneme n’ (orthographic nj; they have ni or n instead). In many dialects (both Gheg and Tosk) as well as in SA n’ changes to j in some positions, defined in either phonetic or morphological terms.
- In most Gheg dialects and in a few Tosk dialects there is a special phoneme ĵ, which originated from the cluster ng.
- The Tosk rhotacism (the change -n- > -r-: SA, Tosk bëra – Gheg bâna ‘I made (aor.’’). Rhotacism applied to both inherited Albanian words and Latin borrowings (SA, Tosk. rërë ‘sand’ < Lat. arēna). By contrast, only two early Slavic borrowings in Tosk demonstrate the traces of the rhotacism. These facts make it possible to date this change (and the very moment of Albanian dialectal split) to the last centuries of the first millennium AD. The rhotacism is not a positionally conditioned restriction anymore in SA (nor in the Tosk dialects), which has many words with an intervocalic -n-. Along with later borrowings, there are inherited words with -n-, as well as Latin borrowings among these words; in these words -n- originated from various consonant clusters (see below) and had the form of a geminated or long n: at the moment of the beginning of rhotacism.
• There is an interdialectal correspondence between \( l \) in Cham and some Arbresh and Arvanitika and other Tosk diaspora dialects and \( j \) in most of the Tosk and all of the Gheg dialects as well as in SA that emerged as a result of the development of some clusters with *\( l \): *\( ly > lj \) (Cham \( \text{milë} \) ‘thousand’: SA \( \text{mijë} \); *\( li > lj \) (in the plural forms: Cham \( \text{popul} \) ‘people pl.’ – SA \( \text{popuj} \)). This correspondence makes it possible to reconstruct the sound \( \lambda \) for the PA stage (see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 245). It seems, however, that this sound was in a complementary distribution with other laterals (\( l \) and \( \lambda l \)) and can be treated as an allophone rather than an independent phoneme (possibly it continued to function as a cluster \( ly \) at the end of the PA period).

Thus, the following subsystem of sonorants can be reconstructed for the PA stage:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{m} & \text{n} & \text{n}: & \text{n}' \\
\text{l} & \text{l} & (\lambda) & \\
\text{r} & \text{r} & & \\
\text{j} & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

**Sonorants: the origin**

**TABLE 12.5 PIE SONORANTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. *\( l \) | a) PA *\( l \), SA \( l \) everywhere except intervocalic position  
b) PA *\( l \), SA \( l /V \_V \) (except the position before the *\(-i \), see above, 2.1.) | SA \( \text{lagje} \) ‘quarter’ < PIE *\( \text{log} \)-  
SA \( \text{hell} \) ‘spear, spit’ < PIE *\( \text{skol} \)- |
| 2. *\( r \) | a) PA, SA \( r/V \_V \)  
b) PA, SA \( r/\#_ \) | a) SA (i) \( \text{mirë} \) ‘good’ < PIE *\( \text{miHr} \)-  
b) SA \( \text{rrjedh} \) ‘to flow’ < PIE *\( \text{hreg} \)- |
| 3. *\( m \) | PA, SA \( m \) | SA \( \text{motër} \) ‘sister’ < PIE *\( \text{meh} \)-tr- |
| 4. *\( n \) | PA, SA \( n \) | SA \( \text{natë} \) ‘night’ < PIE *\( \text{nok} \)-t- |

**Notes**

The SA (or PA) \( j \) arose from the various sources (diphthongization of \( e \), development of /\( \lambda \)/, the anti-hiatus sound and so on). On the development of the PIE *\( y \) in Albanian see below (the section on obstruents).

1. Lat. \( l \) has reflexes with a similar distribution in Albanian.

2. The distribution of the two reflexes of PIE *\( r \) is unclear. The picture is further complicated by the presence of numerous doublets with \( rrr \) alternation among the Latin borrowings in the MA (also in the OA texts). PIE *\( \text{Vrn}V > \text{SA r} \); PIE *\( \#sr, \*\( \text{wr} > \text{SA r} \)- (see examples in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 248). *\( -ri > j \) (in the plural forms: \( \text{bij} \) ‘sons’ < *\( \text{bir-i} \)), whether an intermediate stage was \( /\lambda l/ \) remains unclear.

Lat. \( r > \text{PA, SA r/r} \): both in anlaut and in intervocalic position (with a tendency to follow the pattern of PIE reflexes).

3. On the reflexes of PIE *\( -m \) in some nominal endings see the section “Morphology”. Lat. \( m > \text{Alb. m} \).

4. Lat. \( n > \text{SA n} \); in Tosk, this sound develops into \( -r- \) in the intervocalic position (see above on rhota- cism). Lat. \( gn > \text{SA nj} \).

PIE intervocalic *\( -sn-, \*\( -Cn-, \*\( -nC- \) yielded PA *\( -nn- \), which further develops into \( -n- \) in both Tosk and Gheg (for examples, see Shumacher & Matzinger 2013: 249–250).
Further development of PA sonorants

On rhotacism and the development of the sound ʝ see 2.1.
PA *nj, *ni > SA nj, j; SA brinj ‘horns pl.’ < PA brin-i; SA bëj, Gheg. bënj < PPA banyô (on the change nj > j see 2.1). PA *-rn- > SA -rː.
On the development of n in closed auslaut syllables see 1.3.

Syllabic sonorants

PIE syllabic *m̥ and *n̥ > PA a, SA a: SA (i) gjatë ‘long’ < PIE *dlngʰ-t-; SA shtatë ‘seven’ < PIE *septm-.
The main reflexes of PIE *l̥ and *r̥ are PA, SA li and ri respectively (a detailed analysis of the distribution of PIE syllabic sonorants in Albanian can be found in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 229–232).

Obstruents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SA obstruents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p b t d c j k g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f v 0 d  s z h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ū ū tʃ dʒ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Obstruents: main dialectal differences. Reconstruction of the PA system

- In some dialects (both Tosk and Gheg) the phoneme h is absent; in other dialects (mainly Tosk) it is absent in certain phonetic positions. In many Gheg dialects h alternates in some positions with f. It should be noted that SA h often has a non-etymological character. On SA h < PIE *sk, *sk ˊ, see below.
- The palatal phonemes c, j (orthographic q, gj) manifest in most of the Gheg dialects as affricates (and in some places as fricatives); in some eastern northern Gheg dialects (in Kosovo) they merged with the affricates tj, dz (orthographic ç, xh). In the majority of Albanian dialects the palatals c, j are the result of the merger of PA *c, *ɟ and the PA clusters kl, gl (they were registered in this form in some Old Albanian written texts). In some dialects, however, the latter clusters either remain intact (Cham klumësht ‘milk’: SA qumeshtë; Cham gluhë ‘language’: SA giuhë) or yielded other reflexes (western-northern Gheg ky, gy; eastern-northern Gheg k, g).
- In some southern Gheg dialects the phonemes θ and ð are absent (they changed into x and γ respectively).
- In the majority of Gheg dialects and some Tosk dialects the consonant clusters mb, nd were simplified, respectively, into m, n (sometimes into b, d).
- Devoicing of voiced obstruents in the word-final position is characteristic of an absolute majority of Gheg dialects and many Tosk dialects (on the potentially common-Albanian character of this phenomenon see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 267–270).

Some Albanian obstruents are the relatively late products of inner Albanian developments (various kinds of sandhi, voicing in the position near sonorants and voiced obstruents,
spontaneous consonant strengthening) supported by borrowings. Such are the phonemes ts, dz, tʃ, dʒ, ʒ. It seems that these phonemes were formed in the PA period (except for the probably more recent ʒ and dʒ).

Thus, despite interdialectal differences, we should reconstruct the PA obstruent system as nearly identical with the SA system. The only difference is the possible absence of the phonemes ʒ and dʒ in the PA system. Besides, it can be supposed that the voiced labial spirant (> SA v) was bilabial (β) in the PA period.

Obstruents: the origin

Occlusives

PIE Media Aspirata merged with Media before the beginning of the PPA period.

### TABLE 12.6 PIE OBSTRUENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. *p</td>
<td>PA, SA p</td>
<td>SA (i) plotë ‘full’ &lt; PIE *pleh₁-t-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. *bʰ, *b</td>
<td>PA, SA b</td>
<td>SA (i) bardhë ‘white’ &lt; PIE *bʰorg-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. *t</td>
<td>PA, SA t</td>
<td>SA tre ‘three’ &lt; PIE *treys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 4. *d, *dʰ   | a) PA, SA d in the initial position and in the inlaut after n and before r  
|              | b) PA, SA -d- in the inlaut elsewhere | a) SA djeq ‘to burn’ < PIE *dʰegʷə-  
|              |                    | b) SA hehd ‘to throw’ < PIE *skewd- |
| 5. *k        | EPA *ts > Late PA *θ > SA θ | SA (i) thellë ‘deep’ < PIE *kel- |
| 6. *g, *gʰ   | EPA *dz > Late PA *ð > SA ð | SA dhëmb, Gheg dhãmb ‘tooth’ < PIE *g⁰m⁰b⁰- |
| 7. *kʷ       | PA, SA k           | SA kam ‘to have’ < PIE *keh₃-p- |
| 8. *g₃, *g⁰h  | PA, SA g           | SA gerdh ‘fence’ < PIE *g⁰rd⁰- |
| 9. *kʷ       | a) EPA *tʃ > Late PA *s > SA s before front vowels  
|              | b) PA, SA k elsewhere | a) SA sjell ‘to bring’ < PIE *kʷelh₁-  
|              |                    | b) SA pjeq ‘to bake’ < PIE *pkekw- |
| 10. *gʷ, *g⁰h | a) EPA *dʒw > Late PA *z > SA z before front vowels  
|             | b) PA, SA g elsewhere | a) SA zorrë ‘gut’ < PIE *gʷ₂rëm-  
|           |                    | b) SA djeq ‘to burn’ < PIE *d³eg⁰kw- |

Notes

2. A special problem is the reflexes of PPA *b (as well as other voiced occlusives, see below) in the intervocalic position. On the one hand, there is a change from PPA *-b- to PA, SA -b- (SA grabë ‘erosion, hollow’ < PIE *g²rob³-ā); on the other hand, there is also a change from PPA *-b- to PA, SA -b- (SA det ‘sea’ < PIE *d⁰ewb-et-; see another opinion in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 233). The conditions of this distribution are not clear (see Cabej 1976: 241–242, Orel 2000: 78–80). The loss of the intervocalic -b- is also attested in Latin borrowings (the reflex of the Lat. b in other positions is SA b), at least in those borrowings that belong to the older layer: SA kalë, Gheg kāl ‘horse’ < Lat. caballum.

4b) In some of the PIE lexemes *-ð- has fallen out: SA be ‘oath’ < *bʰoyd⁴-ā. Lat. d yielded PA, SA -d- in intervocalic position and after r; sometimes *-ð- (< Lat. -d-) disappears. The weakening of *d (> ð) in the sequence *-rd continued during the PA period and even later.

5–10) Albanian belongs to the few IE languages that retain different reflexes for the three series of PIE gutturals.
5–6) PIE *k > PA, SA k, PIE *ǵ, *ǵʰ > PA, SA g before resonants: SA quaj, Buzuk kluoj ‘to call, to give a name’ < PIE *kluw-.

6) Sometimes in the initial position both PIE *ǵ and *ǵʰ yield SA d: SA dorë; PIE *ǵesr-. The conditions of the distribution of the reflexes d/ð are unknown. The idea that in anlaut the reflexes of PIE *ǵ- (> SA ə-) and PIE *ǵʰ- (> SA ð-) differ (see Orel 1998: XX; B. Demiraj 1997: 63) does not have convincing etymological evidence.

PIE *ǵʰw > EPA *dʒw > Late PA z > SA z; SA zē, Gheg. zā (< zān) < PIE *ǵʰweno- (there are no reliable examples for a parallel development of PIE *kw and *gw).

7–8) With further palatalization into c, ĵ before front vowels; see below.

9–10) With further palatalization into c, ĵ before front vowels; see below.

### TABLE 12.7 PIE *s, *y, *w

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIE phonemes</th>
<th>PA and SA reflexes</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 *s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a) EPA *z &gt; PA, SA j/#_V</td>
<td>a) SA gjak ‘blood’ &lt; PIE *sok-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) EPA *ś &gt; PA, SA ʃ/#_V</td>
<td>b) SA shi ‘rain’ &lt; PIE *suH-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) EPA *š &gt; PA, SA ʃ/_V(+front)</td>
<td>c) SA gıysh ‘grandfather’ &lt; PIE *suh-s-io-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| d) EPA *h > PA, SA Ø/V_V(+back) | d) SA neve ‘we (gen.)’ < PIE *
| e) EPA *h > PA, SA Ø/ # | e) SA -# nom. m. sg. - < PIE *-os |
| 2. *y |                   |          |
| a) EPA *z (?) > PA, SA j/#_V | a) SA gjem ‘bridle’ < PIE *yom- |
| b) PA, SA ʃ/V_V | b) SA tre ‘three’ < PIE *treyes |
| 3. *w |                   |          |
| a) PA *w > SA v/#_V | a) SA vesh ‘to put on (clothes)’ < PIE *wes- |
| b) PA, SA Ø/V_V | b) SA ve ‘widow’ < PIE *widew- |

**Notes**

1. There is no consensus with respect to the distribution and even the reflexes of PIE *s in Albanian. It is not known exactly what determines the distribution of j and ĵ in the initial position. Two other reflexes of PIE *s (SA h for anlaut and inlaut and SA ð for anlaut) are now rejected by some researchers (see e.g. Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 258–265). On some clusters with *s see below. Lat. *s > PA, SA f, the same outcome is also found in the older layer of Slavic borrowings (in most Slavic borrowings s reflects as SA s). For some chronological considerations related to the development of PIE *s, see below.

2. See Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 252–254; for other opinions see Çabej 1976; de Vaan in print. The distribution of the reflexes of Lat. /y/ is, generally speaking, similar to that of PIE *y (sometimes Lat. intervocalic /y/ > SA j).

3. The distribution of the reflexes of Lat. /w/ is, generally speaking, similar to that of PIE *w.

### Laryngeals

On the reflexes of the PIE laryngeals that were adjacent to vowels, see 1.2. When adjacent to consonants, laryngeals disappeared. For the possible influence of the laryngeals on Albanian consonants see B. Demiraj 1997: 60–61. For the influence of the laryngeals on the neighboring syllabic sonorants see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 230–231. For the development PIE *Hr- > PA, SA r- see B. Demiraj 1997: 70–71.

### Reflexes of some PIE consonant clusters in Albanian

PIE *sk/skʰ > PA, SA h: SA hedh ‘to throw’ < PIE *skewd-.

PIE *sp > PA, SA f/#_ : SA farë < PIE *spor-. Another source of PA, SA f is borrowings.
PIE *st > PA, SA śt: SA shteg ‘path, road’ < PIE *stoygh-.
PIE *zd > PA, SA ź: SA pidh ‘female pudenda’ < PIE *peysd(h)-. Lat. sc, sp, st give, respectively, SA sk, sp, st.
Clusters of the type “dental + y,” “guttural (< PIE velars and labiovelars) + y” developed into EPA *tʃ, *dʒw, PA, SA s, z, depending on whether the occlusive was voiced or voiceless.

**Chronology of Albanian palatalizations**

As mentioned above, there were in Albanian different processes of palatalization of PIE velars (sometimes developed further into assimilation): (a) “satem”-assibilation of PIE palatals gave rise to interdental spirants θ and δ; (b) assimilation of PIE labiovelars (and of the groups “palatal + w” but not of the “pure” velars) before the front vowels resulted in s, z; and (c) palatalization of *k, *g (from both PIE velars and labiovelars), also before front vowels, resulted in c and j.

a) As for the satem-palatalization, a common opinion is that there was an intermediate stage of the development, namely the affricates of the type ts, dz. It is not known exactly when the process of assimilation took place, but it is possible to assume that it appeared in the first half of the PA period (the reason for this hypothesis is that various Latin palatalized consonantal sequences never reflect as SA θ or δ). It is not completely clear when the result of the development of the PIE voiced palatal merged with *d < PIE *d(h) (and whether this process could have influenced the distribution of the reflexes d/ð that go back to PIE *ǵ(h)).

b) The assimilation of PIE labiovelars before the front vowels had to take place also relatively early (before the change PIE *e > PPA ā; see SA zorrë ‘gut’ < PIE *gʷerm-).

The reflexes of PIE labiovelars merged in SA with the results of the development of the PIE groups *ty, *dy, *kʷy, *gʷy as well as Lat. tj, dj. This fact as well as the reflection of the s of Latin and early Slavic borrowings as SA sh indicates convincingly that in the EPA period the reflexes of labiovelars must have been represented a kind of affricates, and the change into the s had to take place at the very end of the PA period.

c) The process of palatalization that resulted in c and j sounds belongs, on the contrary, entirely to the PA period. This change took place in the positions before i, y and e (including the je and ja reflexes of PIE *e). This wave of palatalization should have begun before the change in the unstressed vowels (see SA /plec/ ‘old men (pl.)’ < *plaki; SA virgjër ‘virgin’ < Lat. virginem) and continued to be at work after the uumlaut processes (that is, e < *a did trigger the palatalization, which explains e.g. this pattern of palatalization of PIE labiovelars: OA qell ‘to bring’ < EPA *kal-it < PIE *kʷolh₁). Lat. c, g before front vowels as well as Lat. clusters cy, gy also give SA c, j. In the later borrowings, k, g are reflected as c, j rather seldom and can be explained as a result of analogical processes. In the PA period the palatalized reflex of *g merged with reflexes of the PIE *s- and *y- (which may have led to the phonologization of j). During the OA period c, j merged in the majority of Albanian dialects with the reflexes of the PA clusters *kl, *gl (see 3.1 above).
Stress

The stress in modern Albanian is dynamic. It shows a clear tendency to be columnal and to fall in the vast majority of cases on the stem. In effect, the morphological forms of words typically are not differentiated by the position of the stressed syllable. The only exception is a small group of nouns and adjectives that have different positions of the stress in the singular and plural forms. These include some nouns with the plural suffixes -inj, -ij, -enj (SA sg. dr'apër ‘banner’ – pl. drapër'inj, SA sg. l'umë ‘river’ – pl. lum'enj), SA sg. dh'ëndër ‘groom, son in law’ – pl. dhënd'urë. Two adjectives (SA sg. m. (i) madh ‘big’ – pl. m. (ië) mëdh'enj, SA sg. m. (i) keq ‘bad’ – pl. m. (ië) këq'ij) have an additional vocalic alternation. The same rightward shift of the stress in plural forms is also observed in Turkish borrowings with the plural suffix -llarë/-lerë (SA sg. ag'a ‘aga’ – pl. agall'arë); however, in these words the pattern is explained by the parallel borrowing of both singular and plural forms (the very suffix -llarë/-lerë is used only with Turkish loanwords). Two nouns have a leftward stress shift in the plural: SA sg. njer'i ‘man’ – pl. nj'erëz, SA sg. kall'i ‘ear’ – pl. k'allëza. It can be noticed that in all these cases there is a non-productive pattern with clearly different singular and plural stems. The majority of derivational suffixes in Albanian are stressed.

As for the position of the stress within the word, it is relatively free. There is a tendency to place the stress on the penultimate syllable; however, there are multiple exceptions to this pattern. For example, there are many uninflected words with the last syllable stressed (edh'e ‘still’ and so on). As for inflected words, the majority have forms with the penultimate syllable stressed (on the rules of the SA accent see Buchholz & Fiedler 1987: 53).

Albanian dialects have relatively few differences with respect to their stress patterns. The tendency to stress the penultimate syllable is strongest in Gheg dialects: there are words (nouns and pronouns) with stress on the penultimate syllable in Gheg, whereas in Tosk counterparts the stress is on the last syllable (SA, Tosk njer'i ‘man’ – Gheg nj'erë). There is also a tendency in Gheg to shift the stress towards the penultimate position in Turkish loans (SA, Tosk par'a – Gheg p'are ‘money’ < Turk. par'a). Dialectal variation is also observed in the realization of stress in diphthongs ue, ye, ie in various phonetic contexts (see “Vowels”).

 Generally, the stress pattern in old written texts is close to the modern system. The main difference is a weaker degree of reduction in unaccented vowels, in particular, the vowels in word-final syllables. As a result there are a number of words in these texts with their prepenultimate syllable stressed that correspond to SA words with the penultimate syllable stressed (e.g. old Gheg gj'arpënë ‘snake’ – SA gj'arpër). For possible differences in the stress position in verbal non-active forms see “Morphology”.

Thus, at the end of the PA period the stress patterns must have been very near to the modern ones, the difference mainly amounting to a greater variability in the position of stress in the word, which is accounted for by a lesser degree of vowel reduction in PA.

It is well known that Latin borrowings (as well as later loans; see, however, above on Turkish borrowings) maintained their accent patterns in Albanian. It can be hypothesized, then, that immediately before the beginning of the Latin-Albanian contacts (that is, at the end of the PPA period) Albanian stress patterns didn’t differ essentially from the late PA ones. For vowel reduction, which was accounted for by the dynamic character of Albanian stress and changed the shape of Albanian words, see above (“Vowels”).

It is not possible to define the time limits and the exact rules of the transition from the late IE stress system to the Albanian one. The only thing that is certain is that Albanian somehow abandoned before the beginning of the PA period both the IE final accent and accentual mobility within nominal and verbal paradigms (Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 208–209).
Morphonological alternations

Albanian is a language in which morphonological alternations play a relatively important role in the expression of morphological oppositions. Most of these alternations reflect the phonetic changes in the PA period (on umlaut, diphthongization, change $e > i$, see “Vowels”; on palatalization, see “Obstruents”; on loss of the final -n, development of *-rn-, see “Resonants”). The old PIE alternations, such as first of all ablaut, left but some minor traces in the Albanian verb system. For more information on the realization of the main morphonological alternations, see “Morphology”.

MORPHOLOGY

0. Albanian is a fusional language that combines synthetic and analytic features. Synthetic features are only partly inherited from the PIE state, while a considerable part of the flexion, especially in the nominal system, is the result of the processes of the new synthesis that took place in the PA and even in the OA periods. The level of analyticity is, however, rather high. It is fairly typical of the numerous analytic constructions to make broad use of clitics, in both the nominal and verbal domains. Albanian has some grammatical traits that are rather unusual from an areal-typological perspective: a morphological optative and the analytic double case agreement; see below. At the same time, many grammatical features, both morphological and syntactical, identify Albanian as a language that belongs both to the Balkan Sprachbund and to the languages of the Standard Average European type. The morphological part of this chapter is based, first of all, on Buchholz and Fiedler 1987 (for SA), Gjinari et al. 2007 (for dialectological material), and Sh. Demiraj 1986, Matzinger 2006, Schumacher and Matzinger 2013, Fiedler 2004, Klingenschmitt 1981, 1994, and Orel 2000 (for historical and comparative interpretation).

Noun

The SA noun system

Grammatical categories of Albanian nouns. The noun in SA is characterized by the categories of gender, number, case and definiteness. The gender of the noun is defined by the agreement features of the dependent elements (determiners, agreeing adjectives and so on) and has three main values: masculine, feminine and neuter. For animate nouns the gender (masculine or feminine) is mostly semantically determined. The neuter encompasses derived deverbal and deadjectival nouns with abstract meaning as well as a handful of old concrete nouns (all of these concrete nouns also have masculine or feminine variants that are more common in SA). Feminine and neuter nouns don’t differ in the plural by their agreement properties. Besides, there is a fourth agreement class that includes inanimate nouns that agree according to the masculine model in the singular and according to the feminine model in the plural (this is called “ambigender” in the Albanian grammatical tradition). On the inflectional morphology of Albanian gender see below.

The category of number has two values: singular and plural. The rules of the derivation of plural forms are extremely complex and opaque (see below).

Albanian has the following cases: nominative, accusative, genitive-dative and ablative; the ablative is distinguished from the genitive-dative only by one optional form in the noun paradigm as well as in certain pronominal paradigms. Genitives and datives, which are traditionally differentiated in Albanian grammars, actually differ syntactically. The form that is used in the possessive constructions (= genitive) is always preceded
by a special prepositive clitical formant (“article” in the Albanian grammatical tradition), which agrees with the nominal head of the construction: *djal-i i fshatar-it boy-NOM.M.SG.DEF. ART.NOM.M.SG. peasant-GEN./DAT.M.SG.DEF.* (on the forms of this “article” see “Adjective” below). The form that is used in the syntactic position of the indirect object and sometimes adverbially (= dative) requires the use of the pronominal clitic before the verb form (see “Syntax” below).

Definiteness is expressed in Albanian by the means of the postpositive article, which is agglutinated to the singular and plural noun stems. Thus, there are two sets of the nominal paradigms in Albanian: the definite and the indefinite ones. Besides, there is a prepositive indefinite article (homonymous to the numeral ‘one’). Thus, the category of definiteness/indefiniteness is best analyzed as having three values in Albanian.

Declension types of Albanian nouns. The Albanian noun has four declension classes in the singular; see Table 12.8.

---

**TABLE 12.8 NOUN DECLENSION IN SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I (masculine)</th>
<th>II (masculine)</th>
<th>III (feminine)</th>
<th>IV (neuter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>def.</td>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>def.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td><em>mur</em></td>
<td><em>muri</em></td>
<td><em>mik</em></td>
<td><em>miku</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>mur</td>
<td>murin</td>
<td>mik</td>
<td>mikun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.-dat./abl.</td>
<td>muri</td>
<td>murit</td>
<td>mik</td>
<td>mikut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: *mur* ‘wall’, *mik* ‘friend’, *vajzë* ‘girl’, té* folor* ‘speech’.

All words and word forms in the sections on SA morphology are from Standard Albanian, unless indicated otherwise.

Each class can be further divided into minor subclasses, which would differ by the alternations of the stem in various case forms and, in the cases of classes III and IV, by the phonemic and/or orthographic shapes of the endings.

The correlation between the declension class and gender isn’t straightforward (except for the IV class, which is exclusively neuter). The exceptions, however, aren’t numerous (these are mostly proper nouns). Besides, the numerous ambigender names belong to the I and II subclasses.

1 Although there is a homonymous nominative and accusative form in the indefinite declension, these paradigmatic cells are differentiated by the form of agreeing elements.

2 The Class II includes all the nouns whose stem ends in -*k*, -*g*, -*h*, a portion of the masculine nouns that end with a stressed vowel, as well as the word *krye* ‘head’.

3 In some subclasses the ending is -*je*.

4 In some subclasses the endings are -*në*, -*së*.

5 Deverbal and deadjectival nouns retain the prepositive “article” of the adjectives (see “Adjective” below).

6 In some subclasses the ending is -*ët*, -*ët*.

The plural forms a single declension class that is divided into subclasses that differ according to the phonetic/orthographic shapes of endings depending on the plural stem auslaut. It is noteworthy that this auslaut typically is not determined by the gender of the noun. The general schema of the plural declension is as follows:
TABLE 12.9 NOUN DECLENSION IN PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>indefinite</th>
<th>definite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom./acc.</td>
<td>mure</td>
<td>muret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.-dat.</td>
<td>mureve²</td>
<td>mureve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>mureve/muresh³</td>
<td>mureve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

1 The nominative and accusative forms differ neither morphologically nor by the shape of the agreeing elements.

2 In the plural, there is no opposition between indefinite and definite forms for the genitive-dative case.

3 The indefinite ablative ending has two allomorphs. Their sphere of use is determined (with many exceptions) by the syntactic position of the ablative word forms.

Derivation of nominal plural forms. Only for some nouns can the plural form be predicted based on the singular one (for other nouns the plural is idiosyncratic).

For masculine nouns the plural form is derived by means of several consonantal (k/q, g/gj, l/lj, n/nj, r/j) and vocalic (a/e) alternations, as well as by means of more or less productive suffixes (-e, -ë, -a, -ra, -inj, -llarë/lerë). Some masculine nouns have identical stems in the singular and in the plural. Plural suffixes for feminine nouns are -a and -ra, but a considerable portion of feminine nouns do not differentiate singular and plural stems. There are a few nouns, both masculine and feminine, that have irregular plural forms. Most of the old neuter nouns have the plural suffix -ra. Some SA nouns have doublet plural forms.

Basic dialectal differences in the nominal system

1) An additional case – the locative – is preserved in both old texts and in the dialects (northern Tosk and southern and central Gheg). This case is used after some prepositions with the locative meaning (në mal-t ‘on the mountain’, në male-t ‘on the mountains’) and doesn’t differ formally from the accusative in the indefinite form.

2) In SA, the ablative is the case that tends to merge with the genitive-dative. A further step of this development is observed in some diaspora dialects (Arvanitica, Ukraine, Bulgaria), where the ending -sh disappeared completely from the case system. By contrast, a consistent formal opposition of the ablative and genitive-dative is observed in the old written texts. Some remnants of this situation are preserved in the western northern Gheg dialects, in which there is an opposition of the ablative and genitive-dative forms for feminine definite nouns (abl f. def. delesë – gen.-dat f. def. delesë). A dedicated ending -shit for the ablative plural definite form existed in the old written texts.

3) There are fluctuations in gender assignment of individual words. Thus, the number of underived neuter nouns in the earliest written texts as well as in some dialects is bigger than it is in SA. There are also gender fluctuations between masculine and feminine genders. In the first written texts and in some Gheg dialects there is a special subclass of feminine nouns of Latin origin that correspond to SA masculine nouns: SA (and majority of dialects) shëndet m. ‘health’ – OA shëndet f.
4) The fluctuations in the sphere of definiteness are manifested in the varying degrees that the opposition “definite : indefinite” is reflected in the nominal paradigm. Thus, in the old texts and some dialects there was a special definite ending (-vet) for the genitive-dative case in the plural, which is absent in SA. By contrast, in some dialects the weakening of the “definite : indefinite” opposition has gone further than it did in SA.

5) There are many dialectal variations in the means of plural formation. For example, the plural suffix -a is systematically used in Gheg dialects, whereas the suffix -ra is frequently found in northern Tosk dialects.

6) There are differences in the form of individual endings. The following cases are especially relevant from the historical point of view:

a) Many dialects as well as the old texts show the masculine definite accusative ending -në without the “connecting” vowel i/u: SA mikun ‘friend (dat.)’ – dial. mîkën̂.

b) In Buzuk’s book, the masculine definite genitive-dative form is formed not only with the endings -it/-ut but also with the ending -(ë), which is attached to those nouns whose stem ends in -ë: Buzuk (i) djalët ‘boy (gen.).’ In some dialects and in the old texts, the masculine definite genitive-dative forms of some kinship terms are formed with the help of endings without “connecting” vowels: Buzuku d birt ‘son (gen.).’

c) In the old texts as well as in some dialects (both Tosk and Gheg) the genitive-dative plural ending has the form -e after the stems that end in consonants (pleq-e ‘old man (gen.-dat. pl.)’) and -ve after the stems that end in vowels (plaka-ve ‘old woman (gen.-dat. pl.).’)

7) There are, finally, morphological distinctions that are due to phonetic dialectal differences: SA and Tosk plural endings -ër, -ra – Gheg. -(ë)n, -na. In Gheg dialects there is a compensatory apocope as a consequence of the loss of the final -ë: Gheg pla:k ‘old woman’ – SA plakë.

Nominal system: the origin

Albanian has radically rebuilt the PIE noun system: its declension system has been regularized, and the “old” PIE endings have been for the most part lost. The details of this process cannot be reconstructed, but it can be supposed that it began in the PPA period (the time of an essential rebuilding of the PIE stress system in Albanian) and continued at least till the end of the PA period (the time when the process of unstressed vowel reduction was still under way).

In many cases, this radical rebuilding makes it impossible to establish a reliable historical source of Albanian flexions. Many nominal flexions are reconstructed on the basis of our general ideas about the development of the PIE grammatical system (this is also true for the history of the verbal system). As a consequence, in many cases there are competing etymological hypotheses; below I will provide only the most reliable of these hypotheses. In those instances when there are competing proposals, the relevant bibliographical references are given, although in most cases I provide references only for modern overviews rather than for those original studies where these respective solutions were proposed.

The indefinite declension

In this section and below, when discussing various historical explanations I will employ PIE notations in the form that was used by the respective authors.
Masculine

The “masculine” declension type (I and II declension types in Table 12.8) continues the PIE o-declension (with the -yo- subtype). In Albanian, these types encompass masculine nouns that used to belong to other declensions in PIE (that is, the consonant stems, u-stems, i-stems and so on). Some nouns that belonged to the PIE i-declension type manifest traces of the PA umlaut processes, which indicates that the final stage of the rebuilding of the declension system happened in the PA period (SA elb ‘barley’ < PIE *h₂olbi-).

The flexion of the indefinite declension is deeply decayed due to reduction that continued to happen in the PA period (these processes affected Latin borrowings; see “Phonology”). The following endings for the o-declension can be reconstructed:

nom. sg. SA -ë, -Ø < PIE *-os. The double reflex ë/Ø is conditioned by the phonetic shape of Albanian words, although the distribution isn’t completely clear. Orel (2000: 233) explains the -ë ending as a reflex of PIE oxytonic stress, but this explanation isn’t supported by the majority of specialists.

acc. sg. SA -ë, -Ø < PIE *-om (see also below in the section devoted to the definite declension).

gen.-dat./abl. sg. SA -i, -u. (a) < PIE *-osyo (the genitive ending of o-declension) (Klingenschmitt 1994, Matzinger 2006: 98, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013). The i/u alternation is explained as the result of the development of unstressed o under different phonetic conditions (through an intermediate stage *ü). (b) < PIE *-öy (the dative ending of the o-declension) or *-oy/-ey (the locative ending of the o-declension; see Orel 2000: 234); see the overview in Sh. Demiraj 1986: 274–282; -u is a secondary, phonetically conditioned variant.

The plural suffixes -ra/-na, -ër/-(ë)n, -inj and some others are in all probability the result of the reanalysis of the old singular -n stems and their further concatenation with various plural endings.

The acc. pl. ending is always identical with the nom. pl. ending. Somewhat conventionally, it is possible to reconstruct the PIE *-ons > SA -Ø (probably, sometimes -ë)
development and later analogical extensions of various types of nom. pl. endings into the acc. pl. form (Orel 2000: 236).

The gen.-dat. pl. -e < PIE *-ōm. The v component in the ending -ve has emerged as a means to avoid hiatus and was extended analogically from those plural stems that terminate in vowels onto stems of other types.

The abl. pl. -sh < PIE *-oy-su. Unstressed -u developed in PA in -i; see OA definite abl. pl. -shit (see below, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 263).

Feminine

Feminine declension types also underwent a very serious uniformation, mostly using the PIE *-ā (*-eh₂) declension type as a model. Other types of PIE feminine declensions were included in the -a declension.

nom. sg. endings The most widespread feminine stem-final -ë is the reflex of PIE *-eh₂.

SA feminine nouns with unstressed final -e are interpreted as reflecting the PIE -ih₂-yeh₂-stems (“devī-type”: SA hije ‘shadow’ < PIE *ski-yeh₂); see Matzinger 2006: 96.

acc. sg. SA -ē, (-e) < PIE *-eh₂m (see also below, the section devoted to the definite declension).

gen.-dat./abl. sg. SA -e can be traced back to alternative sources: (a) the PIE dative ending *-eh₂ey (Orel 2000: 238) or the PIE locative ending *-eh₂i (Sh. Demiraj 1986: 285); and (b) the analogical development from the masculine gen.-dat./abl. sg. ending, so we may reconstruct something like *-ayya < *-asya (Klingenschmitt 1994: 223, Matzinger 2006: 99–100).

Feminine nom. pl. endings are characterized by great variability, although to a lesser degree than masculine nom. pl. endings:

a) SA -ē < PIE *-eh₂es.
b) SA -e < PIE *-ih₂es. Desnickaja (1976: 40–41) considers both sg. and pl. feminine -e forms as the continuation of the PIE collective in *-yā.
c) SA -ā. (a) < PIE stressed *-ās (*-eh₂es) (Orel 2000: 239); and (b) contamination of the endings -ē and -e (Matzinger 2006: 103).

The acc. pl. ending is always identical with the nom. pl. ending.

The gen.-dat. pl. SA -e as well as abl. pl. -sh are identical to the masculine ending. They result from the development of PIE *-eh₂om (or *-āsōm; see Klingenschmitt 1994: 224) and *-eh₂su endings, respectively.

Both in the masculine and feminine gender, the plural endings of oblique cases are agglutinated to the plural stem, which simultaneously functions as the nominative plural form (after some types of stems that end in a consonant, a connecting vowel is used). It should be stressed that the morphonological alternations that first developed in the indefinite nominative plural form of masculine nouns later extended into all members of the plural paradigm.

Neuter

The only ending that is different from the masculine ones in the singular is nom.-acc. of the definite conjugation (see below). According to Pedersen (1897: 288), the nom.-acc.
sg. indef. SA-ë/Ø of “concrete” neuter nouns goes back to PIE *-ā (*-ch₂) (nom.-acc. pl. of PIE neutra).

On the origin of some irregular plural forms see Sh. Demiraj 1986: 244–248; for the stress shift in some plural types see “Stress” above). See also an interesting example of umlaut in the gen.-dat./abl. sg. of at ‘father’: et(i) (< *ati).

The definite declension

The definite nominal forms originated from concatenation of indefinite forms with the corresponding case forms of the postpositive definite article, which in its turn evolved from the demonstrative pronoun. The postpositive article is one of the main balkanisms of Albanian that is shared with Balkan Romance and Balkan Slavic. The definite declension must have been formed in the PA period, it is very likely that the time of this process coincided with the period of intensive (proto)Albanian-(proto)Romanian language contacts (in this case Albanian must have been the source language for this shared feature).


Masculine

nom. sg. SA -i, -u < PIE *-os + *is (Meyer 1892: 40, Orel 2000: 246); (b) PIE *-os + *so (Pedersen 1894: 251, Klingenschmitt 1994: 224). Both etymologies assume that the phonetically conditioned distribution of the forms in -i and -u arose later than these forms as such; in terms of conditions this distribution is the same as the distribution of formally similar endings of the gen.-dat./abl. sg. indefinite (see above).

acc. sg. -(i/u)n < PIE *-om + *tom. The i/u evolved under analogical influence from the gen.-dat. sg.

gen.-dat./abl. sg. SA -it, ut are the result of the concatenation of the forms of the indefinite declension with the cased forms of the demonstrative pronoun (that is, *tosyo, *tōy or *tey according to alternative etymological hypotheses; see above). The old and dialectal forms in -ët, -t can be explained by accentological considerations (Matzinger 2006: 98).

nom. pl. SA plural stem + -(ē)< PIE *toy.

acc. pl. SA plural stem + -(ē)< PIE *tons.

gen.-dat. pl. SA -ve is identical with the corresponding indefinite ending (see above).

The older ending -(ē)-t could have evolved from PIE *tōm.

In the old SA ending of the abl. pl. -shit, -t could have evolved from PIE *toysu; on the change unstressed -u- > -i- see above (“Indefinite Declension”).

Feminine

nom. sg. SA -a: (a) < PIE *-ā- + *yā (Orel 2000: 247); (b) < PIE *-ā- + *sā (Klingenschmitt 1994: 223)

acc. sg. SA -(V)m < PIE *(V)m + *tām

In the gen.-dat. sg. SA -(V)(ē)-s(e) could have evolved from PIE *tesyasyo (according to Matzinger 2006: 99) or *Kyāy (according to Orel 2000: 247).
The old and dialectal abl. sg. ending -et evolved due to analogical influence from the masculine declension type.

From a synchronic point of view singular oblique feminine forms of the definite declension are, unlike masculine forms, merely combinations of the feminine indefinite stem with the case forms of the definite article.

nom. and acc. pl. SA: plural stem + -t < PIE *tās.

.gen.-dat. pl. SA -ve: see above (“Masculine”); older -t could go back to *teh₂om (or *tāsõm; see Matzinger 2006: 100).

abl. pl. SA -shit: see above (“Masculine”); -t could arise according to the masculine model (Klingenschmitt 1994: 224).

It is possible that feminine plural definite declension in general has been restructured according to the masculine pattern.

Neuter

nom.-acc. sg. -(i, ĕ)t(ĕ) < PIE *-ā- + *tā (Pedersen 1897: 288) or PIE *-od + *tod (see Matzinger 2006: 99).

Adjective

There are two main classes of adjectives in SA, which differ in their morphological features as well as in the number of agreeing categories they possess. The first class (henceforth articulated adjectives) comprises those adjectives that are always used with a special prepositive clitic formant (article in the Albanian grammatical tradition) that agrees with the head noun in gender, case and number and is formally identical with the “article” of the genitive noun form (see above). No other grammatical formants can be placed between the article and the adjective.

The second class (henceforth unarticulated adjectives) includes those adjectives that have no such “article” and agree with the head in gender and number only by means of their endings.

All Albanian adjectives are strictly divided into these two classes.

The first class, articulated adjectives, includes underived adjectives of Indo-European origin as well as Latin and Slavic borrowings, adjectives derived by some suffixes (-t(ĕ), -mē, -shēm), adjectives with the negative prefix pa-, composite lexemes that have an adverb as their first part, and, finally, deverbal adjectives (participles used with the prepositive “article”).

The second class, unarticulated adjectives, includes a small group of old words that can be used as either nouns or adjectives (plak ‘old man’ and ‘old’, trim ‘brave man, warrior’ and ‘brave’, etc.), the majority of derived adjectives (many of them are also homonymous with nouns), the majority of composite adjectives, and later borrowings.

The normal word order in Albanian is “noun + adjective”. The reverse order is possible, too, but often has an additional expressive value. The majority of unarticulated adjectives cannot be used in the construction with the inverted order (composite adjectives make an exception). If an adjective (or an adjective-like pronoun or an ordinal numeral) occupies the first position in the noun phrase, it declines as a noun, whereas the noun loses its ability to mark the case in this construction (see the table). This rule according to which it is always the first component of the noun phrase that get case inflection is a characteristic that Albanian shares with Romanian and Bulgaro-Macedonian.

There are no traces of synthetic formants of degrees of comparison in Albanian. Both comparative and superlative meanings of adjectives and adverbs are expressed by the
construction \( më \) (Gheg \( ma \)) ‘more’ (< PIE *meh₂-is) + adjective or adverb. In some constructions nouns can also have degrees of comparison.

**The declination of adjectives**

**TABLE 12.10 ARTICULATED ADJECTIVES (UNMARKED ORDER)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>( djali \ i \ mirë )</td>
<td>( vajza \ e \ mirë )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>( djalin \ e* \ mirë )</td>
<td>( vajzën \ e* \ mirë )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat./abl.</td>
<td>( djalit \ të \ mirë )</td>
<td>( vajzës \ së* \ mirë )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a) The table reflects the most widespread declination type of articulated adjectives. Besides this type, there are (a) adjectives with suffixes -\( \text{-shëm}, -\text{-ëm}, -\text{-më} \), which have a morphological opposition of the forms of the masculine (both sg. and pl.: \( i \ mesëm, të \ mesëm \) ‘middle’) and feminine (both sg. and pl.: \( e \ mesem, të \ mesem \) ‘middle’) gender; (b) a small number of adjectives that do not change their endings at all, and (c) some irregular adjectives.

b) The case forms of the “article” in noun phrases with adjectives do not differ from those forms of articles that are used in noun phrases with the genitive (see above).

c) The forms given in the table are used when the head noun is in the definite form, and the adjective occupies an adjacent position and functions as an attribute (not as a predicate). Whenever any of these conditions is violated, those forms of articles that are marked with the asterisk in the table are replaced by the article form \( të \) (\( vajzën \ më \ të \ mirë \ ‘the best girl (acc.)’, and so on).

d) Neuter nouns in the singular require the article form \( e \) for the nom./acc. and \( të \) for oblique cases when the noun phrase has an attributive dependent and the article occupies the position immediately after the definite head noun. Otherwise, the form \( të \) is used for all cases. In the plural, the adjectives change according to the feminine pattern.

**TABLE 12.11 ARTICULATED ADJECTIVES (INVERTED ORDER)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>( i \ miri \ djalë )</td>
<td>( e \ mira \ vajzë )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>( të \ mirën \ djalë )</td>
<td>( të \ mirën \ vajzë )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen./dat./abl.</td>
<td>( të \ mirit \ djalë )</td>
<td>( së \ mirës \ vajzë )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Substantivized articulated adjectives decline identically to adjectives in the noun phrases with inverted word order.

**Unarticulated adjectives** agree with the head nouns only in gender and number. They are divided into several inflectional classes. In the singular, the most widespread endings are zero for masculine and -\( \text{-e} \) for feminine gender. In the plural, the most typical endings are -\( \text{-ë} \) for masculine and -\( \text{-e} \) for feminine gender.

**Adjectives: dialectal differences and historical background**

a) In the old written monuments as well as in many dialects the “articles” that function in noun phrases with adjectival or genitival dependents are not used after the dative-genitive definite forms of nouns, cf. \( njeri-ut \ mirë \) person-GEN./DAT.SG.DEF.
good ‘good person (gen./dat.)’. In some dialects, these articles are not used after definite nominative forms, too. It remains unclear whether this feature reflects an older state or is an innovation.

b) Tosk dialects do not have deverbal adjectives with the suffix -štëm, which have the meaning of the possibility or ability (i paharrueshtëm ‘unforgettable’). These adjectives exist both in Gheg dialects and in SA.

Some Albanian adjectives are etymologically related to PIE adjectives, other adjectives are Albanian derivatives (deverbal or, less often, denominal), and there is a significant number of borrowed adjectives.

As for the origin of the grammatical layout of Albanian adjectives, a common opinion is that the prepositional article (in noun phrases with both adjectives and genitives) evolved from the PIE demonstrative pronoun and is thus etymologically identical with the postpositive definite article. Particular details of the grammaticalization of these two sets of morphemes remain a subject of a long-standing debate. Generally speaking, the origin of Albanian articulated adjectives is often compared with the development of Slavic and Baltic “long adjectives”. Unarticulated adjectives could evolve from appositive constructions of the type “noun + noun”.

Articulated adjectives have an adverbial function when used without article.

There is a large set of prepositions in Albanian; some of them are primary, and others are homonymous with adverbs (for more information on prepositions, see “Syntax”).

Pronouns

Personal and demonstrative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>unë</td>
<td>ti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>mua (më)</td>
<td>ty (të)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gen.)/dat.</td>
<td>mua (më)³</td>
<td>ty (të)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>meje</td>
<td>teje</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The (gen.)/dat. form of the personal pronoun is used very rarely in possessive constructions (only if the pronoun has its own attribute), as there are dedicated possessive pronouns that are normally used in the possessive construction (see below).

The so-called weak (clitic) forms of personal pronouns are given in parentheses (on the use of weak forms see “Syntax”).

The nominative neuter form ata is used very rarely; other neuter case forms don’t differ from masculine forms.

The 3rd person personal pronouns are used in the function of (or are homonymous to) distal demonstrative pronouns. Proximal demonstrative pronouns are formed by means of the formant k(ë) (instead of a-). The form of nom. m. sg. ky has a different vocalic pattern, while other proximal forms are distinguished from distal pronouns exclusively by the initial formant, cf. k-jo, kë-të and so on.

Dialectal differences in the domain of personal and demonstrative pronouns are rather insignificant. An older (see below) form u (instead unë) for the nom. 1 sg. pronoun is used
in many dialects as well as in the old texts. For the nom. 1 pl. and 2 pl. forms, an expansion of oblique forms (*neve, *na, *juve) into the nominative slot is observed in some dialects, whereas *na is, most likely, the original nominative form. An older form *ai (instead *ai) is used in the eastern part of the northern Tosk dialects. There are also some dialectal variants of the oblique case forms of the 3 sg. and 3 pl. pronouns.

The origin

unë < PIE *swom (La Piana 1949: 69, Orel 2000: 241) or < PIE *h,egoH (Bopp 1854: 504–505, Matzinger 2006: 107); në is a kind of pronominal extension, cf. Gr. -vai, -vî, oblique forms of the 1 sg. pronoun developed from the PIE stem *me- (*mua < PIE *mēm, *meje < PIE *mey).

ti < PIE *tuH, oblique forms reflect the same stem (*ty < PIE *twēm, teje < PIE *tey, or under the analogical influence of *meje).

na < PIE *nos; *ne < PIE *noHs; *neve, *nesh (as well as *juve, *jush) could have developed under the influence from the nominal paradigm.

ju < PIE *wos

The deictic elements *k(ë)- and a- of the demonstrative (and 3rd person personal) pronouns must have been agglutinated to the demonstrative pronominal elements no earlier than the end of the PA period. The element a- could be etymologically related to the PIE deictic element *aw-, and *k(ë)- to the PIE element *ko-. On the origin of demonstrative pronouns see above (“The Definite Declension”).

Clitic forms of personal pronouns evolved through the process of reduction of full forms. Contracted forms of dative and accusative pronouns should be mentioned: *ma < *mē (1 sg. dat.) + *e (3 sg. acc.), and so on. These forms must have emerged in the PA period, because this type of sandhi phenomena is also encountered in some nominal forms but is not a productive phonological alternation in SA.

Albanian has rather complex system of possessive pronouns. The first and second person possessive pronouns agree with the possessee in gender, number and case and reflect the person and number of the possessor. Most of the 1st and 2nd person possessive forms consist of a demonstrative element that is etymologically identical to Albanian article formants and a pronominal element in the first or second person, respectively. These latter elements originate from the PIE personal or possessive pronouns, although there are different opinions with respect to what kind of grammatical forms were their PIE etymons. Possessive pronouns of the 1 and 2 sg. of the possessor have analytical forms when they are used with the plural possessee. These analytical forms contain the prepositional article (see “Adjective” above) and reflect a later grammaticalization process.

The following table illustrates the declension pattern of the 1 sg. possessive pronoun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 12.13 DECLENSION OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.-dat./abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*libri im “my book”, dora ime “my hand”*
The 3rd person possessives are analytical constructions of the type “prepositional article + demonstrative pronoun without deictic elements”; these constructions are differentiated according to the gender of the possessor: (i ti‘his (masculine possessee), i saj ‘her (masculine possessee)’. These pronouns decline as adjectives.

Basic word order in the possessive phrase is “noun + possessive pronoun”.

There is a specific (probably archaic) construction that is used for the expression of the 3rd person possessive relations with some old kinship terms, inherited from PIE or borrowed from Latin, such as atë ‘father’, êmë ‘mother’, vëlla ‘brother’, motër ‘sister’ and some others, as well as with the word zot ‘lord’: i ati ‘his, her, their father’, e motra ‘his, her, their sister’, të vëllezërit ‘his, her, their brothers’. In this construction, the element that is homonymous to the prepositive article reflects the gender and number of the possessee only. This construction alternates with the regular possessive construction. The same kinship terms also allow the prepositive use of personal pronouns of 1st and 2nd person: im atë ‘my father’ along with ati im; in this case the noun should be used in the indefinite form.

Albanian has a special reflexive pronoun vetja ‘himself’, which inflects as a noun. It marks coreference with an antecedent of any person, number and gender. The possessive-reflexive pronoun (i, e) vet exists only in Gheg dialects and in SA; it remains unclear whether it was ever a common-Albanian form. Etymologically, vetja goes back to PIE *swe with extension *-t- (for the morphological means of the expression of reflexive meaning, see below, “Verb”). Albanian has two reciprocal pronouns. The first, njeri tjetrin, lit. ‘one another.ACC.’ (and its other case forms), follows the widespread model typical of the Balkan languages. The second construction, shoku shokun (lit. ‘friend friend.ACC.’, shok < Lat. socius) (and its other case forms as well as phonetic variants), could have arisen under Slavic influence (cf. Old Slavic drugъ druga, lit. ‘another another.ACC.’, but homonymous to ‘friend friend.ACC.’). For the morphological means of the expression of the reciprocal meaning, see below, “Verb”.

Albanian has several pronouns that are derived from PIE *kʷo-/kʷi- and have both interrogative and relative functions. Among these pronouns are kush ‘who’ < PIE *kʷos-so-, ku ‘where’, kur ‘when’, se ‘what’ and që/që ‘what’ (for the use of the last two pronouns, see also “Syntax”). The non-inflected që/që is used as a general relative pronoun; in modern SA it is being replaced by the declinable pronoun (i, e) cili (<*t-sili) ‘which, who’, which developed from the same PIE *kʷi-.

### Numerals

**Cardinal numerals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Albanian</th>
<th>Old Indo-European roots</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>një¹</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *sem-/sm̥- or &lt; PIE *oyno-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dy²</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *dwo-/duwo-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tre (m.), tri (f.)</td>
<td>tre &lt; PIE *treyes, tri &lt; *trih₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>katër</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *kʷ jur-/kʷ, twor-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pesë³</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *penkʷe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>gjashtë</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *seks-t-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>shtatë</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *septm-t-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>tetë</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *oktōh₁-t-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nënë⁴</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *newn-t-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>dhjetë</td>
<td>&lt; PIE *dekmt-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes

1 The variant nji is characteristic of Gheg dialects. Cardinal numerals from ‘1’ to ‘4’ are inflected for case; një also has the opposition of definite and indefinite forms.
2 There is a special feminine form dỳ: in Gheg and southern Tosk dialects.
3 pës in Gheg dialects.
4 nân(d) in Gheg dialects.

The composition of cardinal numerals from ‘11’ to ‘19’ follows the model typical of Slavic languages (including Slavic languages of the Balkans), ‘x at ten’: njëmbëdhjetë ‘11’, dymbëdhjetë ‘12’ and so on.

The cardinal numerals for ‘30’ and from ‘50’ to ‘90’ are formed according to the model ‘x-ten’: tridhjetë ‘30’, pesëdhjetë ‘50’ and so on. The cardinal numerals for ‘20’ (njëzet) and ‘40’ (dyzet) are formed according to the model ‘x-twenty’, where -zet < PIE *wīk- Público.

In most Gheg dialects kat(ë)rdhjet(ë) is used for ‘40’; in some Tosk dialects trizet is used for ‘60’, and katërzet for ‘80’.

The terms for ‘100’ and ‘1000’ are Latin borrowings: (një)qind < Lat. centum, mijë < Lat. mīlia.

Ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals are, morphologically speaking, articulated adjectives. The ordinal numerals from ‘2nd’ to ‘5th’ (as well as composite ordinal numbers that end on these digits and ‘100th’ and ‘1000th’) are formed by the means of the suffix -të: i, e dytë ‘second’, and so on. Ordinal numbers from ‘6th’ to ‘10th’ (and composite ordinal numbers that end on these digits) are differentiated from the corresponding cardinal numbers only by the presence of the prepositive article: i, e gjashtë ‘sixth’ (-të is here a result of the simplification of the sequence “-të of the stem + suffix –të”). Ordinal number i, e parë ‘first’ < PIE *pH-wō-

Verb system

General remarks

The Albanian verb system is very complex with respect to both the number of categories and the number of conjugational types and subtypes. Grammatical meanings are expressed both synthetically and analytically. In the synthetic forms, vocalic and consonantal alternations play a significant role along with affixation. Analytical constructions are formed by means of conjugated auxiliary verbs and clitic particles.

The verb has the following grammatical categories: person, number, tense, aspect (partly overlapping with tense), mood, evidentiality (admiring) and voice.

The person-number (1st, 2nd and 3rd person, singular and plural) distinctions are expressed by the verb endings and, in some conjugational types, by vocalic and consonantal alternations. Different tense-aspect-mood forms and sometimes different conjugational types often have different sets of person-number endings.

The organization of TAM categories is very complex, because all the moods (except imperative) have temporal distinctions. Some forms that are traditionally described as “tenses” are in fact opposed to each other in terms of their aspectual meaning (first of all,
the aorist and imperfect). Albanian has indicative, subjunctive, conditional, optative and imperative moods.

Indicative has the richest temporal system. It includes three synthetic tenses, which form the bulk of the Albanian temporal system: present, aorist and imperfect. Present and aorist are differentiated by their stems (not for all verbs) and paradigms of endings. The forms of the imperfect are derived from the present stem (or from one of its variants in cases of morphophonemic alternations) and have a special set of endings; historically, imperfect endings in the active voice are similar to aorist endings. Semantically, the aorist is close to a prototypical perfective past, and the imperfect to a prototypical imperfective past as they feature in many Indo-European languages. The perfect subsystem has forms of the perfect and two pluperfects. In the active voice these are expressed by combinations of the auxiliary verb kam ‘to have’ in the corresponding tense form (present for the perfect, imperfect and aorist for the two pluperfects) and the participle of the main verb. The perfect has a bundle of meanings characteristic of this aspectual form from the typological point of view, such as perfect of the current relevance, experiential perfect and so on. The two pluperfects occupy the semantic niche that is typical of the traditional pluperfects: relative tense precedence or absolute temporal distance. The difference between the two pluperfects has not been studied in sufficient detail, but the aorist pluperfect is clearly a rather rare form. Albanian has also a set of so-called supercompound forms, which are characterized by the use of the compound (perfect or pluperfect) forms of the auxiliary verbs. These supercompound forms have restricted dialectal distributions but are represented, although very poorly, in standard texts. Semantically, they express various shades of temporal remoteness. The future subsystem is formed in SA by the means of a special future particle do and the subjunctive of the main verb. This subsystem includes future (“do + present subjunctive”), future in the past (“do + imperfect subjunctive”), future perfect (“do + perfect subjunctive”) and future perfect in the past (“do + pluperfect subjunctive”). Albanian also has a “parallel” future subsystem with an additional necessitive semantic shade; these forms are formed by means of the verb ‘to have’ (in the present, imperfect and aorist) and the so-called new infinitive (see below).

SA also has two additional analytical constructions with aspectual meanings. The first construction consists of jam ‘to be’ (present, imperfect or aorist) + analytical gerund (see below) and has a progressive meaning: jam duke punuar be.1SG.PRES. GERUND work.PTCP. ‘I am working’. The second construction consists of the particle po and the present or imperfect form of the verb; it expresses the progressive meaning and relates the time of action to a certain reference time, either the moment of speech or a certain interval of time in the past: po punoj PROG. work.1SG.PRES. ‘I am working (right now)’.

The subjunctive mood is formed with the special particle të (which is derived from an old conjunction?) and synthetic or analytical verbal forms that partly coincide with those of the indicative mood; for the absolute majority of verbs only the 2 sg. and 3 sg. subjunctive present tense forms of the active voice are different from the corresponding forms of the indicative mood. The subjunctive is used in complement clauses as an analog of the lacking infinitive (see below), in the main clauses in imperative and optative functions; it is also used in various hypothetical constructions (see Breu 2010: 465–466). The subjunctive has present, imperfect, perfect and (imperfect) pluperfect forms. In the old texts the subjunctive is used without të after the negation particle mos (often) and after the possibility particle mundë, munë (nearly always).

The conditional is formed by combining the subjunctive with the prepositive particle do. The main context of the use of the conditional is the apodosis of hypothetical periods
The conditional has present ("*do* + imperfect subjunctive", homonymous to the future in the past) and past ("*do* + pluperfect subjunctive", homonymous to the future perfect in the past) forms; thus, the paradigm of forms with *do* can be viewed as a single future-conditional system.

Additionally, there are some analytical constructions formed with various particles and subjunctive forms. They have various modal meanings (jussive, possibilitive and so on), but their status as real grammatical moods is questionable.

The optative mood has present and perfect forms. The present optative is a synthetic form that has a special stem, which in most classes of verbs is derived from the aorist stem, and a special set of endings. The perfect optative is an analytical form, consisting of the optative of the auxiliary and a participle of the main verb. In SA, the optative is mostly used in various fossilized or semi-fossilized expressions (blesses, curses and so on); in the optative function proper, which is restricted and stylistically marked; and in the protasis of hypothetical periods.

The imperative mood has two synthetic forms, the 2 sg. and the 2 pl. form. The basic meaning of the SA admirative is mirative, but it also has a secondary commentative function. Admirative distinguishes at least two moods, indicative and subjunctive (the forms of the conditional admirative are very rare), and some tense forms. The synthetic forms of the present and imperfect indicative admirative emerged through amalgamation of inverted perfect and pluperfect forms, respectively, cf. *bëkam* [do.ADM.PRES.1SG.] < *bë (rë) kam* [do.PART. have.PRES.1SG.]. From a synchronic point of view they have a special stem and a special set of endings. The perfect and pluperfect admirative forms are formed by the admirative forms of the auxiliary verb and the participle of the main verb. The subjunctive-admirative forms (present, imperfect and pluperfect) are formed with the particle *të* and corresponding admirative verbal forms.

There are two voices in Albanian, active and non-active. Albanian non-active forms can have different semantic interpretations: passive, reflexive, reciprocal, anti-causative etc. Passives are regular (inflectional) voice forms of transitive verbs, whereas other functions are valency-reducing derivations of active verbs; some of these derived verbs significantly deviate from their active counterparts in terms of their meaning. There is also a rather small number of semantically active deponent verbs in Albanian.

The formal structure of the Albanian non-active voice system is extraordinarily complex. There are three morphological devices that can signal non-activeness. At least in SA, these three devices are rigidly distributed among the tense-modal forms of verbs.

a) A set of special endings; this device is employed for the present, imperfect and future indicative as well as for the present and imperfect subjunctive and present of the conditional (= future in the past indicative).

b) A construction that consists of the particle *u* and an active verb form; this device is employed for the aorist indicative, present and imperfect admirative, present optative and imperative; besides, for most Albanian verbs the 3 sg. aorist form in this construction is formally distinct from the corresponding active form.

c) A corresponding finite form of the verb *jam* ‘be’ + participle; this device is employed for the forms of the perfect system.

In modern standard Albanian, these three types of non-active forms can express all of the meanings that belong to the non-active semantic spectrum as outlined above: reflexive, passive, anti-causative and so on.
Non-finite forms

Albanian has a single participle formed from both transitive and intransitive verbs. The participle is used in the analytical verbal constructions of the “perfect system” and in other analytical constructions (see below), as a predicative attribute and in relative constructions. On the adjectivization of participles, see above (“Adjective”). The (non-adjectivized) participle is a non-inflected form. Besides, there are some analytical non-finite constructions that are formed by means of a participle. The most widespread among these constructions are the following:

- **duke + participle (“gerund”).** This construction chiefly expresses the meaning of simultaneity. It has a non-active form (duke + u + participle) and a rare perfect active (duke + pasë + participle) and passive (duke + qenë + participle) forms.
- **pa + participle (“privative”).** This construction behaves syntactically just like the gerund and has the same voice and temporal forms as the gerund.
- **për + të + participle (“new infinitive”).** This construction is mainly used with the final (= purpose) meaning; it has a non-active counterpart.
- **më + të + participle (“absolutive”).** This construction’s main meaning is temporal precedence. The new infinitive and the absolutive are in fact formed with the help of the deverbal noun, which is in turn derived from the participle.

- The ablative of the deverbal nouns is used in a function that is close to that of the infinitive after the phasal verbs. This form is mostly used after verbs that denote termination or cancellation of the action: *mbaroi së fol-ur-i* finished ART.ABL. speak-PART.-ABL. ‘s/he stopped speaking’.

Conjugational classes

There is no uniform and commonly accepted system for the classification of the numerous SA conjugational classes. The majority of the classification attempts (see, first of all, Boretzky 1977, Buchholtz & Fiedler 1987) take as a basis for the first-level classification the form of the present stem and, accordingly, the characteristics of the conjugation in the present (for a different approach, see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013).

Under this approach, three major classes may be distinguished: (a) the verbs with the stem ending in a vowel that take endings in the singular present indicative, (b) the verbs with the stem ending in a consonant, and (c) the verbs with the stem ending in a vowel that do not take endings in the singular present indicative (this class is smallish). Besides these classes, there are some verbs that can be synchronically viewed as exceptions.

Further classification of the conjugational subclasses is based both on the peculiarities of the conjugation in present (first of all on the consonantal and vocalic alternations) and on the relation between the present and aorist stems; sometimes other verbal forms – imperative, participle and so on – are also taken into account. The present and the aorist stem types are two subsystems that are connected to each other by many-to-many relations. As a consequence, an independent classification based on the form of the aoristic rather than the present stem can also be elaborated (see Boretzky 1977). The vocalic and consonantal alternations are also independent of the verb class as established by the stem formation processes, although some kinds of alternations as well as some types of the aorist stems are not encountered in certain classes as defined in terms of present stem formation.
The only productive conjugational subtype of modern SA is the 1st class with the stem ending in \(-o\) (type \textit{punoj}).

Table 12.15 summarizes examples of major conjugational classes.

### Table 12.15 Verb Conjugation (The Major Conjugational Classes)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. \textit{punoj} ‘to work’</th>
<th>II. \textit{kap} ‘to seize’</th>
<th>III. \textit{pi} ‘to drink’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punoj}</td>
<td>\textit{kap}</td>
<td>\textit{pi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punoj}</td>
<td>\textit{kap}</td>
<td>\textit{pi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punoj}</td>
<td>\textit{kap}</td>
<td>\textit{pi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punojmë}</td>
<td>\textit{kapim}</td>
<td>\textit{pimë}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punojimë}</td>
<td>\textit{kapim}</td>
<td>\textit{pimë}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punojimë}</td>
<td>\textit{kapim}</td>
<td>\textit{pimë}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punoja}</td>
<td>\textit{kapja}</td>
<td>\textit{pija}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punoje}</td>
<td>\textit{kapje}</td>
<td>\textit{pije}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punonje}</td>
<td>\textit{kapte}</td>
<td>\textit{pite}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punonjim}</td>
<td>\textit{kapnim}</td>
<td>\textit{pinim}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punonimit}</td>
<td>\textit{kapnit}</td>
<td>\textit{pinit}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punonimit}</td>
<td>\textit{kapnin}</td>
<td>\textit{pinin}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative aorist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punova}</td>
<td>\textit{kapa}</td>
<td>\textit{piva}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punove}</td>
<td>\textit{kape}</td>
<td>\textit{pive}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punovi}</td>
<td>\textit{kapi}</td>
<td>\textit{piu}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punuam}</td>
<td>\textit{kapëm}</td>
<td>\textit{pimë}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punuat}</td>
<td>\textit{kapët}</td>
<td>\textit{pite}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punuan}</td>
<td>\textit{kapën}</td>
<td>\textit{piten}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{të punosh}</td>
<td>\textit{të kapësh}</td>
<td>\textit{të pish}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{të punojë}</td>
<td>\textit{të kapë}</td>
<td>\textit{të pije}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{të punofsh}</td>
<td>\textit{kapshe}</td>
<td>\textit{pifsh}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punofshim}</td>
<td>\textit{kapëshim}</td>
<td>\textit{pifshim}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punofshit}</td>
<td>\textit{kapëshit}</td>
<td>\textit{pifshit}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punofshin}</td>
<td>\textit{kapëshin}</td>
<td>\textit{pifshin}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punuakam}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkam}</td>
<td>\textit{pikam}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punuke}</td>
<td>\textit{kapke}</td>
<td>\textit{pike}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punuka}</td>
<td>\textit{kapka}</td>
<td>\textit{pika}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punuakemsi}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkemsi}</td>
<td>\textit{pikemi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punuakeni}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkreni}</td>
<td>\textit{pikeni}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admirative present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punuakësha}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkësha}</td>
<td>\textit{pikësha}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punuakeshe}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshe}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshe}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punuakësh}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkësh}</td>
<td>\textit{pikësh}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punuakëshim}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshim}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshim}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punuakëshit}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshit}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshit}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punuakëshin}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshin}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshin}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Admirative imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punuakësha}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkësha}</td>
<td>\textit{pikësha}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punuakeshe}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshe}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshe}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punuakësh}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkësh}</td>
<td>\textit{pikësh}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punuakëshim}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshim}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshim}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punuakëshit}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshit}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshit}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punuakëshin}</td>
<td>\textit{kapkëshin}</td>
<td>\textit{pikëshin}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{puno}</td>
<td>\textit{kapi}</td>
<td>\textit{pi}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punoni}</td>
<td>\textit{kapni}</td>
<td>\textit{pini}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicative present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 sg. \textit{punohem}</td>
<td>\textit{kapem}</td>
<td>\textit{pihem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sg. \textit{punohesh}</td>
<td>\textit{kapem}</td>
<td>\textit{pihem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 sg. \textit{punohet}</td>
<td>\textit{kapet}</td>
<td>\textit{pihet}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 pl. \textit{punohemi}</td>
<td>\textit{kapemi}</td>
<td>\textit{pihem}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 pl. \textit{punoheni}</td>
<td>\textit{kapeni}</td>
<td>\textit{pihen}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pl. \textit{punohen}</td>
<td>\textit{kapen}</td>
<td>\textit{pihen}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In accordance with the Albanian lexicographic tradition, I use the 1 sg. indicative present form as the citation form.

1 In SA, there are three verbs with the stem ending in a consonant, namely eci ‘to go’, iki ‘to leave, to depart’ and hipi ‘to raise’, which take a special set of endings in the singular present indicative: 1 sg. -i, 2–3 sg. -ën.

2 The ending -i is used after -o- and consonants (except -k-, -g-, -h-); the ending -u is used elsewhere.

3 Only those forms that deviate from the indicative pattern are given.

4 The variant forms: punokam, punokësha etc.

5 Only those forms that deviate from the active forms are given.

Major types of the aorist stems

- The aorist stem is identical to the present stem. The verbs of this type belong to all three conjugational classes. If the stem ends in a vowel the consonant -v- is inserted in the 1 sg. and 2 sg. forms.

- The aorist stem is characterized by the extension -(j)t- in both singular and plural, cf. 1 sg. pres. di – 1 sg. aor. dita ‘to know’. This type of correspondence is characteristic of some verbs from the 1st and 3rd classes.

- The aorist stem is characterized by the extension -r- in the singular, cf. 1 sg. pres. bëj – 1 sg. aor. bëra ‘to do’. The correspondence of this type is encountered in some verbs from the 1st and 3rd classes. Historically -r- (Gheg -n-) was also present in the present stem.

- The aorist stem ends in a vowel, whereas the present stem has an extension -s/-t-, cf. 1 sg. pres. vras – 1 sg. aor. vrava ‘to kill’. This type of correspondence is encountered in some verbs of the 2nd class.

Major vocalic and consonantal alternations

Below I discuss only those alternations that are realized in a considerable number of verbs.

-a/-e-: e is used in the 2 sg. and 3 sg. present indicative active forms of some verbs of the 2nd class.

-e- (-je-, -ie-)/-i-: i is used in the 2 pl. present indicative (and subjunctive, future and so on) active, in the imperfect active, in non-active synthetic forms, and in the imperative. This alternation is characteristic of verbs of the 2nd and 3rd classes (and for one verb of the 1st class).

-a-, -e-/-o-: -a-, -e- (e further alternates with -i-; see above) is encountered in all forms except the aorist; it is typical of some verbs of the 2nd class.

-o/-ua-; -e/-ye-: the diphthongs are used in the plural forms of the aorist (and in the 3 sg. of the aorist non-active), in the admirable and in the participle. This alternation
is characteristic of the absolute majority of verbs of the 1st class that end in -o and of the majority of verbs of the 1st class that end in -e.

-ua/-o-, -ye/-e-: o resp. e is encountered the singular forms of the aorist (except 3 sg. of the aorist non-active) and in the optative of those verbs of the 1st class that have a present stem ending in -ua, ye. In the synthetic forms of the non-active these verbs demonstrate u resp. e. This alternation pattern is found in a small group of the verbs of the 1st class.

-t/-s-: the alternant s is used in the 1 sg. present indicative active and in the 2 sg. and 3 sg. present subjunctive active and, often parallel to the forms with -t-, in the 2 pl. present indicative active, in the imperfect indicative active and in the 2 pl. imperative. The alternation is quite typical of the verbs of the 2nd class.

-k/-q-; -g- / -gj: palatal consonants are used in the 2 pl. present indicative (and subjunctive, future and so on) active, in the imperfect active, in non-active synthetic forms, in the imperative and in the aorist. This alternation pattern is typical of some verbs of the 2nd class.

The conjugation of the two most important irregular verbs is illustrated in Table 12.16.

### TABLE 12.16 CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS JAM ‘TO BE’ AND KAM ‘TO HAVE’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Indicative present</th>
<th>Indicative imperfect</th>
<th>Indicative aorist</th>
<th>Subjunctive present</th>
<th>Optative present</th>
<th>Admimivative present</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>jam</td>
<td>kam</td>
<td>1 sg.</td>
<td>qofsha</td>
<td>qenkam</td>
<td>qenë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>2 sg.</td>
<td>qofsh</td>
<td>pasakam</td>
<td>pasur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>ēşhtē</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>3 sg.</td>
<td>qofhëe</td>
<td>na</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>jemi</td>
<td>kemi</td>
<td>1 pl.</td>
<td>qofsh</td>
<td>pasakam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td>jeni</td>
<td>keni</td>
<td>2 pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td>janē</td>
<td>kanē</td>
<td>3 pl.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Among other irregular verbs are the following (I provide only the 1 sg. present indicative form, the 1 sg. aorist indicative form and the participle): bie – rashē – rënē ‘to fall’; bie – prura – prurē ‘to bring’; dua – desha – dashur ‘to want, to love’; ha – hëngra – ngréñë

Basic patterns of dialectal variation

1) Admirative forms are almost absent in the Arbresh and Arvanitika dialects, as well as in the southern Tosk Cham dialects.

2) The supercompound forms are alien to the northern Tosk dialects.

3) In old Albanian written texts, as well as in a portion of modern Gheg dialects (mainly in the dialects of the eastern northern group), several intransitive verbs are used in the perfect tenses with the auxiliary ‘to be’, cf. jam shkue (I.am go.PART.) ‘I have walked,’ instead of SA kam shkuar (I.have go.PART.).

4) In Gheg dialects there is a special form of the analytical infinitive that is formed according to the model me + participle (me shkue ‘to go’). Most likely, the form is a Gheg innovation.

5) In Gheg dialects there is a special form of the future, which is formed according to the model ‘have + analytical infinitive’, cf. kam me shkue have.1SG.PRES. INF. PART. ‘I shall go’; this form coexists with the SA form of the future, which apparently has radiated from the Tosk area. Other Gheg forms of the future and conditional subsystems can also be formed according to this model (see Breu 2013: 43). In Arbresh dialects there is a “hybrid” future form (kam + subjunctive).

6) There are various dialectal forms of the gerund particle (for example, rue in Gheg).

7) There are numerous dialectal differences in the field of participle formation. Derivational types are more varied in Gheg dialects than in Tosk dialects (see below). Besides, in Gheg dialects there is a special short form of the participle that is used in analytical constructions.

8) In some Gheg dialects (especially in the eastern part of the northern and central Gheg dialects) there is a tendency towards non-differentiation of the 2 sg. and 3 sg. present indicative active forms with corresponding subjunctive forms.

9) In most Gheg dialects (except South Gheg dialects) the imperfect is formed by means of the suffix -sh- (Gheg punojsha ‘I worked’). The almost total absence of such forms in the old texts is indicative of the recent origin of this innovation. There are also many other dialectal peculiarities in the imperfect endings (for example, 3 sg. -ke in eastern northern Gheg dialects).

10) The imperfect passive is formed in the majority of Gheg dialects by means of the particle u and not synthetically as it is in SA (Gheg u lajsha REFL. wash.1SG.IMP.ACT. vs. SA and Tosk laksesha wash.1SG.IMP.PASS. ‘I was washed’). In a few dialects (Gheg, southern Tosk and Arbresh) as well as in the old texts a parallel non-active perfect construction is also encountered, which is formed with the particle u: “u + perfect (pluperfect, aorist 2) active”.

11) It is often the case that many verbs shift in various dialects from one conjugational class to another. For example, in some northern Tosk dialects there is a tendency towards the extension of the aorist stems in -t- at the expense of those verbs that have aorist stems with -v- in SA. In the old texts, the conjugation type that is typical of verbs ik, ec and hip in SA is extended to a significant number of verbs of the 2nd conjugational class (see de Vaan 2014); thus, these verbs constitute a special
subclass of the 2nd class in the old texts. In some Gheg dialects, the verbs of the 3rd class conjugate in the present according to the model of the 1st class.

12) There are also dialectal differences in conjugation that are due to phonetic processes. For example, the SA and Tosk -r- in the forms of the aorist corresponds to -n- in Gheg; cf. SA and Tosk 1 sg. aor. act. bëra ‘I did’ – Gheg bâna. In a part of the Tosk dialectal area the present and imperfect endings with -j(-) retain the archaic form -nj(-), cf. punonj ‘I work’ as opposed to the SA puno.

13) There are some archaic endings in the old texts. They are important for the reconstruction of the history of the Albanian conjugation; see below on some of them.

Verb system: the origin

Present stems

The PIE verb system has been significantly reshaped in Albanian. Major conjugational types of SA often encompass verbs that evolved from verbs that have different types of PIE stems. Only three verbs that use -m as their 1 sg. present indicative and subjunctive ending can be treated as the continuation of the PIE athematic type: SA jam ‘to be’ (< PIE *h₁es-/h₁s-), SA them ‘to say’ (< PIE *k₁eHs-), and SA kam ‘to have’ (< PIE *keh₂p-); the latter verb could have been influenced by the verb jam. All other (inherited) verbs evolved from PIE thematic types, with or without suffixes.

- “Pure” thematic type; verbs that originated from this type mostly belong to the SA second conjugational class: SA bredh ‘to roam’ < PIE *bhredh-e/o-; vjedh ‘to steal’ < PIE *weg₂-e/o-.
- Suffix *

  *-skˊe-/-o-: SA njoh ‘to know, acquaint’ < PIE *

  *g̥n̥h₁-ske/-o- (PIE *skˊ >SA -h, see “Phonology”).
- Suffix/infix *

  *-ne/o-: SA dal ‘go out’ < *

  *dʰ]-ne/n-h₁-; SA bind ‘to convince’ < PIE *

  *bʰi-ne/n-dʰ-.
- The present suffix *

  *-ye/-o- and causative-iterative suffix *

  *eye/o- play a key role in the development of the Albanian conjugational system. Some verbs of the SA 2nd and 3rd conjugational classes are formed with these suffixes: SA bie ‘to bring’ < PIE *bʰer-ye-; SA ndez ‘to burn’ < PIE *dogʰ-ye/o-; SA vesh ‘to put on’ < PIE *wos-ye/o-. When the verb stem ended in -t-, attachment of this suffix resulted in the alternation -s/-t. For example SA 1 sg. flas ‘to speak’ is a denominal formation based on the Latin borrowing fabula > SA fjalë < *-at-yō, 2 sg. flet < *-at-is < *at-yes (see Matzinger 2006: 122). This alternation became a productive pattern in a certain period of Albanian language history (it is typical, for example, of verbs borrowed from Slavic) and is now found in a large number of verbs of the 2nd class. The agglutination of the suffix to the nasal presents (for example, SA bëj ‘to do’ < PIE *bʰ-n-h₁-ye/o-) resulted in the development of the suffix -nych-e/-, which has become the main tool for verb derivation and thus eventually formed the 1st conjugational class. Many denominal verbs were formed with this suffix (SA puno ‘to work’ from SA punë ‘work’ < PIE *pudneh₂). In addition, some verbs from other conjugational classes demonstrate or demonstrated a tendency to shift into this class (see, for example, SA qaj ‘to cry’, which belonged to the 3rd class in Buzuk’s book). Starting from the early Albano-Latin contacts, most borrowed verbs are adapted as verbs of the 1st class (ending in -oj or, more rarely, in -ej).
Present endings

Active indicative

1 sg.: athematic SA -m < PIE *-mi; thematic SA -Ø < PIE *-Ø (*-oh2); SA -j, OA -nj (in the 1st class) < PIE *-n-yō; SA -s (in the 2nd class) < PIE *-t-yō.

2 sg. and 3 sg.: The zero endings of the 2 sg. and 3 sg. of the thematic conjugation can reflect either the PIE injunctive (“secondary”) endings *-es, *-et, or the “primary” endings *-esi, *-eti. Umlaut in some Albanian verbs shows that the immediate stage of development was *-is, *-it. The forms ending in -n (1st class) and -t (2nd class) indicate at the loss of the -y- in the suffix (see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 253). -të in the 3 sg. of -mi verbs must have developed from PIE *-ti.

1 pl.: thematic SA -më < PIE *-omes; athematic SA -mi < PIE *-mes.

2 pl.: SA -ni (in the old texts and in dialects a more archaic ending -i is used). The ending -ni is a later analogical development influenced by the verbs of the 1st class; -i could have evolved due to the influence from the non-active paradigm (Klingenschmitt 1994: 226).

3 pl.: SA -në < PIE *-(o)nti (an alternative interpretation is given in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 51–52, 215).

Non-active indicative

Non-active present endings continue PIE medial present endings. If the verb’s stem ends in a consonant (2nd class), these endings are attached directly to the stem; if the verb’s stem ends in a vowel (3rd class), a connecting consonant -h- is inserted (it is either a later anti-hiatus consonant or a reflex of PIE *-skh). The same -h- is also found in the verbs of the 1st class, but in the old texts and in some dialects non-active endings are attached to a stem ending in -n: SA bèhet ‘s/he becomes (3 sg. pres. non-act.)’ vs. OA bènet. Non-active forms, both present and imperfect, of the verbs with vocalic alternations have the stem variant with -i- (as well as with final palatal consonants -q, -gj). Some peculiarities of the spelling of non-active present forms in the old Gheg texts make it possible to conclude that in OA the stress fell on the thematic vowel (see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 127–131).

1 sg. SA -em < PIE *-o-may.

2 sg. SA -esh; OA -ē < PIE *-e-soy.

3 sg. SA -et, OA -etē < PIE *-e-toy.

1 pl. SA -emi < PIE *-o-medh2 (?).

2 pl. SA -eni, OA -i < PIE *-e-dwe (?).

3 pl. SA -en, OA -enē < PIE *-o-ntoy.

The Albanian present active subjunctive, at least those forms that are different from indicative forms, resulted from the development of the PIE subjunctive.

2 sg. SA -sh < PIE *-e-esi; 3 sg. SA -ē < PIE *-e-et(i); PIE *-e-si, *-e-ti for athematic verbs.

Imperfect active

Imperfect forms are based on the present form. The verbs with vocalic alternations have in the imperfect the stem variant with -i- (as well as with final palatal consonants -q, -gj).
The imperfect demonstrates a very high level of diatopic and diachronic variability; in old Albanian various forms of the imperfect are encountered in texts by different writers. In what follows I will rely on the reconstruction of late PA imperfect endings offered by St. Schumacher (Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 134–140). It is generally accepted that imperfect endings in Albanian developed from the PIE “secondary” endings.

1. **sg.** SA *-ja*, PA *-*/*ja* < PIE *-(o)-m/*-m. In SA (and, partly, in old texts) the modern endings with the element *-j* (dialectal *-nj-*) in 1 sg. and 2 sg. and with *-n* in the plural have extended under the influence of the verbs of the 1st class verbs and also of the OA verbs of the *ikinj* type, see above; *-a* in the ending *-ja* could have arisen under the influence of the corresponding aorist form, see below.

2. **sg.** SA *-(j)e*, PA *-e* < PIE *-(e)-s.

3. **sg.** SA *-te*, PA *-Ø, *-j* < PIE *-(e)-t*; SA *-te* is a relatively late extension.

4. **pl.** SA *-nim*, PA *-im* < PIE *-(o)-mo/e.

5. **pl.** SA *-nit*, PA *-itə* < PIE *-(e)-te*.

6. **pl.** SA *-nin*, PA *-(i)nnə* < PIE *(o)-nti* (an alternative explanation is suggested in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 215)

**Imperfect non-active**

The endings of the imperfect non-active did not evolve continuously from the PIE formants; rather, the paradigm has been deeply reshaped according to the model of the conjugation of the verb *jum* ‘to be’ in the imperfect active. This pattern thus shows an interesting parallel to the pattern in Modern Greek (Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 143, Fiedler 1981). The accent patterns of the imperfect non-active in old Gheg texts resemble those of the present non-active.

**Aorist stems**

The Albanian aorist represents a highly heterogeneous phenomenon. From a historical point of view the following types can be distinguished:

- The verbs that use *-shë* in the 1 sg. aor. act.: *qeshë* ‘I was’, *thashë* ‘I spoke’, *lashë* ‘I left’, *dhashë* ‘I gave’, see above the list of the irregular verbs (pp. 589–590). These forms have been traditionally viewed as directly descending from the PIE sigmatic aorist. According to Klingenschmitt 1994 (see also Matzinger 2006: 128–129), they are innovations that developed under the analogical influence of the imperfect of athematic verbs (Buzuk’s *jeshë* ‘I was (impf.) < PIE *h₁es*-m*)."

- By contrast, the aorists in *-v-* (1st and 3rd classes) must have developed from the PIE sigmatic type, in which the intervocalic *-* has dropped and an anti-hiatus *-v-* has emerged (Klingenschmitt 1994, Matzinger 2006: 129, Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 148–154). Another hypothesis with respect to the origin of the *-v-* aorist assumes that it is a form that is parallel to Latin *-vī-* perfects (Orel 2000: 199).

- There is no commonly accepted view on the etymology of aorists in *-t-*.

A possible suggestion is that it evolved from the periphrastic construction consisting of the verbal adjective (with *-to-* suffix) and *esse* (Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 154–158, Klingenschmitt 1994: 231).
Among the Albanian root aorists that are especially interesting are some 30 verbs that have an alternation between -a- or -e- in the present and -o- (< PIE *ē) in the aorist: SA 
'hedh’ ‘I throw’ : hodha ‘I threw’. It is usually assumed that these aoristic forms have evolved from the perfect with a lengthened root vowel; this pattern is then similar to analogical patterns in Latin, German, Celtic and Tocharian (for a detailed analysis, see Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 161–173; for an interpretation of these aorists as “Narten-imperfects,” see Jasanoff 2012).

The aoristic endings in SA

1 sg. -a, 2 sg. -e, 3 sg. -i/-u, 1 pl. -m(ë), 2 pl. -t(ë), 3 pl. -n(ë), have evolved from the PIE secondary endings (similarly to imperfect active endings). The 1 sg. and 3 sg. call for some comments.

1 sg. SA -a is probably the result of contraction of -ë- and -e (on parallel contractions in nominal and pronominal system, see above). -ë- could have developed from PIE *-m̥  or from the perfect ending *-h₂a (see Matzinger 2006: 129). -e may be a reflex of a deictic element.

3 sg. -i/-u (on the distribution of these variants see above) goes back to a deictic element that is identical to the definite article (and to the pronominal element of the demonstrative pronoun). This element has entered the paradigm relatively recently (in the OA period).

Aorist non-active

Non-active particle u < PIE *swe.

1 sg. -shë, attested in old texts and in some dialects, has evolved under the influence of the imperfect paradigm.

3 sg. SA -Ø – the active ending without the deictic particle.

All other non-active forms don’t differ from the active forms.

Optative

The optative is traditionally considered an innovation formed on the basis of aorist stems (see e.g. Matzinger 2006: 132; there is also a proposal that the Albanian optative evolved from the PIE “optative of s-aorist,” Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 177). Thus, the optative element -sh- is either a direct reflex of the PIE aoristic *-s- or an element that developed under the analogical influence of some aorist and imperfect forms. If the former hypothesis is correct, the element -sh- (< PIE *-s- + *-i-) must have initially evolved in the verbs with the -v- aorist (this form itself probably developed from the PIE sigmatic aorist) and later extended to other conjugation classes by analogy (Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 180–182). The element -f- in the verbs ending in a vowel is a result of the devoicing of the Albanian aorist element -v- (in the verbs ending in a consonant the -sh- marker is attached directly to the stem). As for the endings, they could have been influenced by those of the aorist and imperfect indicative active.

The form 2 sg. SA -sh- < PIE *-s-ëš (Matzinger 2006: 116); 3 sg. SA -të could have evolved under the influence of the 3 sg. present subjunctive active (Matzinger 2006: 116).
Imperative

2 sg. SA -Ø in verbs belonging to all conjugational classes, -ë in some verbs with consonantal stems, -j in some verbs with vocalic stems. The stem of verbs with vocalic and consonantal alternations demonstrate i-vocalism and the final palatal consonant. -ë < PIE *-e (?).

The 2 pl. imperative form is identical to the corresponding indicative form. An object clitic pronoun can be inserted between the stem and the ending: dëgjo-më-ni hear-I. ACC.-2PL.IMP. ‘hear (pl.) me!’; see “Syntax”.

Participles

The participles in SA are formed by means of several derivational suffixes: -r(ë) / Gheg -n(ë); -ur / Gheg -un; -në. Their distribution is determined by the verb class and the stem auslaut; for the majority of verbs, participles are derived from aorist stems. Etymologically all these participle suffixes result from the development of the PIE suffix *-no-.

In some (especially Gheg) dialects and in the old texts there are also participles formed with the formants -m (< PIE *-mo-) and -të (< PIE *-to-). One and the same verb can often use different suffixes of the participle in different dialects or in old texts written by different writers, and sometimes even in the texts of the same writer. Semantic differences between participles formed with different suffixes are not registered. On the short forms of particles in modern Gheg dialects, see above (“Basic Patterns of Dialectal Variation”).

WORD FORMATION


The main word-formation means in Albanian are affixation, compounding and conversion.

Affixation

Albanian uses both suffixation and prefixation; as in other Indo-European languages suffixation prevails in Albanian.

Suffixation

A. Nouns. There are several chronological layers in the nominal word-formation suffixes of Albanian. First, there are suffixes that can be traced back to the PIE epoch (see Camaj 1966: 113–124): -k/-g- (SA petk ‘clothes’, cf. petë ‘thin layer of dough’), -p/-b- (SA thelb ‘kernel of a nut’), -l/-r- (kërmill ‘snail, slug’). As a rule, these suffixes are unproductive in modern Albanian, and their derivational meaning is not transparent.

Then there are many suffixes that are productive or semi-productive in modern Albanian. They derive Albanian nouns from nouns, adjectives and verbs; some of these suffixes have been borrowed from Latin, Slavic and Turkish. Among the most widespread nominal suffixes are the following.
• Suffixes of abstract nouns. SA -i (SA liri ‘freedom’ from SA (i, e) lirë ‘free’); this suffix is used to derive nouns from nouns, verbs and adjectives. It goes back to PIE *-iye-, SA -im, cf. SA pushim ‘rest, pl. recreation’, from SA pushoj ‘to rest’, derives nouns from verbs and goes back to PIE *-imu (see Klingenschmitt 1994: 225); etc.

• Suffixes of nomina agentis. SA -(ë)s and its variants -es, -ues, onjës (ndihmës ‘assistant’ from ‘ndihmoj ‘to help’) is used to derive nouns (and adjectives) from nouns and verbs and goes back to PIE *-ikwyo- (cf. Arm. -ičč-). SA -tor (with variants -tuar, -tuer), -tar, -or (-uer, -uar), -ar (SA sherbëtor ‘attendant’ from SA sherbëj ‘to serve’); in all probability all these suffixes are borrowed from Latin; they are used to derive nouns and adjectives from both nouns and verbs. There are also some suffixes of Slavic origin; they can be used to derive not only nomina agentis in a narrow sense but also other nouns that refer to people and sometimes have a pejorative semantic shade: -ac/-ec, -ash, -avec, -nik; cf. SA mburravec ‘boaster’ from mburr ‘to brag’.

• Feminine suffixes: -eshë, ushë (SA luansë ‘lioness’ from SA luán ‘lion’), < Lat. -issa; onjë < Lat. -onia (?); and a borrowed Slavic suffix -icë.

• Diminutive suffixes: -th (for nouns of masculine gender, < PIE *-k-o-), -zë (for nouns of feminine gender, < PIE *-dyā), cf. SA hëkurt ‘sonny’ from SA hekur ‘iron’, is used to derive adjectives from adverbs, verbs and nouns, < PIE *-to-.

B. Adjectives. The adjectives share some derivational suffixes with nouns (see above); this is characteristic of unarticulated adjectives. There are some suffixes typical of articulated adjectives:

• -m(ë), cf. SA (i, e) sotëm/me ‘today’s’ from sot ‘today’, is used to derive adjectives from words belonging to various parts of speech, < PIE *-mo-.

• -shëm, SA (i, e) kujdesshëm/me ‘careful’, from kujdes ‘care’, is used to derive adjectives from nouns, adverbs and verbs (the latter possibility is attested only in the Gheg area), < *-sh (ablative ending?) + *-mo- (see above).

• -t(ë), cf. SA (i, e) hëkur ‘iron (adj.)’, from SA hekur ‘iron’, is used to derive adjectives from adverbs, verbs and nouns, < PIE *-to-.

C. Adverbs. A large part of Albanian adverbs are formed by means of conversion (see below). There are, however, some suffixes that are used to derive adverbs from other parts of speech: -isht (SA besnikërisht ‘faithfully’ from SA besnik ‘faithful’, < PIE *-ist-o-; -ti (SA fluturimthi ‘as in the flight’, from SA fluturim ‘flight’); -as/-azi (SA gjunjas ‘on one’s knees’ from SA gjunjë ‘knee’) and some others.

D. Verbs. On the old IE verbal stem extension in Albanian see above (“Morphology, Verb system: the origin”).

Prefixation

In modern Albanian, prefixation is characteristic of both the nominal and verbal system. Many prefixes are homonyms to adverbs and prepositions: SA mbijetoj ‘to survive’ from mbi ‘over’ + jetoj ‘to live’; SA nènçmim ‘underestimation’ from nèn ‘under’ + cmoj ‘estimate’. Some prefixes in SA are borrowed: SA riarmaños ‘to reweapon’ from ri- (from Ital. ri-) + armatos ‘to weapon’. There are, however, preverbs that form an older chronological
layer. Many such preverbs (see the list in Schumacher & Matzinger 2013: 188–190; also Camaj 1966: 103–113) have lost their meaning in the modern language: cf. e.g. SA v-des ‘to die’ and des in texts by old writers. Combinations of two preverbs are encountered very rarely: SA sh-për-blej ‘reward’, cf. SA blej ‘buy’.

Compounding is widely represented in modern Albanian. There are various types of compounds, for example: SA delebash ‘hermaphrodite’ from dele ‘sheep’ + dash ‘ram’ (dvandva); SA ditëlindje ‘birthday’ from ditë ‘day’ + lindje ‘birth’ (tatpurusa); SA lulèkuqe ‘poppy’ < lule ‘flower’ + (i, e) kuq/e ‘red’ (karmadharya); SA zemërgur ‘heartless’ from zemër ‘heart’ + gur ‘stone’ (bahuvrihi). The order of the components within compounds is parallel to word order in the syntax. Compounding in the verbal domain is rarer; see, for example, SA udhëheq ‘to direct’ from udhë ‘way’ + heq ‘to remove’.

There are also compounds with opaque structure, e.g. SA kushtrim ‘appeal’ from kush ‘who?’ and trim ‘brave’.

Conversion

Two clear patterns of conversion are represented by the processes of adjectivization of participles and substantivization of articulated adjectives: SA folur ‘to speak (participle)’ → (i, e) folur ‘colloquial’ → (të) folurit ‘speech’. Conversion is also characteristic for the “adjective–adverb” pairs: SA (i, e) mirë ‘good (adjective)’ – mirë ‘well (adverb)’, but it is difficult to determine the direction of the derivation in this case.

SYNTAX

This section focuses on some of those features of the Albanian syntax that are interesting from an areal and typological point of view. Some remarks on Albanian morphosyntactic characteristics can be found above (see “Morphology”). Albanian syntax is very poorly described from a historical point of view (see, however, Joseph in print, Matzinger 2006: 140–144, Topalli 2011: 1179–1281).

Albanian is a nominative-accusative language that codes this alignment by case marking, verb agreement and word order (on the additional marking of objects by means of clitics, see below). Albanian is a language with a relatively free word order (as far as major constituents are concerned). Nevertheless, SVO is clearly the basic word order pattern. Numerous deviations from the SVO pattern are accounted for by the topicalization of the object and by other properties of information structure, by actionality characteristics of the verb, as well as by emphatic and stylistic aspects. Albanian is a pronounced pro-drop language.

In general, Albanian syntax does not differ significantly from the syntax of other modern European languages: Albanian shares the majority of diagnostic features determined for the Standard Average European (SAE) languages (Haspelmath 2001: 1505) (these diagnostic features are mostly syntactic). Some important syntactic traits are shared by Albanian with other languages of the Balkan Sprachbund (see below).

Syntax of the noun phrase. The main characteristics of the Albanian noun phrase were described above (“Morphology”). Probably the most striking phenomenon is the presence of a special linking element that agrees with the head noun and is placed both before the abnodinal genitive (this pattern is thus a kind of Suffixaufnahme) and before adjective-like words. This peculiarity is also found in Balkan Romance (first of all, in Daco-Romanian), which is one of the rare cases of evidence pointing toward intensive
(Proto-)Albanian – (Proto-)Rumanian contacts. A feature that Albanian shares with both Romanian and Bulgaro-Macedonian is a rule according to which the first component of the noun phrase is marked for case and other categories if this position is occupied by an adjective, ordinal numeral, possessive pronoun or another element whose default position is after the head noun, cf.: djal-i i mirë boy-NOM.M.SG.DEF. ART.NOM.M.SG. good ‘good boy’ (unmarked word order) and i mir-i djalë ART.NOM.M.SG. good-NOM.M.SG. DEF. boy ‘good boy’. In old texts there are examples where both members of the noun phrase get inflections; cf. an example from Buzuk: vepra-vet mira-ve act.PL.-GEN./DAT. DEF. good.F.PL.-GEN./DAT. ‘good acts (dat.)’.

Along with postposed nominal dependents, described above, there are some nominal dependents that are found in preposed preposition: cardinal numerals, demonstratives, indefinite and interrogative pronouns and the indefinite article. Some of them are indeclinable when used in the noun phrase (cardinal numerals, some indefinite pronouns, indefinite article); thus, in corresponding noun phrases it is only the noun that declines: ndonjë njeri-u some person-GEN./DAT.M.SG.INDEF. ‘(of/to) some person’. The interrogative pronoun (i.e) cili/a ‘what’ behaves as an adjective: i cil-i njëri? ART.NOM.M.SG. what-NOM.M.SG.DEF. person ‘what person?’ In noun phrases with demonstrative pronouns both members of the construction decline, and the noun can be either in the indefinite or in the definite form: këtij njeri-u this.GEN./DAT.M.SG. person-GEN./DAT.M.SG.INDEF. vs. këtij njeri-ut this.GEN./DAT.M.SG. person-GEN./DAT.M.SG.DEF. ‘of/to this person’.

**Ablative construction.** Albanian has a special construction in which the attribute is expressed by an ablative form in the singular or in the plural and has a non-referential, qualifying meaning: këngë dashuri-e song love-ABL.F.SING.INDEF. ‘love song’, leng fruta-sh juice fruit.PL.-ABL.PL.INDEF. ‘fruit juice’. In this construction, both the head and the dependent must be used in the indefinite form; this means that when the head noun is in the definite form, the attribute should be expressed by the genitive, while the ablative construction is ruled out. When the ablative form is in the plural, the ending -sh (and not -ve) must be used.

**Prepositional constructions.** Albanian prepositions typically govern nouns in the accusative and ablative cases; there are also some prepositions that evolved through grammaticalization of prepositional phrases, which govern the genitive: në rast të ‘in (the) case of’. The majority of prepositions govern one case. The exceptions are the prepositions për ‘for, about’ and ndaj ‘toward, by’, which govern both the accusative and ablative cases. Location at some point and motion towards that point are grammatically expressed by identical prepositional constructions in Albanian, which is also typical of other Balkan languages: në shtëpi [in house] ‘at home, to the house’. Albanian has also two prepositions, nga ‘from’ and te(k) ‘to’, which govern the nominative.

Albanian belongs to the languages with transitive have-possessive constructions. Existential clauses are formed with the 3 sg. form of the verb kam ‘to have’: Këtu ka disa studente Here have.3SG.PRES. some students. ‘There are some students here’. A construction with jam ‘to be’ can also have an existential meaning: Janë çà njerëz, që . . . be.3PL.PRES. some people, which . . . ‘There are some people, who. . .’.

**Weak (clitic) pronouns.** These pronouns double the direct and indirect objects. They may be the only means of expression of direct or indirect objects in clauses with 1st or 2nd person objects or in clauses where the weak 3rd person pronoun is used in an anaphoric function. On the form of weak pronouns, see above (“Morphology”). Dative weak pronouns are obligatory in SA; they double not only “true” indirect objects but
all clause-level dependents in the dative case, including nominal dative forms that are used in adverbal functions. In the old texts and in the dialects dative weak pronouns are not consistently obligatory. Pronominal doubling of direct objects is optional, except for direct objects expressed by the pronouns i gjithë ‘all’ and i tërë ‘all’, which are obligatorily doubled. Direct object doubling depends on information-structural properties of the clause: rhematic direct objects are never doubled, cf. (1) and (2):

1) Agim-in e gjeta në dhomë
   Agim-ACC.M.SG.DEF. PRO.ACC.3SG I.found in room
   ‘I found Agim in the room’.

2) Në dhomë gjeta Anil-ën
   in room I.found Anila-ACC.F.SG.DEF.
   ‘In the room I found Anila (It was Anila whom I found in the room)’.  

Accusative forms that are not direct objects are never doubled.

Weak pronouns are placed immediately before the verb. The only exception are imperative constructions: weak pronouns can be placed after the 2 sg. form and can be incorporated within the 2 pl. form (see “Morphology” above). When both a dative and an accusative weak pronoun are used in the same clause, the order is always “dat. + acc.” As a result, there is a series of coalesced forms: ma (më + e) ‘1 sg. dat. + 3 sg. acc.’, ta (të + e) ‘2 sg. dat. + 3 sg. acc.’, ia (i + e) ‘3 sg. dat. + 3 sg. acc.’, etc:

3) Ia dhashë libr-in
   PRO.3SG.DAT.PRO.3SG.ACC. I.gave book-ACC.M.SG.DEF.
   mesues-it
   teacher- DAT.M.SG.DEF.
   ‘I gave the book to the teacher’.

Pronominal doubling of objects is a characteristic trait of the Balkan Sprachbund. The form of the coalesced pronouns suggests the PA period as the period when they evolved and thus again the period of (proto)Albanian-(proto)Romanian contacts.  

Negation. Albanian has different negation particles for the real (indicative, admirative) and irreal (subjunctive, optative, imperative) moods; it thus preserves the PIE distinction, which is similarly preserved in Indo-Iranian, Armenian and Greek. In real contexts SA s (for clause negation also a longer variant as < PIE *(ne) hŏyu-kʷid) or nuk (< PIE *ne-kʷe) is used; in irreal contexts SA mos is used (< PIE *mē-kʷe).

Complementation. There are two main models of complementation in SA. One pattern employs conjunctions se ‘that’ (< PIE *kʷe) or qē ‘that, what’ (< PIE *kʷi/o-); se is preferred in contexts with most semantic types of matrix verbs. Another pattern involves the use of the subjunctive in the dependent clause (see “Morphology” above). The choice between these two models is determined by (1) whether the event in the dependent clause is factual (real) or non-factual (non-real) and (2) the degree of boundedness of the events in the main and subordinate clauses (see Matras 2002: 179–185). Thus, there is a kind of continuum stretching from epistemic verbs and perception verbs on one pole of the continuum (these verbs favour the conjunction pattern; cf. (4)) to modal and phasal verbs on the other pole of the continuum (these verbs favour the subjunctive pattern; cf. (5)).
The conjunction që can introduce a dependent clause with a subjunctive verb form (for example, if the subjects of the main and dependent clauses are not coreferential) (6).

4) \( Ai \) e se keni
   He he knows that have.2PL.PRES.
   weaknes
   ‘He knows that you have weakness’.

5) Dua të shkoj
   Want.1SG.PRES. SUBJ go.1SG.PRES.
   ‘I want to go’.

6) Dua që të shkosh
   Want.1SG.PRES. that SUBJ go.2SG.PRES.
   ‘I want that you go’.

Such a two-fold complementation strategy is a characteristic trait of the Balkan languages. In Gheg dialects (including old Gheg texts) the subjunctive strategy competes with a strategy with the infinitive of the “me + participle” type (see Arapi 2010).

Conditional sentences. There is a great deal of variation in the ways Albanian can express conditional relations, especially in the protasis, where the choice of the verb form is determined by (1) the choice among several conjunctions (po, në, nëse, sikur) or the absence of the conjunction; and (2) the type of conditional meaning: real or potential vs. irreal. The indicative, optative, admirative and subjunctive forms are used in the case of a real or potential condition, whereas the imperfect or the pluperfect of subjunctive (or the subjunctive of admirative) is used in the case of an irreal condition. In the apodosis of the irreal conditional sentences the imperfect and pluperfect indicative as well as the present and past conditional can be used.

Relative sentences. SA has the inflected relativizer (i, e) cili ‘which, who’ (7), which can be used for relativization of any syntactic position in the dependent clause. This pronoun is outing the old general relativiser që/çë, which can be used in modern SA exclusively for the relativization of subjects and direct objects (8).

7) ky trim, për të cilin
   this brave.man on ART.ACC.SG. which.ACC.M.SG.DEF.
   tregoheshin legjenda, trokiti mu në derën
tell.3PL.IMP.F.PASS. tales he.knocked just in door.ACC.F.DEF.
e tyre ART.ACC.SG.DEF. their
   ‘This brave man, about whom the tales were told, knocked directly at their door’.

8) Njerëzit që bënin sehir nuk nxitonin
   people which do.3PL.IMP. looking not hurry.3PL.IMP.
   ‘People, which looked around, did not hurry’.
FURTHER READING

Bibliographic data on Albanian and Albanian linguistics are published regularly in “Bibliographie linguistique” and “Indogermanische Chronik” (before 1949 Albanian linguistics was reviewed in Indogermanisches Jahrbuch); see also Schmitt-Brandt 1968, Hamp 1972, Daka, 1975, 1984, Ködderitzsch 1994.

Overviews of the history of the albanological research can be found in Jokl 1917, Schmitt-Brandt 1968, Hamp 1972, Ködderitzsch 1994. There are two substantial introductions to Albanian studies: Fiedler 2006 and Matzinger 2006; see also an overview of the main problems of Albanian language history in Sh. Demiraj 2013 (with a detailed English summary).

The basic monolingual dictionaries are Kostallari 1980 and Thomai 2006 (see also Cipo et al. 1954). Albanian-English dictionaries include Mann 1948 (a “historical” dictionary with very rich dialect material) and Newmark 1999. The annotated Albanian corpus (19 million tokens) is now available at http://web-corpora.net/AlbanianCorpus/search/.

The main etymological dictionaries are Meyer 1891 (the first Albanian etymological dictionary), Huld 1984 (basic IE etymologies of Albanian), B. Demiraj 1997 (it encompasses only the IE part of the Albanian lexicon), Orel 1998 (IE etyons and early borrowings), and Cabej 1976–2014 (this opus magnum by the greatest Albanian linguist encompasses, unfortunately, only a selection of the Albanian lexicon there is a French summary); see also the etymological dictionary of Albanian verbs of PIE descent in Schumacher and Matzinger 2013: 965.

The best Albanian reference grammar is Buchholtz and Fiedler 1987; see also Newmark, Hubbard and Prifti 1982 (based in many parts on Domi 1976) and Camaj 1984.

Among the historical grammars Mann 1977 and Orel 2000 employ a comparative approach, whereas Sh. Demiraj 1986 is the most detailed collection of Old Albanian and dialectal language material (see also Sh. Demiraj 1993); Schumacher and Matzinger 2013 contains a thorough analysis of the history of the Albanian verb system.

NOTE

1 This reconstructed PA stage may actually reflect a somewhat later stage in the development of the Albanian language. Indeed, on the one hand, there are some grounds to believe that (Proto)Gheg and (Proto)Tosk dialects had intensive contact in the first half of the second millennium AD. However, on the other hand, some similar processes of language change may have developed in both Gheg and Tosk independently. These circumstances can influence the assumed reconstruction.

REFERENCES

Arapi, Inna 2010, Der Gebrauch von Infinitiv und Konjunktiv im Altalbanischen mit Ausblick auf das Rumänische, Kovač, Hamburg
Asenova, Petza 2002, Balkansko jezikoznanije. Osnovni problemi na balkanskija jezikov sjuz, Faber, Sofjja
Bonnet, Guillaume 1998, Les mots latins de l’albanais, L’Harmattan, Paris


Cipo, Kostaq, Çabej, Eqrem, Domi, Mahir, Krajni, Anton & Myderrizi, Osman 1954, *Fjalori i gjuhës shqipe*, Instituti i Shkencave, Sekcioni i Gjuhës e i Letërsisë, Tirana


de Vaan, Michiel in print, “The phonology of Albanian”

Demiraj, Bardhyl 1997, *Albanische Etymologien Untersuchungen zum albanischen Erbwortschatz*, Editions Rodopi, Amsterdam–Atlanta, GA


Demiraj, Shaban 1986 Gramatikë historike e gjuhës shqipe, Shtëpia botuese “8 nëntori”, Tirana


Demiraj, Shaban 1996, *Fonologjia historike e gjuhës shqipe*, Toena, Tirana

Demiraj, Shaban 2013, *Gjuha shqipe dhe historia e saj*, Onufri, Tirana

Desnickaja, Agnija 1968, *Slavjanskije zainstvovanija v albanskom jazyke*, Izdatel’stvo Akademii nauk SSSR, Moskva


Domi, Mahir (ed.) 1976, *Fonetika dhe gramatika e gjuhës së sotme letrare shqipe, V, II, Morfologjia*, Akademija e shkencave e RPS të Shqipërisë. Instituti i gjuhësisë dhe i letërsisë, Tiranë


Fiedler, Wilfried 2004, *Das albanišche Verbalsystem in der Sprache des Gjon Buzuku*, Akademia e shkencave dhe e Arteve e Kosovës, Prishtinë


Gjinari, Jorgji; Beci, Bahri; Shkurtaj, Gjovalin & Gosturani, Xheladin 2007, *Atlasi dialektologjik i gjuhës shqipe*, V. 1, Università degli Studi di Napoli L’Orientali, Napoli

Haarmann, Harald 1972, *Der lateinische Lehnwortschatz im Albanischen*, Buske, Hamburg


Huld, Martin E. 1984, *Basic Albanian etymologies*, Slavica Publishers, Columbus, Ohio


Joseph, Brian in print, “The syntax of Albanian”

Jusufi, Lumnije 2011, *Die zentralgegische Mundartengruppe in Mazedonien (Albanische Forschungen 30)*, Harrasowitz Verlag, Wiesbaden


Kostallari, Androklli (kryered.) 1980, Fjalor i gjuhës së sotme shqipe, Akademia e Shkencave të RPS të Shqipërisë, Instituti i Gjuhësisë dhe i Letërsisë
Landi, Addolarata 1989, Gli elementi latini nella lingua albanese, Edizioni Scientifiche Italiane, Napoli
La Piana, Marco 1949, Studi linguistichi albanesi, Pezzino, Palermo
Mann, Stewart 1977, An Albanian Historical Grammar, Buske, Hamburg
Matzinger, Joahim in print, “The Lexicon of Albanian”
Meyer, Gustav 1891, Etymologisches Wörterbuch des albanischen Sprache, Verlag von Karl J. Trübner, Strassburg
Ölberg, Hermann 2013, *Untersuchungen zum indogermanischen Wortschatz des Albanischen und zur diachronen Phonologie aufgrund des Vokalsystems, Herausgegeben von Bardhyl Demiraj (=Albanische Forschungen 35), Harrassowitz Verlag, Wiesbaden*


Schumacher, Stephen & Matzinger, Joachim 2013, *Die Verben des Altalbanischen Belegwörterbuch, Vorgeschichte und Etymologie*, Unter Mitarbeit von Anna-Maria Adaktylos (=Albanische Forschungen 33), Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden

Selishchev, Afanasij M. 1931, *Slavjanskoje naselenije v Albanii*, Izdanije Makedonskogo nauchnogo instituta, Sofia


Topalli, Kolec 2006, *Phonetika historike e gjuhës shqipe*, Dituria, Tiranë

LANGUAGE INDEX

Abkhaz 155–6, 161
Aeolic Greek (Aeol.) 4, 287–8, 290, 292, 307; see also Greek
Afro-Asiatic 7, 153, 155–6, 160–2, 164, 166–7
Ainu 153
Akkadian 3, 165
Albanian (Alb.) 3, 5, 13, 422, 427, 455–6, 489, 529, 544, 558; adjectives 580–2, 598; adverbs 555, 580–2, 598; Arabic borrowings 558; areal position of 558; Balkanization of 558; Cham dialect 552, 567; current geographic distribution 552; dialects 552–3, 567; documentary evidence 553–4; ethnic and language name 554–5; Europeanization of 558; further reading 603; Greek borrowings 557–8; internationalisms 558; Latin borrowings 557, 572, 597; layers of the lexicon 557–9; map 553; Modern 553, 558, 560; numerals 584–5; Old 558, 560; origin and early history 555–7; Persian borrowings 558; pre-Proto-Albanian period 559–60; pronouns 582–4; Proto-557–60; Slavic borrowings 557, 597; stress 572; Turkish borrowings 558, 597; word formation 597–9; see also Albanian morphology; Albanian phonology; Albanian syntax; Albanian verbs; Albanian word formation; Gheg dialect; Tosk dialect
Albanian morphology: dialectical differences (nominal) 575–6; gender assignment of nouns 575; nominal system (definite declension) 579–80; nominal system (indefinite declension) 576–9; noun declensions 574–5; nouns 573–4
Albanian phonology 560; diphthongization 565; morphophonological alternations 573; obstruents 568–72; sonorants 566–8; stops 15, 17–19; stress 572; umlaut 564; velars 21; vowels 561–6
Albanian syntax 545; ablative construction 600; complementation 601–2; conditional sentences 602; negation 601; noun phrase 599–600; prepositional constructions 600; relative sentences 602; weak (clitic) pronouns 600–1
Albanian verbs: active indicatives 594; aorist stems 595–6; basic patterns of dialectical variation 592–3; conjunctional classes 588–9; conjunctions of irregular verbs 591–2; general information 585–7; imperative 597; imperfect active 594–5; imperfect non-active 595; major types of aorist stems 590; major vocalic and consonantal alterations 590–1; non-active indicatives 594; non-finite forms 588; optative mood 596–7; participles 597; present stems 593–4
Albanian word formation: affixation 597–8; prefixation 598–9; suffixation 597–8
American English 2, 400; see also English
Anatolian (Anat.) 3, 6, 159, 287, 428; accent 177; adverbs and adpositions 190–1; consonants 176–7; further reading 194; lexicon 193–4; morphosyntax 191; nominal derivation 180; nominal inflection 178–80; phonology 15–18, 21, 176–7; pronouns 180–4; subordinate clauses 193; word order 191–3; see also Anatolian verbs; Proto-Anatolian
Anatolian subgroup: Carian 3, 172, 175; Hittite 3, 13, 15–17, 19, 21, 171–3, 178, 357; Luwian 13, 21, 171–4; Lycian 3, 21, 172, 174–5; Lydian 2, 172, 175; maps 173–4; overview 171–2; Palaiac 3, 172–3; Pisidian 3, 175; Sidetic 3, 175
Anatolian verbs: about 184–5; active inflection 185–8; medio-passive inflection 188; non-finite forms 190; verb stem formation 189
Ancient Greek 13, 21, 33, 49, 55, 120, 134, 145, 147, 155, 165, 238, 317, 321, 323; see also Greek; Homeric
Ancient Indo-European languages (AIELs) 111, 171, 331, 447, 555
Apabhramśa Prākrits 215, 251
Aquitanian 356
Arabic 1, 18; Albanian borrowings from 558
Arbresh dialect 552, 558, 567, 592–3
Arcadian (Arc.) 294, 302, 304
Arcado-Cypriot Greek (AC) 4, 287, 301, 308; see also Greek
Armenian (Arm.) 3, 5, 6, 389, 545, 557–8; about 421–3; Classical 13, 421; consonantal shifts 18, 20; Eastern 421; further reading 447–8; inherited suffixes and clusters 446; Middle 421; nominal compounds 446–7; nominal word formation 445–7; syntax 447; transcription of 423; see also Armenian morphology; Armenian nouns; Armenian phonology
Armenian morphology: adjectives 438; gradation 438; l-stems 437; nouns 434–8; n-stems 436–7; numerals 440–1; pronouns 438–40; r-stems 437; verbs 441–5
Armenian nouns: alternating stem classes 436; gradation 438; heteroclitics and irregular paradigms 437–8; l-stems 437; n-stem harsn
Baltic prosody: Endzelin’s Law 494–5; Leskien’s Law 493; Saussure’s Law 493; tonal correspondences 495–6; tonal oppositions in Latvian 494; tonal oppositions in Lithuanian 492–3; tonal oppositions in Old Prussian 495

Baltic verbs: aspect 512; athematic presents 509; diathesis and ablaut 510; mood 510–11; participles 511–12; preterit 510; semi-thematic verb type 509–10; thematic verb type 509; verbal derivation 512; verbal inflection 508

Balto-Slavic (BSL) 5, 6, 389, 428, 455, 6, 479–83, 496, 506; accentology 481–2, 486n5, 486n7, 486n8; circumflex tone 479; palatalized velars 21; voiced aspirated stops 18, 19; see also Baltic; Proto-Balto-Slavic; Slavic

Basque 1, 157, 160, 164–5, 356

Batsbi (Tsosa-Tush) 164

Bavarian 397

Belorussian/Belarusian (BRuss.) 5, 519, 524, 547; syntax 545; see also Slavic

Bengali 1, 4, 214, 215, 217

Boeotian Greek (Boe.) 287, 293–5; see also Greek

Bosnian 519; see also Slavic

Bosnian/Croatian/Montenegrin/Serbian

(BCMS = Serbo-Croatian) 5, 527; dialects 557; phonology 16–17

Brabantian 397

Breton (Bret.) 4, 352, 361, 364, 378; see also Old Breton; Primitive Breton

British 2, 352, 358, 364–5, 367, 389; see also Brythonic; English

Brythonic (Brittonic/British) 4, 352–3, 357–8, 362–3, 367–8, 370, 375–6; Gallo-358; phonology 364–5; vocalism 364–5

Bulgarian (Bulg.) 5, 519, 522, 543–4, 546; dialects 557; syntax 545; see also Slavic

Bulguro-Macedonian 558, 600; see also Bulgarian; Macedonian

Burgund 5

Burmese, Inscriptional 389

Burushaski 156, 164, 208

Byzantine/Medieval Greek 4

Čakavian Croatian (Čak.) 527, 538, 544

Cappadocian 287

Carian 3, 172, 175

Catalan 4

Caucasian 32, 153, 155–161, 164, 166–7, 205

Celtiberian (Clt.) 4, 352, 357, 359–60, 362, 364, 367–8, 377

Celtic (Celt.) 3, 4, 321, 349–50, 353–4, 389, 454, 456, 529, 596; further reading 377–8; morphology (nominal) 367–70; morphology (pronouns) 370–1; origins 354–6; P Celtic 357–8, 358, 363; phonology 15, 18–19, 21, 361–4; position within IE 356–7; Q Celtic 357–8, 363; subdivisions of 357–61; syntax 377; word formation 376–7; see also Brythonic (Brittonic/British); Celtiberian; Celtic verbs; Common Celtic; Continental Celtic; Gaelic (Goidelic/Irish); Insular Celtic; Proto-Celtic
Celtic verbs: active preterit stem 376; future stem 375–6; inflection 371–2; personal endings 372–3; present stem 374–5; subjunctive stem 375

Cham dialect (Albanian) 50, 567
Chechen 159, 160
Chines 2, 7
Chinese Qiuci 452
Chines Yangi 452
Choresmian 266
Church Slavic (CS) 17; see also Late Church Slavic

Chukchi 164
Chukchi-Kamchatkan 153
Circassian 156
Classical Latin (Class.Lat.) 28, 33, 50–1, 322–6, 329–38, 341, 343–4, 346–8; see also Latin
Common Baltic (CBalt.) 483, 486; vowels 489; see also Baltic
Common Iranian 264, 266, 269–71
Common Slavic (CSl.) 16, 482, 489, 521–2, 530, 533–4; see also Slavic
Continental Celtic 4, 352, 353, 358, 362, 368, 370, 376–7; see also Celtic
Continental West Germanic 407; see also Germanic
Cornish (Corn.) 4, 352, 378; Primitive 361, 364
Cretan (Cret.) 291

Crimean Gothic 388; see also Gothic
Croatian (Croat.) 3, 519, 522, 545; see also Kajkavian Croatian; Serbo-Croatian; Slavic
Cuneiform Luwian (CLuw.; Luvian) 3, 173–4, 178–9, 181–3; phonology 16, 21; see also Luwian

Curonian 486, 489
Cymraeg see Welsh
Cymry 353
Cypriot (Cypr.) 291, 294, 314
Czech (Cz.) 2, 3, 5, 519, 545; compare to Italian 8; compared to Spanish 8; Liverpool 394; morphology 15–19, 21; see also British; Modern English; Old English

Dacian (Dac.) 5
Daco-Misian 555
Daco-Romanian 599; see also Romanian
Daic 155
Danish (Dan.) 3, 394; Old 406
Dardic 3
Dargi 159

Doric Greek (Dor.) 4, 287, 294, 317; see also Greek
Doudleby dialect 522

Dravidian 555

Dutch 3, 5, 393, 403, 405–7; Modern 408; phonology 19; see also Old Low Franconian

Early Modern Nuremberg 397

East Baltic (EBalt.) 5, 482, 491, 495, 499–502, 505–9, 511–12, 514; dialects 488–9; vocals 490; see also Baltic
East Germanic 5, 29, 388; see also Burgund; Germanic; Gothic; Vandal
East Greek (EGr.) 287, 306–7; see also Attic-Ionic Greek; Arcado-Cypriot Greek; Greek

East Norse 406; see also Old Danish; Old Gutnish; Old Swedish
East Lithuanian (ELith.) 500; see also Lithuanian

East Slavic 519, 522, 524–5, 533, 539, 544–6, 557; see also Slavic

Eastern Armenian 421

Eastern Baltic (EBalt.) 5, 482, 486, 491, 495, 499–502, 505–9, 511–12, 514; dialects 488–9; vocals 490; see also Baltic

East Greek (East Greek) 287, 306–7; see also Attic-Ionic Greek; Arcado-Cypriot Greek; Greek

East Norse 406; see also Old Danish; Old Gutnish; Old Swedish
East Lithuanian (ELith.) 500; see also Lithuanian

East Slavic 519, 522, 524–5, 533, 539, 544–6, 557; see also Slavic

Eastern Armenian 421

Eastern Middle Iranian 266, 283

Eastern (Balkan) South Slavic 545

Egyptian 7

Empire Luwian 173

English (Eng.) 2, 5, 7, 394, 403, 558; American 400; aspirated stops 15; compared to Italian 8; compared to Spanish 8; Liverpool 394; morphology 15–19, 21; see also British; Modern English; Old English

Epic Sanskrit 242; see also Sanskrit

Estkimo-Aleut 153

Estonian (Est.) 1

Etruscan 317, 321, 324, 329

Faliscan (Fal.) 4, 317

Faroe 388, 397–8

Farsi see Persian/Farsi

Finnish (Fin.) 1, 159, 389, 522

Flemish 397

French (Fr.) 4, 7, 321, 558; Old 389

Frisian 5, 387

Gaelic (Goidelic/Irish) 352, 357–8; Irish 4, 352; phonology 365–7; see also Middle Irish; Old Irish

Galatian 352, 359

Gallo-Brythonic 358; see also Brythonic

Gatha-Avestan (GAv.) 16, 18, 65, 97, 101; see also Avestan


Georgian 7, 18, 159, 164

German (Germ.) 3, 5, 8, 407, 596; High 393; Low 5, 16; Middle High 398, 402; phonology 16; see also Modern German; Old High German

Germanic (Gmc.) 4–5, 357, 359, 364, 389, 403, 405–6, 454–5, 483, 488–9, 522, 529; about 387–90; accent shift 396; consonantal shifts, 18, 20, 392; Germanic foot 398; morphology 389, 398–403; noun classes 401; palatalized velars 21; pre-Proto- 20; prosody 396–8; sub-groupings of 388; syntax 405–12; word formation 403–5; see also Germanic morphology; Germanic phonology; Germanic syntax; Proto-Germanic; West Germanic

Germanic morphology: inflectional 398–400; nominal system 400–3

Germanic phonology 16–21, 394–8; consonants 391–4

Germanic syntax: clausal 407–8; definites 408–9; rise of V2 406; tense, aspect, and mood 410–12; V2 over time 406–7; word order 405–6
Ghek dialect 5, 552–4, 560, 567; dialectical variations, verbal 592–3; nominal differences 575–6; stress patterns 572; see also Albanian

Gilyak

Gilmard

Gotlandic 4

Gotthic (Goth.) 3, 5, 7, 13, 387–9, 396–7, 401–2, 406–7, 409; consonantal shifts 20; Crimean 388; phonology 15, 17–19, 21; and Tocharian 456

Great Attic Greek 287; see also Attic Greek; Attic-Ionic Greek; Greek

Greek (Gr.) 2, 3, 4, 6, 287, 321, 389, 421–3, 428–30, 447, 454, 456, 481, 526, 545, 558; accent 296–7; Albanian borrowings 557–8; Arcado-Cypriot (AC) 4, 287, 301, 308; aspirated stops 18–19; Attic (Att.) 291, 294, 296, 297, 298–300, 304, 307, 314, 317; Attic-Ionic (AI) 4, 287, 289, 302, 306–7, 313; Byzantine/Medieval 4; consonantal shifts 20; dialects of 317; East 287, 306–7; Grassman’s Law 19; Great Attic 287; influence on Latin 349; Ionic 290, 294, 317; Koiné 4, 287, 291, 297, 299, 311, 313; map 288; Modern 4, 297, 555, 595; mood, complementation and subordination 311; morphology (adjectives and adverbs) 302–4; morphology (nominal) 298–302; morphology (pronouns) 304–5; morphology (verbal) 305–10; prepositions 313; Proto- 292, 301; references to Keltoi and Galatae 354; syntax 311–14; Thessalian (Thess.) 287, 294, 297; West 287, 307, 313; word formation 313–14; see also Ancient Greek; Greek phonology; Homeric

Greek phonology 15–21, 291–2, 295–297; diphthongs 293; IE fricative 293; labiovelars 292; laryngeals 292; semivowels 292–3; vowel systems 293–4

Griko 287

Hamitic 356

Hattic 164

Hebrew 2, 3, 166

Hellenistic Greek see Koiné Greek

Hieroglyphic Luwian (HLuw.) 3, 21, 173

High German 393; see also German; Old High German

High Latvian (Selsonian and Latgalian) 489, 494; see also Latvian

Hindi/Urdu 1, 4, 217

Hittite (Hitt.) 3, 13, 171–3, 192, 357; Old 178; phonology 15–17, 19, 21


Hungarian 1, 522

Hurrian 164, 205

Hurro-Urartian 205

Icelandic 397, 401; see also Old Icelandic

Illyrian (Illy.) 5, 555–6

Indic see Indo-Aryan

Indo-Aryan (Indic) 3, 160, 264; ablaut alternation 230–2; chronology of 214–17; classification of root morphemes 232–3; dentals 227–8; diphthongs 222, 223–5; further reading 252–5, 252–6; general information 214; genetic classification 217–21; Grassman’s Law 19; labials 228; Middle Indic 4; morphology (noun) 233–8; morphology (verb) 238–48; morphophonology 229–33; morphotactics 229–30; New Indic 4; palatals 226–7; phonemes 223–6; phonology 15, 18–19, 21, 221–9; plosives 225–6; reflexes 227; sibilants and h 228–9; sonants with vocal variants 222–3; syntax 249–50; and Tocharian 456–7; typological features 250–2; typological features of later languages 250–2; velars 226; vowels 221, 223–5; see also Indo-Iranian; Proto-Indo-Aryan

Indo-European (IE) 7; further reading 8; and Germanic stops 392; Italic 317–18; Late Western 357; morphology 434; phonology 563–4; and Tocharian languages 453–7; verbs 539; see also Proto-Indo-European

Indo-Iranian (Irr.) 3–4, 6, 269, 389, 428, 456; diachronic typological perspective 208–11; further reading 211; lexicon 207–8; morphology 207; origins 205; phonology 21, 206; see also Proto-Indo-Iranian

Ingush 157

Ingvaeconic 389

Inscriptions Burmese 339

Insular Celtic 4, 352–3, 357–8, 363–4, 367–8, 370, 372, 377; see also Celtic

Ionic Greek (Ion.) 290, 294, 317; see also Greek

Ionic-Attic Greek; Greek phonology; Homeric

Iranian (Iran.) 421, 430, 441, 446–7; adjectives 276; Armenian and 422; Avestan 263; consonantism 268; dental affricates 271; Eastern Middle 266; first palatal series 271; further reading 283–4; Modern 263, 277; morphology 266–72; 274–6; morphophonology 272–4; New 4; Old Iranian 4, 272, 283; Old Persian 263; phonology 18, 19, 457; pronouns 276–7; stems with ablaut variation 275; syntax 282–3; and Tocharian 456–7; verbs 277–81; word-formation 281–2; see also Avestan; Indo-Iranian; Middle Iranian; Persian/Farsi; Proto-Iranian

Irish Gaelic 4, 352; see also Gaelic; Middle Irish; Old Irish

Italian (Ital.) 3, 4, 7, 321, 558; compared to English 8

Italic (It.) 3, 4, 6, 454, 456; epigraphy 350; within Indo-European 317–18; languages of ancient Italy 317; maps 318–19; phonology 18–21; verb system 336; see also Proto-Italic

Italo-Albanian 554, 558

Italo-Celtic 319–20, 357

Japanese 85, 159, 165, 172

Jatvingian 486

Kafiri 264

Kajkavian Croatian 519, 527, 538, 542; see also Croatian
Norwegian (Norw.) 208, 396, 399, 405
North Germanic 389
North-West Block language 5
North-West Greek (NWGr.) 287
Norwegian (Norw.) 398; Old 397, 406
Norstratic languages 208, 264
Old Albanian period 558, 560
Old Avestan (OA = Gatha-Avestan) 13, 249, 265, 277, 283–4; see also Old Iranian
Old Bavarian 394
Old Breton (OBret.) 354, 361; see also Breton; Primitive Breton
Old Chinese 2
Old Church Slavic (OCS) 5, 7, 13, 53, 66, 82, 86, 95–6, 102, 104, 482, 519, 521, 547; dative absolute 166; phonology 15–19, 21; pronouns 538; syntax 543, 544; see also Slavic
Old Czech (OCZ.) 17; see also Czech
Old Danish 406; see also Danish
Old English (OEng.) 5, 13, 387, 396, 401–2, 405–7; consonantal shifts 20; high vowel deletion 398; phonology 16–17, 19
Old Frankish 389
Old French 389; see also French
Old Friasan 5, 387
Old Gutnish 406
Old High German (OHG) 5, 13, 387–9, 394, 396–8, 402, 404, 406–9, 411; phonology 19; see also German
Old Hittite (OHitt.) 178; see also Hittite
Old Icelandic (OlI.) 358, 388, 406; see also Icelandic
Old Indic/Indo-Aryan/Indian (OLIA) 4, 13, 240, 250–4, 263, 266–7, 268–9, 277, 282–3; phonology 21; see also Sanskrit; Vedic
Old Iranian 4, 272, 283; see also Iranian; Old Avestan
Old Irish (OrI.) 7, 13, 352–3, 365, 367–71, 376–8, 410; infllectional system 371–2; phonology 15–19, 21; see also Irish Gaelic
Old Latin (OLA.) 49–50, 118, 322, 325–6, 330, 334–5, 337, 339; see also Classical Latin; Latin
Old Latvian (OLatv.) 65; see also Latvian
Old Lithuanian (OLith.) 500, 514–15; see also Lithuanian
Old Low Franconian (Old Dutch) 5; see also Dutch
Old Norse (ONor.) 5, 357, 387, 388, 396, 401–2, 404, 407–9; phonology 17–18
Old Norwegian 397, 406; see also Norwegian
Old Persian (OPer.) 3, 4, 13, 263, 264, 266–7, 269, 271, 281, 283–4, 421; morphophonology 272–4; noun cases; pronouns 277; see also Persian/Farsi
Old Prussian (OPRuss.) 5, 13, 456, 481–8, 498–9, 501, 515; tonal oppositions in 495; phonology 15, 19; see also Baltic
Old Russian (ORuss.) 17; see also Russian
Old Saxon/Saxonian (OS) 3, 5, 387, 401–2
Old Swedish 406; see also Swedish
Old Welsh (OW) 354, 361, 370; see also Welsh
Old Welsh, Old Cornish and Old Breton (OWCB) 353, 361, 364–5
Oriya 217
Oscan (Osc.) 4
Osco-Umbrian Italic (Sabelian) 4, 24, 25, 357; see also Sabelic languages
Ossetic 266
Palaic (Pal.) 3, 27, 171–3, 178–82, 185–6, 188, 190
Pali 4, 36, 215, 253, 255
Pamphylian (Pamph.) 33, 84, 175, 288
Panjabi 217
Pannonian Slavic 519; see also Slavic
Parthian 266, 273, 422, 427; Middle 422
Pashto 1, 4, 208, 266, 273
Pehlevi 4
Peloponnesian 287
Persian/Farsi (Pers.) 1, 3, 266, 410; Albanian borrowings 558; Middle 267, 422; New 4; see also Iranian; Old Persian/Farsi
Phrygian (Phryg.) 3, 5, 6, 171, 422, 429, 558
Pisidian 3, 175
Polabian 519
Polish (Pol.) 5, 512, 519, 547; syntax 545; see also Slavic
Pomeranian 519
Pontic 287
Portuguese 4, 321
Präkritis 4, 25, 215–17, 251
Prekmurje Slovene 519, 538, 544; see also Slovene pre-Proto-Germanic 20; see also Proto-Germanic
Primitive Breton 361, 364; see also Breton
Primitive Cornish 361, 364; see also Cornish
Primitive Irish 359, 366; see also Irish Gaelic
Primitive Welsh 361, 364; see also Welsh
Proto-Albanian 557–60
Proto-Anatolian (PAnat.) 49, 171, 190; accent 177; compared to Proto-Indo-European 194; consonants 176–7; lexicon 193–4; vowels 176
Proto-Attic-Ionic 294–6
Proto-Baltic (PBalt.) 482–3, 496, 521; consonants 496–9
Proto-Balto-Slavic (PBSl.) 22, 521
Proto-Celtic (PCelt.) 18, 24–5, 33–6, 40, 41, 47–8, 51, 171
Proto-Germanic (PGmc) 20, 24–5, 30–1, 38, 46, 49–50, 53, 55, 72–4, 79, 85, 171, 388–9, 391
Proto-Greek 24–5, 291–4, 299–301
Proto-Indo 264
Proto-Indo-Aryan 208, 214, 457
Proto-Indo-European (PIE): and language typology 153–68; orthography 14, see also Indo-European (IE); see also Proto-Indo-European morphology; Proto-Indo-European phonology; Proto-Indo-European syntax
Proto-Indo-European laryngeals 29, 30, 46–7; *Hc- (initial pre-consonantal laryngeal) 47–8; *ChC 46; *ChC 46–7; *ChC 47; *eh, 45; *eh, 45–6; *eh, 46; *hC, 47; *hC, 44; *hC, 47–8; *hC, 44; *hC, 48; *hC, 44–5;
Proto-Indo-European morphology 158–9, 163; ablaut 61–2; adjectives 79–80; adverbs 80–1; conjunctions 105; further reading 106–7; interjections 106; numerals 89–91; particles 105–6; postpositions 104–5; see also Proto-Indo-European nouns; Proto-Indo-European pronouns; Proto-Indo-European verbs
Proto-Indo-European nouns 78–9; athematic case endings 69–70; athematic stems 62–3, 67–77; athematic stems (i-stems) 72–3; athematic stems (M-, l-, laryngeal, and plosive) 77; athematic stems (n-stems) 76–7; athematic stems (r-stems) 74–6; athematic stems (u-stems) 73–4; case endings 63; case functions 139–143; case syncretism 143–4; case system 158–62; compensatory lengthening in athematic stems 69–70; declension suffixes 62–4; genders of 62, 159–60, 163; heteroclitic stems 77–8; i-stems 72–3; M-, l-, laryngeal, and plosive stems 77; n-stems 76–7; r-stems 74–6; neuter 63; root nouns 70–2; thematic stems 74–6; thematic stems (Eh2-stems) 62, 66–7; thematic stems (o-stems) 62–6; u-stems 73–4
Proto-Indo-European phonology 56, 318; accented paradigms 526–7; allophones 13; clusters 52–4; diphthongs 564; fricatives 29–30; further reading 56–7; phonemes 13; reconstructed system 13; rules 54–5; stops 13–14, 28, 153, 171, 176; three velar series in 26–7; Tocharian and 454–7; vowels 40–3; see also Proto-Indo-European laryngeals; Proto-Indo-European resonants and glides
Proto-Indo-European pronouns: demonstrative 85–8; indefinite 88; interrogative 88; personal 81–4; possessive 84–5; pronomial adjectives 89; reflexive 84; relative 88–9; see also Proto-Indo-European resonants and glides
Proto-Indo-European resonants and glides 30–1; asyllabic 31–4; syllabic 34–6; syllabic and laryngeals 36–9
Proto-Indo-European syntax 111–15; absolute constructions 138–9; argument structure 144–5; case functions 139–44; discontinuous constituents 116–20; further reading 146; positions of the verb 123–38; Wackernagel’s Law 120–3; word order 115–16
Proto-Indo-European verbs 91–2, 468; absolute constructions 138–9; aorist 95–7; imperative 103–4; middle (mediopassive) 99–100; non-final verb forms 104; optative 102; perfect 97–9; present 92–5; reconstruction of 91–2; subjunctive 100–1
Proto-Indo-Iranian (PIIr) 205–8, 210–11, 223, 229, 253–4
Proto-Iranian 208, 214, 264, 269, 457
Proto-Italic 19, 25, 328–9, 335–6, 349
Proto-Sabellic 328
Proto-Semitic 57
Proto-Slavic (PSl) 16, 17, 55, 456, 483, 521, 523, 527, 547
Proto-Tocharian (PToch.) 454, 456–7, 460, 463, 465
Punjabi 1, 4, 214, 252
Qarashehr 452
Qiuci 452
Quechua 18
Raetic 321
Romance (Rom.) 317, 389, 393, 454
Romanian 4, 160, 545–6, 556–7, 559, 579–80, 599–600
Rumanian 321, 600
Runic 388–9, 403, 405–7
Russian (Russ.) 3, 5, 7, 396, 410, 519, 522, 524, 558; syntax 545; see also Old Russian; Slavic
Russian Church Slavic (RussCS) 483, 497, 516; see also Old Church Slavic
Rusyn 519
Sabellian (Osco-Umbrian) Italic 4, 24, 25, 357
Sabellic languages 13, 317, 321, 329, 335, 341–3, 349; see also Proto-Sabellic
Saka (Scythian) languages 3, 264, 271, 453
Samogitian see Žemaitian dialect
Samoyedic 159
Sanskrit (Skr) 3, 4, 13, 241–2, 263, 393, 458, 470–1, 481; Agni 452; Epic 242; grammar 253; and Tocharian 457; Vedic 241–2; voiced stops 17; see also Old Indic
Scandinavian languages 5, 389, 396; see also Danish; Finnish; Norwegian; Swedish
Scots 8
Scottish Gaelic 4, 352; see also Gaelic
Scythian (Saka) 3, 264, 271, 453
Selonian 486, 489
Semitic 7, 57, 90, 157, 159, 162, 166, 356
Serbian 5, 55, 519, 545; dialects 533, 558; see also Slavic
Serbo-Croatian (SCR) 5, 481, 527; dialects 557; phonology 16–17; see also Bosnian/Croatian/ Montenegrin/Serbian
Shauraseni 4
Shughni group 266
Sidetic 3, 171, 175
Silesian 519
Sinhala 210, 217, 250, 251
Sino-Tibetan 153, 155, 159–60
Slavic (Slav) 5, 269, 393, 454, 481–2, 486, 489, 503, 514–15, 558; about 519–20; Albanian borrowings 557, 597; deverbatives from CSI 543; disintegration of 522; Eastern (Balkan) South 545; history and migrations 521–2; map 520; metatony 482; micro-languages 519; Pannonian 519; periodization 521; South 524; syntax 543–6; word formation 542–3; see also Balto-Slavic; Common Slavic; East Slavic; Proto-Slavic; Slavic morphology; Slavic phonology; Slavic verbs; Western Slavic; Western South Slavic
Slavic morphology: adjectives 537; adverbs 539; consonantal stem endings 536; indeclinables 539; nominal declension 535–6; nouns 533–4;
pronouns 537–9; vocalic stem endings 536; vocalic stems 534–5

Slavic phonology: accentual paradigms 526–7; cluster simplification 529; consonants 528–33; contraction 525; loss of final consonants 529; loss of post-consonantal j (‘deiotation’) 531–3; monophthongization of diphthongs 523–4; prosthesis 530; suprasegmentals 525–8; syllabic synharmony and palatalization 524; velar palatalization 530–2; vowels 522–5; Winter’s Law 527–8

Slavic verbs: ablaut, tense, and aspect 541–2; and Indo-European verb morphology 539; invocations of non-past finite verb forms 540; verb form classes 540–1

Slovak (Slk.) 5, 519, 547; syntax 545; see also Slavic

Slovene (Sln.) 5, 519, 522, 547; Prekmurje 519, 538, 544; syntax 545; see also Slavic

Slovincian 519

Sogdian (Sogd.) 4, 263, 266, 274, 281, 284

Sorbian, Upper and Lower 519, 547; see also Slavic

South Picene 317, 341

South Slavic 524; see also Slavic; Western South Slavic

South-West British 352; see also Breton; Cornish

Spanish (Sp.) 4, 8, 20, 321

Standard Albanian 558; see also Albanian

Standard Average European 558

Štokavian (Štok.) 33, 519

Sumerian 164

Swabian 388

Swedish (Sw.) 3, 8; Old 406

Syriac 421, 423

Tajik 1

Tamil 489

Thak 155

Thessalian Greek (Thess.) 287, 294, 297; see also Greek

Thracian, 5, 21, 359, 555–6

Tocharian (Toch.) 3, 5, 6, 20, 287, 357, 431, 437, 596; about 452–3; characteristics of 453–4; development of PIE vowels in 455; further reading 474–5; map 453; morphology 461–9; 461–9; place within Indo-European 455–8; phonology 15–19, 21, 454–5, 458–61; syntax 471–4; word formation 470–1; see also Proto-Tocharian; Tocharian A, B, and C; Tocharian morphology

Tocharian A 5, 13, 452–3

Tocharian B 5, 13, 452–3, 457, 472

Tocharian C 453, 457

Tocharian morphology: adjectival declension 464; adjectives 462–4; declension of ‘one’ 467; nominal declension 462–3; pronouns 464–7; verbs 467–70

Tosk dialect 5, 552–3, 560, 567; Cham 592; dialectical variations, nominal 575–6; dialectical variations, verbal 592–3; stress patterns 572; see also Albanian

Tsoda-Tush (Batsbi) 164

Tumshuqese 266, 453, 457

Tungusic 7

Turkic 1, 7, 158, 208–10; see also Altaic

Turkish 1, 165, 452–3; Albanian borrowings 558, 572, 597

Ubykh 155

Ukrainian (Ukr.) 5, 519, 524, 545, 547; see also Slavic

Upper/Lower Sorbian (ULSorb.) 519, 547

Uralic languages 7, 153

Urdi/Hindi 1, 4

Uyghur Kucha 452

Uyghur Qarashehr 452

Vandal 5

Vannetais dialect 364

Vedic (Ved.) 4, 13, 263; verbal system 238–9, 243–5; phonology 15–21, 221; see also Indo-Aryan; Old Indic; Sanskrit; Vedic Sanskrit

Vedic Sanskrit 241–2; see also Sanskrit; Vedic

Venetic (Ven.) 5, 21, 318, 321

Vidzeme dialect 489, 494

Vietnamese 155

Volga Finnic 486

Welsh (W) 2, 3, 4, 352, 363, 368, 377–8; Primitive 361, 364; see also Middle Welsh

West Baltic 5, 482, 486; see also Baltic

West British 352; see also Welsh

West Germanic 388–9, 394, 396, 399, 402, 404–5, 407; see also Germanic

West Greek (WGr.) 287, 307, 313; see also Greek

West Norse 406; see also Old Icelandic; Old Norse; Old Norwegian

Western Slavic (WSlav.) 519, 524, 531, 545; see also Slavic

Western Armenian 421; see also Armenian

Western South Slavic 545; see also Slavic; South Slavic

Yanqi 452

Yeniseian 155

Yiddish 393

Young Avestan (YAve = Late Avestan) 13, 15–17, 19, 283; see also Avestan

Younger Avestan 265

Yup’ik 163

Zeelandic 397

Žemaitic dialect 481, 488–9, 496, 508

Zemgalian 486, 489
ablative absolute 166, 346–7
ablative case: Albanian 573, 575, 588, 598, 600; Anatolian 178, 180, 182–3, 191; Armenian 435; Baltic 499, 501; Balto-Slavic 479, 482; Celtic 367–8; Germanic 400; Greek 301–2; Indo-Aryan 233, 250–1; Indo-Iranian 207, 210; Iranian 274;Italic 329–31, 333–6, 342; Latin 143, 156; Proto-Indo-European 62–3, 81–2, 138, 140–3, 158–9; Slavic 534, 542; Tocharian 456, 462–3
ablaut: acrodynamic declension types 68–9, 71, 75, 76; absolute Albanian 573; alternation of 230–2; amphidynamic declension types 68–9, 72–4; Anatolian 178, 187, 189; Armenian 434, 436–7; athetic declension types 67–9; Baltic 490, 508, 510, 515; Balto-Slavic 486n2; Celtic 369, 372; Germanic 391, 398; Greek 300–1, 303, 305, 306; Indo-Aryan 223, 230–3, 239; Iranian 273–6, 278–81; Italic 332; mesodynamic declension types 69, 72, 73; Proto-Indo-European 42, 55–6, 57n10, 61–3, 92–4, 96, 98, 102, 112, 155, 163; Slavic 539, 541–2; Tocharian 455, 458
absolute constructions 138–9, 145–6, 166, 168, 346–7, 373
absolutives 163–4, 238, 250, 257, 303, 588; see also gerunds
Ačaṛyan, Hr. 423, 447
accent: akrostatic 274; Albanian 595; Anatolian 177; Armenian 425; Baltic 495, 504; Celtic 361, 364, 365; circumflex 297; dynamic 155, 273, 296–7, 328; Germanic 393, 396, 398; Greek 296–7; Indo-Aryan 222–3, 232; Indo-Indo 206; Italic 328–9; Latin 328–9; PIE 55–6; Proto-Anatolian 177; shift 396, 398, 462; Slavic 482, 525–7, 547; synchronic 425; tonal 155, 273, 296–7, 328
accusative case: Albanian 573–6, 583, 599–9; Anatolian 177–81, 183, 190–2; Armenian 435, 437–8; Baltic 499–502, 506–8, 513; Celtic 359, 368–72; Germanic 400, 402, 404; Greek 310, 312–13; Indo-Aryan 233, 249–52; Indo-Indo 207, 210; Italic/Latin 329–33, 335–6, 342–3, 345–7; PIE 31, 62, 115, 136, 140, 141, 144–5, 156, 158–60, 162–4, 166–7; Slavic 535; Tocharian 462–3, 465–6, 474
Achaemenian period 4, 266
acute tone 479–81, 486, 496, 502
Adams, Douglas Q. 8, 453, 456, 474–5
Adams, J. N. 344, 350
Adiego Lajara, Ignacio-Javier 171
adjectives: adnominal 470–4; agreement of 62, 252, 462; Albanian 580–2, 598; Armenian 437–40, 446; Baltic 503–5; Balto-Slavic 480; Celtic 360, 368, 370, 374; comparison of 80; denominative 480; deverbal 580; Germanic 401, 403; Greek 301–4, 314; Indo-Iranian 211; interrogative 465; Iranian 276–7, 281; Italic 329–31, 334; Latin 334; PIE 79–80; possessive 180, 470; pronominal 89, 183; Proto-Indo-European 62, 66–7, 73, 79–80, 89, 111; relative 465; Slavic 537; Tocharian 453, 455, 462–4, 472–4; see also participles (verbal adjectives)
adpositions 143, 156–8, 250; Baltic 514; Proto-Anatolian 190–1
Adrados, Francisco R. 194
adverbial clauses 312–13; Latin 346–7
adverbs: Albanian 555, 580–2, 598; Armenian 434, 440; Baltic 499, 501, 512, 513–14; Greek 293, 297, 302–4; Italic 345; local 191; PIE 80–1, 157; pronominal 89; Proto-Anatolian 190–1; Slavic 538–9; verbal 158; see also converses
Aemilia 317
Afanas'ev culture 456
affricates 14–15, 21–3, 27, 268, 393, 396, 423, 433, 454, 457, 530–3, 568, 571; dental 269, 271, 498
Afghanistan 3–4, 263
Africa 214
Agathangelos 421
Agbayani, Brian 123, 192
agent nouns 180, 314, 332, 349, 427, 432, 441, 445, 446, 468, 471, 480, 503
Ager Faliscus 317
Agni, Kingdom of 452
Agricola, Rodolphus (Roelof Huisman) 2
Ahlqvist, Anders 372
Aitzemüller, Rudolf 547
Albania 5, 552
Albanian alphabet 552
Albanian diaspora 552, 554, 558, 567
allative case: Anatolian 190; Baltic 499; Greek 313; Lycian 180; Old Hittite 178; Tocharian 463
Allen, W.S. 294, 314, 350
allophones 13, 14, 29, 31–2, 42, 155, 206, 221, 223, 269, 325, 359, 363–6, 566–7
alphabets: Albanian 559; Armenian 421–2; Avestan 265–6; Cyrillic 519; derived from Greek 171; epicorphic 289; Glagolitic 38, 519;
Greek 289–90; Latin 324–5, 387; Lugano 359; Ogham 361

Aldindische Grammatik (Wackernagel) 254

Ambrazas, Vytautas 514

Anatolia 171–2, 205; see also Asia Minor

Andersen, Henning 521, 531, 541

Andersen, Ø. 290

Anderson, Cormac 367

Anderson, P. K. 249

Andronovos culture(s) 205, 456

‘(the) animals (pl.) run (sg.)’ rule (τὰ ζῴα τρέχει) 65

anlaut 365, 565; absolute 365–7, 565

Anthony, David 153

Anlaut, Karl 26, 479

antiquity 497–8, 547

apocope 187, 192, 360, 373, 425, 435, 515, 565, 576

Arbëresh writing tradition 554

area pattern 153, 155, 158, 163–4, 167–8, 177, 211, 356, 358, 497, 544, 558, 573, 599

Aristophanes 291

Arkadiev, Peter 515

Armenia 5, 263

Armenian alphabet 421–2

Armenian diaspora 421

Armenian Republic 421

Armenian sound shift 426

Armorica 352

articles: Albanian 574, 580–4; Celtic 367, 370; definite 304, 370, 403, 408–9, 464, 522, 558, 599–80, 592, 596; enclitic postponed 440; Homeric 117; indefinite 403, 409, 414n10, 440, 558, 574, 600; postpositive 558, 574, 579, 582; prepositional 582, 583; prepositive 580, 584, 585

Arumaa, P. 547

Aryans 264

Asia Minor 3, 4, 5, 171–2, 174, 287; see also Anatolia

aspiration 14, 18, 19–21, 30, 45, 47, 57n8, 229, 268, 289, 289, 293, 392–3, 423

Ausserergative 210, 249

Atharva-veda 215, 217, 252–3

Australia 214

Avar Khaganate 521

Avery, Peter 392

Avestan orthography 265–6

Axel, Katrin 132, 396, 397, 406, 407

Azerbaijan 263

Bactria-Margiana Archaeological Complex 208

Baesecke, Georg 410

Bakker, E. J. 314

Baldi, Philip 350

Balkan peninsula 287

Balkan Sprachbund 558, 573, 599, 601

Balkanindogermanisch 422

Balkanisms 558

Balkans 5, 171, 555

Ball, Martin J. 377

Bammesberger, Alfred 399, 413

Bangladesh 214

Barber, Elizabeth Wayland 474

Barbosa, Maria do Pilar Pereira 132

Bardhi, Frang (Franciseus Blanchus) 554

Barðdal, Jóhanna 145, 211

Barrack, Charles 56

Bartholomae, Christian 120, 283

Bartholomae’s Law 268

Baryton 180, 189, 297, 486n8, 525–6

Basel Epigram 487

Bauer, Anna 128, 164, 192

Bayer, Josef 397

Beekes, Robert S. P. 106, 146, 163, 240, 284, 430

Behagel, Otto 403

Behistūn (Bisutūn) inscription 421

Belarus 486

Bendahanman, Jadwiga 107

Benelux 5

Bengal 205

Bergin’s Law 111, 377

Bernik, France 547

Bhatta, V. P. 255

Bhutan 214

Biberauer, Theresa 396

Bich, D. A. 377

Birchbark Letters 519, 531, 535, 544, 547

Bird, Norman 357

Birnbaum, Henrik 483, 547

Blanchus, James 357

Blom, Alderda 353

Bloomfield, Maurice 253

Boček, Vit 547

Böhlingk, Otto 254

Boley, Jacqueline 184

Bolognesi, Giancarlo 422

Bonnet, Guillaume 557

Bopp, Franz 3, 112, 479

Boretzky, Norbert 558, 588

Bousquette, Joshua 397

Boxhorn, Marcus van 2–3

Braune, Wilhelm 400, 401–2, 404

Brereton, Joel P. 253

Britain/British Isles 4, 321, 322–3, 355, 389

Brittany 4, 352

Brixhe, Claude 175, 288

Broderick, George 356

Bronze Age 320, 486

Brugmann, Karl 26, 112, 479

“Brugmann’s grade” 239

Brugmann’s Law 231, 267, 273

Bubeník, Vit 107, 168, 249, 250–1, 255

Buccini, Anthony F. 396

Buchanan, Scot George 353

Buchholz, Oda 572, 573, 588, 603
SUBJECT-AUTHOR INDEX  619

Buck, C. D. 314
Buddhist texts 215, 452, 454
Bulgaria 5, 552
Burrow, Thomas 253
Buzuku, Gjon 554

Cabej, Eqrem 603
Caland, Willem 126
Caland System 79, 107
Camaj, Martin 597, 599
Campanile, Enrico 357, 375
Campbell, Lyle 8
Canada 421

Cauld, Johnny
Chinese
Canada
Camaj, Martin 597, 599
Catullus 323, 343, 387
Causal clauses 312, 346–7
Case loss 387, 390, 400, 584–5, 600
Cardona, George 107, 255
Caria 175
Carroll, Ryan 399
Carruba, Onofrio
Carroll, R
Cardona, George 175
Carroll, Ryan 399
Carruba, Onofrio 192

case endings: Anatolian 178–80; Armenian 435; Baltic 501; Celtic 361, 368; Classical Latin 329–30; Indo-Aryan 210, 229, 233–4, 237–8, 251; Italic 329–30, 334, 343; Old Hittite 178; PIE 62–3, 69–70, 163; Tocharian 462; see also declensions

case functions: in the AIELs and PIE 139–45, 155; Tocharian 454; see also ablative case; accusative case; allative case; dative case; ergative case; genitive case; instrumental case; locative case; nominative case; vocative case case loss 387, 390, 400, 412
Catullus 323, 325
Caucasus 3, 5, 171, 205
causal clauses 312, 346
causatives 94–5, 167, 205, 254; Iranian 281; PIE 79, 90; Italic 332, 350; nominal 470–1; Slavic 543; Tocharian 470–1; see also compounding
Comrie, Bernard 157, 162, 168, 533, 546
conditional clauses 346, 407, 473
conditional mood 238, 242, 372, 375, 508, 511
conjuctions see verbal conjunctions
conjunctions: Albanian 599; Armenian 438, 446–7; Baltic 505; Celtic 377; Germanic 403; Greek 302, 314; Indo-Aryan 222, 229, 250, 251, 254; Iranian 281; PIE 79, 90; Italic 332, 350; nominal 470–1; Slavic 543; Tocharian 470–1; see also compounding

Civita Castellana
Clackson, James 56, 107, 146, 323, 344–5, 350, 422, 431
clauses: adverbal 312–13, 346–7; alignment of 111, 162–5, 167; adverbal 346–7; causal 312, 346; conditional 346, 407, 473; dependent 472–3, 511, 601–2; independent 105, 471; purpose 346; relative 111, 165–6, 193, 282, 344, 347–8, 364, 472–3, 558; temporal 346; see also subordinate clauses
clusters: consonant 431–3; dental 54; thorn 53
Codex Argenteus 401, 408, 410–11
Codex Marianus 535, 538, 544
Codex Neumannianus 487
Codex Zographensis 538, 544
Coetzee, Frans van 399
Collinder, Björn 153
Colvin, S. 314
Common Slavic Linguistic Atlas 547
comparatives 80, 303; Albanian 580; Armenian 438, 446; Celtic 370; Greek 80, 293, 303–4; Iranian 276; Italic 334; Slavic 537
compensatory lengthening 43, 70, 77, 155, 294–6, 328, 366–7, 389, 412, 430, 441, 525
complementation: Albanian 601–2; Greek 311, 313; Latin 345–6
complementizers 387, 405, 407–8, 412, 414
compounding 403, 470, 543, 597, 599; see also compounds
compounds: Albanian 599; Armenian 438, 446–7; Baltic 505; Celtic 377; Germanic 403; Greek 302, 314; Indo-Aryan 222, 229, 250, 251, 254; Iranian 281; PIE 79, 90; Italic 332, 350; nominal 470–1; Slavic 543; Tocharian 470–1; see also compounding
Comrie, Bernard 157, 162, 168, 533, 546
conditional clauses 346, 407, 473
conditional mood 238, 242, 372, 375, 508, 511
compliments see verbal conjunctions
conjunctions: Albanian 586, 601–2; Anatolian 192–3; coordinate 138; Germanic 407; Greek 312; Italic 346–7; Lithuanian 514; PIE 55, 65, 105, 123, 138; postpositive 123; subordinating 146, 184, 347, 407, 412, 538, 544; temporal 312; Tocharian 467
consont clusters: Albanian 462, 465–6, 468–9; Armenian 426, 428, 431, 433; Baltic 372; Germanic 399; Greek 291; Indo-Aryan 229–30; PIE 52–4, 62; Tocharian 455, 459
consonant shifts 18, 269, 271, 498; dental clusters 54; dentals 14, 28, 35, 54, 227–8, 291, 342, 454, 528; doubled 361; ejective 18, 154; Germanic 391–4, 397; Indo-Iranian 225–9; intervocalic geminate 364; liquids 428; nasals 428–9, 565; palatalized 361, 367, 374, 460, 491, 524; plosive 225–6; pre-Germanic 391; prothetic 529–30, 537;
Proto-Anatolian 176–7; Proto-Indo-European 52–5; retroflex 225, 227, 229–30, 263, 270, 423; sibilants 177, 206, 217, 228–9, 269, 427–8; Slavic 528–33; see also consonant clusters; consonant shifts; lenition; stops.

Constantine 522

conversbs 158, 211, 238, 250, 257; see also gerunds.

Corbett, Greville C. 533, 546

Corsiça 321

Courtenay, Baudouin de 483n1


Cretan Hieroglyphic 291

Croatia 552

Croft, William 143, 168
cuneiform 3, 171–4, 177–9, 181–3, 263, 266–7

Curta, Florin 521

Cuzzolin, Pierluigi 350

Cypro-Minoan script 291

Cyrrillic alphabet 519

Cyrillo-Methodian tradition 519

Dacia 321

Daka, Palok 603

Dalmatian coast 558

Daniel of Voskopoja 554

Darius the Great 421
dative absolute 166, 511, 544
dative case: Albanian 558, 573–8, 581, 583, 600–1; Anatolian 178–83, 191–2; Armenian 435, 438–9; Baltic 499, 501–3, 507–8, 511–13; Balto-Slavic 6, 480, 482; Celtic 361, 367–8, 370; Germanic 6, 400–2; Greek 144, 301–2; Indo-Aryan 233, 249, 251; Indo-Iranian 207; Iranian 274, 283; Italic/Latin 322–3, 329–31, 333–6, 342–3; PIE 62, 138–9, 141, 143–5, 147, 158, 166–7; Slavic 544

Daukša, Mykalijus 488
deaspirations 19–20, 229, 392

De Bernardo Stempel, Patrizia 359, 360, 362, 364, 369, 370, 376–7

Debrunner, Albert 254
dehensions: Albanian 574, 576–80, 583; Baltic 500–7; Armenian 429–30; Avestan 275–6; Celtic 368, 370; consonants 235; Greek 287, 298–300, 302–3; holodynamie ablaüt 69, 71, 72, 73, 76, 77; holostatic ablaüt 69, 78–9; hysterodynamic ablaüt 68–9, 75, 77; Indo-Aryan 233–9, 250; Indo-Iranian 210; Iranian 272, 274, 276–7, 281–2; Italic/Latin 329, 331–4, 342, 350; Proto-Indo-European 62–5, 67–8, 77, 81–2, 85, 86, 88, 90, 93, 104, 159; Slavic 533–7, 539; Tocharian 455, 462, 464, 467; see also case endings; nouns
definite articles 304, 370, 396, 403, 408–9, 464, 466, 473, 522, 558, 579–80, 582, 596
definiteness 387, 403, 405, 408, 409, 504, 537, 542, 546, 573, 574, 576
definites, Germanic 408–9

Degener, Almuth 264
de Hoz, Almuth 355
deutic particles 167, 171, 277, 304, 306, 335–6, 407–9, 508, 538–9, 583–4, 596
deutic pronouns 182–3, 464–5
detonation 524, 530–3

Delamarre, Xavier 369, 372, 377, 378

Delbrück, Berthold 111, 120, 124, 127, 249, 254

Demiraj, Bardyl 555, 557, 560, 571, 603

Demiraj, Shahan 560, 573, 577, 578, 597, 603

demonstratives: Celtic 370–1; Germanic 407–9; Latin 335; PIE 160, 165; see also pronouns, demonstrative.

Denmark 389
dental affricates 269, 271, 498; see also affricates
dental clusters 54
dentals 14, 28, 35, 54, 227–8, 291, 342, 454, 528
dentalization 270, 271, 531
dependent clauses 472–3, 511, 601–2
dependent-markedness 156–7

Derkson, Rick 481, 483, 486n3, 486n6, 515, 547
desiderative mood 94, 161, 245, 269–70, 340, 376, 508
desiderative suffix 307–8
de Simone, Carlo 354

Desnickaja, Agnia 557, 560, 577, 578

De Vogelaer, Gunther 397

deoicing 20, 22, 25, 229, 272, 392–4, 568, 596
diachronic elements 34, 153, 158, 208–11, 326–8, 334, 403, 443, 475, 515, 595

diathesis 146, 238–41, 248, 510

Dickey, Stephen M. 522, 542

DiGioev, Paolo 107, 185
diglossia 323

Dik, H. 311

Dillon, Myles 356
diphthongization 556, 565

diphthongs: Armenian 424–5; Avestan 266; Baltic 490; Celtic 364, 366; Germanic 395; Greek 291, 293–4; Indo-Aryan 223–5; Indo-Iranian 263; Iranian 266; Latvian 492; Lithuanian 492–3, 496; long 51, 290; monophthongization 523–4, 531; PIE 48–51; spurious 290

Doluxanov, Pavel M. 521

Domi, Mahar 603

Doric future 307

Dover, K. J. 311

Dresher, B. Elan 398

Dressler, Wolfgang 112, 128

Drinka, Bridget 107, 164

Dryer, Matthew S. 165

Duden, Konrad 403

Duhoux, Y. 314

Dumézil, Georges 431

Dunkel, George 192

Dybo, Vladimir Antonović 481, 482, 526, 547

Dybo’s Law 357, 486n7, 526

Džaukjan, G. 226

Èdel’man, Džoj Iosifovna 488

East Prussia 388

Eastern Europe 5

Edda 406

Egetmeyer, M. 314
SUBJECT-AUTHOR INDEX

Eggers, Hans 400, 401–2, 404
Eichner, James 176, 177, 178, 186, 187, 189, 194, 359, 429, 437, 440
Einarsdóttir, Stefán 401
ejectives 18, 154
Ekblom, Richard 495
Elbing Vocabulary 487, 489, 495, 503
Elichmann, Johann 2
Elizarenkova, Tatiana Jakovlevna 253, 255
Elsie, Robert W. 357
Emmerick, Ronald 368, 369, 370, 373, 376, 397
Emmerich, Ronald 357, 358, 359, 363, 364, 368, 370, 373, 376, 377
Ermowa 317
etymology 192, 194, 218, 378, 595
Eriksen, Peter 599
Erlangen School 111, 163–4
Ergative case 164, 178, 210–11, 249–50
Ergative construction 65, 163, 167, 210–11, 252, 257n29
ergative hypothesis 111, 163–4
Erlangen School 56
Ernst, Alfred 350
Éskilstuna 389
Esko, Joseph F. 8, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 363, 368, 370, 373, 376, 377
Etruria 317
etymology 192, 194, 218, 378, 595; Armenian
423; Slavic 547; Tocharian 454
Evangelienbuch 398, 404, 408
Evans, D. Ellis 357, 358, 359, 363, 364, 368, 376, 378
Evans, (Sir) Arthur 291
Eythórsson, Thórhallur 406, 407
Eznik 421

Faaarlund, Jan Terje 389, 396
Fair, Klaus 284
Falset Vletes 317, 321
Faliliev, Alexander 354, 355, 359, 376
Fennell, Trevor G. 515
Ferrara, S. 314
Ferraresi, Gisella 389, 405
Fertig, David 397
Fiedler, Wilfried 572, 573, 583, 595, 603
Fiji 214
First Sound Shift 392; see also sound changes
Fleurier, Léon 358
Fossum, Bernhard 187, 283, 515
Forter, P. 389
fortis geminates 388
fortis stops 396
Fortson, Benjamin W. IV 56, 106, 146
Fraenkel, Ernst 515
France 4, 359, 421
Francis, Eric D. 431
Frei, Peter 175
Freising Folia 519, 531, 544, 547
Fremdezeichen 458
Fricatives: Albanian 568; alveopalatal 498;
Anatolian 177; Baltic 496–9; Celtic 354; dental
532; IE 293; Germanic 381, 389, 391–3, 396;
Greek 291–3; Iranian 264, 268, 271; Italic
318, 325–8; non-phonemic 14; palatalization
532; Proto-Indo-European 13–15, 19–23, 27,
29–30, 33, 53; Slavic 528–30, 532–3
Friedrich, Johannes 126, 194
Friedrich, Paul 112, 165
Fritz, Matthias 107, 146, 159
Fuß, Eric 397, 407
Gamkrelidze, Thomas (Tamaz) V. 8, 18, 56, 154,
155, 164, 165, 168, 426, 527–8
Garcia Alonso, Juan Luis 376
Garcia Ramón 287
Garde, P. 401, 407, 408
Geldner, Elly van 409, 410
Gelderen, Elly van 409, 410
Geldner, Karl Friedrich 253, 283
Gel giants, Sigismund (Zikmund Hrubý z Jelení) 2
Gelsen, Henry 357
Geminates 364; elimination of 528; fortis 388
Gemination 294, 397
Genitive absolute 166, 313
Genitive case: Albanian 558, 573, 575–7, 580–2,
599–600; Anatolian 178–80, 182–3; Armenian
438–40, 447; Baltic 499–502, 506, 512–14;
Balto-Slavic 479–80, 482; Celtic 357, 360,
361, 368–71; Germanic 400, 403–4; Greek
143, 301–2, 313; Indo-Aryan 233, 249–51;
Indo-Iranian 207, 210–11; Iranian 274, 283;
Italic/Latin 323, 329–30, 333–6, 342, 347;
Italo-Celtic 319–20; PIE 62, 81, 111, 118, 129,
138–9, 141, 143–4, 147, 156, 158–9, 163,
165–7; Slavic 522, 534–5, 546; Tocharian
462–3, 465–6, 472–4
Genitives: adnominal 512; partitive 513–14, 522
Georgia (Soviet) 263
Georgiev, V. 555
Gerundives 190, 238, 246, 250, 251, 342, 348, 470
Gerunds 146, 158, 238, 250, 342, 445, 511, 586,
588, 592; see also absolutes; converbs
Ghatage, A.M. 255
Gimbutas, Marija 8
Girdenis, Aleksas 573
Gijon, Jorgi 573
Glagolitic alphabet 38, 519
Gloses: geminate 388; hardening 388, 389;
 intervocalic 299; palatal 388; strengthening
397; syllabic 14, 39, 42, 62
Glottalized stops 18, 154, 167, 426
Glottal theory 18, 56–7, 154, 426
Gluhak, Alekmo 547
Godel, Robert 431, 433, 447
Goedegebuure, Petra 178, 182, 192, 193
Goeman, T. 621
Goldbach, Maria 405
Goldston, Chris 123, 192
Gonda, Jan 124, 238, 249
Gotō, Toshifumi 211, 245, 248, 253, 254, 283
Göttingen Register of Electronic Texts in Indian Languages (GRE Til) 253
Government and Binding model 115–16
graber 421
grammars: generative 115; historical 253–4
Grassmann, Hermann 255
Grassmann’s Law 19–20, 293–4
Greece, 4, 5, 287, 552
Greek alphabet 289–90
Greek uncial script 519
Green, D. H. 387
Greenberg, Joseph H. 111, 115, 153, 165, 168, 538
Greenberg, Marc L. 521, 527
Greenberg, Marc L. 521, 527
Greene, David 356, 358, 367
Greppin, John A. C. 446
Griffith, Ralph T. H. 130, 372
Grimm, Jacob 3, 112
Grimm’s Law 20, 353, 392, 393
Gruppenflexion 252
Gumo, Kingdom of 453
Gusmani, Roberto 175, 192
Gutturals 154, 225, 559, 571
Guyana 214
Gvozdanović, Jadranka 107
Haarmaan, Harald 557
Haegeman, Liliane 122
Hajnal, Ivo 115, 126, 176, 180, 187, 189, 190
Hale, Mark 115, 121, 122, 123, 193
Halle, Morris 396
Hallstatt Iron Age culture 354
Hamp, Eric P. 352, 358, 359, 362, 375, 376, 389, 436, 558, 603
Hanna, Patrizia Noel Aziz 398
Harbert, Wayne 403, 407
Harrison, Jon Axel 107
Harvey, Anthony 361, 364
Haspelmath, Martin 558, 599
Haug, D. 290
Haugen, Einar 397
Havlík’s Law 525
Head Preference Principle (HPP) 409
Heather, Peter 388, 389
Hecataeus of Miletus 354
Heiric of Auxerre 353
Held, Warren H., Jr. 193
Hemmon, Roparz 378
Henning, W. B. 266
Herodotus 355, 421
heteroclitic stems 77–8, 332, 370
heteroclitics 81, 100, 159, 167, 437
Hethitologie Portal Mainz 194
Hetzrich, Heinrich 139–41
Hewson, John 107, 168, 251
hieroglyphic texts 3, 171, 173, 174, 291
High German Consonant Shift 393; see also
sound changes
Hildebrandslied 400, 410
Hill, Eugen 404, 405
Hintze, Almut 284
Hinüber, Oskar von 255
Hirt, Hermann 481
Hirt’s Law 481, 525
Hittites 421
Hock, Hans H. 211, 515, 560
Hoffmann, Inge 194, 272
Hoffmann, Karl 242, 265, 266, 273, 275, 277, 283
Höffner, Harry A. 185, 192, 193, 194
Holland, Gary B. 139, 253
holodynamic ablaut declension types 69, 71, 72, 73, 76, 77
holostatic ablaut declension types 69, 78–9
Holst, Jan Henrik 422, 447
Holtzmann’s Law 388
Holler, Zbyněk (z Jeleni) 2
Hümbschmann, Heinrich 447
Huggard, Mattyas 193
Huisman, Roelof (Agricola, Rodolphus) 2
Huld, Martin E. 603
Humbach, Helmut 284
Hurren empire 264
hyperbaton 116–20, 124, 127
hypervoiceing 413n1
hysterodynamic ablaut declension types 68–9, 75, 77
Iberian Peninsula 4
Idsardi, William 392
Illic-Svityc, Vladimir 153, 481, 482, 547
Illyria 555
Illyricum 321
imperative mood 161, 281, 338; Albanian
585–91, 597, 601; Anatolian 184, 186, 188;
Armenian 428, 441–3; Baltic 508, 510–11;
Germanic 405, 407; Greek 305; Indo-Aryan
238–42, 246–7; Indo-Iranian 207; Iranian
278, 281; Italic/Latin 338, 345–6; PIE 91–2,
97, 102–3, 106, 127–8, 161; Tocharian 460,
468, 471
i-mutation 178, 190
indefinite articles 403, 409, 414n10, 440, 558,
574, 600
indefiniteness 312
independent clauses 105, 471
India (Republic of India) 3–4, 205; sociolinguistic
situation in 214–15, 217
indicative mood: Albanian 586–96, 597, 601–2;
Anatolian 184–8; Armenian 441–4; Baltic
508; Celtic 372–5; Germanic 411; Greek
305–7, 309, 311–13; Indo-Aryan 238, 242;
Indo-Iranian 207; Iranian 277–9; Italic/Latin
323, 338, 340; PIE 6, 91–2, 100–1, 161–2;
Slavic 538; Tocharian 468, 473
INDOLOGY 253
Indo-Uralic hypothesis 7
infinitives: Albanian 552, 558, 586, 588, 592, 602; Anatolian 178, 180, 190–1; Armenian 445; Baltic 491, 493, 495, 503, 508–13; Balto-Slavic 486; Greek 305, 309–13; Indo-Aryan 222, 238; Iranian 278, 281; Italic/Latin 341–2, 345–6; PIE 104, 107, 165–6; Slavic 540–1, 544; Tocharian 468–9
inflection see case endings; declensions; verbal conjugations
injunctive mood 91, 97, 107, 113, 114, 130, 207, 238–9, 241–2, 246, 277, 279–80, 282, 428, 441–2
Insler, Stanley 249, 284
instrumental case: Anatolian 180; Baltic 499, 501–2; Balto-Slavic 479; Celtic 361, 367–8; Germanic 400; Greek 139, 201, 302; Hieroglyphic Luwian 182, 191; Hittite 142–3, 178, 183; Indo-Aryan 233, 249–50; Indo-Iranian 207, 210, 211; Iranian 274; Italic 329–30, 342; Lithuanian 513; Vedic 139–41; PIE 62, 81, 139, 143–4, 158, 192; Tocharian 463
interjections 106, 158, 440, 558
internationalisms 558
intervocalic glide 299
intrasyllabic harmony 524
Iran 3–4, 263
Iraq 263
Ireland 4, 355
Iron Age 320, 354
Irslinger, Britta Sofie 376
Isaac, G. R. 376
Isidore 406
Israel 421
Italy 4, 5, 287, 359, 552; ancient 317
Ivanov, Vjačeslav Vsevolodovič 8, 18, 56, 154, 164, 165, 168, 483, 527–8
Iverson, Gregory K. 392, 393, 394, 396
Jackson, A. V. Williams 263
Jackson, Kenneth Hurlstone 356, 361
Jacobs, Neil 413
Jahowkyan, G. B. 446
Jain, Dhanesh 255
Janko, Richard 290
Jasani, Brian D. 8, 168, 599
Jaspan, Matthew 603
Jeffery, L. H. 289
Jer fall 525
Jespersen’s Cycle 398
Jokl, Norbert 557, 558
Kallo, Jonas 515
Kamei, Shigeru 389
Kapović, Mate 107, 526, 547
Karaliūnas, Simas 490
Karl, Raimund 359, 371, 377
Kavaliori, Theodor 554
Kazakhstan 457
Kellens, J. 278, 283, 284
Kempgen, Sebastian 533, 543, 546
Kent, R. G. 284
Kerswill, Paul 389
Keydana, Götz 1
Kilgore, David 306
Kilmer, John 314
Kimbhal, Sara 176, 187
Kiparsky, Paul 55, 360
Kogan, Anton I. 205
Koinesiatisation 389
Koivulehto, Jorma 389
Koman culture 555
Konig, Ekkehard 403
Kopečný, František 547
Korhonen 421
Kortlandt, Frederik H. H. 18, 163, 240, 245, 427, 428, 430, 434, 435, 448, 481, 486n6, 489, 526, 527, 528, 547
Kosovo 5, 552
Kostallari, Androklì 603
Krause, Wolfgang 387, 474–5
Krisch, Thomas 113, 119, 120, 123, 124, 128, 133–4, 135, 138–9, 144, 255
Kristoffersen, Gjert 396
Kronasser, Heinz 193
Kroonen, Guus 389
Kroraina, Kingdom of 457
Kroraina Prakrit 453
Kuch, Kingdom of 452, 453
Kulikov, Leonid Igorevič 144–5, 246–7, 248, 254
Kümmel, Martin 211, 242, 248, 254
Kurgan hypothesis 6–8
Kuroda, Susumu 404
Kutschat, Friedrich 488, 493
Kuryłowicz, Jerzy 363, 364, 367, 409
Kurz, Josef 547
Küspert, Klaus-Christian 396
Kylstra, A.D. 389
Joshi, S. D. 255
Jutland 389
Kabelka, Jonas 515
Kallio, Petri 486
Kammenhuber, Annelies 194
Kapović, Mate 107, 526, 547
Karaliūnas, Simas 490
Karl, Raimund 359, 371, 377
Kurulis, Konstantīns 515
Kathol, A. 397
Katz, Joshua T. 107, 370
Kavalioti, Theodor 554
Joshi, S. D. 255
Jutland 389
Kabelka, Jonas 515
Kallio, Petri 486
Kammenhuber, Annelies 194
Kapović, Mate 107, 526, 547
Karaliūnas, Simas 490
Karl, Raimund 359, 371, 377
Kurulis, Konstantīns 515
Kathol, A. 397
Katz, Joshua T. 107, 370
Kavalioti, Theodor 554
Kazakhstan 457
Kellens, J. 278, 283, 284
Kempgen, Sebastian 533, 543, 546
Kent, R. G. 284
Kerswill, Paul 389
Keydana, Götz 1
Kilgore, David 306
Kiparsky, Paul 55, 360
Kogan, Anton I. 205
Koinesiatisation 389
Koivulehto, Jorma 389
Koman culture 555
Konig, Ekkehard 403
Kopečný, František 547
Korhonen 421
Kortlandt, Frederik H. H. 18, 163, 240, 245, 427, 428, 430, 434, 435, 448, 481, 486n6, 489, 526, 527, 528, 547
Kosovo 5, 552
Kostallari, Androklì 603
Krause, Wolfgang 387, 474–5
Krisch, Thomas 113, 119, 120, 123, 124, 128, 133–4, 135, 138–9, 144, 255
Kristoffersen, Gjert 396
Kronasser, Heinz 193
Kroonen, Guus 389
Kroraina, Kingdom of 457
Kroraina Prakrit 453
Kuch, Kingdom of 452, 453
Kulikov, Leonid Igorevič 144–5, 246–7, 248, 254
Kümmel, Martin 211, 242, 248, 254
Kurgan hypothesis 6–8
Kuroda, Susumu 404
Kutschat, Friedrich 488, 493
Kuryłowicz, Jerzy 363, 364, 367, 409
Kurz, Josef 547
Küspert, Klaus-Christian 396
Kylstra, A.D. 389
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Author(s)</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labialization</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labials</td>
<td>14–15, 23, 38–9, 50, 228, 427, 454, 489–90, 532–3; see also labiovelars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labiovelar glides</td>
<td>388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labov</td>
<td>William 8, 396</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lahiri</td>
<td>Aditi 398</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambert, Pierre-Yves</td>
<td>352, 358, 360, 361, 368, 372, 376, 378</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamberterie, Charles de</td>
<td>439, 447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landi, Addolorata</td>
<td>557</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Langslow</td>
<td>David 111, 119, 146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language typology: phonological</td>
<td>153–5; Proto-Indo-European 153–68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lanman, C. R.</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laroche, Emmanuel</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laryngeal hardening</td>
<td>443</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laryngeal metathesis</td>
<td>52–3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laryngeals</td>
<td>14, 29, 30, 154, 155, 177, 292; Indo-Iranian 206; interconsonantal 430; PIE 267, 271; syllabic 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lass</td>
<td>Roger 403</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Common Slavic period</td>
<td>521</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La Tène Iron Age culture</td>
<td>354</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin alphabet</td>
<td>387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latium</td>
<td>317, 320</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of Illič-Svityč</td>
<td>486n7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law of the penult</td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ledisma, Jacobus</td>
<td>488</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lehnert, Werner</td>
<td>515, 526</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lehmann</td>
<td>W. F. 8, 112, 165, 168, 389, 408, 413</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Leiden School’</td>
<td>56, 526</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lejeune</td>
<td>M. 314, 368, 372</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lenition</td>
<td>177, 361, 364–7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leskien, August</td>
<td>540, 547</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leskien’s Law</td>
<td>493, 507</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis, Henry</td>
<td>361–4, 377, 378</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexicon: Albanian 557; Anatolian 193; Indo-Iranian 207–8; Latin 349–50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhuyd, Edward</td>
<td>353</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieberman, Erez</td>
<td>399</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindemar, Fredrik Otto</td>
<td>362, 440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindemar’s Law</td>
<td>54, 89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linguistics, historical 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lippert, Jörg</td>
<td>407</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Livy</td>
<td>323</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative case: Albanian 575, 577, 578, 598; Anatolian 178, 180, 183, 190, 191; Armenian 435, 439; Baltic, 499, 501, 502–4, 508, 513; Balto-Slavic 482; Celtic 367; Germanic 400; Greek 297, 313; Indo-Aryan 233, 250–1; Indo-Iranian 207, 210; Italic/Latin 329, 331, 342; PIE 62, 81, 138–41, 143–4, 156, 158, 165; Slavic 522; Tocharian 462</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lockwood, W.B.</td>
<td>412</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lubotsky, Alexander M.</td>
<td>211, 242, 255, 284</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke (the Evangelist)</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lugano alphabet</td>
<td>359</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lühr, Rosemarie</td>
<td>116, 121, 444</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luiten, Tyler</td>
<td>403</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lunt, Horace G.</td>
<td>547</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luraghi, Silvia</td>
<td>115, 128, 138, 143, 144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luther, Martin</td>
<td>488</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysisstraat</td>
<td>291</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macaulay, Donald</td>
<td>377</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mačvarian</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macdonell, A. A.</td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonia</td>
<td>5, 552</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mailhammer, Robert</td>
<td>389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maldive Islands</td>
<td>205, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mallory, James P.</td>
<td>8, 153, 171, 354, 456, 474</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malzahn, Melanie</td>
<td>475</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mann, Stewart</td>
<td>603</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manx</td>
<td>352</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marek, Christian</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marggraf’s Law</td>
<td>462</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinet, André</td>
<td>364</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martínez, Javier</td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martirosyan, Hrach K.</td>
<td>427, 428, 429, 447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maru</td>
<td>389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masica, Colin P.</td>
<td>211, 252, 255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matasović, Ranko</td>
<td>107, 159, 160, 164, 168, 357, 378, 407, 410, 411</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathiassen, Terje</td>
<td>515</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matranga, Luca</td>
<td>554</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matras, Yaron</td>
<td>252, 601</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matzing, Joachim</td>
<td>422, 429, 447, 455, 554, 555, 557, 560, 567, 571, 573, 577, 578, 579, 580, 588, 593, 595, 596, 597, 599, 603</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayrhofer, Manfred</td>
<td>154, 211, 264, 273, 283, 284</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mažilis, Vytautas</td>
<td>489, 490, 495, 515</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mažvydas, Martynas (Martinus Masvidius)</td>
<td>488</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McCluskey, Stephen C.</td>
<td>487</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McManus, Damian</td>
<td>361, 375</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McWhorter, John H.</td>
<td>389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medes</td>
<td>264</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Međimurje Kajkavian</td>
<td>544</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meid, Wolfgang</td>
<td>125, 194, 354, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meier-Brügger, Michael</td>
<td>56, 106, 146, 185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meillet, Antoine</td>
<td>26, 167, 350, 389, 428, 433, 435, 446–7, 449, 481</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meillet’s Law</td>
<td>481, 482</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meiser, Gerhard</td>
<td>350</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meiner, T.</td>
<td>314</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melanesia</td>
<td>214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melchert, H. Craig</td>
<td>171, 176, 177, 178, 180, 182, 185, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendéz-Dosuna, J.</td>
<td>288</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menz, Andrea</td>
<td>398</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merrill, Peter T.</td>
<td>547</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Meshari’</td>
<td>554</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mesodynamic ablaut declension types</td>
<td>69, 72, 73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesopotamia</td>
<td>171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesrop Maštoc’</td>
<td>421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messing, G. M.</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
metathesis 15–17, 52–4, 157, 299, 301, 432, 524, 554
metatony 481, 482, 493
Methodius 522
Meyer, Gustav 579, 603
Michael Attaleiates 553
Middle East 3, 5
Mihăescu, Haralambie 557
Miller, D. Gary 1
12
Milyan 174
Mitanni kingdom 205, 264, 457
Mongolia 452
Monier-Williams, Monier 254
monosyllabic lengthening 38, 54–5, 70, 83–4, 105
Montenegro 5, 552
Morgenstierne, Georg 205, 264
morphology 7, 8; Albanian 573–97; Armenian 434–45; Baltic 499–512; Balto-Slavic 479, 480; Celtic 367–76; Germanic 389, 398–403; Greek (adjectives and adverbs) 302–4; Greek (nominal) 298–302; Greek (pronouns) 304–5; Indo-Aryan 233, 250, 252, 255, 257; Indo-Iranian 207; inflectional 398–400; Iranian 266, 274–81; Latin (nominal and pronomial) 329–33; Latin (verbal) 336–43; nominal 178–80, 233–4, 274–6, 298–302, 400–3; Slavic 533–42; Tocharian 461–8, 461–9; verbal 184–90, 238–9
morphophonology: Indo-Aryan 229–33; Iranian 272–4; Latin 339; morphotactics 229; PIE 62, 65, 94, 139, 154, 156–9, 160, 163, 228–30; Albanian 523–30; Armenian 445–7; Baltic 499–503; barytone 180, 189, 297, 486–8, 525–6; Common Celtic 367–70; Germanic 400–3; Greek 298–302; Indo-Aryan 233–8; Iranian 274–6; Italic/Latin 329–34; Proto-Indo-European 62–3, 67–74, 77–9, 139–44, 156–90, 163; Slavic 533–6; Tocharian 462–3; see also case endings; declensions; nominative case
Nova Scotia 352
Novgorod Birchbark letters 519, 531, 535, 544, 547
numerals: Albanian 584–5; Armenian 440–1; Baltic 505–6; cardinal 89, 90, 157, 440; 466–7, 505, 584–5, 600; Celtic 352–3, 357; Iranian 276–7; ordinal 90, 352–3, 441, 467, 505–6, 580, 585, 600; PIE 89–90, 107, 156–9; Tocharian 466–7
O hUiginn, Ruairí 364, 370
Oberlies, Thomas 242, 254, 255
object ellipsis 135
obstnouns: abstract 107, 349, 436, 446, 470, 480, 598; agent 180, 314, 322, 349, 427, 432, 441, 445, 446, 468, 471, 480, 503; Albanian 523–30; Armenian 445–7; Baltic 499–503; barytone 180, 189, 297, 486–8, 525–6; Common Celtic 367–70; Germanic 400–3; Greek 298–302; Indo-Aryan 233–8; Iranian 274–6; Italic/Latin 329–34; Proto-Indo-European 62–3, 67–74, 77–9, 139–44, 156–90, 163; Slavic 533–6; Tocharian 462–3; see also case endings; declensions; nominative case
O'Neil, Wayne 389
onomatopoeia 106
optative mood 102, 161, 281, 309, 468, 596–5
Oranskaja, Tat’jana Iosifovna 255
ordinal numerals 90, 352–3, 441, 467, 505–6, 580, 585, 600
Orel, Vladimir 389, 558, 560, 573, 577, 579, 597, 603
orthography 14, 172, 265–6, 288, 294–5, 323–4, 361, 489–92
Oscar 317, 321, 328, 329, 330, 342, 349; verb system 336
Oshiro, Terumasa 188
participles (verbal adjectives): in the ablative

Ovid

palatovelars 15, 20, 21, 23, 26–7, 206, 496,

Pandit, Shankar Pândurang

Patagonia

Pal Engjëlli (Paulus

Ölber

Pal Engjëlli (Paulus

Ölber

Pakistan 3, 214, 263

Pedersen, Holger 8, 194, 361–4, 378, 427, 428,

phonemes 154, 293, 294; Indo-Aryan 223–5;

Pérez Orozco, Santiago

Pāli

Pal Engjëlli (Paulus

Ölber

Pakistan 3, 214, 263

Pedersen, Holger 8, 194, 361–4, 378, 427, 428,

phonemes 154, 293, 294; Indo-Aryan 223–5;

Prosdocimi, Aldo L. 350, 368

prosody 123; Baltic 492–9; Germanic 396–8

Prósper, Blanca María 359, 360

proterodynamic ablaut declension types 68–9

Proto-Indo-European phonology 56, 318; accentual paradigms 526–7; allophones 13; clusters 52–4; diphthongs 564; fricatives 29–30; further reading 56–7; laryngeals 29–30, 43–53; phonemes 13; reconstructed system 13; resonants and glides 30–9; rules 54–5; three velar series in 26–7; Tocharian and 454–7; vowels 40–3

Proto-Indo-European word order: discontinuous constituents (hyperbaton/tmesis) 116–20; marked order 1 (verb–initial V–1) 127–132; marked order 2 (verb-second and verb-third) 133–7; moods 161; unmarked order (verb-final) 133–8; unmarked order (Celtic) 125; unmarked order (Hittite) 236–7; unmarked order (Mycenean Greek) 124; unmarked order (Vedic) 125–6; verb stems 161–2; Wackernagel’s Law 120–4

prothesis 530

Ptolemy (Ptolemeu) 354, 555

Pulvel, Jaan 194

purpose clauses 346

Qāwrigul culture 456

quantitative sociolinguistics 8

Ramat, Paolo 168

Ramer, Alexis Manaster 437

Rask, Rasmus 3

Rasmussen, Jens 176

Rastorgueva, Vera Sergeevna 283

Rau, Jeremy 107

Raybould, Marilynne 355–6

reduplication: Albanian 456; Anatolian 189; aorist 97, 113–14, 132, 189; Armenian 445; Germanic 399, 405, 413n3; Greek 305, 310; Indo-Aryan 233, 238–40, 242, 248; Iranian 273, 278–9; Latin 337, 340; Old Irish future 375–6; Proto-Indo-European 17, 24, 31, 62, 83–4, 92, 97–8, 104, 187, 539; Slavic 539, 546

Reichelt, Hans 282, 283

Reis, Marga 397

relative clauses 111, 165–6, 193, 282, 344, 347–8, 364, 472–3, 558

Renan, Ernest 353

Renfrew, Colin 354

Renou, Louis 242, 253, 254, 284

Repanšek, Luka 376

Republic of Cyprus 287

retroflex 225, 227, 229–30, 263, 270, 423

Rgveda (RV) 4, 31, 105, 113, 114, 118–21, 123, 128–30, 140–1, 144–5, 205; see also Vedic texts

rhotacism 29, 165, 325, 327, 334, 389, 552, 566–7

rhotacization 397

Riad, Tomas 388

Rieken, Elisabeth 178, 180, 182, 188, 192, 194

Rijksharmon, Albert 314

Ringe, Don 8, 57, 106, 362, 389, 399, 404, 405, 413

Rix, Helmut 107, 350, 356

Rizza, Alfredo 192

Rø Runestone 405

Roberge, Paul T. 389

Roberts, Ian 396

Robinson, Orrin W. 388, 406, 413

Rodway, Simon 372, 376

Roma people 3

Romani 558

Romaine 5

root constraints 54

Roques, Mario Luis 554

Rosen, Hannah 350

Roth, Rudolf 253, 254

Ruk'í rule 6, 29, 206, 229, 269, 428, 441–2, 457, 497–8, 528–30, 537

Rumsey, Alan 164

Ruppel, Antonia 138, 313

Russell, Paul 355, 361, 364, 371, 375, 376, 377

Russia 7

Sadnik, Linda 547

Salmasius, Claudius (Claude de Saumaise) 3

Salmons, Joseph C. 154, 168, 389, 392, 393, 394, 396

sandhi 229, 230

Sardinia 321

Sasanian period 4, 265

Sasse, Hans-Jürgen 597

Sassetti, Filippo 3

satem languages 6, 21, 426–7, 497, 521, 571; centum reflexes found in 27; labiovelars 23–5; map 28; palatalized velars 21–3

Sauassure, Ferdinand de 493

Sauassure’s Law 493, 515n4

Schaefter, Christiane 247

Schallert, Joseph 521

Schénk, Alexander M. 521, 546

Schindler, Jochem 429

Schleicher, August 479, 483, 488

Schmalstieg, William R. 486n3, 487, 504, 512, 515

Schmidt, Gernot 107

Schmidt, Karl Horst 355, 356, 357, 358, 360, 368, 371, 375–6, 375
Schmitt, Rüdiger 115, 211, 263, 264, 266, 273, 283, 284, 422, 425, 440, 444, 447
Schmitt-Brandt, Robert 603
Schrijver, Peter 354, 355, 357, 358, 362, 363, 370, 372
Schulte, Michael 387
Schumacher, Stefan 357, 372, 375, 376, 377, 560, 567, 571, 573, 577, 578, 588, 595, 596, 597, 599, 603
Schumann, Roland 107
Schievitz, P. 455
Schievitz, Peter 475
Second Sound Shift 205, 211, 263
Southworth, Franklin C. 205, 211, 255
Spain 4, 321, 359
Speijer (Speyer), Jacob S. 254
Spirantration 364, 365, 367, 392
split-ergative alignment 162–3
Sprachbund 483
Sri Lanka 214
Stalmaszczyk, Piotr 357
Stang, Christian S. 479, 481, 482, 483, 486n2, 497, 499, 509, 525, 547
Stang’s Law 70, 526
Starke, Frank 178, 180, 191
Stearns, McDonald, Jr. 388
Steele, P. 314
stelae of Xanthos 174
Stempel, Reinhard 107, 446–7
Sternewald, Wolfgang 132
Stifter, David 358, 359, 360, 362, 371, 377
Stockwell, Robert P. 405, 407
Strand, Richard F. 205
Stressed Syllable Law 397
Stuart-Smith, Jane 326
Stüber, Karin 369, 370, 377
Studi Etruschi 350
Sturtevant, Edgar H. 194, 314
subordinate clauses: 193, 344–5; subordinating 193, 344–5; subordinating structures 347, 348–9; subordinating structures 348–9
Suborder stem 375
subordinate clauses 193; Albanian 601; Anatolian 193; Celtic 397; Germanic 405–6; 408; Greek 305, 311, 312; Indo-Aryan 223; Italic/Latin 343–6, 348; PIE 105, 139, 166; Slavic 546; Tocharian 468
superlatives: Albanian 580–1; Armenian 438; Baltic 357; Celtic 357; 370; Greek 303–4; Iranian 276; Italic 334; Italo-Celtic 319; PIE 80
Surinam 214
Svane, Gunnar 557
Svarlien, Diane 527, 538, 543,
Svante, Karin 369, 370, 377
subjective mood 100–1, 161, 338, 411, 468; in dependent clauses 473; Greek 309, 311
subjective stem 375
subjective mood 100–1; subjective 347, 348; PIE 105, 139, 166; Slavic 546; Tocharian 468
subjects 138, 143–5, 158–9, 163, 302, 367, 369, 399–400, 434–5
syntax: adverbial clauses 346–7; Albanian 599–602; Armenian 447; Baltic 512–15; Celtic 377; Classical Armenian 447; complementation 345–6; configurational 191–3; constituent order 343–4; Germanic 405–12; Greek 311–14; Indo-Aryan 216; Iranian 282–3; Latin 343–9; morphosyntax 191; passive and ergative constructions 249; relative clauses 347–8; sequence of tenses 348; Slavic 543–6; subordinate clauses 193, 344–5; subordinating structures 348–9
synthetic passives 389
Syria 263, 421
velars 226; geminate 396; PIE 269; see also labiovelars; palatovelars; velar palatalization; velar stops
Velupillai, Viveka 168
Venantius Fortunatus 353
Vendryes, Joseph 370, 371, 377
Vendryes’ Restriction 377
Venetian district 558
Vennemann, Theo 389, 397, 398, 434
Ventris, Michael 291, 314

verbal aspect: Albanian 585–6; Anatolian 184–5, 189; Armenian 441; Baltic 512; Celtic 371, 377; Germanic 405, 410–12, 414; Greek 305, 309–12; perfective 95; PIE 92, 95, 97, 107n8, 146, 161–2, 168; Slavic 533, 541–2; stative 79, 92, 94, 97–9, 144, 164, 246–7, 256–7, 305, 309–10, 370, 374, 442–5, 509, 541; Tocharian 468; see also aorist
verbal forms and inflections: non-finite 104, 190, 341–2, 445; stem formation 189–90, 444–5; verb stems 161–2; see also infinitives; participles (verbal adjectives)
verbal moods: conditional 238, 242, 372, 375, 508, 511; desiderative 94, 161, 245, 269–70, 340, 376, 508; injunctive 91, 97, 107, 113, 114, 130, 207, 238–9, 241–2, 246, 277, 279–80, 282, 428, 441–2; optative 102, 161, 281, 309, 468, 596–7; subjunctive 100–1, 161, 280–1, 309, 311, 338, 411, 468, 473; see also imperative mood; indicative mood
verbal positions: Germanic 405–7; marked order 1 (verb-initial) 127–33; marked order 2 (verb-second/verb-third) 133–7; unmarked order (verb-final) 124–7
verbal tenses and conjugations: Albanian 585–97; Anatolian 184–90; Armenian 441–5; Baltic 486–7, 508–12; Celtic 371–6; Germanic 410–12; Greek 305–10; Indo-Aryan 238–47; Indo-Iranian 207; Iranian 277–81; Latin 336–43; old Indian 240–2; Oscan 336; Proto-Anatolian 184–90; Proto-Indo-European 91–7, 99–104, 138–9; Slavic 539–42; Tocharian 454, 467–9; see also ablaut; aorist; preterit
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Author</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>281, 287, 307–8, 447, 468, 510, 587–8, 600; unaccusative 144, 171</td>
<td>Vergil 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verkerk, Annemarie 158</td>
<td>Vermeer, Willem 528, 529, 531, 535, 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verner, Karl 393</td>
<td>Verner’s Law 20, 393, 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verschärfung 388</td>
<td>Villar, Francisco 164, 360, 364, 368, 372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vine, Brent 350</td>
<td>Vishva Bandhu 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viret, Jérémie 360</td>
<td>Villedaz, Rémy 434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocalism: Brythonic 364–5; Celtic 362; Gaelic 366</td>
<td>Vollner's Law 20, 393, 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative case: Anatolian 178, 183; Armenian 434; Baltic 499, 502; Celtic 368–9; Germanic 400; Indo-Aryan 223, 233; Indo-Iranian 207; Italic/Latin 330–1, 333; PIE 62, 80–1, 105–6, 158–9; Slavic 555; Tocharian 462–3</td>
<td>voice aspirated stops 14–15, 18–21, 176, 206, 222, 264, 268, 291, 326, 392, 426–7, 432, 454, 528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced stops 15–18, 20–1, 54, 153–4, 176–7, 291, 327, 392, 481, 496, 516n7</td>
<td>voiceless fricatives 15, 264, 326, 392–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vowels: Albanian 561–2; anaptyctic 266; Anatolian 176; Armenian 423–6; auslaut 565; Baltic 489–92; Celtic 362, 364, 366–7; composition 377; contraction of 425–6; doubling 324, 328; dummy 291; East Baltic 490; euphonic 53, 266; Germanic 394–6; Greek 293–6; Indo-Aryan 221–5; Indo-Iranian 206–7; Iranian 266–8, 272; Italic/Latin 325–6, 328; Latvian 491–2; lengthening 154, 324, 328, 397; Lithuanian 490–1; pre-tonic 364; prothetic 34, 48, 52, 53, 292, 293, 428, 429, 430, 432, 440; Proto-Anatolian 176; proto-Germanic 395; Proto-Indo-European 39–43, 154–5, 455; Slavic 522–5; Tocharian 455; weakening of 425; see also diphthongs; semivowels</td>
<td>voiceless aspiration 125–7, 131–2; Germanic 394–5; Greek 394–5; Greek 293–6; Indo-Aryan 221–5; Indo-Iranian 206–7; Iranian 266–8, 272; Italic/Latin 325–6, 328; Latvian 491–2; lengthening 154, 324, 328, 397; Lithuanian 490–1; pre-tonic 364; prothetic 34, 48, 52, 53, 292, 293, 428, 429, 430, 432, 440; Proto-Anatolian 176; proto-Germanic 395; Proto-Indo-European 39–43, 154–5, 455; Slavic 522–5; Tocharian 455; weakening of 425; see also diphthongs; semivowels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wachter, Rudolf 350</td>
<td>Weerman, Fred 407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wackernagel, Jacob 111, 119, 120, 146, 249, 254, 405</td>
<td>Weight Law 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wackernagel clitics and particles 116–17, 123</td>
<td>Weise, Oskar 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wackernagel’s Law 120–3, 146, 192, 311, 371, 373, 377, 543; in Baltic 514–15</td>
<td>Weiβ, Helmut 396, 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wagner, Heinrich 356</td>
<td>Weiss, Michael 350, 357, 375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales 4</td>
<td>Weitenberg, Joseph J. S. 180, 192, 435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallace, Rex 350</td>
<td>Werba, Chlodwig H. 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whaley, Lindsay J. 168</td>
<td>West, Martin L. 282, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitney, William Dwight 242, 253, 254, 255</td>
<td>West Macedonia 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiesinger, Peter 396</td>
<td>Whaley, Lindsay J. 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willis, David W. E. 377</td>
<td>Whitney, William Dwight 242, 253, 254, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windfuhr, Gernot 282, 283</td>
<td>Wiesinger, Peter 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter, Werner 428, 430, 452, 462, 481, 527</td>
<td>Wilczek, Krzysztof T. 357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winter’s Law 18, 154, 481, 486n6, 489, 506; in Baltic 516n13; in Slavic 527–8</td>
<td>Witzel, Michael 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodard, Roger 194</td>
<td>Wójcik, Jakub 488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word formation: Albanian 597–9; Armenian 445–7; Celtic 376–7; Germanic 403–5; Greek 313–14; Iranian 281–2; Italic 349–50; Latin 349–50; Slavic 542–6; Tocharian 470–1</td>
<td>Wulfila (Ulfilas) 387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word order 164–5, 191–3, 311; see also Proto-Indo-European word order</td>
<td>Xhuvani, Aleksander 597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word order 164–5, 191–3, 311; see also Proto-Indo-European word order</td>
<td>Xinjiang province 5, 452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yakubovich, Ilya 172, 173, 188</td>
<td>Yakubovich, Ilya 172, 173, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ylli, Xhelal 557</td>
<td>Yllı, Xhelal 557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoshida, Kazuhiro 186, 187, 188</td>
<td>Yoshida, Kazuhiro 186, 187, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young, Steven 495</td>
<td>Young, Steven 495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young, Thomas 3</td>
<td>Young,Thomas 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zadar 552</td>
<td>Zadar 552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zair, Nicholas 357, 362</td>
<td>Zair, Nicholas 357, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaliznjak, Andrej Anatol’evič 254, 544, 547</td>
<td>Zaliznjak, Andrej Anatol’evič 254, 544, 547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarathuštra 4, 457</td>
<td>Zarathuštra 4, 457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeiffelder, Susanne 116</td>
<td>Zeilfelder, Susanne 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Žemaitija 492–3</td>
<td>Žemaitija 492–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Žempale 494</td>
<td>Žempale 494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeps, Valdis 487</td>
<td>Zeps, Valdis 487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ziegler, Sabine 361</td>
<td>Ziegler, Sabine 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimmer, Stefan 192, 377</td>
<td>Zimmer, Stefan 192, 377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinkevičius, Zigmas 502</td>
<td>Zinkevičius, Zigmas 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Žirmunskij [Schirmunski], Viktor</td>
<td>Žirmunskij [Schirmunski], Viktor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maskimovič 388</td>
<td>Maskimovič 388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zograf, Georgij Aleksandrovič 252, 255</td>
<td>Zograf, Georgij Aleksandrovič 252, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoroastrian scriptures 264</td>
<td>Zoroastrian scriptures 264</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>